CHEMISTRY 3A: INTRODUCTORY GENERAL CHEMISTRY V1.2



Jamie MacArthur
Madera Community College

LibreTexts™

MacArthur Chemistry 3A v 1.2

This text is disseminated via the Open Education Resource (OER) LibreTexts Project (https://LibreTexts.org) and like the thousands of other texts available within this powerful platform, it is freely available for reading, printing, and "consuming."

The LibreTexts mission is to bring together students, faculty, and scholars in a collaborative effort to provide an accessible, and comprehensive platform that empowers our community to develop, curate, adapt, and adopt openly licensed resources and technologies; through these efforts we can reduce the financial burden borne from traditional educational resource costs, ensuring education is more accessible for students and communities worldwide.

Most, but not all, pages in the library have licenses that may allow individuals to make changes, save, and print this book. Carefully consult the applicable license(s) before pursuing such effects. Instructors can adopt existing LibreTexts texts or Remix them to quickly build course-specific resources to meet the needs of their students. Unlike traditional textbooks, LibreTexts' web based origins allow powerful integration of advanced features and new technologies to support learning.



LibreTexts is the adaptable, user-friendly non-profit open education resource platform that educators trust for creating, customizing, and sharing accessible, interactive textbooks, adaptive homework, and ancillary materials. We collaborate with individuals and organizations to champion open education initiatives, support institutional publishing programs, drive curriculum development projects, and more.

The LibreTexts libraries are Powered by NICE CXone Expert and were supported by the Department of Education Open Textbook Pilot Project, the California Education Learning Lab, the UC Davis Office of the Provost, the UC Davis Library, the California State University Affordable Learning Solutions Program, and Merlot. This material is based upon work supported by the National Science Foundation under Grant No. 1246120, 1525057, and 1413739.

Any opinions, findings, and conclusions or recommendations expressed in this material are those of the author(s) and do not necessarily reflect the views of the National Science Foundation nor the US Department of Education.

Have questions or comments? For information about adoptions or adaptions contact info@LibreTexts.org or visit our main website at https://LibreTexts.org.

The LibreTexts name, logo, and book covers are trademarked by LibreTexts, Inc. (a 501(c)(3) not-for-profit organization) and protected against unauthorized use.

This text was compiled on 10/17/2026

TABLE OF CONTENTS

For the Instructor

Licensing

For the Student

How Science Works

0.1: Hypothesis, Theories, and Laws

0.2: The Scientific Method - How Chemists Think

1: Basics of Measurement

1.1: Taking Measurements- Numbers and Units

1.1.1: Scientific Notation - Writing Large and Small Numbers

1.1.2: The Basic Units of Measurement

1.2: Significant Figures

1.2.1: Significant Figures - Writing Numbers to Reflect Precision

1.2.2: Significant Figures in Calculations

1.3: Conversions

1.3.1: Problem Solving and Unit Conversions

1.3.2: Solving Multi-step Conversion Problems

1.3.3: Units Raised to a Power

1.E: Measurements (Exercises)

2: Matter and Energy

2.1: What is Matter?

2.1.1: Classifying Matter According to Its State—Solid, Liquid, and Gas

2.1.2: Classifying Matter According to Its Composition

2.2: Properties and Changes of Matter

2.2.1: Differences in Matter- Physical and Chemical Properties

2.2.2: Changes in Matter - Physical and Chemical Changes

2.2.3: Conservation of Mass - There is No New Matter

2.3: Summary of Matter and Changes

2.4: Density

2.5: Temperature, Heat, and Energy

2.5.1: Energy

2.5.2: Energy and Chemical and Physical Change

2.5.3: Temperature - Random Motion of Molecules and Atoms

2.6: Heat Capacity

2.6.1: Temperature Changes - Heat Capacity

2.6.2: Energy and Heat Capacity Calculations

2.E: Matter and Energy (Exercises)

3: Elements and Compounds

3.1: Properties of Atoms

3.1.1: Indivisible - The Atomic Theory

3.1.2: The Properties of Protons, Neutrons, and Electrons

3.1.3: Keeping Track of Subatomic Particles

3.1.4: Looking for Patterns - The Periodic Table

3.1.5: Ions - Losing and Gaining Electrons

3.1.6: Isotopes - When the Number of Neutrons Varies

3.2: Summary of Atomic Theory and the Construction of Atoms

3.3: Compounds

3.3.1: Chemical Formulas - How to Represent Compounds

3.4: A Molecular View of Elements and Compounds

3.5: Ionic Compounds

3.5.1: Ions - Monatomic and Polyatomic

3.5.2: Writing Formulas for Ionic Compounds

3.6: How to Name Compounds

3.6.1: Naming Ionic Compounds

3.6.2: Naming Molecular Compounds

3.6.3: Naming Acids

3.6.4: Nomenclature Summary

3.E: Atoms, Molecules, and Ions (Exercises)

4: The Mole Concept

4.1: Avogadro's Number

4.2: Conversions Between Moles and Atoms

4.3: Molar Mass

4.4: Conversions Between Moles and Mass

4.5: Conversions Between Mass and Number of Particles

4.6: Percent Composition

4.7: Determining Empirical Formulas

4.8: Percent of Water in a Hydrate

4.9: Determining Molecular Formulas

4.10: Mole Road Map

4.E: The Mole Concept (Exercises)

5: Chemical Reactions

5.1: Word Equations

5.2: Chemical Equations

5.3: Balancing Equations

5.4: Types of Reactions

5.4.1: Combination Reactions
5.4.2: Decomposition Reactions
5.4.3: Combustion Reactions
5.4.4: Single Replacement Reactions
5.4.5: Double Replacement Reactions
5.5: Predicting Reactions - Single and Double Replacement Reactions
5.E: Chemical Reactions (Exercises)
6: Introduction to Stoichiometry
6.1: Everyday Stoichiometry
6.2: Mole Ratios
6.3: Mass-Mole and Mole-Mass Stoichiometry
6.4: Mass-Mass Stoichiometry
6.5: Stoichiometry Applications
6.5.1: Making Your Own Mole Road Map
6.5.2: Limiting Reactant
6.5.3: Theoretical Yield and Percent Yield
6.E: Introduction to Stoichiometry (Exercises)
7: Electrons and Chemical Bonding
7.1: Light is Visible Electromagnetic Radiation
7.1.1: The Electromagnetic Spectrum
7.2: Models of Electron Behavior
7.2.1: The Bohr Model - Atoms with Orbits
7.2.2: The Quantum-Mechanical Model- Atoms with Orbitals
7.3: Quantum-Mechanical Orbitals and Electron Configurations
7.4: Electron Configurations and the Periodic Table
7.4.1: The Explanatory Power of the Quantum-Mechanical Model
7.5: The Octet Rule
7.5.1: Representing Valence Electrons with Dots
7.5.2: Lewis Structures of Ionic Compounds- Electrons Transferred
7.5.3: Covalent Lewis Structures- Electrons Shared
7.6: Writing Lewis Structures for Covalent Compounds
7.6.1: Resonance - Equivalent Lewis Structures for the Same Molecule
7.6.2: Exceptions to the Octet Rule
7.7: Predicting the Shapes of Molecules
7.8: Electronegativity and Polarity
7.E: Electrons and Chemical Bonds (Exercises)
8: Gases
8.1: Solids, Liquids, and Gases- A Molecular Comparison

8.2: Pressure - The Result of Constant Molecular Collisions
8.3: Kinetic Molecular Theory- A Model for Gases
8.4: Simple Gas Laws
8.4.1: Boyle's Law - Pressure and Volume
8.4.2: Charles's Law- Volume and Temperature
8.4.3: Gay-Lussac's Law- Temperature and Pressure
8.4.4: Avogadro's Law- Volume and Moles
8.5: The Ideal Gas Law
8.6: Stoichiometry and the Ideal Gas Law
8.7: Mixtures of Gases
8.8: Gases (Exercises)
9: Attractive Forces
9.1: Intermolecular Forces- Dispersion, Dipole–Dipole, Hydrogen Bonding
9.2: Types of Crystalline Solids
9.3: Phase Transitions
9.3.1: Melting, Freezing, and Sublimation
9.3.2: Boiling, Evaporation and Condensation
9.3.3: Calculations for Phase Changes
9.3.4: Heating Curve for Water
9.4: Solutions - Homogeneous Mixtures
9.4.1: How Solutions Form
9.4.2: Electrolytes and Nonelectrolytes
9.4.3: Aqueous Solutions and Solubility - Compounds Dissolved in Water
9.5: Precipitation Reactions
9.5.1: Writing Chemical Equations for Reactions in Solution- Complete Chemical, Complete Ionic, and Net Ionic Equations
9.E: Attractive Forces
10: Aqueous Solutions
10.1: Solubility Trends
10.1.1: Solutions of Solids Dissolved in Water
10.1.2: Solutions of Gases in Water
10.2: Measures of Concentration
10.2.1: Percent Solutions
10.2.2: Solution Concentration- Molarity
10.3: Concentration Calculations
10.3.1: A Mole Map for Concentration
10.3.2: Solution Dilution
10.3.3: Solution Stoichiometry
10.3.4: Acid–Base Titration

10.4: Colligative Properties
10.4.1: Freezing Point Depression and Boiling Point Elevation
10.4.2: Osmosis
10.E: Solutions (Exercises)

11: Acids and Bases
11.1: Properties of Acids and Bases
11.1.1: Acids- Properties and Examples
11.1.2: Bases- Properties and Examples
11.2: Chemistry of Acids and Bases
11.2.1: Molecular Definitions of Acids and Bases
11.2.2: Reactions of Acids and Bases
11.2.3: Strong and Weak Acids and Bases
11.3: Acid-Base Equilibria
11.3.1: Water - Acid and Base in One
11.3.2: The pH and pOH Scales - Ways to Express Acidity and Basicity
Dynamic Equilibrium
11.4: Buffers are Solutions that Resist pH Change
11.E: Acids and Bases

12: Stoichiometry Applications
12.1: Stoichiometry Review
12.1.1: Stoichiometry Basics
12.1.2: Review of Stoichiometry and the Ideal Gas Laws
12.1.3: Review of Titrations
12.2: Limiting Reactant
12.3: Theoretical Yield, and Percent Yield
12.4: Enthalpy Change is a Measure of the Heat Evolved or Absorbed
12.E: Stoichiometry Applications (Exercises)

13: Oxidation and Reduction
13.1: Oxidation and Reduction- Some Definitions
13.2: Keeping Track of Redox Reactions
13.2.1: Oxidation States - Electron Bookkeeping
13.2.2: Determining Redox Reactions from Oxidation States
13.2.3: Balancing Redox Equations
13.3: Applications of Redox Reactions
13.3.1: The Activity Series- Predicting Spontaneous Redox Reactions
13.3.2: Batteries- Using Chemistry to Generate Electricity
13.3.3: Corrosion - Undesirable Redox Reactions
13.3.4: Electrolysis- Using Electricity to Do Chemistry

13.E: Oxidation and Reduction (Exercises)

14: Radioactivity and Nuclear Chemistry

14.1: The Discovery of Radioactivity

14.2: Types of Radioactivity- Alpha, Beta, and Gamma Decay

14.3: Natural Radioactivity and Half-Life

14.4: Applications of Nuclear Chemistry

14.4.1: Detecting Radioactivity

14.4.2: Radiocarbon Dating- Using Radioactivity to Measure the Age of Fossils and Other Artifacts

14.4.3: The Discovery of Fission and the Atomic Bomb

14.4.4: Nuclear Power- Using Fission to Generate Electricity

14.4.5: Nuclear Fusion- The Power of the Sun

14.4.6: The Effects of Radiation on Life

14.4.7: Radioactivity in Medicine

14.E: Nuclear Chemistry (Exercises)

Index

Detailed Licensing

This page titled Chemistry 3A: Introductory General Chemistry v1.2 (MacArthur) is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

For the Instructor

This textbook is modeled on the Tro textbook map with a few notable exceptions. Changes were made based on the results of student learning outcome assessments in my own courses. More space has been given to some areas where assessment results indicate students need additional learning options. Consequently, less space has been given to some areas where assessment results indicate students were not in need of additional information. This has sometimes meant chapters are combined, spread out, or rearranged. In some cases, material was curated from a different textbook map within the LibreTexts system. A comprehensive list of changes is included towards the end of this section.

I also wanted to share why I have made some of these changes in the way that I did, and what to expect for them. There are two principles which have guided this design: constructivism and iteration. Chemistry is a subject which is best learned iteratively, and this sort of approach has been used in areas where student learning outcomes could improve. The goal here is to take what would normally be a steep learning curve and spreading it out over the course of the semester: stepping away from the subject for a while, and then stepping back into it with more knowledge later, along with a review of what was previously covered. The two concepts for which this approach has been used are stoichiometry and ionic compounds.

In addition to leaving space to touch on stoichiometry at several points throughout the semester, a constructivist approach has been used in the way that it is discussed within the text. Many commercial textbooks have professionally designed graphics to help aid in the dimensional analysis of stoichiometry problems. Although there are some great graphic designs in one of the sources used, most of the time there are not graphic designs within the text to map out the specific aspects of stoichiometry calculations. The initial design is included as an example of how such a graphic could potentially be helpful in deciding on how to solve a problem. When new stoichiometry concepts are introduced, the text will refer back to this graphic and ask students to create their own guide for how to solve the problem. I believe that if students can create their own problem-solving map, it will be more effective than even the most professionally designed graphic.

I would like this textbook to be something that instructors can use even if they have different areas of concern related to student learning outcomes. Because of this, I have sometimes added more material than I might have otherwise. Word count is not a limit for an online text, although of course we need to be aware of realistic expectations for our students. Practically what this will look like is there are some areas where material is duplicated. Sometimes this will be a section with several subsections that go into greater detail followed by a section which covers the same information more succinctly. The idea would be the instructor decides which of these to use in the class: the long version or the short version. In other cases, specifically with stoichiometry, the same concepts are covered in different parts of the text so that an instructor might cover it at different times depending on when they would like to do so.

The following changes are made to the overall organization of the textbook compared to the Tro textbook:

· chapter 1 has been moved to the front matter, and subsequent chapters have been renumbered accordingly.

· Density has been moved from the measurements chapter to the matter and energy chapter.

· A new chapter called elements and compounds combines the chapter on atoms and elements in the chapter on molecules and compounds.

· Solubility has been removed from the chapter on chemical reactions and is addressed in a later chapter. A discussion of double replacement reactions remains in this chapter, without reference to solubility rules. A fuller discussion of precipitation reactions is then added in a later chapter.

· More time is spent on the different possible conversions in the chapter on stoichiometry, and concepts like limiting reactant, theoretical yield and entropy are treated as additional topics which may be covered here or in a later chapter.

· Electrons and chemical bonding are combined into a single chapter.

· A new chapter is created called attractive forces which combines the material in the chapter liquids, solids, and intermolecular forces with the basics of intermolecular forces in solution, as well as revisiting precipitation reactions now that we have a thorough basis for discussing solubility rules.

· References to chemical equilibrium are only included as they are important for acid and base chemistry.

· An additional chapter is created towards the end of the book in which stoichiometry is revisited after having shown stoichiometry applications in gas laws and solutions. The intent is to spend more time here on limiting reagent and percent yield calculations, but if this had previously been covered then the chapter could serve as a review.

Finally, I should mention that creating this textbook was mostly a matter of curation. Most of the words in this text were written by other people. The few times when I did add words were often in the section headings that I have added. In some cases, I took what was a single section in a previous text and divided it into two or more sections for this text. The biggest chunk of text for this book came from the Tro textbook map. In addition, the material from the CK-12 textbook was used extensively, especially related to moles and stoichiometry. Some material was also used from the Ball textbook map. As the Tro textbook map did not have any end of chapter exercises, these were taken from other textbooks, in many cases general chemistry textbooks.

This page titled For the Instructor is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

Licensing

A detailed breakdown of this resource's licensing can be found in ***Back Matter/Detailed Licensing***.

This page titled Licensing is shared under a Public Domain license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

For the Student

In addition to being free, there are a few other reasons why this textbook might be preferable to a commercial textbook. The content covered in this book is the same as what would be covered in a commercial textbook, but the presentation is different in ways which could be beneficial to students who are familiar with the Internet. As you complete the information in one section or subsection, you can click on a link to move forward to the next page or to go back if you think you need further understanding. This will be helpful to navigating the text, but it is also important to understand the overall organization of it as detailed in the following paragraphs.

In general, the chapter headings will give you an indication of how each chapter is organized around sections and sometimes subsections. If a section has subsections, there will be some additional information there as well related to this organization. The book is organized in this way so that you have an understanding going into each section where to break before continuing on to the next material. In general, the material within a single section will be related and should be mastered before moving on to the next section. Sometimes the next section requires that you know the information in the preceding section.

Because there is no limit on the length of an online textbook, redundant information was included so that you have as much information as you need. In some cases there will be redundant information in adjacent sections. Generally when this happens, there is a series of subsections that go into more detail followed by a section with more condensed information. Your professor might prefer you reading one of the sections to the other, depending upon how much time is devoted to this information in your class.

Throughout the textbook you will find several hyperlinks to either other parts of this book or to other books. If the link is to another part of this book, it is either a reminder of when relevant material had been covered earlier in the course or a precursor to material which will be covered later. The most common case where a link goes to a separate textbook is within the homework sets. Homework sets have often been curated from other textbooks than much of the chapter content. These links should be treated as additional information which could be helpful in solving some of the homework problems if you find that this text does not help you with those problems. At the same time, there may be homework questions which are beyond the scope of this text, so please check with your professor on whether or not those particular questions are important for you to master.

Often times these hyperlinks will link back to previous content which is necessary to understand for the new material being presented. Sometimes this material is presented in a different order than many commercial textbooks, by breaking up some of the more difficult concepts across several chapters. You can think of this method of learning kind of like climbing a mountain: for the really steep parts we try to use switchbacks. If it's more convenient for you to learn all of this knowledge at once instead of getting an initial taste and then coming back to it later, there will be hyperlinks helping you to find that information when it is presented in this way.

Finally, you should know that there are points within this textbook at which you will be expected to come up with some ideas before moving forward. It is in your best interest to do this, as often the ideas you come up with are things that you will understand better than the ideas which somebody else comes up with.

This page titled For the Student is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

HOW SCIENCE WORKS

Prior to introducing the specific discipline of chemistry, it might be useful to have some general knowledge about the broader field of science. In the first subsection you will see some definitions of words that are used in science. In the second subsection you will see how these words fit together in a process called the scientific method.

0.1: Hypothesis, Theories, and Laws

0.2: The Scientific Method - How Chemists Think

This page titled How Science Works is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

0.1: Hypothesis, Theories, and Laws

Learning Objectives

- Describe the difference between hypothesis and theory as scientific terms.
- Describe the difference between a theory and scientific law.

Although many have taken science classes throughout the course of their studies, people often have incorrect or misleading ideas about some of the most important and basic principles in science. Most students have heard of hypotheses, theories, and laws, but what do these terms really mean? Prior to reading this section, consider what you have learned about these terms before. What do these terms mean to you? What do you read that contradicts or supports what you thought?

What is a Fact?

A fact is a basic statement established by experiment or observation. All facts are true under the specific conditions of the observation.

What is a Hypothesis?

One of the most common terms used in science classes is a "hypothesis". The word can have many different definitions, depending on the context in which it is being used:

- An educated guess: a scientific hypothesis provides a suggested solution based on evidence.
- Prediction: if you have ever carried out a science experiment, you probably made this type of hypothesis when you predicted the outcome of your experiment.
- Tentative or proposed explanation: hypotheses can be suggestions about why something is observed. In order for it to be scientific, however, a scientist must be able to test the explanation to see if it works and if it is able to correctly predict what will happen in a situation. For example, "if my hypothesis is correct, we should see ___ result when we perform ___ test."

  A hypothesis is very tentative; it can be easily changed.

What is a Theory?

The *United States National Academy of Sciences* describes what a theory is as follows:

> "Some scientific explanations are so well established that no new evidence is likely to alter them. The explanation becomes a scientific theory. In everyday language a theory means a hunch or speculation. Not so in science. In science, the word **theory** refers to a comprehensive explanation of an important feature of nature supported by facts gathered over time. Theories also allow scientists to make predictions about as yet unobserved phenomena."
>
> "A scientific theory is a well-substantiated explanation of some aspect of the natural world, based on a body of facts that have been repeatedly confirmed through observation and experimentation. Such fact-supported theories are not "guesses" but reliable accounts of the real world. The theory of biological evolution is more than "just a theory." It is as factual an explanation of the universe as the atomic theory of matter (stating that everything is made of atoms) or the germ theory of disease (which states that many diseases are caused by germs). Our understanding of gravity is still a work in progress. But the phenomenon of gravity, like evolution, is an accepted fact.

Note some key features of theories that are important to understand from this description:

- Theories are explanations of natural phenomena. They aren't predictions (although we may use theories to make predictions). They are explanations as to why we observe something.
- Theories aren't likely to change. They have a large amount of support and are able to satisfactorily explain numerous

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

observations. Theories can, indeed, be facts. Theories can change, but it is a long and difficult process. In order for a theory to change, there must be many observations or pieces of evidence that the theory cannot explain.
- Theories are not guesses. The phrase "just a theory" has no room in science. To be a scientific theory carries a lot of weight; it is not just one person's idea about something

  Theories aren't likely to change.

What is a Law?

Scientific laws are similar to scientific theories in that they are principles that can be used to predict the behavior of the natural world. Both scientific laws and scientific theories are typically well-supported by observations and/or experimental evidence. Usually scientific laws refer to rules for how nature will behave under certain conditions, frequently written as an equation. Scientific theories are more overarching explanations of how nature works and why it exhibits certain characteristics. As a comparison, theories explain why we observe what we do and laws describe what happens.

For example, around the year 1800, Jacques Charles and other scientists were working with gases to, among other reasons, improve the design of the hot air balloon. These scientists found, after many, many tests, that certain patterns existed in the observations on gas behavior. If the temperature of the gas is increased, the volume of the gas increased. This is known as a natural law. A law is a relationship that exists between variables in a group of data. Laws describe the patterns we see in large amounts of data, but do not describe why the patterns exist.

What is a Belief?

A **belief** is a statement that is not scientifically provable. Beliefs may or may not be incorrect; they just are outside the realm of science to explore.

Laws vs. Theories

A common misconception is that scientific theories are rudimentary ideas that will eventually graduate into scientific laws when enough data and evidence has accumulated. A theory does not change into a scientific law with the accumulation of new or better evidence. Remember, **theories are explanations** and **laws are patterns** we see in large amounts of data, frequently written as an equation. A theory will always remain a theory; a law will always remain a law.

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Video 0.1.1: What's the difference between a scientific law and theory?

Summary

- A hypothesis is a tentative explanation that can be tested by further investigation.
- A theory is a well-supported explanation of observations.
- A scientific law is a statement that summarizes the relationship between variables.
- An experiment is a controlled method of testing a hypothesis.

This page titled 0.1: Hypothesis, Theories, and Laws is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 1.6: Hypothesis, Theories, and Laws by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

0.2: The Scientific Method - How Chemists Think

Learning Objectives

- Identify the components of the scientific method.

Scientists search for answers to questions and solutions to problems by using a procedure called the scientific method. This procedure consists of making observations, formulating hypotheses, and designing experiments; which leads to additional observations, hypotheses, and experiments in repeated cycles (Figure 0.2.1).

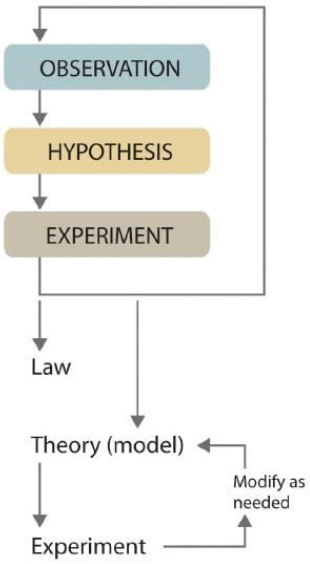


Figure 0.2.1: The Steps in the Scientific Method.

Step 1: Make observations

Observations can be qualitative or quantitative. **Qualitative observations** describe properties or occurrences in ways that do not rely on numbers. Examples of qualitative observations include the following: "the outside air temperature is cooler during the winter season," "table salt is a crystalline solid," "sulfur crystals are yellow," and "dissolving a penny in dilute nitric acid forms a blue solution and a brown gas." **Quantitative observations** are measurements, which by definition consist of both a number and a unit. Examples of quantitative observations include the following: "the melting point of crystalline sulfur is 115.21° Celsius," and "35.9 grams of table salt—the chemical name of which is sodium chloride—dissolve in 100 grams of water at 20° Celsius." For the question of the dinosaurs' extinction, the initial observation was quantitative: iridium concentrations in sediments dating to 66 million years ago were 20–160 times higher than normal.

Step 2: Formulate a hypothesis

After deciding to learn more about an observation or a set of observations, scientists generally begin an investigation by forming a hypothesis, a tentative explanation for the observation(s). The hypothesis may not be correct, but it puts the scientist's understanding of the system being studied into a form that can be tested. For example, the observation that we experience alternating periods of light and darkness corresponding to observed movements of the sun, moon, clouds, and shadows is consistent with either one of two hypotheses:

a. Earth rotates on its axis every 24 hours, alternately exposing one side to the sun.
b. The sun revolves around Earth every 24 hours.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Suitable experiments can be designed to choose between these two alternatives. For the disappearance of the dinosaurs, the hypothesis was that the impact of a large extraterrestrial object caused their extinction. Unfortunately (or perhaps fortunately), this hypothesis does not lend itself to direct testing by any obvious experiment, but scientists can collect additional data that either support or refute it.

Step 3: Design and perform experiments

After a hypothesis has been formed, scientists conduct experiments to test its validity. Experiments are systematic observations or measurements, preferably made under controlled conditions—that is—under conditions in which a single variable changes.

Step 4: Accept or modify the hypothesis

A properly designed and executed experiment enables a scientist to determine whether or not the original hypothesis is valid. If the hypothesis is valid, the scientist can proceed to step 5. In other cases, experiments often demonstrate that the hypothesis is incorrect or that it must be modified and requires further experimentation.

Step 5: Development into a law and/or theory

More experimental data are then collected and analyzed, at which point a scientist may begin to think that the results are sufficiently reproducible (i.e., dependable) to merit being summarized in a law, a verbal or mathematical description of a phenomenon that allows for general predictions. A law simply states what happens; it does not address the question of why.

One example of a law, the law of definite proportions, which was discovered by the French scientist Joseph Proust (1754–1826), states that a chemical substance always contains the same proportions of elements by mass. Thus, sodium chloride (table salt) always contains the same proportion by mass of sodium to chlorine, in this case 39.34% sodium and 60.66% chlorine by mass, and sucrose (table sugar) is always 42.11% carbon, 6.48% hydrogen, and 51.41% oxygen by mass.

Whereas a law states only what happens, a theory attempts to explain why nature behaves as it does. Laws are unlikely to change greatly over time unless a major experimental error is discovered. In contrast, a theory, by definition, is incomplete and imperfect, evolving with time to explain new facts as they are discovered.

Because scientists can enter the cycle shown in Figure $0.2.1$ at any point, the actual application of the scientific method to different topics can take many different forms. For example, a scientist may start with a hypothesis formed by reading about work done by others in the field, rather than by making direct observations.

Example $0.2.1$

Classify each statement as a law, a theory, an experiment, a hypothesis, an observation.

a. Ice always floats on liquid water.
b. Birds evolved from dinosaurs.
c. Hot air is less dense than cold air, probably because the components of hot air are moving more rapidly.
d. When 10 g of ice were added to 100 mL of water at 25°C, the temperature of the water decreased to 15.5°C after the ice melted.
e. The ingredients of Ivory soap were analyzed to see whether it really is 99.44% pure, as advertised.

Solution

a. This is a general statement of a relationship between the properties of liquid and solid water, so it is a law.
b. This is a possible explanation for the origin of birds, so it is a hypothesis.
c. This is a statement that tries to explain the relationship between the temperature and the density of air based on fundamental principles, so it is a theory.
d. The temperature is measured before and after a change is made in a system, so these are observations.
e. This is an analysis designed to test a hypothesis (in this case, the manufacturer's claim of purity), so it is an experiment.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CC BY NC SA
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Exercise 0.2.1

Classify each statement as a law, a theory, an experiment, a hypothesis, a qualitative observation, or a quantitative observation.

a. Measured amounts of acid were added to a Rolaids tablet to see whether it really "consumes 47 times its weight in excess stomach acid."
b. Heat always flows from hot objects to cooler ones, not in the opposite direction.
c. The universe was formed by a massive explosion that propelled matter into a vacuum.
d. Michael Jordan is the greatest pure shooter to ever play professional basketball.
e. Limestone is relatively insoluble in water, but dissolves readily in dilute acid with the evolution of a gas.

Answer a available at the end of this section.

Summary

The scientific method is a method of investigation involving experimentation and observation to acquire new knowledge, solve problems, and answer questions. The key steps in the scientific method include the following:

- Step 1: Make observations.
- Step 2: Formulate a hypothesis.
- Step 3: Test the hypothesis through experimentation.
- Step 4: Accept or modify the hypothesis.
- Step 5: Develop into a law and/or a theory.

Answers

Exercise 0.2.1

experiment
law
theory
hypothesis
observation

This page titled 0.2: The Scientific Method - How Chemists Think is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 1.3: The Scientific Method - How Chemists Think by Marisa Alviar-Agnew and Henry Agnew is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

1: BASICS OF MEASUREMENT

Measurements are one of the most important things to understand in chemistry as well as other physical sciences. Measurements are not only important in science, but in many fields of work which depend upon science including agriculture, medicine, and other health related fields. In all of these fields, workers are routinely measuring things and reading measured amounts: the area of a plot of land, the weight of a patient, the concentration of a medication, the volume of a measuring device. Misunderstandings of measurement could result in catastrophe in any of these areas. (in fact, miscalculations related to measurements were responsible for several tragedies including a very expensive Mars mission.) There are several important things to understand related to measurements: what they are, their precision, and how to perform calculations with measured numbers. Section 1.1 discusses measurements in terms of numbers and units. Section 1.2 discusses how we explain precision when we report measurements. Section 1.3 discusses how we can use the units of measurements to correctly perform the types of calculations that will be important in this course, and in applications which you will use in whatever field you go into.

1.1: Taking Measurements- Numbers and Units

1.1.1: Scientific Notation - Writing Large and Small Numbers

1.1.2: The Basic Units of Measurement

1.2: Significant Figures

1.2.1: Significant Figures - Writing Numbers to Reflect Precision

1.2.2: Significant Figures in Calculations

1.3: Conversions

1.3.1: Problem Solving and Unit Conversions

1.3.2: Solving Multi-step Conversion Problems

1.3.3: Units Raised to a Power

1.E: Measurements (Exercises)

This page titled 1: Basics of Measurement is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

1.1: TAKING MEASUREMENTS- NUMBERS AND UNITS

Learning Objectives

- Express quantities properly, using a number and a unit.

A coffee maker's instructions tell you to fill the coffee pot with 4 cups of water and to use 3 scoops of coffee. When you follow these instructions, you are measuring. When you visit a doctor's office, a nurse checks your temperature, height, weight, and perhaps blood pressure (Figure 1.1.1); the nurse is also measuring.



Figure 1.1.1: Measuring Blood Pressure. A nurse or a doctor measuring a patient's blood pressure is taking a measurement. (GFDL; Pia von Lützau).

Chemists measure the properties of matter and express these measurements as quantities. A quantity is an amount of something and consists of a number and a unit. The number tells us how many (or how much), and the unit tells us what the scale of measurement is. For example, when a distance is reported as "5 kilometers," we know that the quantity has been expressed in units of kilometers and that the number of kilometers is 5. If you ask a friend how far they walk from home to school, and the friend answers "12" without specifying a unit, you do not know whether your friend walks 12 kilometers, 12 miles, 12 furlongs, or 12 yards. *Both a number and a unit must be included to express a quantity properly.*

To understand chemistry, we need a clear understanding of the units chemists work with and the rules they follow for expressing numbers. The next two sections examine the rules for expressing numbers.

Example 1.1.1

Identify the number and the unit in each quantity.

a. one dozen eggs
b. 2.54 centimeters
c. a box of pencils
d. 88 meters per second

Solution

a. The number is one, and the unit is a dozen eggs.
b. The number is 2.54, and the unit is centimeter.
c. The number 1 is implied because the quantity is only *a* box. The unit is box of pencils.
d. The number is 88, and the unit is meters per second. Note that in this case the unit is actually a combination of two units: meters and seconds.

Key Take Away

- Identify a quantity properly with a number and a unit.

1.1.1: Scientific Notation - Writing Large and Small Numbers

1.1.2: The Basic Units of Measurement

This page titled 1.1: Taking Measurements- Numbers and Units is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 2.1: Taking Measurements by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

1.1.1: Scientific Notation - Writing Large and Small Numbers

Learning Objectives

- Express a large number or a small number in scientific notation.
- Carry out arithmetical operations and express the final answer in scientific notation

Chemists often work with numbers that are exceedingly large or small. For example, entering the mass in grams of a hydrogen atom into a calculator would require a display with at least 24 decimal places. A system called **scientific notation** avoids much of the tedium and awkwardness of manipulating numbers with large or small magnitudes. In scientific notation, these numbers are expressed in the form

$$N \times 10^n$$

where N is greater than or equal to 1 and less than 10 ($1 \leq N < 10$), and n is a positive or negative integer ($10^0 = 1$). The number 10 is called the base because it is this number that is raised to the power n. Although a base number may have values other than 10, the base number in scientific notation is always 10.

A simple way to convert numbers to scientific notation is to move the decimal point as many places to the left or right as needed to give a number from 1 to 10 (N). The magnitude of n is then determined as follows:

- If the decimal point is moved to the left n places, n is positive.
- If the decimal point is moved to the right n places, n is negative.

Another way to remember this is to recognize that as the number N decreases in magnitude, the exponent increases and vice versa. The application of this rule is illustrated in Example 1.1.1.1.

Example 1.1.1.1: Expressing Numbers in Scientific Notation

Convert each number to scientific notation.

a. 637.8
b. 0.0479
c. 7.86
d. 12,378
e. 0.00032
f. 61.06700
g. 2002.080
h. 0.01020

Solution

Solutions to Example 2.2.1

	Explanation	Answer
a	To convert 637.8 to a number from 1 to 10, we move the decimal point two places to the left: 637.8 Because the decimal point was moved two places to the left, n = 2.	6.378×10^2

	Explanation	Answer
b	To convert 0.0479 to a number from 1 to 10, we move the decimal point two places to the right: 0.0479 Because the decimal point was moved two places to the right, n = –2.	4.79×10^{-2}
c	This is usually expressed simply as 7.86. (Recall that $10^0 = 1$.)	7.86×10^{0}
d	Because the decimal point was moved four places to the left, n = 4.	1.2378×10^{4}
e	Because the decimal point was moved four places to the right, n = –4.	3.2×10^{-4}
f	Because the decimal point was moved one place to the left, n = 1.	6.106700×10^{1}
g	Because the decimal point was moved three places to the left, n = 3.	2.002080×10^{3}
h	Because the decimal point was moved two places to the right, n = -2.	1.020×10^{-2}

Addition and Subtraction

Before numbers expressed in scientific notation can be added or subtracted, they must be converted to a form in which all the exponents have the same value. The appropriate operation is then carried out on the values of N. Example $1.1.1.2$ illustrates how to do this.

Example $1.1.1.2$: Expressing Sums and Differences in Scientific Notation

Carry out the appropriate operation and then express the answer in scientific notation.

a. $(1.36 \times 10^2) + (4.73 \times 10^3)$
b. $(6.923 \times 10^{-3}) - (8.756 \times 10^{-4})$

Solution

Solutions to Example 2.2.2.

	Explanation	Answer
a	Both exponents must have the same value, so these numbers are converted to either $(1.36 \times 10^2) + (47.3 \times 10^2) =$ $(1.36 + 47.3) \times 10^2 = 48.66 \times 10^2$ or $(0.136 \times 10^3) + (4.73 \times 10^3) =$ $(0.136 + 4.73) \times 10^3) = 4.87 \times 10^3$. Choosing either alternative gives the same answer, reported to two decimal places. In converting 48.66 × 10^2 to scientific notation, n has become more positive by 1 because the value of N has decreased.	4.87×10^3

	Explanation	Answer
b	Converting the exponents to the same value gives either $(6.923 \times 10^{-3}) - (0.8756 \times 10^{-3}) =$ $(6.923 - 0.8756) \times 10^{-3}$ or $(69.23 \times 10^{-4}) - (8.756 \times 10^{-4}) =$ $(69.23 - 8.756) \times 10^{-4} = 60.474 \times 10^{-4}$. In converting 60.474×10^{-4} to scientific notation, n has become more positive by 1 because the value of N has decreased.	6.047×10^{-3}

Multiplication and Division

When multiplying numbers expressed in scientific notation, we multiply the values of N and add together the values of n. Conversely, when dividing, we divide N in the dividend (the number being divided) by N in the divisor (the number by which we are dividing) and then subtract n in the divisor from n in the dividend. In contrast to addition and subtraction, the exponents do not have to be the same in multiplication and division. Examples of problems involving multiplication and division are shown in Example 1.1.1.3.

Example 1.1.1.3: Expressing Products and Quotients in Scientific Notation

Perform the appropriate operation and express your answer in scientific notation.

a. $(6.022 \times 10^{23})(6.42 \times 10^{-2})$
b. $\dfrac{1.67 \times 10^{-24}}{9.12 \times 10^{-28}}$
c. $\dfrac{(6.63 \times 10^{-34})(6.0 \times 10)}{8.52 \times 10^{-2}}$

Solution

Solution to Example 2.2.3

	Explanation	Answer
a	In multiplication, we add the exponents: $(6.022 \times 10^{23})(6.42 \times 10^{-2}) = (6.022)(6.42) \times 10^{[23+(-2)]} = 38.7 \times 10^{21}$ In converting 38.7×10^{21} to scientific notation, n has become more positive by 1 because the value of N has decreased.	3.87×10^{22}

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CC BY NC SA
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

	Explanation	
b	In division, we subtract the exponents: $\frac{1.67\times10^{-24}}{9.12\times10^{-28}} =$ $\frac{1.67}{9.12} \times 10^{[-24-(-28)]} = 0.183 \times 10^4$ In converting 0.183×10^4 to scientific notation, n has become more negative by 1 because the value of N has increased.	1.83 $\times 10^3$
c	This problem has both multiplication and division: $\frac{(6.63\times10^{-34})(6.0\times10)}{(8.52\times10^{-2})} =$ $\frac{39.78}{8.52} \times 10^{[-34+1-(-2)]}$	4.7 $\times 10^{-31}$

This page titled 1.1.1: Scientific Notation - Writing Large and Small Numbers is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 2.2: Scientific Notation - Writing Large and Small Numbers by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

1.1.2: The Basic Units of Measurement

Learning Objectives

- State the different measurement systems used in chemistry.
- Describe how prefixes are used in the metric system and identify how the prefixes milli-, centi-, and kilo- compare to the base unit.

How long is a yard? It depends on whom you ask and when you asked the question. Today we have a standard definition of the yard, which you can see marked on every football field. If you move the ball ten yards, you get a first down and it does not matter whether you are playing in Los Angeles, Dallas, or Green Bay. But at one time that yard was arbitrarily defined as the distance from the tip of the king's nose to the end of his outstretched hand. Of course, the problem there is simple: new king, new distance (and then you have to re-mark all of those football fields).

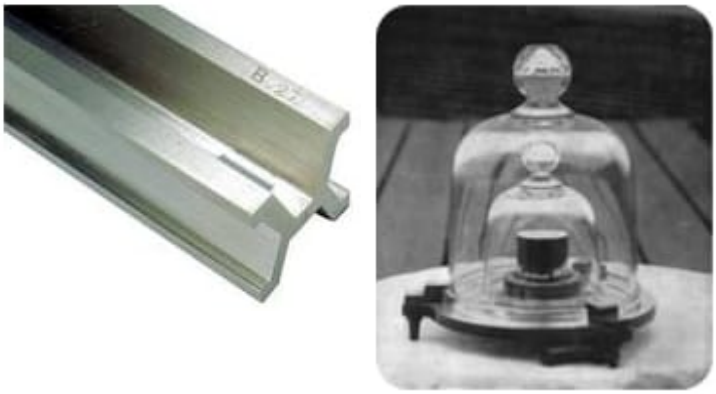


Figure 1.1.2.1: Meter standard (left) and Kilogram standard (right).

SI Base Units

All measurements depend on the use of units that are well known and understood. The **English system** of measurement units (inches, feet, ounces, etc.) are not used in science because of the difficulty in converting from one unit to another. The **metric system** is used because all metric units are based on multiples of 10, making conversions very simple. The metric system was originally established in France in 1795. **The International System of Units** is a system of measurement based on the metric system. The acronym **SI** is commonly used to refer to this system and stands for the French term, *Le Système International d'Unités*. The SI was adopted by international agreement in 1960 and is composed of seven base units in Table 1.1.2.1.

Table 1.1.2.1: SI Base Units of Measurement

Quantity	SI Base Unit	Symbol
Length	meter	m
Mass	kilogram	kg
Temperature	kelvin	K
Time	second	s
Amount of a Substance	mole	mol
Electric Current	ampere	A
Luminous Intensity	candela	cd

The first units are frequently encountered in chemistry. All other measurement quantities, such as volume, force, and energy, can be derived from these seven base units.

Unfortunately, the Metric System is Not Ubiquitous

The map below shows the adoption of the SI units in countries around the world. The United States has legally adopted the metric system for measurements, but does not use it in everyday practice. Great Britain and much of Canada use a combination of metric and imperial units.

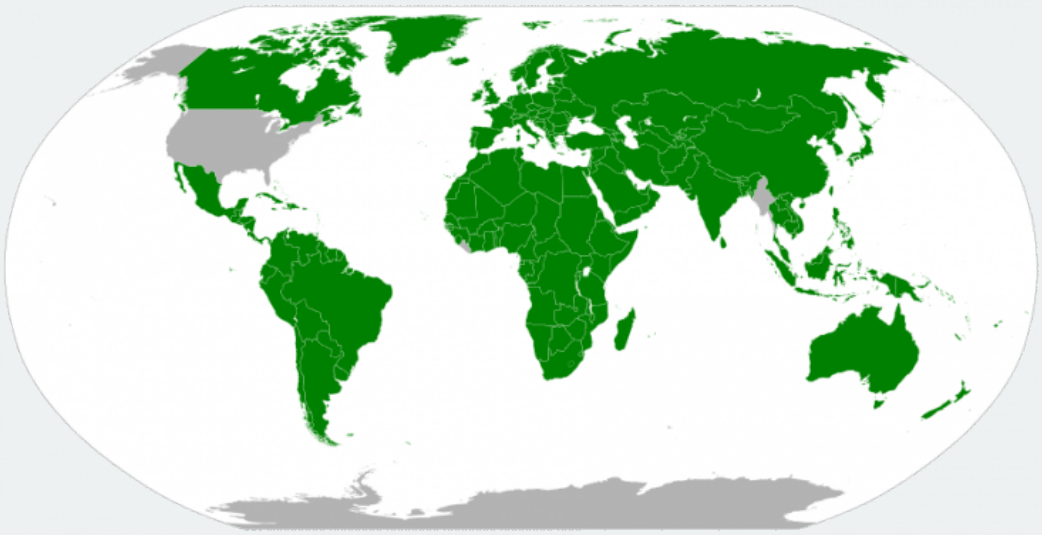


Figure 1.1.2.1: Areas of world using metric system (in green). Only a few countries are slow or resistant to adoption including the United States.

Prefix Multipliers

Conversions between metric system units are straightforward because the system is based on powers of ten. For example, meters, centimeters, and millimeters are all metric units of length. There are 10 millimeters in 1 centimeter and 100 centimeters in 1 meter. **Metric prefixes** are used to distinguish between units of different size. These prefixes all derive from either Latin or Greek terms. For example, *mega* comes from the Greek word $\mu\varepsilon\gamma\alpha\varsigma$, meaning "great". Table 1.1.2.2 lists the most common metric prefixes and their relationship to the central unit that has no prefix. Length is used as an example to demonstrate the relative size of each prefixed unit.

Table 1.1.2.2: SI Prefixes

Prefix	Unit Abbreviation	Meaning	Example
giga	G	1,000,000,000	1 gigameter $(\mathrm{Gm}) = 10^9\ \mathrm{m}$
mega	M	1,000,000	1 megameter $(\mathrm{Mm}) = 10^6\ \mathrm{m}$
kilo	k	1,000	1 kilometer $(\mathrm{km}) = 1,000\ \mathrm{m}$
hecto	h	100	1 hectometer $(\mathrm{hm}) = 100\ \mathrm{m}$
deka	da	10	1 dekameter $(\mathrm{dam}) = 10\ \mathrm{m}$
		1	1 meter (m)
deci	d	1/10	1 decimeter $(\mathrm{dm}) = 0.1\ \mathrm{m}$
centi	c	1/100	1 centimeter $(\mathrm{cm}) = 0.01\ \mathrm{m}$
milli	m	1/1,000	1 millimeter $(\mathrm{mm}) = 0.001\ \mathrm{m}$

Prefix	Unit Abbreviation	Meaning	Example
micro	μ	1/1,000,000	1 micrometer $(\mu\text{m}) = 10^{-6}$ m
nano	n	1/1,000,000,000	1 nanometer $(\text{nm}) = 10^{-9}$ m
pico	p	1/1,000,000,000,000	1 picometer $(\text{pm}) = 10^{-12}$ m

There are a couple of odd little practices with the use of metric abbreviations. Most abbreviations are lowercase. We use "m" for meter and not "M". However, when it comes to volume, the base unit "liter" is abbreviated as "L" and not "l". So we would write 3.5 milliliters as 3.5 mL.

As a practical matter, whenever possible you should express the units in a small and manageable number. If you are measuring the weight of a material that weighs 6.5 kg, this is easier than saying it weighs 6500 g or 0.65 dag. All three are correct, but the kg units in this case make for a small and easily managed number. However, if a specific problem needs grams instead of kilograms, go with the grams for consistency.

Example 1.1.2.1: Unit Abbreviations

Give the abbreviation for each unit and define the abbreviation in terms of the base unit.

a. kiloliter
b. microsecond
c. decimeter
d. nanogram

Solutions

Solutions to Example 2.5.1

	Explanation	Answer
a	The prefix kilo means "1,000 ×," so 1 kL equals 1,000 L.	kL
b	The prefix micro implies 1/1,000,000th of a unit, so 1 µs equals 0.000001 s.	µs
c	The prefix deci means 1/10th, so 1 dm equals 0.1 m.	dm
d	The prefix nano means 1/1000000000, so a nanogram is equal to 0.000000001 g.	ng

Exercise 1.1.2.1

Give the abbreviation for each unit and define the abbreviation in terms of the base unit.

a. kilometer
b. milligram
c. nanosecond
d. centiliter

Answer a: available at the end of this section.

Answer b: available at the end of this section.

Answer c: available at the end of this section.

Answer d: available at the end of this section.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Summary

- Metric prefixes derive from Latin or Greek terms. The prefixes are used to make the units manageable.
- The SI system is based on multiples of ten. There are seven basic units in the SI system. Five of these units are commonly used in chemistry.

Answers

Exercise 1.1.2.1

km

Exercise 1.1.2.1

mg

Exercise 1.1.2.1

ns

Exercise 1.1.2.1

cL

This page titled 1.1.2: The Basic Units of Measurement is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 2.5: The Basic Units of Measurement by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

1.2: SIGNIFICANT FIGURES

In addition to a number and unit, it is also important to consider significant figures when reporting or reading a measurement. Significant figures tell us something about the precision with which a measurement was made. Precision can be very important in some situations, so we like to have a way of knowing how precise a particular measurement was. For example, a parent may pour a glass of water for their child and also pour them some medication. Hopefully the parent is using more precision when measuring the medication compared to measuring the water! Significant figures are how we keep track of this kind of precision in science. We will first discuss how to read the significant figures on a measurement correctly. Then we will discuss how to correctly report the significant figures after perform mathematical operations involving measured numbers.

1.2.1: Significant Figures - Writing Numbers to Reflect Precision

1.2.2: Significant Figures in Calculations

This page titled 1.2: Significant Figures is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

1.2.1: Significant Figures - Writing Numbers to Reflect Precision

Learning Objectives

- Identify the number of significant figures in a reported value.

The **significant figures** in a measurement consist of all the certain digits in that measurement plus one uncertain or estimated digit. In the ruler illustration below, the bottom ruler gave a length with 2 significant figures, while the top ruler gave a length with 3 significant figures. In a correctly reported measurement, the final digit is significant but not certain. Insignificant digits are not reported. With either ruler, it would not be possible to report the length at $2.553\ \text{cm}$ as there is no possible way that the thousandths digit could be estimated. The 3 is not significant and would not be reported.

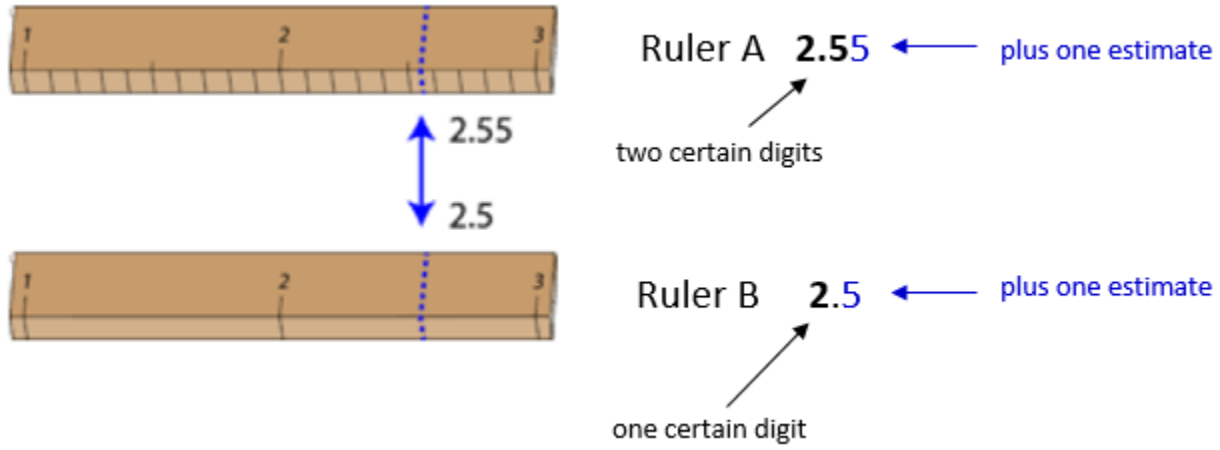


Figure 1.2.1.1: Measurement with two different rulers. Ruler A's measurement can be rounded to 2.55, with 2 certain digits, while Ruler B's measurement of 2.5 has 1 certain digit

Measurement Uncertainty

Some error or **uncertainty** always exists in any measurement. The amount of uncertainty depends both upon the skill of the measurer and upon the quality of the measuring tool. While some balances are capable of measuring masses only to the nearest $0.1\ \text{g}$, other highly sensitive balances are capable of measuring to the nearest $0.001\ \text{g}$ or even better. Many measuring tools such as rulers and graduated cylinders have small lines which need to be carefully read in order to make a measurement. Figure 1.2.1.1 shows two rulers making the same measurement of an object (indicated by the blue arrow).

With either ruler, it is clear that the length of the object is between 2 and $3\ \text{cm}$. The bottom ruler contains no millimeter markings. With that ruler, the tenths digit can be estimated and the length may be reported as $2.5\ \text{cm}$. However, another person may judge that the measurement is $2.4\ \text{cm}$ or perhaps $2.6\ \text{cm}$. While the 2 is known for certain, the value of the tenths digit is uncertain.

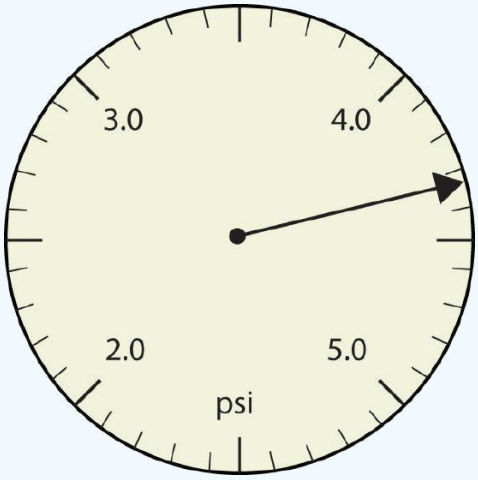
The top ruler contains marks for tenths of a centimeter (millimeters). Now the same object may be measured as $2.55\ \text{cm}$. The measurer is capable of estimating the hundredths digit because he can be certain that the tenths digit is a 5. Again, another measurer may report the length to be $2.54\ \text{cm}$ or $2.56\ \text{cm}$. In this case, there are two certain digits (the 2 and the 5), with the hundredths digit being uncertain. Clearly, the top ruler is a superior ruler for measuring lengths as precisely as possible.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CC BY NC SA
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

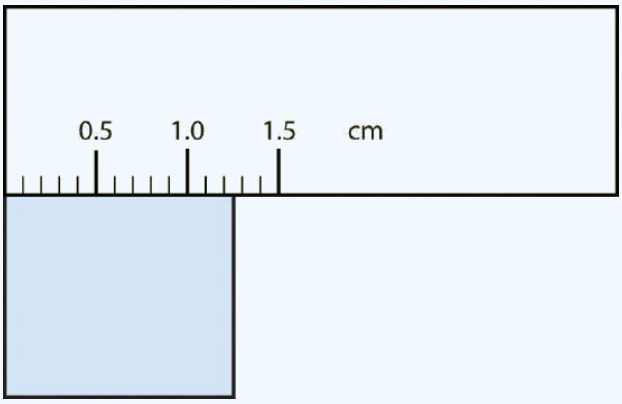
Example 1.2.1.1: Reporting Measurements to the Proper Number of Significant Figures

Use each diagram to report a measurement to the proper number of significant figures.

a.



b.



Ruler measuring a rectangle in units of centimeters, with the rectangle's edge between 1.2 and 1.3 cm marks

Solutions

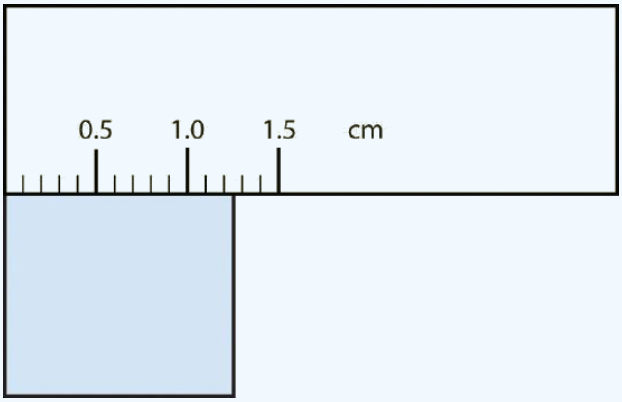
Solutions to Example 2.3.1

	Explanation	Answer
a.	The arrow is between 4.0 and 5.0, so the measurement is at least 4.0. The arrow is between the third and fourth small tick marks, so it's at least 0.3. We will have to estimate the last place. It looks like about one-third of the way across the space, so let us estimate the hundredths place as 3. The symbol psi stands for "pounds per square inch" and is a unit of pressure, like air in a tire. The measurement is reported to three significant figures.	4.33 psi
b.	The rectangle is at least 1.0 cm wide but certainly not 2.0 cm wide, so the first significant digit is 1. The rectangle's width is past the second tick mark but not the third; if each tick mark represents 0.1, then the rectangle is at least 0.2 in the next significant digit. We have to estimate the next place because there are no markings to guide us. It appears to be about halfway between 0.2 and 0.3, so we will estimate the next place to be a 5. Thus, the measured width of the rectangle is 1.25 cm. The measurement is reported to three significant figures.	1.25 cm

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CC BY NC SA
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Exercise 1.2.1.1

What would be the reported width of this rectangle?



Answer available at the end of this section.

When you look at a reported measurement, it is necessary to be able to count the number of significant figures. The table below details the rules for determining the number of significant figures in a reported measurement. For the examples in the table, assume that the quantities are correctly reported values of a measured quantity.

Table 1.2.1.1: Significant Figure Rules

Rule	Examples
1. All nonzero digits in a measurement are significant.	• 237 has three significant figures. • 1.897 has four significant figures.
2. Zeros that appear between other nonzero digits (middle zeros) are always significant.	• 39,004 has five significant figures. • 5.02 has three significant figures.
3. Zeros that appear in front of all of the nonzero digits are called leading zeros. Leading zeros are never significant.	• 0.008 has one significant figure. • 0.000416 has three significant figures.

Rule	Examples
4. Zeros that appear after all nonzero digits are called trailing zeros. A number with trailing zeros that lacks a decimal point may or may not be significant. **Use scientific notation to indicate the appropriate number of significant figures.**	• 1400 is ambiguous. ◦ 1.4×10^3 has two significant figures. ◦ 1.40×10^3 three significant figures. ◦ 1.400×10^3 has four significant figures.
5. Trailing zeros in a number with a decimal point are significant. This is true whether the zeros occur before or after the decimal point.	• 620.0 has four significant figures. • 19.000 has five significant figures.

Exact Numbers

Integers obtained either by counting objects or from definitions are exact numbers, which are considered to have infinitely many significant figures. If we have counted four objects, for example, then the number 4 has an infinite number of significant figures (i.e., it represents 4.000...). Similarly, 1 foot (ft) is defined to contain 12 inches (in), so the number 12 in the following equation has infinitely many significant figures:

Example 1.2.1.2

Give the number of significant figures in each. Identify the rule for each.

a. 5.87
b. 0.031
c. 52.90
d. 00.2001
e. 500
f. 6 atoms

Solution

Solution to Example 2.3.2

	Explanation	Answer
a	All three numbers are significant (rule 1).	5.87, three significant figures
b	The leading zeros are not significant (rule 3). The 3 and the 1 are significant (rule 1).	0.031, two significant figures

	Explanation	Answer
c	The 5, the 2 and the 9 are significant (rule 1). The trailing zero is also significant (rule 5).	52.90, four significant figures
d	The leading zeros are not significant (rule 3). The 2 and the 1 are significant (rule 1) and the middle zeros are also significant (rule 2).	00.2001, four significant figures
e	The number is ambiguous. It could have one, two or three significant figures.	500, ambiguous
f	The 6 is a counting number. A counting number is an exact number.	6, infinite

Exercise 1.2.1.2

Give the number of significant figures in each.

a. 36.7 m
b. 0.006606 s
c. 2,002 kg
d. 306,490,000 people
e. 3,800 g

Answer a available at the end of this section.

Answer b available at the end of this section.

Answer c available at the end of this section.

Answer d available at the end of this section.

Answer e available at the end of this section.

Accuracy and Precision

Measurements may be accurate, meaning that the measured value is the same as the true value; they may be precise, meaning that multiple measurements give nearly identical values (i.e., reproducible results); they may be both accurate and precise; or they may be neither accurate nor precise. The goal of scientists is to obtain measured values that are both accurate and precise. The video below demonstrates the concepts of accuracy and precision.

YouTube Video

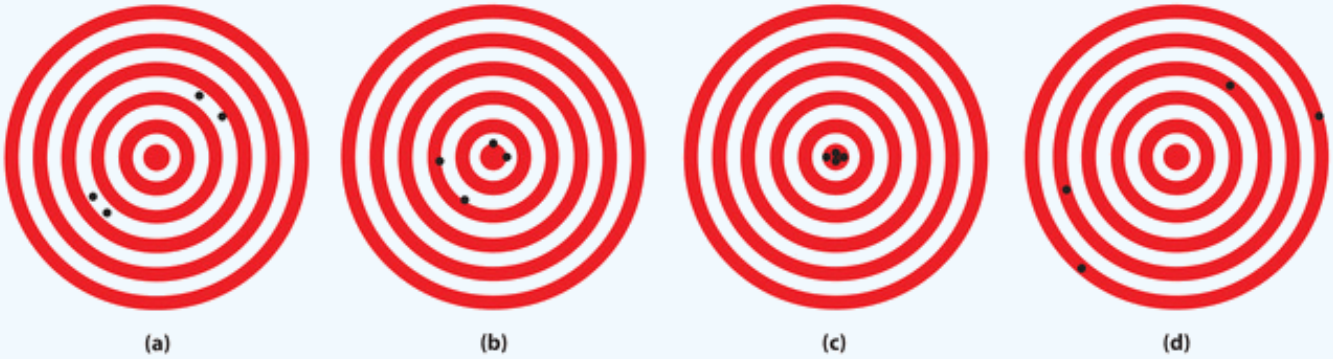
This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Video 1.2.1.1: Difference between precision and accuracy.

Example 1.2.1.3

The following archery targets show marks that represent the results of four sets of measurements.



Which target shows

a. a precise, but inaccurate set of measurements?
b. a set of measurements that is both precise and accurate?
c. a set of measurements that is neither precise nor accurate?

Solution

a. Set **(a)** is precise, but inaccurate.
b. Set **(c)** is both precise and accurate.
c. Set **(d)** is neither precise nor accurate.

Summary

Uncertainty exists in all measurements. The degree of uncertainty is affected in part by the quality of the measuring tool. Significant figures give an indication of the certainty of a measurement. Rules allow decisions to be made about how many digits to use in any given situation.

Answers

Exercise 1.2.1.1
1.25 cm

Exercise 1.2.1.2
three significant figures

Exercise 1.2.1.2
four significant figures

Exercise 1.2.1.2
four significant figures

Exercise 1.2.1.2
infinite (exact number)

Exercise 1.2.1.2
Ambiguous, could be two, three or four significant figures.

This page titled 1.2.1: Significant Figures - Writing Numbers to Reflect Precision is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 2.3: Significant Figures - Writing Numbers to Reflect Precision by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew, Sridhar Budhi is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

1.2.2: Significant Figures in Calculations

Learning Objectives

- Use significant figures correctly in arithmetical operations.

Rounding

Before dealing with the specifics of the rules for determining the significant figures in a calculated result, we need to be able to round numbers correctly. To **round** a number, first decide how many significant figures the number should have. Once you know that, round to that many digits, starting from the left. If the number immediately to the right of the last significant digit is less than 5, it is dropped and the value of the last significant digit remains the same. If the number immediately to the right of the last significant digit is greater than or equal to 5, the last significant digit is increased by 1.

Consider the measurement $207.518\ \text{m}$. Right now, the measurement contains six significant figures. How would we successively round it to fewer and fewer significant figures? Follow the process as outlined in Table $1.2.2.1$.

Table $1.2.2.1$: Rounding examples

Number of Significant Figures	Rounded Value	Reasoning
6	207.518	All digits are significant
5	207.52	8 rounds the 1 up to 2
4	207.5	2 is dropped
3	208	5 rounds the 7 up to 8
2	210	8 is replaced by a 0 and rounds the 0 up to 1
1	200	1 is replaced by a 0

Notice that the more rounding that is done, the less reliable the figure is. An approximate value may be sufficient for some purposes, but scientific work requires a much higher level of detail.

It is important to be aware of significant figures when you are mathematically manipulating numbers. For example, dividing 125 by 307 on a calculator gives 0.4071661238... to an infinite number of digits. But do the digits in this answer have any practical meaning, especially when you are starting with numbers that have only three significant figures each? When performing mathematical operations, there are two rules for limiting the number of significant figures in an answer—one rule is for addition and subtraction, and one rule is for multiplication and division.

> In operations involving significant figures, the answer is reported in such a way that it reflects the reliability of the **least precise** operation. An answer is no more precise than the least precise number used to get the answer.

Multiplication and Division

For multiplication or division, the rule is to count the number of significant figures in each number being multiplied or divided and then limit the significant figures in the answer to the lowest count. An example is as follows:

$$\underbrace{38.65}_{\text{4 sig figs}} \times \underbrace{105.93}_{\text{5 sig figs}} = \underbrace{4{,}094.1945}_{\text{reduce to 4 sig figs}}$$

The final answer, limited to four significant figures, is 4,094. The first digit dropped is 1, so we do not round up.

Scientific notation provides a way of communicating significant figures without ambiguity. You simply include all the significant figures in the leading number. For example, the number 450 has two significant figures and would be written in scientific notation as 4.5×10^2, whereas 450.0 has four significant figures and would be written as 4.500×10^2. In scientific notation, all significant figures are listed explicitly.

Example 1.2.2.1

Write the answer for each expression using scientific notation with the appropriate number of significant figures.

a. 23.096 × 90.300
b. 125 × 9.000

Solution

a

Explanation	Answer
The calculator answer is 2,085.5688, but we need to round it to five significant figures. Because the first digit to be dropped (in the tenths place) is greater than 5, we round up to 2,085.6.	2.0856×10^3

b

Explanation	Answer
The calculator gives 1,125 as the answer, but we limit it to three significant figures.	1.13×10^3

Addition and Subtraction

How are significant figures handled in calculations? It depends on what type of calculation is being performed. If the calculation is an addition or a subtraction, the rule is as follows: limit the reported answer to the rightmost column that all numbers have significant figures in common. For example, if you were to add 1.2 and 4.71, we note that the first number stops its significant figures in the tenths column, while the second number stops its significant figures in the hundredths column. We therefore limit our answer to the tenths column.

$$\begin{array}{r} 1.2 \\ \underline{4.41} \\ 5.61 \end{array}$$

↑ limit final answer to the tenths column: 5.6

We drop the last digit—the 1—because it is not significant to the final answer.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

The dropping of positions in sums and differences brings up the topic of rounding. Although there are several conventions, in this text we will adopt the following rule: the final answer should be rounded up if the first dropped digit is 5 or greater, and rounded down if the first dropped digit is less than 5.

$$\begin{array}{r} 77.2 \\ \underline{10.46} \\ 87.66 \end{array}$$

↑ limit final answer to the tenths column and round up: 87.7

Example 1.2.2.2

a. 13.77 + 908.226
b. 1,027 + 611 + 363.06

Solution

a

Explanation	Answer
The calculator answer is 921.996, but because 13.77 has its farthest-right significant figure in the hundredths place, we need to round the final answer to the hundredths position. Because the first digit to be dropped (in the thousandths place) is greater than 5, we round up to 922.00	$922.00 = 9.2200 \times 10^2$

b

Explanation	Answer
The calculator gives 2,001.06 as the answer, but because 611 and 1027 has its farthest-right significant figure in the ones place, the final answer must be limited to the ones position.	$2,001.06 = 2.001 \times 10^3$

Exercise 1.2.2.2

Write the answer for each expression using scientific notation with the appropriate number of significant figures.

a. 217 ÷ 903
b. 13.77 + 908.226 + 515
c. 255.0 − 99
d. 0.00666 × 321

Answer a: available at the end of this section.

Remember that calculators do not understand significant figures. *You* are the one who must apply the rules of significant figures to a result from your calculator.

Calculations Involving Multiplication/Division and Addition/Subtraction

In practice, chemists generally work with a calculator and carry all digits forward through subsequent calculations. When working on paper, however, we often want to minimize the number of digits we have to write out. Because successive rounding

can compound inaccuracies, intermediate rounding needs to be handled correctly. When working on paper, always round an intermediate result so as to retain at least one more digit than can be justified and carry this number into the next step in the calculation. The final answer is then rounded to the correct number of significant figures at the very end.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Video 1.2.2.1: Significant figures in mixed operations (https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=yBntMndXQWA).

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Video 1.2.2.2: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=__csP0NtlGI

In the worked examples in this text, we will often show the results of intermediate steps in a calculation. In doing so, we will show the results to only the correct number of significant figures allowed for that step, in effect treating each step as a separate calculation. This procedure is intended to reinforce the rules for determining the number of significant figures, but in some cases it may give a final answer that differs in the last digit from that obtained using a calculator, where all digits are carried through to the last step.

Example 1.2.2.3

a. 2(1.008 g) + 15.99 g
b. 137.3 s + 2(35.45 s)
c. $\frac{118.7g}{2} - 35.5g$

Solution

a.

cK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Explanation	Answer
2(1.008 g) + 15.99 g = **Perform multiplication first.** 2 (1.008 g *4 sig figs*) = **2.016 g** *4 sig figs* The number with the least number of significant figures is 1.008 g; *the number 2 is an exact number and therefore has an infinite number of significant figures.* **Then, perform the addition.** **2.016 g** *thousandths place* + 15.99 g *hundredths place (least precise)* = 18.006 g **Round the final answer.** Round the final answer to the hundredths place since 15.99 has its farthest right significant figure in the hundredths place (least precise).	18.01 g (rounding up)

b.

Explanation	Answer
137.3 s + 2(35.45 s) = **Perform multiplication first.** 2(35.45 s *4 sig figs*) = **70.90 s** *4 sig figs* The number with the least number of significant figures is 35.45; *the number 2 is an exact number and therefore has an infinite number of significant figures.* **Then, perform the addition.** 137.3 s *tenths place (least precise)* + **70.90 s** *hundredths place* = 208.20 s **Round the final answer.** Round the final answer to the tenths place based on 137.3 s.	208.2 s

c.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CC BY NC SA
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Explanation	Answer
$\frac{118.7g}{2} - 35.5g =$ **Perform division first.** $\frac{118.7g}{2}$ *4 sig figs* = **59.35 g** *4 sig figs* The number with the least number of significant figures is 118.7 g; *the number 2 is an exact number and therefore has an infinite number of significant figures.* **Perform subtraction next.** **59.35 g** *hundredths place* – 35.5 g *tenths place (least precise)* = 23.85 g **Round the final answer.** Round the final answer to the tenths place based on 35.5 g.	23.9 g (rounding up)

Exercise 1.2.2.3

Complete the calculations and report your answers using the correct number of significant figures.

a. 5(1.008s) - 10.66 s
b. 99.0 cm+ 2(5.56 cm)

Answer a available at the end of this section.

Summary

- Rounding
  - If the number to be dropped is greater than or equal to 5, increase the number to its left by 1 (e.g. 2.9699 rounded to three significant figures is 2.97).
  - If the number to be dropped is less than 5, there is no change (e.g. 4.00443 rounded to four significant figures is 4.004).
- The rule in multiplication and division is that the final answer should have the same number of significant figures as there are in the number with the fewest significant figures.
- The rule in addition and subtraction is that the answer is given the same number of decimal places as the term with the fewest decimal places.

Answers

Exercise 1.2.2.2

$0.240 = 2.40 \times 10^{-1}$
$1,437 = 1.437 \times 10^{3}$
$156 = 1.56 \times 10^{2}$
$2.14 = 2.14 \times 10^{0}$

Exercise 1.2.2.3

-5.62 s
110.2 cm

This page titled 1.2.2: Significant Figures in Calculations is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 2.4: Significant Figures in Calculations by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

1.3: CONVERSIONS

Perhaps the most important skill to learn in this class is how to convert between different units of measurement. This skill is not only important in this section, but will continue to come up in almost every chapter of this book. Additionally, this is a skill that is very important for anyone working in a field where you may be providing medication to humans or animals. Even a small mistake on a conversion factor could produce life-threatening results! Please take the time to master the material in this section before moving on to the next chapter. You will need these skills in the next chapter, and several other chapters which follow it.

1.3.1: Problem Solving and Unit Conversions

1.3.2: Solving Multi-step Conversion Problems

1.3.3: Units Raised to a Power

This page titled 1.3: Conversions is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

1.3.1: Problem Solving and Unit Conversions

Learning Objectives

- To convert a value reported in one unit to a corresponding value in a different unit using conversion factors.

During your studies of chemistry (and physics also), you will note that mathematical equations are used in many different applications. Many of these equations have a number of different variables with which you will need to work. You should also note that these equations will often require you to use measurements with their units. Algebra skills become very important here!

Converting Between Units with Conversion Factors

A **conversion factor** is a factor used to convert one unit of measurement into another. A simple conversion factor can convert meters into centimeters, or a more complex one can convert miles per hour into meters per second. Since most calculations require measurements to be in certain units, you will find many uses for conversion factors. Always remember that a conversion factor has to represent a fact; this fact can either be simple or more complex. For instance, you already know that 12 eggs equal 1 dozen. A more complex fact is that the speed of light is 1.86×10^5 miles/sec. Either one of these can be used as a conversion factor depending on what type of calculation you are working with (Table 1.3.1.1).

Table 1.3.1.1: Conversion Factors from SI units to English Units

English Units	Metric Units	Quantity
1 ounce (oz)	28.35 grams (g)	*mass
1 fluid once (oz)	29.6 mL	volume
2.205 pounds (lb)	1 kilogram (kg)	*mass
1 inch (in)	2.54 centimeters (cm)	length
0.6214 miles (mi)	1 kilometer (km)	length
1 quarter (qt)	0.95 liters (L)	volume

*Pounds and ounces are technically units of force, not mass, but this fact is often ignored by the non-scientific community.

Of course, there are other ratios which are not listed in Table 1.3.1.1. They may include:

- Ratios embedded in the text of the problem (using words such as *per* or *in each*, or using symbols such as / or %).
- Conversions in the metric system, as covered earlier in this chapter.
- Common knowledge ratios (such as 60 seconds = 1 minute).

If you learned the SI units and prefixes described, then you know that 1 cm is 1/100th of a meter.

$$1\ \text{cm} = \frac{1}{100}\ \text{m} = 10^{-2}\text{m}$$

or

$$100\ \text{cm} = 1\ \text{m}$$

Suppose we divide both sides of the equation by 1m (both the number *and* the unit):

$$\frac{100\ \text{cm}}{1\ \text{m}} = \frac{1\ \text{m}}{1\ \text{m}}$$

As long as we perform the same operation on both sides of the equals sign, the expression remains an equality. Look at the

right side of the equation; it now has the same quantity in the numerator (the top) as it has in the denominator (the bottom). Any fraction that has the same quantity in the numerator and the denominator has a value of 1:

$$\frac{100\text{ cm}}{1\text{ m}} = \frac{1000\text{ mm}}{1\text{ m}} = \frac{1 \times 10^6 \mu\text{m}}{1\text{ m}} = 1$$

We know that 100 cm *is* 1 m, so we have the same quantity on the top and the bottom of our fraction, although it is expressed in different units.

Performing Dimensional Analysis

Dimensional analysis is amongst the most valuable tools that physical scientists use. Simply put, it is the conversion between an amount in one unit to the corresponding amount in a desired unit using various conversion factors. This is valuable because certain measurements are more accurate or easier to find than others. The use of units in a calculation to ensure that we obtain the final proper units is called *dimensional analysis*.

Here is a simple example. How many centimeters are there in 3.55 m? Perhaps you can determine the answer in your head. If there are 100 cm in every meter, then 3.55 m equals 355 cm. To solve the problem more formally with a conversion factor, we first write the quantity we are given, 3.55 m. Then we multiply this quantity by a conversion factor, which is the same as multiplying it by 1. We can write 1 as $\frac{100\text{ cm}}{1\text{ m}}$ and multiply:

$$3.55\text{ m} \times \frac{100\text{ cm}}{1\text{ m}}$$

The 3.55 m can be thought of as a fraction with a 1 in the denominator. Because m, the abbreviation for meters, occurs in both the numerator *and* the denominator of our expression, they cancel out:

$$\frac{3.55\ \cancel{\text{m}}}{1} \times \frac{100\text{ cm}}{1\ \cancel{\text{m}}}$$

The final step is to perform the calculation that remains once the units have been canceled:

$$\frac{3.55}{1} \times \frac{100\text{ cm}}{1} = 355\text{ cm}$$

In the final answer, we omit the 1 in the denominator. Thus, by a more formal procedure, we find that 3.55 m equals 355 cm. A generalized description of this process is as follows:

quantity (in old units) × conversion factor = quantity (in new units)

You may be wondering why we use a seemingly complicated procedure for a straightforward conversion. In later studies, the conversion problems you encounter *will not always be so simple*. If you master the technique of applying conversion factors, you will be able to solve a large variety of problems.

In the previous example, we used the fraction $\frac{100\text{ cm}}{1\text{ m}}$ as a conversion factor. Does the conversion factor $\frac{1\text{ m}}{100\text{ cm}}$ also equal 1? Yes, it does; it has the same quantity in the numerator as in the denominator (except that they are expressed in different units). Why did we not use *that* conversion factor? If we had used the second conversion factor, the original unit would not have canceled, and the result would have been meaningless. Here is what we would have gotten:

$$3.55\text{ m} \times \frac{1\text{ m}}{100\text{ cm}} = 0.0355\frac{\text{m}^2}{\text{cm}}$$

For the answer to be meaningful, we have to *construct the conversion factor in a form that causes the original unit to cancel out*. Figure 1.3.1.1 shows a concept map for constructing a proper conversion.

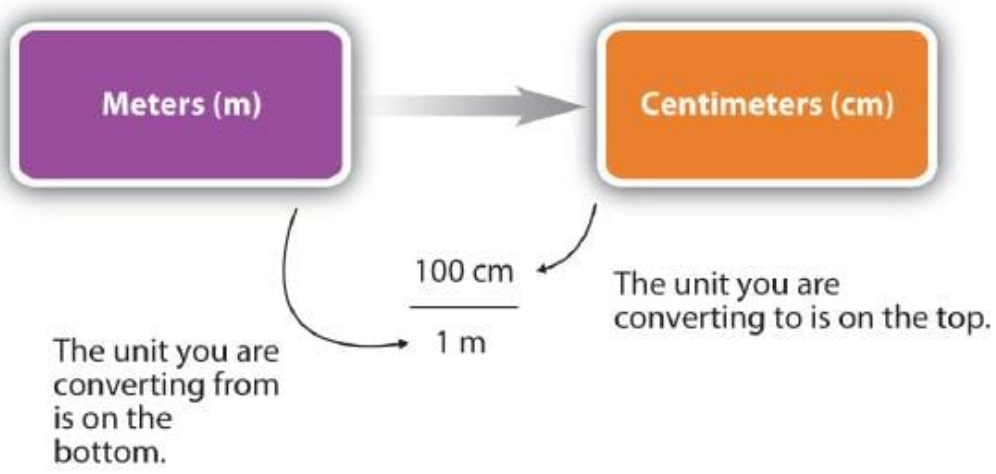


Figure 1.3.1.1: A Concept Map for Conversions. This is how you construct a conversion factor to convert from one unit to another. Converting meters to centimeters: the unit you are converting is on the bottom of the fraction, and the unit to convert to is on top

General Steps in Performing Dimensional Analysis

1. Identify the "**given**" information in the problem. Look for a number with units to start this problem with.
2. What is the problem asking you to "**find**"? In other words, what unit will your answer have?
3. Use **ratios** and conversion factors to cancel out the units that aren't part of your answer, and leave you with units that are part of your answer.
4. When your units cancel out correctly, you are ready to do the **math**. You are multiplying fractions, so you multiply the top numbers and divide by the bottom numbers in the fractions.

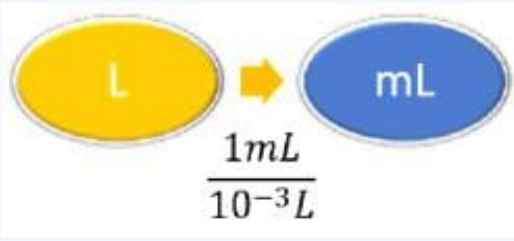
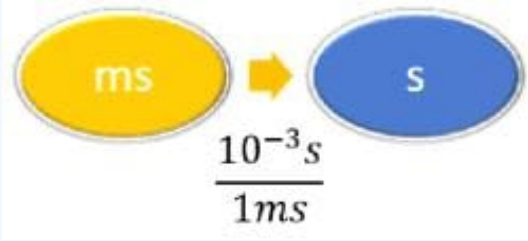
Significant Figures in Conversions

How do conversion factors affect the determination of significant figures?

- Numbers in conversion factors based on prefix changes, such as kilograms to grams, are *not* considered in the determination of significant figures in a calculation because the numbers in such conversion factors are exact.
- Exact numbers are defined or counted numbers, not measured numbers, and can be considered as having an infinite number of significant figures. (In other words, 1 kg is exactly 1,000 g, by the definition of kilo-.)
- Counted numbers are also exact. If there are 16 students in a classroom, the number 16 is exact.
- In contrast, conversion factors that come from measurements (such as density, as we will see shortly) or that are approximations have a limited number of significant figures and should be considered in determining the significant figures of the final answer.

Example 1.3.1.1

Steps for Problem Solving for Example 2.6.1 and 2.6.2

	Example 1.3.1.1	**Example** 1.3.1.2
Steps for Problem Solving	The average volume of blood in an adult male is 4.7 L. What is this volume in milliliters?	A hummingbird can flap its wings once in 18 ms. How many seconds are in 18 ms?
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: 4.7 L Find: mL	Given: 18 ms Find: s
List other known quantities.	$1\ mL = 10^{-3} L$	$1\ ms = 10^{-3} s$
Prepare a concept map and use the proper conversion factor.		
Cancel units and calculate.	$4.7\cancel{L} \times \frac{1\ \text{mL}}{10^{-3}\ \cancel{L}} = 4,700\ \text{mL}$ or $4.7\cancel{L} \times \frac{1,000\ \text{mL}}{1\ \cancel{L}} = 4,700\ \text{mL}$ or 4.7 x 10^3 2SF, not ambiguous	$18\ \cancel{\text{ms}} \times \frac{10^{-3}\ \text{s}}{1\ \cancel{\text{ms}}} = 0.018\ \text{s}$ or $18\ \cancel{\text{ms}} \times \frac{1\ \text{s}}{1,000\ \cancel{\text{ms}}} = 0.018\ \text{s}$
Think about your result.	The amount in mL should be 1000 times larger than the given amount in L.	The amount in s should be 1/1000 the given amount in ms.

Exercise 1.3.1.1

Perform each conversion.

a. 101,000 ns to seconds
b. 32.08 kg to grams
c. 1.53 grams to cg

Answer a: available at the end of this section.

Summary

- Conversion factors are used to convert one unit of measurement into another.
- Dimensional analysis (unit conversions) involves the use of conversion factors that will cancel unwanted units and produce the appropriate units.

Answers

Exercise 1.3.1.1

$1.01000x10^{-4}s$

$3.208x10^{4}g$

$1.53x10^{2}cg$

This page titled 1.3.1: Problem Solving and Unit Conversions is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 2.6: Problem Solving and Unit Conversions by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

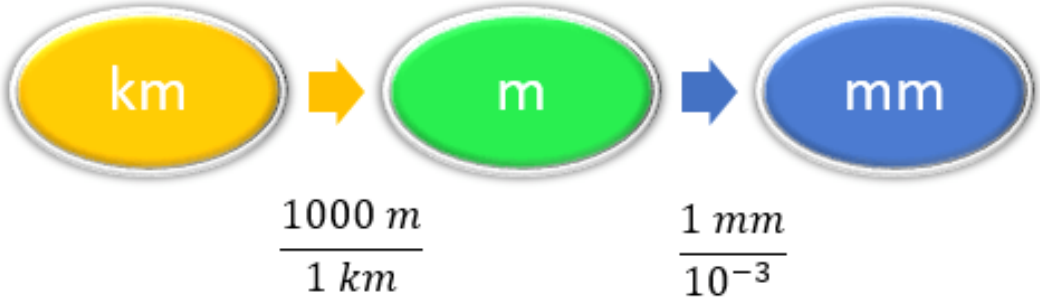
1.3.2: Solving Multi-step Conversion Problems

Multiple Conversions

Sometimes you will have to perform more than one conversion to obtain the desired unit. For example, suppose you want to convert 54.7 km into millimeters. We will set up a series of conversion factors so that each conversion factor produces the next unit in the sequence. We first convert the given amount in km to the base unit, which is meters. We know that 1,000 m =1 km.

Then we convert meters to mm, remembering that $1\ \text{mm} = 10^{-3}\ \text{m}$.

Concept Map



Convert kilometers to meters to millimeters: use conversion factors 1000 meters per 1 kilometer and 1 millimeter per 0.001 meter

Calculation

$$54.7\ \cancel{\text{km}} \times \frac{1,000\ \cancel{\text{m}}}{1\ \cancel{\text{km}}} \times \frac{1\ \cancel{\text{mm}}}{10^{-3}\ \cancel{\text{m}}} = 54,700,000\ \text{mm}$$
$$= 5.47 \times 10^{7}\ \text{mm}$$

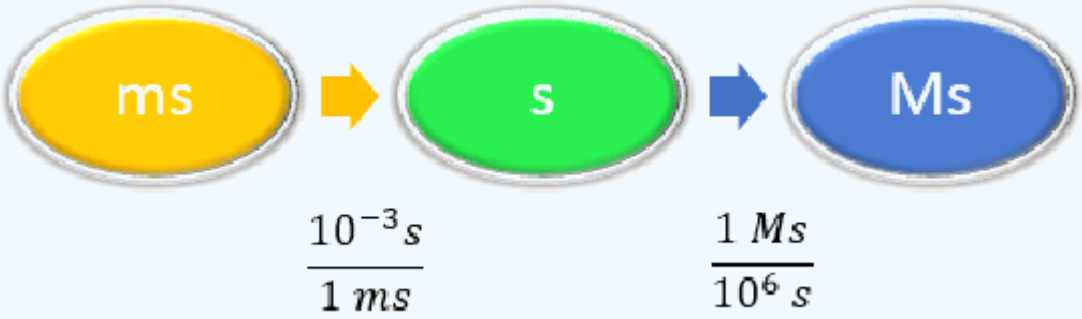
In each step, the previous unit is canceled and the next unit in the sequence is produced, each successive unit canceling out until only the unit needed in the answer is left.

Example 1.3.2.1: Unit Conversion

Convert 58.2 ms to megaseconds in one multi-step calculation.

Solution

Steps for Problem Solving	Unit Conversion
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: 58.2 ms Find: Ms

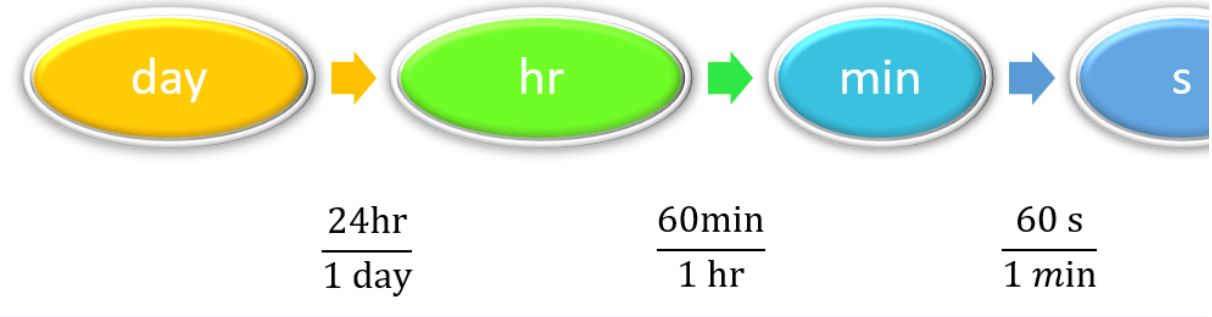
Steps for Problem Solving	Unit Conversion
List other known quantities	$1ms = 10^{-3}s$ $1Ms = 10^{6}s$
Prepare a concept map.	 $\frac{10^{-3}s}{1\ ms}$ $\frac{1\ Ms}{10^{6}\ s}$ Convert milliseconds to seconds to microseconds: use conversion factors 0.001 second per millisecond and 1 microsecond per 1 million seconds
Calculate.	$58.2\ \cancel{ms} \times \frac{10^{-3}\ \cancel{s}}{1\ \cancel{ms}} \times \frac{1\ \text{Ms}}{1,000,000\ \cancel{s}} = 0.0000000582\ \text{Ms}$ $= 5.82 \times 10^{-8}\ \text{Ms}$ Neither conversion factor affects the number of significant figures in the final answer.

Example 1.3.2.2: Unit Conversion

How many seconds are in a day?

Solution

Steps for Problem Solving	Unit Conversion
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: 1 day Find: s

Steps for Problem Solving	Unit Conversion
List other known quantities.	1 day = 24 hours 1 hour = 60 minutes 1 minute = 60 seconds
Prepare a concept map.	 $\frac{24\text{hr}}{1\text{ day}}$ $\frac{60\text{min}}{1\text{ hr}}$ $\frac{60\text{ s}}{1\ min}$ Convert day to hour to minute to second: use conversion factors 24 hours per day, 60 minutes per hour, and 60 seconds per
Calculate.	$1\text{ d} \times \frac{24\text{ hr}}{1\text{ d}} \times \frac{60\text{ min}}{1\text{ hr}} \times \frac{60\text{ s}}{1\text{ min}} = 86,400\text{ s}$

Exercise 1.3.2.1

Perform each conversion in one multi-step calculation.

a. 43.007 ng to kg
b. 1005 in to ft
c. 12 mi to km

Answer a available at the end of this section.

Answer b available at the end of this section.

Answer c available at the end of this section.

Career Focus: Pharmacist

A pharmacist dispenses drugs that have been prescribed by a doctor. Although that may sound straightforward, pharmacists in the United States must hold a doctorate in pharmacy and be licensed by the state in which they work. Most pharmacy programs require four years of education in a specialty pharmacy school. Pharmacists must know a lot of chemistry and biology so they can understand the effects that drugs (which are chemicals, after all) have on the body. Pharmacists can advise physicians on the selection, dosage, interactions, and side effects of drugs. They can also advise patients on the proper use of their medications, including when and how to take specific drugs properly. Pharmacists can be found in drugstores, hospitals, and other medical facilities. Curiously, an outdated name for pharmacist is *chemist*, which was used when pharmacists formerly did a lot of drug preparation, or *compounding*. In modern times, pharmacists rarely compound their own drugs, but their knowledge of the sciences, including chemistry, helps them provide valuable services in support of everyone's health.



A woman consulting with a pharmacist. (Public Domain; Rhoda Baer via National Cancer Institute, an agency that is part of the National Institutes of Health.)

Summary

In multi-step conversion problems, the previous unit is canceled for each step and the next unit in the sequence is produced, each successive unit canceling out until only the unit needed in the answer is left.

Answers

Exercise 1.3.2.1

$4.3007 \times 10^{-11} kg$

Exercise 1.3.2.1

$83.75\ ft$

Exercise 1.3.2.1

$19\ km$

This page titled 1.3.2: Solving Multi-step Conversion Problems is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 2.7: Solving Multi-step Conversion Problems by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

1.3.3: Units Raised to a Power

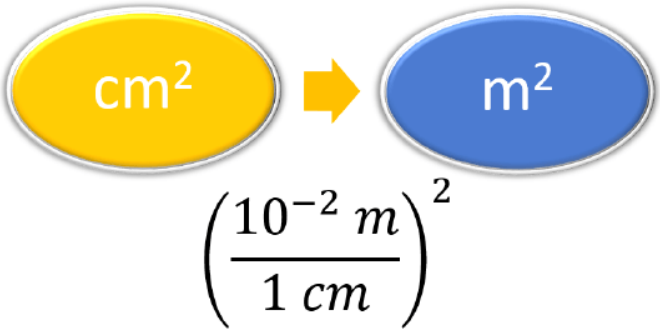
Learning Objectives

- To convert a value reported in one unit raised to a power of 10, to a corresponding value in a different unit raised to the same power of 10, using conversion factors.

Conversion factors for area and volume can also be produced by the dimensional analysis method. Just remember that if a quantity is raised to a power of 10, both the number and the unit must be raised to the same power of 10. For example, to convert $1500\ \text{cm}^2$ to m^2, we need to start with the relationship between centimeter and meter. We know that 1 cm = 10^{-2} m or 100 cm =1 m, but since we are given the quantity in 1500 cm^2, then we have to use the relationship:

$$1\,cm^2 = (10^{-2}\,m)^2 = 10^{-4}\,m^2$$

CONCEPT MAP



To convert centimeters squared to meters squared, use the conversion factor 0.01 meters per 1 centimeter, squared overall

CALCULATION

$$1500\ \cancel{\text{cm}}^2 \times \left(\frac{10^{-2}\ \text{m}}{1\ \cancel{\text{cm}}}\right)^2 = 0.15\ \text{m}^2$$

or

$$1500\ \cancel{\text{cm}}^2 \times \left(\frac{1\ \text{m}}{100\ \cancel{\text{cm}}}\right)^2 = 0.15\ \text{m}^2$$

or

$$1500\ \cancel{\text{cm}}^2 \times \frac{1\ \text{m}^2}{10,000\ \cancel{\text{cm}^2}} = 0.15\ \text{m}^2$$

Example 1.3.3.1: Volume of a Sphere

What is the volume of a sphere (radius 4.30 inches) in cubic cm (cm^3)?

Solution

Solution for Example 2.8.1

Steps for Problem Solving	What is the volume of a sphere (radius 4.30 inches) in cubic cm (cm^3)?
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: radius = 4.30 in Find: cm^3 (volume)
Determine other known quantities.	Volume of a sphere: V = $\frac{4}{3} \times \pi \times r^3$ = $\frac{4}{3} \times 3.1416 \times (4.30in)^3$ = $333.04in^3$
Prepare a concept map.	 $\left(\frac{2.54\ cm}{1\ in}\right)^3$ To convert inches cubed to centimeters cubed, use conversion factor 2.54 centimeters per 1 inch, cubed overall
Calculate.	$333.04\ \cancel{in^3} \left(\frac{2.54cm}{1\ \cancel{in}}\right)^3 = 5.46 \times 10^3 cm^3$
Think about your result.	A centimeter is a smaller unit than an inch, so the answer in cubic centimeters is larger than the given value in cubic inches.

Exercise 1.3.3.1

Lake Tahoe has a surface area of 191 square miles. What is the area in square km (km^2)?

Answer available at the end of this section.

Answers

Exercise 1.3.3.1

495 km^2

This page titled 1.3.3: Units Raised to a Power is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 2.8: Units Raised to a Power by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

1.E: Measurements (Exercises)

1.1: Expressing Numbers

1. Express these numbers in scientific notation.

   a. 56.9
   b. 563,100
   c. 0.0804
   d. 0.00000667

2. Express these numbers in scientific notation.

   a. −890,000
   b. 602,000,000,000
   c. 0.0000004099
   d. 0.0000000000000011

3. Express these numbers in scientific notation.

   a. 0.00656
   b. 65,600
   c. 4,567,000
   d. 0.000005507

4. Express these numbers in scientific notation.

   a. 65
   b. −321.09
   c. 0.000077099
   d. 0.000000000218

5. Express these numbers in standard notation.

   a. 1.381×10^{5}
   b. 5.22×10^{-7}
   c. 9.998×10^{4}

6. Express these numbers in standard notation.

   a. 7.11×10^{-2}
   b. 9.18×10^{2}
   c. 3.09×10^{-10}

7. Express these numbers in standard notation.

   a. 8.09×10^{0}
   b. 3.088×10^{-5}
   c. -4.239×10^{2}

8. Express these numbers in standard notation.

a. 2.87×10^{-8}
b. 1.78×10^{11}
c. 1.381×10^{-23}

9. These numbers are not written in proper scientific notation. Rewrite them so that they are in proper scientific notation.

a. 72.44×10^{3}
b. $9{,}943 \times 10^{-5}$
c. $588{,}399 \times 10^{2}$

10. These numbers are not written in proper scientific notation. Rewrite them so that they are in proper scientific notation.

a. 0.000077×10^{-7}
b. 0.000111×10^{8}
c. $602{,}000 \times 10^{18}$

11. These numbers are not written in proper scientific notation. Rewrite them so that they are in proper scientific notation.

a. 345.1×10^{2}
b. 0.234×10^{-3}
c. $1{,}800 \times 10^{-2}$

12. These numbers are not written in proper scientific notation. Rewrite them so that they are in proper scientific notation.

a. $8{,}099 \times 10^{-8}$
b. 34.5×10^{0}
c. 0.000332×10^{4}

13. Write these numbers in scientific notation by counting the number of places the decimal point is moved.

a. 123,456.78
b. 98,490
c. 0.000000445

14. Write these numbers in scientific notation by counting the number of places the decimal point is moved.

a. 0.000552
b. 1,987
c. 0.00000000887

15. Use your calculator to evaluate these expressions. Express the final answer in proper scientific notation.

a. $456 \times (7.4 \times 10^{8}) = ?$
b. $(3.02 \times 10^{5}) \div (9.04 \times 10^{15}) = ?$
c. $0.0044 \times 0.000833 = ?$

16. Use your calculator to evaluate these expressions. Express the final answer in proper scientific notation.

a. $98{,}000 \times 23{,}000 = ?$
b. $98{,}000 \div 23{,}000 = ?$
c. $(4.6 \times 10^{-5}) \times (2.09 \times 10^{3}) = ?$

17. Use your calculator to evaluate these expressions. Express the final answer in proper scientific notation.

a. $45 \times 132 \div 882 = ?$
b. $[(6.37 \times 10^{4}) \times (8.44 \times 10^{-4})] \div (3.2209 \times 10^{15}) = ?$

18. Use your calculator to evaluate these expressions. Express the final answer in proper scientific notation.

a. $(9.09 \times 10^{8}) \div [(6.33 \times 10^{9}) \times (4.066 \times 10^{-7})] = ?$
b. $9{,}345 \times 34.866 \div 0.00665 = ?$

Answers

1. a. 5.69×10^{1}
   b. 5.631×10^{5}
   c. 8.04×10^{-2}
   d. 6.67×10^{-6}

3. a. 6.56×10^{-3}
   b. 6.56×10^{4}
   c. 4.567×10^{6}
   d. 5.507×10^{-6}

5. a. 138,100
   b. 0.000000522
   c. 99,980

7. a. 8.09
   b. 0.00003088
   c. −423.9

9. a. 7.244×10^{4}
   b. 9.943×10^{-2}
   c. 5.88399×10^{7}

11. a. 3.451×10^{4}
    b. 2.34×10^{-4}
    c. 1.8×10^{1}

13. a. 1.2345678×10^{5}
    b. 9.849×10^{4}
    c. 4.45×10^{-7}

15. a. 3.3744×10^{11}
    b. 3.3407×10^{-11}
    c. 3.665×10^{-6}

17. a. 6.7346×10^{0}
    b. 1.6691×10^{-14}

1.2: Expressing Units

1. Identify the unit in each quantity.

- 2 boxes of crayons
- 3.5 grams of gold

2. Identify the unit in each quantity.

- 32 oz of cheddar cheese
- 0.045 cm^3 of water

3. Identify the unit in each quantity.

- 9.58 s (the current world record in the 100 m dash)
- 6.14 m (the current world record in the pole vault)

4. Identify the unit in each quantity.

- 2 dozen eggs
- 2.4 km/s (the escape velocity of the moon, which is the velocity you need at the surface to escape the moon's gravity)

5. Indicate what multiplier each prefix represents.

- k
- m
- M

6. Indicate what multiplier each prefix represents.

- c
- G
- μ

7. Give the prefix that represents each multiplier.

- 1/1,000th ×
- 1,000 ×
- 1,000,000,000 ×

8. Give the prefix that represents each multiplier.

- 1/1,000,000,000th ×
- 1/100th ×
- 1,000,000 ×

a. 9. Complete the following table with the missing information.

Unit	Abbreviation
kilosecond	
	mL
	Mg
centimeter	

b. 10. Complete the following table with the missing information.

Unit	Abbreviation
kilometer per second	
second	
	cm^3
	μL
nanosecond	

11. Express each quantity in a more appropriate unit. There may be more than one acceptable answer.

- 3.44×10^{-6} s
- 3,500 L
- 0.045 m

12. Express each quantity in a more appropriate unit. There may be more than one acceptable answer.

- 0.000066 m/s (Hint: you need consider only the unit in the numerator.)
- 4.66×10^{6} s
- 7,654 L

13. Express each quantity in a more appropriate unit. There may be more than one acceptable answer.

- 43,600 mL
- 0.0000044 m
- 1,438 ms

14. Express each quantity in a more appropriate unit. There may be more than one acceptable answer.

- 0.000000345 m^3
- 47,000,000 mm^3
- 0.00665 L

15. Multiplicative prefixes are used for other units as well, such as computer memory. The basic unit of computer memory is the byte (b). What is the unit for one million bytes?

16. You may have heard the terms *microscale* or *nanoscale* to represent the sizes of small objects. What units of length do you think are useful at these scales? What fractions of the fundamental unit of length are these units?

17. Acceleration is defined as a change in velocity per time. Propose a unit for acceleration in terms of the fundamental SI units.

18. Density is defined as the mass of an object divided by its volume. Propose a unit of density in terms of the fundamental SI units.

Answers

1.

- boxes of crayons
- grams of gold

3.

- seconds
- meters

5.

- 1,000 x
- 1/1,000 x
- 1,000,000 x

7.

- milli-
- kilo-
- giga-

9.

a. Unit	Abbreviation
a. kilosecond	a. ks
a. milliliter	a. mL
a. megagram	a. Mg
a. centimeter	a. cm

11.

- 3.44 µs
- 3.5 kL
- 4.5 cm

13.

- 43.6 mL
- 4.4 m
- 1.438 s

15. megabytes (Mb

17. meters/second^2

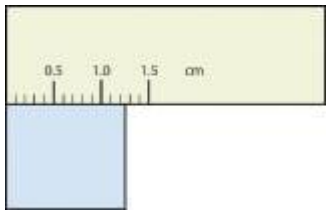
1.3: Significant Figures

a. 1. Express each measurement to the correct number of significant figures.

a.

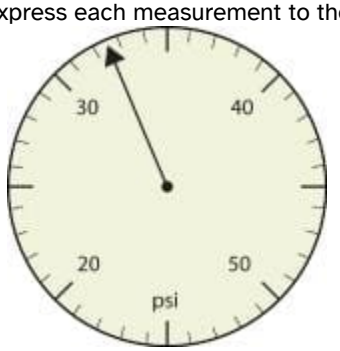


b.

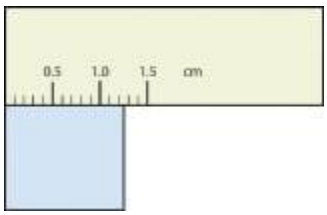


c. 2. Express each measurement to the correct number of significant figures.

a.



b.



1.
2.
3. How many significant figures do these numbers have?

- 23
- 23.0
- 0.00023
- 0.0002302

2.
3.
4. How many significant figures do these numbers have?

- 5.44×10^{8}
- 1.008×10^{-5}
- 43.09
- 0.0000001381

5. How many significant figures do these numbers have?

- 765,890

- 765,890.0
- 1.2000×10^5
- 0.0005060

6. How many significant figures do these numbers have?

- 0.009
- 0.0000009
- 65,444
- 65,040

7. Compute and express each answer with the proper number of significant figures, rounding as necessary.

- 56.0 + 3.44 = ?
- 0.00665 + 1.004 = ?
- 45.99 – 32.8 = ?
- 45.99 – 32.8 + 75.02 = ?

8. Compute and express each answer with the proper number of significant figures, rounding as necessary.

- 1.005 + 17.88 = ?
- 56,700 – 324 = ?
- 405,007 – 123.3 = ?
- 55.5 + 66.66 – 77.777 = ?

9. Compute and express each answer with the proper number of significant figures, rounding as necessary.

- 56.7 × 66.99 = ?
- ÷ 77 = ?
- ÷ 77.0 = ?
- 6.022 × 1.89 = ?

10. Compute and express each answer with the proper number of significant figures, rounding as necessary.

- 0.000440 × 17.22 = ?
- 203,000 ÷ 0.044 = ?
- 67 × 85.0 × 0.0028 = ?
- 999,999 ÷ 3,310 = ?

11. Write the number 87,449 in scientific notation with four significant figures.

12. Write the number 0.000066600 in scientific notation with five significant figures.

13. Write the number 306,000,000 in scientific notation to the proper number of significant figures.

14. Write the number 0.0000558 in scientific notation with two significant figures.

15. Perform each calculation and limit each answer to three significant figures.

- 67,883 × 0.004321 = ?
- $(9.67 \times 10^3) \times 0.0055087$ = ?

16. Perform each calculation and limit each answer to four significant figures.

- 18,900 × 76.33 ÷ 0.00336 = ?
- 0.77604 ÷ 76,003 × 8.888 = ?

Answers

a.1.

- 375 psi
- 1.30 cm

3.

- two
- three
- two
- four

5.

- five
- seven
- five
- four

7.

- 59.4
- 1.011
- 13.2
- 88.2

9.

- 3.80×10^{3}
- 0.013
- 0.0130
- 11.4

11.

- 8.745×10^{4}
- 6.6600×10^{-5}

15.

- 293
- 53.3

1.4: Converting Units

1) Write the two conversion factors that exist between the two given units.

1. milliliters and liters
2. microseconds and seconds
3. kilometers and meters

2) Write the two conversion factors that exist between the two given units.

1. kilograms and grams
2. milliseconds and seconds
3. centimeters and meters

3) Perform the following conversions.

1. 5.4 km to meters
2. 0.665 m to millimeters

3. 0.665 m to kilometer

4) Perform the following conversions.

1. 90.6 mL to liters
2. 0.00066 ML to liters
3. 750 L to kiloliters

5) Perform the following conversions.

1. 17.8 μg to grams
2. 7.22×10^{2} kg to grams
3. 0.00118 g to nanograms

6) Perform the following conversions.

1. 833 ns to seconds
2. 5.809 s to milliseconds
3. 2.77×10^{6} s to megaseconds

7) Perform the following conversions.

1. 9.44 m^{2} to square centimeters
2. 3.44×10^{8} mm^{3} to cubic meters

8) Perform the following conversions.

1. 0.00444 cm^{3} to cubic meters
2. 8.11×10^{2} m^{2} to square nanometers

9) Why would it be inappropriate to convert square centimeters to cubic meters?

10) Why would it be inappropriate to convert from cubic meters to cubic seconds?

11) Perform the following conversions.

1. 45.0 m/min to meters/second
2. 0.000444 m/s to micrometers/second
3. 60.0 km/h to kilometers/second

12) Perform the following conversions.

1. 3.4×10^{2} cm/s to centimeters/minute
2. 26.6 mm/s to millimeters/hour
3. 13.7 kg/L to kilograms/milliliters

13) Perform the following conversions.

1. 0.674 kL to milliliters
2. 2.81×10^{12} mm to kilometers
3. 94.5 kg to milligrams

14) Perform the following conversions.

1. 6.79×10^{-6} kg to micrograms
2. 1.22 mL to kiloliters

3. 9.500×10^{-9} ks to milliseconds

15) Perform the following conversions.

1. 6.77×10^{14} ms to kiloseconds
2. 34,550,000 cm to kilometers

16) Perform the following conversions.

1. 4.701×10^{15} mL to kiloliters
2. 8.022×10^{-11} ks to microseconds

17) Perform the following conversions. Note that you will have to convert units in both the numerator and the denominator.

1. 88 ft/s to miles/hour (Hint: use 5,280 ft = 1 mi.)
2. 0.00667 km/h to meters/second

18) Perform the following conversions. Note that you will have to convert units in both the numerator and the denominator.

1. 3.88×10^{2} mm/s to kilometers/hour
2. 1.004 kg/L to grams/milliliter

19) What is the area in square millimeters of a rectangle whose sides are 2.44 cm × 6.077 cm? Express the answer to the proper number of significant figures.

20) What is the volume in cubic centimeters of a cube with sides of 0.774 m? Express the answer to the proper number of significant figures.

21) The formula for the area of a triangle is 1/2 × base × height. What is the area of a triangle in square centimeters if its base is 1.007 m and its height is 0.665 m? Express the answer to the proper number of significant figures.

22) The formula for the area of a triangle is 1/2 × base × height. What is the area of a triangle in square meters if its base is 166 mm and its height is 930.0 mm? Express the answer to the proper number of significant figures.

Answers

1)

1.

$$\frac{1000mL}{1L} and \frac{1L}{1000mL}$$

2.

$$\frac{1000000\mu s}{1s} and \frac{1s}{1000000\mu s}$$

3.

$$\frac{1000m}{1km} and \frac{1km}{1000m}$$

3)

1. 5,400 m

2. 665 mm

3. 6.65×10^{-4} km

5)

- ◦ 1.78×10^{-5} g
  1. 7.22×10^{5} g
  2. 1.18×10^{6} ng
-
- 1. 94,400 cm^2
  2. 0.344 m^3
-

a. One is a unit of area, and the other is a unit of volume.

b.

- a.
  1. 0.75 m/s
  2. 444 µm/s
  3. 1.666×10^{-2} km/s
-
- 1. 674,000 mL
  2. 2.81×10^{6} km
  3. 9.45×10^{7} mg
-
- 1. 6.77×10^{8} ks
  2. 345.5 km
-
- 1. 6.0×10^{1} mi/h
  2. 0.00185 m/s
-

a. 1.48×10^{3} mm^2

b.

c. 3.35×10^{3} cm^2

1.5: Other Units - Temperature and Density

a. Perform the following conversions.
b. 255°F to degrees Celsius
c. –255°F to degrees Celsius
d. 50.0°C to degrees Fahrenheit
e. –50.0°C to degrees Fahrenheit

- a. Perform the following conversions.
- 1,065°C to degrees Fahrenheit
- –222°C to degrees Fahrenheit
- 400.0°F to degrees Celsius
- 200.0°F to degrees Celsius
- a. Perform the following conversions.
- 100.0°C to kelvins
- –100.0°C to kelvins
- 100 K to degrees Celsius

- 300 K to degrees Celsius
- a. Perform the following conversions.
- 1,000.0 K to degrees Celsius
- 50.0 K to degrees Celsius
- 37.0°C to kelvins
- –37.0°C to kelvins

a. Convert 0 K to degrees Celsius. What is the significance of the temperature in degrees Celsius?

b. Convert 0 K to degrees Fahrenheit. What is the significance of the temperature in degrees Fahrenheit?

c. The hottest temperature ever recorded on the surface of the earth was 136°F in Libya in 1922. What is the temperature in degrees Celsius and in kelvins?

d. The coldest temperature ever recorded on the surface of the earth was –128.6°F in Vostok, Antarctica, in 1983. What is the temperature in degrees Celsius and in kelvins?

e. Give at least three possible units for density.

f. What are the units when density is inverted? Give three examples.

g. A sample of iron has a volume of 48.2 cm^3. What is its mass?

h. A sample of air has a volume of 1,015 mL. What is its mass?

i. The volume of hydrogen used by the *Hindenburg*, the German airship that exploded in New Jersey in 1937, was 2.000×10^8 L. If hydrogen gas has a density of 0.0899 g/L, what mass of hydrogen was used by the airship?

j. The volume of an Olympic-sized swimming pool is 2.50×10^9 cm^3. If the pool is filled with alcohol (d = 0.789 g/cm^3), what mass of alcohol is in the pool?

k. A typical engagement ring has 0.77 cm^3 of gold. What mass of gold is present?

l. A typical mercury thermometer has 0.039 mL of mercury in it. What mass of mercury is in the thermometer?

m. What is the volume of 100.0 g of lead if lead has a density of 11.34 g/cm^3?

n. What is the volume of 255.0 g of uranium if uranium has a density of 19.05 g/cm^3?

o. What is the volume in liters of 222 g of neon if neon has a density of 0.900 g/L?

p. What is the volume in liters of 20.5 g of sulfur hexafluoride if sulfur hexafluoride has a density of 6.164 g/L?

17. Which has the greater volume, 100.0 g of iron (d = 7.87 g/cm^3) or 75.0 g of gold (d = 19.3 g/cm^3)?
18. Which has the greater volume, 100.0 g of hydrogen gas (d = 0.0000899 g/cm^3) or 25.0 g of argon gas (d = 0.00178 g/cm^3)?

Answers

1. 124°C
2. –159°C
3. 122°F
4. –58°F

-
- 1. 373 K

2. 173 K
3. –173°C
4. 27°C

a. –273°C. This is the lowest possible temperature in degrees Celsius.

b.

c. 57.8°C; 331 K

d.

e. g/mL, g/L, and kg/L (answers will vary)

f.

g. 379 g

h.

i. 1.80×10^7 g

j.

k. 15 g

l.

m. $8.818\ cm^3$

n.

o. 247 L

p.

q. The 100.0 g of iron has the greater volume

Additional Exercises

a. Evaluate 0.00000000552 × 0.0000000006188 and express the answer in scientific notation. You may have to rewrite the original numbers in scientific notation first.

b. Evaluate 333,999,500,000 ÷ 0.00000000003396 and express the answer in scientific notation. You may need to rewrite the original numbers in scientific notation first.

c. Express the number 6.022×10^{23} in standard notation.

d. Express the number 6.626×10^{-34} in standard notation.

e. When powers of 10 are multiplied together, the powers are added together. For example, $10^2 \times 10^3 = 10^{2+3} = 10^5$. With this in mind, can you evaluate $(4.506 \times 10^4) \times (1.003 \times 10^2)$ without entering scientific notation into your calculator?

f. When powers of 10 are divided into each other, the bottom exponent is subtracted from the top exponent. For example, $10^5/10^3 = 10^{5-3} = 10^2$. With this in mind, can you evaluate $(8.552 \times 10^6) \div (3.129 \times 10^3)$ without entering scientific notation

into your calculator?

g. Consider the quantity two dozen eggs. Is the number in this quantity "two" or "two dozen"? Justify your choice.

h. Consider the quantity two dozen eggs. Is the unit in this quantity "eggs" or "dozen eggs"? Justify your choice.

i. Fill in the blank: 1 km = _____ μm.

j. Fill in the blank: 1 Ms = _____ ns.

k. Fill in the blank: 1 cL = _____ ML.

l. Fill in the blank: 1 mg = _____ kg.

m. Express 67.3 km/h in meters/second.

n. Express 0.00444 m/s in kilometers/hour.

o. Using the idea that 1.602 km = 1.000 mi, convert a speed of 60.0 mi/h into kilometers/hour.

p. Using the idea that 1.602 km = 1.000 mi, convert a speed of 60.0 km/h into miles/hour.

q. Convert 52.09 km/h into meters/second.

r. Convert 2.155 m/s into kilometers/hour.

s. Use the formulas for converting degrees Fahrenheit into degrees Celsius to determine the relative size of the Fahrenheit degree over the Celsius degree.

t. Use the formulas for converting degrees Celsius into kelvins to determine the relative size of the Celsius degree over kelvins.

u. What is the mass of 12.67 L of mercury?

v. What is the mass of 0.663 m^3 of air?

w. What is the volume of 2.884 kg of gold?

x. What is the volume of 40.99 kg of cork? Assume a density of 0.22 g/cm^3.

Answers

a. 3.42×10^{-18}

b.

c. 602,200,000,000,000,000,000,000

d.

e. 4.520×10^{6}

f.

g. The quantity is two; dozen is the unit.

h.

i. 1,000,000,000

j.

k. 1/100,000,000

l.

m. 18.7 m/s

n.

o. 96.1 km/h

p.

q. 14.47 m/s

r.

s. One Fahrenheit degree is nine-fifths the size of a Celsius degree.

t.

u. 1.72×10^5 g

v.

w. 149 mL

This page titled 1.E: Measurements (Exercises) is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 2.E: Measurements (Exercises) by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/beginning-chemistry.

2: MATTER AND ENERGY

In this chapter we will introduce ideas about matter and energy. There will be many definitions and categories discussed in the first parts of the chapter (2.1, and 2.2). You may skip ahead to 2.3 for a summary of these ideas if you feel that 2.1 and 2.2 are providing more detail then you need to understand the material. The remainder of the chapter (2.4-2.6) is about applying some of the conversion factor concepts you learned in chapter 1 to the new concepts about matter and energy we are learning in chapter 2.

2.1: What is Matter?

2.1.1: Classifying Matter According to Its State—Solid, Liquid, and Gas

2.1.2: Classifying Matter According to Its Composition

2.2: Properties and Changes of Matter

2.2.1: Differences in Matter- Physical and Chemical Properties

2.2.2: Changes in Matter - Physical and Chemical Changes

2.2.3: Conservation of Mass - There is No New Matter

2.3: Summary of Matter and Changes

2.4: Density

2.5: Temperature, Heat, and Energy

2.5.1: Energy

2.5.2: Energy and Chemical and Physical Change

2.5.3: Temperature - Random Motion of Molecules and Atoms

2.6: Heat Capacity

2.6.1: Temperature Changes - Heat Capacity

2.6.2: Energy and Heat Capacity Calculations

2.E: Matter and Energy (Exercises)

This page titled 2: Matter and Energy is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

2.1: WHAT IS MATTER?

Learning Objectives

- Define matter and explain how it is composed of building blocks known as "atoms".

We are all familiar with matter. The definition of **Matter** is anything that has mass and volume (takes up space). For most common objects that we deal with every day, it is fairly simple to demonstrate that they have mass and take up space. You might be able to imagine, however, the difficulty for people several hundred years ago to demonstrate that air had mass and volume. Air (and all other gases) are invisible to the eye, have very small masses compared to equal amounts of solids and liquids, and are quite easy to compress (change volume). Without sensitive equipment, it would have been difficult to convince people that gases are matter. Today, we can measure the mass of a small balloon when it is deflated and then blow it up, tie it off, and measure its mass again to detect the additional mass due to the air inside. The mass of air, under room conditions, that occupies a one quart jar is approximately 0.0002 pounds. This small amount of mass would have been difficult to measure in times before balances were designed to accurately measure very small masses. Later, scientists were able to compress gases into such a small volume that the gases turned into liquids, which made it clear that gases are matter.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



Figure 2.1.1: Everything from an ant, to a truck, to the earth, and even the entire galaxy is composed of matter. Images used with permission from Wikipedia (CC_SA-BY-3.0; credit High Contrast).

Even though the universe consists of "things" as wildly different as ants and galaxies, the matter that makes up all of these "things" is composed of a very limited number of building blocks. These building blocks are known as **atoms**, and so far, scientists have discovered or created a grand total of 118 different types of atoms. Scientists have given a name to each different type of atom. A substance that is composed of only one type of atom is called an element. At this point, what should amaze you is that all forms of matter in our universe are made with only 118 different building blocks. In some ways, it's sort of like cooking a gourmet, five-course meal using only three ingredients! How is it possible? To answer that question, you have to understand the ways in which different elements are put together to form matter.

The most important method that nature uses to organize atoms into matter is the formation of **molecules**. Molecules are groups of two or more atoms that have been bonded together. There are millions of different ways to bond atoms together, which means that there are millions of different possible molecules. Each of these molecules has its own set of chemical properties, and it's these properties with which chemists are most concerned. You will learn a lot more about atoms and molecules, including how

they were discovered, in a later part of the textbook.

Summary

All matter has mass and occupies space. All physical objects are made of matter. Matter itself is composed of tiny building blocks known as "atoms". There are only 118 different types of atoms known to man. Frequently, atoms are bonded together to form "molecules".

Contributions & Attributions

- Wikipedia

2.1.1: Classifying Matter According to Its State—Solid, Liquid, and Gas

2.1.2: Classifying Matter According to Its Composition

This page titled 2.1: What is Matter? is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 3.2: What is Matter? by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

2.1.1: Classifying Matter According to Its State—Solid, Liquid, and Gas

Learning Objectives

- To describe the solid, liquid and gas phases.

Water can take many forms. At low temperatures (below $0^{\circ}\mathrm{C}$), it is a solid. When at "normal" temperatures (between $0^{\circ}\mathrm{C}$ and $100^{\circ}\mathrm{C}$), it is a liquid. While at temperatures above $100^{\circ}\mathrm{C}$, water is a gas (steam). The state that water is in depends upon the temperature. Each state has its own unique set of physical properties. Matter typically exists in one of three states: **solid**, **liquid**, or **gas**.



Figure 2.1.1.1: Matter is usually classified into three classical states, with plasma sometimes added as a fourth state. From left to right: quartz (solid), water (liquid), nitrogen dioxide (gas).

The state that a given substance exhibits is also a physical property. Some substances exist as gases at room temperature (oxygen and carbon dioxide), while others, like water and mercury metal, exist as liquids. Most metals exist as solids at room temperature. All substances can exist in any of these three states. Figure 2.1.1.2 shows the differences among solids, liquids, and gases at the molecular level. A solid has definite volume and shape, a liquid has a definite volume but no definite shape, and a gas has neither a definite volume nor shape.

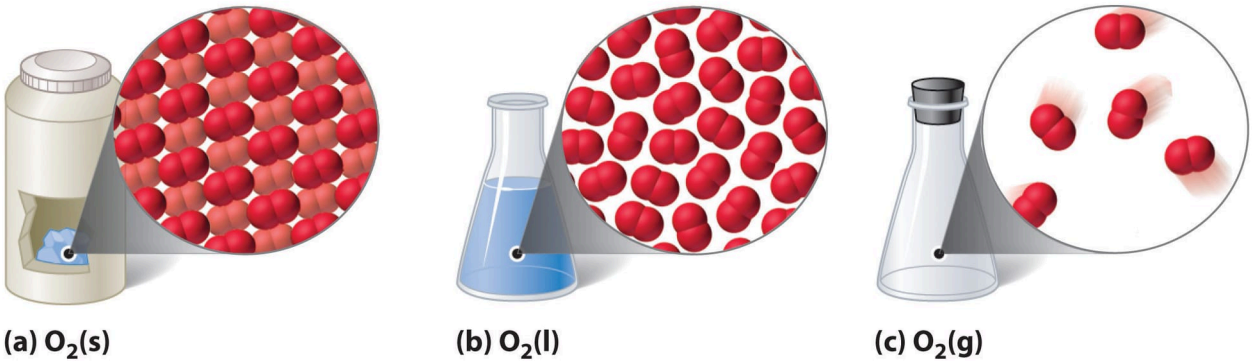
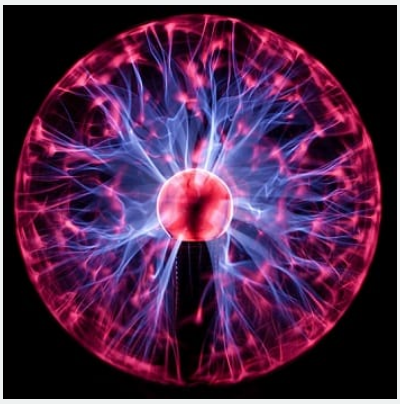


Figure 2.1.1.2: A Representation of the Solid, Liquid, and Gas States. (a) Solid O_2 has a fixed volume and shape, and the molecules are packed tightly together. (b) Liquid O_2 conforms to the shape of its container but has a fixed volume; it contains relatively densely packed molecules. (c) Gaseous O_2 fills its container completely—regardless of the container's size or shape—and consists of widely separated molecules.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CC BY NC SA
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Plasma: A Fourth State of Matter

Technically speaking, a fourth state of matter called plasma exists, but it does not naturally occur on earth, so we will omit it from our study here.



A plasma globe operating in a darkened room. (CC BY-SA 3.0; Chocolateoak).

Solids

In the solid state, the individual particles of a substance are in fixed positions with respect to each other because there is not enough thermal energy to overcome the intermolecular interactions between the particles. As a result, solids have a definite shape and volume. Most solids are hard, but some (like waxes) are relatively soft. Many solids composed of ions can also be quite brittle.

Solids are defined by the following characteristics:

- Definite shape (rigid)
- Definite volume
- Particles vibrate around fixed axes

If we were to cool liquid mercury to its freezing point of $-39^{\circ}\mathrm{C}$, and under the right pressure conditions, we would notice all of the liquid particles would go into the solid state. Mercury can be solidified when its temperature is brought to its freezing point. However, when returned to room temperature conditions, mercury does not exist in solid state for long, and returns back to its more common liquid form.

Solids usually have their constituent particles arranged in a regular, three-dimensional array of alternating positive and negative ions called a **crystal**. The effect of this regular arrangement of particles is sometimes visible macroscopically, as shown in Figure $2.1.1.3$. Some solids, especially those composed of large molecules, cannot easily organize their particles in such regular crystals and exist as amorphous (literally, “without form”) solids. Glass is one example of an amorphous solid.

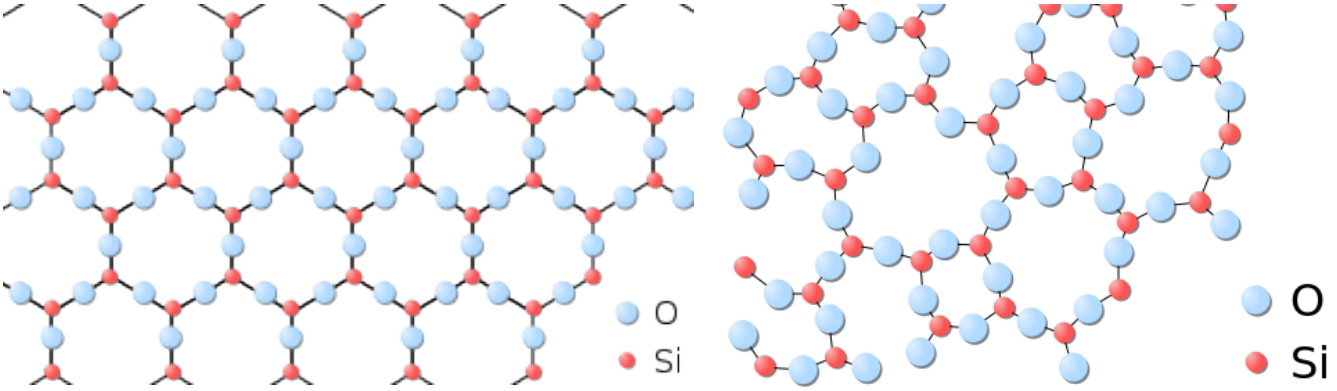


Figure 2.1.1.3: (left) The periodic crystalline lattice structure of quartz SiO_2 in two-dimensions. (right) The random network structure of glassy SiO_2 in two-dimensions. Note that, as in the crystal, each Silicon atom is bonded to 4 oxygen atoms, where the fourth oxygen atom is obscured from view in this plane. Images used with permission (public domain).

Liquids

If the particles of a substance have enough energy to partially overcome intermolecular interactions, then the particles can move about each other while remaining in contact. This describes the liquid state. In a liquid, the particles are still in close contact, so liquids have a definite volume. However, because the particles can move about each other rather freely, a liquid has no definite shape and takes a shape dictated by its container.

Liquids have the following characteristics:

- No definite shape (takes the shape of its container).
- Has definite volume.
- Particles are free to move over each other, but are still attracted to each other.

A familiar liquid is mercury metal. Mercury is an anomaly. It is the only metal we know of that is liquid at room temperature. Mercury also has an ability to stick to itself (surface tension)—a property that all liquids exhibit. Mercury has a relatively high surface tension, which makes it very unique. Here you see mercury in its common liquid form.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Video 2.1.1.1*: Mercury boiling to become a gas.*

If we heat liquid mercury to its boiling point of $357^{\circ}\mathrm{C}$ under the right pressure conditions, we would notice all particles in the liquid state go into the gas state.

Gases

If the particles of a substance have enough energy to completely overcome intermolecular interactions, then the particles can separate from each other and move about randomly in space. This describes the gas state, which we will consider in more detail elsewhere. Like liquids, gases have no definite shape, but unlike solids and liquids, gases have no definite volume either. The change from solid to liquid usually does not significantly change the volume of a substance. However, the change from a liquid to a gas significantly increases the volume of a substance, by a factor of 1,000 or more. Gases have the following characteristics:

cK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

- No definite shape (takes the shape of its container)
- No definite volume
- Particles move in random motion with little or no attraction to each other
- Highly compressible

Table 2.1.1.1: Characteristics of the Three States of Matter

Characteristics	Solids	Liquids	Gases
shape	definite	indefinite	indefinite
volume	definite	definite	indefinite
relative intermolecular interaction strength	strong	moderate	weak
relative particle positions	in contact and fixed in place	in contact but not fixed	not in contact, random positions

Example 2.1.1.1

What state or states of matter does each statement, describe?

a. This state has a definite volume, but no definite shape.
b. This state has no definite volume.
c. This state allows the individual particles to move about while remaining in contact.

Solution

a. This statement describes the liquid state.
b. This statement describes the gas state.
c. This statement describes the liquid state.

Exercise 2.1.1.1

What state or states of matter does each statement describe?

a. This state has individual particles in a fixed position with regard to each other.
b. This state has individual particles far apart from each other in space.
c. This state has a definite shape.

Answer a: available at the end of this section.

Answer b: available at the end of this section.

Answer c: available at the end of this section.

Summary

- Three states of matter exist—solid, liquid, and gas.
- Solids have a definite shape and volume.
- Liquids have a definite volume, but take the shape of the container.
- Gases have no definite shape or volume.

Answers

Exercise 2.1.1.1

solid

Exercise 2.1.1.1

gas

Exercise 2.1.1.1

solid

This page titled 2.1.1: Classifying Matter According to Its State—Solid, Liquid, and Gas is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 3.3: Classifying Matter According to Its State—Solid, Liquid, and Gas by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

2.1.2: Classifying Matter According to Its Composition

Learning Objectives

- Explain the difference between a pure substance and a mixture.
- Explain the difference between an element and a compound.
- Explain the difference between a homogeneous mixture and a heterogeneous mixture.

One useful way of organizing our understanding of matter is to think of a hierarchy that extends down from the most general and complex to the simplest and most fundamental (Figure 2.1.2.1). Matter can be classified into two broad categories: pure substances and mixtures. A **pure substance** is a form of matter that has a constant composition (meaning that it is the same everywhere) and properties that are constant throughout the sample (meaning that there is only one set of properties such as melting point, color, boiling point, etc. throughout the matter). A material composed of two or more substances is a **mixture**. Elements and compounds are both examples of pure substances. A substance that cannot be broken down into chemically simpler components is an **element**. Aluminum, which is used in soda cans, is an element. A substance that can be broken down into chemically simpler components (because it has more than one element) is a **compound**. For example, water is a compound composed of the elements hydrogen and oxygen. Today, there are about 118 elements in the known universe. In contrast, scientists have identified tens of millions of different compounds to date.

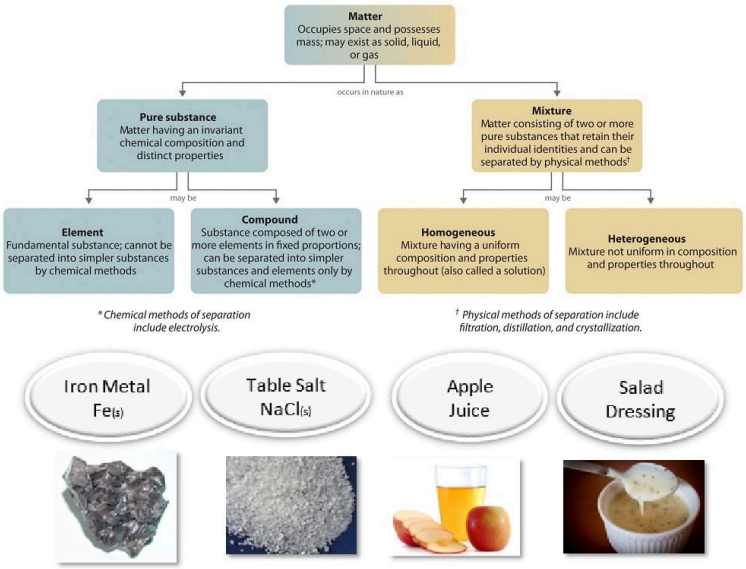


Figure 2.1.2.1: Relationships between the Types of Matter and the Methods Used to Separate Mixtures

Ordinary table salt is called sodium chloride. It is considered a **substance** because it has a uniform and definite composition. All samples of sodium chloride are chemically identical. Water is also a pure substance. Salt easily dissolves in water, but salt water cannot be classified as a substance because its composition can vary. You may dissolve a small amount of salt or a large amount into a given amount of water. A mixture is a physical blend of two or more components, each of which retains its own identity and properties in the **mixture**. Only the form of the salt is changed when it is dissolved into water. It retains its composition and properties.

A **homogeneous** mixture is a mixture in which the composition is uniform throughout the mixture. The salt water described above is homogeneous because the dissolved salt is evenly distributed throughout the entire salt water sample. Often it is easy to confuse a homogeneous mixture with a pure substance because they are both uniform. The difference is that the composition of the substance is always the same. The amount of salt in the salt water can vary from one sample to another. All solutions are considered homogeneous because the dissolved material is present in the same amount throughout the solution.

A **heterogeneous mixture** is a mixture in which the composition is not uniform throughout the mixture. Vegetable soup is a heterogeneous mixture. Any given spoonful of soup will contain varying amounts of the different vegetables and other components

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CC BY NC SA
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

of the soup.

Phase

A phase is any part of a sample that has a uniform composition and properties. By definition, a pure substance or a homogeneous mixture consists of a single phase. A heterogeneous mixture consists of two or more phases. When oil and water are combined, they do not mix evenly, but instead form two separate layers. Each of the layers is called a phase.

Example 2.1.2.1

Identify each substance as a compound, an element, a heterogeneous mixture, or a homogeneous mixture (solution).

a. filtered tea
b. freshly squeezed orange juice
c. a compact disc
d. aluminum oxide, a white powder that contains a 2:3 ratio of aluminum and oxygen atoms
e. selenium

Given: a chemical substance

Asked for: its classification

Strategy:

A. Decide whether a substance is chemically pure. If it is pure, the substance is either an element or a compound. If a substance can be separated into its elements, it is a compound.
B. If a substance is not chemically pure, it is either a heterogeneous mixture or a homogeneous mixture. If its composition is uniform throughout, it is a homogeneous mixture.

Solution

a. **A)** Tea is a solution of compounds in water, so it is not chemically pure. It is usually separated from tea leaves by filtration.
B) Because the composition of the solution is uniform throughout, it is ***a homogeneous mixture***.
b. **A)** Orange juice contains particles of solid (pulp) as well as liquid; it is not chemically pure.
B) Because its composition is not uniform throughout, orange juice is ***a heterogeneous mixture***.
c. **A)** A compact disc is a solid material that contains more than one element, with regions of different compositions visible along its edge. Hence, a compact disc is not chemically pure.
B) The regions of different composition indicate that a compact disc is ***a heterogeneous mixture.***
d. **A)** Aluminum oxide is a single, chemically ***pure compound***.
e. **A)** Selenium is one of the known ***elements***.

Exercise 2.1.2.1

Identify each substance as a compound, an element, a heterogeneous mixture, or a homogeneous mixture (solution).

a. white wine
b. mercury
c. ranch-style salad dressing
d. table sugar (sucrose)

Answer a: available at the end of this section.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Example 2.1.2.2

How would a chemist categorize each example of matter?

a. saltwater
b. soil
c. water
d. oxygen

Solution

a. Saltwater acts as if it were a single substance even though it contains two substances—salt and water. Saltwater is a homogeneous mixture, or a solution.
b. Soil is composed of small pieces of a variety of materials, so it is a heterogeneous mixture.
c. Water is a substance. More specifically, because water is composed of hydrogen and oxygen, it is a compound.
d. Oxygen, a substance, is an element.

Exercise 2.1.2.2

How would a chemist categorize each example of matter?

a. coffee
b. hydrogen
c. an egg

Answer a: available at the end of this section.

Summary

Matter can be classified into two broad categories: pure substances and mixtures. A pure substance is a form of matter that has a constant composition and properties that are constant throughout the sample. Mixtures are physical combinations of two or more elements and/or compounds. Mixtures can be classified as homogeneous or heterogeneous. Elements and compounds are both examples of pure substances. Compounds are substances that are made up of more than one type of atom. Elements are the simplest substances made up of only one type of atom.

Vocabulary

- Element: a substance that is made up of only one type of atom.
- Compound:a substance that is made up of more than one type of atom bonded together.
- Mixture: a combination of two or more elements or compounds which have not reacted to bond together; each part in the mixture retains its own properties.

Contributions & Attributions

-

- Stephen Lower, Professor Emeritus (Simon Fraser U.) Chem1 Virtual Textbook

Answers

Exercise 2.1.2.1

homogeneous mixture (solution)
element
heterogeneous mixture

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

compound

Exercise 2.1.2.2

a homogeneous mixture (solution), assuming it is filtered coffee

element

heterogeneous mixture

This page titled 2.1.2: Classifying Matter According to Its Composition is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 3.4: Classifying Matter According to Its Composition by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew, Stephen Lower is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

2.2: PROPERTIES AND CHANGES OF MATTER

In addition to discussing the categories of matter, we can also discuss both its properties and ways in which it may change. Both properties and changes may be categorized as either physical or chemical. Understanding the differences between physical and chemical properties or changes requires an understanding of how matter behaves on the level of atoms and molecules. We are able to discuss each of these in broad terms now, but will continue to sharpen our perspective on this by learning more about the behavior of atoms and molecules in the chapters to come. Regardless of the change, it is also important to understand that matter itself is essentially permanent, and it does not go away even if our senses can't detect it in the same way that they did before. These concepts will be explored in the subsections of this section.

2.2.1: Differences in Matter- Physical and Chemical Properties

2.2.2: Changes in Matter - Physical and Chemical Changes

2.2.3: Conservation of Mass - There is No New Matter

This page titled 2.2: Properties and Changes of Matter is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

2.2.1: Differences in Matter- Physical and Chemical Properties

Learning Objectives

To separate physical from chemical properties.

All matter has physical and chemical properties. Physical properties are characteristics that scientists can measure without changing the composition of the sample under study, such as mass, color, and volume (the amount of space occupied by a sample). Chemical properties describe the characteristic ability of a substance to react to form new substances; they include its flammability and susceptibility to corrosion. All samples of a pure substance have the same chemical and physical properties. For example, pure copper is always a reddish-brown solid (a physical property) and always dissolves in dilute nitric acid to produce a blue solution and a brown gas (a chemical property).

Physical Property

A *physical property* is a characteristic of a substance that can be observed or measured without changing the identity of the substance. Silver is a shiny metal that conducts electricity very well. It can be molded into thin sheets, a property called malleability. Salt is dull and brittle and conducts electricity when it has been dissolved into water, which it does quite easily. Physical properties of matter include color, hardness, malleability, solubility, electrical conductivity, density, melting point, and boiling point.

For the elements, color does not vary much from one element to the next. The vast majority of elements are colorless, silver, or gray. Some elements do have distinctive colors: sulfur and chlorine are yellow, copper is (of course) copper-colored, and elemental bromine is red. However, density can be a very useful parameter for identifying an element. Of the materials that exist as solids at room temperature, iodine has a very low density compared to zinc, chromium, and tin. Gold has a very high density, as does platinum. Pure water, for example, has a density of 0.998 g/cm^3 at 25°C. The average densities of some common substances are in Table 2.2.1.1. Notice that corn oil has a lower mass to volume ratio than water. This means that when added to water, corn oil will “float.”

Table 2.2.1.1: Densities of Common Substances

Substance	Density at 25°C (g/cm3)
blood	1.035
body fat	0.918
whole milk	1.030
corn oil	0.922
mayonnaise	0.910
honey	1.420

Hardness helps determine how an element (especially a metal) might be used. Many elements are fairly soft (silver and gold, for example) while others (such as titanium, tungsten, and chromium) are much harder. Carbon is an interesting example of hardness. In graphite, (the "lead" found in pencils) the carbon is very soft, while the carbon in a diamond is roughly seven times as hard.

cK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



Figure 2.2.1.1: Pencil (left) and Diamond ring (right). Both are a form of carbon, but exhibit very different physical properties.

Melting and boiling points are somewhat unique identifiers, especially of compounds. In addition to giving some idea as to the identity of the compound, important information can be obtained about the purity of the material.

Chemical Properties

Chemical properties of matter describe its potential to undergo some chemical change or reaction by virtue of its composition. The elements, electrons, and bonds that are present give the matter potential for chemical change. It is quite difficult to define a chemical property without using the word "change". Eventually, after studying chemistry for some time, you should be able to look at the formula of a compound and state some chemical property. For example, hydrogen has the potential to ignite and explode given the right conditions—this is a chemical property. Metals in general have the chemical property of reacting with an acid. Zinc reacts with hydrochloric acid to produce hydrogen gas—this is a chemical property.



Figure 2.2.1.2: Heavy rust on the links of a chain near the Golden Gate Bridge in San Francisco; it was continuously exposed to moisture and salt spray, causing surface breakdown, cracking, and flaking of the metal. (CC BY-SA 3.0; Marlith).

A chemical property of iron is its capability of combining with oxygen to form iron oxide, the chemical name of rust (Figure 2.2.1.2). The more general term for rusting and other similar processes is corrosion. Other terms that are commonly used in descriptions of

chemical changes are burn, rot, explode, decompose, and ferment. Chemical properties are very useful in identifying substances. However, unlike physical properties, chemical properties can only be observed as the substance is in the process of being changed into a different substance.

Table 2.2.1.2: Contrasting Physical and Chemical Properties

Physical Properties	Chemical Properties
Gallium metal melts at 30 °C.	Iron metal rusts.
Mercury is a very dense liquid.	A green banana turns yellow when it ripens.
Gold is shiny.	A dry piece of paper burns.

Example 2.2.1.1

Which of the following is a chemical property of iron?

a. Iron corrodes in moist air.
b. Density = 7.874 g/cm^3
c. Iron is soft when pure.
d. Iron melts at 1808 K.

Solution

"Iron corrodes in moist air" is the only chemical property of iron from the list.

Exercise 2.2.1.1A

Which of the following is a physical property of matter?

a. corrosiveness
b. pH (acidity)
c. density
d. flammability

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 2.2.1.1B

Which of the following is a chemical property?

a. flammability
b. melting point
c. boiling point
d. density

Answer available at the end of this section.

Summary

A physical property is a characteristic of a substance that can be observed or measured without changing the identity of the substance. Physical properties include color, density, hardness, and melting and boiling points. A chemical property describes the ability of a substance to undergo a specific chemical change. To identify a chemical property, we look for a chemical change. A chemical change always produces one or more types of matter that differ from the matter present before the change. The

formation of rust is a chemical change because rust is a different kind of matter than the iron, oxygen, and water present before the rust formed.

Answers

Exercise $2.2.1.1A$

c

Exercise $2.2.1.1B$

a

This page titled 2.2.1: Differences in Matter- Physical and Chemical Properties is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 3.5: Differences in Matter- Physical and Chemical Properties by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

2.2.2: Changes in Matter - Physical and Chemical Changes

Learning Objectives

- Label a change as chemical or physical.
- List evidence that can indicate a chemical change occurred.

Change is happening all around us all of the time. Just as chemists have classified elements and compounds, they have also classified types of changes. Changes are classified as either physical or chemical changes. Chemists learn a lot about the nature of matter by studying the changes that matter can undergo. Chemists make a distinction between two different types of changes that they study—physical changes and chemical changes.

Physical Change

Physical changes are changes in which no bonds are broken or formed. This means that the same types of compounds or elements that were there at the beginning of the change are there at the end of the change. Because the ending materials are the same as the beginning materials, the properties (such as color, boiling point, etc.) will also be the same. Physical changes involve moving molecules around, but not changing them. Some types of physical changes include:

- Changes of state (changes from a solid to a liquid or a gas and vice versa).
- Separation of a mixture.
- Physical deformation (cutting, denting, stretching).
- Making solutions (special kinds of mixtures).

As an ice cube melts, its shape changes as it acquires the ability to flow. However, its composition does not change. Melting is an example of a physical change. A physical change is a change to a sample of matter in which some properties of the material change, but the identity of the matter does not. When liquid water is heated, it changes to water vapor. However, even though the physical properties have changed, the molecules are exactly the same as before. We still have each water molecule containing two hydrogen atoms and one oxygen atom covalently bonded. When you have a jar containing a mixture of pennies and nickels and you sort the mixture so that you have one pile of pennies and another pile of nickels, you have not altered the identity of the pennies or the nickels—you've merely separated them into two groups. This would be an example of a physical change. Similarly, if you have a piece of paper, you don't change it into something other than a piece of paper by ripping it up. What was paper before you started tearing is still paper when you are done. Again, this is an example of a physical change.

cK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



Figure 2.2.2.1: Ice melting is a physical change. When liquid water (H_2O) freezes into a solid state (ice), it appears changed; however, this change is only physical, as the composition of the constituent molecules is the same: 11.19% hydrogen and 88.81% oxygen by mass. (Public Domain; Moussa).

Physical changes can further be classified as reversible or irreversible. The melted ice cube may be refrozen, so melting is a reversible physical change. Physical changes that involve a change of state are all reversible. Other changes of state include **vaporization** (liquid to gas), **freezing** (liquid to solid), and **condensation** (gas to liquid). Dissolving is also a reversible physical change. When salt is dissolved into water, the salt is said to have entered the aqueous state. The salt may be regained by boiling off the water, leaving the salt behind.

Chemical Change

Chemical changes occur when bonds are broken and/or formed between molecules or atoms. This means that one substance with a certain set of properties (such as melting point, color, taste, etc) is turned into a different substance with different properties. Chemical changes are frequently harder to reverse than physical changes.

One good example of a chemical change is burning a candle. The act of burning paper actually results in the formation of new chemicals (carbon dioxide and water) from the burning of the wax. Another example of a chemical change is what occurs when natural gas is burned in your furnace. This time, on the left there is a molecule of methane, $\mathrm{CH_4}$, and two molecules of oxygen, $\mathrm{O_2}$; on the right are two molecules of water, $\mathrm{H_2O}$, and one molecule of carbon dioxide, $\mathrm{CO_2}$. In this case, not only has the appearance changed, but the structure of the molecules has also changed. The new substances do not have the same chemical properties as the original ones. Therefore, this is a chemical change.

cK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



Figure 2.2.2.2: Burning of wax to generate water and carbon dioxide is a chemical reaction. (CC-SA-BY-3.0; Andrikkos)

We can't actually see molecules breaking and forming bonds, although that's what defines chemical changes. We have to make other observations to indicate that a chemical change has happened. Some of the evidence for chemical change will involve the energy changes that occur in chemical changes, but some evidence involves the fact that new substances with different properties are formed in a chemical change.

Observations that help to indicate chemical change include:

- Temperature changes (either the temperature increases or decreases).
- Light given off.
- Unexpected color changes (a substance with a different color is made, rather than just mixing the original colors together).
- Bubbles are formed (but the substance is not boiling—you made a substance that is a gas at the temperature of the beginning materials, instead of a liquid).
- Different smell or taste (do not taste your chemistry experiments, though!).
- A solid forms if two clear liquids are mixed (look for *floaties*—technically called a precipitate).

Example 2.2.2.1

Label each of the following changes as a physical or chemical change. Give evidence to support your answer.

a. Boiling water.
b. A nail rusting.
c. A green solution and colorless solution are mixed. The resulting mixture is a solution with a pale green color.
d. Two colorless solutions are mixed. The resulting mixture has a yellow precipitate.

Solution

a. Physical: boiling and melting are physical changes. When water boils, no bonds are broken or formed. The change could be written: $\mathrm{H_2O}\,(l) \rightarrow \mathrm{H_2O}\,(g)$
b. Chemical: The dark grey nail changes color to form an orange flaky substance (the rust); this must be a chemical change. Color changes indicate chemical change. The following reaction occurs: $\mathrm{Fe} + \mathrm{O_2} \rightarrow \mathrm{Fe_2O_3}$
c. Physical: because none of the properties changed, this is a physical change. The green mixture is still green and the colorless solution is still colorless. They have just been spread together. No color *change* occurred or other evidence of chemical change.
d. Chemical: the formation of a precipitate and the color change from colorless to yellow indicate a chemical change.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Exercise 2.2.2.1

Label each of the following changes as a physical or chemical change.

a. A mirror is broken.
b. An iron nail corroded in moist air
c. Copper metal is melted.
d. A catalytic converter changes nitrogen dioxide to nitrogen gas and oxygen gas.

Answer a: available at the end of this section.

Answer b: available at the end of this section.

Answer c: available at the end of this section.

Answer d: available at the end of this section.

Separating Mixtures Through Physical Changes

Homogeneous mixtures (solutions) can be separated into their component substances by physical processes that rely on differences in some physical property, such as differences in their boiling points. Two of these separation methods are distillation and crystallization. Distillation makes use of differences in volatility, a measure of how easily a substance is converted to a gas at a given temperature. A simple distillation apparatus for separating a mixture of substances, at least one of which is a liquid. The most volatile component boils first and is condensed back to a liquid in the water-cooled condenser, from which it flows into the receiving flask. If a solution of salt and water is distilled, for example, the more volatile component, pure water, collects in the receiving flask, while the salt remains in the distillation flask.

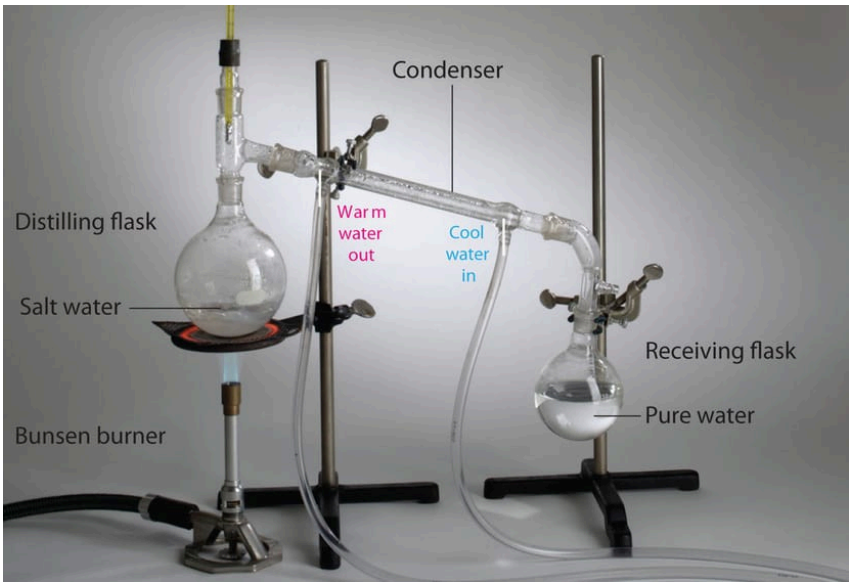


Figure 2.2.2.3**:** *The Distillation of a Solution of Table Salt in Water. The solution of salt in water is heated in the distilling flask until it boils. The resulting vapor is enriched in the more volatile component (water), which condenses to a liquid in the cold condenser and is then collected in the receiving flask.*

Parts of a distillation setup: Bunsen burner, salt water in distilling flask, condenser with cool water in and warm water out, pure water in receiving flask

Mixtures of two or more liquids with different boiling points can be separated with a more complex distillation apparatus. One example is the refining of crude petroleum into a range of useful products: aviation fuel, gasoline, kerosene, diesel fuel, and lubricating oil (in the approximate order of decreasing volatility). Another example is the distillation of alcoholic spirits such as brandy or whiskey. This relatively simple procedure caused more than a few headaches for federal authorities in the 1920s during the era of Prohibition, when illegal stills proliferated in remote regions of the United States.

Another example for using physical properties to separate mixtures is filtration (Figure 2.2.2.4). Filtration is any mechanical, physical or biological operation that separates solids from fluids (liquids or gases) by adding a medium through which only the fluid can pass. The fluid that passes through is called the filtrate. There are many different methods of filtration; all aim to attain the separation of substances. Separation is achieved by some form of interaction between the substance or objects to be removed and the filter. The substance that is to pass through the filter must be a fluid, i.e. a liquid or gas. Methods of filtration vary depending on the location of the targeted material, i.e. whether it is dissolved in the fluid phase or suspended as a solid.

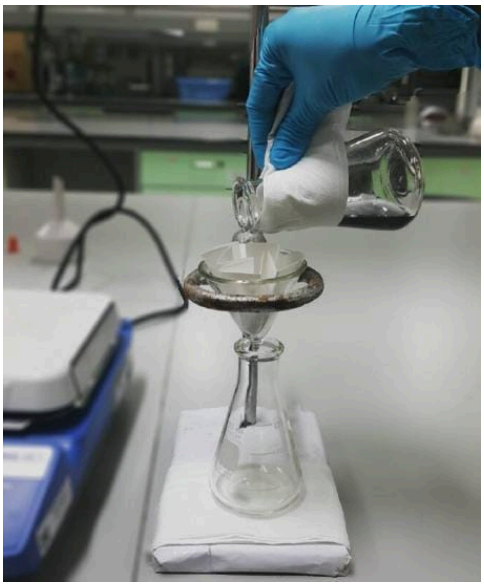


Figure 2.2.2.4: *Filtration for the separation of solids from a hot solution. (CC BY-SA 4.0; Suman6395).*

Summary

- Chemists make a distinction between two different types of changes that they study—physical changes and chemical changes.
- Physical changes are changes that do not alter the identity of a substance.
- Chemical changes are changes that occur when one substance is turned into another substance.
- Chemical changes are frequently harder to reverse than physical changes. Observations that indicate a chemical change has occurred include color change, temperature change, light given off, formation of bubbles, formation of a precipitate, etc.

Contributions & Attributions

-

- Boundless (www.boundless.com)

Answers

Exercise 2.2.2.1
physical change

Exercise 2.2.2.1
chemical change

Exercise 2.2.2.1
physical change

Exercise 2.2.2.1
chemical change

This page titled 2.2.2: Changes in Matter - Physical and Chemical Changes is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 3.6: Changes in Matter - Physical and Chemical Changes by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

2.2.3: Conservation of Mass - There is No New Matter

It may seem as though burning destroys matter, but the same amount, or mass, of matter still exists after a campfire as before. Look at Figure 2.2.3.1 below. It shows that when wood burns, it combines with oxygen and changes not only to ashes, but also to carbon dioxide and water vapor. The gases float off into the air, leaving behind just the ashes. Suppose you had measured the mass of the wood before it burned and the mass of the ashes after it burned. Also suppose you had been able to measure the oxygen used by the fire and the gases produced by the fire. What would you find? The total mass of matter after the fire would be the same as the total mass of matter before the fire.

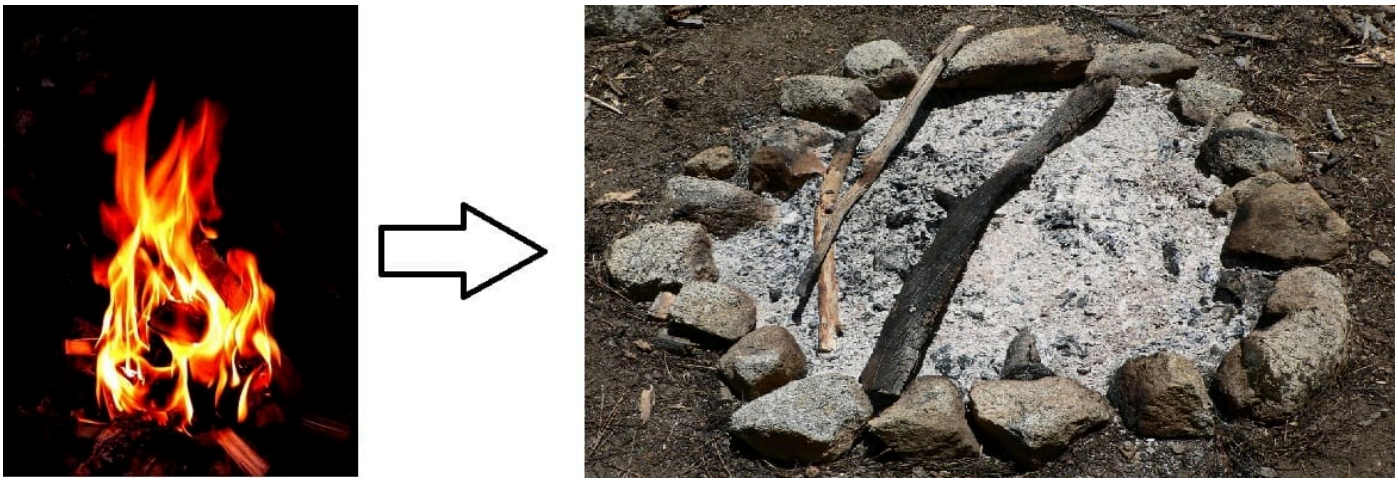


Figure 2.2.3.1: Burning is a chemical process. The flames are caused as a result of a fuel undergoing combustion (burning). (CC BY-SA 2.5; Einar Helland Berger for fire and Walter Siegmund for ash).

Law of Conservation of Mass

The law of conservation of mass was created in 1789 by a French chemist, Antoine Lavoisier. The **law of conservation of mass** states that matter cannot be created or destroyed in a chemical reaction. For example, when wood burns, the mass of the soot, ashes, and gases equals the original mass of the charcoal and the oxygen when it first reacted. So the mass of the product equals the mass of the reactant. A reactant is the chemical reaction of two or more elements to make a new substance, and a product is the substance that is formed as the result of a chemical reaction (Video 2.2.3.1). Matter and its corresponding mass may not be able to be created or destroyed, but can change forms to other substances like liquids, gases, and solids.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Video 2.2.3.1: This is a nice little demonstration showing the Conservation of Mass in action.

If you witness a 300 kg tree burn to the ground, there are only ashes left after the burn, and all of them together weigh 10 kg. It may make you wonder where the other 290 kg went. The missing 290 kg was released into the atmosphere as smoke, so the only thing left that you can see is the 10 kg of ash. If you know the law of conservation of mass, then you know that the other 290 kg

has to go somewhere, because it has to equal the mass of the tree before it burnt down.

Example 2.2.3.1

If heating 10.0 grams of calcium carbonate ($CaCO_3$) produces 4.4 g of carbon dioxide (CO_2) and 5.6 g of calcium oxide (CaO), show that these observations are in agreement with the law of conservation of mass.

Solution

$$\text{Mass of the reactants} = \text{Mass of the products}$$
$$10.0\,\text{g of } CaCO_3 = 4.4\,\text{g of } CO_2 + 5.6\,\text{g of CaO}$$
$$10.0\,\text{g of reactant} = 10.0\,\text{g of products}$$

Because the mass of the reactant is equal to the mass of the products, the observations are in agreement with the law of conservation of mass.

Exercise 2.2.3.1

Potassium hydroxide (KOH) readily reacts with carbon dioxide (CO_2) to produce potassium carbonate (K_2CO_3) and water (H_2O). How many grams of potassium carbonate are produced if 224.4 g of KOH reacts with 88.0 g of CO_2? The reaction also produces 36.0 g of water.

Answer available at the end of this section.

The Law is also applicable to both chemical and physical changes. For example, if you have an ice cube that melts into a liquid and you heat that liquid up, it becomes a gas. It will appear to have disappeared, but is still there.

Summary

- Burning and other changes in matter do not destroy matter.
- The mass of matter is always the same before and after the changes occur.
- The law of conservation of mass states that matter cannot be created or destroyed.

Contributions & Attributions

- Binod Shrestha (University of Lorraine)

Answers

Exercise 2.2.3.1

276.4 g of potassium carbonate

This page titled 2.2.3: Conservation of Mass - There is No New Matter is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 3.7: Conservation of Mass - There is No New Matter by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

2.3: Summary of Matter and Changes

Learning Objective

- Learn the basic terms used to describe matter

The definition of chemistry—the study of the interactions of matter with other matter and with energy—uses some terms that should also be defined. We start the study of chemistry by defining basic terms.

Matter

Matter is anything that has mass and takes up space. A book is matter, a computer is matter, food is matter, and dirt in the ground is matter. Sometimes matter may be difficult to identify. For example, air is matter, but because it is so thin compared to other matter (e.g., a book, a computer, food, and dirt), we sometimes forget that air has mass and takes up space. Things that are not matter include thoughts, ideas, emotions, and hopes.

Example 2.3.1

Which of the following is matter and not matter?

a. a hot dog
b. love
c. a tree

Solution

a. A hot dog has mass and takes up space, so it is matter.
b. Love is an emotion, and emotions are not matter.
c. A tree has mass and takes up space, so it is matter.

Exercise 2.3.1

Which of the following is matter and not matter?

a. the moon
b. an idea for a new invention

Answer a available at the end of this section.

To understand matter and how it changes, we need to be able to describe matter. There are two basic ways to describe matter: physical properties and chemical properties.

Physical properties

Physical properties are characteristics that describe matter as it exists. Some physical characteristics of matter are shape, color, size, and temperature. An important physical property is the **phase** (or **state**) of matter. The three fundamental phases of matter are solid, liquid, and gas (Figure 2.3.1).



Figure 2.3.1: The Phases of Matter. Chemistry recognizes three fundamental phases of matter: solid (left), liquid (middle), and gas (right). (CC BY-SA 3.0; Spirit469). The solid state depicted is an ice sculpture of an angel, the liquid state is a drop of water, and the gas is clouds made of water vapor.

Chemical Properties

Chemical properties are characteristics of matter that describe how matter changes form in the presence of other matter. Does a sample of matter burn? Burning is a chemical property. Does it behave violently when put in water? This reaction is a chemical property as well (Figure 2.3.2). In the following chapters, we will see how descriptions of physical and chemical properties are important aspects of chemistry.



Figure 2.3.2: Chemical Properties. The fact that this match burns is a chemical property of the match. (Sebastian Ritter (Rise0011)).

Physical Change

A physical change occurs when a sample of matter changes one or more of its physical properties. For example, a solid may melt (Figure 2.3.3), or alcohol in a thermometer may change volume as the temperature changes. A physical change does not affect the chemical composition of matter.



Figure 2.3.2: Physical Changes: The solid ice melts into liquid water—a physical change. A time-lapse animation of ice cubes melting in a glass over 50 minutes. (Public Domain; Moussa).

Chemical Change

Chemical change is the process of demonstrating a chemical property, such as the burning match in Figure 2.3.2 "Chemical Properties". As the matter in the match burns, its chemical composition changes, and new forms of matter with new physical properties are created. Note that chemical changes are frequently accompanied by physical changes, as the new matter will likely have different physical properties from the original matter.

Example 2.3.2

Describe each process as a physical change or a chemical change.

a. Water in the air turns into snow.
b. A person's hair is cut.
c. Bread dough becomes fresh bread in an oven.

Solution

a. Because the water is going from a gas phase to a solid phase, this is a physical change.
b. Your long hair is being shortened. This is a physical change.
c. Because of the oven's temperature, chemical changes are occurring in the bread dough to make fresh bread. These are chemical changes. (In fact, a lot of cooking involves chemical changes.)

Exercise 2.3.2

Identify each process as a physical change or a chemical change.

a. A fire is raging in a fireplace.
b. Water is warmed to make a cup of coffee.

Answer a available at the end of this section.

Substance

A sample of matter that has the same physical and chemical properties throughout is called a substance. Sometimes the phrase *pure substance* is used, but the word *pure* isn't needed. The definition of the term *substance* is an example of how chemistry has a specific definition for a word that is used in everyday language with a different, vaguer definition. Here, we will use the term *substance* with its strict chemical definition.

Chemistry recognizes two different types of substances: elements and compounds.

Element

An element is the simplest type of chemical substance; it cannot be broken down into simpler chemical substances by ordinary chemical means. There are 118 elements known to science, of which 80 are stable. (The other elements are radioactive, a condition we will consider in Chapter 15.) Each element has its own unique set of physical and chemical properties. Examples of elements include iron, carbon, and gold.

Compound

A compound is a combination of more than one element. The physical and chemical properties of a compound are different from the physical and chemical properties of its constituent elements; that is, it behaves as a completely different substance. There are over 50 million compounds known, and more are being discovered daily. Examples of compounds include water, penicillin, and sodium chloride (the chemical name for common table salt).

Mixtures

Physical combinations of more than one substance are called mixtures. Elements and compounds are not the only ways in which matter can be present. We frequently encounter objects that are physical combinations of more than one element or compound—mixtures. There are two types of mixtures.

Heterogeneous Mixture

A heterogeneous mixture is a mixture composed of two or more substances. It is easy to tell, sometimes by the naked eye, that more than one substance is present.

Homogeneous Mixture/ Solution

A homogeneous mixture is a combination of two or more substances that is so intimately mixed, that the mixture behaves as a single substance. Another word for a homogeneous mixture is a solution. Thus, a combination of salt and steel wool is a heterogeneous mixture because it is easy to see which particles of the matter are salt crystals and which are steel wool. On the other hand, if you take salt crystals and dissolve them in water, it is very difficult to tell that you have more than one substance present just by looking—even if you use a powerful microscope. The salt dissolved in water is a homogeneous mixture, or a solution (Figure 2.3.3).



Figure 2.3.3: Types of Mixtures © Thinkstock. On the left, the combination of two substances is a heterogeneous mixture because the particles of the two components look different. On the right, the salt crystals have dissolved in the water so finely that you cannot tell that salt is present. The homogeneous mixture appears like a single substance.

Example 2.3.3

Identify the following combinations as heterogeneous mixtures or homogenous mixtures.

a. soda water (carbon dioxide is dissolved in water)
b. a mixture of iron metal filings and sulfur powder (both iron and sulfur are elements)

Solution

a. Because carbon dioxide is dissolved in water, we can infer from the behavior of salt crystals dissolved in water that carbon dioxide dissolved in water is (also) a homogeneous mixture.
b. Assuming that the iron and sulfur are simply mixed together, it should be easy to see what is iron and what is sulfur, so this is a heterogeneous mixture.

Exercise 2.3.3

a. the human body
b. an amalgam, a combination of some other metals dissolved in a small amount of mercury

Answer a available at the end of this section.

There are other descriptors that we can use to describe matter, especially elements. We can usually divide elements into metals and nonmetals, and each set shares certain (but not always all) properties.

Metal

A metal is an element that conducts electricity and heat well and is shiny, silvery, solid, ductile, and malleable. At room temperature, metals are solid (although mercury is a well-known exception). A metal is ductile because it can be drawn into thin wires (a property called *ductility*); and malleable because it can be pounded into thin sheets (a property called *malleability*).

Nonmetal

A non-metal is an element that is brittle when solid, and does not conduct electricity or heat very well. Non-metals cannot be made into thin sheets or wires (Figure 2.3.4). Nonmetals also exist in a variety of phases and colors at room temperature.

Semi-metals

Some elements have properties of both metals and nonmetals and are called semi-metals (or metalloids). We will see later how these descriptions can be assigned rather easily to various elements.



Figure 2.3.4: Semimetals © Thinkstock. On the left is some elemental mercury, the only metal that exists as a liquid at room temperature. It has all the other expected properties of a metal. On the right, elemental sulfur is a yellow nonmetal that usually is found as a powder.

Describing Matter Flowchart

"Describing Matter" is a flowchart of the relationships among the different ways of describing matter.

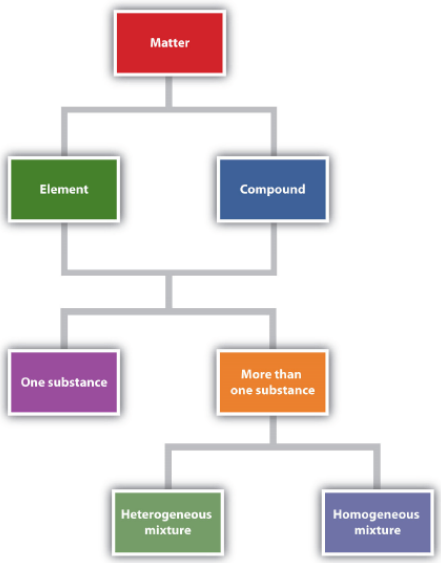


Figure 2.3.5: Describing Matter. This flowchart shows how matter can be described. Matter forks into element & compound which fork into 1 substance & more than 1 substance. More than 1 substance is homogenous or heterogenous.

Example 2.3.1: Chemistry is Everywhere: In the Morning

Most people have a morning ritual, a process that they go through every morning to get ready for the day. Chemistry appears in many of these activities.

- If you take a shower or bath in the morning, you probably use soap, shampoo, or both. These items contain chemicals that interact with the oil and dirt on your body and hair to remove them and wash them away. Many of these products also contain chemicals that make you smell good; they are called *fragrances*.
- When you brush your teeth in the morning, you usually use toothpaste, a form of soap, to clean your teeth. Toothpastes typically contain tiny, hard particles called *abrasives* that physically scrub your teeth. Many toothpastes also contain fluoride, a substance that chemically interacts with the surface of the teeth to help prevent cavities.
- Perhaps you take vitamins, supplements, or medicines every morning. Vitamins and other supplements contain chemicals your body needs in small amounts to function properly. Medicines are chemicals that help combat diseases and promote health.
- Perhaps you make some fried eggs for breakfast. Frying eggs involves heating them enough so that a chemical reaction occurs to cook the eggs.
- After you eat, the food in your stomach is chemically reacted so that the body (mostly the intestines) can absorb food, water, and other nutrients.
- If you drive or take the bus to school or work, you are using a vehicle that probably burns gasoline, a material that burns fairly easily and provides energy to power the vehicle. Recall that burning is a chemical change.

These are just a few examples of how chemistry impacts your everyday life. And we haven't even made it to lunch yet!



Figure 2.3.6: Chemistry in Real Life © Thinkstock. Examples of chemistry can be found everywhere—in personal hygiene products, food, and motor vehicles. Personal hygiene products (left), food (middle), and motor vehicles (right) images next to one another.

Key Takeaways

- Chemistry is the study of matter and its interactions with other matter and energy.
- Matter is anything that has mass and takes up space.
- Matter can be described in terms of physical properties and chemical properties.
- Physical properties and chemical properties of matter can change.
- Matter is composed of elements and compounds.
- Combinations of different substances are called mixtures.
- Elements can be described as metals, nonmetals, and semi-metals.

Answers

Exercise 2.3.1

The moon is matter.

The invention itself may be matter, but the idea for it is not.

Exercise 2.3.2

chemical change

physical change

Exercise 2.3.3

heterogeneous mixture

homogeneous mixture

This page titled 2.3: Summary of Matter and Changes is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 1.2: Basic Definitions by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/beginning-chemistry.

2.4: Density

Learning Objectives

- Define density.
- Use density as a conversion factor.

Density (ρ) is a physical property found by dividing the mass of an object by its volume. Regardless of the sample size, density is always constant. For example, the density of a pure sample of tungsten is always 19.25 grams per cubic centimeter. This means that whether you have one gram or one kilogram of the sample, the density will never vary. The equation, as we already know, is as follows:

$$\text{Density} = \frac{\text{Mass}}{\text{Volume}}$$

or just

$$\rho = \frac{m}{V} \tag{2.4.1}$$

Based on this equation, it's clear that density can, and does, vary from element to element and substance to substance due to differences in the relationship of mass and volume. Pure water, for example, has a density of 0.998 g/cm^3 at 25° C. The average densities of some common substances are in Table 2.4.1. Anything with a lower density than water will float, while anything that is higher than water will sink.

Table 2.4.1: Densities of Common Substances

Substance	Density at 25°C (g/cm3)
blood	1.035
body fat	0.918
gold	19.3
aluminum	2.7
iron	7.87
mercury	13.6

Density can be measured for all substances—solids, liquids and gases. For solids and liquids, density is often reported using the units of g/cm^3. Densities of gases, which are significantly lower than the densities of solids and liquids, are often given using units of g/L.

Example 2.4.1: Ethyl Alcohol

Calculate the density of a 30.2 mL sample of ethyl alcohol with a mass of 23.71002 g

Solution

This is a direct application of Equation 2.4.1:

$$\rho = \frac{23.71002\,g}{30.2\,mL} = 0.785\,g/mL$$

Exercise 2.4.1

a. Find the density (in kg/L) of a sample that has a volume of 36.5 L and a mass of 10.0 kg.
b. If you have a 2.130 mL sample of acetic acid with mass 0.002234 kg, what is the density in kg/L?

Answer a available at the end of this section.

Density as a Conversion Factor

Conversion factors can also be constructed for converting between different kinds of units. For example, density can be used to convert between the mass and the volume of a substance. Consider mercury, which is a liquid at room temperature and has a density of 13.6 g/mL. The density tells us that 13.6 g of mercury have a volume of 1 mL. We can write that relationship as follows:

13.6 g mercury = 1 mL mercury

This relationship can be used to construct two conversion factors:

$$\frac{13.6\ g}{1\ mL} = 1$$

and

$$\frac{1\ mL}{13.6\ g} = 1$$

Which one do we use? It depends, as usual, on the units we need to cancel and introduce. For example, suppose we want to know the mass of 2.0 mL of mercury. We would use the conversion factor that has milliliters on the bottom (so that the milliliter unit cancels) and grams on top, so that our final answer has a unit of mass:

$$2.0\ \cancel{\text{mL}} \times \frac{13.6\ \text{g}}{1\ \cancel{\text{mL}}} = 27.2\ \text{g} = 27\ \text{g}$$

In the last step, we limit our final answer to two significant figures because the volume quantity has only two significant figures; the 1 in the volume unit is considered an exact number, so it does not affect the number of significant figures. The other conversion factor would be useful if we were given a mass and asked to find volume, as the following example illustrates.

Density can be used as a conversion factor between mass and volume.

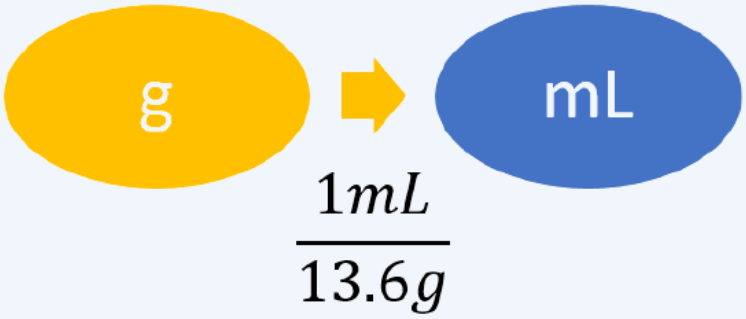
Example 2.4.2: Mercury Thermometer Steps for Problem Solving

A mercury thermometer for measuring a patient's temperature contains 0.750 g of mercury. What is the volume of this mass of mercury?

Solution

Solution to Example 2.9.2

Steps for Problem Solving	**Unit Conversion**

Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: 0.750 g Find: mL
List other known quantities.	13.6 g/mL (density of mercury)
Prepare a concept map.	
Calculate.	$0.750\ \cancel{g} \times \frac{1\ \text{mL}}{13.6\ \cancel{g}} = 0.055147...\ \text{mL} \approx 0.0551\ \text{mL}$ We have limited the final answer to three significant figures.

Exercise 2.4.2

What is the volume of 100.0 g of air if its density is 1.3 g/L?

Answer available at the end of this section.

Summary

- Density is defined as the mass of an object divided by its volume.
- Density can be used as a conversion factor between mass and volume.

Contributions & Attributions

Answers

Exercise 2.4.1

$0.274\ kg/L$

$1.049\ kg/L$

Exercise 2.4.2

$77\ L$

This page titled 2.4: Density is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 2.9: Density by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

2.5: TEMPERATURE, HEAT, AND ENERGY

Terms such as energy, heat, and temperature are sometimes used somewhat interchangeably although they mean very different things. In this section, we will define these terms based on how they are used in science. We will also introduce some units and conversions for each of them.

2.5.1: Energy

2.5.2: Energy and Chemical and Physical Change

2.5.3: Temperature - Random Motion of Molecules and Atoms

This page titled 2.5: Temperature, Heat, and Energy is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

2.5.1: Energy

Learning Objectives

- Define heat and work.
- Distinguish between kinetic energy and potential energy.
- State the law of conservation of matter and energy.

Just like matter, energy is a term that we are all familiar with and use on a daily basis. Before you go on a long hike, you eat an *energy* bar; every month, the *energy* bill is paid; on TV, politicians argue about the *energy* crisis. But what is energy? If you stop to think about it, energy is very complicated. When you plug a lamp into an electric socket, you see energy in the form of light, but when you plug a heating pad into that same socket, you only feel warmth. Without energy, we couldn't turn on lights, we couldn't brush our teeth, we couldn't make our lunch, and we couldn't travel to school. In fact, without energy, we couldn't even wake up because our bodies require energy to function. We use energy for every single thing that we do, whether we are awake or asleep.

Ability to Do Work or Produce Heat

When we speak of *using* energy, we are really referring to *transferring* energy from one place to another. When you use energy to throw a ball, you transfer energy from your body to the ball, and this causes the ball to fly through the air. When you use energy to warm your house, you transfer energy from the furnace to the air in your home, and this causes the temperature in your house to rise. Although energy is used in many kinds of different situations, all of these uses rely on energy being transferred in one of two ways. Energy can be transferred as *heat* or as *work*.

When scientists speak of ***heat***, they are referring to energy that is transferred from an object with a higher temperature to an object with a lower temperature, as a result of the temperature difference. Heat will "flow" from the hot object to the cold object until both end up at the same temperature. When you cook with a metal pot, you witness energy being transferred in the form of heat. Initially, only the stove element is hot—the pot and the food inside the pot are cold. As a result, heat moves from the hot stove element to the cold pot. After a while, enough heat is transferred from the stove to the pot, raising the temperature of the pot and all of its contents (Figure 2.5.1.1).



Figure 2.5.1.1: Energy is transferred as heat from the hot stove element to the cooler pot until the pot and its contents become just as hot as the element. The energy that is transferred into the pot as heat is then used to cook the food.

Heat is only one way in which energy can be transferred. Energy can also be transferred as **work**. The scientific definition of work is *force (any push or pull) applied over a distance*. When you push an object and cause it to move, you do work, and you transfer some of *your* energy to the object. At this point, it's important to warn you of a common misconception. Sometimes we think that

the amount of work done can be measured by the amount of effort put in. This may be true in everyday life, but it is not true in science. By definition, scientific work requires that force be applied *over a distance*. It does not matter how hard you push or how hard you pull. If you have not moved the object, you haven't done any work.

So far, we've talked about the two ways in which energy can be transferred from one place, or object, to another. Energy can be transferred as heat, and energy can be transferred as work. But the question still remains—*what IS energy*?

Kinetic Energy

Machines use energy, our bodies use energy, energy comes from the sun, energy comes from volcanoes, energy causes forest fires, and energy helps us to grow food. With all of these seemingly different types of energy, it's hard to believe that there are really only two different *forms* of energy: kinetic energy and potential energy. **Kinetic energy** is energy associated with motion. When an object is moving, it has kinetic energy. When the object stops moving, it has no kinetic energy. While all moving objects have kinetic energy, not all moving objects have the same amount of kinetic energy. The amount of kinetic energy possessed by an object is determined by its mass and its speed. The heavier an object is and the faster it is moving, the more kinetic energy it has.

Kinetic energy is very common, and it's easy to spot examples of it in the world around you. Sometimes we even try to capture kinetic energy and use it to power things like our home appliances. If you are from California, you might have driven through the Tehachapi Pass near Mojave or the Montezuma Hills in Solano County and seen the windmills lining the slopes of the mountains (Figure 2.5.1.2). These are two of the larger wind farms in North America. As wind rushes along the hills, the kinetic energy of the moving air particles turns the windmills, trapping the wind's kinetic energy so that people can use it in their houses and offices.



Figure 2.5.1.2: A wind farm in Solano County harnesses the kinetic energy of the wind. (CC BY-SA 3.0 Unported; BDS2006 at Wikipedia)

Potential Energy

Potential energy is *stored* energy. It is energy that remains available until we choose to use it. Think of a battery in a flashlight. If left on, the flashlight battery will run out of energy within a couple of hours, and the flashlight will die. If, however, you only use the flashlight when you need it, and turn it off when you don't, the battery will last for days or even months. The battery contains a certain amount of energy, and it will power the flashlight for a certain amount of time, but because the battery stores *potential* energy, you can choose to use the energy all at once, or you can save it and only use a small amount at a time.

Any stored energy is potential energy. There are a lot of different ways in which energy can be stored, and this can make potential energy very difficult to recognize. In general, an object has potential energy because of its *position relative to another object*. For example, when a rock is held above the earth, it has potential energy because of its position relative to the ground. This is *potential energy* because the energy is *stored* for as long as the rock is held in the air. Once the rock is dropped, though, the stored energy is released as kinetic energy as the rock falls.

Chemical Energy

There are other common examples of potential energy. A ball at the top of a hill stores potential energy until it is allowed to roll to the bottom. When two magnets are held next to one another, they store potential energy too. For some examples of potential energy, though, it's harder to see how "position" is involved. In chemistry, we are often interested in what is called **chemical potential energy**. Chemical potential energy is energy stored in the atoms, molecules, and chemical bonds that make up matter. How does this depend on position?

As you learned earlier, the world, and all of the chemicals in it are made up of atoms and molecules. These store potential energy that is dependent on their positions relative to one another. Of course, you can't see atoms and molecules. Nevertheless, scientists do know a lot about the ways in which atoms and molecules interact, and this allows them to figure out how much potential energy is stored in a specific quantity (like a cup or a gallon) of a particular chemical. *Different chemicals have different amounts of potential energy* because they are made up of different atoms, and those atoms have different positions relative to one another.

> Since different chemicals have different amounts of potential energy, scientists will sometimes say that potential energy depends not only on ***position***, but also on ***composition***. Composition affects potential energy because it determines which molecules and atoms end up next to one another. For example, the total potential energy in a cup of pure water is different than the total potential energy in a cup of apple juice, because the cup of water and the cup of apple juice are *composed* of different amounts of different chemicals.

At this point, you may wonder just how useful chemical potential energy is. If you want to release the potential energy stored in an object held above the ground, you just drop it. But how do you get potential energy out of chemicals? It's actually not difficult. Use the fact that different chemicals have *different amounts of potential energy*. If you start with chemicals that have a lot of potential energy and allow them to react and form chemicals with less potential energy, all the extra energy that was in the chemicals at the beginning, but not at the end, is released.

Units of Energy

Energy is measured in one of two common units: the calorie and the joule. The joule (J) is the SI unit of energy. The calorie is familiar because it is commonly used when referring to the amount of energy contained within food. A **calorie** (cal) is the quantity of heat required to raise the temperature of 1 gram of water by $1^{\circ}\mathrm{C}$. For example, raising the temperature of $100\ \mathrm{g}$ of water from $20^{\circ}\mathrm{C}$ to $22^{\circ}\mathrm{C}$ would require $100 \times 2 = 200\ \mathrm{cal}$.

Calories contained within food are actually kilocalories (kcal). In other words, if a certain snack contains 85 food calories, it actually contains $85\ \mathrm{kcal}$ or $85,000\ \mathrm{cal}$. In order to make the distinction, the dietary calorie is written with a capital C.

$$1\ \text{kilocalorie} = 1\ \text{Calorie} = 1000\ \text{calories}$$

To say that the snack "contains" 85 Calories means that $85\ \mathrm{kcal}$ of energy are released when that snack is processed by your body.

Heat changes in chemical reactions are typically measured in joules rather than calories. The conversion between a joule and a calorie is shown below.

$$1\ \mathrm{J} = 0.2390\ \mathrm{cal}\ \text{or}\ 1\ \mathrm{cal} = 4.184\ \mathrm{J}$$

We can calculate the amount of heat released in kilojoules when a 400 Calorie hamburger is digested.

$$400\ \mathrm{Cal} = 400\ \mathrm{kcal} \times \frac{4.184\ \mathrm{kJ}}{1\ \mathrm{kcal}} = 1.67 \times 10^{3}\ \mathrm{kJ}$$

Summary

- Any time we use energy, we transfer energy from one object to another.
- Energy can be transferred in one of two ways: as heat, or as work.
- Heat is the term given to energy that is transferred from a hot object to a cooler object due to the difference in their

temperatures.
- Work is the term given to energy that is transferred as a result of a force applied over a distance.
- Energy comes in two fundamentally different forms: kinetic energy and potential energy.
- Kinetic energy is the energy of motion.
- Potential energy is stored energy that depends on the position of an object relative to another object.
- Chemical potential energy is a special type of potential energy that depends on the positions of different atoms and molecules relative to one another.
- Chemical potential energy can also be thought of according to its dependence on chemical composition.
- Energy can be converted from one form to another. The total amount of mass and energy in the universe is conserved.

Contributions & Attributions

-

- Wikibooks

This page titled 2.5.1: Energy is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 3.8: Energy by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

2.5.2: Energy and Chemical and Physical Change

Learning Objectives

- Define endothermic and exothermic reactions.
- Describe how heat is transferred in endothermic and exothermic reactions.
- Determine whether a reaction is endothermic or exothermic through observations, temperature changes, or an energy diagram.

So far, we have talked about how energy exists as either *kinetic energy* or *potential energy* and how energy can be transferred as either *heat* or *work*. While it's important to understand the difference between kinetic energy and potential energy and the difference between heat and work, the truth is, energy is constantly changing. Kinetic energy is constantly being turned into potential energy, and potential energy is constantly being turned into kinetic energy. Likewise, energy that is transferred as work might later end up transferred as heat, while energy that is transferred as heat might later end up being used to do work.

Even though energy can change form, it must still follow one fundamental law: *Energy cannot be created or destroyed, it can only be changed from one form to another*. This law is known as the **Law of Conservation of Energy**. In a lot of ways, energy is like money. You can exchange quarters for dollar bills and dollar bills for quarters, but no matter how often you convert between the two, you will not end up with any more or any less money than you started with. Similarly, you can transfer (or spend) money using cash, or transfer money using a credit card; but you still spend the same amount of money, and the store still makes the same amount of money.

A campfire is an example of basic thermochemistry. The reaction is initiated by the application of heat from a match. The reaction converting wood to carbon dioxide and water (among other things) continues, releasing heat energy in the process. This heat energy can then be used to cook food, roast marshmallows, or just keep warm when it's cold outside.



An image of a campfire with colored flames, made by the burning of a garden hose in a copper pipe. (CC SA-BY 3.0; Jared)

Exothermic and Endothermic Processes

When physical or chemical changes occur, they are generally accompanied by a transfer of energy. The **law of conservation**

of energy states that in any physical or chemical process, energy is neither created nor destroyed. In other words, the entire energy in the universe is conserved. In order to better understand the energy changes taking place during a reaction, we need to define two parts of the universe: *the system* and *the surroundings*. The **system** is the specific portion of matter in a given space that is being studied during an experiment or an observation. The **surroundings** are everything in the universe that is not part of the system. In practical terms for a laboratory chemist, the system is the particular chemicals being reacted, while the surroundings are the immediate vicinity within the room. During most processes, energy is exchanged between the system and the surroundings. If the system loses a certain amount of energy, that same amount of energy is gained by the surroundings. If the system gains a certain amount of energy, that energy is supplied by the surroundings.

A chemical reaction or physical change is **endothermic** if heat is absorbed by the system from the surroundings. In the course of an endothermic process, the system gains heat from the surroundings and so the temperature of the surroundings decreases. The quantity of heat for a process is represented by the letter q. The sign of q for an endothermic process is positive because the system is gaining heat. A chemical reaction or physical change is **exothermic** if heat is released by the system into the surroundings. Because the surroundings are gaining heat from the system, the temperature of the surroundings increases. The sign of q for an exothermic process is negative because the system is losing heat.

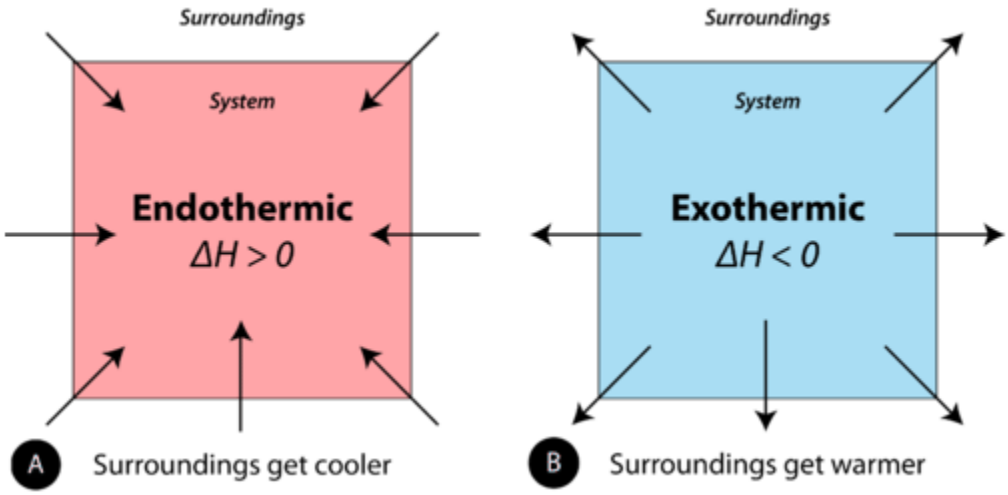


Figure 2.5.2.1: (A) Endothermic reaction. (B) Exothermic reaction.

Endothermic reaction: surroundings get cooler and delta H is greater than 0, Exothermic reaction: surroundings get warmer and delta H is less than 0

During phase changes, energy changes are usually involved. For example, when solid dry ice vaporizes (physical change), carbon dioxide molecules absorb energy. When liquid water becomes ice, energy is released. Remember that all chemical reactions involve a change in the bonds of the reactants. The bonds in the reactants are broken and the bonds of the products are formed. Chemical bonds have **potential energy** or "stored energy". Because we are changing the bonding, this means we are also changing how much of this "stored energy" there is in a reaction.

Energy changes are frequently shown by drawing an energy diagram. Energy diagrams show the stored/hidden energy of the reactants and products as well as the activation energy. If, on an energy diagram, the products have more stored energy than the reactants started with, the reaction is endothermic. You had to give the reaction energy. If, on the energy diagram, the products have less stored energy than the reactants started with, the reaction is exothermic.

Example 2.5.2.1

Label each of the following processes as endothermic or exothermic.

a. water boiling
b. gasoline burning
c. ice forming on a pond

Solution

a. Endothermic—you must put a pan of water on the stove and give it heat in order to get water to boil. Because you are adding heat/energy, the reaction is endothermic.
b. Exothermic—when you burn something, it feels hot to you because it is giving off heat into the surroundings.
c. Exothermic—think of ice forming in your freezer instead. You put water into the freezer, which takes heat out of the water, to get it to freeze. Because heat is being pulled out of the water, it is exothermic. Heat is leaving.

Exercise 2.5.2.1

Label each of the following processes as endothermic or exothermic.

a. water vapor condensing
b. gold melting

Answer (a) available at the end of this section.

Answer (b) available at the end of this section.

Summary

Phase changes involve changes in energy. All chemical reactions involve changes in energy. This may be a change in heat, electricity, light, or other forms of energy. Reactions that absorb energy are endothermic. Reactions that release energy are exothermic.

Answers

Exercise 2.5.2.1
exothermic

Exercise 2.5.2.1
endothermic

This page titled 2.5.2: Energy and Chemical and Physical Change is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 3.9: Energy and Chemical and Physical Change by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

2.5.3: Temperature - Random Motion of Molecules and Atoms

Learning Objectives

- Identify the different between temperature and heat.
- Recognize the different scales used to measure temperature

The concept of temperature may seem familiar to you, but many people confuse temperature with heat. **Temperature** is a measure of how hot or cold an object is relative to another object (its thermal energy content), whereas **heat** is the flow of thermal energy between objects with different temperatures. Temperature is a measure of the average kinetic energy of the particles in matter. In everyday usage, temperature indicates a measure of how hot or cold an object is. Temperature is an important parameter in chemistry. When a substance changes from solid to liquid, it is because there was in increase in the temperature of the material. Chemical reactions usually proceed faster if the temperature is increased. Many unstable materials (such as enzymes) will be viable longer at lower temperatures.



Figure 2.5.3.1: The glowing charcoal on the left represents high kinetic energy, while the snow and ice on the right are of much lower kinetic energy.

Three different scales are commonly used to measure temperature: Fahrenheit (expressed as °F), Celsius (°C), and Kelvin (K). Thermometers measure temperature by using materials that expand or contract when heated or cooled. Mercury or alcohol thermometers, for example, have a reservoir of liquid that expands when heated and contracts when cooled, so the liquid column lengthens or shortens as the temperature of the liquid changes.



Figure 2.5.3.2: Daniel Gabriel Fahrenheit (left), Anders Celsius (center), and Lord Kelvin (right).

The Fahrenheit Scale

The first thermometers were glass and contained alcohol, which expanded and contracted as the temperature changed. The German scientist, Daniel Gabriel Fahrenheit used mercury in the tube, an idea put forth by Ismael Boulliau. The Fahrenheit scale

was first developed in 1724 and tinkered with for some time after that. The main problem with this scale is the arbitrary definitions of temperature. The freezing point of water was defined as $32^{\circ}\mathrm{F}$ and the boiling point as $212^{\circ}\mathrm{F}$. The Fahrenheit scale is typically not used for scientific purposes.

The Celsius Scale

The Celsius scale of the metric system is named after Swedish astronomer Anders Celsius (1701-1744). The Celsius scale sets the freezing point and boiling point of water at $0^{\circ}\mathrm{C}$ and $100^{\circ}\mathrm{C}$ respectively. The distance between those two points is divided into 100 equal intervals, each of which is one degree. Another term sometimes used for the Celsius scale is "centigrade" because there are 100 degrees between the freezing and boiling points of water on this scale. However, the preferred term is "Celsius".

The Kelvin Scale

The Kelvin temperature scale is named after Scottish physicist and mathematician Lord Kelvin (1824-1907). It is based on molecular motion, with the temperature of $0\ \mathrm{K}$, also known as absolute zero, being the point where all molecular motion ceases. The freezing point of water on the Kelvin scale is $273.15\ \mathrm{K}$, while the boiling point is $373.15\ \mathrm{K}$. Notice that there is no "degree" used in the temperature designation. Unlike the Fahrenheit and Celsius scales where temperatures are referred to as "degrees F" or "degrees C", we simply designate temperatures in the Kelvin scale as kelvins.

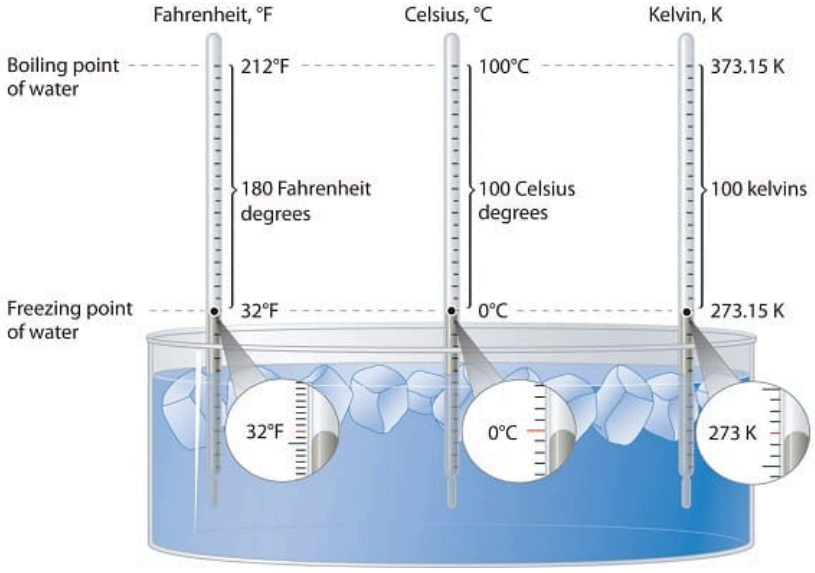


Figure 2.5.3.1: A Comparison of the Fahrenheit, Celsius, and Kelvin Temperature Scales. Because the difference between the freezing point of water and the boiling point of water is 100° on both the Celsius and Kelvin scales, the size of a degree Celsius (°C) and a kelvin (K) are precisely the same. In contrast, both a degree Celsius and a kelvin are 9/5 the size of a degree Fahrenheit (°F). (CC BY-SA-NC 3.0; anonymous)

Converting Between Scales

The Kelvin is the same size as the Celsius degree, so measurements are easily converted from one to the other. The freezing point of water is 0°C = 273.15 K; the boiling point of water is 100°C = 373.15 K. The Kelvin and Celsius scales are related as follows:

$$T\,(\text{in °C}) + 273.15 = T\,(\text{in K}) \tag{3.10.1}$$

$$T\ \ (\text{in K}) - 273.15 = T\ (\text{in °C}) \tag{3.10.2}$$

Degrees on the Fahrenheit scale, however, are based on an English tradition of using 12 divisions, just as 1 ft = 12 in. The relationship between degrees Fahrenheit and degrees Celsius is as follows: where the coefficient for degrees Fahrenheit is exact. (Some calculators have a function that allows you to convert directly between °F and °C.) There is only one temperature for which the numerical value is the same on both the Fahrenheit and Celsius scales: −40°C = −40°F. The relationship between the scales

is as follows:

$$°C = \frac{(°F - 32)}{1.8} \tag{3.10.3}$$

$$°F = 1.8 \times (°C) + 32 \tag{3.10.4}$$

Example 2.5.3.1: Temperature Conversions

A student is ill with a temperature of 103.5°F. What is her temperature in °C and K?

Solution

Converting from Fahrenheit to Celsius requires the use of Equation 3.10.3:

$$°C = \frac{(103.5°F - 32)}{1.8} \tag{2.5.3.1}$$

$$= 39.7\,°C \tag{2.5.3.2}$$

Converting from Celsius to Kelvin requires the use of Equation 3.10.1:

$$K = 39.7\,°C + 273.15 \tag{2.5.3.3}$$

$$= 312.9\,K \tag{2.5.3.4}$$

Exercise 2.5.3.1

Convert each temperature to °C and °F.

a. the temperature of the surface of the sun (5800 K)
b. the boiling point of gold (3080 K)
c. the boiling point of liquid nitrogen (77.36 K)

Answer (a) available at the end of this section.

Answer (b) available at the end of this section.

Answer (c) available at the end of this section.

Summary

Three different scales are commonly used to measure temperature: Fahrenheit (expressed as °F), Celsius (°C), and Kelvin (K).

Contributions & Attributions

Answers

Exercise 2.5.3.1
5527 K, 9980 °F

Exercise 2.5.3.1
2807 K, 5084 °F

Exercise 2.5.3.1
-195.79 K, -320.42 °F

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CC BY NC SA
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

This page titled 2.5.3: Temperature - Random Motion of Molecules and Atoms is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 3.10: Temperature - Random Motion of Molecules and Atoms by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

2.6: HEAT CAPACITY

In the previous section, we introduced the ideas of temperature, heat, and energy. We will build on those ideas in this section by looking at how we can measure properties of a substance to determine how much he is gained or lost from that substance when the temperature changes.

2.6.1: Temperature Changes - Heat Capacity

2.6.2: Energy and Heat Capacity Calculations

This page titled 2.6: Heat Capacity is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

2.6.1: Temperature Changes - Heat Capacity

If a swimming pool and wading pool, both full of water at the same temperature, were subjected to the same input of heat energy, the wading pool would certainly rise in temperature more quickly than the swimming pool. The heat capacity of an object depends on both its mass and its chemical composition. Because of its much larger mass, the swimming pool of water has a larger heat capacity than the wading pool.

Heat Capacity and Specific Heat

Different substances respond to heat in different ways. If a metal chair sits in the bright sun on a hot day, it may become quite hot to the touch. An equal mass of water in the same sun will not become nearly as hot. We would say that water has a high **heat capacity** (the amount of heat required to raise the temperature of an object by $1^{\circ}\mathrm{C}$). Water is very resistant to changes in temperature, while metals in general are not. The **specific heat** of a substance is the amount of energy required to raise the temperature of 1 gram of the substance by $1^{\circ}\mathrm{C}$. The symbol for specific heat is c_p, with the p subscript referring to the fact that specific heats are measured at constant pressure. The units for specific heat can either be joules per gram per degree $(\mathrm{J/g^{\circ}C})$ or calories per gram per degree $(\mathrm{cal/g^{\circ}C})$ (Table 2.6.1.1). This text will use $\mathrm{J/g^{\circ}C}$ for specific heat.

$$\text{specific heat} = \frac{\text{heat}}{\text{mass} \times \mathrm{cal/g^{\circ}C}}$$

Table 2.6.1.1 lists heat capacities for a variety of substances you might be familiar with. Notice that water has a very high specific heat compared to most other substances. Also notice that each substance has a temperature listed to correspond with the heat capacity. Heat capacity will vary somewhat with temperature, so if you see other values documented in a different location it might be due to this variation.

Table 2.6.1.1: Specific Heat Capacities

Substance	Specific Heat Capacity	Substance	Specific Heat Capacity
H_2 gas (25°C)	14.30	Dry air (0°C)	1.004
He gas (25°C)	5.193	aluminum (25°C)	0.897
$H_2O\,(l)$ (20°C)	4.184	Graphite (25°C)	0.710
lithium (25°C)	3.58	Argon (25°C)	0.520
ethyl alcohol (25°C)	2.44	Iron (25°C)	0.449
ethylene glycol (25°C)	2.41	Copper (25°C)	0.385
ice (-10°C)	2.05	Silver (25°C)	0.233
steam (100°C)	2.03	Gold (25°C)	0.129

Water is commonly used as a coolant for machinery because it is able to absorb large quantities of heat (see table above). Coastal climates are much more moderate than inland climates because of the presence of the ocean. Water in lakes or oceans absorbs heat from the air on hot days and releases it back into the air on cool days.



Figure 2.6.1.1: This power plant in West Virginia, like many others, is located next to a large lake so that the water from the lake can be used as a coolant. Cool water from the lake is pumped into the plant, while warmer water is pumped out of the plant and back into the lake.

Summary

- Heat capacity is the amount of heat required to raise the temperature of an object by $1^{\circ}\mathrm{C}$).
- The specific heat of a substance is the amount of energy required to raise the temperature of 1 gram of the substance by $1^{\circ}\mathrm{C}$.

This page titled 2.6.1: Temperature Changes - Heat Capacity is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 3.11: Temperature Changes - Heat Capacity by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

2.6.2: Energy and Heat Capacity Calculations

Learning Objectives

- To relate heat transfer to temperature change.

Heat is a familiar manifestation of transferring energy. When we touch a hot object, energy flows from the hot object into our fingers, and we perceive that incoming energy as the object being “hot.” Conversely, when we hold an ice cube in our palms, energy flows from our hand into the ice cube, and we perceive that loss of energy as “cold.” In both cases, the temperature of the object is different from the temperature of our hand, so we can conclude that differences in temperatures are the ultimate cause of heat transfer.

The specific heat of a substance can be used to calculate the temperature change that a given substance will undergo when it is either heated or cooled. The equation that relates heat (q) to specific heat (c_p), mass (m), and temperature change (ΔT) is shown below.

$$q = c_p \times m \times \Delta T$$

The heat that is either absorbed or released is measured in joules. The mass is measured in grams. The change in temperature is given by $\Delta T = T_f - T_i$, where T_f is the final temperature and T_i is the initial temperature.

Every substance has a characteristic specific heat, which is reported in units of cal/g•°C or cal/g•K, depending on the units used to express Δ*T*. The specific heat of a substance is the amount of energy that must be transferred to or from 1 g of that substance to change its temperature by 1°. Table $2.6.2.1$ lists the specific heats for various materials.

Table $2.6.2.1$*: Specific Heats of Some Common Substances*

Substance	Specific Heat $(\mathrm{J/g^{\circ}C})$
Water (l)	4.18
Water (s)	2.06
Water (g)	1.87
Ammonia (g)	2.09
Ethanol (l)	2.44
Aluminum (s)	0.897
Carbon, graphite (s)	0.709
Copper (s)	0.385
Gold (s)	0.129
Iron (s)	0.449
Lead (s)	0.129
Mercury (l)	0.140
Silver (s)	0.233

The *direction* of heat flow is not shown in heat = *mc*Δ*T*. If energy goes into an object, the total energy of the object increases, and the values of heat Δ*T* are positive. If energy is coming out of an object, the total energy of the object decreases, and the values of heat and Δ*T* are negative.

Example 2.6.2.1

A $15.0\ \text{g}$ piece of cadmium metal absorbs $134\ \text{J}$ of heat while rising from 24.0°C to 62.7°C. Calculate the specific heat of cadmium.

Solution

Step 1: List the known quantities and plan the problem.

Known

- Heat $= q = 134\ \text{J}$
- Mass $= m = 15.0\ \text{g}$
- $\Delta T = 62.7^\circ\text{C} - 24.0^\circ\text{C} = 38.7^\circ\text{C}$

Unknown

- c_p of cadmium $=?\ \text{J/g}^\circ\text{C}$

The specific heat equation can be rearranged to solve for the specific heat.

Step 2: Solve.

$$c_p = \frac{q}{m \times \Delta T} = \frac{134\ \text{J}}{15.0\ \text{g} \times 38.7^\circ\text{C}} = 0.231\ \text{J/g}^\circ\text{C}$$

Step 3: Think about your result.

The specific heat of cadmium, a metal, is fairly close to the specific heats of other metals. The result has three significant figures.

Since most specific heats are known (Table $2.6.2.1$), they can be used to determine the final temperature attained by a substance when it is either heated or cooled. Suppose that a $60.0\ \text{g}$ of water at 23.52°C was cooled by the removal of $813\ \text{J}$ of heat. The change in temperature can be calculated using the specific heat equation:

$$\Delta T = \frac{q}{c_p \times m} = \frac{813\ \text{J}}{4.18\ \text{J/g}^\circ\text{C} \times 60.0\ \text{g}} = 3.24^\circ\text{C}$$

Since the water was being cooled, the temperature decreases. The final temperature is:

$$T_f = 23.52^\circ\text{C} - 3.24^\circ\text{C} = 20.28^\circ\text{C}$$

Example 2.6.2.2

What quantity of heat is transferred when a 150.0 g block of iron metal is heated from 25.0°C to 73.3°C? What is the direction of heat flow?

Solution

We can use heat = $mc\Delta T$ to determine the amount of heat, but first we need to determine ΔT. Because the final temperature of the iron is 73.3°C and the initial temperature is 25.0°C, ΔT is as follows:

$$\Delta T = T_{\text{final}} - T_{\text{initial}} = 73.3^\circ\text{C} - 25.0^\circ\text{C} = 48.3^\circ\text{C}$$

The mass is given as 150.0 g, and Table $2.6.2.1$ gives the specific heat of iron as 0.108 cal/g•°C. Substitute the known values into heat = $mc\Delta T$ and solve for amount of heat:

$$\text{heat} = (150.0\ \text{g})\left(0.108\ \frac{\text{cal}}{\text{g} \cdot {}^\circ\text{C}}\right)(48.3^\circ\text{C}) = 782\ \text{cal}$$

Note how the gram and °C units cancel algebraically, leaving only the calorie unit, which is a unit of heat. Because the temperature of the iron increases, energy (as heat) must be flowing *into* the metal.

Exercise 2.6.2.1

What quantity of heat is transferred when a 295.5 g block of aluminum metal is cooled from 128.0°C to 22.5°C? What is the direction of heat flow?

Answer available at the end of this section.

Example 2.6.2.3

A 10.3 g sample of a reddish-brown metal gave off 71.7 cal of heat as its temperature decreased from 97.5°C to 22.0°C. What is the specific heat of the metal? Can you identify the metal from the data in Table 2.6.2.1?

Solution

The question gives us the heat, the final and initial temperatures, and the mass of the sample. The value of ΔT is as follows:

$$\Delta T = T_{\text{final}} - T_{\text{initial}} = 22.0°\text{C} - 97.5°\text{C} = -75.5°\text{C}$$

If the sample gives off 71.7 cal, it loses energy (as heat), so the value of heat is written as a negative number, –71.7 cal. Substitute the known values into heat = $mc\Delta T$ and solve for c:

$$-71.7 \text{ cal} = (10.3 \text{ g})(c)(-75.5°\text{C})$$

$$c = \frac{-71.7 \text{ cal}}{(10.3 \text{ g})(-75.5^{\circ}\text{C})}$$

$$c = 0.0923 \text{ cal/g•°C}$$

This value for specific heat is very close to that given for copper in Table 2.6.2.1.

Exercise 2.6.2.2

A 10.7 g crystal of sodium chloride (NaCl) has an initial temperature of 37.0°C. What is the final temperature of the crystal if 147 cal of heat were supplied to it?

Answer available at the end of this section.

Answer available at the end of this section.

Summary

Specific heat calculations are illustrated.

Answers

Exercise 2.6.2.1

Heat leaves the aluminum block.

Exercise 2.6.2.2

Exercise 2.6.2.2

This page titled 2.6.2: Energy and Heat Capacity Calculations is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 3.12: Energy and Heat Capacity Calculations by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

2.E: Matter and Energy (Exercises)

2.1-2.3 Matter and Changes

1. Match the following terms with their meaning.

Terms	Definitions
(a) Mass	a. a measure of the total quantity of matter in an object
(b) Volume	b. a measure of how strongly gravity pulls on an object
(c) Weight	c. a measure of the space occupied by an object

2. Identify each as either matter or not matter.

   - a book
   - hate
   - light
   - a car
   - a fried egg

3. Give an example of matter in each phase: solid, liquid, or gas.

4. Does each statement represent a physical property or a chemical property?

- Sulfur is yellow.
- Steel wool burns when ignited by a flame.
- A gallon of milk weighs over eight pounds.

5. Does each statement represent a physical property or a chemical property?

- A pile of leaves slowly rots in the backyard.
- In the presence of oxygen, hydrogen can interact to make water.
- Gold can be stretched into very thin wires.

6. Does each statement represent a physical change or a chemical change?

- Water boils and becomes steam.
- Food is converted into usable form by the digestive system.
- The alcohol in many thermometers freezes at about −40 degrees Fahrenheit.

7. Does each statement represent a physical change or a chemical change?

- Graphite, a form of elemental carbon, can be turned into diamond, another form of carbon, at very high temperatures and pressures.
- The house across the street has been painted a new color.
- The elements sodium and chlorine come together to make a new substance called sodium chloride.

8. Distinguish between an element and a compound. About how many of each are known?

9. What is the difference between a homogeneous mixture and a heterogeneous mixture?

10. Identify each as a heterogeneous mixture or a homogeneous mixture.

- Salt is mixed with pepper.
- Sugar is dissolved in water.

- Pasta is cooked in boiling water.

11. Identify each as a heterogeneous mixture or a homogeneous mixture.

- air
- dirt
- a television set

Answers

2. 1. matter
   2. not matter
   3. not matter
   4. matter
   5. matter

8. An element is a fundamental chemical part of a substance; there are about 115 known elements. A compound is a combination of elements that acts as a different substance ; there are over 50 million known substances.

11. 1. homogeneous
    2. heterogeneous
    3. heterogeneous

2.4 Density

0. Give at least three possible units for density.

1. What are the units when density is inverted? Give three examples.
2. A sample of iron has a volume of 48.2 cm^3. What is its mass?
3. A sample of air has a volume of 1,015 mL. What is its mass?
4. The volume of hydrogen used by the *Hindenburg*, the German airship that exploded in New Jersey in 1937, was 2.000×10^8 L. If hydrogen gas has a

   density of 0.0899 g/L, what mass of hydrogen was used by the airship?

5. The volume of an Olympic-sized swimming pool is 2.50×10^9 cm^3. If the pool is filled with alcohol (d = 0.789 g/cm^3), what mass of alcohol is in the pool?
6. A typical engagement ring has 0.77 cm^3 of gold. What mass of gold is present?
7. A typical mercury thermometer has 0.039 mL of mercury in it. What mass of mercury is in the thermometer?
8. What is the volume of 100.0 g of lead if lead has a density of 11.34 g/cm^3?
9. What is the volume of 255.0 g of uranium if uranium has a density of 19.05 g/cm^3?
10. What is the volume in liters of 222 g of neon if neon has a density of 0.900 g/L?
11. What is the volume in liters of 20.5 g of sulfur hexafluoride if sulfur hexafluoride has a density of 6.164 g/L?
12. Which has the greater volume, 100.0 g of iron (d = 7.87 g/cm^3) or 75.0 g of gold (d = 19.3 g/cm^3)?
13. Which has the greater volume, 100.0 g of hydrogen gas (d = 0.0000899 g/cm^3) or 25.0 g of argon gas (d = 0.00178 g/cm^3)?

Answers:

0. g/mL, g/L, and kg/L (answers will vary)

1.
2. 379 g
3.

4. 1.80×10^7 g
5.
6. 15 g
7.
8. $8.818\ cm^3$
9.
10. 247 L
11.
12. The 100.0 g of iron has the greater volume

2.5 Temperature

1. Perform the following conversions.

255°F to degrees Celsius

–255°F to degrees Celsius

50.0°C to degrees Fahrenheit

–50.0°C to degrees Fahrenheit

2. Perform the following conversions.

1,065°C to degrees Fahrenheit

–222°C to degrees Fahrenheit

400.0°F to degrees Celsius

200.0°F to degrees Celsius

3. Perform the following conversions.

100.0°C to kelvins

–100.0°C to kelvins

100 K to degrees Celsius

300 K to degrees Celsius

4. Perform the following conversions.

1,000.0 K to degreesCelsius

50.0 K to degrees Celsius

37.0°C to kelvins

–37.0°C to kelvins

Convert 0 K to degreesCelsius. What is the significance of the temperature in

degrees Celsius?

Convert 0 K to degreesFahrenheit. What is the significance of the temperature in degreesFahrenheit?

5. The hottest temperature ever recorded on the surface of the earth was 136°F in Libya in 1922. What is the temperature in

degrees Celsius and in kelvins?

6. The coldest temperature ever recorded on the surface of the earth was –128.6°F in Vostok, Antarctica, in 1983. What is the temperature in

degrees Celsius and in kelvins?

Answers

1. 124°C
2. –159°C
3. 122°F
4. –58°F
5.
6.
    1. 373 K
    2. 173 K
    3. –173°C
    4. 27°C
7.
8. –273°C. This is the lowest possible temperature in

    degrees

    Celsius.
9.
10. 57.8°C; 331 K
11.

2.6 Energy and Heat Capacities.

Note: you will need to consult a table of heat capacities, such as the one included here, in order to solve many of these problems.

0. A pot of water is set on a hot burner of a stove. What is the direction of heat flow?

1. Some uncooked macaroni is added to a pot of boiling water. What is the direction of heat flow?

2. How much energy in calories is required to heat 150 g of H_2O from 0°C to 100°C?

3. How much energy in calories is required to heat 125 g of Fe from 25°C to 150°C?

4. If 250 cal of heat were added to 43.8 g of Al at 22.5°C, what is the final temperature of the aluminum?

5. If 195 cal of heat were added to 33.2 g of Hg at 56.2°C, what is the final temperature of the mercury?

6. A sample of copper absorbs 145 cal of energy, and its temperature rises from 37.8°C to 41.7°C. What is the mass of the copper?

7. A large, single crystal of sodium chloride absorbs 98.0 cal of heat. If its temperature rises from 22.0°C to 29.7°C, what is the mass of the NaCl crystal?

8. If 1.00 g of each substance in this Table were to absorb 100 cal of heat, which substance would experience the largest temperature change?

9. If 1.00 g of each substance in this Table were to absorb 100 cal of heat, which substance would experience the smallest temperature change?

10. Determine the heat capacity of a substance if 23.6 g of the substance gives off 199 cal of heat when its temperature changes from 37.9°C to 20.9°C.

11. What is the heat capacity of gold if a 250 g sample needs 133 cal of energy to increase its temperature from 23.0°C to 40.1°C?

Answers

Edit section

1. Heat flows into the pot of water.
3. 15,000 cal
5. 49.0°C
7. 404 g
9. glass would experience the largest temperature change.
11. 0.496 cal/g•°C

This page titled 2.E: Matter and Energy (Exercises) is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

3: ELEMENTS AND COMPOUNDS

There were 2 categories of matter introduced in chapter 2 that we will look at in more detail here: elements and compounds. Elements are made up of atoms and are the building blocks of matter. We need to understand a little bit about atoms in order to understand how the rest of matter works. Section 3.1 details the properties of atoms, including the even smaller particles that they are made up of, and why those particles affect properties of the atom itself. Section 3.2 provides a shortened summary of the ideas introduced in section 3.1. Sections 3.3 through 3.5 discuss some of the different possibilities for compounds. It is important to understand the 2 major types of compounds (ionic and covalent) before learning how to name compounds. The naming of compounds is covered in section 3.6.

3.1: Properties of Atoms

3.1.1: Indivisible - The Atomic Theory

3.1.2: The Properties of Protons, Neutrons, and Electrons

3.1.3: Keeping Track of Subatomic Particles

3.1.4: Looking for Patterns - The Periodic Table

3.1.5: Ions - Losing and Gaining Electrons

3.1.6: Isotopes - When the Number of Neutrons Varies

3.2: Summary of Atomic Theory and the Construction of Atoms

3.3: Compounds

3.3.1: Chemical Formulas - How to Represent Compounds

3.4: A Molecular View of Elements and Compounds

3.5: Ionic Compounds

3.5.1: Ions - Monatomic and Polyatomic

3.5.2: Writing Formulas for Ionic Compounds

3.6: How to Name Compounds

3.6.1: Naming Ionic Compounds

3.6.2: Naming Molecular Compounds

3.6.3: Naming Acids

3.6.4: Nomenclature Summary

3.E: Atoms, Molecules, and Ions (Exercises)

This page titled 3: Elements and Compounds is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

3.1: PROPERTIES OF ATOMS

You learned earlier that all matter in the universe is made out of tiny building blocks called atoms. All modern scientists accept the concept of the atom, but when the concept of the atom was first proposed about 2,500 years ago, ancient philosophers laughed at the idea. It has always been difficult to convince people of the existence of things that are too small to see. But by the early 1800s, there was in fact indirect evidence for the existence of an atom based on experimental results. It wasn't until the mid-1900s that the technology developed to the point where it was possible to detect atoms directly.

By the early 1900s, all science had accepted the existence of atoms to the point that there was resistance to the idea that there could be something smaller than an atom. In fact, the elements were recognized to be existing as atoms and categorized as the smallest possible form of matter. However, it was about this time that the existence of subatomic particles was detected. There was initial resistance to this idea, however it turned out that these subatomic particles were in fact the explanation for the categories that had already been discovered for the elements!

In this section, we will first discuss atomic theory, then the subatomic particles and their properties.

3.1.1: Indivisible - The Atomic Theory

3.1.2: The Properties of Protons, Neutrons, and Electrons

3.1.3: Keeping Track of Subatomic Particles

3.1.4: Looking for Patterns - The Periodic Table

3.1.5: Ions - Losing and Gaining Electrons

3.1.6: Isotopes - When the Number of Neutrons Varies

This page titled 3.1: Properties of Atoms is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

3.1.1: Indivisible - The Atomic Theory

Learning Objectives

- Give a short history of the concept of the atom.
- Describe the contributions of Democritus and Dalton to atomic theory.
- Summarize Dalton's atomic theory and explain its historical development.

About 2,500 years ago, early Greek philosophers believed the entire universe was a single, huge, entity. In other words, "everything was one." They believed that all objects, all matter, and all substances were connected as a single, big, unchangeable "thing." One of the first people to propose "atoms" was a man known as Democritus. As an alternative to the beliefs of the Greek philosophers, he suggested that **atomos**, or atomon—tiny, indivisible, solid objects—make up all matter in the universe.



Figure 3.1.1.1: (left) Democritus by Hendrick ter Brugghen, 1628. Democritus was known as the "laughing philosopher." It was a good thing he liked to laugh, because most other philosophers were laughing at his theories. (right) British physicist and chemist John Dalton (1766-1844). Unlike the Greek philosophers, John Dalton believed in both logical thinking and experimentation.

Democritus then reasoned that changes occur when the many atomos in an object were reconnected or recombined in different ways. Democritus even extended this theory, suggesting that there were different varieties of atomos with different shapes, sizes, and masses. He thought, however, that shape, size, and mass were the only properties differentiating the different types of atomos. According to Democritus, other characteristics, like color and taste, did not reflect properties of the atomos themselves, but rather, resulted from the different ways in which the atomos were combined and connected to one another.

The early Greek philosophers tried to understand the nature of the world through reason and logic, but not through experiment and observation. As a result, they had some very interesting ideas, but they felt no need to justify their ideas based on life experiences. In a lot of ways, you can think of the Greek philosophers as being "all thought and no action." It's truly amazing how much they achieved using their minds, but because they never performed any experiments, they missed or rejected a lot of discoveries that they could have made otherwise. Greek philosophers dismissed Democritus' theory entirely. Sadly, it took over two millennia before the theory of atomos (or "atoms," as they are known today) was fully appreciated.

Greeks: "All Thought and No Action"

Greek philosophers were "all thought and no action" and did not feel the need to test their theories with reality. In contrast, Dalton's efforts were based on experimentation and testing ideas against reality.

While it must be assumed that many more scientists, philosophers, and others studied composition of matter after Democritus, a major leap forward in our understanding of the composition of matter took place in the 1800's with the work of the British scientists John Dalton. He started teaching school at age twelve, and was primarily known as a teacher. In his twenties, he moved to the growing city of Manchester, where he was able to pursue some scientific studies. His work in several areas of science brought him a number of honors. When he died, over 40,000 people in Manchester marched at his funeral.

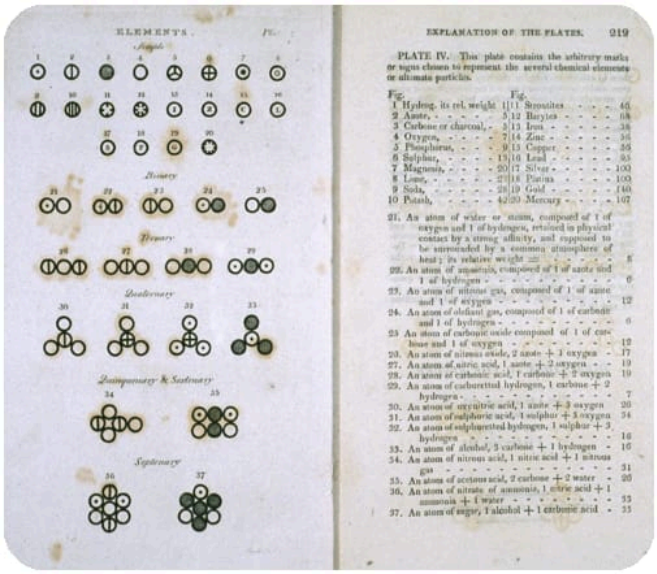
The modern atomic theory, proposed about 1803 by the English chemist John Dalton (Figure 3.1.1.1), is a fundamental concept that states that all elements are composed of atoms. Previously, we defined an atom as the smallest part of an element that maintains the identity of that element. Individual atoms are extremely small; even the largest atom has an approximate diameter of only 5.4×10^{-10} m. With that size, it takes over 18 million of these atoms, lined up side by side, to equal the width of your little finger (about 1 cm).

Dalton studied the weights of various elements and compounds. He noticed that matter always combined in fixed ratios based on weight, or volume in the case of gases. Chemical compounds always contain the same proportion of elements by mass, regardless of amount, which provided further support for Proust's law of definite proportions. Dalton also observed that there could be more than one combination of two elements.

From his experiments and observations, as well as the work from peers of his time, Dalton proposed a new theory of the **atom**. This later became known as Dalton's **atomic theory**. The general tenets of this theory were as follows:

- All matter is composed of extremely small particles called atoms.
- Atoms of a given element are identical in size, mass, and other properties. Atoms of different elements differ in size, mass, and other properties.
- Atoms cannot be subdivided, created, or destroyed.
- Atoms of different elements can combine in simple whole number ratios to form chemical compounds.
- In chemical reactions, atoms are combined, separated, or rearranged.

Dalton's atomic theory has been largely accepted by the scientific community, with the exception of three changes. We know now that (1) an atom can be further subdivided, (2) all atoms of an element are not identical in mass, and (3) using nuclear fission and fusion techniques, we can create or destroy atoms by changing them into other atoms.


ELEMENTS. IV.

Simple

Binary

Ternary

Quaternary

Quinquenary & Sextenary

Septenary

EXPLANATION OF THE PLATES. 219

PLATE IV. This plate contains the arbitrary marks or signs chosen to represent the several chemical elements or ultimate particles.

Fig.		Fig.	
1	Hydrog. its rel. weight	11	Strontites 46
2	Azote, 5	12	Baryte 68
3	Carbone or charcoal, 5	13	Iron 38
4	Oxygen, 7	14	Zinc 56
5	Phosphorus, 9	15	Copper 56
6	Sulphur, 13	16	Lead 95
7	Magnesia, 20	17	Silver 100
8	Lime, 23	18	Platina 100
9	Soda, 28	19	Gold 140
10	Potash, 42	20	Mercury 167

21. An atom of water or steam, composed of 1 of oxygen and 1 of hydrogen, retained in physical contact by a strong affinity, and supposed to be surrounded by a common atmosphere of heat; its relative weight = 8
22. An atom of ammonia, composed of 1 of azote and 1 of hydrogen - 6
23. An atom of nitrous gas, composed of 1 of azote and 1 of oxygen - 12
24. An atom of olefiant gas, composed of 1 of carbone and 1 of hydrogen - 6
25. An atom of carbonic oxide composed of 1 of carbone and 1 of oxygen - 12
26. An atom of nitrous oxide, 2 azote + 1 oxygen - 17
27. An atom of nitric acid, 1 azote + 2 oxygen - 19
28. An atom of carbonic acid, 1 carbone + 2 oxygen 19
29. An atom of carburetted hydrogen, 1 carbone + 2 hydrogen - 7
30. An atom of oxynitric acid, 1 azote + 3 oxygen 20
31. An atom of sulphuric acid, 1 sulphur + 3 oxygen 34
32. An atom of sulphurretted hydrogen, 1 sulphur + 3 hydrogen - 16
33. An atom of alcohol, 3 carbone + 1 hydrogen - 16
34. An atom of nitrous acid, 1 nitric acid + 1 nitrous gas - 31
35. An atom of acetous acid, 2 carbone + 2 water - 26
36. An atom of nitrate of ammonia, 1 nitric acid + 1 ammonia + 1 water - 33
37. An atom of sugar, 1 alcohol + 1 carbonic acid - 33

Figure 3.1.1.2: Dalton's symbols from his text "A New System of Chemical Philosophy."

The evidence for atoms is so great that few doubt their existence. In fact, individual atoms are now routinely observed with state-of-the art technologies. Moreover, they can even be used for making pretty images; or as IBM research demonstrates in Video 3.1.1.1, control of individual atoms can be use used create animations.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Video 3.1.1.1: A Boy And His Atom: The World's Smallest Movie.

A Boy and His Atom is a 2012 stop-motion animated short film released by IBM Research. The movie tells the story of a boy and a wayward atom who meet and become friends. It depicts a boy playing with an atom that takes various forms. It was made by moving carbon monoxide molecules viewed with a scanning tunneling microscope, a device that magnifies them 100 million times. These molecules were moved to create images, which were then saved as individual frames to make the film.

Summary

- 2,500 years ago, Democritus suggested that all matter in the universe was made up of tiny, indivisible, solid objects he called "atomos." However, other Greek philosophers disliked Democritus' "atomos" theory because they felt it was illogical.
- Dalton's Atomic Theory is the first scientific theory to relate chemical changes to the structure, properties, and behavior of the atom. The general tenets of this theory are:
  - All matter is composed of extremely small particles called atoms.
  - Atoms of a given element are identical in size, mass, and other properties. Atoms of different elements differ in size, mass, and other properties.
  - Atoms cannot be subdivided, created, or destroyed.
  - Atoms of different elements can combine in simple whole number ratios to form chemical compounds.
  - In chemical reactions, atoms are combined, separated, or rearranged.

Contributions & Attributions

This page was constructed from content via the following contributor(s) and edited (topically or extensively) by the LibreTexts development team to meet platform style, presentation, and quality:

-
- Marisa Alviar-Agnew (Sacramento City College)
- Henry Agnew (UC Davis)

This page titled 3.1.1: Indivisible - The Atomic Theory is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

3.1.2: The Properties of Protons, Neutrons, and Electrons

Learning Objectives

- Describe the locations, charges, and masses of the three main subatomic particles.
- Determine the number of protons and electrons in an atom.
- Define atomic mass unit (amu).

Dalton's Atomic Theory explained a lot about matter, chemicals, and chemical reactions. Nevertheless, it was not entirely accurate, because contrary to what Dalton believed, atoms can, in fact, be broken apart into smaller subunits or subatomic particles. These subatomic particles which are important to understand in chemistry applications are the electron, neutron, and proton. We will discuss the properties of these particles in this section. To know more about the discovery of these particles, you may look here.

Electrons

Electrons are one of three main types of particles that make up atoms. Unlike protons and neutrons, which consist of smaller, simpler particles, electrons are fundamental particles that do not consist of smaller particles. They are a type of fundamental particle called leptons. All leptons have an electric charge of -1 or 0. Electrons are extremely small. The mass of an electron is only about 1/2000 the mass of a proton or neutron, so electrons contribute virtually nothing to the total mass of an atom. Electrons have an electric charge of -1, which is equal but opposite to the charge of a proton, which is $+1$. All atoms have the same number of electrons as protons, so the positive and negative charges "cancel out", making atoms electrically neutral.

Unlike protons and neutrons, which are located inside the nucleus at the center of the atom, electrons are found outside the nucleus. Because opposite electric charges attract one another, negative electrons are attracted to the positive nucleus. This force of attraction keeps electrons constantly moving through the otherwise empty space around the nucleus. The figure below is a common way to represent the structure of an atom. It shows the electron as a particle orbiting the nucleus, similar to the way that planets orbit the sun. However, this is an incorrect perspective, as quantum mechanics demonstrates that electrons are more complicated.



Figure 3.1.2.1: Electrons are much smaller than protons or neutrons. If an electron was the mass of a penny, a proton or a neutron would have the mass of a large bowling ball!

Protons

A proton is one of three main particles that make up the atom. Protons are found in the nucleus of the atom. This is a tiny, dense

region at the center of the atom. Protons have a positive electrical charge of one $(+1)$ and a mass of 1 atomic mass unit (amu), which is about 1.67×10^{-27} kilograms. Together with neutrons, they make up virtually all of the mass of an atom.

Neutrons

Atoms of all elements—except for most atoms of hydrogen—have neutrons in their nucleus. Unlike protons and electrons, which are electrically charged, neutrons have no charge—they are electrically neutral. That's why the neutrons in the diagram above are labeled n^0. The zero stands for "zero charge". The mass of a neutron is slightly greater than the mass of a proton, which is 1 atomic mass unit (amu). (An atomic mass unit equals about 1.67×10^{-27} kilograms.) A neutron also has about the same diameter as a proton, or 1.7×10^{-15} meters.

As you might have already guessed from its name, the neutron is neutral. In other words, it has no charge whatsoever and is therefore neither attracted to nor repelled from other objects. Neutrons are in every atom (with one exception), and they are bound together with other neutrons and protons in the atomic nucleus.

Before we move on, we must discuss how the different types of subatomic particles interact with each other. When it comes to neutrons, the answer is obvious. Since neutrons are neither attracted to nor repelled from objects, they don't really interact with protons or electrons (beyond being bound into the nucleus with the protons).

Even though electrons, protons, and neutrons are all types of subatomic particles, they are not all the same size. When you compare the masses of electrons, protons, and neutrons, what you find is that electrons have an extremely small mass, compared to either protons or neutrons. On the other hand, the masses of protons and neutrons are fairly similar, although technically, the mass of a neutron is slightly larger than the mass of a proton. Because protons and neutrons are so much more massive than electrons, almost all of the mass of any atom comes from the nucleus, which contains all of the neutrons and protons.

Table 3.1.2.1: Properties of Subatomic Particles

Particle	Symbol	Mass (amu)	Relative Mass (proton = 1)	Relative Charge	Location
proton	p^+	1	1	+1	inside the nucleus
electron	e^-	5.45×10^{-4}	0.00055	–1	outside the nucleus
neutron	n^0	1	1	0	inside the nucleus

Table 3.1.2.1 gives the properties and locations of electrons, protons, and neutrons. The third column shows the masses of the three subatomic particles in "atomic mass units." An **atomic mass unit (**amu**)** is defined as one-twelfth of the mass of a carbon-12 atom. Atomic mass units (amu) are useful, because, as you can see, the mass of a proton and the mass of a neutron are almost exactly 1 in this unit system.

Negative and positive charges of equal magnitude cancel each other out. This means that the negative charge on an electron perfectly balances the positive charge on the proton. In other words, a neutral atom must have exactly one electron for every proton. If a neutral atom has 1 proton, it must have 1 electron. If a neutral atom has 2 protons, it must have 2 electrons. If a neutral atom has 10 protons, it must have 10 electrons. You get the idea. In order to be neutral, an atom must have the same number of electrons and protons.

Summary

- Electrons are a type of subatomic particle with a negative charge.
- Protons are a type of subatomic particle with a positive charge. Protons are bound together in an atom's nucleus as a result of the strong nuclear force.
- Neutrons are a type of subatomic particle with no charge (they are neutral). Like protons, neutrons are bound into the atom's nucleus as a result of the strong nuclear force.
- Protons and neutrons have approximately the same mass, but they are both much more massive than electrons (approximately 2,000 times as massive as an electron).
- The positive charge on a proton is equal in magnitude to the negative charge on an electron. As a result, a neutral atom must have an equal number of protons and electrons.
- The atomic mass unit (amu) is a unit of mass equal to one-twelfth the mass of a carbon-12 atom

Contributions & Attributions

This page was constructed from content via the following contributor(s) and edited (topically or extensively) by the LibreTexts development team to meet platform style, presentation, and quality:

-
- Marisa Alviar-Agnew (Sacramento City College)
- Henry Agnew (UC Davis)

This page titled 3.1.2: The Properties of Protons, Neutrons, and Electrons is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

3.1.3: Keeping Track of Subatomic Particles

Learning Objectives

- Define atomic number.
- Define mass number.
- Determine the number of protons, neutrons, and electrons in an atom.

It's important to be able to distinguish atoms of one element from atoms of another element. Elements are pure substances that make up all other matter, so each one is given a unique name. The names of elements are also represented by unique one- or two-letter symbols, such as H for hydrogen, C for carbon, or He for helium. However, it would more powerful if these names could be used to identify the numbers of protons and neutrons in the atoms. That's where atomic number and mass number are useful.



Figure 3.1.3.1: It is difficult to find qualities that differ between each element, and to distinguish one element from another. Each element, however, does have a unique number of protons. Sulfur has 16 protons, silicon has 14 protons, and gold has 79 protons. Images used with permission (public domain for sulfur and silicon, gold is licensed by CC-BY-SA-NC-ND; Alchemist-hp).

Atomic Number

Scientists distinguish between different elements by counting the number of protons in the nucleus (Table 3.1.3.1). If an atom has only one proton, we know that it's a hydrogen atom. An atom with two protons is always a helium atom. If scientists count four protons in an atom, they know it's a beryllium atom. An atom with three protons is a lithium atom, an atom with five protons is a boron atom, an atom with six protons is a carbon atom . . . the list goes on.

Since an atom of one element can be distinguished from an atom of another element by the number of protons in its nucleus, scientists are always interested in this number, and how this number differs between different elements. The number of protons in an atom is called its **atomic number** (Z). This number is very important because it is unique for atoms of a given element. All atoms of an element have the same number of protons, and every element has a different number of protons in its atoms. For example, all helium atoms have two protons, and no other elements have atoms with two protons.

Table 3.1.3.1: Atoms of the First Six Elements

Name	Protons	Neutrons	Electrons	Atomic Number (Z)	Mass Number (A)
Hydrogen	1	0	1	1	1
Helium	2	2	2	2	4
Lithium	3	4	3	3	7
Beryllium	4	5	4	4	9
Boron	5	6	5	5	11
Carbon	6	6	6	6	12

Of course, since neutral atoms have to have one electron for every proton, an element's atomic number also tells you how many

electrons are in a neutral atom of that element. For example, hydrogen has an atomic number of 1. This means that an atom of hydrogen has one proton, and, if it's neutral, one electron as well. Gold, on the other hand, has an atomic number of 79, which means that an atom of gold has 79 protons, and, if it's neutral, 79 electrons as well.

Neutral Atoms

Atoms are neutral in electrical charge because they have the same number of negative electrons as positive protons (Table 3.1.3.1). Therefore, the atomic number of an atom also tells you how many electrons the atom has. This, in turn, determines many of the atom's chemical properties.

Mass Number

The **mass number** (A) of an atom is the total number of protons and neutrons in its nucleus. The mass of the atom is a unit called the atomic mass unit (amu). One atomic mass unit is the mass of a proton, or about 1.67×10^{-27} kilograms, which is an extremely small mass. A neutron has just a tiny bit more mass than a proton, but its mass is often assumed to be one atomic mass unit as well. Because electrons have virtually no mass, just about all the mass of an atom is in its protons and neutrons. Therefore, the total number of protons and neutrons in an atom determines its mass in atomic mass units (Table 3.1.3.1).

Consider helium again. Most helium atoms have two neutrons in addition to two protons. Therefore the mass of most helium atoms is 4 atomic mass units ($2\ \text{amu}$ for the protons + $2\ \text{amu}$ for the neutrons). However, some helium atoms have more or less than two neutrons. Atoms with the same number of protons but different numbers of neutrons are called isotopes. Because the number of neutrons can vary for a given element, the mass numbers of different atoms of an element may also vary. For example, some helium atoms have three neutrons instead of two (these are called isotopes and are discussed in detail later on).

Why do you think that the "mass number" includes protons and neutrons, but not electrons? You know that most of the mass of an atom is concentrated in its nucleus. The mass of an atom depends on the number of protons and neutrons. You have already learned that the mass of an electron is very, very small compared to the mass of either a proton or a neutron (like the mass of a penny compared to the mass of a bowling ball). Counting the number of protons and neutrons tells scientists about the total mass of an atom.

$$\text{mass number } A = (\text{number of protons}) + (\text{number of neutrons})$$

An atom's mass number is very easy to calculate, provided that you know the number of protons and neutrons in an atom.

Example 4.5.1

What is the mass number of an atom of helium that contains 2 neutrons?

Solution

$(\text{number of protons}) = 2$ (Remember that an atom of helium always has 2 protons.)

$(\text{number of neutrons}) = 2$

$\text{mass number} = (\text{number of protons}) + (\text{number of neutrons})$

$$\text{mass number} = 2 + 2 = 4$$

A **chemical symbol** is a one- or two-letter designation of an element. Some examples of chemical symbols are O for oxygen, Zn for zinc, and Fe for iron. The first letter of a symbol is always capitalized. If the symbol contains two letters, the second letter is lower case. The majority of elements have symbols that are based on their English names. However, some of the elements that have been known since ancient times have maintained symbols that are based on their Latin names, as shown in Table 3.1.3.2.

cK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Table 3.1.3.2: Symbols and Latin Names for Elements

Chemical Symbol	Name	Latin Name
Na	Sodium	Natrium
K	Potassium	Kalium
Fe	Iron	Ferrum
Cu	Copper	Cuprum
Ag	Silver	Argentum
Sn	Tin	Stannum
Sb	Antimony	Stibium
Au	Gold	Aurum
Pb	Lead	Plumbum

Summary

- Elements are pure substances that make up all matter, so each one is given a unique name.
- The names of elements are also represented by unique one- or two-letter symbols.
- Each element has a unique number of protons. An element's atomic number is equal to the number of protons in the nuclei of any of its atoms.
- The mass number of an atom is the sum of the protons and neutrons in the atom.
- Isotopes are atoms of the same element (same number of protons) that have different numbers of neutrons in their atomic nuclei.

This page titled 3.1.3: Keeping Track of Subatomic Particles is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 4.5: Elements- Defined by Their Number of Protons by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

3.1.4: Looking for Patterns - The Periodic Table

Learning Objectives

- Explain how elements are organized into the periodic table.
- Describe how some characteristics of elements relate to their positions on the periodic table.

In the 19th century, many previously unknown elements were discovered, and scientists noted that certain sets of elements had similar chemical properties. For example, chlorine, bromine, and iodine react with other elements (such as sodium) to make similar compounds. Likewise, lithium, sodium, and potassium react with other elements (such as oxygen) to make similar compounds. Why is this so?

In 1864, Julius Lothar Meyer, a German chemist, organized the elements by atomic mass and grouped them according to their chemical properties. Later that decade, Dmitri Mendeleev, a Russian chemist, organized all the known elements according to similar properties. He left gaps in his table for what he thought were undiscovered elements, and he made some bold predictions regarding the properties of those undiscovered elements. When elements were later discovered whose properties closely matched Mendeleev's predictions, his version of the table gained favor in the scientific community. Because certain properties of the elements repeat on a regular basis throughout the table (that is, they are periodic), it became known as the periodic table.

> Mendeleev had to list some elements out of the order of their atomic masses to group them with other elements that had similar properties.

The periodic table is one of the cornerstones of chemistry because it organizes all of the known elements on the basis of their chemical properties. A modern version is shown in Figure 3.1.4.1. Most periodic tables provide additional data (such as atomic mass) in a box that contains each element's symbol. The elements are listed in order of atomic number.

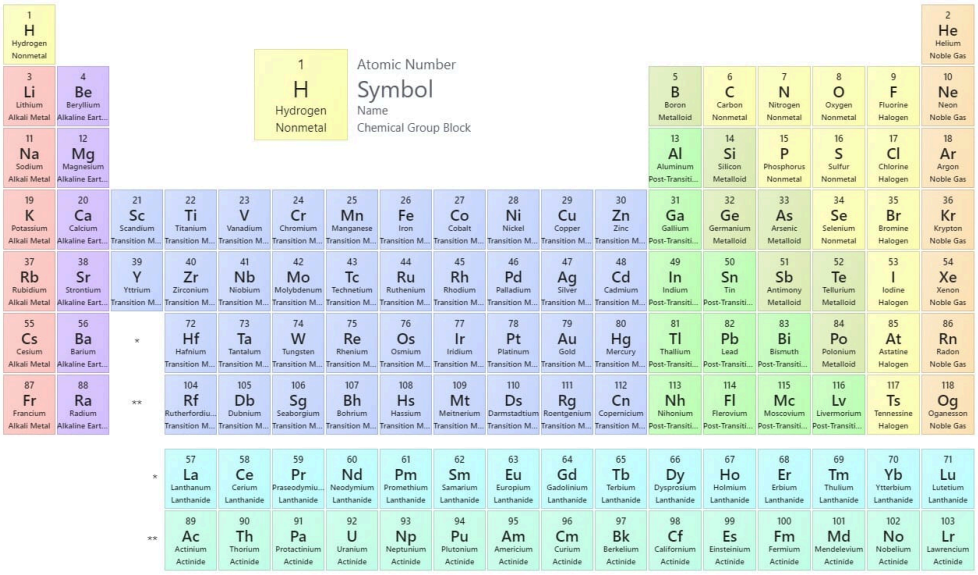


Figure 3.1.4.1: A Modern Periodic Table. A modern periodic table lists elements left to right by atomic number. An interactive Periodic table can be found Periodic Table of Elements. (Public Domain; PubChem via NIH)

Features of the Periodic Table

Elements that have similar chemical properties are grouped in columns called groups (or families). As well as being numbered, some of these groups have names—for example, *alkali metals* (the first column of elements), *alkaline earth metals* (the second column of elements), *halogens* (the next-to-last column of elements), and *noble gases* (the last column of elements).

The word *halogen* comes from the Greek for “salt maker” because these elements combine with other elements to form a group of compounds called salts.

To Your Health: Radon

Radon is an invisible, odorless noble gas that is slowly released from the ground, particularly from rocks and soils whose uranium content is high. Because it is a noble gas, radon is not chemically reactive. Unfortunately, it is radioactive, and increased exposure to it has been correlated with an increased lung cancer risk.

Because radon comes from the ground, we cannot avoid it entirely. Moreover, because it is denser than air, radon tends to accumulate in basements, which if improperly ventilated can be hazardous to a building’s inhabitants. Fortunately, specialized ventilation minimizes the amount of radon that might collect. Special fan-and-vent systems are available that draw air from below the basement floor, before it can enter the living space, and vent it above the roof of a house.

After smoking, radon is thought to be the second-biggest *preventable* cause of lung cancer in the United States. The American Cancer Society estimates that 10% of all lung cancers are related to radon exposure. There is uncertainty regarding what levels of exposure cause cancer, as well as what the exact causal agent might be (either radon or one of its breakdown products, many of which are also radioactive and, unlike radon, not gases). The US Environmental Protection Agency recommends testing every floor below the third floor for radon levels to guard against long-term health effects.

Each row of elements on the periodic table is called a period. Periods have different lengths; the first period has only 2 elements (hydrogen and helium), while the second and third periods have 8 elements each. The fourth and fifth periods have 18 elements each, and later periods are so long that a segment from each is removed and placed beneath the main body of the table.

Certain elemental properties become apparent in a survey of the periodic table as a whole. Every element can be classified as either a metal, a nonmetal, or a metalloid (or semi metal), as shown in Figure 3.1.4.2. A **metal** is a substance that is shiny, typically (but not always) silvery in color, and an excellent conductor of electricity and heat. Metals are also malleable (they can be beaten into thin sheets) and ductile (they can be drawn into thin wires). A **nonmetal** is typically dull and a poor conductor of electricity and heat. Solid nonmetals are also very brittle. As shown in Figure 3.1.4.2, metals occupy the left three-fourths of the periodic table, while nonmetals (except for hydrogen) are clustered in the upper right-hand corner of the periodic table. The elements with properties intermediate between those of metals and nonmetals are called **metalloids** (or **semi-metals**). Elements adjacent to the bold line in the right-hand portion of the periodic table have semimetal properties.

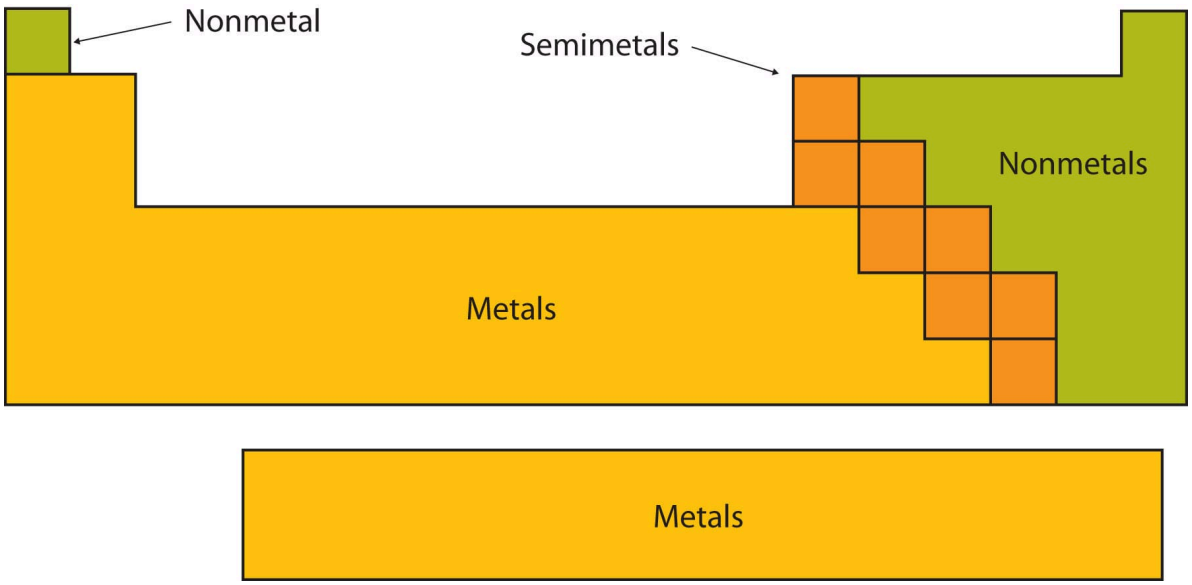


Figure 3.1.4.2: Types of Elements. Elements are either metals, nonmetals, or metalloids (or semi metals). Each group is located in a different part of the periodic table. (CC BY-NC-SA; Anonymous by request)

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CC BY NC SA
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Example 3.1.4.1

Based on its position in the periodic table, classify each element below as metal, a nonmetal, or a metalloid.

a. Se
b. Mg
c. Ge

Solution

a. In Figure 3.1.4.1, selenium lies above and to the right of the diagonal line marking the boundary between metals and nonmetals, so it should be a nonmetal.
b. Magnesium lies to the left of the diagonal line marking the boundary between metals and nonmetals, so it should be a metal.
c. Germanium lies within the diagonal line marking the boundary between metals and nonmetals, so it should be a metalloid.

Exercise 3.1.4.1

Based on its location in the periodic table, do you expect indium to be a nonmetal, a metal, or a metalloid?

Answer available at the end of this section.

Another way to categorize the elements of the periodic table is shown in Figure 3.1.4.3. The first two columns on the left and the last six columns on the right are called the main group elements. The ten-column block between these columns contains the **transition metals**. The two rows beneath the main body of the periodic table contain the **inner transition metals**. The elements in these two rows are also referred to as, respectively, the **lanthanide metals** and the **actinide metals**.

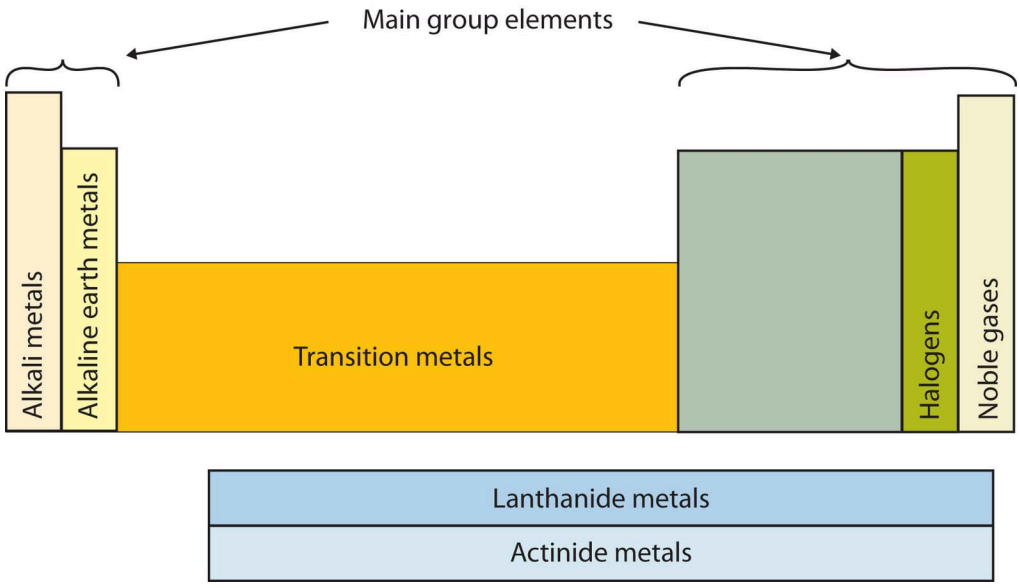


Figure 3.1.4.3: Special Names for Sections of the Periodic Table. (CC BY-NC-SA; Anonymous by request)

Sections of period table: Alkali metals, alkaline earth metals, transition metals, halogens, noble gases, lanthanide metals, actinide metals.

Descriptive Names

As previously noted, the periodic table is arranged so that elements with similar chemical behaviors are in the same group. Chemists often make general statements about the properties of the elements in a group using descriptive names with historical origins.

Group 1: The Alkali Metals

The alkali metals are lithium, sodium, potassium, rubidium, cesium, and francium. Hydrogen is unique in that it is generally placed in Group 1, but it is not a metal.

The compounds of the alkali metals are common in nature and daily life. One example is table salt (sodium chloride); lithium compounds are used in greases, in batteries, and as drugs to treat patients who exhibit manic-depressive, or bipolar, behavior. Although lithium, rubidium, and cesium are relatively rare in nature, and francium is so unstable and highly radioactive that it exists in only trace amounts, sodium and potassium are the seventh and eighth most abundant elements in Earth's crust, respectively.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Video: Alkali metals in water - Chemical elements: properties and reactions. (The Open University via https://youtu.be/6ZY6d6jrq-0)

Group 2: The Alkaline Earth Metals

The alkaline earth metals are beryllium, magnesium, calcium, strontium, barium, and radium. Beryllium, strontium, and barium are rare, and radium is unstable and highly radioactive. In contrast, calcium and magnesium are the fifth and sixth most abundant elements on Earth, respectively; they are found in huge deposits of limestone and other minerals.

Group 17: The Halogens

The halogens are fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, and astatine. The name halogen is derived from the Greek words for "salt forming," which reflects that all of the halogens react readily with metals to form compounds, such as sodium chloride and calcium chloride (used in some areas as road salt).

Compounds that contain the fluoride ion are added to toothpaste and the water supply to prevent dental cavities. Fluorine is also found in Teflon coatings on kitchen utensils. Although chlorofluorocarbon propellants and refrigerants are believed to lead to the depletion of Earth's ozone layer and contain both fluorine and chlorine, the latter is responsible for the adverse effect on the ozone layer. Bromine and iodine are less abundant than chlorine, and astatine is so radioactive that it exists in only negligible amounts in nature.

Group 18: The Noble Gases

The noble gases are helium, neon, argon, krypton, xenon, and radon. Because the noble gases are composed of only single atoms, they are called monatomic. At room temperature and pressure, they are unreactive gases. Because of their lack of reactivity, for many years they were called inert gases or rare gases. However, the first chemical compounds containing the noble gases were prepared in 1962. Although the noble gases are relatively minor constituents of the atmosphere, natural gas contains substantial amounts of helium. Because of its low reactivity, argon is often used as an unreactive (inert) atmosphere for welding and in light bulbs. The red light emitted by neon in a gas discharge tube is used in neon lights.

Example 3.1.4.2: Groups

Provide the family or group name of each element.

a. Li
b. Ar
c. Cl

Solution

a. Lithium is an alkali metal (Group 1)
b. Argon is a noble gas (Group 18)
c. Chlorine is a halogen (Group 17)

Exercise 3.1.4.2: Groups

Provide the family or group name of each element.

a. F
b. Ca
c. Kr

Answer a: available at the end of this section.

Example 3.1.4.3: Classification of Elements

Classify each element as metal, non metal, transition metal or inner transition metal.

a. Li
b. Ar
c. Am
d. Fe

Solution

a. Lithium is a metal.
b. Argon is a non metal.
c. Americium is an inner transition metal.
d. Iron is a transition metal.

Exercise 3.1.4.3: Classification of Elements

Classify each element as metal, non metal, transition metal or inner transition metal.

a. F
b. U
c. Cu

Answer a: available at the end of this section.

Summary

The periodic table is an arrangement of the elements in order of increasing atomic number. Elements that exhibit similar chemistry appear in vertical columns called groups (numbered 1–18 from left to right); the seven horizontal rows are called periods. Some of the groups have widely-used common names, including the alkali metals (Group 1) and the alkaline earth metals (Group 2) on the far left, and the halogens (Group 17) and the noble gases (Group 18) on the far right.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 Science
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

The elements can be broadly divided into metals, nonmetals, and semi metals. Semi metals exhibit properties intermediate between those of metals and nonmetals. Metals are located on the left of the periodic table, and nonmetals are located on the upper right. They are separated by a diagonal band of semi metals. Metals are lustrous, good conductors of electricity, and readily shaped (they are ductile and malleable). Solid nonmetals are generally brittle and poor electrical conductors. Other important groupings of elements in the periodic table are the main group elements, the transition metals, and the inner transition metals (the lanthanides, and the actinides).

References

1. Petrucci, Ralph H., William S. Harwood, F. G. Herring, and Jeffrey D. Madura. General Chemistry: Principles and Modern Applications. 9th ed. Upper Saddle River: Pearson Education, Inc., 2007.
2. Sisler, Harry H. Electronic structure, properties, and the periodic law. New york; Reinhold publishing corporation, 1963.
3. Petrucci, Ralph H., Carey Bissonnette, F. G. Herring, and Jeffrey D. Madura. General Chemistry: Principles and Modern Applications. Custom Edition for CHEM 2. Pearson Learning Solutions, 2010.

Contributions & Attributions

Answers

Exercise 3.1.4.1

Indium is a metal.

Exercise 3.1.4.2**: Groups**

Fluorine is a halogen (Group 17).

Calcium is a alkaline earth metal (Group 2).

Krypton is a noble gas (Group 18).

Exercise 3.1.4.3**: Classification of Elements**

Fluorine is a nonmetal.

Uranium is a metal (and a inner transition metal too).

Copper is a metal (and a transition metal too).

This page titled 3.1.4: Looking for Patterns - The Periodic Table is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 4.6: Looking for Patterns - The Periodic Table by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

3.1.5: Ions - Losing and Gaining Electrons

Learning Objectives

- Define the two types of ions.

Atoms can gain or lose electrons to become ions. When an atom loses an electron it gains a positive charge and is called a cation. When an atom gains an electron it gains a negative charge and is called an anion. The reasons for gaining and losing electrons involve ideas about electron behavior that we will cover in greater detail in a later chapter. Some of the graphics in this section involve the concept of an electron shell. You do not need to understand this concept now, but hopefully the graphics will help with understanding how gaining or losing electrons result in ions with positive or negative charges.

Cations

A neutral sodium atom is likely to achieve an octet in its outermost shell by losing one electron.

$$\mathrm{Na} \rightarrow \mathrm{Na^+} + \mathrm{e^-} \tag{3.1.5.1}$$

The cation produced in this way, $\mathrm{Na^+}$, is called the sodium ion to distinguish it from the element. Figure 3.1.5.1 is a graphical depiction of this process.

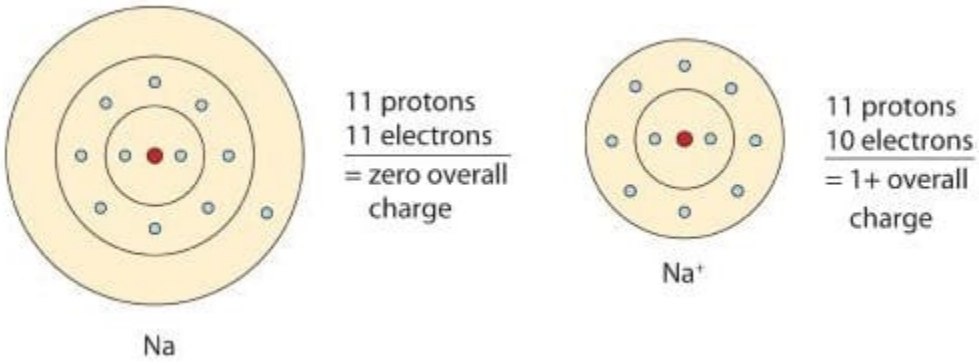


Figure 3.1.5.1: The Formation of a Sodium Ion. On the left, a sodium atom has 11 electrons. On the right, the sodium ion only has 10 electrons and a 1+ charge.

Anions

Some atoms can gain additional electrons. When these atoms gain electrons, they acquire a negative charge because they now possess more electrons than protons. Negatively charged ions are called **anions**. Most nonmetals become anions when they make ionic compounds.

$$\mathrm{e^-} + \mathrm{Cl} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Cl^-} \tag{3.1.5.2}$$

Figure 3.1.5.2 is a graphical depiction of this process.

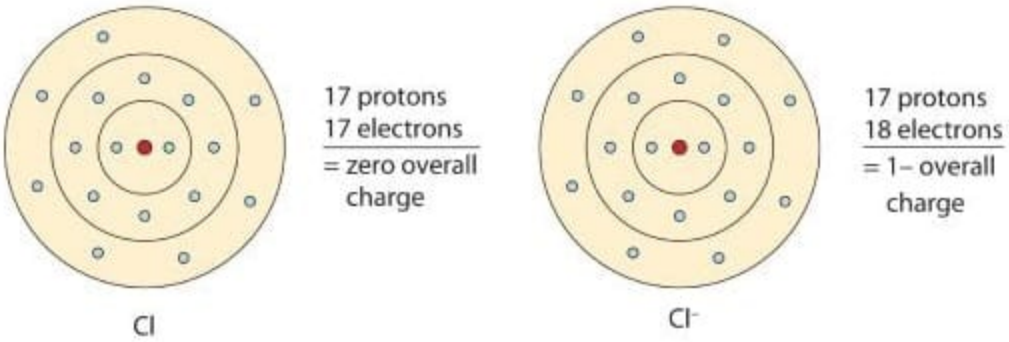


Figure 3.1.5.2: The Formation of a Chlorine Ion. On the left, the chlorine atom has 17 electrons. On the right, the chloride ion has 18 electrons and has a 1– charge.

The names for positive and negative ions are pronounced CAT-eye-ons and ANN-eye-ons, respectively.

Contributions & Attributions

This page was constructed from content via the following contributor(s) and edited (topically or extensively) by the LibreTexts development team to meet platform style, presentation, and quality:

- Marisa Alviar-Agnew (Sacramento City College)
- Henry Agnew (UC Davis)

This page titled 3.1.5: Ions - Losing and Gaining Electrons is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

3.1.6: Isotopes - When the Number of Neutrons Varies

Learning Objectives

- Explain what isotopes are and how an isotope affects an element's atomic mass.
- Determine the number of protons, electrons, and neutrons of an element with a given mass number.

All atoms of the same element have the same number of protons, but some may have different numbers of neutrons. For example, all carbon atoms have six protons, and most have six neutrons as well. But some carbon atoms have seven or eight neutrons instead of the usual six. Atoms of the same element that differ in their numbers of neutrons are called **isotopes**. Many isotopes occur naturally. Usually one or two isotopes of an element are the most stable and common. Different isotopes of an element generally have the same physical and chemical properties because they have the same numbers of protons and electrons.

An Example: Hydrogen Isotopes

Hydrogen is an example of an element that has isotopes. Three isotopes of hydrogen are modeled in Figure 3.1.6.1. Most hydrogen atoms have just one proton, one electron, and lack a neutron. These atoms are just called hydrogen. Some hydrogen atoms have one neutron as well. These atoms are the isotope named deuterium. Other hydrogen atoms have two neutrons. These atoms are the isotope named tritium.

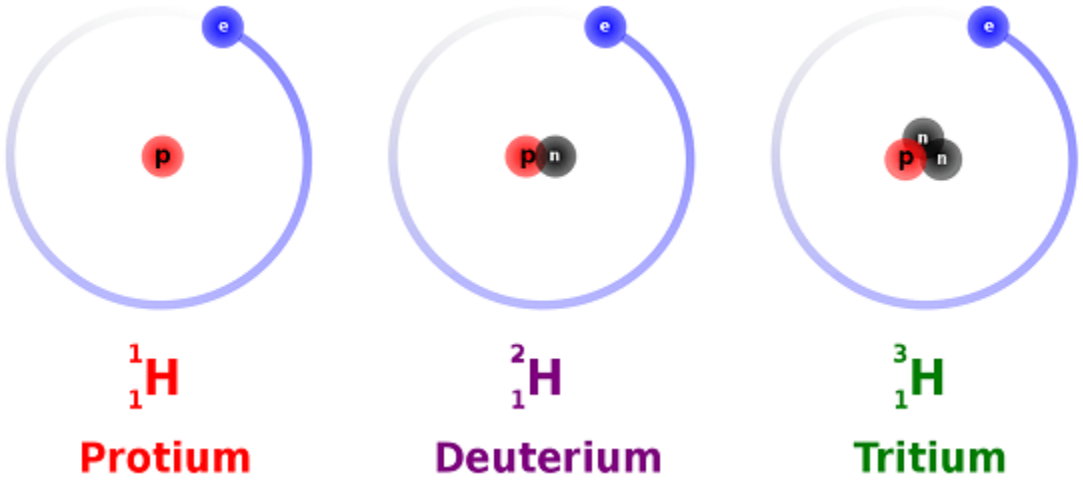


Figure 3.1.6.1: The three most stable isotopes of hydrogen: protium (A = 1), deuterium (A = 2), and tritium (A = 3). (CC SA-BY 3.0; Balajijagadesh via Wikipedia).

For most elements other than hydrogen, isotopes are named for their mass number. For example, carbon atoms with the usual 6 neutrons have a mass number of 12 (6 protons + 6 neutrons = 12), so they are called carbon-12. Carbon atoms with 7 neutrons have an atomic mass of 13 (6 protons + 7 neutrons = 13). These atoms are the isotope called carbon-13.

Example 3.1.6.1: Lithium Isotopes

a. What is the atomic number and the mass number of an isotope of lithium containing 3 neutrons?
b. What is the atomic number and the mass number of an isotope of lithium containing 4 neutrons?

Solution

A lithium atom contains 3 protons in its nucleus irrespective of the number of neutrons or electrons.

a.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{atomic number} &= (\text{number of protons}) = 3 \\ &\quad (\text{number of neutrons}) = 3 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{mass number} &= (\text{number of protons}) + (\text{number of neutrons}) \\ \text{mass number} &= 3 + 3 \\ &= 6 \end{aligned}$$

b.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{atomic number} &= (\text{number of protons}) = 3 \\ &\quad (\text{number of neutrons}) = 4 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{mass number} &= (\text{number of protons}) + (\text{number of neutrons}) \\ \text{mass number} &= 3 + 4 \\ &= 7 \end{aligned}$$

Notice that because the lithium atom always has 3 protons, the atomic number for lithium is always 3. The mass number, however, is 6 in the isotope with 3 neutrons, and 7 in the isotope with 4 neutrons. In nature, only certain isotopes exist. For instance, lithium exists as an isotope with 3 neutrons, and as an isotope with 4 neutrons, but it doesn't exist as an isotope with 2 neutrons or as an isotope with 5 neutrons.

Stability of Isotopes

Atoms need a certain ratio of neutrons to protons to have a stable nucleus. Having too many or too few neutrons relative to protons results in an unstable, or radioactive, nucleus that will sooner or later break down to a more stable form. This process is called radioactive decay. Many isotopes have radioactive nuclei, and these isotopes are referred to as radioisotopes. When they decay, they release particles that may be harmful. This is why radioactive isotopes are dangerous and why working with them requires special suits for protection. The isotope of carbon known as carbon-14 is an example of a radioisotope. In contrast, the carbon isotopes called carbon-12 and carbon-13 are stable.

This whole discussion of isotopes brings us back to Dalton's Atomic Theory. According to Dalton, atoms of a given element are identical. But if atoms of a given element can have different numbers of neutrons, then they can have different masses as well! How did Dalton miss this? It turns out that elements found in nature exist as constant uniform mixtures of their naturally occurring isotopes. In other words, a piece of lithium always contains both types of naturally occurring lithium (the type with 3 neutrons and the type with 4 neutrons). Moreover, it always contains the two in the same relative amounts (or "relative abundance"). In a chunk of lithium, 93% will always be lithium with 4 neutrons, while the remaining 7% will always be lithium with 3 neutrons.

Dalton always experimented with large chunks of an element—chunks that contained all of the naturally occurring isotopes of that element. As a result, when he performed his measurements, he was actually observing the averaged properties of all the different isotopes in the sample. For most of our purposes in chemistry, we will do the same thing and deal with the average mass of the atoms. Luckily, aside from having different masses, most other properties of different isotopes are similar.

There are two main ways in which scientists frequently show the mass number of an atom they are interested in. It is important to note that the mass number is *not* given on the periodic table. These two ways include writing a nuclear symbol or by giving the name of the element with the mass number written.

To write a **nuclear symbol**, the mass number is placed at the upper left (superscript) of the chemical symbol and the atomic number is placed at the lower left (subscript) of the symbol. The complete nuclear symbol for helium-4 is drawn below:



Nuclear symbol for helium-4: The element symbol is He, the mass number to the top left is 4, and the atomic number to the bottom left is 2

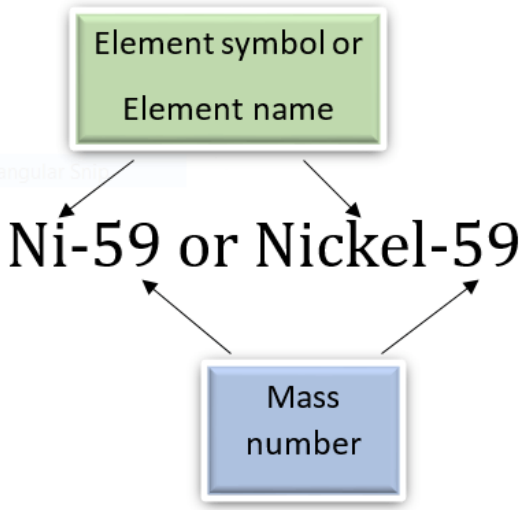
The following nuclear symbols are for a nickel nucleus with 31 neutrons and a uranium nucleus with 146 neutrons.

$$^{59}_{28}\text{Ni}$$

$$^{238}_{92}\text{U}$$

In the nickel nucleus represented above, the atomic number 28 indicates that the nucleus contains 28 protons, and therefore, it must contain 31 neutrons in order to have a mass number of 59. The uranium nucleus has 92 protons, as all uranium nuclei do; and this particular uranium nucleus has 146 neutrons.

Another way of representing isotopes is by adding a hyphen and the mass number to the chemical name or symbol. Thus the two nuclei would be Nickel-59 or Ni-59 and Uranium-238 or U-238, where 59 and 238 are the mass numbers of the two atoms, respectively. Note that the mass numbers (not the number of neutrons) are given to the side of the name.



Example 3.1.6.2: Potassium-40

How many protons, electrons, and neutrons are in an atom of $^{40}_{19}\text{K}$?

Solution

$$\text{atomic number} = (\text{number of protons}) = 19$$

For all atoms with no charge, the number of electrons is equal to the number of protons.

$$\text{number of electrons} = 19$$

The mass number, 40, is the sum of the protons and the neutrons.

To find the number of neutrons, subtract the number of protons from the mass number.

$$\text{number of neutrons} = 40 - 19 = 21.$$

Example 3.1.6.3: Zinc-65

How many protons, electrons, and neutrons are in an atom of zinc-65?

Solution

$$\text{number of protons} = 30$$

For all atoms with no charge, the number of electrons is equal to the number of protons.

$$\text{number of electrons} = 30$$

The mass number, 65, is the sum of the protons and the neutrons.

To find the number of neutrons, subtract the number of protons from the mass number.

$$\text{number of neutrons} = 65 - 30 = 35$$

Exercise 3.1.6.3

How many protons, electrons, and neutrons are in each atom?

a. $^{60}_{27}\text{Co}$
b. Na-24
c. $^{45}_{20}\text{Ca}$
d. Sr-90

Answer a: available at the end of this section.

Summary

- The number of protons is always the same in atoms of the same element.
- The number of neutrons can be different, even in atoms of the same element.
- Atoms of the same element that contain the same number of protons, but different numbers of neutrons, are known as **isotopes**.
- Isotopes of any given element all contain the same number of protons, so they have the same atomic number (for example, the atomic number of helium is always 2).
- Isotopes of a given element contain different numbers of neutrons, therefore, different isotopes have different mass numbers.

Answers

Exercise 3.1.6.3

27 protons, 27 electrons, 33 neutrons
11 protons, 11 electrons, 13 neutrons
20 protons, 20 electrons, 25 neutrons
38 protons, 38 electrons, 52 neutrons

This page titled 3.1.6: Isotopes - When the Number of Neutrons Varies is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 4.8: Isotopes - When the Number of Neutrons Varies by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

3.2: Summary of Atomic Theory and the Construction of Atoms

Learning Objectives

- State the modern atomic theory.
- Describe the locations, charges, and masses of the three main subatomic particles.
- Determine the number of protons and electrons in an atom.
- Define atomic number and mass number.
- Determine the number of protons, neutrons, and electrons in an atom.
- Explain how elements are organized into the periodic table.
- Explain what isotopes are and how an isotope affects an element's atomic mass.
- Determine the number of protons, electrons, and neutrons of an element with a given mass number.
- Define the two types of ions.

The smallest piece of an element that maintains the identity of that element is called an atom. Individual atoms are extremely small. It would take about fifty million atoms in a row to make a line that is 1 cm long. The period at the end of a printed sentence has several million atoms in it. Atoms are so small that it is difficult to believe that all matter is made from atoms—but it is.

The concept that atoms play a fundamental role in chemistry is formalized by the modern atomic theory, first stated by John Dalton, an English scientist, in 1808. It consists of three parts:

1. All matter is composed of atoms.
2. Atoms of the same element are the same; atoms of different elements are different.
3. Atoms combine in whole-number ratios to form compounds.

These concepts form the basis of chemistry. Although the word *atom* comes from a Greek word that means "indivisible," we understand now that atoms themselves are composed of smaller parts called *subatomic particles*. The first part to be discovered was the electron, a tiny subatomic particle with a negative charge. It is often represented as e^-, with the right superscript showing the negative charge. Later, two larger particles were discovered. The proton is a more massive (but still tiny) subatomic particle with a positive charge, represented as p^+. The neutron is a subatomic particle with about the same mass as a proton, but no charge. It is represented as either n or n^0. We now know that all atoms of all elements are composed of electrons, protons, and (with one exception) neutrons. Table 3.2.1 summarizes the properties of these three subatomic particles.

Table 3.2.1: Properties of the Three Subatomic Particles

Name	Symbol	Mass (approx.; kg)	Charge
Proton	p^+	1.6×10^{-27}	1+
Neutron	n, n^0	1.6×10^{-27}	none
Electron	e^-	9.1×10^{-31}	1–

How are these particles arranged in atoms? They are not arranged at random. Experiments by Ernest Rutherford in England in the 1910s pointed to a nuclear model with atoms that has the protons and neutrons in a central nucleus with the electrons in orbit about the nucleus. The relatively massive protons and neutrons are collected in the center of an atom, in a region called the nucleus of the atom (plural *nuclei*). The electrons are outside the nucleus and spend their time orbiting in space about the nucleus. (Figure 3.2.1).

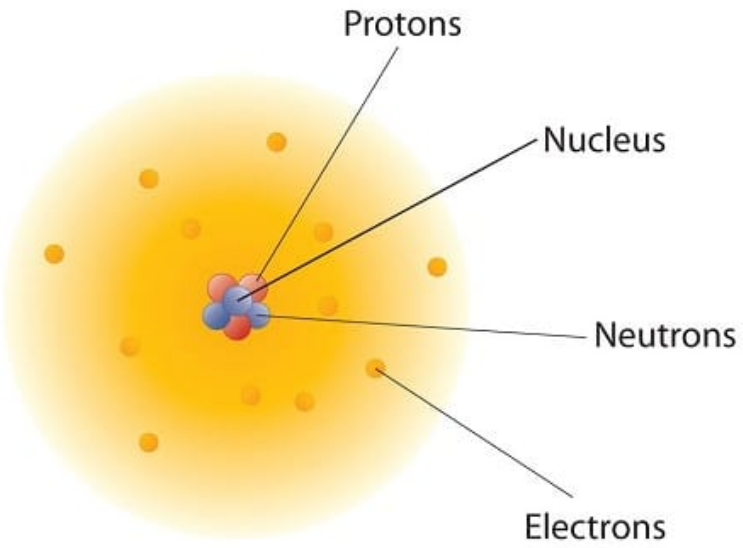


Figure 3.2.1: The Structure of the Atom. Atoms have protons and neutrons in the center, making the nucleus, while the electrons orbit the nucleus.

The modern atomic theory states that atoms of one element are the same, while atoms of different elements are different. What makes atoms of different elements different? The fundamental characteristic that all atoms of the same element share is the *number of protons*. All atoms of hydrogen have one and only one proton in the nucleus; all atoms of iron have 26 protons in the nucleus. This number of protons is so important to the identity of an atom that it is called the atomic number. The number of protons in an atom is the atomic number of the element. Thus, hydrogen has an atomic number of 1, while iron has an atomic number of 26. Each element has its own characteristic atomic number.

Atoms of the same element can have different numbers of neutrons, however. Atoms of the same element (i.e., atoms with the same number of protons) with different numbers of neutrons are called isotopes. Most naturally occurring elements exist as isotopes. For example, most hydrogen atoms have a single proton in their nucleus. However, a small number (about one in a million) of hydrogen atoms have a proton and a neutron in their nuclei. This particular isotope of hydrogen is called deuterium. A very rare form of hydrogen has one proton and two neutrons in the nucleus; this isotope of hydrogen is called tritium. The sum of the number of protons and neutrons in the nucleus is called the mass number of the isotope.

Neutral atoms have the same number of electrons as they have protons, so their overall charge is zero. However, as we shall see later, this will not always be the case.

Example 3.2.1:

a. The most common carbon atoms have six protons and six neutrons in their nuclei. What are the atomic number and the mass number of these carbon atoms?
b. An isotope of uranium has an atomic number of 92 and a mass number of 235. What are the number of protons and neutrons in the nucleus of this atom?

Solution

a. If a carbon atom has six protons in its nucleus, its atomic number is 6. If it also has six neutrons in the nucleus, then the mass number is 6 + 6, or 12.
b. If the atomic number of uranium is 92, then that is the number of protons in the nucleus. Because the mass number is 235, then the number of neutrons in the nucleus is 235 – 92, or 143.

Exercise 3.2.1

The number of protons in the nucleus of a tin atom is 50, while the number of neutrons in the nucleus is 68. What are the atomic number and the mass number of this isotope?

Answer available at the end of this section.

When referring to an atom, we simply use the element's name: the term *sodium* refers to the element as well as an atom of sodium. But it can be unwieldy to use the name of elements all the time. Instead, chemistry defines a symbol for each element. The atomic symbol is a one- or two-letter representation of the name of an element. By convention, the first letter of an element's symbol is always capitalized, while the second letter (if present) is lowercase. Thus, the symbol for hydrogen is H, the symbol for sodium is Na, and the symbol for nickel is Ni. Most symbols come from the English name of the element, although some symbols come from an element's Latin name. (The symbol for sodium, Na, comes from its Latin name, *natrium*.)

The elements are grouped together in a special chart called the periodic table of all the elements. A simple periodic table is shown in Figure 3.2.2, while one may view a more extensive periodic table from another source. The elements on the periodic table are listed in order of ascending atomic number. The periodic table has a special shape that will become important to us when we consider the organization of electrons in atoms (Chapter 8). One immediate use of the periodic table helps us identify metals and nonmetals. Nonmetals are in the upper right-hand corner of the periodic table, on one side of the heavy line splitting the right-side part of the chart. All other elements are metals.

1 H 1.00794																1 H 1.00794	2 He 4.002602
3 Li 6.941	4 Be 9.012182											5 B 10.811	6 C 12.0107	7 N 14.00674	8 O 15.9994	9 F 18.9984032	10 Ne 20.1797
11 Na 22.989770	12 Mg 24.3050											13 Al 26.581538	14 Si 28.0855	15 P 30.973761	16 S 32.066	17 Cl 35.4527	18 Ar 39.948
19 K 39.0983	20 Ca 40.078	21 Sc 44.955910	22 Ti 47.867	23 V 50.9415	24 Cr 51.9961	25 Mn 54.938049	26 Fe 55.845	27 Co 58.933200	28 Ni 58.6534	29 Cu 63.545	30 Zn 65.39	31 Ga 69.723	32 Ge 72.61	33 As 74.92160	34 Se 78.96	35 Br 79.504	36 Kr 83.80
37 Rb 85.4678	38 Sr 87.62	39 Y 88.90585	40 Zr 91.224	41 Nb 92.90638	42 Mo 95.94	43 Tc (98)	44 Ru 101.07	45 Rh 102.90550	46 Pd 106.42	47 Ag 196.56655	48 Cd 112.411	49 In 114.818	50 Sn 118.710	51 Sb 121.760	52 Te 127.60	53 I 126.90447	54 Xe 131.29
55 Cs 132.90545	56 Ba 137.327	57 La 138.9055	72 Hf 178.49	73 Ta 180.94.79	74 W 183.84	75 Re 186.207	76 Os 190.23	77 Ir 192.217	78 Pt 195.078	79 Au 196.56655	80 Hg 200.59	81 Tl 204.3833	82 Pb 207.2	83 Bi 208.58038	84 Po (209)	85 At (210)	86 Rn (222)
87 Fr (223)	88 Ra (226)	89 Ac (227)	104 Rf (261)	105 Db (262)	106 Sg (263)	107 Bh (262)	108 Hs (265)	109 Mt (266)	110 (269)	111 (272)	112 (277)		114 (289) (287)		116 (289)		118 (293)

58 Ce 140.116	59 Pr 140.50765	60 Nd 144.24	61 Pm (145)	62 Sm 150.36	63 Eu 151.964	64 Gd 157.25	65 Tb 158.92534	66 Dy 162.50	67 Ho 164.93032	68 Er 167.26	69 Tm 168.93421	70 Yb 173.04	71 Lu 174.967
90 Th 232.0381	91 Pa 231.035888	92 U 238.0289	93 Np (237)	94 Pu (244)	95 Am (243)	96 Cm (247)	97 Bk (247)	98 Cf (251)	99 Es (252)	100 Fm (257)	101 Md (258)	102 No (259)	103 Lr (262)

Figure 3.2.1: A Simple Periodic Table

There is an easy way to represent isotopes using the atomic symbols. We use the construction:

$$^{A}_{Z}\mathrm{X}$$

where X is the symbol of the element, A is the mass number, and Z is the atomic number. Thus, for the isotope of carbon that has 6 protons and 6 neutrons, the symbol is:

$$^{12}_{6}\mathrm{C}$$

where C is the symbol for the element, 6 represents the atomic number, and 12 represents the mass number.

Example 3.2.2:

a. What is the symbol for an isotope of uranium that has an atomic number of 92 and a mass number of 235?

b. How many protons and neutrons are in $^{56}_{26}\mathrm{Fe}$

Solution

a. The symbol for this isotope is $^{235}_{92}\mathrm{U}$
b. This iron atom has 26 protons and 56 – 26 = 30 neutrons.

Exercise 3.2.2

How many protons are in $^{23}_{11}\mathrm{Na}$

Answer available at the end of this section.

It is also common to state the mass number after the name of an element to indicate a particular isotope. Atoms of the same element that differ in their numbers of neutrons are called **isotopes**. Different isotopes of an element generally have the same physical and chemical properties because they have the same numbers of protons and electrons. *Carbon-12* represents an isotope of carbon with 6 protons and 6 neutrons, while *uranium-238* is an isotope of uranium that has 146 neutrons.

So far, we have discussed elements and compounds that are electrically neutral. They have the same number of electrons as protons, so the negative charges of the electrons are balanced by the positive charges of the protons. However, this is not always the case. Electrons can move from one atom to another; when they do, species with overall electric charges are formed. Such species are called ions. Species with overall positive charges are termed **cations**, while species with overall negative charges are called **anions**. Remember that ions are formed only when *electrons* move from one atom to another; a proton never moves from one atom to another.

Key Takeaways

- Chemistry is based on the modern atomic theory, which states that all matter is composed of atoms.
- Atoms themselves are composed of protons, neutrons, and electrons.
- Each element has its own atomic number, which is equal to the number of protons in its nucleus.
- Isotopes of an element contain different numbers of neutrons.
- Elements are represented by an atomic symbol.
- The periodic table is a chart that organizes all the elements.
- Ions form when atoms lose or gain electrons.

Answers

Exercise 3.2.1

Atomic number = 50, mass number = 118

Exercise 3.2.2

11 protons

This page titled 3.2: Summary of Atomic Theory and the Construction of Atoms is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 3.2: Atomic Theory by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/beginning-chemistry.

3.3: COMPOUNDS

Compounds were first introduced in a previous chapter, and will be discussed in more detail throughout the rest of this chapter. A **compound** is a substance that contains two or more elements chemically combined in a fixed proportion. The elements carbon and hydrogen combine to form many different compounds. One of the simplest is called methane, in which there are always four times as many hydrogen particles as carbon particles. Methane is a pure substance because it always has the same composition. However, it is not an element because it can be broken down into simpler substances—carbon and hydrogen.

Recall that the components of a mixture can be separated from one another by physical means. This is not true for a compound. Table salt is a compound consisting of equal parts of the elements sodium and chlorine. Salt cannot be separated into its two elements by filtering, distillation, or any other physical process. Salt and other compounds can only be decomposed into their elements by a chemical process. A **chemical change** is a change that produces matter with a different composition. Many compounds can be decomposed into their elements by heating. When sugar is heated, it decomposes into carbon and water. Water is still a compound, but one which cannot be broken down into hydrogen and oxygen by heating. Instead, the passage of an electrical current through water will produce hydrogen and oxygen gases.

The properties of compounds are generally very different than the properties of the elements from which the compound is formed. Sodium is an extremely reactive soft metal that cannot be exposed to air or water. Chlorine is a deadly gas. The compound sodium chloride is a white solid which is essential for all living things (see below).

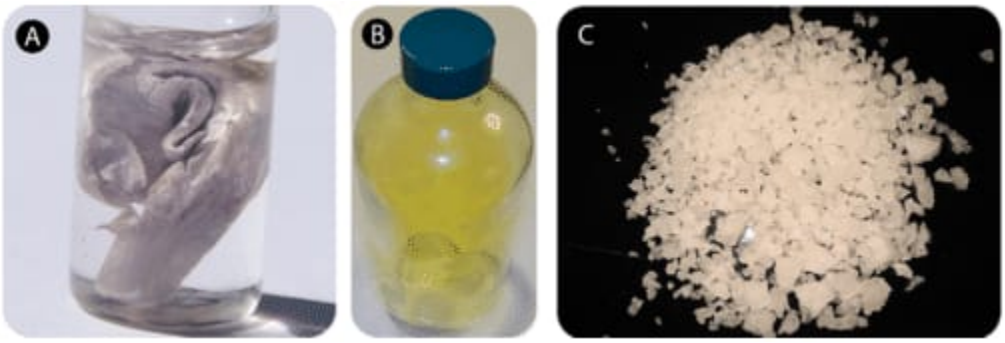


Figure 3.3.1: (A) Sodium is so reactive that it must be stored under oil. (B) Chlorine is a poisonous yellow-green gas. (C) Salt crystals, a compound of sodium and chlorine.

Summary

- A compound is a substance that contains two or more elements chemically combined in a fixed proportion.
- A chemical change is a change that produces matter with a different composition.

Contributions & Attributions

This page was constructed from content via the following contributor(s) and edited (topically or extensively) by the LibreTexts development team to meet platform style, presentation, and quality:

-
- Marisa Alviar-Agnew (Sacramento City College)
- Henry Agnew (UC Davis)

3.3.1: Chemical Formulas - How to Represent Compounds

This page titled 3.3: Compounds is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

3.3.1: Chemical Formulas - How to Represent Compounds

Learning Objectives

- Determine the number of different atoms in a formula.
- Define chemical formula, molecular formula, and empirical formula.

A **chemical formula** is an expression that shows the elements in a compound and the relative proportions of those elements. Water is composed of hydrogen and oxygen in a 2:1 ratio. The chemical formula for water is $\mathrm{H_2O}$. Sulfuric acid is one of the most widely produced chemicals in the United States and is composed of the elements hydrogen, sulfur, and oxygen. The chemical formula for sulfuric acid is $\mathrm{H_2SO_4}$.

Certain groups of atoms are bonded together to form what is called a polyatomic ion that acts as a single unit. Polyatomic ions are discussed in more detail in Section 5.5. Polyatomic ions are enclosed in parenthesis followed by a subscript if more than one of the same ion exist in a chemical formula. The formula $\mathrm{Ca_3(PO_4)_2}$ represents a compound with the following:

$$3 \text{ Ca atoms} + 2 \ PO_4^{3-} \text{ ions}$$

To count the total number of atoms for formulas with polyatomic ions enclosed in parenthesis, use the subscript as a multiplier for each atom or number of atoms.

$$Ca_3(PO_4)_{\mathbf{2}}$$

3 Ca + **2** x1 P + **2** x 4 O = 3 Ca atoms + 2 P atoms + 8 O atoms

Molecular Formula

A **molecular formula** is a chemical formula of a molecular compound that shows the kinds and numbers of atoms present in a molecule of the compound. Ammonia is a compound of nitrogen and hydrogen as shown below:

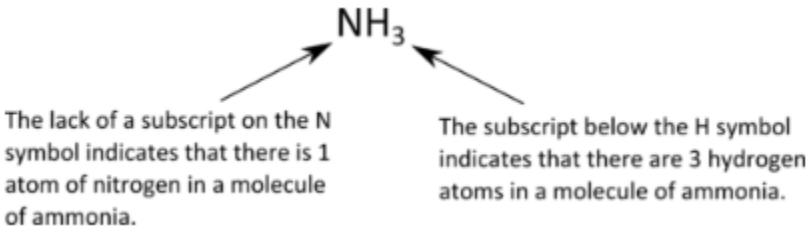


Figure 3.3.1.1: The molecular formula for ammonia. NH3. There is one atom of nitrogen and 3 atoms of hydrogen in a molecule of ammonia.

Note from the example that there are some standard rules to follow in writing molecular formulas. The arrangements of the elements depend on the particular structure, which is not of concern at this point. The number of atoms of each kind is indicated by a subscript following the atom. If there is only one atom, no number is written. If there is more than one atom of a specific kind, the number is written as a subscript following the atom. We would not write $\mathrm{N_3H}$ for ammonia, because that would mean that there are three nitrogen atoms and one hydrogen atom in the molecule, which is incorrect.

Empirical Formula

An **empirical formula** is a formula that shows the elements in a compound in their lowest whole-number ratio. Glucose is an important simple sugar that cells use as their primary source of energy. Its molecular formula is $\mathrm{C_6H_{12}O_6}$. Since each of the subscripts is divisible by 6, the empirical formula for glucose is $\mathrm{CH_2O}$. When chemists analyze an unknown compound, often the first step is to determine its empirical formula.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

- molecular formula: $C_6H_{12}O_6$
- empirical formula: CH_2O

There are a great many compounds whose molecular and empirical formulas are the same. If the molecular formula cannot be simplified into a smaller whole-number ratio, as in the case of H_2O or P_2O_5, then the empirical formula is also the molecular formula.

Summary

- A chemical formula is an expression that shows the elements in a compound and the relative proportions of those elements.
- If only one atom of a specific type is present, no subscript is used.
- For atoms that have two or more of a specific type of atom present, a subscript is written after the symbol for that atom.
- Polyatomic ions in chemical formulas are enclosed in parentheses followed by a subscript if more than one of the same type of polyatomic ion exist.
- Molecular formulas do not indicate how the atoms are arranged in the molecule.
- The empirical formula tells the lowest whole-number ratio of elements in a compound. The empirical formula does not show the actual number of atoms.

This page titled 3.3.1: Chemical Formulas - How to Represent Compounds is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 5.3: Chemical Formulas - How to Represent Compounds by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

3.4: A Molecular View of Elements and Compounds

Learning Objectives

- Classify substances as atomic elements, molecular elements, molecular compounds, or ionic compounds.

Atomic Elements

Most elements exist with **individual atoms** as their basic unit. It is assumed that there is only one atom in a formula if there is no numerical subscript on the right side of an element's symbol.

Molecular Elements

There are many substances that exist as two or more atoms connected together so strongly that they behave as a single particle. These multi-atom combinations are called **molecules**. A molecule is the smallest part of a substance that has the physical and chemical properties of that substance. In some respects, a molecule is similar to an atom. A molecule, however, is composed of more than one atom.

Table 3.4.1: Elements That Exist as Diatomic Molecules

Hydrogen, H	Oxygen	Nitrogen	Fluorine	Chlorine	Bromine	Iodine

Some elements exist naturally as molecules. For example, hydrogen and oxygen exist as two-atom molecules. Other elements also exist naturally as diatomic molecules—a molecule with only two atoms (Table 3.4.1). As with any molecule, these elements are labeled with a **molecular formula**, a formal listing of what and how many atoms are in a molecule. (Sometimes only the word *formula* is used, and its meaning is inferred from the context.) For example, the molecular formula for elemental hydrogen is H_2, with H being the symbol for hydrogen and the subscript 2 implying that there are two atoms of this element in the molecule. Other diatomic elements have similar formulas: O_2, N_2, and so forth. Other elements exist as molecules—for example, sulfur normally exists as an eight-atom molecule, S_8, while phosphorus exists as a four-atom molecule, P_4 (Figure 3.4.1).

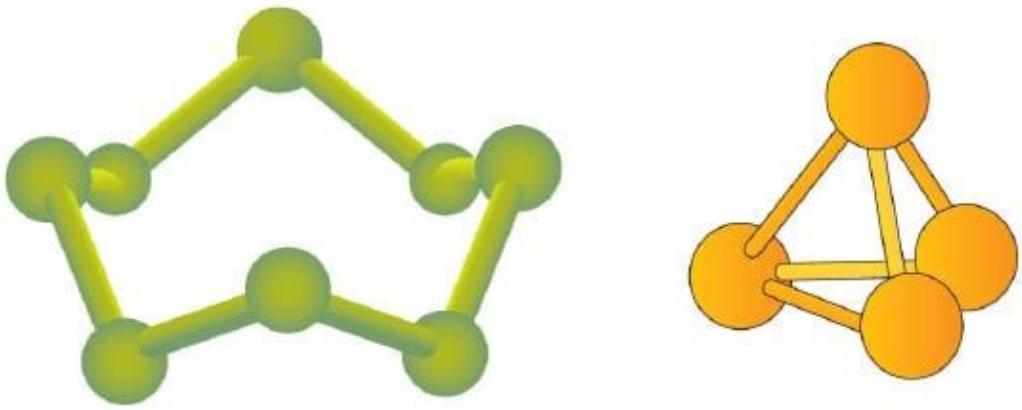


Figure 3.4.1: Molecular Art of S_8 and P_4 Molecules. If each green ball represents a sulfur atom, then the diagram on the left represents an S_8 molecule. The molecule on the right shows that one form of elemental phosphorus exists, as a four-atom molecule.

Figure 3.4.1 shows two examples of how molecules will be represented in this text. An atom is represented by a small ball or sphere, which generally indicates where the nucleus is in the molecule. A cylindrical line connecting the balls represents the connection between the atoms that make this collection of atoms a molecule. This connection is called a chemical bond.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Ionic Compounds

The elements in the periodic table are divided into specific groupings; the metals, the non-metals, the semi-metals, and so on. These groupings are largely based on physical properties and on the tendency of the various elements to bond with other elements by forming either an ionic or a covalent bond. As a general rule of thumb, compounds that involve a metal binding with either a non-metal or a semi-metal will display ionic bonding. Thus, the compound formed from sodium and chlorine will be ionic (a metal and a non-metal). The basic unit of ionic compounds is the **formula unit**.

Molecular Compounds

Compounds that are composed of only non-metals or semi-metals with non-metals will display covalent bonding and will be classified as molecular compounds. Nitrogen monoxide (NO) will be a covalently bound molecule (two non-metals) and silicon dioxide (SiO_2) will also be a covalently bound molecule (a semi-metal and a non-metal). The basic unit of molecular compounds is the **molecule**.

Example 3.4.1

Provide the classification (i.e. atomic element, molecular element, molecular compound, or ionic compound) of each substance.

a. Fe
b. PCl_3
c. LiBr
d. P_4
e. oxygen gas

Solution

a. **Fe** (iron) is an element that is represented with no subscript, so it is an **atomic element**.
b. **PCl_3** is made up of two nonmetals, so it is a **molecular compound**.
c. **LiBr** is made up of lithium, a metal, and bromine, a nonmetal, so it is an **ionic compound**.
d. **P_4** is a substance that is made up of four atoms of the same element, so it is a **molecular element**.
e. The formula for **oxygen gas** is **O_2** so it is a molecular element.

Exercise 3.4.1

Provide the classification (i.e. atomic element, molecular element, molecular compound, or ionic compound) of each substance.

a. I_2
b. He
c. H_2O
d. Al
e. CuCl

Answer a: available at the end of this section.

Answer b: available at the end of this section.

Answer c: available at the end of this section.

Answer d: available at the end of this section.

Answer e: available at the end of this section.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Answers

Exercise 3.4.1
molecular element

Exercise 3.4.1
atomic element

Exercise 3.4.1
molecular compound

Exercise 3.4.1
atomic element

Exercise 3.4.1
ionic compound

This page titled 3.4: A Molecular View of Elements and Compounds is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 5.4: A Molecular View of Elements and Compounds by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

3.5: IONIC COMPOUNDS

Ionic compounds are formed by balancing charges of ions. In order to determine the formulas of ionic compounds, we need to understand the charges of ions as well as how to balance them when they come together. In a later chapter we will learn why the charges are what they are (in some cases), but for now we want to understand how to determine those charges from some portions of the periodic table, and recognize when a group of atoms has a charge (which is called a polyatomic ion). And for any ionic compound, how to determine the correct formula once you know what the charges are.

3.5.1: Ions - Monatomic and Polyatomic

3.5.2: Writing Formulas for Ionic Compounds

This page titled 3.5: Ionic Compounds is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

3.5.1: Ions - Monatomic and Polyatomic

Learning Objectives

- Determine the charges of monatomic and polyatomic ions.

Correctly determining the formulas of ionic compounds requires an understanding of how ions form and what charges they have. In a previous section we discussed how anions and cations might form from gaining or losing electrons, respectively. In this section we will discuss some common charges of ions that you will need to know in order to predict the correct formulas of ionic compounds. We will look at both monatomic and polyatomic ions. In a later chapter, we will learn why the monatomic ions form the charges that they do. The polyatomic ions, however, are much more difficult to predict.

Monatomic Ions

In many cases, elements that belong to the same group (vertical column) on the periodic table form ions with the same charge. Thus, the periodic table becomes a tool for remembering the charges on many ions. For example, all ions made from alkali metals, the first column on the periodic table, have a 1+ charge. Ions made from alkaline earth metals, the second group on the periodic table, have a 2+ charge. On the other side of the periodic table, the next-to-last column, the halogens, form ions having a 1– charge. Figure 3.5.1.3 shows how the charge on many ions can be predicted by the location of an element on the periodic table. Note the convention of first writing the number and then the sign on a ion with multiple charges. The barium cation is written Ba^{2+}, not Ba^{+2}.

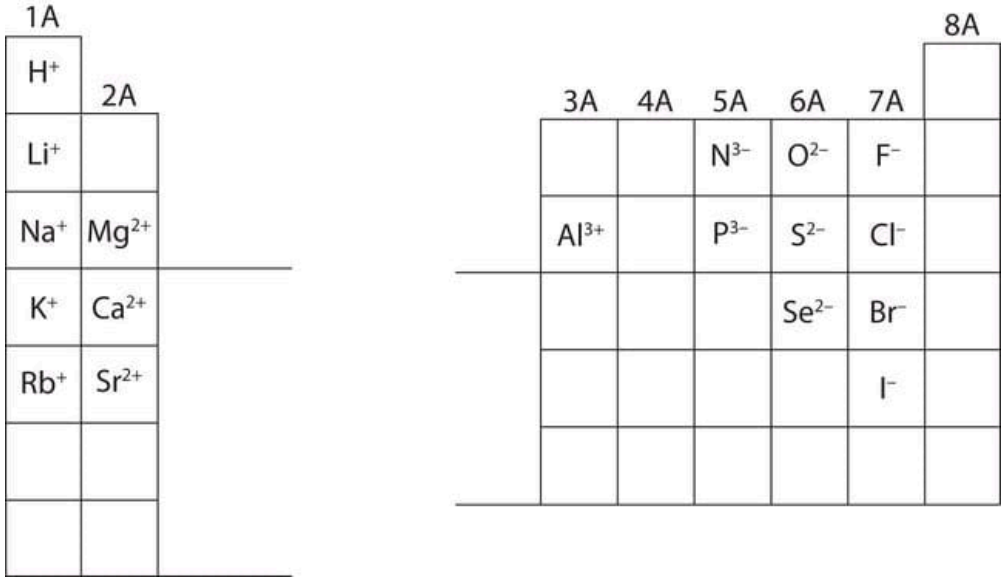


Figure 3.5.1.3: Predicting Ionic Charges. The charge that an atom acquires when it becomes an ion is related to the structure of the periodic table. Within a group (family) of elements, atoms form ions of a certain charge.

Polyatomic Ions

Some ions consist of groups of atoms bonded together and have an overall electric charge. Because these ions contain more than one atom, they are called polyatomic ions. Polyatomic ions have characteristic formulas, names, and charges that should be memorized. For example, NO_3^- is the nitrate ion; it has one nitrogen atom and three oxygen atoms and an overall 1– charge. Table 3.5.1.1 lists the most common polyatomic ions.

Table 3.5.1.1*: Some Polyatomic Ions*

Name	Formula
ammonium ion	NH_4^+
acetate ion	$C_2H_3O_2^-$ (also written $CH_3CO_2^-$)
carbonate ion	CO_3^{2-}
chromate ion	CrO_4^{2-}
dichromate ion	$Cr_2O_7^{2-}$
hydrogen carbonate ion (bicarbonate ion)	HCO_3^-
cyanide ion	CN^-
hydroxide ion	OH^-
nitrate ion	NO_3^-
nitrite ion	NO_2^-
permanganate ion	MnO_4^-
phosphate ion	PO_4^{3-}
hydrogen phosphate ion	HPO_4^{2-}
dihydrogen phosphate ion	$H_2PO_4^-$
sulfate ion	SO_4^{2-}
hydrogen sulfate ion (bisulfate ion)	HSO_4^-
sulfite ion	SO_3^{2-}

Please note that many of the polyatomic ions have names which are only different from each other based on the last 3 letters. Also, that there will often be monatomic ions which also differ from polyatomic ions only in the last 3 letters of the name. For example, nitrate, nitrite, and nitride are each different ions. The formulas for nitrate and nitrite are listed in the table below, and you can see that they have different numbers of oxygen within their formulas. Nitride is a monatomic ion, so you would consult the periodic table to determine its formula and charge. Note that any time in ion hasn't ending of -ate or -ite it is a polyatomic ion. Ions which ended with -ide could be either monatomic or polyatomic. One of the most important parts of naming ionic compounds correctly is paying attention to those last 3 letters.

Contributions & Attributions

This page was constructed from content via the following contributor(s) and edited (topically or extensively) by the LibreTexts development team to meet platform style, presentation, and quality:

- Marisa Alviar-Agnew (Sacramento City College)
- Henry Agnew (UC Davis)

This page titled 3.5.1: Ions - Monatomic and Polyatomic is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

3.5.2: Writing Formulas for Ionic Compounds

Learning Objectives

- Write the correct formula for an ionic compound.
- Recognize polyatomic ions in chemical formulas.

Ionic compounds do not exist as molecules. In the solid state, ionic compounds are in crystal lattice containing many ions each of the cation and anion. An ionic formula, like NaCl, is an empirical formula. This formula merely indicates that sodium chloride is made of an equal number of sodium and chloride ions. Sodium sulfide, another ionic compound, has the formula $\mathrm{Na_2S}$. This formula indicates that this compound is made up of twice as many sodium ions as sulfide ions. This section will teach you how to find the correct ratio of ions, so that you can write a correct formula.

If you know the name of a binary ionic compound, you can write its **chemical formula**. Start by writing the metal ion with its charge, followed by the nonmetal ion with its charge. Because the overall compound must be electrically neutral, decide how many of each ion is needed in order for the positive and negative charges to cancel each other out.

Example 3.5.2.1: Aluminum Nitride and Lithium Oxide

Write the formulas for aluminum nitride and lithium oxide.

Solution

	Write the formula for aluminum nitride	Write the formula for lithium oxide
1. Write the symbol and charge of the cation (metal) first and the anion (nonmetal) second.	[redacted] [redacted]	$\mathrm{Li^+}$ [redacted]
2. Use a multiplier to make the total charge of the cations and anions equal to each other.	total charge of cations = total charge of anions 1(3+) = 1(3-) +3 = -3	total charge of cations = total charge of anions 2(1+) = 1(2-) +2 = -2
3. Use the multipliers as subscript for each ion.	$\mathrm{Al_1N_1}$	$\mathrm{Li_2O_1}$
4. Write the final formula. Leave out all charges and all subscripts that are 1.	AlN	$\mathrm{Li_2O}$

An alternative way to writing a correct formula for an ionic compound is to use the **crisscross method**. In this method, the numerical value of each of the ion charges is crossed over to become the subscript of the other ion. Signs of the charges are dropped.

Example 3.5.2.2: The Crisscross Method for Lead (IV) Oxide

Write the formula for lead (IV) oxide.

Solution

Crisscross Method	Write the formula for lead (IV) oxide
1. Write the symbol and charge of the cation (metal) first and the anion (nonmetal) second.	[redacted]
2. Transpose only the number of the positive charge to become the subscript of the anion and the number only of the negative charge to become the subscript of the cation.	
3. Reduce to the lowest ratio.	Pb_2O_4
4. Write the final formula. Leave out all subscripts that are 1.	PbO_2

Exercise 3.5.2.2

Write the chemical formula for an ionic compound composed of each pair of ions.

a. the calcium ion and the oxygen ion
b. the 2+ copper ion and the sulfur ion
c. the 1+ copper ion and the sulfur ion

Answer a: available at the end of this section.

Be aware that ionic compounds are empirical formulas and so must be written as the lowest ratio of the ions.

Example 3.5.2.3: Sulfur Compound

Write the formula for sodium combined with sulfur.

Solution

Crisscross Method	Write the formula for sodium combined with sulfur
1. Write the symbol and charge of the cation (metal) first and the anion (nonmetal) second.	Na^+ [redacted]
2. Transpose only the number of the positive charge to become the subscript of the anion and the number only of the negative charge to become the subscript of the cation.	
3. Reduce to the lowest ratio.	This step is not necessary.
4. Write the final formula. Leave out all subscripts that are 1.	Na_2S

Exercise 3.5.2.3

Write the formula for each ionic compound.

a. sodium bromide
b. lithium chloride
c. magnesium oxide

Answer a: available at the end of this section.

Writing Formulas for Ionic Compounds Containing Polyatomic Ions

Polyatomic ions were introduced in the previous subsection. It is important to understand the relationship between the name, formula, and charge of polyatomic ions before beginning to use them within ionic compounds.

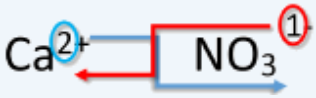
The rule for constructing formulas for ionic compounds containing polyatomic ions is the same as for formulas containing monatomic (single-atom) ions: the positive and negative charges must balance. If more than one of a particular polyatomic ion is needed to balance the charge, the *entire formula* for the polyatomic ion must be enclosed in parentheses, and the numerical subscript is placed *outside* the parentheses. This is to show that the subscript applies to the entire polyatomic ion. An example is $Ba(NO_3)_2$.

Writing a formula for ionic compounds containing polyatomic ions also involves the same steps as for a binary ionic compound. Write the symbol and charge of the cation followed by the symbol and charge of the anion.

Example 3.5.2.4: Calcium Nitrate

Write the formula for calcium nitrate.

Solution

Crisscross Method	Write the formula for calcium nitrate
1. Write the symbol and charge of the cation (metal) first and the anion (nonmetal) second.	[redacted] NO_3^-
2. Transpose only the number of the positive charge to become the subscript of the anion and the number only of the negative charge to become the subscript of the cation.	
3. Reduce to the lowest ratio.	$Ca_1(NO_3)_2$
4. Write the final formula. Leave out all subscripts that are 1. If there is only 1 of the polyatomic ion, leave off parentheses.	$Ca(NO_3)_2$

Example 3.5.2.5

Write the chemical formula for an ionic compound composed of the potassium ion and the sulfate ion.

Solution

Explanation	Answer
Potassium ions have a charge of 1+, while sulfate ions have a charge of 2–. We will need two potassium ions to balance the charge on the sulfate ion, so the proper chemical formula is K_2SO_4.	K_2SO_4

Exercise 3.5.2.5

Write the chemical formula for an ionic compound composed of each pair of ions.

a. the magnesium ion and the carbonate ion

b. the aluminum ion and the acetate ion

Answer a: available at the end of this section.

Recognizing Ionic Compounds

There are two ways to recognize ionic compounds. First, compounds between metal and nonmetal elements are usually ionic. For example, $CaBr_2$ contains a metallic element (calcium, a group 2 [or 2A] metal) and a nonmetallic element (bromine, a group 17 [or 7A] nonmetal). Therefore, it is most likely an ionic compound. (In fact, it *is* ionic.) In contrast, the compound NO_2 contains two elements that are both nonmetals (nitrogen, from group 15 [or 5A], and oxygen, from group 16 [or 6A]. It is not an ionic compound; it belongs to the category of covalent compounds discussed elsewhere. Also note that this combination of nitrogen and oxygen has no electric charge specified, so it is *not* the nitrite ion.

Second, if you recognize the formula of a polyatomic ion in a compound, the compound is ionic. For example, if you see the formula $Ba(NO_3)_2$, you may recognize the "NO_3" part as the nitrate ion, NO_3^-. (Remember that the convention for writing formulas for ionic compounds is not to include the ionic charge.) This is a clue that the other part of the formula, Ba, is actually the Ba^{2+} ion, with the 2+ charge balancing the overall 2– charge from the two nitrate ions. Thus, this compound is also ionic.

Example 3.5.2.6

Identify each compound as ionic or not ionic.

a. Na_2O
b. PCl_3
c. NH_4Cl
d. OF_2

Solution

Explanation	Answer
a. Sodium is a metal, and oxygen is a nonmetal. Therefore, Na_2O is expected to be ionic.	Na_2O, ionic
b. Both phosphorus and chlorine are nonmetals. Therefore, PCl_3 is not ionic.	PCl_3, not ionic
c. The NH_4 in the formula represents the ammonium ion, NH_4^+, which indicates that this compound is ionic.	NH_4Cl, ionic
d. Both oxygen and fluorine are nonmetals. Therefore, OF_2 is not ionic.	OF_2, not ionic

Exercise 3.5.2.6

Identify each compound as ionic or not ionic.

a. N_2O
b. $FeCl_3$
c. $(NH_4)_3PO_4$
d. $SOCl_2$

Answer a: available at the end of this section.

Answer c: available at the end of this section.

Summary

Formulas for ionic compounds contain the symbols and number of each atom present in a compound in the lowest whole number ratio.

Contributions & Attributions

This page was constructed from content via the following contributor(s) and edited (topically or extensively) by the LibreTexts development team to meet platform style, presentation, and quality:

-
- Marisa Alviar-Agnew (Sacramento City College)
- Henry Agnew (UC Davis)

Answers

Exercise 3.5.2.2

CaO

CuS

Cu_2S

Exercise 3.5.2.3

NaBr

LiCl

MgO

Exercise 3.5.2.5

$MgCO_3$

$Al(CH_3COO)_3$

Exercise 3.5.2.6

not ionic

ionic

Exercise 3.5.2.6

ionic

not ionic

This page titled 3.5.2: Writing Formulas for Ionic Compounds is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

3.6: HOW TO NAME COMPOUNDS

Knowing how to name a compound correctly is an important skill both for the remainder of this course, and as you move into other fields. Many compounds have long names which differ only by a single letter. But that single letter makes a big difference in the properties of those compounds. For example, sodium chloride is something that you might use in food preparation, but sodium chlorite might explode if mixed with certain foods! Likewise, in the medical fields there are many drugs with long and sometimes similar names. Being able to distinguish between different chemical names is a safety issue. This is true for you and your classmates in lab activities while you are taking your chemistry courses. But it is also true for patients you might have if you are in a medical career.

The most important step in naming a chemical is determining which category that chemical belongs in. As you read the sections on how to name different types of chemicals, please recognize the importance of these chemical classifications. A previous section in this chapter (3.4) discussed how we categorize compounds. These are the same categories we will be using as we name compounds. Pay attention to these categories as you're naming chemicals.

3.6.1: Naming Ionic Compounds

3.6.2: Naming Molecular Compounds

3.6.3: Naming Acids

3.6.4: Nomenclature Summary

This page titled 3.6: How to Name Compounds is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

3.6.1: Naming Ionic Compounds

Learning Objectives

- To use the rules for naming ionic compounds.

After learning a few more details about the names of individual ions, you will be one step away from knowing how to name ionic compounds. This section begins the formal study of nomenclature, the systematic naming of chemical compounds.

Naming Ions

The name of a monatomic cation is simply the name of the element followed by the word *ion*. Thus, Na^+ is the sodium ion, Al^{3+} is the aluminum ion, Ca^{2+} is the calcium ion, and so forth.

We have seen that some elements lose different numbers of electrons, producing ions of different charges (Figure 3.3). Iron, for example, can form two cations, each of which, when combined with the same anion, makes a different compound with unique physical and chemical properties. Thus, we need a different name for each iron ion to distinguish Fe^{2+} from Fe^{3+}. The same issue arises for other ions with more than one possible charge.

There are two ways to make this distinction. In the simpler, more modern approach, called the **Stock system**, an ion's positive charge is indicated by a roman numeral in parentheses after the element name, followed by the word *ion*. Thus, Fe^{2+} is called the iron(II) ion, while Fe^{3+} is called the iron(III) ion. This system is used only for elements that form more than one common positive ion. We do not call the Na^+ ion the sodium(I) ion because (I) is unnecessary. Sodium forms only a 1+ ion, so there is no ambiguity about the name *sodium ion*.

Table 3.6.1.1: The Modern and Common System of Cation Names

Element	Stem	Charge	Modern Name	Common Name
iron	ferr-	2+	iron(II) ion	ferrous ion
		3+	iron(III) ion	ferric ion
copper	cupr-	1+	copper(I) ion	cuprous ion
		2+	copper(II) ion	cupric ion
tin	stann-	2+	tin(II) ion	stannous ion
		4+	tin(IV) ion	stannic ion
lead	plumb-	2+	lead(II) ion	plumbous ion
		4+	lead(IV) ion	plumbic ion
chromium	chrom-	2+	chromium(II) ion	chromous ion
		3+	chromium(III) ion	chromic ion
gold	aur-	1+	gold(I) ion	aurous ion
		3+	gold(III) ion	auric ion

The second system, called the **common system**, is not conventional but is still prevalent and used in the health sciences. This system recognizes that many metals have two common cations. The common system uses two suffixes (*-ic* and *-ous*) that are appended to the stem of the element name. The *-ic* suffix represents the greater of the two cation charges, and the *-ous* suffix represents the lower one. In many cases, the stem of the element name comes from the Latin name of the element. Table 3.6.1.1 lists the elements that use the common system, along with their respective cation names.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Table 3.6.1.2: Some Monatomic Anions

Ion	Name
F^-	fluoride ion
Cl^-	chloride ion
Br^-	bromide ion
I^-	iodide ion
O^{2-}	oxide ion
S^{2-}	sulfide ion
P^{3-}	phosphide ion
N^{3-}	nitride ion

The name of a monatomic anion consists of the stem of the element name, the suffix *-ide*, and then the word *ion*. Thus, as we have already seen, Cl^- is "chlor-" + "-ide ion," or the chloride ion. Similarly, O^{2-} is the oxide ion, Se^{2-} is the selenide ion, and so forth. Table 3.6.1.2 lists the names of some common monatomic ions. The polyatomic ions have their own characteristic names, as discussed earlier.

Example 3.6.1.1

Name each ion.

a. Ca^{2+}
b. S^{2-}
c. SO_3^{2-}
d. NH_4^+
e. Cu^+

Solution

a. the calcium ion
b. the sulfide ion
c. the sulfite ion
d. the ammonium ion
e. the copper(I) ion or the cuprous ion

Exercise 3.6.1.1

Name each ion.

a. Fe^{2+}
b. Fe^{3+}
c. SO_4^{2-}
d. Ba^{2+}
e. HCO_3^-

Answer a: available at the end of this section.

Example 3.6.1.2

Write the formula for each ion.

a. the bromide ion
b. the phosphate ion
c. the cupric ion
d. the magnesium ion

Solution

a. Br^-
b. PO_4^{3-}
c. Cu^{2+}
d. Mg^{2+}

Exercise 3.6.1.2

Write the formula for each ion.

a. the fluoride ion
b. the carbonate ion
c. the stannous ion
d. the potassium ion

Answer a: available at the end of this section.

Naming Binary Ionic Compounds with a Metal that Forms Only One Type of Cation

A **binary** ionic compound is a compound composed of a **monatomic** metal **cation** and a monatomic nonmetal **anion**. The metal cation is named first, followed by the nonmetal anion as illustrated in Figure 3.6.1.1 for the compound $BaCl_2$. The word *ion* is dropped from both parts.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CC BY NC SA
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

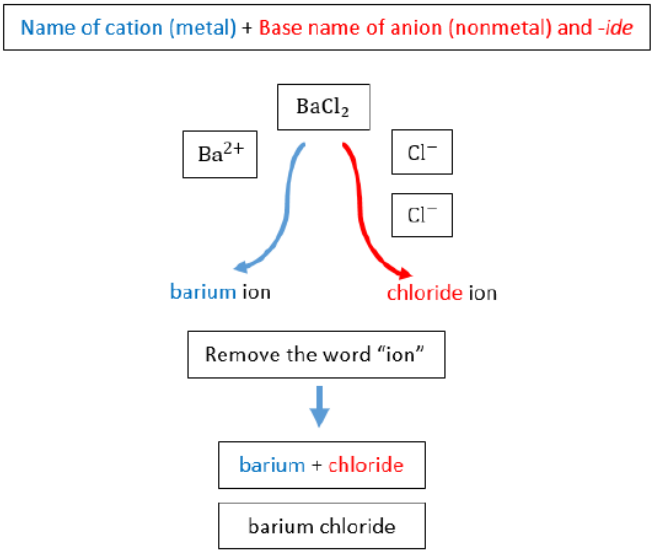


Figure 3.6.1.1: Naming $BaCl_2$
Naming formula: Name of metal cation + base
name of nonmetal anion + suffix -ide. BaCl2 is named as barium chloride.

Subscripts in the formula do not affect the name.

Example 3.6.1.3: Naming Ionic Compounds

Name each ionic compound.

a. $CaCl_2$
b. AlF_3
c. KCl

Solution

a. Using the names of the ions, this ionic compound is named calcium chloride.
b. The name of this ionic compound is aluminum fluoride.
c. The name of this ionic compound is potassium chloride

Exercise 3.6.1.3

Name each ionic compound.

a. AgI
b. MgO
c. Ca_3P_2

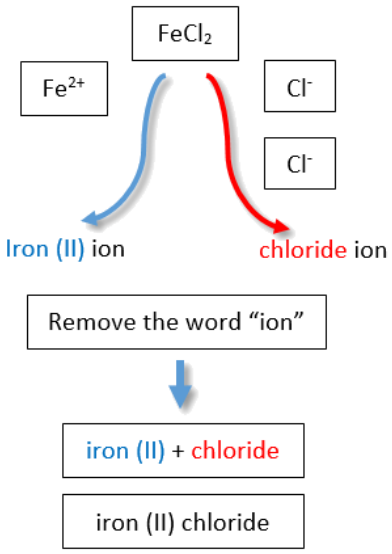
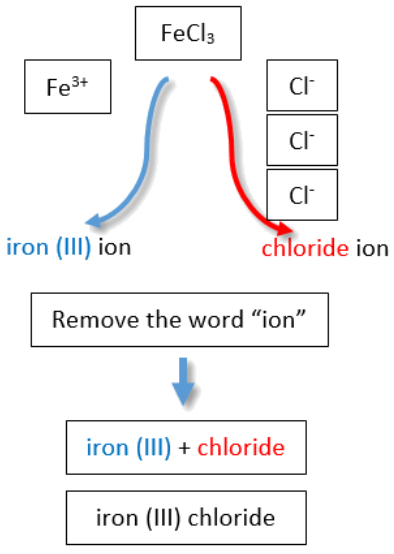
Answer a: available at the end of this section.

Naming Binary Ionic Compounds with a Metal That Forms More Than One Type of Cation

If you are given a formula for an ionic compound whose cation can have more than one possible charge, you must first determine the charge on the cation before identifying its correct name. For example, consider $FeCl_2$ and $FeCl_3$. In the first compound, the

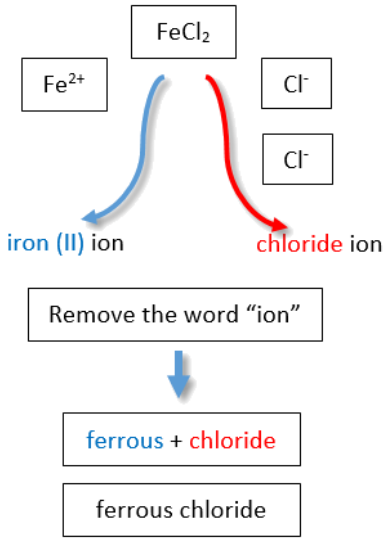
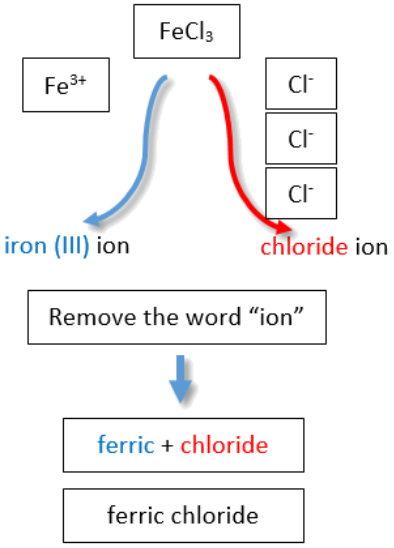
iron ion has a 2+ charge because there are two Cl^- ions in the formula (1– charge on each chloride ion). In the second compound, the iron ion has a 3+ charge, as indicated by the three Cl^- ions in the formula. These are two different compounds that need two different names. By the Stock system, the names are iron(II) chloride and iron(III) chloride (Figure 3.6.1.2).

Table 3.6.1.3: Naming the $FeCl_2$ and $FeCl_3$ Compounds in the Modern/Stock System.

Name of cation (metal) + (Roman Numeral in parenthesis) + Base name of anion (nonmetal) and -ide	
	

If we were to use the stems and suffixes of the common system, the names would be ferrous chloride and ferric chloride, respectively (Figure 3.6.1.3) .

Table 3.6.1.4: Naming the $FeCl_2$ and $FeCl_3$ Compounds in the Old/Common System.

"Old" base name of cation (metal) and -ic or -ous + Base name of anion (nonmetal) and -ide	
-ous (for ions with lower charge)	-ic (for ions with higher charge)
	

Example 3.6.1.4:

Name each ionic compound.

a. Co_2O_3
b. $FeCl2$

Solution

Solutions to Example 5.7.4

	Explanation	Answer
a	We know that cobalt can have more than one possible charge; we just need to determine what it is. • Oxide always has a 2– charge, so with three oxide ions, we have a total negative charge of 6–. • This means that the two cobalt ions have to contribute 6+, which for two cobalt ions means that each one is 3+. • Therefore, the proper name for this ionic compound is cobalt(III) oxide.	cobalt(III) oxide
b	Iron can also have more than one possible charge. • Chloride always has a 1– charge, so with two chloride ions, we have a total negative charge of 2–. • This means that the one iron ion must have a 2+ charge. • Therefore, the proper name for this ionic compound is iron(II) chloride.	iron(II) chloride

Exercise 3.6.1.4

Name each ionic compound.

a. $AuCl_3$
b. PbO_2
c. CuO

Answer a: available at the end of this section.

Naming Ionic Compounds with Polyatomic Ions

The process of naming ionic compounds with polyatomic ions is the same as naming binary ionic compounds. The cation is named first, followed by the anion. One example is the ammonium sulfate compound in Figure 3.6.1.6.

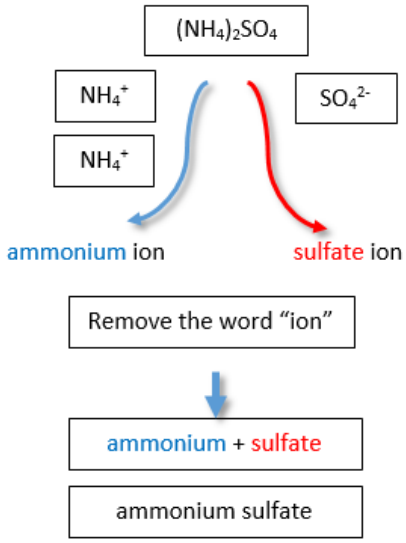


Figure 3.6.1.2: Naming Ionic Compounds with Polyatomic Ions

Example 3.6.1.5: Naming Ionic Compounds

Write the proper name for each ionic compound.

a. (NH4)2S
b. AlPO4,
c. Fe3(PO4)2

Solution

Solutions to Example 5.7.5

Explanation	Answer
a. The ammonium ion has a 1+ charge and the sulfide ion has a 2– charge. Two ammonium ions need to balance the charge on a single sulfide ion. The compound’s name is ammonium sulfide.	ammonium sulfide
b. The ions have the same magnitude of charge, one of each (ion) is needed to balance the charges. The name of the compound is aluminum phosphate.	aluminum phosphate
c. Neither charge is an exact multiple of the other, so we have to go to the least common multiple of 6. To get 6+, three iron(II) ions are needed, and to get 6–, two phosphate ions are needed . The compound’s name is iron(II) phosphate.	iron(II) phosphate

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 Science © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Exercise 3.6.1.5A

Write the proper name for each ionic compound.

a. $(NH4)3PO4$
b. $Co(NO2)3$

Answer a: available at the end of this section.

Figure 3.6.1.1 is a synopsis of how to name simple ionic compounds.

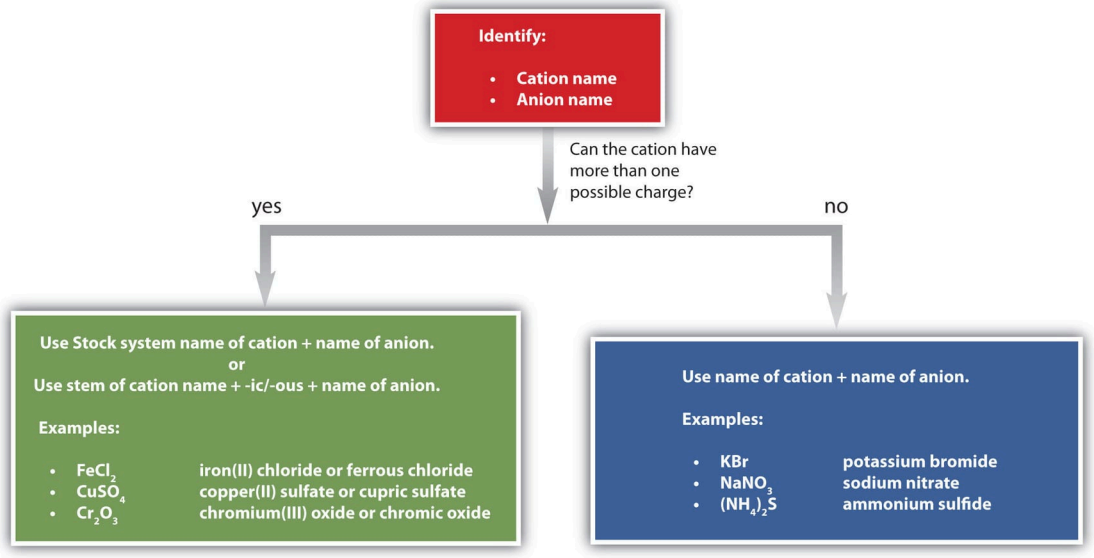


Figure 3.6.1.3: A Guide to Naming Simple Ionic Compounds.

Exercise 3.6.1.5B

Name each ionic compound.

a. $ZnBr_2$
b. Al_2O_3
c. $(NH_4)_3PO_4$
d. AuF_3
e. AgF

Answer a: available at the end of this section.

Answer b: available at the end of this section.

Answer c: available at the end of this section.

Answer d: available at the end of this section.

Answer e: available at the end of this section.

Summary

- Ionic compounds are named by stating the cation first, followed by the anion.

- Positive and negative charges must balance.
- Some anions have multiple forms and are named accordingly with the use of roman numerals in parentheses.
- Ternary compounds are composed of three or more elements.

Answers

Exercise 3.6.1.1

iron(II) ion
iron(III) ion
sulfate ion
barium ion
hydrogen carbonate ion or bicarbonate ion

Exercise 3.6.1.2

F^-

CO_3^{2-}

Sn^{2+}

K^+

Exercise 3.6.1.3

silver iodide
magnesium oxide
calcium phosphide

Exercise 3.6.1.4

gold(III) chloride
lead(IV) oxide
copper(II) oxide

Exercise 3.6.1.5A

ammonium phosphate
cobalt(III) nitrite

Exercise 3.6.1.5B

zinc bromide

Exercise 3.6.1.5B

aluminum oxide

Exercise 3.6.1.5B

ammonium phosphate

Exercise 3.6.1.5B

gold(III) fluoride or auric fluoride

Exercise 3.6.1.5B

silver fluoride

This page titled 3.6.1: Naming Ionic Compounds is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 5.7: Naming Ionic Compounds by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

3.6.2: Naming Molecular Compounds

Learning Objectives

- Determine the name of a simple molecular compound from its chemical formula.

Molecular Compounds

Molecular compounds are inorganic compounds that take the form of discrete **molecules**. Examples include such familiar substances as water (H_2O) and carbon dioxide (CO_2). These compounds are very different from ionic compounds like sodium chloride $(NaCl)$. Ionic compounds are formed when metal atoms lose one or more of their electrons to nonmetal atoms. The resulting cations and anions are electrostatically attracted to each other.

So what holds the atoms of a molecule together? Rather than forming ions, the atoms of a molecule share their **electrons** in such a way that a **bond** forms between a pair of atoms. In a carbon dioxide molecule, there are two of these bonds, each occurring between the carbon atom and one of the two oxygen atoms.

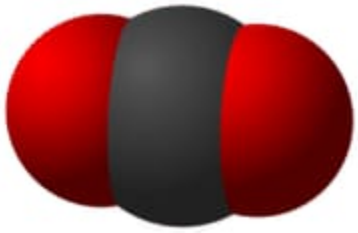


Figure 3.6.2.1: Carbon dioxide molecules consist of a central carbon atom bonded to 2 oxygen atoms.

Larger molecules can have many, many bonds that serve to keep the molecule together. In a large sample of a given molecular compound, all of the individual molecules are identical.

Naming Binary Molecular Compounds

Recall that a molecular formula shows the number of atoms of each element that a molecule contains. A molecule of water contains two hydrogen atoms and one oxygen atom, so its formula is H_2O. A molecule of octane, which is a component of gasoline, contains 8 atoms of carbon and 18 atoms of hydrogen. The molecular formula of octane is C_8H_{18}.



Figure 3.6.2.2: Nitrogen dioxide (NO_2) is a reddish-brown toxic gas that is a prominent air pollutant produced by internal combustion engines.

Naming *binary* (two-element) molecular compounds is similar to naming simple ionic compounds. The first element in the formula is simply listed using the name of the element. The second element is named by taking the stem of the element name and adding

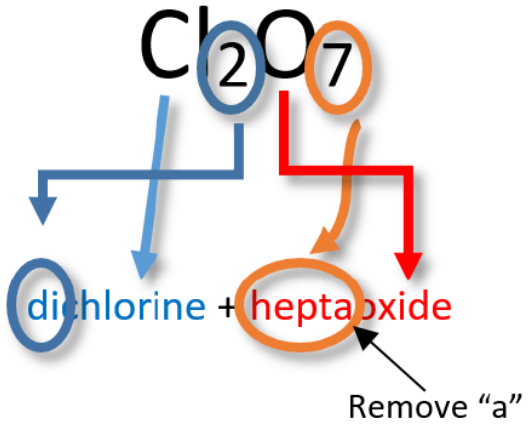
CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

the suffix *-ide*. A system of numerical prefixes is used to specify the number of atoms in a molecule. Table 3.6.2.1 lists these numerical prefixes.

Table 3.6.2.1: Numerical Prefixes for Naming Binary Covalent Compounds

Number of Atoms in Compound	Prefix on the Name of the Element
1	mono-*
2	di-
3	tri-
4	tetra-
5	penta-
6	hexa-
7	hepta-
8	octa-
9	nona-
10	deca-

*This prefix is not used for the first element's name.



dichlorine heptoxide

Note

- Generally, the less electronegative element is written first in the formula, though there are a few exceptions. Carbon is always first in a formula and hydrogen is after nitrogen in a formula such as NH_3. The order of common nonmetals in binary compound formulas is C, P, N, H, S, I, Br, Cl, O, F.
- The *a* or *o* at the end of a prefix is usually dropped from the name when the name of the element begins with a vowel. As an example, four oxygen atoms, is tetr**o**xide instead of tetr**ao**xide.
- The prefix is "mono" is not added to the first element's name if there is only one atom of the first element in a molecule.

Some examples of molecular compounds are listed in Table 3.6.2.2.

Table 3.6.2.2

Formula	Name
NO	nitrogen monoxide
N_2O	dinitrogen monoxide
S_2Cl_2	disulfur dichloride
Cl_2O_7	dichlorine heptoxide

Notice that the *mono-* prefix is not used with the nitrogen in the first compound, but is used with the oxygen in both of the first two examples. The S_2Cl_2 emphasizes that the formulas for molecular compounds are not reduced to their lowest ratios. The *o* of the *mono-* and the *a* of *hepta-* are dropped from the name when paired with oxide.

Exercise 3.6.2.1

Write the name for each compound.

a. CF_4
b. $SeCl_2$
c. SO_3

Answer a: available at the end of this section.

Simple molecular compounds with common names

For some simple covalent compounds, we use common names rather than systematic names. We have already encountered these compounds, but we list them here explicitly:

- H_2O: water
- NH_3: ammonia
- CH_4: methane
- H_2O_2: hydrogen peroxide

Methane is the simplest organic compound. Organic compounds are compounds with carbon atoms and are named by a separate nomenclature system.

Some Compounds Have Both Covalent and Ionic Bonds

If you recall the introduction of polyatomic ions, you will remember that the bonds that hold the polyatomic ions together are covalent bonds. Once the polyatomic ion is constructed with covalent bonds, it reacts with other substances as an ion. The bond between a polyatomic ion and another ion will be ionic. An example of this type of situation is in the compound sodium nitrate. Sodium nitrate is composed of a sodium ion and a nitrate ion. The nitrate ion is held together by covalent bonds and the nitrate ion is attached to the sodium ion by an ionic bond.

Summary

- A molecular compound is usually composed of two or more nonmetal elements.
- Molecular compounds are named with the first element first and then the second element by using the stem of the element name plus the suffix -ide. Numerical prefixes are used to specify the number of atoms in a molecule.

Answers

Exercise 3.6.2.1

carbon tetrafluoride
selenium dichloride
sulfur trioxide

This page titled 3.6.2: Naming Molecular Compounds is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 5.8: Naming Molecular Compounds by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

3.6.3: Naming Acids

A spot test for gold has been in use for decades. The sample is first treated with nitric acid. Other metals may react or dissolve in this acid, but gold will not. Then the sample is added to a mixture of nitric acid and hydrochloric acid. Gold will only dissolve in this mixture. The term "acid test" arose from the California gold rush in the late 1840's when this combination was used to test for the presence of real gold. It has since come to mean, "tested and approved" in a number of fields.

Acids

An **acid** can be defined in several ways. The most straightforward definition is that an acid is a molecular compound that contains one or more hydrogen atoms and produces hydrogen ions (H^+) when dissolved in water.



Figure 3.6.3.1: (A) Vinegar comes in a variety of types, but all contain acetic acid. (B) Citrus fruits like grapefruit contain citric and ascorbic acids.

This is a different type of compound than the others we have seen so far. Acids are molecular, which means that in their pure state they are individual molecules and do not adopt the extended three-dimensional structures of ionic compounds like NaCl. However, when these molecules are dissolved in water, the chemical bond between the hydrogen atom and the rest of the molecule breaks, leaving a positively-charged hydrogen ion and an anion. This can be symbolized in a chemical equation:

$$\mathrm{HCl} \rightarrow \mathrm{H}^+ + \mathrm{Cl}^-$$

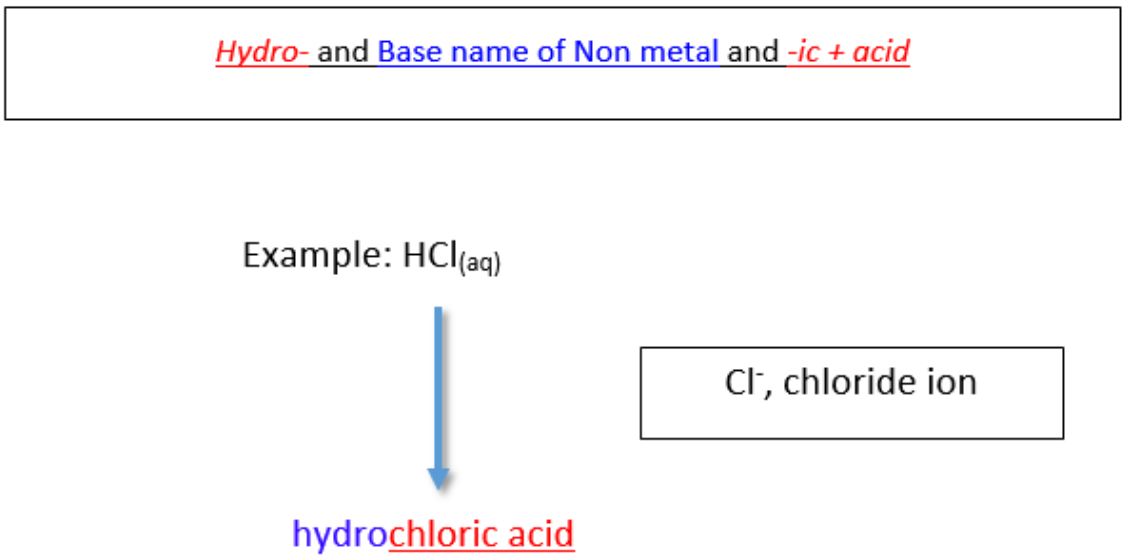
Since acids produce H^+ cations upon dissolving in water, the H of an acid is written first in the formula of an inorganic acid. The remainder of the acid (other than the H) is the anion after the acid dissolves. Organic acids are also an important class of compounds, but will not be discussed here.

Naming Acids

Since all acids contain hydrogen, the name of an acid is based on the anion that goes with it. These anions can either be monatomic or polyatomic.

Naming Binary acids (in aqueous form)

A **binary acid** is an acid that consists of hydrogen and one other element. The most common binary acids contain a halogen. The acid name begins with the prefix *hydro-*. followed by the base name of the anion, followed by the suffix *-ic*.



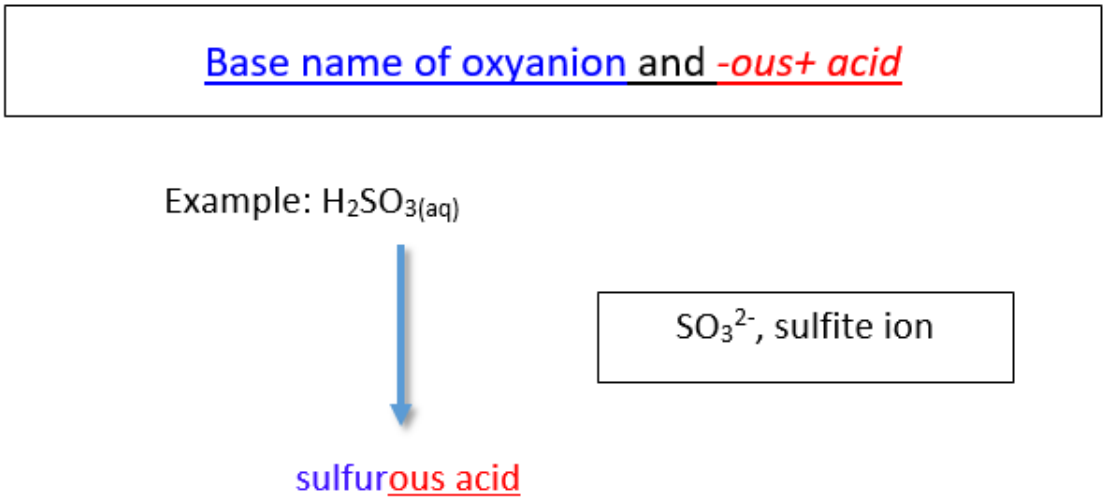
Formula for naming acids: Hydro- and Base name of nonmetal and -ic + acid. Example: HCl is hydrochloric acid.

Naming Oxyacids

An **oxyacid** is an acid that consists of hydrogen, oxygen, and a third element. The third element is usually a nonmetal.

a. Oxyanions with ***-ite*** ending.

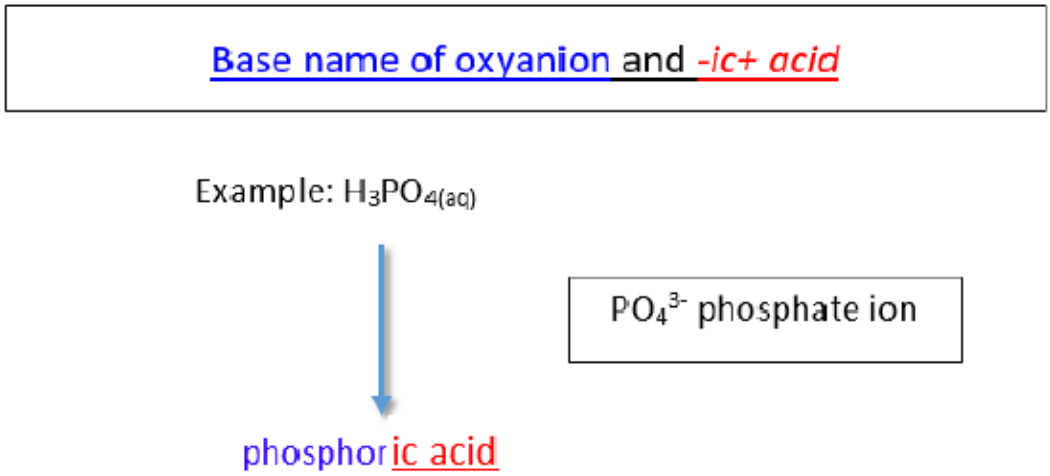
The name of the acid is the root of the anion followed by the suffix ***-ous***. There is no prefix.



Formula for naming oxyanions with -ite ending: Base name of oxyanion and -ous + acid. Example: H2SO3 is sulfurous acid.

b. Oxyanions with ***-ate*** ending.

The name of the acid is the root of the anion followed by the suffix ***-ic***. There is no prefix.



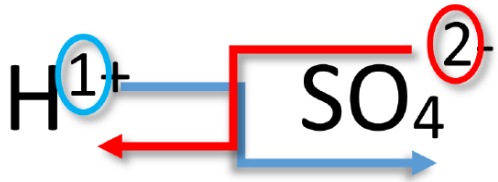
Formula for naming oxyanions with -ate ending: Base name of oxyanion and -ic + acid. Example: H3PO4 is phosphoric acid.

Note

The base name for sulfur containing oxyacid is ***sulfur-*** instead of just ***sulf-***. The same is true for a phosphorus containing oxyacid. The base name is ***phosphor-*** instead of simply ***phosph-***.

Writing Formulas for Acids

Like other compounds that we have studied, acids are electrically neutral. Therefore, the charge of the anion part of the formula must be exactly balanced out by the H^+ ions. Another way to think about writing the correct formula is to utilize the crisscross method, shown below for sulfuric acid.



H2SO4: H has +1 charge and SO4 has -2 charge, so there must be 2 H+ and 1 SO4 for the charges to balance out.

Formula: H_2SO_4

Figure $3.6.3.2$***:*** *Crisscross approach to writing formula for sulfuric acid.*

Summary

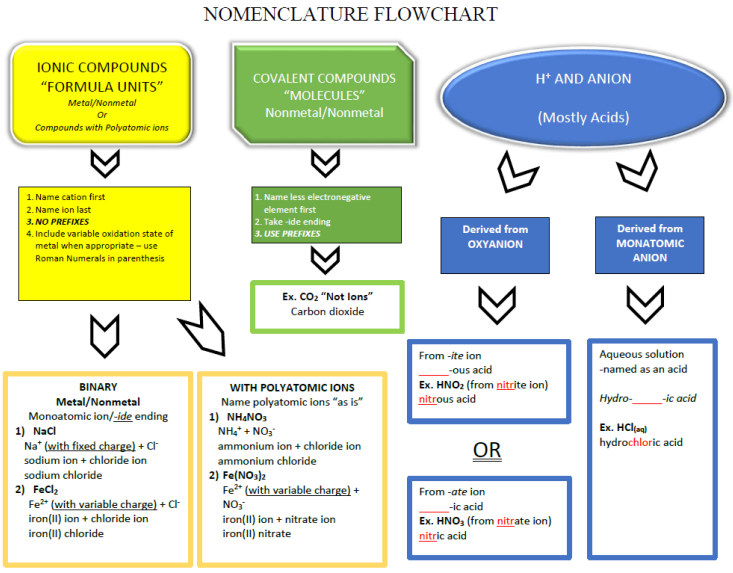
- Acids are molecular compounds that release hydrogen ions.
- A binary acid consists of hydrogen and one other element.
- Oxyacids contain hydrogen, oxygen, and one other element.
- The name of the acid is based on the anion attached to the hydrogen.

This page titled 3.6.3: Naming Acids is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 5.9: Naming Acids by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

3.6.4: Nomenclature Summary

The most important step in naming a chemical is determining which category that chemical belongs in. There are several categories of chemicals, but we have discussed 3 of them in this section: ionic, covalent, and acids. When you begin to name a compound, the first thing you should do is decide which of these 3 categories that compound fits into. Ionic compounds usually contain a metal and a nonmetal (any exceptions would involve polyatomic ions instead of a metal.) Covalent compounds will only contain nonmetals. Acids will start with hydrogen. Decide on which of these categories the compound fits into, and then name it using the appropriate system. The flow chart below summarizes many of the details about naming these compounds.



Contributions & Attributions

This page was constructed from content via the following contributor(s) and edited (topically or extensively) by the LibreTexts development team to meet platform style, presentation, and quality:

- Marisa Alviar-Agnew (Sacramento City College)
- Henry Agnew (UC Davis)

This page titled 3.6.4: Nomenclature Summary is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

3.E: Atoms, Molecules, and Ions (Exercises)

The following questions are related to the material covered in this chapter, however they may not be presented in the same order that they were in your chapter. For additional examples also check here[link to another homework set applicable]

3.1: Atomic Theory

1. List the three statements that make up the modern atomic theory.
2. Explain how atoms are composed.
3. Which is larger, a proton or an electron?
4. Which is larger, a neutron or an electron?
5. What are the charges for each of the three subatomic particles?
6. Where is most of the mass of an atom located?
7. Sketch a diagram of a boron atom, which has five protons and six neutrons in its nucleus.
8. Sketch a diagram of a helium atom, which has two protons and two neutrons in its nucleus.
9. Define *atomic number*. What is the atomic number for a boron atom?
10. What is the atomic number of helium?
11. Define *isotope* and give an example.
12. What is the difference between deuterium and tritium?

13. Which pair represents isotopes?

    a. $^{4}_{2}\mathrm{He}\ and\ ^{3}_{2}\mathrm{He}$ (3.E.1)

    b. $^{56}_{26}\mathrm{Fe}\ and\ ^{56}_{25}\mathrm{Mn}$ (3.E.2)

    c. $^{28}_{14}\mathrm{Si}\ and\ ^{31}_{15}\mathrm{P}$ (3.E.3)

14. Which pair represents isotopes?

    a. $^{40}_{20}\mathrm{Ca}\ and\ ^{40}_{19}\mathrm{K}$ (3.E.4)

    b. $^{56}_{26}\mathrm{Fe}\ and\ ^{56}_{28}\mathrm{Fe}$ (3.E.5)

    c. $^{238}_{92}\mathrm{U}\ and\ ^{235}_{92}\mathrm{U}$ (3.E.6)

15. Give complete symbols of each atom, including the atomic number and the mass number.

    a. an oxygen atom with 8 protons and 8 neutrons
    b. a potassium atom with 19 protons and 20 neutrons
    c. a lithium atom with 3 protons and 4 neutron

16. Give complete symbols of each atom, including the atomic number and the mass number.

    a. a magnesium atom with 12 protons and 12 neutrons
    b. a magnesium atom with 12 protons and 13 neutrons
    c. a xenon atom with 54 protons and 77 neutron

17. Americium-241 is an isotope used in smoke detectors. What is the complete symbol for this isotope?

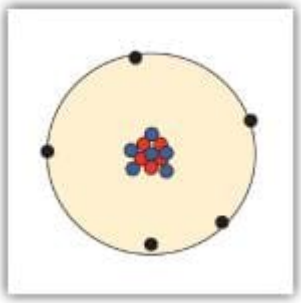
18. Carbon-14 is an isotope used to perform radioactive dating tests on previously living material. What is the complete symbol for this isotope?

19. Give atomic symbols for each element.

    a. sodium
    b. argon
    c. nitrogen
    d. radon

20. Give atomic symbols for each element.
    a. silver
    b. gold
    c. mercury
    d. iodine
21. Give the name of the element.
    a.Si
    b. Mn
    c. Fe
    d. Cr
22. Give the name of the element.
    a. F
    b. Cl
    c. Br
    d. I

Answers

1. All matter is composed of atoms; atoms of the same element are the same, and atoms of different elements are different; atoms combine in whole-number ratios to form compounds.
2.
3. A proton is larger than an electron.
4. proton: 1+; electron: 1–; neutron: 0
5. 
6. The atomic number is the number of protons in a nucleus. Boron has an atomic number of five.
7.
8. Isotopes are atoms of the same element but with different numbers of neutrons.

$$^{1}_{1}\mathrm{H}\ and\ ^{2}_{1}\mathrm{H} \tag{3.E.7}$$

9. 1. isotopes
   2. not isotopes
   3. not isotopes
   1.
10. a. $^{16}_{8}\mathrm{O}$ (3.E.8)
    b. $^{39}_{19}\mathrm{K}$ (3.E.9)
    c. $^{7}_{3}\mathrm{Li}$ (3.E.10)
11. $^{241}_{95}\mathrm{Am}$ (3.E.11)
12. a. Na
    b. Ar
    c. N
    d. Rn
13. a. silicon
    b. manganese
    c. iron

d. chromium

3.2: Molecules and Chemical Nomenclature

1. Which of these formulas represent molecules? State how many atoms are in each molecule.
   a. Fe
   b. PCl_3
   c. P_4
   d. Ar
2. Which of these formulas represent molecules? State how many atoms are in each molecule.
   a. I_2
   b. He
   c. H_2O
   d. Al
3. What is the difference between CO and Co?
4. What is the difference between H_2O and H_2O_2 (hydrogen peroxide)?
5. Give the proper formula for each diatomic element.
6. In 1986, when Halley's comet last passed the earth, astronomers detected the presence of S_2 in their telescopes. Why is sulfur not considered a diatomic element?
7. What is the stem of fluorine used in molecule names? CF_4 is one example.
8. What is the stem of selenium used in molecule names? $SiSe_2$ is an example.
9. Give the proper name for each molecule.
   a. PF_3
   b. $TeCl_2$
   c. N_2O_3
10. Give the proper name for each molecule.
    a. NO
    b. CS_2
    c. As_2O_3
11. Give the proper name for each molecule.
    a. XeF_2
    b. O_2F_2
    c. SF_6
12. Give the proper name for each molecule.
    a. P_4O_{10}
    b. B_2O_3
    c. P_2S_3
13. Give the proper name for each molecule.
    a. N_2O
    b. N_2O_4
    c. N_2O_5
14. Give the proper name for each molecule.
    a. SeO_2
    b. Cl_2O
    c. XeF_6
15. Give the proper formula for each name.
    a. dinitrogen pentoxide
    b. tetraboron tricarbide
    c. phosphorus pentachloride
16. Give the proper formula for each name.
    a. nitrogen triiodide
    b. diarsenic trisulfide
    c. iodine trichloride

17. Give the proper formula for each name.
    a. dioxygen dichloride
    b. dinitrogen trisulfide
    c. xenon tetrafluoride
18. Give the proper formula for each name.
    a. chlorine dioxide
    b. selenium dibromide
    c. dinitrogen trioxide
19. Give the proper formula for each name.
    a. iodine trifluoride
    b. xenon trioxide
    c. disulfur decafluoride
20. Give the proper formula for each name.
    a. germanium dioxide
    b. carbon disulfide
    c. diselenium dibromide

Answers

1. a. not a molecule
   b. a molecule; four atoms total
   c. a molecule; four atoms total
2.
3. CO is a compound of carbon and oxygen; Co is the element cobalt.
4.
5. H_2, O_2, N_2, F_2, Cl_2, Br_2, I_2
6.
7. *fluor-*
8.
9. a. phosphorus trifluoride
   b. tellurium dichloride
   c. dinitrogen trioxide
10.
11. a. xenon difluoride
    b. dioxygen difluoride
    c. sulfur hexafluoride
12.
13. a. dinitrogen monoxide
    b. dinitrogen tetroxide
    c. dinitrogen pentoxide
14.
15. a. N_2O_5
    b. B_4C_3
    c. PCl_5
16.
17. a. O_2Cl_2
    b. N_2S_3
    c. XeF_4
18.
19. a. IF_3
    b. XeO_3
    c. S_2F_{10}

3.4: Ions and Ionic Compounds

1. Explain how cations form.

2. Explain how anions form.
3. Give the charge each atom takes when it forms an ion. If more than one charge is possible, list both.
   a. K
   b. O
   c. Co
4. Give the charge each atom takes when it forms an ion. If more than one charge is possible, list both.
   a. Ca
   b. I
   c. Fe
5. Give the charge each atom takes when it forms an ion. If more than one charge is possible, list both.
   a. Ag
   b. Au
   c. Br
6. Give the charge each atom takes when it forms an ion. If more than one charge is possible, list both.
   a. S
   b. Na
   c. H
7. Name the ions from Exercise 3.
8. Name the ions from Exercise 4.
9. Name the ions from Exercise 5.
10. Name the ions from Exercise 6.
11. Give the formula and name for each ionic compound formed between the two listed ions.
    a. Mg^{2+} and Cl^{-}
    b. Fe^{2+} and O^{2-}
    c. Fe^{3+} and O^{2-}
12. Give the formula and name for each ionic compound formed between the two listed ions.
    a. K^{+} and S^{2-}
    b. Ag^{+} and Br^{-}
    c. Sr^{2+} and N^{3-}
13. Give the formula and name for each ionic compound formed between the two listed ions.
    a. Cu^{2+} and F^{-}
    b. Ca^{2+} and O^{2-}
    c. K^{+} and P^{3-}
14. Give the formula and name for each ionic compound formed between the two listed ions.
    a. Na^{+} and N^{3-}
    b. Co^{2+} and I^{-}
    c. Au^{3+} and S^{2-}
15. Give the formula and name for each ionic compound formed between the two listed ions.
    a. K^{+} and SO_4^{2-}
    b. NH_4^{+} and S^{2-}
    c. NH_4^{+} and PO_4^{3-}
16. Give the formula and name for each ionic compound formed between the two listed ions.
    a. Ca^{2+} and NO_3^{-}
    b. Ca^{2+} and NO_2^{-}
    c. Sc^{3+} and $C_2H_3O_2^{-}$
17. Give the formula and name for each ionic compound formed between the two listed ions.
    a. Pb^{4+} and SO_4^{2-}
    b. Na^{+} and I_3^{-}

c. Li^{+} and $Cr_2O_7^{2-}$

18. Give the formula and name for each ionic compound formed between the two listed ions.
    a. NH_4^{+} and N^{3-}
    b. Mg^{2+} and CO_3^{2-}
    c. Al^{3+} and OH^{-}
19. Give the formula and name for each ionic compound formed between the two listed ions.
    a. Ag^{+} and SO_3^{2-}
    b. Na^{+} and HCO_3^{-}
    c. Fe^{3+} and ClO_3^{-}
20. Give the formula and name for each ionic compound formed between the two listed ions.
    a. Rb^{+} and O_2^{2-}
    b. Au^{3+} and HSO_4^{-}
    c. Sr^{2+} and NO_2^{-}
21. What is the difference between SO_3 and SO_3^{2-}?
22. What is the difference between NO_2 and NO_2^{-}?

Answers

1. Cations form by losing electrons.
2.
3. a. 1+
   b. 2–
   c. 2+, 3+
4.
5. a. 1+
   b. 1+, 3+
   c. 1–
6.
7. a. the potassium ion
   b. the oxide ion
   c. the cobalt(II) and cobalt(III) ions, respectively
8.
9. a. the silver ion
   b. the gold(I) and gold(III) ions, respectively
   c. the bromide ion
10.
11. a. magnesium chloride, $MgCl_2$
    b. iron(II) oxide, FeO
    c. iron(III) oxide, Fe_2O_3
12.
13. a. copper(II) fluoride, CuF_2
    b. calcium oxide, CaO
    c. potassium phosphide, K_3P
14.
15. a. potassium sulfate, K_2SO_4
    b. ammonium sulfide, $(NH_4)_2S$
    c. ammonium phosphate, $(NH_4)_3PO_4$
16.
17. a. lead(IV) sulfate, $Pb(SO_4)_2$
    b. sodium triiodide, NaI_3

c. lithium dichromate, $Li_2Cr_2O_7$

18.

19. a. silver sulfite, Ag_2SO_3
    b. sodium hydrogen carbonate, $NaHCO_3$
    c. iron(III) chlorate, $Fe(ClO_3)_3$

20.

21. SO_3 is sulfur trioxide, while SO_3^{2-} is the sulfite ion.

3.5: Acids

1. Give the formula for each acid.
   a. perchloric acid
   b. hydriodic acid
2. Give the formula for each acid.
   a. hydrosulfuric acid
   b. phosphorous acid
3. Name each acid.
   a. HF(aq)
   b. HNO_3(aq)
   c. $H_2C_2O_4$(aq)
4. Name each acid.
   a. H_2SO_4(aq)
   b. H_3PO_4(aq)
   c. HCl(aq)
5. Name an acid found in food.
6. Name some properties that acids have in common.

Answers

1. a. $HClO_4$(aq)
   b. HI(aq)
2.
3. a. hydrofluoric acid
   b. nitric acid
   c. oxalic acid
4.
5. oxalic acid (answers will vary)

Additional Exercises

1. How many electrons does it take to make the mass of one proton?
2. How many protons does it take to make the mass of a neutron?
3. Dalton's initial version of the modern atomic theory says that all atoms of the same element are the same. Is this actually correct? Why or why not?
4. How are atoms of the same element the same? How are atoms of the same element different?
5. Give complete atomic symbols for the three known isotopes of hydrogen.
6. A rare isotope of helium has a single neutron in its nucleus. Write the complete atomic symbol of this isotope.
7. Use its place on the periodic table to determine if indium, In, atomic number 49, is a metal or a nonmetal.
8. Only a few atoms of astatine, At, atomic number 85, have been detected. On the basis of its position on the periodic table, would you expect it to be a metal or a nonmetal?
9. Americium-241 is a crucial part of many smoke detectors. How many neutrons are present in its nucleus?
10. Potassium-40 is a radioactive isotope of potassium that is present in the human body. How many neutrons are present in its nucleus?
11. From their positions on the periodic table, will Cu and I form a molecular compound or an ionic compound?

12. From their positions on the periodic table, will N and S form a molecular compound or an ionic compound?
13. Mercury is an unusual element in that when it takes a 1+ charge as a cation, it always exists as the diatomic ion.
    a. Propose a formula for the mercury(I) ion.
    b. What is the formula of mercury(I) chloride?
14. Propose a formula for hydrogen peroxide, a substance used as a bleaching agent. (Curiously, this compound does not behave as an acid, despite its formula. It behaves more like a classic nonmetal-nonmetal, molecular compound.)
15. The uranyl cation has the formula UO_2^{2+}. Propose formulas and names for the ionic compounds between the uranyl cation and F^-, SO_4^{2-}, and PO_4^{3-}.
16. The permanganate anion has the formula MnO_4^-. Propose formulas and names for the ionic compounds between the permanganate ion and K^+, Ca^{2+}, and Fe^{3+}.

This page titled 3.E: Atoms, Molecules, and Ions (Exercises) is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

4: THE MOLE CONCEPT

The mole concept is central to any chemistry calculation based on experimental results. The mole is how we relate the unbelievably small atoms and molecules that make something up to the measurable properties such as mass which we may observe in a laboratory setting. A proper understanding of the mole concept is essential in order to do any calculations on experimental data. The mole concept is introduced in this chapter, and will appear again in many of the forthcoming chapters. Mastering the concepts in those later chapters is dependent upon mastering the mole concept in this chapter. This might be the most important chapter in the textbook!

Because of the centrality of the mole concept throughout this textbook, here are a few guidelines you might want to consider as you begin studying this chapter:

- Refresh your understanding of conversion factors by reviewing the appropriate section of this textbook. Conversion factors are necessary in order to do all of the mole calculations introduced in this chapter.
- Master each section of this chapter before moving on to the next section. Perhaps more so than in any chapter we have looked at so far, the sections of this chapter build on each other. You might imagine it like a staircase, where you have to step on the first step before you can move on to the next one.
- Do additional homework problems if you are struggling to understand the concepts. The exercise section of this chapter includes links to additional homework sets and answer keys that you may practice if necessary.

4.1: Avogadro's Number

4.2: Conversions Between Moles and Atoms

4.3: Molar Mass

4.4: Conversions Between Moles and Mass

4.5: Conversions Between Mass and Number of Particles

4.6: Percent Composition

4.7: Determining Empirical Formulas

4.8: Percent of Water in a Hydrate

4.9: Determining Molecular Formulas

4.10: Mole Road Map

4.E: The Mole Concept (Exercises)

This page titled 4: The Mole Concept is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

4.1: Avogadro's Number



Figure 4.1.1 (Public Domain; User:OSX/Wikimedia Commons via Wikipedia)

Is there an easier way to load this truck?

When the weather is nice, many people begin to work on their yards and homes. For many projects, sand is needed as a foundation for a walk or to add to other materials. You could order up twenty million grains of sand and have people really stare at you. You could order by the pound, but that takes a lot of time weighing out. The best bet is to order by the yard, meaning a cubic yard. The loader can easily scoop up what you need and put it directly in your truck.

Avogadro's Number

It certainly is easy to count objects such as bananas, or something as large as elephants (as long as you stay out of their way). However, counting grains of sugar from a sugar canister would take a long, long time. Atoms and molecules are extremely small—far, far smaller than grains of sugar. Counting atoms or molecules is not only unwise, it is absolutely impossible. One drop of water contains about 10^{22} molecules of water. If you counted 10 molecules every second for 50 years, without stopping, you would have counted only 1.6×10^{10} molecules. Put another way, at that counting rate, it would take you over 30 trillion years to count the water molecules in one tiny drop.

Chemists of the past needed a name that could stand for a very large number of items. Amadeo Avogadro (1776-1856), an Italian scientist, provided such a number. He is responsible for the counting unit of measure called the mole. A **mole** (mol) is the amount of a substance that contains 6.02×10^{23} representative particles of that substance. The mole is the SI unit for amount of a substance. Just like the dozen and the gross, it is a name that stands for a number. There are therefore 6.02×10^{23} water molecules in a mole of water molecules. There also would be 6.02×10^{23} bananas in a mole of bananas, if such a huge number of bananas ever existed.



Figure 4.1.2: Italian scientist Amadeo Avogadro, whose work led to the concept of the mole as a counting unit in chemistry. (Public Domain; C. Sentier via Wikipedia)

The number 6.02×10^{23} is called **Avogadro's number**, the number of representative particles in a mole. It is an experimentally determined number. A **representative particle** is the smallest unit in which a substance naturally exists. For the majority of elements, the representative particle is the atom. Iron, carbon, and helium consist of iron atoms, carbon atoms, and helium atoms, respectively. Seven elements exist in nature as diatomic molecules and they are H_2, N_2, O_2, F_2, Cl_2, Br_2, and I_2. The representative particle for these elements is the molecule. Likewise, all molecular compounds such as H_2O and CO_2 exist as molecules and so the molecule is their representative particle. For ionic compounds such as $NaCl$ and $Ca(NO_3)_2$, the representative particle is the formula unit. A mole of any substance contains Avogadro's number $\left(6.02 \times 10^{23}\right)$ of representative particles.



Figure 4.1.3: The animal mole is very different than the counting unit of the mole. Chemists nonetheless have adopted the mole as their unofficial mascot. National Mole Day is a celebration of chemistry that occurs on October 23rd (10/23) of each year. ((left; Left: Michael David Hill, 2005 (Mikiwikipikidikipedia); Right: chrisbb@prodigy.net;(left) Michael David Hill, 2005 (Mikiwikipikidikipedia); (right) chrisbb@prodigy.net via Left: http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Close-up_of_mole.jpg; Right: http://www.flickr.com/photos/chrisbrenschmidt/436990097;(left) http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Close-up_of_mole.jpg; (right) http://www.flickr.com/photos/chrisbrenschmidt/436990097) CC-BY 2.5; (right) CC-BY 2.0)

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Summary

- A mole of any substance contains Avogadro's number $\left(6.02 \times 10^{23}\right)$ of representative particles.

Review

1. What is the SI unit for amount of a substance?
2. What is the representative particle for an element?
3. The formula unit is the representative particle for what?

This page titled 4.1: Avogadro's Number is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- 10.1: Avogadro's Number by CK12 is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://flexbooks.ck12.org/cbook/ck-12-chemistry-flexbook-2.0/.

4.2: Conversions Between Moles and Atoms



Figure 4.2.1 (Public Domain; Diane A. Reid/National Cancer Institute via Wikipedia)

Big numbers or little numbers?

Do you hate to type subscripts and superscripts? Even with a good word-processing program, having to click on an icon to get a superscript and then remembering to click off after you type the number can be a real hassle. If we did not know about moles and just knew about numbers of atoms or molecules (those big numbers that require lots of superscripts), life would be much more complicated and we would make many more typing errors.

Conversions Between Moles and Atoms

Conversions Between Moles and Number of Particles

Using our unit conversion techniques, we can use the mole label to convert back and forth between the number of particles and moles.

Example 4.2.1: Converting Number of Particles to Moles

The element carbon exists in two primary forms: graphite and diamond. How many moles of carbon atoms is 4.72×10^{24} atoms of carbon?

Solution

Step 1: List the known quantities and plan the problem.

Known

- number of C atoms $= 4.72 \times 10^{24}$
- 1 mole $= 6.02 \times 10^{23}$ atoms

Unknown

- 4.72 x 10^{24} = ? mol C

One conversion factor will allow us to convert from the number of C atoms to moles of C atoms.

Step 2: Calculate.

$$4.72 \times 10^{24} \text{ atoms C} \times \frac{1 \text{ mol C}}{6.02 \times 10^{23} \text{ atoms C}} = 7.84 \text{ mol C}$$

Step 3: Think about your result.

The given number of carbon atoms was greater than Avogadro's number, so the number of moles of C atoms is greater than 1 mole. Since Avogadro's number is a measured quantity with three significant figures, the result of the calculation is rounded to three significant figures.

Suppose that you want to know how many hydrogen atoms are in a mole of water molecules. First, you need to know the chemical formula for water, which is $\mathrm{H_2O}$. There are two atoms of hydrogen in each molecule of water. How many atoms of hydrogen are in two water molecules? There are $2 \times 2 = 4$ hydrogen atoms. How about in a dozen? In that case, a dozen is 12; so $12 \times 2 = 24$ hydrogen atoms in a dozen water molecules. To get the answers (4 and 24), you multiply the given number of molecules by two atoms of hydrogen per molecule. So, to find the number of hydrogen atoms in a mole of water molecules, the problem can be solved using conversion factors:

$$1 \text{ mol } \mathrm{H_2O} \times \frac{6.02 \times 10^{23} \text{ molecules } \mathrm{H_2O}}{1 \text{ mol } \mathrm{H_2O}} \times \frac{2 \text{ atoms H}}{1 \text{ molecule } \mathrm{H_2O}} = 1.20 \times 10^{24} \text{ atoms H}$$

The first conversion factor converts from moles of particles to the number of particles. The second conversion factor reflects the number of atoms contained within each molecule.

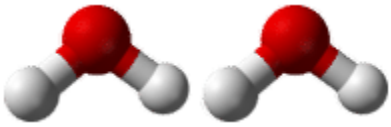


Figure $4.2.2$: Two water molecules contain 4 hydrogen atoms and 2 oxygen atoms. A mole of water molecules contains 2 moles of hydrogen atoms and 1 mole of oxygen atoms. (Public Domain; Ben Mills (Wikimedia: Benjah-bmm27) via Wikipedia)

Example $4.2.2$: Atoms, Molecules, and Moles

Sulfuric acid has the chemical formula $\mathrm{H_2SO_4}$. A certain quantity of sulfuric acid contains 4.89×10^{25} atoms of oxygen. How many moles of sulfuric acid is the sample?

Solution:

Step 1: List the known quantities and plan the problem.

Known

- $4.89 \times 10^{25} = \mathrm{O}$ atoms
- 1 mole $= 6.02 \times 10^{23}$ molecules $\mathrm{H_2SO_4}$

Unknown

- mol of $\mathrm{H_2SO_4}$ molecules

Two conversion factors will be used. First, convert atoms of oxygen to molecules of sulfuric acid. Then, convert molecules of sulfuric acid to moles of sulfuric acid.

Step 2: Calculate.

$$4.89 \times 10^{25} \text{ atoms O} \times \frac{1 \text{ molecule } \mathrm{H_2SO_4}}{4 \text{ atoms O}} \times \frac{1 \text{ mol } \mathrm{H_2SO_4}}{6.02 \times 10^{23} \text{ molecules } \mathrm{H_2SO_4}} = 20.3 \text{ mol } \mathrm{H_2SO_4}$$

Step 3: Think about your result.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CC BY NC SA © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

The original number of oxygen atoms was about 80 times larger than Avogadro's number. Since each sulfuric acid molecule contains 4 oxygen atoms, there are about 20 moles of sulfuric acid molecules.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Summary

- Methods are described for conversions between moles, atoms, and molecules.

Review

1. What conversion factor would we need to convert moles of helium to atoms of helium?
2. I want to convert atoms to moles. My friend tells me to multiply the number of atoms by 6.02×10^{23} atoms/mole. Is my friend correct?
3. Why do you need to know the formula for a molecule in order to calculate the number of moles of one of the atoms?
4. How many atoms of fluorine are in 5.6×10^{22} molecules of MgF_2?

This page titled 4.2: Conversions Between Moles and Atoms is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- 10.2: Conversions Between Moles and Atoms by CK12 is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://flexbooks.ck12.org/cbook/ck-12-chemistry-flexbook-2.0/.

4.3: Molar Mass



Figure 4.3.1 (Public Domain; Ben Mills (Wikimedia: Benjah-bmm27) via Wikipedia)

When creating a solution, how do I know how much of each substance to put in?

I want to make a solution that contains 1.8 moles of potassium dichromate. You do not have a balance calibrated in moles, but you do have one calibrated in grams. If you know the relationship between moles and the number of grams in a mole, you can use your balance to measure out the needed amount of material.

Molar Mass

Molar mass is defined as the mass of one mole of representative particles of a substance. By looking at a periodic table, we can conclude that the molar mass of lithium is $6.94\ \text{g}$, the molar mass of zinc is $65.38\ \text{g}$, and the molar mass of gold is $196.97\ \text{g}$. Each of these quantities contains 6.02×10^{23} atoms of that particular element. The units for molar mass are grams per mole, or g/mol.

Molar Masses of Compounds

The molecular formula of the compound carbon dioxide is CO_2. One molecule of carbon dioxide consists of 1 atom of carbon and 2 atoms of oxygen. We can calculate the mass of one molecule of carbon dioxide by adding together the masses of 1 atom of carbon and 2 atoms of oxygen:

$$12.01\ \text{amu} + 2\,(16.00\ \text{amu}) = 44.01\ \text{amu}$$

The **molecular mass** of a compound is the mass of one molecule of that compound. The molecular mass of carbon dioxide is $44.01\ \text{amu}$.

The molar mass of any compound is the mass in grams of one mole of that compound. One mole of carbon dioxide molecules has a mass of $44.01\ \text{g}$, while one mole of sodium sulfide formula units has a mass of $78.04\ \text{g}$. The molar masses are $44.01\ \text{g/mol}$ and $78.04\ \text{g/mol}$ respectively. In both cases, that is the mass of 6.02×10^{23} representative particles. The representative particle of CO_2 is the molecule, while for Na_2S it is the formula unit.

Example 4.3.1: Molar Mass of a Compound

Calcium nitrate, $\text{Ca(NO}_3)_2$, is used as a component in fertilizer. Determine the molar mass of calcium nitrate.

Solution

Step 1: List the known and unknown quantities and plan the problem.

Known

- Formula $= \mathrm{Ca(NO_3)_2}$
- Molar mass $\mathrm{Ca} = 40.08\ \mathrm{g/mol}$
- Molar mass $\mathrm{N} = 14.01\ \mathrm{g/mol}$
- Molar mass $\mathrm{O} = 16.00\ \mathrm{g/mol}$

Unknown

- molar mass $Ca(NO_3)_2$

First we need to analyze the formula. Since the Ca lacks a subscript, there is one Ca atom per formula unit. The 2 outside the parentheses means that there are two nitrate ions per formula unit and each nitrate ion consists of one nitrogen atom and three oxygen atoms per formula unit. Thus, $1\ \mathrm{mol}$ of calcium nitrate contains $1\ \mathrm{mol}$ of Ca atoms, $2\ \mathrm{mol}$ of N atoms, and $6\ \mathrm{mol}$ of O atoms.

Step 2: Calculate

Use the molar masses of each atom together with the number of atoms in the formula and add together.

$$1\ \mathrm{mol\ Ca} \times \frac{40.08\ \mathrm{g\ Ca}}{1\ \mathrm{mol\ Ca}} = 40.08\ \mathrm{g\ Ca}$$

$$2\ \mathrm{mol\ N} \times \frac{14.01\ \mathrm{g\ N}}{1\ \mathrm{mol\ N}} = 28.02\ \mathrm{g\ N}$$

$$6\ \mathrm{mol\ O} \times \frac{16.00\ \mathrm{g\ O}}{1\ \mathrm{mol\ O}} = 96.00\ \mathrm{g\ O}$$

$$\text{Molar mass of } \mathrm{Ca(NO_3)_2} = 40.08\ \mathrm{g} + 28.02\ \mathrm{g} + 96.00\ \mathrm{g} = 164.10\ \mathrm{g/mol}$$

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Summary

- Calculations are described for the determination of molar mass of an atom or a compound.

Review

1. What is the molar mass of Pb?
2. Where do you find the molar mass of an element?
3. How many moles of Cl are in one mole of the $CaCl_2$?
4. How many moles of H are in one mole of the compound $(NH_4)_3PO_4$?
5. Calculate the molar mass of $CaCl_2$.

This page titled 4.3: Molar Mass is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- 10.3: Molar Mass by CK12 is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://flexbooks.ck12.org/cbook/ck-12-chemistry-flexbook-2.0/.

4.4: Conversions Between Moles and Mass



Figure 4.4.1 (Public Domain; User:Estormiz/Wikimedia Commons via Wikipedia)

How can we get more product?

Chemical manufacturing plants are always seeking to improve their processes. One way that improvement comes about is through measuring the amount of material produced in a reaction. By knowing how much is made, the scientists and engineers can try different ways of getting more product at less cost.

Conversions Between Moles and Mass

The molar mass of any substance is the mass in grams of one mole of representative particles of that substance. The representative particles can be atoms, molecules, or formula units of ionic compounds. This relationship is frequently used in the laboratory. Suppose that for a certain experiment, you need 3.00 moles of calcium chloride $(\mathrm{CaCl_2})$. Since calcium chloride is a solid, it would be convenient to use a balance to measure the mass that is needed. The molar mass of $\mathrm{CaCl_2}$ is $110.98\ \mathrm{g/mol}$. The conversion factor that can be used is then based on the equality that $1\ \mathrm{mol} = 110.98\ \mathrm{g}\ \mathrm{CaCl_2}$. Dimensional analysis will allow you to calculate the mass of $\mathrm{CaCl_2}$ that you should measure.

$$3.00\ \mathrm{mol\ CaCl_2} \times \frac{110.98\ \mathrm{g\ CaCl_2}}{1\ \mathrm{mol\ CaCl_2}} = 333\ \mathrm{g\ CaCl_2}$$

When you measure the mass of $333\ \mathrm{g}$ of $\mathrm{CaCl_2}$, you are measuring 3.00 moles of $\mathrm{CaCl_2}$.



Figure 4.4.2: Calcium chloride is used as a drying agent and as a road deicer. (Public Domain; Martin Walker (User:Walkerma/Wikimedia Commons) via Wikipedia)

Example 4.4.1: Converting Moles to Mass

Chromium metal is used for decorative electroplating of car bumpers and other surfaces. Find the mass of 0.560 moles of chromium.

Solution

Step 1: List the known quantities and plan the problem.

Known

- Molar mass of $\mathrm{Cr} = 52.00\ \mathrm{g/mol}$
- $0.560\ \mathrm{mol\ Cr}$

Unknown

- $0.560\ \mathrm{mol\ Cr}$ = ? g

One conversion factor will allow us to convert from the moles of Cr to mass.

Step 2: Calculate.

$$0.560\ \mathrm{mol\ Cr} \times \frac{52.00\ \mathrm{g\ Cr}}{1\ \mathrm{mol\ Cr}} = 29.1\ \mathrm{g\ Cr}$$

Step 3: Think about your result.

Since the desired amount was slightly more than one half of a mole, the mass should be slightly more than one half of the molar mass. The answer has three significant figures because of the $0.560\ \mathrm{mol}$.

A similar conversion factor utilizing molar mass can be used to convert from the mass of a substance to moles. In a laboratory situation, you may perform a reaction and produce a certain amount of a product which can be massed. It will often then be necessary to determine the number of moles of the product that was formed. The next problem illustrates this situation.

Example 4.4.2: Converting Mass to Moles

A certain reaction produces $2.81\ \mathrm{g}$ of copper (II) hydroxide, $\mathrm{Cu(OH)_2}$. Determine the number of moles produced in the reaction.

Step 1: List the known quantities and plan the problem.

Known

- mass = 2.81g

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CC BY NC SA
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Unknown

- mol $Cu(OH)_2$

One conversion factor will allow us to convert from mass to moles.

Step 2: Calculate.

First, it is necessary to calculate the molar mass of $\mathrm{Cu(OH)_2}$ from the molar masses of Cu, O, and H. The molar mass is $97.57\ \mathrm{g/mol}$.

$$2.81\ \mathrm{g\ Cu(OH)_2} \times \frac{1\ \mathrm{mol\ Cu(OH)_2}}{97.57\ \mathrm{g\ Cu(OH)_2}} = 0.0288\ \mathrm{mol\ Cu(OH)_2}$$

Step 3: Think about your result.

The relatively small mass of product formed results in a small number of moles.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Simulation

Practice converting mass to moles in everyday objects in this simulation:

How many atoms are in a gold ring, a grain of sand, or the human body?

Summary

- Calculations involving conversions between moles of a material and the mass of that material are described.

Review

1. You have 19.7 grams of a material and wonder how many moles were formed. Your friend tells you to multiply the mass by grams/mole. Is your friend correct?
2. How many grams of MgO are in 3.500 moles?
3. How many moles of H_2O are in 15.2 grams of pure ice?

This page titled 4.4: Conversions Between Moles and Mass is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- 10.4: Conversions Between Moles and Mass by CK12 is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://flexbooks.ck12.org/cbook/ck-12-chemistry-flexbook-2.0/.

4.5: Conversions Between Mass and Number of Particles

Avogadro theorized that equal volumes of gases under the same conditions contained the same number of particles. Other researchers studied how many gas particles were in specific volumes of gases. Eventually, scientists were able to develop the relationship between number of particles and mass, using the idea of moles.

Conversions Between Mass and Number of Particles

In "Conversions Between Moles and Mass", you learned how to convert back and forth between moles and the number of representative particles. Now you have seen how to convert back and forth between moles and the mass of a substance in grams. We can combine the two types of problems into one. Mass and number of particles are both related to grams. In order to convert from mass to number of particles or vice-versa, a conversion to moles is required.



Figure 4.5.1: Conversion from number of particles to mass, or from mass to number of particles requires two steps.

Example 4.5.1

How many molecules is $20.0\ \text{g}$ of chlorine gas, Cl_2?

Solution

Step 1: List the known quantities and plan the problem.

Known

- Molar mass $\text{Cl}_2 = 70.90\ \text{g/mol}$
- $20.0\ \text{g}\ \text{Cl}_2$

Unknown

Use two conversion factors. The first converts grams of Cl_2 to moles. The second converts moles of Cl_2 to the number of molecules.

Step 2: Calculate.

$$20.0\ \text{g Cl}_2 \times \frac{1\ \text{mol Cl}_2}{70.90\ \text{g Cl}_2} \times \frac{6.02 \times 10^{23}\ \text{molecules Cl}_2}{1\ \text{mol Cl}_2} = 1.70 \times 10^{23}\ \text{molecules Cl}_2 \tag{4.5.1}$$

The problem is done using two consecutive conversion factors. There is no need to explicitly calculate the moles of Cl_2.

Step 3: Think about your result.

Since the given mass is less than half of the molar mass of chlorine, the resulting number of molecules is less than half of Avogadro's number.

Summary

- Mass and number of particles are both related to grams.
- In order to convert from mass to number of particles or vice-versa, a conversion to moles is required.
- Calculations are illustrated for conversions between mass and number of particles.

This page titled 4.5: Conversions Between Mass and Number of Particles is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- 10.5: Conversions Between Mass and Number of Particles by CK12 is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://flexbooks.ck12.org/cbook/ck-12-chemistry-flexbook-2.0/.

4.6: Percent Composition



Figure 4.6.1 (CC BY-NC 3.0; Joy Sheng via CK-12 Foundation)

Is there anything healthy in this jar?

Packaged foods that you eat typically have nutritional information provided on the label. The label on a jar of peanut butter (shown above) reveals that one serving size is considered to be $32\ \text{g}$. The label also gives the masses of various types of compounds that are present in each serving. One serving contains $7\ \text{g}$ of protein, $15\ \text{g}$ of fat, and $3\ \text{g}$ of sugar. By calculating the fraction of protein, fat, or sugar in one serving size of peanut butter and converting to percent values, we can determine the composition of peanut butter on a percent by mass basis.

Percent Composition

Chemists often need to know what elements are present in a compound and in what percentage. The **percent composition** is the percent by mass of each element in a compound. It is calculated in a similar way to what was just indicated for the peanut butter.

$$\%\ \text{by mass} = \frac{\text{mass of element}}{\text{mass of compound}} \times 100\%$$

Percent Composition from Mass Data

The sample problem below shows the calculation of the percent composition of a compound based on mass data.

Example 4.6.1: Percent Composition from Mass

A certain newly synthesized compound is known to contain the elements zinc and oxygen. When a $20.00\ \text{g}$ sample of the compound is decomposed, $16.07\ \text{g}$ of zinc remains. Determine the percent composition of the compound.

Solution

Step 1: List the known quantities and plan the problem.

Known

- Mass of compound $= 20.00\ \text{g}$
- Mass of $\text{Zn} = 16.07\ \text{g}$

Unknown

- Percent $\mathrm{Zn} = ?\%$
- Percent $\mathrm{O} = ?\%$

Subtract to find the mass of oxygen in the compound. Divide each element's mass by the mass of the compound to find the percent by mass.

Step 2: Calculate.

$$\text{Mass of oxygen} = 20.00\ \text{g} - 16.07\ \text{g} = 3.93\ \text{g O}$$

$$\%\ \mathrm{Zn} = \frac{16.07\ \text{g Zn}}{20.00\ \text{g}} \times 100\% = 80.35\%\ \mathrm{Zn}$$

$$\%\ \mathrm{O} = \frac{3.93\ \text{g O}}{20.00\ \text{g}} \times 100\% = 19.65\%\ \mathrm{O}$$

Step 3: Think about your result.

The calculations make sense because the sum of the two percentages adds up to 100%. By mass, the compound is mostly zinc.

Percent Composition from a Chemical Formula

The percent composition of a compound can also be determined from the formula of the compound. The subscripts in the formula are first used to calculate the mass of each element in one mole of the compound. That is divided by the molar mass of the compound and multiplied by 100%.

$$\%\ \text{by mass} = \frac{\text{mass of element in 1 mol}}{\text{molar mass of compound}} \times 100\%$$

The percent composition of a given compound is always the same as long as the compound is pure.

Example $4.6.2$: Percent Composition from Chemical Formula

Dichlorineheptoxide $(\mathrm{Cl_2O_7})$ is a highly reactive compound used in some organic synthesis reactions. Calculate the percent composition of dichlorineheptoxide.

Solution

Step 1: List the known quantities and plan the problem.

Known

- Mass of Cl in $1\ \text{mol}\ \mathrm{Cl_2O_7} = 70.90\ \text{g}$
- Mass of O in $1\ \text{mol}\ \mathrm{Cl_2O_7} = 112.00\ \text{g}$
- Molar mass of $\mathrm{Cl_2O_7} = 182.90\ \text{g/mol}$

Unknown

- Percent $\mathrm{Cl} = ?\%$
- Percent $\mathrm{O} = ?\%$

Calculate the percent by mass of each element by dividing the mass of that element in 1 mole of the compound by the molar mass of the compound and multiplying by 100%.

Step 2: Calculate.

$$\%\text{Cl} = \frac{70.90\text{ g Cl}}{182.90\text{ g}} \times 100\% = 38.76\%\text{ Cl}$$

$$\%\text{ O} = \frac{112.00\text{ g O}}{182.90\text{ g}} \times 100\% = 61.24\%\text{ O}$$

Step 3: Think about your result.

The percentages add up to 100%.

Percent composition can also be used to determine the mass of a certain element that is contained in any mass of a compound. In the previous sample problem, it was found that the percent composition of dichlorine heptoxide is $38.76\%\ \text{Cl}$ and $61.24\%\ \text{O}$. Suppose that you need to know the masses of chlorine and oxygen present in a $12.50\ \text{g}$ sample of dichlorine heptoxide. You can set up a conversion factor based on the percent by mass of each element:

$$12.50\text{ g } \text{Cl}_2\text{O}_7 \times \frac{38.76\text{ g Cl}}{100\text{ g } \text{Cl}_2\text{O}_7} = 4.845\text{ g Cl}$$

$$12.50\text{ g } \text{Cl}_2\text{O}_7 \times \frac{61.24\text{ g O}}{100\text{ g } \text{Cl}_2\text{O}_7} = 7.655\text{ g O}$$

The sum of the two masses is $12.50\ \text{g}$, the mass of the sample size.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Science Friday: Stained Glass Conservation

Stained glass from the Middle Ages is often hundreds of years old. Unfortunately, many of these relics are in need of cleaning and maintenance. In this video by Science Friday, conservator Mary Higgins discusses the methods used to protect the stained glass.

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Summary

- Processes are described for calculating the percent composition of a material based on mass or on chemical composition.

Review

1. What is the formula for calculating percent composition?
2. What information do you need to calculate percent composition by mass?
3. What do subscripts in a chemical formula tell you?

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CC BY NC SA
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

This page titled 4.6: Percent Composition is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- 10.10: Percent Composition by CK12 is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://flexbooks.ck12.org/cbook/ck-12-chemistry-flexbook-2.0/.

4.7: Determining Empirical Formulas



Figure 4.7.1 (Public Domain; Harriet Moore via Wikipedia)

What is occuring in this picture?

In the early days of chemistry, there were few tools available for the detailed study of compounds. Much of the information regarding the composition of compounds came from the elemental analysis of inorganic materials. The "new" field of organic chemistry (the study of carbon compounds) faced the challenge of not being able to characterize a compound completely. The relative amounts of elements could be determined, but many of these materials had carbon, hydrogen, oxygen, and possibly nitrogen in simple ratios. Chemists had no way to determine the exact amounts of these atoms that were contained in specific molecules.

Determining Empirical Formulas

An **empirical formula** is one that shows the lowest whole-number ratio of the elements in a compound. Because the structure of ionic compounds is an extended three-dimensional network of positive and negative ions, all formulas of ionic compounds are empirical. However, we can also consider the empirical formula of a molecular compound. Ethene is a small hydrocarbon compound with the formula $\mathrm{C_2H_4}$ (see figure below). While $\mathrm{C_2H_4}$ is its molecular formula and represents its true molecular structure, it has an empirical formula of $\mathrm{CH_2}$. The simplest ratio of carbon to hydrogen in ethene is 1:2. There are two ways to view that ratio. Considering one molecule of ethene, the ratio is 1 carbon atom for every 2 atoms of hydrogen. Considering one mole of ethene, the ratio is 1 mole of carbon for every 2 moles of hydrogen. So, the subscripts in a formula represent the mole ratio of the elements in that formula.

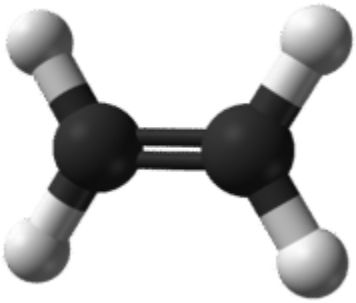


Figure 4.7.2: Ball-and-stick model of ethene, $\mathrm{C_2H_4}$. (Public Domain; Ben Mills (Wikimedia: Benjah-bmm27) via Wikipedia)

In a procedure called **elemental analysis**, an unknown compound can be analyzed in the laboratory in order to determine the percentages of each element contained within it. These percentages can be transformed into the mole ratio of the elements,

which leads to the empirical formula. The steps to be taken are outlined below.

1. Assume a $100\ \text{g}$ sample of the compound, so that the given percentages can be directly converted into grams.
2. Use each element's molar mass to convert the grams of each element to moles.
3. In order to find a whole-number ratio, divide the moles of each element by whichever of the moles from step 2 is the smallest.
4. If all the moles at this point are whole numbers (or very close), the empirical formula can be written with the moles as the subscript of each element.
5. In some cases, one or more of the moles calculated in step 3 will not be whole numbers. Multiply each of the moles by the smallest whole number that will convert each into a whole number. Write the empirical formula.

Example $4.7.1$**: Determining the Empirical Formula of a Compound**

A compound of iron and oxygen is analyzed and found to contain 69.94% iron and 30.06% oxygen. Find the empirical formula of the compound.

Solution

Step 1: List the known quantities and plan the problem.

Known

- $\%$ of $\text{Fe} = 69.94\%$
- $\%$ of $\text{O} = 30.06\%$

Unknown

- Empirial formula = $\text{Fe}_?\text{O}_?$

Steps to follow are outlined in the text.

Step 2: Calculate.

1. Assume a $100\ \text{g}$ sample.

$$69.94\ \text{g Fe}$$

$$30.06\ \text{g O}$$

2. Convert to moles.

$$69.94\ \text{g Fe} \times \frac{1\ \text{mol Fe}}{55.85\ \text{g Fe}} = 1.252\ \text{mol Fe}$$

$$30.06\ \text{g O} \times \frac{1\ \text{mol O}}{16.00\ \text{g O}} = 1.879\ \text{mol O}$$

3. Divide both moles by the smallest of the results.

$$\frac{1.252\ \text{mol Fe}}{1.252} = 1\ \text{mol Fe} \quad \frac{1.879\ \text{mol O}}{1.252} = 1.501\ \text{molO}$$

4/5. Since the moles of O is still not a whole number, both moles can be multiplied by 2, while rounding to a whole number.

$$1\ \text{mol Fe} \times 2 = 2\ \text{mol Fe} \quad 1.501\ \text{mol O} \times 2 = 3\ \text{mol O}$$

The empirical formula of the compound is Fe_2O_3.

Step 3: Think about your result.

The subscripts are whole numbers and represent the mole ratio of the elements in the compound. The compound is the ionic compound iron (III) oxide.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CC BY NC SA
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Summary

- A process is described for the calculation of the empirical formula for a compound based on the percent composition of that compound.

Review

1. What is an empirical formula?
2. What does an empirical formula tell you?
3. What does it not tell you?

This page titled 4.7: Determining Empirical Formulas is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- 10.12: Determining Empirical Formulas by CK12 is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://flexbooks.ck12.org/cbook/ck-12-chemistry-flexbook-2.0/.

4.8: Percent of Water in a Hydrate



Figure 4.8.1 (Public Domain; Doug Smith (Wikimedia: Xsmith) via Wikipedia)

Why does the color change?

If you look at a typical bottle of copper sulfate, it will be a bluish-green. If someone were to tell you that copper sulfate is white, you likely would not believe them. However, it turns out that you are both right; it just depends on the copper sulfate. Your blue-green copper sulfate has several water molecules attached to it, while your friend's copper sulfate is anhydrous (no water attached). Why the difference? The water molecules interact with some of the d electrons in the copper ion and produce the color. When the water is removed, the electron configuration changes and the color disappears.

Percent of Water in a Hydrate

Many ionic compounds naturally contain water as part of the crystal lattice structure. A **hydrate** is a compound that has one or more water molecules bound to each formula unit. Ionic compounds that contain a transition metal are often highly colored. Interestingly, it is common for the hydrated form of a compound to be of a different color than the **anhydrous** form, which has no water in its structure. A hydrate can usually be converted to the anhydrous compound by heating. For example, the anhydrous compound cobalt (II) chloride is blue, while the hydrate is a distinctive magenta color.

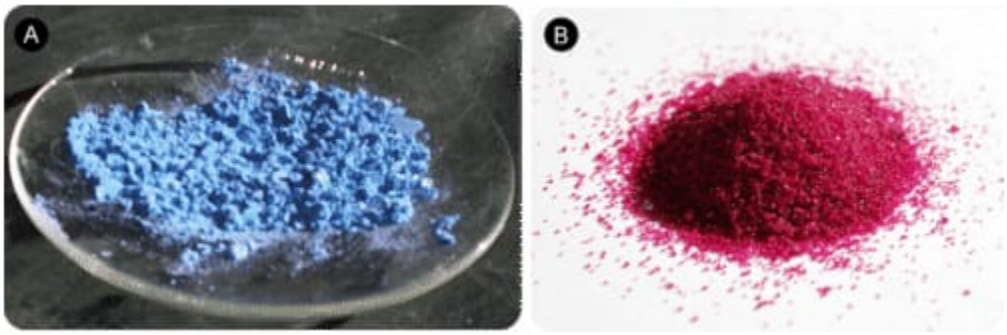


Figure 4.8.2: On the left is anhydrous cobalt (II) chloride, $\mathrm{CoCl_2}$. On the right is the hydrated form of the compound called cobalt (II) chloride hexahydrate, $\mathrm{CoCl_2 \cdot 6H_2O}$. (Public Domain; (A) Martin Walker (Wikimedia: Walkerma); (B) Ben Mills (Wikimedia: Benjah-bmm27) via (A) http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Cobalt%2528II%2529_chloride.jpg; (B) http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Cobalt%2528II%2529-chloride-hexahydrate-sample.jpg)

The hydrated form of cobalt (II) chloride contains six water molecules in each formula unit. The name of the compound is cobalt (II) chloride hexahydrate and its formula is $\mathrm{CoCl_2 \cdot 6H_2O}$. The formula for water is set apart at the end of the formula with a dot, followed by a coefficient that represents the number of water molecules per formula unit.

It is useful to know the percent of water contained within a hydrate. The sample problem below demonstrates the procedure.

Example 4.8.1: Percent of Water in a Hydrate

Find the percent water in cobalt (II) chloride hexahydrate, $\mathrm{CoCl_2 \cdot 6H_2O}$.

Solution

Step 1: List the known quantities and plan the problem.

The mass of water in the hydrate is the coefficient (6) multiplied by the molar mass of $\mathrm{H_2O}$. The molar mass of the hydrate is the molar mass of the $\mathrm{CoCl_2}$ plus the mass of water.

Known

- Mass of $\mathrm{H_2O}$ in $1\ \mathrm{mol}$ hydrate $= 108.12\ \mathrm{g}$
- Molar mass of hydrate $= 237.95\ \mathrm{g/mol}$

Unknown

- percent H_2O = ?%

Calculate the percent by mass of water by dividing the mass of $\mathrm{H_2O}$ in 1 mole of the hydrate by the molar mass of the hydrate and multiplying by 100%.

Step 2: Calculate.

$$\%\ \mathrm{H_2O} = \frac{108.12\ \mathrm{g\ H_2O}}{237.95\ \mathrm{g}} \times 100\% = 45.44\%\ \mathrm{H_2O}$$

Step 3: Think about your result.

Nearly half of the mass of the hydrate is composed of water molecules within the crystal.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Summary

- The process of calculating the percent water in a hydrate is described.

Review

1. What is a hydrate?
2. How can you convert a hydrate to an anhydrous compound?
3. What does hexahydrate mean?

This page titled 4.8: Percent of Water in a Hydrate is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- 10.11: Percent of Water in a Hydrate by CK12 is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://flexbooks.ck12.org/cbook/ck-12-chemistry-flexbook-2.0/.

4.9: Determining Molecular Formulas

Below are two carbohydrates: glucose and sucrose. Sucrose is almost exactly twice the size of glucose, although their empirical formulas are very similar. Some people could distinguish them on the basis of taste, but it's not a good idea to go around tasting chemicals. The best way is to determine the molecular weights—this approach makes the compounds easily distinguishable.

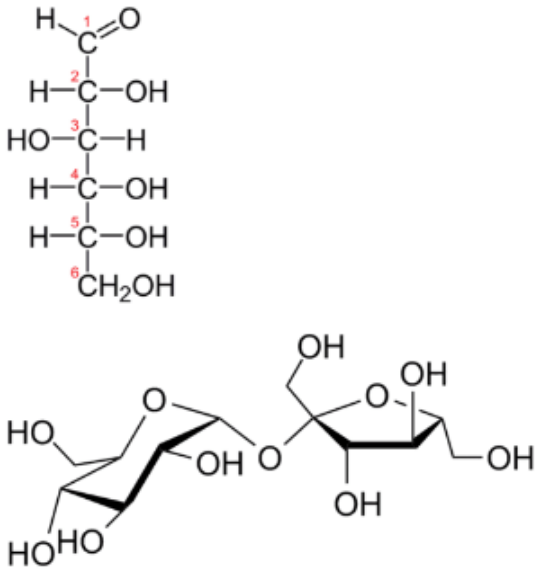


Figure 4.9.1: On top, the molecular structure of glucose. Below, the molecular structure of sucrose. please note: you do not need to understand the meaning of these structures at this point in the course.

Molecular Formulas

Molecular formulas give the kind and number of atoms of each element present in a molecular compound. In many cases, the molecular formula is the same as the empirical formula. The molecular formula of methane is $\mathrm{CH_4}$ and because it contains only one carbon atom, that is also its empirical formula. Sometimes, however, the molecular formula is a simple whole-number multiple of the empirical formula. Acetic acid is an organic acid that is the main component of vinegar. Its molecular formula is $\mathrm{C_2H_4O_2}$. Glucose is a simple sugar that cells use as a primary source of energy. Its molecular formula is $\mathrm{C_6H_{12}O_6}$. The structures of both molecules are shown in the figure below. They are very different compounds, yet both have the same empirical formula of $\mathrm{CH_2O}$.

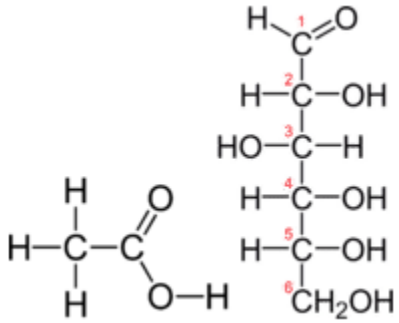


Figure 4.9.2: Acetic acid (left) has a molecular formula of $\mathrm{C_2H_4O_2}$, while glucose (right) has a molecular formula of $\mathrm{C_6H_{12}O_6}$. Both have the empirical formula $\mathrm{CH_2O}$.

Empirical formulas can be determined from the percent composition of a compound. In order to determine its molecular formula, it is necessary to know the molar mass of the compound. Chemists use an instrument called a mass spectrometer to determine the molar mass of compounds. In order to go from the empirical formula to the molecular formula, follow these steps:

1. Calculate the **empirical formula mass (EFM)**, which is simply the molar mass represented by the empirical formula.

2. Divide the molar mass of the compound by the empirical formula mass. The result should be a whole number or very close to a whole number.

3. Multiply all the subscripts in the empirical formula by the whole number found in step 2. The result is the molecular formula.

Example 4.9.1

The empirical formula of a compound of boron and hydrogen is $\mathrm{BH_3}$. Its molar mass is $27.7\ \mathrm{g/mol}$. Determine the molecular formula of the compound.

Solution

Step 1: List the known quantities and plan the problem.

Known

- Empirical formula $= \mathrm{BH_3}$
- Molar mass $= 27.7\ \mathrm{g/mol}$

Unknown

Steps to follow are outlined in the text.

Step 2: Calculate.

$$\text{Empirical formula mass (EFM)} = 13.84\,\mathrm{g/mol} \tag{4.9.1}$$

$$\frac{\text{molar mass}}{\text{EFM}} = \frac{27.7}{13.84} = 2 \tag{4.9.2}$$

$$\mathrm{BH_3} \times 2 = \mathrm{B_2H_6} \tag{4.9.3}$$

The molecular formula of the compound is $\mathrm{B_2H_6}$.

Step 3: Think about your result.

The molar mass of the molecular formula matches the molar mass of the compound.

Summary

- Molecular formulas give the kind and number of atoms of each element present in a molecular compound.
- A procedure is described for the calculation of the exact molecular formula of a compound.

This page titled 4.9: Determining Molecular Formulas is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- 10.13: Determining Molecular Formulas by CK12 is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://flexbooks.ck12.org/cbook/ck-12-chemistry-flexbook-2.0/.

4.10: Mole Road Map

If you want to visit the town of Manteo, North Carolina, out on the coast, you need a map to get there. You may have a printed map or may download directions from the internet, but need something to steer you in the right direction. Chemistry road maps serve the same purpose. How do you handle a certain type of calculation? There is a process and a set of directions to help.

Mole Road Map

The mole concept is central to any chemistry calculation based on experimental results. The mole is how we relate the unbelievably small atoms and molecules that make something up to the measurable properties such as mass which we may observe in a laboratory setting. In this chapter, we have limited our discussion on the mole concept to the measurable property of masses of pure substances. However, this is not the only type of matter that exists. In later chapters, we will need to consider how to find the moles of a portion of matter which may not be a pure substance, or may be difficult to mass. Or we may need to find how the amount of substance changes as a result of a chemical change. Having a way to map conversion factors between moles and various properties becomes important as we introduce these other ways of measuring matter.

The following diagram shows a mole map which includes one additional measurable property (the volume of the gas at STP). You do not need to understand the meaning of STP at the moment, and we will explore gas properties in more detail in a later chapter. However, you should be able to look at the diagram and see how the mole concept is central. As additional conversions between moles and measurable properties are introduced in later chapters, please take a moment to create your own mole map showing how those properties relate to the mole concept via a conversion factor.

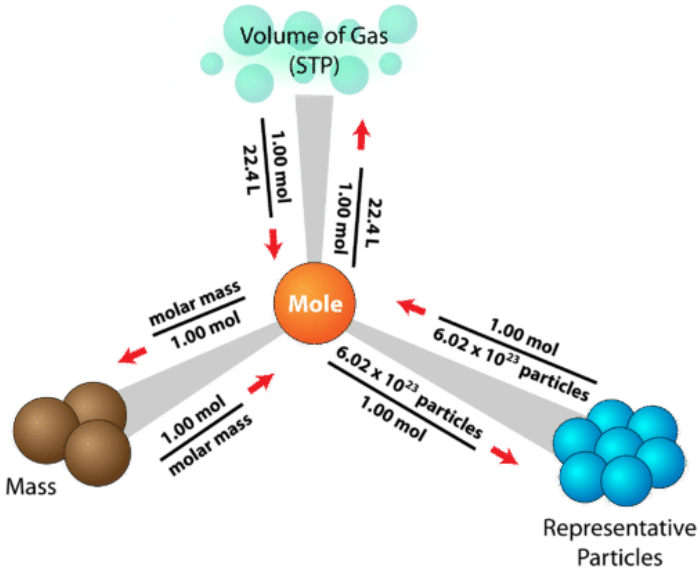


Figure 4.10.1: The mole road map shows the conversion factors needed to interconvert mass, number of particles, and volume of a gas.

The mole is at the center of any calculation involving amount of a substance. The sample problem below is one of many different problems that can be solved using the mole road map.

Example 4.10.1

What is the volume of $79.3\ \text{g}$ of neon gas at STP?

Solution

Step 1: List the known quantities and plan the problem.

Known

- $\mathrm{Ne} = 20.18\ \mathrm{g/mol}$
- $1\ \mathrm{mol} = 22.4\ \mathrm{L}$

Unknown

The conversion factors will be grams → moles → gas volume.

Step 2: Calculate.

$$79.3\ \mathrm{g\ Ne} \times \frac{1\ \mathrm{mol\ Ne}}{20.18\ \mathrm{g\ Ne}} \times \frac{22.4\ \mathrm{L\ Ne}}{1\ \mathrm{mol\ Ne}} = 88.0\ \mathrm{L\ Ne} \tag{4.10.1}$$

Step 3: Think about your result.

The given mass of neon is equal to about 4 moles, resulting in a volume that is about 4 times larger than molar volume.

Summary

This page titled 4.10: Mole Road Map is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- 10.8: Mole Road Map by CK12 is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://flexbooks.ck12.org/cbook/ck-12-chemistry-flexbook-2.0/.

4.E: The Mole Concept (Exercises)

The following questions are related to the material covered in this chapter, however they may not be presented in the same order that they were in your chapter. For additional examples also check here (5.2 only) or here (5.75, 5.80, 5.105, 5.106 only)

4.1-4.5: Avogadro's Number, Molar Mass and the Mole

Conceptual Problems

Please be sure you are familiar with the topics discussed in Essential Skills 2 before proceeding to the Conceptual Problems.

1. Describe the relationship between an atomic mass unit and a gram.
2. Is it correct to say that ethanol has a formula mass of 46? Why or why not?
3. If 2 mol of sodium reacts completely with 1 mol of chlorine to produce sodium chloride, does this mean that 2 g of sodium reacts completely with 1 g of chlorine to give the same product? Explain your answer.
4. Construct a flowchart to show how you would calculate the number of moles of silicon in a 37.0 g sample of orthoclase ($KAlSi_3O_8$), a mineral used in the manufacture of porcelain.
5. Construct a flowchart to show how you would calculate the number of moles of nitrogen in a 22.4 g sample of nitroglycerin that contains 18.5% nitrogen by mass.

Numerical Problems

Please be sure you are familiar with the topics discussed in Essential Skills 2 before proceeding to the Numerical Problems.

1. Derive an expression that relates the number of molecules in a sample of a substance to its mass and molecular mass.

2. Calculate the molecular mass or formula mass of each compound.

a. KCl (potassium chloride)
b. NaCN (sodium cyanide)
c. H_2S (hydrogen sulfide)
d. NaN_3 (sodium azide)
e. H_2CO_3 (carbonic acid)
f. K_2O (potassium oxide)
g. $Al(NO_3)_3$ (aluminum nitrate)
h. $Cu(ClO_4)_2$ [copper(II) perchlorate]

3. Calculate the molecular mass or formula mass of each compound.

a. V_2O_4 (vanadium(IV) oxide)
b. $CaSiO_3$ (calcium silicate)
c. BiOCl (bismuth oxychloride)
d. CH_3COOH (acetic acid)
e. Ag_2SO_4 (silver sulfate)
f. Na_2CO_3 (sodium carbonate)
g. $(CH_3)_2CHOH$ (isopropyl alcohol)

8. Calculate the number of moles in 5.00×10^2 g of each substance. How many molecules or formula units are present in each sample?

a. CaO (lime)

b. $CaCO_3$(chalk)

c. $C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$ [sucrose (cane sugar)]

d. NaOCl (bleach)

e. CO_2 (dry ice)

9. Calculate the mass in grams of each sample.

a. 0.520 mol of N_2O_4

b. 1.63 mol of $C_6H_4Br_2$

c. 4.62 mol of $(NH_4)_2SO_3$

10. Give the number of molecules or formula units in each sample.

a. 1.30×10^{-2} mol of SCl_2

b. 1.03 mol of N_2O_5

c. 0.265 mol of $Ag_2Cr_2O_7$

11. Give the number of moles in each sample.

a. 9.58×10^{26} molecules of Cl_2

b. 3.62×10^{27} formula units of KCl

c. 6.94×10^{28} formula units of $Fe(OH)_2$

12. Solutions of iodine are used as antiseptics and disinfectants. How many iodine atoms correspond to 11.0 g of molecular iodine (I_2)?

13. What is the total number of atoms in each sample?

a. 0.431 mol of Li

b. 2.783 mol of methanol (CH_3OH)

c. 0.0361 mol of $CoCO_3$

d. 1.002 mol of $SeBr_2O$

14. What is the total number of atoms in each sample?

a. 0.980 mol of Na

b. 2.35 mol of O_2

c. 1.83 mol of Ag_2S

d. 1.23 mol of propane (C_3H_8)

15. What is the total number of atoms in each sample?

a. 2.48 g of HBr

b. 4.77 g of CS_2

c. 1.89 g of NaOH

d. 1.46 g of SrC_2O_4

16. Decide whether each statement is true or false and explain your reasoning.

a. There are more molecules in 0.5 mol of Cl_2than in 0.5 mol of H_2.
b. One mole of H_2 has 6.022×10^{23} hydrogen atoms.
c. The molecular mass of H_2O is 18.0 amu.
d. The formula mass of benzene is 78 amu.

17. Complete the following table.

Substance	Mass (g)	Number of Moles	Number of Molecules or Formula Units	Number of Atoms or Ions
$MgCl_2$	37.62	a.	b.	c.
$AgNO_3$	d.	2.84	e.	f.
BH_4Cl	g.	h.	8.93×10^{25}	i.
K_2S	j	k.	l.	7.69×10^{26}
H_2SO_4	m.	1.29	n.	o.
C_6H_{14}	11.84	p.	q.	r.
$HClO_3$	s.	t.	2.45×10^{26}	u.

18. Give the formula mass or the molecular mass of each substance.

a. $PbClF$
b. $Cu_2P_2O_7$
c. $BiONO_3$
d. Tl_2SeO_4

19. Give the formula mass or the molecular mass of each substance.

a. $MoCl_5$
b. B_2O_3
c. UO_2CO_3
d. $NH_4UO_2AsO_4$

Conceptual Answers

1. While both are units of mass, a gram is Avogadro's number of atomic mass units so you would multiply the number of amu by 6.022x10^23 to find total number of grams
2. The correct way to state formula mass of ethanol is to show the units of mass which is amu.
3. No because moles and weight operate on different set of standards meaning that they're not equal to each other. This means that moles of different compounds contain different weights. For example, 2 moles of Na = 2 x 22.989 g = 45.98g while 1 mole of Cl = 1 x 35.453 g = 35.453 g Cl. This makes the sodium react completely with chlorine. 2g of sodium would react with = (35.453/45.978) x 2 = 1.542 g Cl
4. Construct a flowchart to show how you would calculate the number of moles of silicon in a 37.0 g sample of orthoclase ($KAlSi_3O_8$), a mineral used in the manufacture of porcelain
    1. .

$$\frac{given\ mass}{molar\ mass\ of\ KAlSi3O8} x \frac{(3\ moles\ of\ Si)}{(1\ mole\ of\ KAlSi3O8)} = \frac{37\ mol}{278\ mol} x \frac{(3\ moles\ of\ Si)}{(1\ mole\ of\ KAlSi3O8)} = 0.4\ moles$$

5. Construct a flowchart to show how you would calculate the number of moles of nitrogen in a 22.4 g sample of nitroglycerin that contains 18.5% nitrogen by mass.

$$\frac{given\ mass\ of\ nitroglycerin}{molar\ mass\ of\ nitroglcerin} x \frac{(3\ moles\ of\ Si)}{(1\ mole\ of\ KAlSi3O8)} = \frac{22.4\ g}{227.0\ g/mol} = 0.099\ mole \rightarrow \frac{4.14\ (mass\ of\ nitrogen)}{14\ (molar\ atomic\ mass\ of\ nitrogen)} = 0.296\ moles$$

1.

6. The information required to determine the mass of the solute would be the molarity of the solution because once that is achieved, volume of the solution and molar mass of the solute can be used to calculate the total mass. A derivatization that achieves this goes as: Molarity = moles of solute / volume of solution in liter -> Moles = molarity x volume in liter -> Mass= moles x molar mass.

Numerical Answers

1. Derive an expression that relates the number of molecules in a sample of a substance to its mass and molecular mass.

$$1\ mole = 6.022x10^{23} mol = NA\ (Avogadro's\ Number)$$

$$mole = \frac{mass}{molecular\ mass}$$

$$Number\ of\ molecules = moles\ x\ NA \rightarrow \frac{mass}{molecular\ mass} xNA$$

2. Calculate the molecular mass or formula mass of each compound.

a. 74.55 amu
b. 49.01 amu
c. 34.08 amu
d. 65.01 amu
e. 62.02 amu
f. 94.20 amu
g. 213.00 amu
h. 262.45 amu

3. Calculate the molecular mass or formula mass of each compound.

a. 165.88 amu
b. 116.16 amu
c. 260.43 amu
d. 60.05 amu
e. 311.80 amu
f. 105.99 amu
g. 60.10 amu

4. Calculate the molar mass of each compound.

a. 153.82 g/mol

b. 80.06 g/mol

c. 92.01 g/mol

d. 70.13 g/mol

e. 74.12 g/mol

5. Calculate the molar mass of each compound.

a. 92.45 g/mol

b. 135.04 g/mol

c. 44.01 g/mol

d. 40.06 g/mol

6. For each compound, write the condensed formula, name the compound, and give its molar mass.

a. $C_5H_{10}O_2$, Valeric Acid, 102.13 g/mol

b. H_3PO_3, Phosphorous acid, 82 g/mol

7. For each compound, write the condensed formula, name the compound, and give its molar mass.

a. $C_2H_5NH_2$, Ethylamine, 45.08 g/mol

b. HIO_3, Iodic acid, 175.91 g/mol

8. Calculate the number of moles in 5.00×10^2 g of each substance. How many molecules or formula units are present in each sample?

a. 5.37×10^{24} mol

b. 3.01×10^{24} mol

c. 8.80×10^{23} mol

d. 4.04×10^{24} mol

e. 6.84×10^{24} mol

9. Calculate the mass in grams of each sample.

a. 47.85 grams

b. 384.52 grams

c. 536.57 grams

10. Give the number of molecules or formula units in each sample.

a. 7.83×10^{21} molecules

b. 6.20×10^{23} molecules

c. 1.60×10^{23} molecules

11. Give the number of moles in each sample.

a. 1590.8 moles

b. 6011.3 moles

c. 115244.1 moles

12. Solutions of iodine are used as antiseptics and disinfectants. How many iodine atoms correspond to 11.0 g of molecular iodine (I_2)?

2.61 x10^{22} molecules

13. What is the total number of atoms in each sample?

a. 2.60x10^{23} atoms

b. 1.01x10^{25} atoms

c. 1.09x10^{23} atoms

d. 2.41x10^{24} atoms

14. What is the total number of atoms in each sample?

a. 5.9x10^{23} atoms

b. 2.8x10^{24} atoms

c. 3.31x10^{24} atoms

d. 8.15x10^{24} atoms

15. What is the total number of atoms in each sample?

a. 3.69x10^{22} atoms

b. 1.13x10^{23} atoms

c. 8.54x10^{22} atoms

d. 3.50x10^{23} atoms

16.

a. False, the number of molecules in 0.5 mol Cl2 are the same amount of molecules in H2

b. False, the number of molecules in H2 is 2 x (6.022 x10^23) H atoms

c. True, 2 H (1.01 amu) + 1 O (16.01) = 18.0 amu

d. True, C6H6 -> 12(6) + 1(6) = 78 amu

17. Complete the following table

a. 0.39

b. 2.36x10^23

c. 7.08x10^23

d. 482.8

e. 1.71x10^24

f. 8.55x10^24

g. 7932.7

h. 148.3

i. 5.36x10^26

j. 46938.5

k. 425.7

l. 1276.98

m. 126.5

n. 7.77x10^23

o. 5.44x10^24

p. 0.14

q. 8.27x10^22

r. 1.65x10^24

s. 34358

t. 406.8

u. 1.23x10^2

18. Give the formula mass or the molecular mass of each substance.

a. 261.67 amu
b. 301.04 amu
c. 286.98 amu
d. 551.73 amu

19. Give the formula mass or the molecular mass of each substance.

a. 273.21 amu
b. 69.62 amu
c. 330.04 amu
d. 426.99 amu

4.6-4.9: Percent Composition, Empirical Formula, and Molecular Formula

Conceptual Problems

1. What is the relationship between an empirical formula and a molecular formula
2. Construct a flowchart showing how you would determine the empirical formula of a compound from its percent composition.

Numerical Problems

1. What is the mass percentage of water in each hydrate?

a. $H_3AsO_4 \cdot 5H_2O$

b. $NH_4NiCl_3 \cdot 6H_2O$

c. $Al(NO_3)_3 \cdot 9H_2O$

2. What is the mass percentage of water in each hydrate?

a. $CaSO_4 \cdot 2H_2O$

b. $Fe(NO_3)_3 \cdot 9H_2O$

c. $(NH_4)_3ZrOH(CO_3)_3 \cdot 2H_2O$

3. Which of the following has the greatest mass percentage of oxygen—$KMnO_4$, $K_2Cr_2O_7$, or Fe_2O_3?

4. Which of the following has the greatest mass percentage of oxygen—$ThOCl_2$, $MgCO_3$, or NO_2Cl?

5. Calculate the percent composition of the element shown in bold in each compound.

a. $Sb\mathbf{Br}_3$

b. $\mathbf{As}_2I_4$

c. $Al\mathbf{P}O_4$

d. $\mathbf{C}_6H_{10}O$

6. Calculate the percent composition of the element shown in bold in each compound.

a. $H\mathbf{Br}O_3$

b $\mathbf{Cs}ReO_4$

c. $\mathbf{C}_3H_8O$

d. $Fe\mathbf{S}O_4$

7. A sample of a chromium compound has a molar mass of 151.99 g/mol. Elemental analysis of the compound shows that it contains 68.43% chromium and 31.57% oxygen. What is the identity of the compound?

8. The percentages of iron and oxygen in the three most common binary compounds of iron and oxygen are given in the following table. Write the empirical formulas of these three compounds.

Compound	% Iron	% Oxygen	Empirical Formula
1	69.9	30.1	
2	77.7	22.3	
3	72.4	27.6	

9. What is the mass percentage of water in each hydrate?

a. $LiCl \cdot H_2O$

b. $MgSO_4 \cdot 7H_2O$

c. $Sr(NO_3)_2 \cdot 4H_2O$

10. What is the mass percentage of water in each hydrate?

a. $CaHPO_4 \cdot 2H_2O$

b. $FeCl_2 \cdot 4H_2O$

c. $Mg(NO_3)_2 \cdot 4H_2O$

11. Two hydrates were weighed, heated to drive off the waters of hydration, and then cooled. The residues were then reweighed. Based on the following results, what are the formulas of the hydrates?

Compound	Initial Mass (g)	Mass after Cooling (g)
$NiSO_4 \cdot xH_2O$	2.08	1.22
$CoCl_2 \cdot xH_2O$	1.62	0.88

12. Which contains the greatest mass percentage of sulfur—FeS_2, $Na_2S_2O_4$, or Na_2S?

13. Given equal masses of each, which contains the greatest mass percentage of sulfur—$NaHSO_4$ or K_2SO_4?

14. Calculate the mass percentage of oxygen in each polyatomic ion.

a. bicarbonate

b. chromate

c. acetate

d. sulfite

15. Calculate the mass percentage of oxygen in each polyatomic ion.

a. oxalate

b. nitrite

c. dihydrogen phosphate

d. thiocyanate

16. The empirical formula of garnet, a gemstone, is $Fe_3Al_2Si_3O_{12}$. An analysis of a sample of garnet gave a value of 13.8% for the mass percentage of silicon. Is this consistent with the empirical formula?

17. A compound has the empirical formula C_2H_4O, and its formula mass is 88 g. What is its molecular formula?

18. Mirex is an insecticide that contains 22.01% carbon and 77.99% chlorine. It has a molecular mass of 545.59 g. What is its empirical formula? What is its molecular formula?

27. Calculate the formula mass or the molecular mass of each compound.

a. $MoCl_5$

b. B_2O_3

c. bromobenzene

d. cyclohexene

e. phosphoric acid

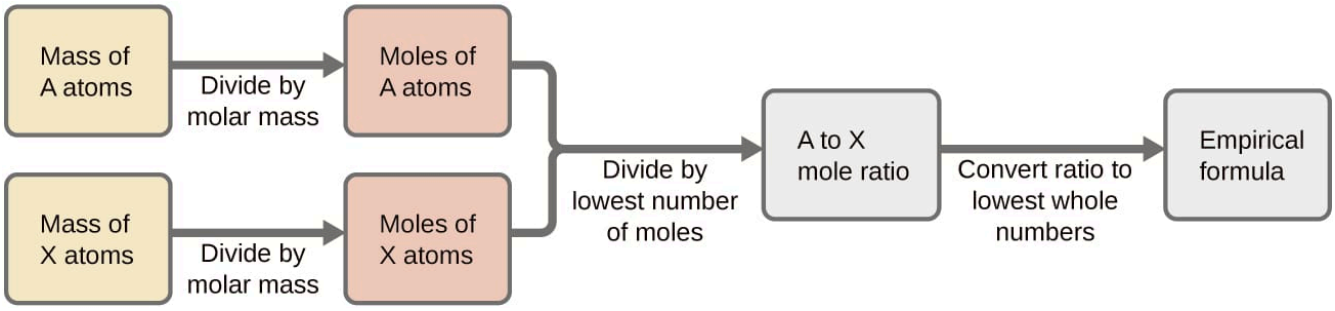
f. ethylamine

Conceptual Answers

1) What is the relationship between an empirical formula and a molecular formula

- An empirical formula refers to the simplest ratio of elements that is obtained from a chemical formula while a molecular formula is calculated to show the actual formula of a molecular compound.

2) Construct a flowchart showing how you would determine the empirical formula of a compound from its percent composition.



Numerical Answers

a. What is the formula mass of each species?

a. 53.49146 amu

b. 49.0072 amu

c. 58.3197 amu

d. 310.177 amu

e. 73.891 amu

f. 81.07 amu

b. What is the molecular or formula mass of each compound?

a.158.034 amu

b. 142.04 amu

c. 27.0253 amu

d. 97.181 amu

e. 124.1 amu

f. 65.99 amu

1. To two decimal places, the percentages are:

a. 5.97%

b. 37.12%

c. 43.22%

2. Percentage of Oxygen in each hydrates are:

a. 20.93%

b. 40.13%

c. 9.52%

3. % oxygen: $KMnO_4$, 40.50%; $K_2Cr_2O_7$, 38.07%; Fe_2O_3, 30.06%

4. % oxygen: ThOCl2, 5.02%; MgCO3, 56.93%; NO2Cl, 39.28%

5. To two decimal places, the percentages are:

a. 66.32% Br

b. 22.79% As

c. 25.40% P

d. 73.43% C

6.

a. 61.98% Br

b. 34.69% Cs

c. 59.96% C

d. 21.11% S

7. Cr_2O_3.

8. Empirical Formulas

1. Fe_2O_3
2. Fe_4O_4
3. Fe_6O_8

9. To two decimal places, the percentages are:

a. 29.82%

b. 51.16%

c. 25.40%

10. What is the mass percentage of water in each hydrate?

a. 20.94%

b. 36.25%

c. 32.70%

11. $NiSO_4 \cdot 6H_2O$ and $CoCl_2 \cdot 6H_2O$

12. FeS_2

13. $NaHSO_4$

14. Calculate the mass percentage of oxygen in each polyatomic ion.

a. 78.66%

b. 55.17%

c. 54.19%

d. 59.95%

15.

a. 72.71%

b. 69.55%

c. 65.99%

d. 0%

16. The empirical formula of garnet, a gemstone, is $Fe_3Al_2Si_3O_{12}$. An analysis of a sample of garnet gave a value of 13.8% for the mass percentage of silicon. Is this consistent with the empirical formula?

No, the calculated mass percentage of silicon in garnet is 16.93%

17. $C_4H_8O_2$

18.

Empirical Formula: $C_{10}Cl_{12}$

Molecular Formula: $C_{10}Cl_{12}$

19. How many moles of CO_2 and H_2O will be produced by combustion analysis of 0.010 mol of styrene?

Moles of CO2: 0.08 mol CO_2

Moles of H2O: 0.04 mol H_2O

20. How many moles of CO_2, H_2O, and N_2 will be produced by combustion analysis of 0.0080 mol of aniline?

Mole of CO2: 0.048 mol CO_2

Mole of H2O: 0.028 mol H_2O

Mole of N2: 0.004 mol N_2

21. How many moles of CO_2, H_2O, and N_2 will be produced by combustion analysis of 0.0074 mol of aspartame?

Mole of CO2: 0.104 mol CO_2

Mole of H2O: 0.666 mol H_2O

Mole of N2: 0.0074 mol N_2

22. How many moles of CO_2, H_2O, N_2, and SO_2 will be produced by combustion analysis of 0.0060 mol of penicillin G?

Mole of CO2: 0.096 mol CO_2

Mole of H2O: 0.054 mol H_2O

Mole of N2: 0.060 mol N_2

Mole of SO2: 0.060 mol SO_2

23.

a. 27.6 mg C and 1.98 mg H

b. 5.2 mg O

c. 15%

d. C_7H_6O

e. C_7H_6O

24. Salicylic acid is used to make aspirin. It contains only carbon, oxygen, and hydrogen. Combustion of a 43.5 mg sample of this compound produced 97.1 mg of CO_2 and 17.0 mg of H_2O.

a. What is the mass of oxygen in the sample?

70.4mg

b. What is the mass percentage of oxygen in the sample?

61.70%

c. What is the empirical formula of salicylic acid?

$C_7H_6O_3$

d. The molar mass of salicylic acid is 138.12 g/mol. What is its molecular formula?

$C_7H_6O_3$

25. hydrocyanic acid, HCN

26. Calculate the formula mass or the molecular mass of each compound.

a. 130.1849 amu

b. 60.1 amu

c. 158.034 amu

d. 323.4 amu

e. 82.07 amu

f. 106.17 amu

27. To two decimal places, the values are:

a. 273.23 amu

b. 69.62 amu

c. 157.01 amu

d. 82.14 amu

e. 98.00 amu

f. 45.08 amu

28. Cyclobutene

29. Urea

This page titled 4.E: The Mole Concept (Exercises) is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

5: CHEMICAL REACTIONS

We first introduced the idea of a chemical change in a previous chapter. This idea can also be referred to as a chemical reaction. We use chemical equations to keep track of these chemical changes. In the first 3 sections of this chapter we introduce ideas about chemical equations that will be important to understand in later chapters. In section 5.4 and 5.5 we introduce ideas related to categorizing and predicting reactions. Categorizing and predicting reactions will both show up in later chapters. This is your first glimpse of something that will continue to be important going forward.

5.1: Word Equations

5.2: Chemical Equations

5.3: Balancing Equations

5.4: Types of Reactions

5.4.1: Combination Reactions

5.4.2: Decomposition Reactions

5.4.3: Combustion Reactions

5.4.4: Single Replacement Reactions

5.4.5: Double Replacement Reactions

5.5: Predicting Reactions - Single and Double Replacement Reactions

5.E: Chemical Reactions (Exercises)

This page titled 5: Chemical Reactions is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 11: Chemical Reactions by CK12 is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://flexbooks.ck12.org/cbook/ck-12-chemistry-flexbook-2.0/.

5.1: Word Equations

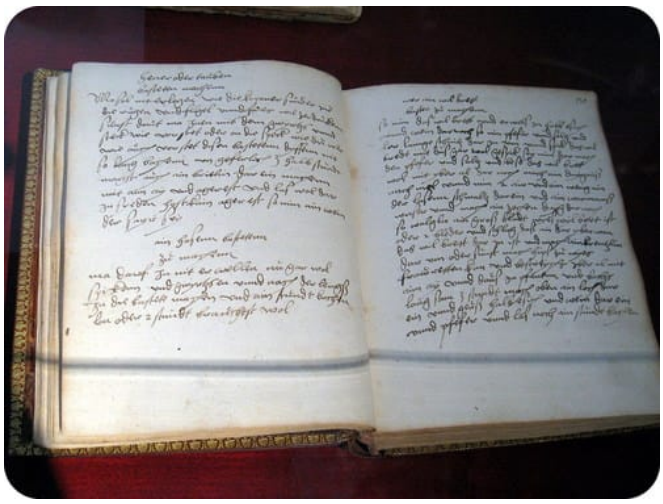


Figure 5.1.1 (Public Domain; User:Daderot/Wikimedia Commons via Wikipedia)

What's for Dinner?

Various ways of recording recipes have developed over the centuries. The cookbook shown above was written by a woman who probably collected all her own recipes. Later, printed cookbooks became available (even guys had no excuse for not being able to cook). Today we can find recipes on a number of internet sites and can quickly search for information on how to cook anything we want. Reading a recipe sometimes requires we understand a few codes and symbols (what's the difference between a tsp and a Tsp?), but the information on what we start with and what we end up with is there.

Writing Chemical Equations

Chemical reactions are occurring all around us. Plants use sunlight to drive their photosynthetic process and produce energy. Cars and other vehicles burn gasoline in order to power their engines. Batteries use electrochemical reactions to produce energy and power many everyday devices. Many chemical reactions are going on within the human body as well, particularly during the digestion of food.

In math class, you have written and solved many mathematical equations. Chemists keep track of chemical reactions by writing equations as well. In any chemical reaction, one or more substances—called **reactants**—are converted into one or more new substances—called **products**. The general form of the equation for such a process looks like this:

$$\text{Reactants} \rightarrow \text{Products}$$

Unlike a math equation, a chemical equation does not use an equal sign. Instead, the arrow is called a yield sign and so the equation is described as "reactants yield products".

Word Equations

You can describe a chemical reaction by writing a **word equation**. When silver metal is exposed to sulfur, it reacts to form silver sulfide. Silver sulfide is commonly known as tarnish and turns the surface of silver objects dark and streaky black (see figure below). The sulfur that contributes to tarnish can come from traces of sulfur in the air, or from foods such as eggs. The word equation for the process is:

$$\text{Silver} + \text{sulfur} \rightarrow \text{Silver sulfide}$$

The silver and the sulfur are the reactants in the equation, while the silver sulfide is the product.



Figure 5.1.2**:** You can see dark spots of tarnished (silver sulfide) forming on this ring as it reacts with sulfur compounds in the air. (CK-12 Curriculum Materials license; CK-12 Foundation via CK-12 Foundation)

Another common chemical reaction is the burning of methane gas. Methane is the major component of natural gas and is commonly burned on a gas stove or in a Bunsen burner (figure below). Burning is a chemical reaction in which some type of fuel is reacted with oxygen gas. The products of the reaction in the burning of methane, as well as other fuels, are carbon dioxide and water. The word equation for this reaction is:

$$\text{Methane} + \text{oxygen} \rightarrow \text{carbon dioxide} + \text{water}$$



Figure 5.1.3: A Bunsen burner is commonly used to heat substances in a chemistry lab. Methane is reacted with oxygen to form carbon dioxide and water. (CK-12 Curriculum Materials license; CK-12 Foundation via CK-12 Foundation)

Word equations can be very useful, but do have one major drawback—they cannot be used for any quantitative work. A word equation does not tell how many moles of each material are needed, or how many moles of product are formed.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Summary

- Word equations are used to describe the conversion of reactants to products.

Review

1. Write the generic form of a chemical reaction.
2. What are reactants?
3. What are products?

This page titled 5.1: Word Equations is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- 11.1: Word Equations by CK12 is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://flexbooks.ck12.org/cbook/ck-12-chemistry-flexbook-2.0/.

5.2: Chemical Equations



Figure 5.2.1 (Public Domain; jons2 at pdphoto.org via Wikipedia)

How do you make shrimp gumbo?

Shrimp gumbo is one of many dishes that are part of the Cajun culture in Louisiana. It's a spicy dish that needs careful control of all the ingredients so that it has a "kick", but is not overwhelming. Recipes convey not only what the preparation entails, but also describe how much of each ingredient is needed, and the details of how to cook the meal. Similarly, we need this type of information in order to carry out chemical reactions successfully and safely.

Chemical Equations

Word equations are time-consuming to write and do not prove to be convenient for many of the things that chemists need to do with equations. A **chemical equation** is a representation of a chemical reaction that displays the reactants and products with chemical formulas. The chemical equation for the reaction of methane with oxygen is shown:

$$\mathrm{CH_4 + O_2 \rightarrow CO_2 + H_2O}$$

The equation above, called a **skeleton equation**, is an equation that shows only the formulas of the reactants and products with nothing to indicate the relative amounts. The first step in writing an accurate chemical equation is to write the skeleton equation, making sure that the formulas of all substances involved are written correctly. All reactants are written to the left of the yield arrow, separated from one another by a plus sign. Likewise, products are written to the right of the yield arrow, also separated with a plus sign.

It is often important to know the physical states of the reactants and products taking part in a reaction. To do this, put the appropriate symbol in parentheses after each formula: (s) for solid, (l) for liquid, (g) for gas, and (aq) for an aqueous (water-based) solution. The previous reaction becomes:

$$\mathrm{CH_4\,(g) + O_2\,(g) \rightarrow CO_2\,(g) + H_2O\,(l)}$$

The table below shows a listing of symbols used in chemical equations. Some, such as the double arrow which represents equilibrium, and the use of a catalyst in a reaction, will be detailed in other concepts.

Table 5.2.1: Symbols Used in Chemical Equations

Symbols	Description
$+$	Used to separate multiple reactants or products.
$\rightarrow$	Yield sign; separates reactants from products.
$\rightleftharpoons$	Replaces the yield sign for reversible reactions that reach equilibrium.
(s)	Reactant or product in the solid state.
(l)	Reactant or product in the liquid state.
(g)	Reactant or product in the gaseous state.
(aq)	Reactant or product in an aqueous solution (dissolved in water).
$\overset{\text{Pt}}{\rightarrow}$	Formula written above the arrow is used as a catalyst in the reaction.
$\overset{\Delta}{\rightarrow}$	Triangle indicates that the reaction is being heated.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Summary

- A chemical equation is representation a chemical reaction using chemical formulas reactants and products, as well as symbols.
- Symbols used in chemical equations are described and explained.

Review

1. What does a skeleton equation tell you?
2. Why would you want to know the physical state of materials in a chemical reaction?
3. In a chemical reaction what does symbol → mean?
4. If I see Δ over the arrow, what does this indicate?

This page titled 5.2: Chemical Equations is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- 11.2: Chemical Equations by CK12 is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://flexbooks.ck12.org/cbook/ck-12-chemistry-flexbook-2.0/.

5.3: Balancing Equations



Figure 5.3.1 (Public Domain; Joseph Allen via Wikipedia)

Any leftovers?

When you cook a meal, quite often there are leftovers because you prepared more than people would eat at one sitting. Sometimes when you repair a piece of equipment, you end up with what are called "pocket parts"—small pieces you put in your pocket because you're not sure where they belong. Chemistry tries to avoid leftovers and pocket parts. In normal chemical processes, we cannot create or destroy matter (law of conservation of mass). If we start out with ten carbon atoms, we need to end up with ten carbon atoms. John Dalton's atomic theory said that chemical reactions basically involve the rearrangement of atoms. Chemical equations need to follow these principles in order to be correct.

Balancing Chemical Equations

A **balanced equation** is a chemical equation in which mass is conserved and there are equal numbers of atoms of each element on both sides of the equation. We can write a chemical equation for the reaction of carbon with hydrogen gas to form methane $(\mathrm{CH_4})$:

$$\underset{2\text{ C atoms}}{\mathrm{C}\,(s)} + \underset{2\text{ H atoms}}{\mathrm{H_2}\,(g)} \rightarrow \underset{1\text{ C atom, }4\text{ H atoms}}{\mathrm{CH_4}\,(g)}$$

In order to write a correct equation, you must first write the correct skeleton equation with the correct chemical formulas. Recall that hydrogen is a diatomic molecule and so is written as $\mathrm{H_2}$.

When we count the number of atoms of both elements, shown under the equation, we see that the equation is not balanced. There are only 2 atoms of hydrogen on the reactant side of the equation, while there are 4 atoms of hydrogen on the product side. We can balance the above equation by adding a coefficient of 2 in front of the formula for hydrogen.

$$\mathrm{C}\,(s) + 2\mathrm{H_2}\,(g) \rightarrow \mathrm{CH_4}\,(g)$$

A **coefficient** is a small whole number placed in front of a formula in an equation in order to balance it. The 2 in front of the $\mathrm{H_2}$ means that there are a total of $2 \times 2 = 4$ atoms of hydrogen as reactants. Visually, the reaction looks like the figure below.

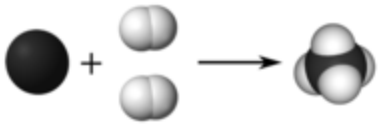


Figure 5.3.2: Reaction between carbon and hydrogen to form methane. (Public Domain; Ben Mills (Wikimedia: Benjah-bmm27 via Wikipedia and http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Methane-3D-space-filling.png)

In the balanced equation, there is one atom of carbon and four atoms of hydrogen on both sides of the arrow. Below are guidelines for writing and balancing chemical equations.

1. Determine the correct chemical formulas for each reactant and product.
2. Write the skeleton equation.
3. Count the number of atoms of each element that appears as a reactant and as a product. If a polyatomic ion is unchanged on both sides of the equation, count it as a unit.
4. Balance each element one at a time by placing coefficients in front of the formulas.
   a. It is best to begin by balancing elements that only appear in one chemical formula on each side of the equation.
   b. No coefficient is written for a 1.
   c. NEVER change the subscripts in a chemical formula—you can only balance equations by using coefficients.
5. Check each atom or polyatomic ion to be sure that they are equal on both sides of the equation.
6. Make sure that all coefficients are in the lowest possible ratio. If necessary, reduce to the lowest ratio.

Example 5.3.1: Balancing Chemical Equations

Aqueous solutions of lead (II) nitrate and sodium chloride are mixed. The products of the reaction are an aqueous solution of sodium nitrate and a solid precipitate of lead (II) chloride. Write the balanced chemical equation for this reaction.

Solution

Step 1: Plan the problem.

Follow the steps for writing and balancing a chemical equation listed in the text.

Step 2: Solve.

Write the skeleton equation with the correct formulas.

$$\mathrm{Pb(NO_3)_2}\,(aq) + \mathrm{NaCl}\,(aq) \rightarrow \mathrm{NaNO_3}\,(aq) + \mathrm{PbCl_2}\,(s)$$

Count the number of each atom or polyatomic ion on both sides of the equation.

Reactants	Products
1 Pb atom	1 Pb atom
2 $\mathrm{NO_3}^-$ ions	1 $\mathrm{NO_3}^-$ ions
1 Na atom	1 Na atom
1 Cl atom	2 Cl atoms

The nitrate ions and the chlorine atoms are unbalanced. Start by placing a 2 in front of the NaCl. This increases the reactant counts to 2 Na atoms and 2 Cl atoms. Then place a 2 in front of the $\mathrm{NaNO_3}$. The result is:

$$\mathrm{Pb(NO_3)_2}\,(aq) + 2\mathrm{NaCl}\,(aq) \rightarrow 2\mathrm{NaNO_3}\,(aq) + \mathrm{PbCl_2}\,(s)$$

The new count for each atom and polyatomic ion becomes:

Reactants	Products
1 Pb atom	1 Pb atom
2 $\mathrm{NO_3}^-$ ions	2 $\mathrm{NO_3}^-$ ions
2 Na atom	2 Na atom
2 Cl atom	2 Cl atoms

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CC BY NC SA
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Step 3: Think about your result.

The equation is now balanced since there are equal numbers of atoms of each element on both sides of the equation.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Simulation

Practice balancing chemical equations with this simulation:

Can you balance a chemical equation?

Summary

- The process of balancing chemical equations is described.

Review

1. What is the law of conservation of mass?
2. How did Dalton describe the process of a chemical reaction?
3. Why don't we change the subscripts in order to balance an equation?

This page titled 5.3: Balancing Equations is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- 11.3: Balancing Equations by CK12 is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://flexbooks.ck12.org/cbook/ck-12-chemistry-flexbook-2.0/.

5.4: TYPES OF REACTIONS

There are several ways to categorize chemical reactions, more than can possibly be covered in a single Chemistry textbook. This textbook will categorize reactions in a few places, and this is the first place where we will see it. In this section we will categorize some reactions based on recognizing patterns in the changes to reactants and products without considering the chemical identities of those reactants and products. We will also look at one type of reaction where we do consider reactants and products in the categorization of it. We will see more examples of categorizing reactions based on identity of reactants and products in later chapters of this textbook.

The ideas introduced in this section will be explored in greater detail in the next section for some of the reactions we are considering. When we get to this section, we will look at making predictions of the products based on the reactants and the reaction type.

5.4.1: Combination Reactions

5.4.2: Decomposition Reactions

5.4.3: Combustion Reactions

5.4.4: Single Replacement Reactions

5.4.5: Double Replacement Reactions

This page titled 5.4: Types of Reactions is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

5.4.1: Combination Reactions



Figure 5.4.1.1 (Public Domain; Rim: User:Relaxatiallc/Wikimedia Commons; Wheel: Christopher Ziemnowicz via Rim: http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Ats_amgpenta.jpg; Wheel: http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:1975_AACA_AMC_Pacer_X_red-white_wheel.jpg)

How useful is a wheel rim?

A wheel rim is not very useful by itself. Driving on the rim can damage it and make for a very rough ride. When the rim is combined with a tire, the product can be put on a car and used for a safe and comfortable ride. The two separate items combine to make something that improves the car ride.

Combination Reactions

A **combination reaction** is a reaction in which two or more substances combine to form a single new substance. Combination reactions can also be called synthesis reactions. The general form of a combination reaction is:

$$\mathrm{A} + \mathrm{B} \rightarrow \mathrm{AB}$$

One combination reaction is two elements combining to form a compound. Solid sodium metal reacts with chlorine gas to produce solid sodium chloride.

$$2\mathrm{Na}\,(s) + \mathrm{Cl_2}\,(g) \rightarrow 2\mathrm{NaCl}\,(s)$$

In order to write and balance the equation correctly, it is important to remember the seven elements that exist in nature as diatomic molecules: $\mathrm{H_2}$, $\mathrm{N_2}$, $\mathrm{O_2}$, $\mathrm{F_2}$, $\mathrm{Cl_2}$, $\mathrm{Br_2}$, and $\mathrm{I_2}$.

One sort of combination reaction that occurs frequently is the reaction of an element with oxygen to form an oxide. Metals and nonmetals both react readily with oxygen under most conditions. Magnesium reacts rapidly and dramatically when ignited, combining with oxygen from the air to produce a fine powder of magnesium oxide.

$$2\mathrm{Mg}\,(s) + \mathrm{O_2}\,(g) \rightarrow 2\mathrm{MgO}\,(s)$$

cK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Sulfur reacts with oxygen to form sulfur dioxide.

$$\mathrm{S}\,(s) + \mathrm{O_2}\,(g) \rightarrow \mathrm{SO_2}\,(g)$$

When nonmetals react with one another, the product is a molecular compound. Often, the nonmetal reactants can combine in different ratios and produce different products. Sulfur can also combine with oxygen to form sulfur trioxide.

$$2\mathrm{S}\,(s) + 3\mathrm{O_2}\,(g) \rightarrow 2\mathrm{SO_3}\,(g)$$

Transition metals are capable of adopting multiple positive charges within their ionic compounds. Therefore, most transition metals are capable of forming different products in a combination reaction. Iron reacts with oxygen to form both iron (II) oxide and iron (III) oxide:

$$2\mathrm{Fe}\,(s) + \mathrm{O_2}\,(g) \rightarrow 2\mathrm{FeO}\,(s)$$

$$4\mathrm{Fe}\,(s) + 3\mathrm{O_2}\,(g) \rightarrow 2\mathrm{Fe_2O_3}\,(s)$$

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Example 5.4.1.1**: Combination Reactions**

Potassium is a very reactive alkali metal that must be stored under oil in order to prevent it from reacting with air. Write the balanced chemical equation for the combination reaction of potassium with oxygen.

Solution

Step 1: Plan the problem.

Make sure formulas of all reactants and products are correct before balancing the equation. Oxygen gas is a diatomic molecule. Potassium oxide is an ionic compound and so its formula is constructed by the crisscross method. Potassium as an ion becomes $\mathrm{K^+}$, while the oxide ion is $\mathrm{O^{2-}}$.

Step 2: Solve.

The skeleton (unbalanced) equation:

$$\mathrm{K}\,(s) + \mathrm{O_2}\,(g) \rightarrow \mathrm{K_2O}\,(s)$$

The equation is then easily balanced with coefficients.

$$4\mathrm{K}\,(s) + \mathrm{O_2}\,(g) \rightarrow 2\mathrm{K_2O}\,(s)$$

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CC BY NC SA
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Step 3: Think about your result.

Formulas are correct and the resulting combination reaction is balanced.

Exercise 5.4.1.1

Can you build a balanced, combination reaction for the formation of aluminum oxide (Al_2O_3)?

Answer available at the end of this section.

Combination reactions can also take place when an element reacts with a compound to form a new compound composed of a larger number of atoms. Carbon monoxide reacts with oxygen to form carbon dioxide, according to the equation:

$$2\mathrm{CO}\,(g) + \mathrm{O_2}\,(g) \rightarrow 2\mathrm{CO_2}\,(g)$$

Two compounds may also react to form a more complex compound. A very common example is the reaction of an oxide with water. Calcium oxide reacts readily with water to produce an aqueous solution of calcium hydroxide.

$$\mathrm{CaO}\,(s) + \mathrm{H_2O}\,(l) \rightarrow \mathrm{Ca(OH)_2}\,(aq)$$

Sulfur trioxide gas reacts with water to form sulfuric acid. This is an unfortunately common reaction that occurs in the atmosphere in some places where oxides of sulfur are present as pollutants. The acid formed in the reaction falls to the ground as acid rain.

$$\mathrm{SO_3}\,(g) + \mathrm{H_2O}\,(l) \rightarrow \mathrm{H_2SO_4}\,(aq)$$

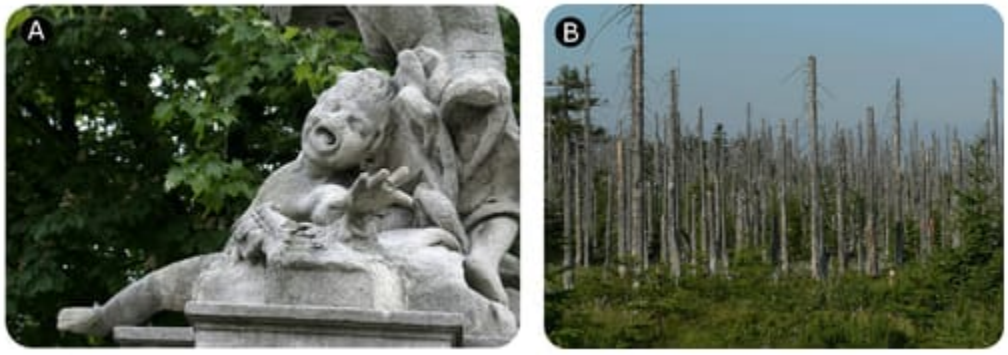


Figure 5.4.1.2: Acid rain has severe consequences on both natural and manmade objects. Acid rain degrades marble statues like the one on the left (A). The trees in the forest on the right (B) have been killed by acid rain. ((A; (A) Nipik; (B) Nino Barbieri via (A) http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Acid_rain_woods1.JPG; (B) http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Pollution_-_Damaged_by_acid_rain.jpg) Public Domain; (B) CC by 2.5)

Summary

- Combination reactions occur when two or more substances combine to form a new substance.

Review

1. What are combination reactions?
2. Write the product of the following reaction: $Mg + H_2O \rightarrow$
3. Is $CH_4 + 2O_2 \rightarrow CO_2 + 2H_2O$ a combination reaction? Explain your answer.

Answers

Exercise 5.4.1.1

$4Al + 3O_2 \rightarrow 2Al_2O_3$

This page titled 5.4.1: Combination Reactions is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- 11.4: Combination Reactions by CK12 is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://flexbooks.ck12.org/cbook/ck-12-chemistry-flexbook-2.0/.

5.4.2: Decomposition Reactions

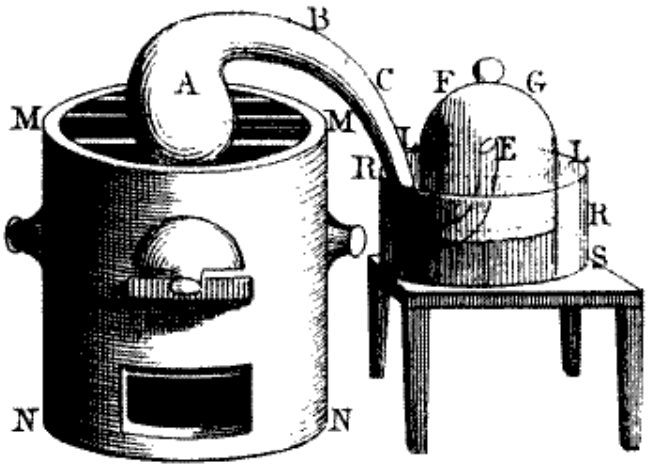


Figure 5.4.2.1 (Public Domain; Madame Lavoisier, modified by User: Cdang/Wikimedia Commons via Wikipedia)

How does a decomposition reaction work?

Antoine Lavoisier is widely known as the “father of modern chemistry.” He was one of the first to study chemical reactions in detail. Lavoisier reacted mercury with oxygen to form mercuric oxide as part of his studies on the composition of the atmosphere. He was then able to show that the decomposition of mercuric oxide produced mercury and oxygen. The diagram above shows the apparatus used by Lavoisier to study the formation and decomposition of mercuric oxide.

Decomposition Reactions

A **decomposition reaction** is a reaction in which a compound breaks down into two or more simpler substances. The general form of a decomposition reaction is:

$$\mathrm{AB} \rightarrow \mathrm{A} + \mathrm{B}$$

Most decomposition reactions require an input of energy in the form of heat, light, or electricity.

Binary compounds are compounds composed of just two elements. The simplest kind of decomposition reaction is when a binary compound decomposes into its elements. Mercury (II) oxide, a red solid, decomposes when heated to produce mercury and oxygen gas.

$$2\mathrm{HgO}\,(s) \rightarrow 2\mathrm{Hg}\,(l) + \mathrm{O_2}\,(g)$$

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CC BY NC SA
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



Figure 5.4.2.2: *Mercury (II) oxide is a red solid. When it is heated, it decomposes into mercury metal and oxygen gas.* (Public Domain; Ben Mills (User:Benjah-bmm27/Wikimedia Commons) via Wikipedia)

A reaction is also considered to be a decomposition reaction even when one or more of the products are still compounds. A metal carbonate decomposes into a metal oxide and carbon dioxide gas. For example, calcium carbonate decomposes into calcium oxide and carbon dioxide:

$$\mathrm{CaCO_3}\,(s) \rightarrow \mathrm{CaO}\,(s) + \mathrm{CO_2}\,(g)$$

Metal hydroxides decompose on heating to yield metal oxides and water. Sodium hydroxide decomposes to produce sodium oxide and water:

$$2\mathrm{NaOH}\,(s) \rightarrow \mathrm{Na_2O}\,(s) + \mathrm{H_2O}\,(g)$$

Some unstable acids decompose to produce nonmetal oxides and water. Carbonic acid decomposes easily at room temperature into carbon dioxide and water:

$$\mathrm{H_2CO_3}\,(aq) \rightarrow \mathrm{CO_2}\,(g) + \mathrm{H_2O}\,(l)$$

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Exercise 5.4.2.1

Can you build a balanced Chemical reaction for the decomposition of Potassium chlorate ($KClO_3$)?

Answer available at the end of this section.

Example 5.4.2.1: Decomposition Reactions

When an electric current is passed through pure water, it decomposes into its elements. Write a balanced equation for the decomposition of water.

Solution

Step 1: Plan the problem.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CC BY NC SA
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Water is a binary compound composed of hydrogen and oxygen. The hydrogen and oxygen gases produced in the reaction are both diatomic molecules.

Step 2: Solve.

The skeleton (unbalanced) equation:

$$\mathrm{H_2O}\,(l) \overset{\text{elec}}{\rightarrow} \mathrm{H_2}\,(g) + \mathrm{O_2}\,(g)$$

Note the abbreviation "elec" above the arrow to indicate the passage of an electric current to initiate the reaction. Balance the equation.

$$2\mathrm{H_2O}\,(l) \overset{\text{elec}}{\rightarrow} 2\mathrm{H_2}\,(g) + \mathrm{O_2}\,(g)$$

Step 3: Think about your result.

The products are elements and the equation is balanced.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Simulations

How does an airbag explode at just the right time in the event of a car accident? Learn more in this simulation:

How does a chemical reaction inflate and airbag

Summary

- A definition of decomposition reaction and example reactions are given.

Review

1. What is a decomposition reaction?
2. What is usually needed for a decomposition reaction to take place?
3. Are elements always the product of a decomposition reaction?

Answers

Exercise 5.4.2.1

$2KClO_3 \rightarrow 2KCl + 3O_2$

This page titled 5.4.2: Decomposition Reactions is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- 11.5: Decomposition Reactions by CK12 is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://flexbooks.ck12.org/cbook/ck-12-chemistry-flexbook-2.0/.

5.4.3: Combustion Reactions



Figure 5.4.3.1 (CC BY 2.0; Nina Hale via Wikipedia)

How do you cook the perfect marshmallow?

Roasting marshmallows over an open fire is a favorite past-time for campers, outdoor cook-outs, and just gathering around a fire in the back yard. The trick is to get the marshmallow a nice golden brown without catching it on fire. Too often we are not successful and we see the marshmallow burning on the stick – a combustion reaction taking place right in front of us.

Combustion Reactions

A **combustion reaction** is a reaction in which a substance reacts with oxygen gas, releasing energy in the form of light and heat. Combustion reactions must involve $\mathrm{O_2}$ as one reactant. The combustion of hydrogen gas produces water vapor:

$$2\mathrm{H_2}\,(g) + \mathrm{O_2}\,(g) \rightarrow 2\mathrm{H_2O}\,(g)$$

Notice that this reaction also qualifies as a combination reaction.

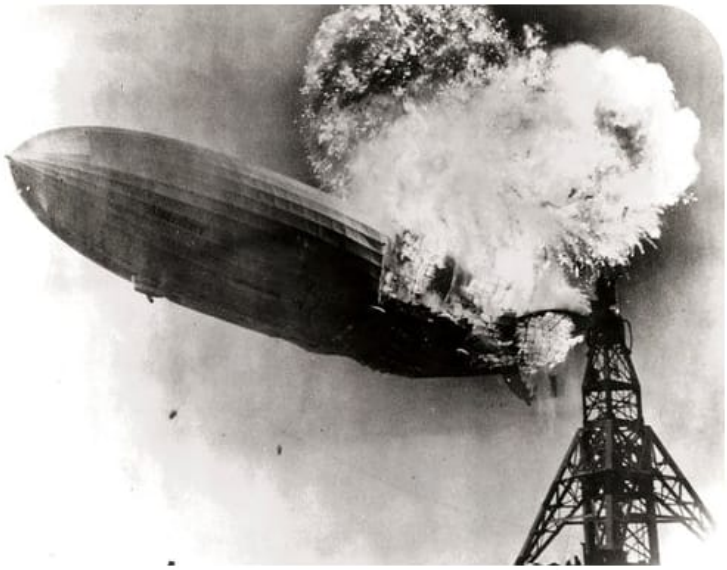


Figure 5.4.3.2: Explosion of the Hindenberg. (Public Domain; Gus Pasquerella/US Navy via Wikipedia)

The *Hindenberg* was a hydrogen-filled airship that suffered an accident upon its attempted landing in New Jersey in 1937. The hydrogen immediately combusted in a huge fireball, destroying the airship and killing 36 people. The chemical reaction was a simple one: hydrogen combining with oxygen to produce water.

Many combustion reactions occur with a hydrocarbon, a compound made up solely of carbon and hydrogen. The products of the combustion of hydrocarbons are carbon dioxide and water. Many hydrocarbons are used as fuel because their combustion releases very large amounts of heat energy. Propane $(\mathrm{C_3H_8})$ is a gaseous hydrocarbon that is commonly used as the fuel source in gas grills.

$$\mathrm{C_3H_8\,(g) + 5O_2\,(g) \rightarrow 3CO_2\,(g) + 4H_2O\,(g)}$$

Example 5.4.3.1: Combustion Reactions

Ethanol can be used as a fuel source in an alcohol lamp. The formula for ethanol is $\mathrm{C_2H_5OH}$. Write the balanced equation for the combustion of ethanol.

Solution

Step 1: Plan the problem.

Ethanol and oxygen are the reactants. As with a hydrocarbon, the products of the combustion of an alcohol are carbon dioxide and water.

Step 2: Solve.

Write the skeleton equation:

$$\mathrm{C_2H_5OH\,(l) + O_2\,(g) \rightarrow CO_2\,(g) + H_2O\,(g)}$$

Balance the equation.

$$\mathrm{C_2H_5OH\,(l) + 3O_2\,(g) \rightarrow 2CO_2\,(g) + 3H_2O\,(g)}$$

Step 3: Think about your result.

Combustion reactions must have oxygen as a reactant. Note that the water produced is in the gas state, rather than the liquid state, because of the high temperatures that accompany a combustion reaction.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CC BY NC SA
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Summary

- Combustion reaction is defined and examples are given.

Review

1. What is needed for a combustion reaction to take place?
2. What is formed in any combustion reaction?
3. Mercury reacts with oxygen to form mercuric oxide. Is this a combustion reaction?
4. What are the products of any combustion reaction involving a hydrocarbon?

This page titled 5.4.3: Combustion Reactions is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- 11.6: Combustion Reactions by CK12 is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://flexbooks.ck12.org/cbook/ck-12-chemistry-flexbook-2.0/.

5.4.4: Single Replacement Reactions



Figure 5.4.4.1 (Pixabay License; wisteriax via Pixabay)

Why is the silver dark?

The platter and pitcher shown above provides an example of tarnish, a chemical reaction caued when silver metal reacts with hydrogen sulfide gas produced by some industrial processes or as a result of decaying animal or plant materials:

$$2\mathrm{Ag} + \mathrm{H_2S} \rightarrow \mathrm{Ag_2S} + \mathrm{H_2}$$

The tarnish can be removed using a number of polishes, but the process also removes a small amount of silver along with the tarnish.

Single-Replacement Reactions

A **single-replacement reaction** is a reaction in which one element replaces a similar element in a compound. The general form of a single-replacement (also called single-displacement) reaction is:

$$\mathrm{A} + \mathrm{BC} \rightarrow \mathrm{AC} + \mathrm{B}$$

In this general reaction, element A is a metal and replaces element B (also a metal) in the compound. When the element that is doing the replacing is a nonmetal, it must replace another nonmetal in a compound, and the general equation becomes:

$$\mathrm{Y} + \mathrm{XZ} \rightarrow \mathrm{XY} + \mathrm{Z}$$

(Where Y is a nonmetal and replaces the nonmetal Z in the compound with X.)

Metal Replacement

Magnesium is a more reactive metal than copper. When a strip of magnesium metal is placed in an aqueous solution of copper (II) nitrate, it replaces the copper. The products of the reaction are aqueous magnesium nitrate and solid copper metal.

$$\mathrm{Mg}\,(s) + \mathrm{Cu(NO_3)_2}\,(aq) \rightarrow \mathrm{Mg(NO_3)_2}\,(aq) + \mathrm{Cu}\,(s)$$

This subcategory of single-replacement reactions is called a metal replacement reaction because it is a metal that is being replaced (copper).

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Hydrogen Replacement

Many metals react easily with acids and when they do so, one of the products of the reaction is hydrogen gas. Zinc reacts with hydrochloric acid to produce aqueous zinc chloride and hydrogen (figure below).

$$\mathrm{Zn}\,(s) + 2\mathrm{HCl}\,(aq) \rightarrow \mathrm{ZnCl_2}\,(aq) + \mathrm{H_2}\,(g)$$

In a hydrogen replacement reaction, the hydrogen in the acid is replaced by an active metal.



Figure 5.4.4.2: Zinc metal reacts with hydrochloric acid to give off hydrogen gas in a single-displacement reaction. (Public Domain; User: Chemicalinterest/Wikimedia Commons via Wikipedia)

Some metals are so reactive that they are capable of replacing the hydrogen in water. The products of such a reaction are the metal hydroxide and hydrogen gas. All group 1 metals undergo this type of reaction. Sodium reacts vigorously with water to produce aqueous sodium hydroxide and hydrogen (see figure below).

$$2\mathrm{Na}\,(s) + 2\mathrm{H_2O}\,(l) \rightarrow 2\mathrm{NaOH}\,(aq) + \mathrm{H_2}\,(g)$$



Figure 5.4.4.3: Sodium metal reacts vigorously with water, giving off hydrogen gas. A large piece of sodium will often generate so much heat that the hydrogen will ignite. (Public Domain; User:Ajhalls/Wikimedia Commons via Wikipedia)

Halogen Replacement

The element chlorine reacts with an aqueous solution of sodium bromide to produce aqueous sodium chloride and elemental bromine:

$$\mathrm{Cl_2}\,(g) + 2\mathrm{NaBr}\,(aq) \rightarrow 2\mathrm{NaCl}\,(aq) + \mathrm{Br_2}\,(l)$$

The reactivity of the halogen group (group 17) decreases from top to bottom within the group. Fluorine is the most reactive halogen, while iodine is the least. Since chlorine is above bromine, it is more reactive than bromine and can replace it in a halogen replacement reaction.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Summary

- The activity series describes the relative reactivities of metals and halogens.

Review

1. What is a metal replacement reaction?
2. Will a non-metal replace a metal?
3. What is the most reactive halogen?
4. What products will I get if I add potassium metal to water?

This page titled 5.4.4: Single Replacement Reactions is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- 11.7: Single Replacement Reactions by CK12 is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://flexbooks.ck12.org/cbook/ck-12-chemistry-flexbook-2.0/.

5.4.5: Double Replacement Reactions



Figure 5.4.5.1 (Public Domain; F. S. Church, published in Harper's Weekly, January 17, 1874, p. 61 via Wikipedia)

Want to trade?

The practice of barter (trading one thing for another) has been in existence for a very long time. In the illustration above, items like chickens were bartered for newspapers. You have something I want, and I have something you want. So we trade and we each have something new. Some chemical reactions are like that. Compounds swap parts and you have new materials.

Double-Replacement Reactions

A **double-replacement reaction** is a reaction in which the positive and negative ions of two ionic compounds exchange places to form two new compounds. The general form of a double-replacement (also called double-displacement) reaction is:

$$\mathrm{AB} + \mathrm{CD} \rightarrow \mathrm{AD} + \mathrm{CB}$$

In this reaction, A and C are positively-charged cations, while B and D are negatively-charged anions. Double-replacement reactions generally occur between substances in aqueous solution. In order for a reaction to occur, one of the products is usually a solid precipitate, a gas, or a molecular compound such as water.

Formation of a Precipitate

A precipitate forms in a double-replacement reaction when the cations from one of the reactants combine with the anions from the other reactant to form an insoluble ionic compound. When aqueous solutions of potassium iodide and lead (II) nitrate are mixed, the following reaction occurs:

$$2\mathrm{KI}\,(aq) + \mathrm{Pb(NO_3)_2}\,(aq) \rightarrow 2\mathrm{KNO_3}\,(aq) + \mathrm{PbI_2}\,(s)$$

There are very strong attractive forces that occur between $\mathrm{Pb^{2+}}$ and $\mathrm{I^-}$ ions and the result is a brilliant yellow precipitate (see figure below). The other product of the reaction, potassium nitrate, remains soluble.



Figure 5.4.5.2: Formation of lead iodide precipitate. (CC-BY 2.0; Paige Powers - "Lead Iodide" via Flickr)

Formation of a Gas

Some double-replacement reactions produce a gaseous product which then bubbles out of the solution and escapes into the air. When solutions of sodium sulfide and hydrochloric acid are mixed, the products of the reaction are aqueous sodium chloride and hydrogen sulfide gas.

$$\mathrm{Na_2S}\,(aq) + 2\mathrm{HCl}\,(aq) \rightarrow 2\mathrm{NaCl}\,(aq) + \mathrm{H_2S}\,(g)$$

Formation of a Molecular Compound

Another kind of double-replacement reaction is one that produces a molecular compound as one of its products. Many examples in this category are reactions that produce water. When aqueous hydrochloric acid is reacted with aqueous sodium hydroxide, the products are aqueous sodium chloride and water:

$$\mathrm{HCl}\,(aq) + \mathrm{NaOH}\,(aq) \rightarrow \mathrm{NaCl}\,(aq) + \mathrm{H_2O}\,(l)$$

Example 5.4.5.1: Double-Replacement Reactions

Write a complete and balanced chemical equation for the following double-replacement reactions. One product is indicated as a guide.

a. $\mathrm{NaCN}\,(aq) + \mathrm{HBr}\,(aq) \rightarrow$ (hydrogen cyanide gas is formed)
b. $(\mathrm{NH_4})_2\mathrm{SO_4}\,(aq) + \mathrm{Ba(NO_3)_2}\,(aq) \rightarrow$ (a precipitate of barium sulfate forms)

Solution

Step 1: Plan the problem.

In A, the production of a gas drives the reaction. In B, the production of a precipitate drives the reaction. In both cases, use the ionic charges of both reactants to construct the correct formulas of the products.

Step 2: Solve.

A. The cations of both reactants are $+1$ charged ions, while the anions are -1 charged ions. After exchanging partners, the balanced equation is:

$$\mathrm{NaCN}\,(aq) + \mathrm{HBr}\,(aq) \rightarrow \mathrm{NaBr}\,(aq) + \mathrm{HCN}\,(g)$$

B. Ammonium ion and nitrate ion are $1+$ and $1-$ respectively, while barium and sulfate are $2+$ and $2-$. This must be taken into account when exchanging partners and writing the new formulas. Then, the equation is balanced.

$$(\mathrm{NH_4})_2\mathrm{SO_4}\,(aq) + \mathrm{Ba(NO_3)_2}\,(aq) \rightarrow 2\mathrm{NH_4NO_3}\,(aq) + \mathrm{BaSO_4}\,(s)$$

Step 3: Think about your result.

Both are double replacement reactions. All formulas are correct and the equations are balanced.

Occasionally, a reaction will produce both a gas and a molecular compound. The reaction of a sodium carbonate solution with

hydrochloric acid produces aqueous sodium chloride, carbon dioxide gas, and water.

$$\mathrm{Na_2CO_3}\,(aq) + 2\mathrm{HCl}\,(aq) \rightarrow 2\ \text{DEL}\ \mathrm{NaCl}\,(aq) + \mathrm{CO_2}\,(g) + \mathrm{H_2O}\,(l)$$

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Summary

- The double-replacement reaction generally takes the form of AB + CD → AD + CB where A and C are positively-charged cations, while B and D are negatively-charged anions.
- In a double replacement reactions, typically one of the products is a precipitate, a gas, or a molecular compound.

Review

1. In a double-replacement reaction, what type of compounds are usually the reactants? A double-replacement reaction occurs between sodium sulfide and hydrogen chloride. Write the rest of the chemical equation and balance it.
2. Na_2S + HCl →
3. In double-replacement reaction, one of three possible types of products usually form. What are the three types?

This page titled 5.4.5: Double Replacement Reactions is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- 11.9: Double Replacement Reactions by CK12 is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://flexbooks.ck12.org/cbook/ck-12-chemistry-flexbook-2.0/.

5.5: Predicting Reactions - Single and Double Replacement Reactions

Learning Objectives

- Predict the result of single-replacement reactions or double-replacement reactions.

Up until now, we have presented balancing and categorizing chemical reactions as topics, but we have not discussed how the products of a chemical reaction can be predicted. Here we will begin our study of certain types of chemical reactions that allow us to predict what the products of the reaction will be. In later chapters of this text, we will learn more about each of these reaction types related to predicting whether or not they will occur. For now, we will use the knowledge we have of predicting the formulas of ionic compounds and balancing equations to predict the results of certain reaction types, assuming the reactions will take place.

Predicting Single Replacement Reactions

A **single-replacement reaction** is a chemical reaction in which one element is substituted for another element in a compound, generating a new element and a new compound as products. Presented below:

$$2\,\mathrm{HCl}\,(\mathrm{aq}) + \mathrm{Zn}\,(\mathrm{s}) \longrightarrow \mathrm{ZnCl_2}\,(\mathrm{aq}) + \mathrm{H_2}\,(\mathrm{g})$$

is an example of a single-replacement reaction. The hydrogen atoms in HCl are replaced by Zn atoms, and in the process a new element—hydrogen—is formed. Another example of a single-replacement reaction is

$$2\,\mathrm{NaCl}\,(\mathrm{aq}) + \mathrm{F_2}\,(\mathrm{g}) \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{NaF}\,(\mathrm{s}) + \mathrm{Cl_2}\,(\mathrm{g})$$

Here the negatively charged ion changes from chloride to fluoride. A typical characteristic of a single-replacement reaction is that there is one element as a reactant and another element as a product.

Not all proposed single-replacement reactions will occur between two given reactants. In a later chapter, we will learn how to predict when certain single replacement reactions will occur. For now, we will focus on correctly predicting the result of single replacement reactions which involve ionic compounds. (If you would like to cover that material now, please refer to this other textbook, which has been adapted for the content in part of this section.)

If a single replacement reaction involves an ionic compound and an element, the element will replace an element in the ionic compound which it is most similar to. That is, a metal will replace a metal and a non-metal will replace a nonmetal. Use the periodic table to determine the typical charges of the anions and cations in the product. Whichever ion exists in a compound on both sides of the reaction will typically have the same charge in each case. Make sure to balance the charge of the new compound based on the expected charges of the ions involved.

Example 5.5.1:

Identify the products of the following single-replacement reactions?

a. FeCl2 + Ca → ?
b. CaBr2 + F2 → ?

Solution

a. The products of this single-replacement reaction are CaCl2 and Fe.
b. The products of the reaction will be CaF2 and Br2.

Exercise 5.5.1

Identify the products of the following single-replacement reactions?

$$\mathrm{FeI_2 + Cl_2 \longrightarrow}$$

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 5.5.2

Identify the products of the following single-replacement reactions?

$$\mathrm{AlPO_4 + Mg \longrightarrow}$$

Answer available at the end of this section.

Predicting Double Replacement Reactions

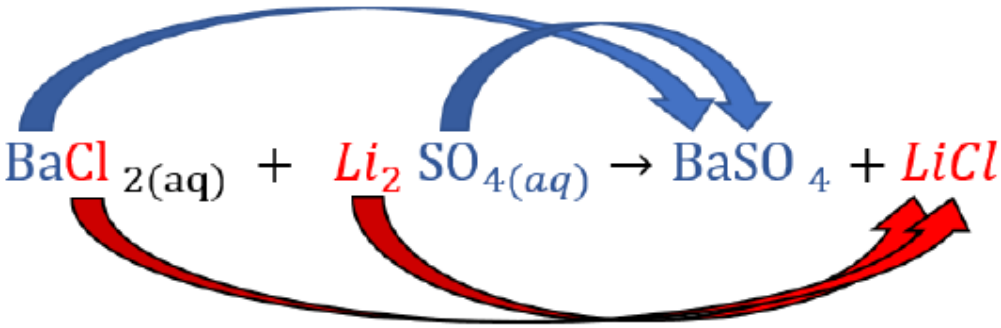
Predicting whether a double-replacement reaction occurs is somewhat more difficult than predicting a single-replacement reaction. We will explore one type of double replacement reaction in a later chapter: the precipitation reaction. For now, the goal of correctly predicting the result of a precipitation reaction involves understanding how charge balances work in the two new species which form. Similar to the single replacement reaction, not all possible double replacement reactions will occur. However, for the sake of correctly predicting the charge balance of the products, we will only consider reactions which do occur for the rest of this chapter. (If you would like to cover that material now, please refer to this other textbook, which has been adapted for the content in the remainder of this section.)

When predicting the result of a double replacement reaction, it is important to go through the following 3 steps. (Please note: when we learn how to predict whether or not the reaction occurs, we will be adding a 4th step as well.)

- Change the partners of the anions and cations on the reactant side to form new compounds (products).
- Correct the formulas of the products based on the charges of the ions.
- Balance the equation.

For example, predict what will happen when aqueous solutions of barium chloride ($BaCl_2$) and lithium sulfate (Li_2SO_4) are mixed.

Change the partners of the anions and cations on the reactant side to form new compounds (products):



Please note, that the only subscript which transfers across from reactant to product in this step is the 4 on the oxygen. This is because the oxygen is part of a polyatomic ion (sulfate). The subscripts of 2 on the lithium and chloride are not transferred here. These subscripts are not parts of the ion. Instead, they are telling us how many of that ion was necessary for the charge balance. If we need new subscripts, we will determine that in the next step.

Correct the formulas of the products based on the charges of the ions.

In this particular case, there is no need to make additional changes because the ions balance as shown. Let's verify this by looking at the charges of all of the ions present: $\mathrm{Ba^{2+}}$, $\mathrm{Cl^{-}}$, $\mathrm{Li^{+}}$, and $\mathrm{SO_4{}^{2-}}$. (note: if you are unsure how we determined these charges, please refer to the section of this book where we first discussed ionic compounds.) Because in each case the charges of the anion and cation canceled within each compound, there was no need to change any of the coefficients from the assumed value of one.

Balance the equation:

It is only once we have correctly predicted the formulas of the products that we can consider balancing the overall equation. In this case, we will look at the initial subscripts to determine what coefficients we might need for the products. Please note, that subscripts should have been determined in the previous step. If the equation still remains unbalanced we add coefficients as shown below.

$$\mathrm{BaCl_2\,(aq) + Li_2SO_4\,(aq) \rightarrow BaSO_4 + 2\,LiCl}$$

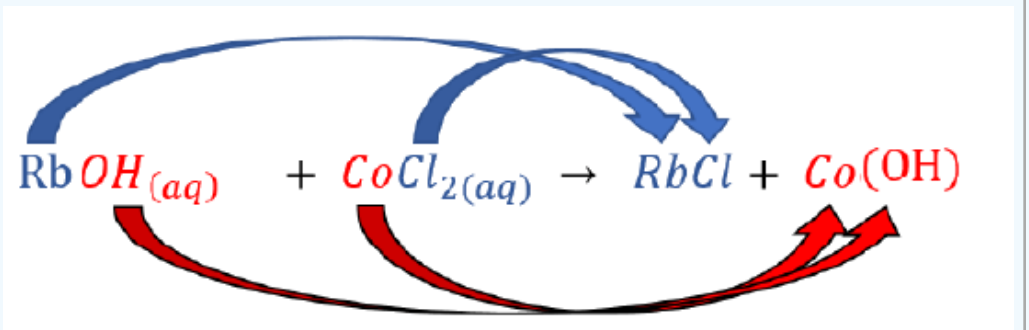


Figure 5.5.2: An x-ray of the digestive organs of a patient who has swallowed a "barium milkshake." A barium milkshake is a suspension of very fine $\mathrm{BaSO_4}$ particles in water; the high atomic mass of barium makes it opaque to x-rays. (Public Domain; Glitzy queen00 via Wikipedia).

Example 5.5.1

Predict what will happen if rubidium hydroxide and cobalt(II) chloride are mixed.

Solution

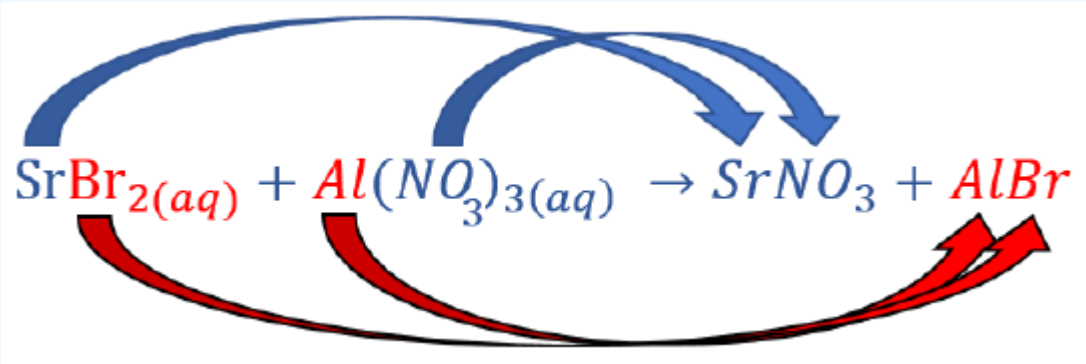
Steps	Example
Change the partners of the anions and cations on the reactant side to form new compounds (products).	

Steps	Example
Correct the formulas of the products based on the charges of the ions.	$\mathrm{RbOH\,(aq) + CoCl_2\,(aq) \rightarrow RbCl + Co(OH)_2}$
Balance the equation.	Coefficients already balanced. $\mathrm{RbOH\,(aq) + CoCl_2\,(aq) \rightarrow RbCl\,(aq) + Co(OH)_2\,(s)}$

Example 5.5.2

Predict what will happen if aqueous solutions of strontium bromide and aluminum nitrate are mixed.

Solution

Steps	Example
Change the partners of the anions and cations on the reactant side to form new compounds (products).	
Correct the formulas of the products based on the charges of the ions.	$\mathrm{SrBr_2\,(aq) + Al(NO_3)_3\,(aq) \rightarrow Sr(NO_3)_2 + AlBr_3}$
Balance the equation.	$\mathrm{3\,SrBr_2\,(aq) + 2\,Al(NO_3)_3\,(aq) \rightarrow 3\,Sr(NO_3)_2 + 2\,AlBr_3}$

As mentioned at the start of this discussion, we will be adding a 4th step in order to determine whether these reactions will occur in a later chapter. In fact, we will revisit these same examples and decide if the reaction occurs or not. It turns out that one of them does, and one of them doesn't. For now, assume any question about double replacement reactions you see in exercises are reactions which will occur. Your job will be to use the 3 steps we discussed to determine the final balanced equation.

Summary

We have learned how to predict the results of single replacement and double replacement reactions using only concepts of charge balance within a compound and balancing equations among compounds and elements. In later chapters we will learn other considerations for predicting both of these types of reactions.

Key Takeaways

- A single-replacement reaction replaces one element for another in a compound.
- A double-replacement reaction exchanges the cations (or the anions) of two ionic compounds.

Answers

Exercise 5.5.1

Yes; $FeCl_2$ and I_2

Exercise 5.5.2

$Mg_3(PO_4)_2$ and Al (Note the charge balance in the compound)

This page titled 5.5: Predicting Reactions - Single and Double Replacement Reactions is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 4.3: Types of Chemical Reactions - Single and Double Replacement Reactions by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/beginning-chemistry.

5.E: Chemical Reactions (Exercises)

The following questions are related to the material covered in this chapter. For additional discussion on each topic, also check the links included in each heading.

5.2: Chemical Equations

Concept Review Exercises

1. What are the parts of a chemical equation?
2. Explain why chemical equations need to be balanced.

Answers

a. reactants and products

b. Chemical equations need to be balanced to satisfy the law of conservation of matter.

Exercises

1. Write a chemical equation to express the fact that hydrogen gas and solid iodine react to make gaseous hydrogen iodide. Make sure the equation satisfies the law of conservation of matter.

2. Write a chemical equation to express the fact that sodium metal and chlorine gas react to make solid sodium chloride. Make sure the equation satisfies the law of conservation of matter.

3. Write an equation expressing the fact that hydrogen gas and fluorine gas react to make gaseous hydrogen fluoride. Make sure the equation satisfies the law of conservation of matter.

4. Write an equation expressing the fact that solid potassium and fluorine gas react to make solid potassium fluoride. Make sure the equation satisfies the law of conservation of matter.

5. Mercury reacts with oxygen to make mercury(II) oxide. Write a balanced chemical equation that summarizes this reaction.

6. Octane (C_8H_{18}) reacts with oxygen to make carbon dioxide and water. Write a balanced chemical equation that summarizes this reaction.

7. Propyl alcohol (C_3H_7OH) reacts with oxygen to make carbon dioxide and water. Write a balanced chemical equation that summarizes this reaction.

8. Sulfuric acid (H_2SO_4) reacts with iron metal to make iron(III) sulfate and hydrogen gas. Write a balanced chemical equation that summarizes this reaction.

9. Balance each equation.

    1. $MgCl_2 + K \rightarrow KCl + Mg$
    2. $C_6H_{12}O_6 + O_2 \rightarrow CO_2 + H_2O$
    3. $NaN_3 \rightarrow Na + N_2$ (This is the reaction used to inflate airbags in cars.)

10. Balance each equation.

1. $NH_4NO_3 \rightarrow N_2O + H_2O$
2. $TiBr_4 + H_2O \rightarrow TiO_2 + HBr$
3. $C_3H_5N_3O_9 \rightarrow CO_2 + N_2 + O_2 + H_2O$ (This reaction represents the decomposition of nitroglycerine.)

11. Balance each equation.

    1. $NH_3 + O_2 \rightarrow NO + H_2O$
    2. $Li + N_2 \rightarrow Li_3N$
    3. $AuCl \rightarrow Au + AuCl_3$

12. Balance each equation.

    1. $NaOH + H_3PO_4 \rightarrow Na_3PO_4 + H_2O$
    2. $N_2H_4 + Cl_2 \rightarrow N_2 + HCl$
    3. $Na_2S + H_2S \rightarrow NaSH$

13. Chromium(III) oxide reacts with carbon tetrachloride to make chromium(III) chloride and phosgene ($COCl_2$). Write the balanced chemical equation for this reaction.

14. The reaction that occurs when an Alka-Seltzer tablet is dropped into a glass of water has sodium bicarbonate reacting with citric acid ($H_3C_6H_5O_7$) to make carbon dioxide, water, and sodium citrate ($Na_3C_6H_5O_7$). Write the balanced chemical equation for this reaction.

15. When sodium hydrogen carbonate is used to extinguish a kitchen fire, it decomposes into sodium carbonate, carbon dioxide and water. Write a balanced chemical equation for this reaction.

16. Elemental bromine gas can be generated by reacting sodium bromide with elemental chlorine. The other product is sodium chloride. Write a balanced chemical equation for this reaction.

Answers

1. $H_2(g) + I_2(s) \rightarrow 2HI(g)$

2.

3. $H_2(g) + F_2(g) \rightarrow 2HF(g)$

4.

5. $2Hg + O_2 \rightarrow 2HgO$

6.

7. $2C_3H_7OH + 9O_2 \rightarrow 6CO_2 + 8H_2O$

8.

9.
    1. $MgCl_2 + 2K \rightarrow 2KCl + Mg$
    2. $C_6H_{12}O_6 + 6O_2 \rightarrow 6CO_2 + 6H_2O$
    3. $2NaN_3 \rightarrow 2Na + 3N_2$

10.

11.

1. $4NH_3 + 5O_2 \rightarrow 4NO + 6H_2O$
2. $6Li + N_2 \rightarrow 2Li_3N$
3. $3AuCl \rightarrow 2Au + AuCl_3$

12.

13. $Cr_2O_3 + 3CCl_4 \rightarrow 2CrCl_3 + 3COCl_2$

14.

15. $2NaHCO_3 \rightarrow Na_2CO_3 + CO_2 + H_2O$

16.

5.1-5.3: The Chemical Equation

1. From the statement “nitrogen and hydrogen react to produce ammonia,” identify the reactants and the products.
2. From the statement “sodium metal reacts with water to produce sodium hydroxide and hydrogen,” identify the reactants and the products.
3. From the statement “magnesium hydroxide reacts with nitric acid to produce magnesium nitrate and water,” identify the reactants and the products.
4. From the statement “propane reacts with oxygen to produce carbon dioxide and water,” identify the reactants and the products.
5. Write and balance the chemical equation described by Exercise 1.
6. Write and balance the chemical equation described by Exercise 2.
7. Write and balance the chemical equation described by Exercise 3.
8. Write and balance the chemical equation described by Exercise 4. The formula for propane is C_3H_8.
9. Balance: $\_\_NaClO_3 \rightarrow \_\_NaCl + \_\_O_2$
10. Balance: $\_\_N_2 + \_\_H_2 \rightarrow \_\_N_2H_4$
11. Balance: $\_\_Al + \_\_O_2 \rightarrow \_\_Al_2O_3$
12. Balance: $\_\_C_2H_4 + \_\_O_2 \rightarrow \_\_CO_2 + \_\_H_2O$
13. How would you write the balanced chemical equation in Exercise 10 if all substances were gases?
14. How would you write the balanced chemical equation in Exercise 12 if all the substances except water were gases and water itself were a liquid?

Answers

1. reactants: nitrogen and hydrogen; product: ammonia
2.
3. reactants: magnesium hydroxide and nitric acid; products: magnesium nitrate and water
4.
5. $N_2 + 3H_2 \rightarrow 2NH_3$
6.
7. $Mg(OH)_2 + 2HNO_3 \rightarrow Mg(NO_3)_2 + 2H_2O$
8.
9. $2NaClO_3 \rightarrow 2NaCl + 3O_2$
10.
11. $4Al + 3O_2 \rightarrow 2Al_2O_3$
12.
13. $N_2(g) + 3H_2(g) \rightarrow 2NH_3(g)$

5.4: Composition, Decomposition, and Combustion Reactions

1. Which is a composition reaction and which is not?
   a. $NaCl + AgNO3 \rightarrow AgCl + NaNO3$
   b. $CaO + CO2 \rightarrow CaCO3$
2. Which is a composition reaction and which is not?
   a. $H2 + Cl2 \rightarrow 2HCl$
   b. $2HBr + Cl2 \rightarrow 2HCl + Br2$
3. Which is a composition reaction and which is not?
   a. $2SO2 + O2 \rightarrow 2SO3$
   b. $6C + 3H2 \rightarrow C6H6$
4. Which is a composition reaction and which is not?
   a. $4Na + 2C + 3O2 \rightarrow 2Na2CO3$
   b. $Na2CO3 \rightarrow Na2O + CO2$
5. Which is a decomposition reaction and which is not?
   a. $HCl + NaOH \rightarrow NaCl + H2O$
   b. $CaCO3 \rightarrow CaO + CO2$
6. Which is a decomposition reaction and which is not?
   a. $3O2 \rightarrow 2O3$
   b. $2KClO3 \rightarrow 2KCl + 3O2$
7. Which is a decomposition reaction and which is not?
   a. $Na2O + CO2 \rightarrow Na2CO3$
   b. $H2SO3 \rightarrow H2O + SO2$
8. Which is a decomposition reaction and which is not?
   a. $2C7H5N3O6 \rightarrow 3N2 + 5H2O + 7CO + 7C$
   b. $C6H12O6 + 6O2 \rightarrow 6CO2 + 6H2O$
9. Which is a combustion reaction and which is not?
   a. $C6H12O6 + 6O2 \rightarrow 6CO2 + 6H2O$
   b. $2Fe2S3 + 9O2 \rightarrow 2Fe2O3 + 6SO2$
10. Which is a combustion reaction and which is not?
    a. $CH4 + 2F2 \rightarrow CF4 + 2H2$
    b. $2H2 + O2 \rightarrow 2H2O$
11. Which is a combustion reaction and which is not?
    a. $P4 + 5O2 \rightarrow 2P2O5$
    b. $2Al2S3 + 9O2 \rightarrow 2Al2O3 + 6SO2$
12. Which is a combustion reaction and which is not?
    a. $C2H4 + O2 \rightarrow C2H4O2$
    b. $C2H4 + Cl2 \rightarrow C2H4Cl2$
13. Is it possible for a composition reaction to also be a combustion reaction? Give an example to support your case.
14. Is it possible for a decomposition reaction to also be a combustion reaction? Give an example to support your case.
15. Complete and balance each combustion equation.
    a. $C4H9OH + O2 \rightarrow ?$
    b. $CH3NO2 + O2 \rightarrow ?$
16. Complete and balance each combustion equation.
    a. $B2H6 + O2 \rightarrow ?$ (The oxide of boron formed is $B2O3$.)
    b. $Al2S3 + O2 \rightarrow ?$ (The oxide of sulfur formed is $SO2$.)
    c. $Al2S3 + O2 \rightarrow ?$ (The oxide of sulfur formed is $SO3$.)

Answers

1. a. not composition
   b. composition
2.
3. a. composition

b. composition

4.

5. a. not decomposition
   b. decomposition

6.

7. a. not decomposition
   b. decomposition

8.

9. a. combustion
   b. combustion

10.

11. a. combustion
    b. combustion

12.

13. Yes; $2H_2 + O_2 \rightarrow 2H_2O$ (answers will vary)

14.

15. a. $C_4H_9OH + 6O_2 \rightarrow 4CO_2 + 5H_2O$
    b. $4CH_3NO_2 + 3O_2 \rightarrow 4CO_2 + 6H_2O + 2N_2$

5.5: Types of Chemical Reactions - Single and Double Displacement Reactions

1. What are the general characteristics that help you recognize single-replacement reactions?
2. What are the general characteristics that help you recognize double-replacement reactions?
3. Assuming that each single-replacement reaction occurs, predict the products and write each balanced chemical equation.
   a. $Zn + Fe(NO_3)_2 \rightarrow ?$
   b. $F_2 + FeI_3 \rightarrow ?$
4. Assuming that each single-replacement reaction occurs, predict the products and write each balanced chemical equation.
   a. $Li + MgSO_4 \rightarrow ?$
   b. $NaBr + Cl_2 \rightarrow ?$
5. Assuming that each single-replacement reaction occurs, predict the products and write each balanced chemical equation.
   a. $Sn + H_2SO_4 \rightarrow ?$
   b. $Al + NiBr_2 \rightarrow ?$
6. Assuming that each single-replacement reaction occurs, predict the products and write each balanced chemical equation.
   a. $Mg + HCl \rightarrow ?$
   b. $HI + Br_2 \rightarrow ?$
7. Use the periodic table or the activity series to predict if each single-replacement reaction will occur and, if so, write a balanced chemical equation.
   a. $FeCl_2 + Br_2 \rightarrow ?$
   b. $Fe(NO_3)_3 + Al \rightarrow ?$
8. Use the periodic table or the activity series to predict if each single-replacement reaction will occur and, if so, write a balanced chemical equation.
   a. $Zn + Fe_3(PO_4)_2 \rightarrow ?$
   b. $Ag + HNO_3 \rightarrow ?$
9. Use the periodic table or the activity series to predict if each single-replacement reaction will occur and, if so, write a balanced chemical equation.
   a. $NaI + Cl_2 \rightarrow ?$
   b. $AgCl + Au \rightarrow ?$
10. Use the periodic table or the activity series to predict if each single-replacement reaction will occur and, if so, write a balanced chemical equation.
    a. $Pt + H_3PO_4 \rightarrow ?$
    b. $Li + H_2O \rightarrow ?$ (Hint: treat H_2O as if it were composed of H^+ and OH^- ions.)
11. Assuming that each double-replacement reaction occurs, predict the products and write each balanced chemical equation.
    a. $Zn(NO_3)_2 + NaOH \rightarrow ?$

b. $HCl + Na_2S \rightarrow ?$

12. Assuming that each double-replacement reaction occurs, predict the products and write each balanced chemical equation.
    a. $Ca(C_2H_3O_2)_2 + HNO_3 \rightarrow ?$
    b. $Na_2CO_3 + Sr(NO_2)_2 \rightarrow ?$
13. Assuming that each double-replacement reaction occurs, predict the products and write each balanced chemical equation.
    a. $Pb(NO_3)_2 + KBr \rightarrow ?$
    b. $K_2O + MgCO_3 \rightarrow ?$
14. Assuming that each double-replacement reaction occurs, predict the products and write each balanced chemical equation.
    a. $Sn(OH)_2 + FeBr_3 \rightarrow ?$
    b. $CsNO_3 + KCl \rightarrow ?$
15. Use the solubility rules to predict if each double-replacement reaction will occur and, if so, write a balanced chemical equation.
    a. $Pb(NO_3)_2 + KBr \rightarrow ?$
    b. $K_2O + Na_2CO_3 \rightarrow ?$
16. Use the solubility rules to predict if each double-replacement reaction will occur and, if so, write a balanced chemical equation.
    a. $Na_2CO_3 + Sr(NO_2)_2 \rightarrow ?$
    b. $(NH_4)_2SO_4 + Ba(NO_3)_2 \rightarrow ?$
17. Use the solubility rules to predict if each double-replacement reaction will occur and, if so, write a balanced chemical equation.
    a. $K_3PO_4 + SrCl_2 \rightarrow ?$
    b. $NaOH + MgCl_2 \rightarrow ?$
18. Use the solubility rules to predict if each double-replacement reaction will occur and, if so, write a balanced chemical equation.
    a. $KC_2H_3O_2 + Li_2CO_3 \rightarrow ?$
    b. $KOH + AgNO_3 \rightarrow ?$

Answers

1. One element replaces another element in a compound.
2.
3. a. $Zn + Fe(NO_3)_2 \rightarrow Zn(NO_3)_2 + Fe$
   b. $3F_2 + 2FeI_3 \rightarrow 3I_2 + 2FeF_3$
4.
5. a. $Sn + H_2SO_4 \rightarrow SnSO_4 + H_2$
   b. $2Al + 3NiBr_2 \rightarrow 2AlBr_3 + 3Ni$
6.
7. a. No reaction occurs.
   b. $Fe(NO_3)_3 + Al \rightarrow Al(NO_3)_3 + Fe$
8.
9. a. $2NaI + Cl_2 \rightarrow 2NaCl + I_2$
   b. No reaction occurs.
10.
11. a. $Zn(NO_3)_2 + 2NaOH \rightarrow Zn(OH)_2 + 2NaNO_3$
    b. $2HCl + Na_2S \rightarrow 2NaCl + H_2S$
12.
13. a. $Pb(NO_3)_2 + 2KBr \rightarrow PbBr_2 + 2KNO_3$
    b. $K_2O + MgCO_3 \rightarrow K_2CO_3 + MgO$
14.
15. a. $Pb(NO_3)_2 + 2KBr \rightarrow PbBr_2(s) + 2KNO_3$
    b. No reaction occurs.
16.
17. a. $2K_3PO_4 + 3SrCl_2 \rightarrow Sr_3(PO_4)_2(s) + 6KCl$
    b. $2NaOH + MgCl_2 \rightarrow 2NaCl + Mg(OH)_2(s)$

This page titled 5.E: Chemical Reactions (Exercises) is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

6: INTRODUCTION TO STOICHIOMETRY

In this chapter, we will be combining ideas about the mole concept and about balanced chemical equations which we had previously looked at in earlier chapters. It is assumed you have already mastered the mole concept and the balanced chemical equation concept prior to beginning this chapter. To check your knowledge, you might want to try each of the following practice problems before continuing in this chapter. If you find these challenging, please go back and review the relevant chapter before continuing with this chapter.

Example 6.1

How many molecules is $40.0\ \text{g}$ of chlorine gas, Cl_2?

Example 6.2

How many hydrogen atoms and hydrogen molecules are there in the following balanced equation?

$\text{C(s)} + 2\text{H}_2\text{(g)} \rightarrow \text{CH}_4\text{(g)}$

Additionally, as was the case in the chapter on moles, the concepts in this chapter will build on each other as you move from section to section. Because of this, you will need to master each section before moving on to the next section. In the final section of this chapter, we introduce additional stoichiometry concepts which will be revisited again in a later chapter.

6.1: Everyday Stoichiometry

6.2: Mole Ratios

6.3: Mass-Mole and Mole-Mass Stoichiometry

6.4: Mass-Mass Stoichiometry

6.5: Stoichiometry Applications

6.5.1: Making Your Own Mole Road Map

6.5.2: Limiting Reactant

6.5.3: Theoretical Yield and Percent Yield

6.E: Introduction to Stoichiometry (Exercises)

Template:HideTOC

Contributors and Attributions

This page titled 6: Introduction to Stoichiometry is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- 10.5: Conversions Between Mass and Number of Particles by CK12 is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://flexbooks.ck12.org/cbook/ck-12-chemistry-flexbook-2.0/.
- 12: Stoichiometry by CK12 is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://flexbooks.ck12.org/cbook/ck-12-chemistry-flexbook-2.0/.

6.1: Everyday Stoichiometry



Figure 6.1.1 (Public Domain; User:Skatebiker/Wikipedia via Wikipedia)

How much equipment do you need for an experiment?

You are in charge of setting out the lab equipment for a chemistry experiment. If you have twenty students in the lab (and they will be working in teams of two) and the experiment calls for three beakers and two test tubes, how much glassware do you need to set out? Figuring this out involves a type of balanced equation and the sort of calculations that you would do for a chemical reaction.

Everyday Stoichiometry

You have learned about chemical equations and the techniques used in order to balance them. Chemists use balanced equations to allow them to manipulate chemical reactions in a quantitative manner. Before we look at a chemical reaction, let's consider an equation for the ideal ham sandwich.



Figure 6.1.2: The ideal ham sandwich. (CK-12 Curriculum Materials license; CK-12 Foundation via CK-12 Foundation)

Our ham sandwich is composed of 2 slices of ham (H), a slice of cheese (C), a slice of tomato (T), 5 pickles (P), and 2 slices of bread (B). The equation for our sandwich is:

$$2\mathrm{H} + \mathrm{C} + \mathrm{T} + 5\mathrm{P} + 2\mathrm{B} \rightarrow \mathrm{H_2CTP_5B_2}$$

Now let us suppose that you are having some friends over and need to make five ham sandwiches. How much of each sandwich ingredient do you need? You take the number of each ingredient required for one sandwich (its coefficient in the above equation) and multiply by five. Using ham and cheese as examples, and using a conversion factor, you can calculate:

$$5\mathrm{H_2CTP_5B_2} \times \frac{2\ \mathrm{H}}{1\mathrm{H_2CTP_5B_2}} = 10\ \mathrm{H}$$

$$5\mathrm{H_2CTP_5B_2} \times \frac{1\mathrm{C}}{1\mathrm{H_2CTP_5B_2}} = 5\ \mathrm{C}$$

The conversion factors contain the coefficient of each specific ingredient as the numerator and the formula of one sandwich as the denominator. The result is what you would expect. In order to make five ham sandwiches, you need 10 slices of ham and 5 slices of cheese.

This type of calculation demonstrates the use of stoichiometry. **Stoichiometry** is the calculation of the amount of substances in a chemical reaction from the balanced equation. The sample problem below is another stoichiometry problem involving ingredients of the ideal ham sandwich.

Example $6.1.1$**: Ham Sandwich Stoichiometry**

Kim looks in the refrigerator and finds that she has 8 slices of ham. In order to make as many sandwiches as possible, how many pickles does she need? Use the equation above.

Solution

Step 1: List the known quantities and plan the problem.

- Have 8 ham slices (H)
- $2\ \mathrm{H} = 5\ \mathrm{P}$ (conversion factor)

Unknown

- How many pickles (P) needed?

The coefficients for the two reactants (ingredients) are used to make a conversion factor between ham slices and pickles.

Step 2: Solve.

$$8\ \mathrm{H} \times \frac{5\ \mathrm{P}}{2\ \mathrm{H}} = 20\ \mathrm{P}$$

Since 5 pickles combine with 2 ham slices in each sandwich, 20 pickles are needed to fully combine with 8 ham slices.

Step 3: Think about your result.

The 8 ham slices will make 4 ham sandwiches. With 5 pickles per sandwich, the 20 pickles are used in the 4 sandwiches.

Summary

- An example of everyday stoichiometry is given.

Review

1. A smoothie contains 1 banana (B), 4 strawberries (St), 1 container of yogurt (Y), and 3 ice cubes (Ic). Write a balanced

equation to describe the relationship.
2. Write a conversion factor to show the relationship between the number of ice cubes and the number of smoothies produced.
3. How many strawberries would you need to make 12 smoothies?

This page titled 6.1: Everyday Stoichiometry is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- 12.1: Everyday Stoichiometry by CK12 is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://flexbooks.ck12.org/cbook/ck-12-chemistry-flexbook-2.0/.

6.2: Mole Ratios

Suppose that you want to add some sections to your porch. Before you go to the hardware store to buy lumber, you need to determine the unit composition (the material between two large uprights). You count how many posts, how many boards, how many rails—then you decide how many sections you want to add—before you calculate the amount of building material needed for your porch expansion.

Mole Ratios

Stoichiometry problems can be characterized by two things: (1) the information *given* in the problem, and (2) the information that is to be solved for, referred to as the *unknown*. The given and the unknown may both be reactants, both be products, or one may be a reactant while the other is a product. The amounts of the substances can be expressed in moles. However, in a laboratory situation, it is common to determine the amount of a substance by finding its mass in grams. The amount of a gaseous substance may be expressed by its volume. In this concept, we will focus on the type of problem where both the given and the unknown quantities are expressed in moles.

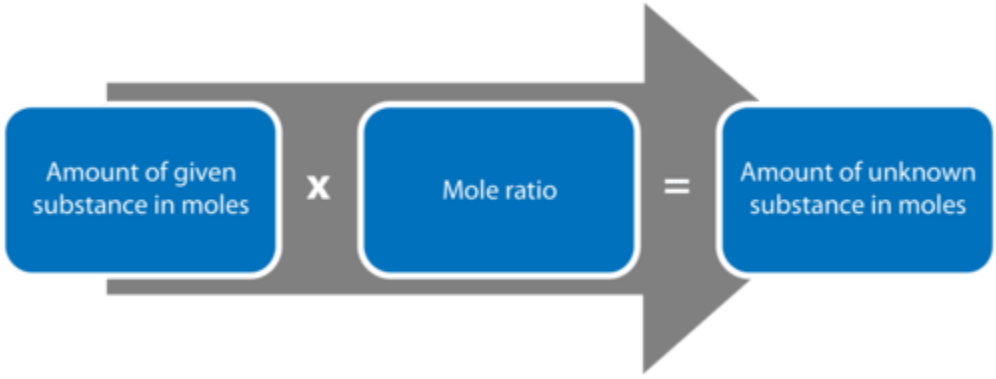


Figure 6.2.1: *Mole ratio relationship.*

Chemical equations express the amounts of reactants and products in a reaction. The coefficients of a balanced equation can represent either the number of molecules or the number of moles of each substance. The production of ammonia $(\mathrm{NH_3})$ from nitrogen and hydrogen gases is an important industrial reaction called the Haber process, after German chemist Fritz Haber.

$$\mathrm{N_2}\,(g) + 3\mathrm{H_2}\,(g) \rightarrow 2\mathrm{NH_3}\,(g) \tag{6.2.1}$$

The balanced equation can be analyzed in several ways, as shown in the figure below.

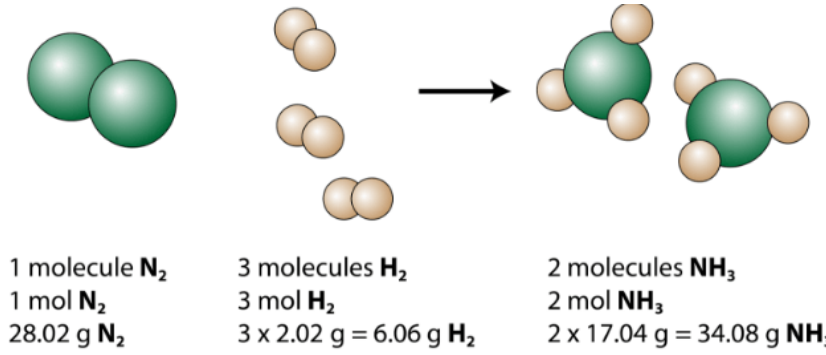


Figure 6.2.2: *This representation of the production of ammonia from nitrogen and hydrogen shows several ways to interpret the quantitative information of a chemical reaction.*

We see that 1 molecule of nitrogen reacts with 3 molecules of hydrogen to form 2 molecules of ammonia. This is the smallest possible relative amount of the reactants and products. To consider larger relative amounts, each coefficient can be multiplied by

the same number. For example, 10 molecules of nitrogen would react with 30 molecules of hydrogen to produce 20 molecules of ammonia.

The most useful quantity for counting particles is the mole. So if each coefficient is multiplied by a mole, the balanced chemical equation tells us that 1 mole of nitrogen reacts with 3 moles of hydrogen to produce 2 moles of ammonia. This is the conventional way to interpret any balanced chemical equation.

Finally, if each mole quantity is converted to grams by using the molar mass, we can see that the law of conservation of mass is followed. $1\ \text{mol}$ of nitrogen has a mass of $28.02\ \text{g}$, while $3\ \text{mol}$ of hydrogen has a mass of $6.06\ \text{g}$, and $2\ \text{mol}$ of ammonia has a mass of $34.08\ \text{g}$.

$$28.02\ \text{g}\ \text{N}_2 + 6.06\ \text{g}\ \text{H}_2 \rightarrow 34.08\ \text{g}\ \text{NH}_3 \tag{6.2.2}$$

Mass and the number of atoms must be conserved in any chemical reaction. The number of molecules is not necessarily conserved.



Figure 6.2.3: *An apparatus for running the Haber process.*

A **mole ratio** is a conversion factor that relates the amounts in moles of any two substances in a chemical reaction. The numbers in a conversion factor come from the coefficients of the balanced chemical equation. The following six mole ratios can be written for the ammonia forming reaction above.

$$\begin{aligned} &\frac{1\ \text{mol}\ \text{N}_2}{3\ \text{mol}\ \text{H}_2} \quad \textit{or} \quad \frac{3\ \text{mol}\ \text{H}_2}{1\ \text{mol}\ \text{N}_2} \\ &\frac{1\ \text{mol}\ \text{N}_2}{2\ \text{mol}\ \text{NH}_3} \quad \textit{or} \quad \frac{2\ \text{mol}\ \text{NH}_3}{1\ \text{mol}\ \text{N}_2} \\ &\frac{3\ \text{mol}\ \text{H}_2}{2\ \text{mol}\ \text{NH}_3} \quad \textit{or} \quad \frac{2\ \text{mol}\ \text{NH}_3}{3\ \text{mol}\ \text{H}_2} \end{aligned} \tag{6.2.3}$$

In a mole ratio problem, the given substance, expressed in moles, is written first. The appropriate conversion factor is chosen in order to convert from moles of the given substance to moles of the unknown.

Example 6.2.1

How many moles of ammonia are produced if 4.20 moles of hydrogen are reacted with an excess of nitrogen?

Solution

Step 1: List the known quantities and plan the problem.

Known

4.20 moles of hydrogen

relevant mole ratios from balanced equation.

Unknown

mol NH_3

Plan

The conversion is from $\text{mol } H_2$ to $\text{mol } NH_3$. The problem states that there is an excess of nitrogen, so we do not need to be concerned with any mole ratio involving N_2. Choose the conversion factor that has the NH_3 in the numerator and the H_2 in the denominator.

Step 2: Solve.

$$4.20 \text{ mol } H_2 \times \frac{2 \text{ mol } NH_3}{3 \text{ mol } H_2} = 2.80 \text{ mol } NH_3 \tag{6.2.4}$$

The reaction of 4.20 mol of hydrogen with excess nitrogen produces 2.80 mol of ammonia.

Step 3: Think about your result.

The result corresponds to the 3:2 ratio of hydrogen to ammonia from the balanced equation.

Summary

- Mole ratios allow comparison of the amounts of any two materials in a balanced equation.
- Calculations can be made to predict how much product can be obtained from a given number of moles of reactant.

This page titled 6.2: Mole Ratios is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- 12.2: Mole Ratios by CK12 is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://flexbooks.ck12.org/cbook/ck-12-chemistry-flexbook-2.0/.

6.3: Mass-Mole and Mole-Mass Stoichiometry

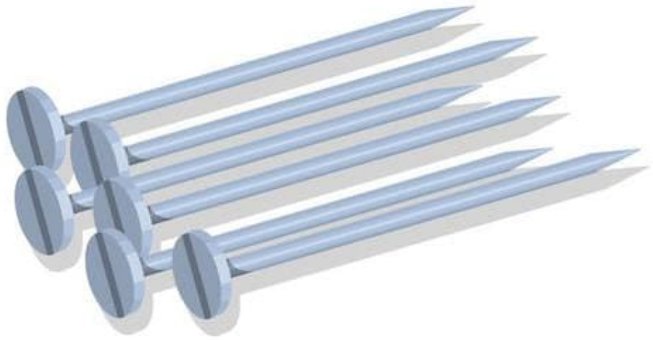


Figure 6.3.1 (CK-12 Curriculum Materials license; CK-12 Foundation via CK-12 Foundation)

Need nails?

When you are doing a large construction project, you have a good idea of how many nails you will need (lots!). When you go to the hardware store, you don't want to sit there and count out several hundred nails. You can buy nails by weight, so you determine how many nails are in a pound, calculate how many pounds you need, and you're on your way to begin building.

While the mole ratio is ever-present in all stoichiometry calculations, amounts of substances in the laboratory are most often measured by mass. Therefore, we need to use mole-mass calculations in combination with mole ratios to solve several different types of mass-based stoichiometry problems.

Mass to Moles Problems

In this type of problem, the mass of one substance is given, usually in grams. From this, you are to determine the amount in moles of another substance that will either react with or be produced from the given substance.

$$\text{mass of given} \rightarrow \text{moles of given} \rightarrow \text{moles of unknown}$$

The mass of the given substance is converted into moles by use of the molar mass of that substance from the periodic table. Then, the moles of the given substance are converted into moles of the unknown by using the mole ratio from the balanced chemical equation.

Example 6.3.1: Mass-Mole Stoichiometry

Tin metal reacts with hydrogen fluoride to produce tin (II) fluoride and hydrogen gas, according to the following balanced equation.

$$\mathrm{Sn}\,(s) + 2\mathrm{HF}\,(g) \rightarrow \mathrm{SnF_2}\,(s) + \mathrm{H_2}\,(g)$$

How many moles of hydrogen fluoride are required to react completely with $75.0\ \mathrm{g}$ of tin?

Solution:

Step 1: List the known quantities and plan the problem.

Known

- Given: $75.0\ \mathrm{g\ Sn}$
- Molar mass of $\mathrm{Sn} = 118.69\ \mathrm{g/mol}$
- $1\ \mathrm{mol\ Sn} = 2\ \mathrm{mol\ HF}$ (mole ratio)

Unknown

- mol HF

Use the molar mass of Sn to convert the grams of Sn to moles. Then use the mole ratio to convert from $\mathrm{mol\ Sn}$ to $\mathrm{mol\ HF}$. This will be done in a single two-step calculation.

$\mathrm{g\ Sn} \rightarrow \mathrm{mol\ Sm} \rightarrow \mathrm{mol\ HF}$

Step 2: Solve.

$$75.0\ \mathrm{g\ Sn} \times \frac{1\ \mathrm{mol\ Sn}}{118.69\ \mathrm{g\ Sn}} \times \frac{2\ \mathrm{mol\ HF}}{1\ \mathrm{mol\ Sn}} = 1.26\ \mathrm{mol\ HF}$$

Step 3: Think about your result.

The mass of tin is less than one mole, but the 1:2 ratio means that more than one mole of HF is required for the reaction. The answer has three significant figures because the given mass has three significant figures.

Moles to Mass Problems

In this type of problem, the amount of one substance is given in moles. From this, you are to determine the mass of another substance that will either react with or be produced from the given substance.

$$\text{moles of given} \rightarrow \text{moles of unknown} \rightarrow \text{mass of unknown}$$

The moles of the given substance are first converted into moles of the unknown by using the mole ratio from the balanced chemical equation. Then, the moles of the unknown are converted into mass in grams by use of the molar mass of that substance from the periodic table.

Example $6.3.2$**: Mole-Mass Stoichiometry**

Hydrogen sulfide gas burns in oxygen to produce sulfur dioxide and water vapor:

$$2\mathrm{H_2S}\,(g) + 3\mathrm{O_2}\,(g) \rightarrow 2\mathrm{SO_2}\,(g) + 2\mathrm{H_2O}\,(g)$$

What mass of oxygen gas is consumed in a reaction that produces $4.60\ \mathrm{mol\ SO_2}$?

Solution:

Step 1: List the known quantities and plan the problem.

Known

- Given: $4.60\ \mathrm{mol\ SO_2}$
- $2\ \mathrm{mol\ SO_2} = 3\ \mathrm{mol\ O_2}$ (mole ratio)
- Molar mass of $\mathrm{O_2} = 32.00\ \mathrm{g/mol}$

Unknown

- mass O_2 = ? g

Use the mole ratio to convert from $\mathrm{mol\ SO_2}$ to $\mathrm{mol\ O_2}$. Then convert $\mathrm{mol\ O_2}$ to grams. This will be done in a single two-step calculation.

$\mathrm{mol\ SO_2} \rightarrow \mathrm{mol\ O_2} \rightarrow \mathrm{g\ O_2}$

Step 2: Solve.

$$4.60 \text{ mol } SO_2 \times \frac{3 \text{ mol } O_2}{2 \text{ mol } SO_2} \times \frac{32.00 \text{ g } O_2}{1 \text{ mol } O_2} = 221 \text{ g } O_2$$

Step 3: Think about your result.

According to the mole ratio, $6.90 \text{ mol } O_2$ is produced with a mass of 221 g. The answer has three significant figures because the given number of moles has three significant figures.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Summary

- Calculations involving conversions of mass to moles and moles to mass are described.

Review

1. In the first problem, what would happen if you multiply grams Sn by 118.69 grams/mole Sn?
2. Why is a balanced equation needed?
3. Does the physical form of the material matter for these calculations?

This page titled 6.3: Mass-Mole and Mole-Mass Stoichiometry is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- 12.3: Mass-Mole Stoichiometry by CK12 is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://flexbooks.ck12.org/cbook/ck-12-chemistry-flexbook-2.0/.

6.4: Mass-Mass Stoichiometry



Figure 6.4.1 (CC by 2.0; Pauline Mak via Flickr)

How many walnuts are needed to equal 250 grams?

I want to send 250 grams of shelled walnuts to a friend (don't ask why- just go with the question). How many walnuts in shells do I need to buy? To figure this out, I need to know how much the shell of a walnut weighs (about 40% of the total weight of the unshelled walnut). I can then calculate the mass of walnuts that will yield 250 grams of shelled walnuts, and then determine how many walnuts I need to buy.

Mass to Mass Problems

Mass-mass calculations are the most practical of all mass-based stoichiometry problems. Moles cannot be measured directly, while the mass of any substance can generally be easily measured in the lab. This type of problem is three steps, and is a combination of the two previous types.

$$\text{mass of given} \rightarrow \text{moles of given} \rightarrow \text{moles of unknown} \rightarrow \text{mass of unknown}$$

The mass of the given substance is converted into moles by use of the molar mass of that substance from the periodic table. Then, the moles of the given substance are converted into moles of the unknown by using the mole ratio from the balanced chemical equation. Finally, the moles of the unknown are converted to mass by use of its molar mass.

Example 6.4.1: Mass-Mass Stoichiometry

Ammonium nitrate decomposes to dinitrogen monoxide and water, according to the following equation.

$$\mathrm{NH_4NO_3}\,(s) \rightarrow \mathrm{N_2O}\,(g) + 2\mathrm{H_2O}\,(l)$$

In a certain experiment, $45.7\ \mathrm{g}$ of ammonium nitrate is decomposed. Find the mass of each of the products formed.

Solution

Step 1: List the known quantities and plan the problem.

Known

- Given: $45.7\ \mathrm{g}\ \mathrm{NH_4NO_3}$
- $1\ \mathrm{mol}\ \mathrm{NH_4NO_3} = 1\ \mathrm{mol}\ \mathrm{N_2O} = 2\ \mathrm{mol}\ \mathrm{H_2O}$

- Molar mass of $NH_4NO_3 = 80.06\ g/mol$
- Molar mass of $N_2O = 44.02\ g/mol$
- Molar mass of $H_2O = 18.02\ g/mol$

Unknown

- Mass $N_2O = ?\ g$
- Mass $H_2O = ?\ g$

Perform two separate three-step mass-mass calculations, as shown below.

$$g\ NH_4NO_3 \rightarrow mol\ NH_4NO_3 \rightarrow mol\ N_2O \rightarrow g\ N_2O$$

$$g\ NH_4NO_3 \rightarrow mol\ NH_4NO_3 \rightarrow mol\ H_2O \rightarrow g\ H_2O$$

Step 2: Solve.

$$45.7\ g\ NH_4NO_3 \times \frac{1\ mol\ NH_4NO_3}{80.06\ g\ NH_4NO_3} \times \frac{1\ mol\ N_2O}{1\ mol\ NH_4NO_3} \times \frac{44.02\ g\ N_2O}{1\ mol\ N_2O} = 25.1\ g\ N_2O$$

$$45.7\ g\ NH_4NO_3 \times \frac{1\ mol\ NH_4NO_3}{80.06\ g\ NH_4NO_3} \times \frac{2\ H_2O}{1\ mol\ NH_4NO_3} \times \frac{18.02\ g\ H_2O}{1\ mol\ H_2O} = 20.6\ g\ H_2O$$

Step 3: Think about your result.

The total mass of the two products is equal to the mass of ammonium nitrate which decomposed, demonstrating the law of conservation of mass. Each answer has three significant figures.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Summary

- Mass-mass calculations involve converting the mass of a reactant to moles of reactant, then using mole ratios to determine moles of product which can then be converted to mass of product.

Review

1. If matter is neither created nor destroyed, why can't we just go directly from grams of reactant to grams of product?
2. Why is it important to get the subscripts correct in the formulas?
3. Why do the coefficients need to be correct?

This page titled 6.4: Mass-Mass Stoichiometry is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- 12.4: Mass-Mass Stoichiometry by CK12 is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://flexbooks.ck12.org/cbook/ck-12-chemistry-flexbook-2.0/.

6.5: STOICHIOMETRY APPLICATIONS

In this chapter, we have introduced the basics of stoichiometry. These ideas are foundational to much of how quantitative chemistry is done, particularly in hands on settings such as laboratories. But there are many more applications to these ideas. We will be exploring these additional applications in later chapters. For example, we have assumed so far that we are only considering reactions in which we are able to determine the mass of reactants and products. It turns out that in some experimental setups, that mass is not the most convenient thing to measure about a reactant or product. In later chapters we will consider how we might use properties of gases or solutions such as volume, pressure, temperature, and/or concentration in order to determine moles instead of always starting with mass. There is a hint of how this might work within the mole roadmap included in one of the subsections. As you consider this mole roadmap, make sure that you can apply the ideas related to moles and mass for now. We will introduce the other ideas later.

In addition to looking at chemical reactions in a variety of physical states, we also might want to consider a few other things with stoichiometry. For example, everything we have considered so far has only included information about one of the reactants when often there are 2 or more. In order to consider these situations, we must use the limiting reactant concept. Another consideration is whether the chemical reaction made as much product as we might have expected. There are a variety of things that must be considered for a chemical reaction in order to decide on this, however in order to have a conversation around whether or not the reaction worked we need to understand the concept of theoretical yield and percent yield. These 3 concepts (limiting reactant, theoretical yield, and percent yield) will be introduced very briefly here and explored in greater detail in a later chapter.

6.5.1: Making Your Own Mole Road Map

6.5.2: Limiting Reactant

6.5.3: Theoretical Yield and Percent Yield

This page titled 6.5: Stoichiometry Applications is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

6.5.1: Making Your Own Mole Road Map

We introduced the mole map concept in a previous chapter. The graphic for this is shown again below.

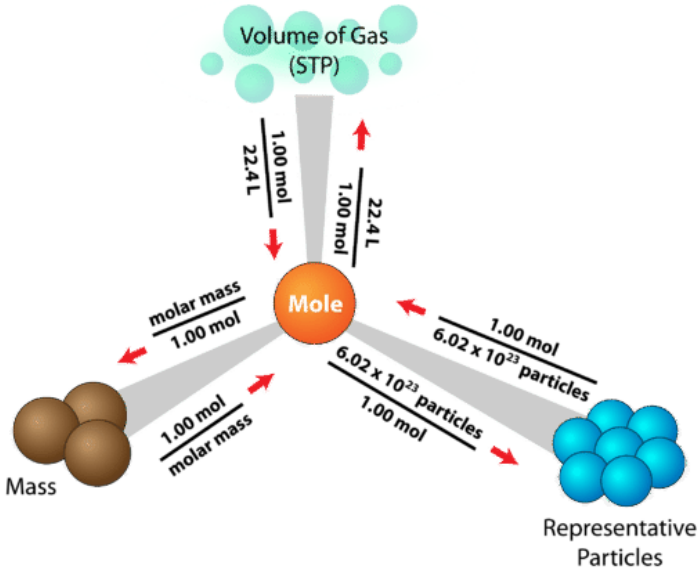


Figure 6.5.1.1: The mole road map shows the conversion factors needed to interconvert mass, number of particles, and volume of a gas.

We can now extend this mole map idea by adding additional conversion steps. As an exercise, create your own mole map which includes both the content covered previously, as well as the content introduced in this chapter. Your mole map will differ from the previous mole map in that you may have more than one step for some of the problems covered in this chapter. You are being asked to create your own mole map because you will find your own map more useful than that created by someone else. Your map should be able to help you solve each of the following types of problems:

- conversions from moles of one substance to moles of another from a balanced chemical equation.
- conversions from mass of one substance to moles of another from a balanced chemical equation. Or vice versa.
- conversions from mass of one substance to mass of another from a balanced chemical equation.
- conversions from mass of one substance to particles of another from a balanced chemical equation. Or vice versa. Note: this one has not been covered in this chapter, but as a synthesis of the ideas previously presented along with what is presented in this chapter.

This page titled 6.5.1: Making Your Own Mole Road Map is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- 10.8: Mole Road Map by CK12 is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://flexbooks.ck12.org/cbook/ck-12-chemistry-flexbook-2.0/.

6.5.2: Limiting Reactant

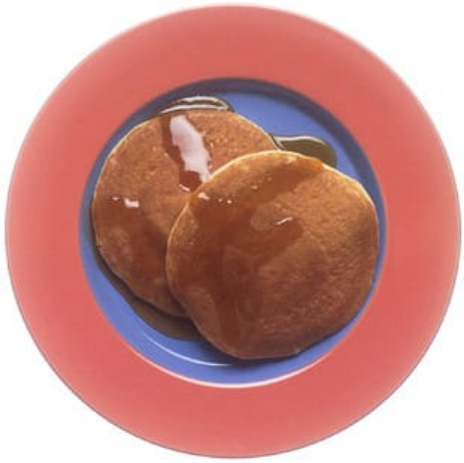


Figure 6.5.2.1 (Public Domain; Renee Comet and the National Cancer Institute; CK-12 Foundation - Christopher Auyeung via Commons Wikimedia, Pancakes [commons.wikimedia.org])

Don't you hate running out of cooking ingredients?

Cooking is a great example of everyday chemistry. In order to correctly follow a recipe, a cook needs to make sure that he has plenty of all the necessary ingredients in order to make his dish. Let us suppose that you are deciding to make some pancakes for a large group of people. The recipe on the box indicates that the following ingredients are needed for each batch of pancakes:

- 1 cup of pancake mix
- $\frac{3}{4}$ cup milk
- 1 egg
- 1 tablespoon vegetable oil

Now you check the pantry and the refrigerator and see that you have the following ingredients available:

- 2 boxes of pancake mix (8 cups)
- Half a gallon of milk (4 cups)
- 2 eggs
- Full bottle of vegetable oil (about 3 cups)

The question that you must ask is: how many batches of pancakes can I make? The answer is two. Even though you have enough pancake mix, milk, and oil to make many more batches of pancakes, you are *limited* by the fact that you only have two eggs. As soon as you have made two batches of pancakes, you will be out of eggs and your "reaction" will be complete.

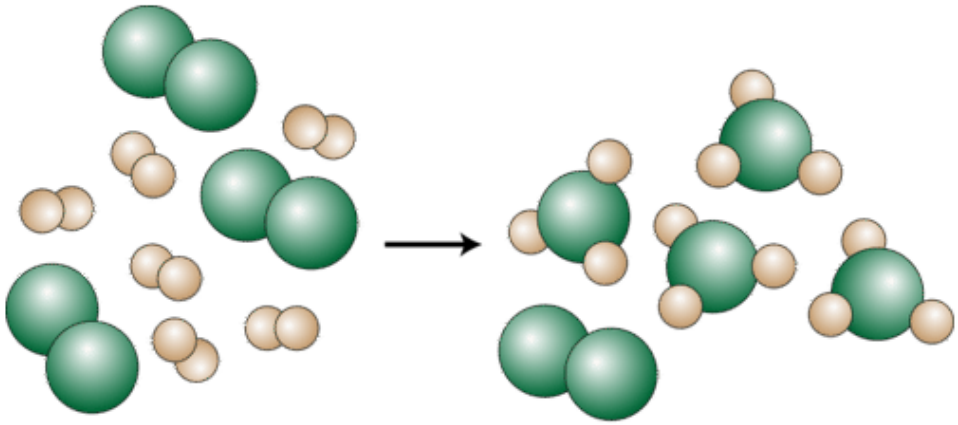
Limiting Reactant

For a chemist, the balanced chemical equation is the recipe that must be followed. As you have seen earlier, the Haber process is a reaction in which nitrogen gas is combined with hydrogen gas to form ammonia. The balanced equation is shown below.

$$\mathrm{N_2}\,(g) + 3\mathrm{H_2}\,(g) \rightarrow 2\mathrm{NH_3}\,(g)$$

We know that the coefficients of the balanced equation indicate the mole ratio that is required for this reaction to occur. One mole of $\mathrm{N_2}$ will react with three moles of $\mathrm{H_2}$ to form two moles of $\mathrm{NH_3}$.

Now let us suppose that a chemist were to react three moles of $\mathrm{N_2}$ with six moles of $\mathrm{H_2}$ (see figure below).



	Reactants		Products
Before reaction	3 mol N_2	6 mol H_2	0 mol NH_3
After reaction	1 mol N_2	0 mol H_2	4 mol NH_3

Figure 6.5.2.2: Reaction in presence of limiting reagent. (CC BY-NC 3.0; Christopher Auyeung via CK-12 Foundation)

So what happened in this reaction? The chemist started with 3 moles of $\mathrm{N_2}$. You may think of this as being 3 times as much as the "recipe" (the balanced equation) requires since the coefficient for the $\mathrm{N_2}$ is a 1. However, the 6 moles of $\mathrm{H_2}$ that the chemist started with is only two times as much as the "recipe" requires, since the coefficient for the $\mathrm{H_2}$ is a 3 and $3 \times 2 = 6$. So, after the reaction is complete, the hydrogen gas will be completely used up; while there will be 1 mole of nitrogen gas left over. Finally, the reaction will produce 4 moles of $\mathrm{NH_3}$ because that is also two times as much as shown in the balanced equation. The overall reaction that occurred in words:

$$2 \text{ mol } \mathrm{N_2} + 6 \text{ mol } \mathrm{H_2} \rightarrow 4 \text{ mol } \mathrm{NH_3}$$

All the amounts are doubled from the original balanced equation.

The **limiting reactant** (or **limiting reagent**) is the reactant that determines the amount of product that can be formed in a chemical reaction. The reaction proceeds until the limiting reactant is completely used up. In our example above, the $\mathrm{H_2}$ is the limiting reactant. The **excess reactant** (or **excess reagent**) is the reactant that is initially present in a greater amount than will eventually be reacted. In other words, there is always excess reactant left over after the reaction is complete. In the above example, the $\mathrm{N_2}$ is the excess reactant.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Summary

- The amount of limiting reactant determines how much product will be formed in a chemical reaction.

Review

1. In the Haber reaction illustrated above, how do we know that hydrogen is the limiting reactant?
2. What if hydrogen were left over?
3. Which material would be limiting if no hydrogen or nitrogen were left over?

This page titled 6.5.2: Limiting Reactant is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- 12.7: Limiting Reactant by CK12 is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://flexbooks.ck12.org/cbook/ck-12-chemistry-flexbook-2.0/.

6.5.3: Theoretical Yield and Percent Yield



Figure 6.5.3.1 (Public Domain; Linda Bartlett and the National Cancer Institute via Wikipedia)

Can we save some money?

The world of pharmaceutical production is an expensive one. Many drugs have several steps in their synthesis and use costly chemicals. A great deal of research takes place to develop better ways to make drugs faster and more efficiently. Studying how much of a compound is produced in any given reaction is an important part of cost control.

Percent Yield

Chemical reactions in the real world do not always go exactly as planned on paper. In the course of an experiment, many things will contribute to the formation of less product than would be predicted. Besides spills and other experimental errors, there are often losses due to an incomplete reaction, undesirable side reactions, etc. Chemists need a measurement that indicates how successful a reaction has been. This measurement is called the percent yield.

To compute the percent yield, it is first necessary to determine how much of the product should be formed based on stoichiometry. This is called the **theoretical yield**, the maximum amount of product that could be formed from the given amounts of reactants. The **actual yield** is the amount of product that is actually formed when the reaction is carried out in the laboratory. The **percent yield** is the ratio of the actual yield to the theoretical yield, expressed as a percentage:

$$\text{Percent Yield} = \frac{\text{Actual Yield}}{\text{Theoretical Yield}} \times 100\%$$

Percent yield is very important in the manufacture of products. Much time and money is spent improving the percent yield for chemical production. When complex chemicals are synthesized by many different reactions, one step with a low percent yield can quickly cause a large waste of reactants and unnecessary expense.

Typically, percent yields are understandably less than 100% because of the reasons previously indicated. However, percent yields greater than 100% are possible if the measured product of the reaction contains impurities that cause its mass to be greater than it actually would be if the product was pure. When a chemist synthesizes a desired chemical, he or she is always careful to purify the products of the reaction.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CC BY NC SA
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Example 6.5.3.1: Calculating the Theoretical Yield and the Percent Yield

Potassium chlorate decomposes upon slight heating in the presence of a catalyst, according to the reaction below.

$$2\mathrm{KClO_3}\,(s) \rightarrow 2\mathrm{KCl}\,(s) + 3\mathrm{O_2}\,(g)$$

In a certain experiment, $40.0\ \mathrm{g\ KClO_3}$ is heated until it completely decomposes. What is the theoretical yield of oxygen gas? The experiment is performed, the oxygen gas is collected, and its mass is found to be $14.9\ \mathrm{g}$. What is the percent yield for the reaction?

Solution

First, we will calculate the theoretical yield based on the stoichiometry.

Step 1: List the known quantities and plan the problem.

Known

- Given: Mass of $\mathrm{KClO_3} = 40.0\ \mathrm{g}$
- Molar mass $\mathrm{KClO_3} = 122.55\ \mathrm{g/mol}$
- Molar mass $\mathrm{O_2} = 32.00\ \mathrm{g/mol}$

Unknown

- theoretical yield O_2 = ? g

Apply stoichiometry to convert from the mass of a reactant to the mass of a product:

$$\mathrm{g\ KClO_3} \rightarrow \mathrm{mol\ KClO_3} \rightarrow \mathrm{mol\ O_2} \rightarrow \mathrm{g\ O_2}$$

Step 2: Solve.

$$40.0\ \mathrm{g\ KClO_3} \times \frac{1\ \mathrm{mol\ KClO_3}}{122.55\ \mathrm{g\ KClO_3}} \times \frac{3\ \mathrm{mol\ O_2}}{2\ \mathrm{mol\ KClO_3}} \times \frac{32.00\ \mathrm{g\ O_2}}{1\ \mathrm{mol\ O_2}} = 15.7\ \mathrm{g\ O_2}$$

The theoretical yield of $\mathrm{O_2}$ is $15.7\ \mathrm{g}$.

Step 3: Think about your result.

The mass of oxygen gas must be less than the $40.0\ \mathrm{g}$ of potassium chlorate that was decomposed.

Now we will use the actual yield and the theoretical yield to calculate the percent yield.

Step 1: List the known quantities and plan the problem.

Known

- Actual yield $= 14.9\ \mathrm{g}$
- Theoretical yield $= 15.7\ \mathrm{g}$

Unknown

- Percent yield = ? %

$$\mathrm{Percent\ Yield} = \frac{\mathrm{Actual\ Yield}}{\mathrm{Theoretical\ Yield}} \times 100\%$$

Use the percent yield equation above.

Step 2: Solve.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CC BY NC SA
© CK12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

$$\text{Percent Yield} = \frac{14.9\text{ g}}{15.7\text{ g}} \times 100\% = 94.9\%$$

Step 3: Think about your result.

Since the actual yield is slightly less than the theoretical yield, the percent yield is just under 100%.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Summary

- Theoretical yield is calculated based on the stoichiometry of the chemical equation.
- The actual yield is experimentally determined.
- The percent yield is determined by calculating the ratio of actual yield/theoretical yield.

Review

1. What do we need in order to calculate theoretical yield?
2. If I spill some of the product before I weigh it, how will that affect the actual yield?
3. How will spilling some of the product affect the percent yield?
4. I make a product and weigh it before it is dry. How will that affect the actual yield?

This page titled 6.5.3: Theoretical Yield and Percent Yield is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- 12.9: Theoretical Yield and Percent Yield by CK12 is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://flexbooks.ck12.org/cbook/ck-12-chemistry-flexbook-2.0/.

6.E: Introduction to Stoichiometry (Exercises)

The following questions are related to the material covered in this chapter. For additional discussion on each topic, also check the links included in each heading.

6.1: Stoichiometry

1. Think back to the pound cake recipe. What possible conversion factors can you construct relating the components of the recipe?
2. Think back to the pancake recipe. What possible conversion factors can you construct relating the components of the recipe?
3. What are all the conversion factors that can be constructed from the balanced chemical reaction:

$$2\,H_2\,(g) + O_2\,(g) \longrightarrow 2\,H_2O(\ell)? \tag{6.E.1}$$

4. What are all the conversion factors that can be constructed from the balanced chemical reaction $N_2(g) + 3H_2(g) \rightarrow 2NH_3(g)$?
5. Given the chemical equation : $Na(s) + H_2O(\ell) \rightarrow NaOH(aq) + H_2(g)$
   a. Balance the equation.
   b. How many molecules of H_2 are produced when 332 atoms of Na react?
6. Given the chemical equation: $S(s) + O_2(g) \rightarrow SO_3(g)$
   a. Balance the equation.
   b. How many molecules of O_2 are needed when 38 atoms of S react?
7. For the balanced chemical equation:

$6H^+(aq) + 2MnO_4^-(aq) + 5H_2O_2(\ell) \rightarrow 2Mn^{2+}(aq) + 5O_2(g) + 8H_2O(\ell)$

how many molecules of H_2O are produced when 75 molecules of H_2O_2 react?

8. For the balanced chemical reaction $2C_6H_6(\ell) + 15O_2(g) \rightarrow 12CO_2(g) + 6H_2O(\ell)$

   how many molecules of CO_2 are produced when 56 molecules of C_6H_6 react?

9. Given the balanced chemical equation $Fe_2O_3(s) + 3SO_3(g) \rightarrow Fe_2(SO_4)_3$

   how many molecules of $Fe_2(SO_4)_3$ are produced if 321 atoms of S are reacted?

10. For the balanced chemical equation $CuO(s) + H_2S(g) \rightarrow CuS + H_2O(\ell)$

    how many molecules of CuS are formed if 9,044 atoms of H react?

11. For the balanced chemical equation $Fe_2O_3(s) + 3SO_3(g) \rightarrow Fe_2(SO_4)_3$

    suppose we need to make 145,000 molecules of $Fe_2(SO_4)_3$. How many molecules of SO_3 do we need?

12. One way to make sulfur hexafluoride is to react thioformaldehyde, CH_2S, with elemental fluorine:

$CH_2S + 6F_2 \rightarrow CF_4 + 2HF + SF_6$

If 45,750 molecules of SF_6 are needed, how many molecules of F_2 are required?

13. Construct the three independent conversion factors possible for these two reactions:
    a. $2H_2 + O_2 \rightarrow 2H_2O$
    b. $H_2 + O_2 \rightarrow H_2O_2$

Why are the ratios between H_2 and O_2 different?

The conversion factors are different because the stoichiometries of the balanced chemical reactions are different.

14. Construct the three independent conversion factors possible for these two reactions:
    a. $2Na + Cl_2 \rightarrow 2NaCl$
    b. $4Na + 2Cl_2 \rightarrow 4NaCl$

What similarities, if any, exist in the conversion factors from these two reactions?

Answers

1. $$\frac{1\,pound\,butter}{1\,pound\,flour} \tag{6.E.2}$$

   or

   $$\frac{1\,pound\,sugar}{1\,pound\,eggs} \tag{6.E.3}$$

   are two conversion factors that can be constructed from the pound cake recipe. Other conversion factors are also possible.
2.
3. $$\frac{2\,molecules\,H_2}{1\,molecule\,O_2} \tag{6.E.4}$$

   ,

   $$\frac{1\,molecule\,O_2}{2\,molecules\,H_2O} \tag{6.E.5}$$

   ,

   $$\frac{2\,molecules\,H_2}{2\,molecules\,H_2O} \tag{6.E.6}$$

   and their reciprocals are the conversion factors that can be constructed.
4.
5. a. $2Na(s) + 2H_2O(\ell) \rightarrow 2NaOH(aq) + H_2(g)$
   b. 166 molecules
6.
7. 120 molecules
8.
9. 107 molecules
10.
11. 435,000 molecules
12.
13. a. $$\frac{2\,molecules\,H_2}{1\,molecule\,O_2}, \frac{1\,molecule\,O_2}{2\,molecules\,H_2O}, \frac{2\,molecules\,H_2}{2\,molecules\,H_2O} \tag{6.E.7}$$
    b. $$\frac{1\,molecules\,H_2}{1\,molecule\,O_2}, \frac{1\,molecule\,O_2}{2\,molecules\,H_2O_2}, \frac{1\,molecule\,H_2}{1\,molecule\,H_2O_2} \tag{6.E.8}$$

6.2: The Mole

1. How many atoms are present in 4.55 mol of Fe?
2. How many atoms are present in 0.0665 mol of K?
3. How many molecules are present in 2.509 mol of H_2S?
4. How many molecules are present in 0.336 mol of acetylene (C_2H_2)?
5. How many moles are present in 3.55×10^{24} Pb atoms?
6. How many moles are present in 2.09×10^{22} Ti atoms?
7. How many moles are present in 1.00×10^{23} PF_3 molecules?

8. How many moles are present in 5.52×10^{25} penicillin molecules?
9. Determine the molar mass of each substance.
    a. Si
    b. SiH_4
    c. K_2O
10. Determine the molar mass of each substance.
    a. Cl_2
    b. $SeCl_2$
    c. $Ca(C_2H_3O_2)_2$
11. Determine the molar mass of each substance.
    a. Al
    b. Al_2O_3
    c. $CoCl_3$
12. Determine the molar mass of each substance.
    a. O_3
    b. NaI
    c. $C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$
13. What is the mass of 4.44 mol of Rb?
14. What is the mass of 0.311 mol of Xe?
15. What is the mass of 12.34 mol of $Al_2(SO_4)_3$?
16. What is the mass of 0.0656 mol of $PbCl_2$?
17. How many moles are present in 45.6 g of CO?
18. How many moles are present in 0.00339 g of LiF?
19. How many moles are present in 1.223 g of SF_6?
20. How many moles are present in 48.8 g of $BaCO_3$?
21. How many moles are present in 54.8 mL of mercury if the density of mercury is 13.6 g/mL?
22. How many moles are present in 56.83 mL of O_2 if the density of O_2 is 0.00133 g/mL?

Answers

1. 2.74×10^{24} atoms
2.
3. 1.511×10^{24} molecules
4.
5. 5.90 mol
6.
7. 0.166 mol
8.
9. a. 28.086 g
    b. 32.118 g
    c. 94.195 g
10.
11. a. 26.981 g
    b. 101.959 g
    c. 165.292 g
12.
13. 379 g
14.
15. 4,222 g
16.

17. 1.63 mol
18.
19. 0.00837 4 mol
20.
21. 3.72 mol

6.3: The Mole in Chemical Reactions

1. Express in mole terms what this chemical equation means: $CH_4 + 2O_2 \rightarrow CO_2 + 2H_2O$
2. Express in mole terms what this chemical equation means. $Na_2CO_3 + 2HCl \rightarrow 2NaCl + H_2O + CO_2$
3. How many molecules of each substance are involved in the equation in Exercise 1 if it is interpreted in terms of moles?
4. How many molecules of each substance are involved in the equation in Exercise 2 if it is interpreted in terms of moles?
5. For the chemical equation $2C_2H_6 + 7O_2 \rightarrow 4CO_2 + 6H_2O$

   what equivalents can you write in terms of moles? Use the $\Leftrightarrow$ sign.

6. For the chemical equation $2Al + 3Cl_2 \rightarrow 2AlCl_3$

   what equivalents can you write in terms of moles? Use the $\Leftrightarrow$ sign.

7. Write the balanced chemical reaction for the combustion of C_5H_{12} (the products are CO_2 and H_2O) and determine how many moles of H_2O are formed when 5.8 mol of O_2 are reacted.
8. Write the balanced chemical reaction for the formation of $Fe_2(SO_4)_3$ from Fe_2O_3 and SO_3 and determine how many moles of $Fe_2(SO_4)_3$ are formed when 12.7 mol of SO_3 are reacted.
9. For the balanced chemical equation $3Cu(s) + 2NO_3^-(aq) + 8H^+(aq) \rightarrow 3Cu^{2+}(aq) + 4H_2O(\ell) + 2NO(g)$

   how many moles of Cu^{2+} are formed when 55.7 mol of H^+ are reacted?

10. For the balanced chemical equation $Al(s) + 3Ag^+(aq) \rightarrow Al^{3+}(aq) + 3Ag(s)$

    how many moles of Ag are produced when 0.661 mol of Al are reacted?

11. For the balanced chemical reaction $4NH_3(g) + 5O_2(g) \rightarrow 4NO(g) + 6H_2O(\ell)$

    how many moles of H_2O are produced when 0.669 mol of NH_3 react?

12. For the balanced chemical reaction $4NaOH(aq) + 2S(s) + 3O_2(g) \rightarrow 2Na_2SO_4(aq) + 2H_2O(\ell)$

    how many moles of Na_2SO_4 are formed when 1.22 mol of O_2 react?

13. For the balanced chemical reaction $4KO_2(s) + 2CO_2(g) \rightarrow 2K_2CO_3(s) + 3O_2(g)$

    determine the number of moles of both products formed when 6.88 mol of KO_2 react.

14. For the balanced chemical reaction

$2AlCl_3 + 3H_2O(\ell) \rightarrow Al_2O_3 + 6HCl(g)$
determine the number of moles of both products formed when 0.0552 mol of $AlCl_3$ react.

Answers

1. One mole of CH_4 reacts with 2 mol of O_2 to make 1 mol of CO_2 and 2 mol of H_2O.
2.
3. 6.022×10^{23} molecules of CH_4, 1.2044×10^{24} molecules of O_2, 6.022×10^{23} molecules of CO_2, and 1.2044×10^{24}

molecules of H_2O

4.

5. 2 mol of C_2H_6 ⇔ 7 mol of O_2 ⇔ 4 mol of CO_2 ⇔ 6 mol of H_2O

6.

7. $C_5H_{12} + 8O_2 \rightarrow 5CO_2 + 6H_2O$; 4.4 mol

8.

9. 20.9 mol

10.

11. 1.00 mol

12.

13. 3.44 mol of K_2CO_3; 5.16 mol of O_2

6.4: Mole-Mass and Mass-Mass Calculations

1. What mass of CO_2 is produced by the combustion of 1.00 mol of CH_4?$CH_4(g) + 2O_2(g) \rightarrow CO_2(g) + 2H_2O(\ell)$
2. What mass of H_2O is produced by the combustion of 1.00 mol of CH_4? $CH_4(g) + 2O_2(g) \rightarrow CO_2(g) + 2H_2O(\ell)$
3. What mass of HgO is required to produce 0.692 mol of O_2? $2HgO(s) \rightarrow 2Hg(\ell) + O_2(g)$
4. What mass of $NaHCO_3$ is needed to produce 2.659 mol of CO_2? $2NaHCO_3(s) \rightarrow Na_2CO_3(s) + H_2O(\ell) + CO_2(g)$
5. How many moles of Al can be produced from 10.87 g of Ag? $Al(NO_3)\ 3(s) + 3Ag \rightarrow Al + 3AgNO_3$
6. How many moles of HCl can be produced from 0.226 g of $SOCl_2$? $SOCl_2(\ell) + H_2O(\ell) \rightarrow SO_2(g) + 2HCl(g)$
7. How many moles of O_2 are needed to prepare 1.00 g of $Ca(NO_3)_2$? $Ca(s) + N_2(g) + 3O_2(g) \rightarrow Ca(NO_3)\ _2(s)$
8. How many moles of C_2H_5OH are needed to generate 106.7 g of H_2O? $C_2H_5OH(\ell) + 3O_2(g) \rightarrow 2CO_2(g) + 3H_2O(\ell)$
9. What mass of O_2 can be generated by the decomposition of 100.0 g of $NaClO_3$? $2NaClO_3 \rightarrow 2NaCl(s) + 3O_2(g)$
10. What mass of Li_2O is needed to react with 1,060 g of CO_2? $Li_2O(aq) + CO_2(g) \rightarrow Li_2CO_3(aq)$
11. What mass of Fe_2O_3 must be reacted to generate 324 g of Al_2O_3? $Fe_2O_3(s) + 2Al(s) \rightarrow 2Fe(s) + Al_2O_3(s)$
12. What mass of Fe is generated when 100.0 g of Al are reacted? $Fe_2O_3(s) + 2Al(s) \rightarrow 2Fe(s) + Al_2O_3(s)$
13. What mass of MnO_2 is produced when 445 g of H_2O are reacted? $H_2O(\ell) + 2MnO_4^-(aq) + Br^-(aq) \rightarrow BrO_3^-(aq) + 2MnO_2(s) + 2OH^-(aq)$
14. What mass of $PbSO_4$ is produced when 29.6 g of H_2SO_4 are reacted? $Pb(s) + PbO_2(s) + 2H_2SO_4(aq) \rightarrow 2PbSO_4(s) + 2H_2O(\ell)$
15. If 83.9 g of ZnO are formed, what mass of Mn_2O_3 is formed with it? $Zn(s) + 2MnO_2(s) \rightarrow ZnO(s) + Mn_2O_3(s)$
16. If 14.7 g of NO_2 are reacted, what mass of H_2O is reacted with it? $3NO_2(g) + H_2O(\ell) \rightarrow 2HNO_3(aq) + NO(g)$
17. If 88.4 g of CH_2S are reacted, what mass of HF is produced? $CH_2S + 6F_2 \rightarrow CF_4 + 2HF + SF_6$
18. If 100.0 g of Cl_2 are needed, what mass of NaOCl must be reacted?

    $NaOCl + HCl \rightarrow NaOH + Cl_2$

Answers

1. 44.0 g
2.
3. 3.00×10^2 g

4.

5. 0.0336 mol

6.

7. 0.0183 mol

8.

9. 45.1 g

10.

11. 507 g

12.

13. 4.30×10^3 g

14.

15. 163 g

16.

17. 76.7 g

6.5: Yields

1. What is the difference between the theoretical yield and the actual yield?
2. What is the difference between the actual yield and the percent yield?
3. A worker isolates 2.675 g of SiF_4 after reacting 2.339 g of SiO_2 with HF. What are the theoretical yield and the actual yield? $SiO_2(s) + 4HF(g) \rightarrow SiF_4(g) + 2H_2O(\ell)$
4. A worker synthesizes aspirin, $C_9H_8O_4$, according to this chemical equation. If 12.66 g of $C_7H_6O_3$ are reacted and 12.03 g of aspirin are isolated, what are the theoretical yield and the actual yield? $C_7H_6O_3 + C_4H_6O_3 \rightarrow C_9H_8O_4 + HC_2H_3O_2$
5. A chemist decomposes 1.006 g of $NaHCO_3$ and obtains 0.0334 g of Na_2CO_3. What are the theoretical yield and the actual yield? $2NaHCO_3(s) \rightarrow Na_2CO_3(s) + H_2O(\ell) + CO_2(g)$
6. A chemist combusts a 3.009 g sample of C_5H_{12} and obtains 3.774 g of H_2O. What are the theoretical yield and the actual yield? $C_5H_{12}(\ell) + 8O_2(g) \rightarrow 5CO_2 + 6H_2O(\ell)$
7. What is the percent yield in Exercise 3?
8. What is the percent yield in Exercise 4?
9. What is the percent yield in Exercise 5?
10. What is the percent yield in Exercise 6?

Answers

1. Theoretical yield is what you expect stoichiometrically from a chemical reaction; actual yield is what you actually get from a chemical reaction.
2.

3. theoretical yield = 4.052 g; actual yield = 2.675 g

4.

5. theoretical yield = 0.635 g; actual yield = 0.0334 g

6.

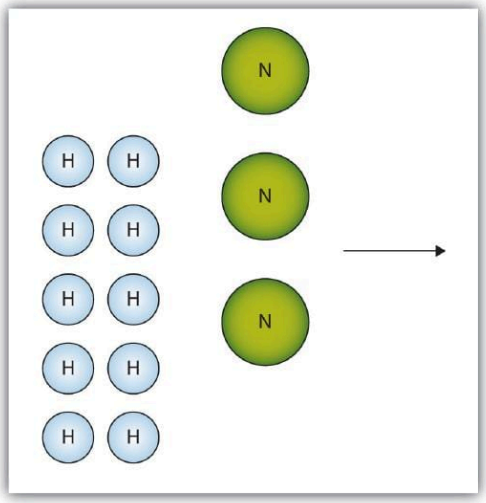
7. 66.02%

8.

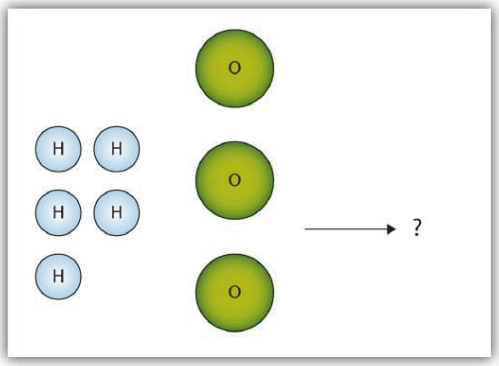
9. 5.26%

6.6: Limiting Reagents

1. The box below shows a group of nitrogen and hydrogen molecules that will react to produce ammonia, NH_3. What is the limiting reagent?



2. The box below shows a group of hydrogen and oxygen molecules that will react to produce water, H_2O. What is the limiting reagent?



3. Given the statement "20.0 g of methane is burned in excess oxygen," is it obvious which reactant is the limiting reagent?
4. Given the statement "the metal is heated in the presence of excess hydrogen," is it obvious which substance is the limiting reagent despite not specifying any quantity of reactant?
5. Acetylene (C_2H_2) is formed by reacting 7.08 g of C and 4.92 g of H_2. $2C(s) + H_2(g) \rightarrow C_2H_2(g)$

   What is the limiting reagent? How much of the other reactant is in excess?

6. Ethane (C_2H_6) is formed by reacting 7.08 g of C and 4.92 g of H_2. $2C(s) + 3H_2(g) \rightarrow C_2H_6(g)$

   What is the limiting reagent? How much of the other reactant is in excess?

7. Given the initial amounts listed, what is the limiting reagent, and how much of the other reactant is in excess?

$$\underset{35.6\ g}{P_4O_6(s)} + 6\underset{4.77\ g}{H_2O(l)} \rightarrow 4H_3PO_4 \tag{6.E.9}$$

8. Given the initial amounts listed, what is the limiting reagent, and how much of the other reactant is in excess?

$$\underset{377\ g}{3NO_2(g)} + \underset{244\ g}{H_2O(l)} \rightarrow 2HNO_3(aq) + NO(g) \tag{6.E.10}$$

9. To form the precipitate PbCl2, 2.88 g of NaCl and 7.21 g of Pb(NO3)2 are mixed in solution. How much precipitate is formed? How much of which reactant is in excess?

10. In a neutralization reaction, 18.06 g of KOH are reacted with 13.43 g of HNO3. What mass of H2O is produced, and what mass of which reactant is in excess?

Answers

1. Nitrogen is the limiting reagent.
2.
3. Yes; methane is the limiting reagent.
4.
5. C is the limiting reagent; 4.33 g of H2 are left over.
6.
7. H2O is the limiting reagent; 25.9 g of P4O6 are left over.
8.
9. 6.06 g of PbCl2 are formed; 0.33 g of NaCl is left over.

6.7: Additional Exercises

1. How many molecules of O2 will react with 6.022×10^{23} molecules of H2 to make water? The reaction is 2H2(g) + O2(g) → 2H2O(ℓ).
2. How many molecules of H2 will react with 6.022×10^{23} molecules of N2 to make ammonia? The reaction is N2(g) + 3H2(g) → 2NH3(g).
3. How many moles are present in 6.411 kg of CO2? How many molecules is this?
4. How many moles are present in 2.998 mg of SCl4? How many molecules is this?
5. What is the mass in milligrams of 7.22×10^{20} molecules of CO2?
6. What is the mass in kilograms of 3.408×10^{25} molecules of SiS2?
7. What is the mass in grams of 1 molecule of H2O?
8. What is the mass in grams of 1 atom of Al?
9. What is the volume of 3.44 mol of Ga if the density of Ga is 6.08 g/mL?
10. What is the volume of 0.662 mol of He if the density of He is 0.1785 g/L?
11. For the chemical reaction 2C4H10(g) + 13O2(g) → 8CO2(g) + 10H2O(ℓ)

    assume that 13.4 g of C4H10 reacts completely to products. The density of CO2 is 1.96 g/L. What volume in liters of CO2 is produced?

12. For the chemical reaction 2GaCl3(s) + 3H2(g) → 2Ga(ℓ) + 6HCl(g)

if 223 g of $GaCl_3$ reacts completely to products and the density of Ga is 6.00 g/mL, what volume in milliliters of Ga is produced?

13. Calculate the mass of each product when 100.0 g of CuCl react according to the reaction $2CuCl(aq) \rightarrow CuCl_2(aq) + Cu(s)$

    What do you notice about the sum of the masses of the products? What concept is being illustrated here?

14. Calculate the mass of each product when 500.0 g of $SnCl_2$ react according to the reaction $2SnCl_2(aq) \rightarrow SnCl_4(aq) + Sn(s)$

    What do you notice about the sum of the masses of the products? What concept is being illustrated here?

15. What mass of CO_2 is produced from the combustion of 1 gal of gasoline? The chemical formula of gasoline can be approximated as C_8H_{18}. Assume that there are 2,801 g of gasoline per gallon.
16. What mass of H_2O is produced from the combustion of 1 gal of gasoline? The chemical formula of gasoline can be approximated as C_8H_{18}. Assume that there are 2,801 g of gasoline per gallon.
17. A chemical reaction has a theoretical yield of 19.98 g and a percent yield of 88.40%. What is the actual yield?
18. A chemical reaction has an actual yield of 19.98 g and a percent yield of 88.40%. What is the theoretical yield?

19. Given the initial amounts listed, what is the limiting reagent, and how much of the other reactants are in excess?

$$\underset{35.0\ g}{P_4} + 3\underset{12.7\ g}{NaOH} + 3\underset{9.33\ g}{H_2O} \rightarrow 2Na_2HPO_4 + PH_3 \tag{6.E.11}$$

20. Given the initial amounts listed, what is the limiting reagent, and how much of the other reactants are in excess?

$$2\underset{46.3\ g}{NaCrO_2} + 3\underset{88.2\ g}{NaBrO_4} + 2\underset{32.5\ g}{NaOH} \rightarrow 3NaBrO_3 + 2Na_2CrO_4 + H_2O \tag{6.E.12}$$

21. Verify that it does not matter which product you use to predict the limiting reagent by using both products in this combustion reaction to determine the limiting reagent and the amount of the reactant in excess. Initial amounts of each reactant are given.

$$\underset{26.3\ g}{C_3H_8} + 5\underset{21.8\ g}{O_2} \rightarrow 3CO_2(g) + 4H_2O(l) \tag{6.E.13}$$

22. Just in case you suspect Exercise 21 is rigged, do it for another chemical reaction and verify that it does not matter which product you use to predict the limiting reagent by using both products in this combustion reaction to determine the limiting reagent and the amount of the reactant in excess. Initial amounts of each reactant are given.

$$2\underset{35.0\ g}{P_4} + 6\underset{12.7\ g}{NaOH} + 6\underset{9.33\ g}{H_2O} \rightarrow 3Na_2HPO_4 + 5PH_3 \tag{6.E.14}$$

1. 1.2044×10^{24} molecules
2.
3. 145.7 mol; 8.77×10^{25} molecules
4.
5. 52.8 mg
6.
7. 2.99×10^{-23} g
8.
9. 39.4 mL

10.

11. 20.7 L

12.

13. 67.91 g of $CuCl_2$; 32.09 g of Cu. The two masses add to 100.0 g, the initial amount of starting material, demonstrating the law of conservation of matter.

14.

15. 8,632 g

16.

17. 17.66 g

18.

19. The limiting reagent is NaOH; 21.9 g of P_4 and 3.61 g of H_2O are left over.

20.

21. Both products predict that O_2 is the limiting reagent; 20.3 g of C_3H_8 are left over.

This page titled 6.E: Introduction to Stoichiometry (Exercises) is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

7: ELECTRONS AND CHEMICAL BONDING

7.1: Light is Visible Electromagnetic Radiation

7.1.1: The Electromagnetic Spectrum

7.2: Models of Electron Behavior

7.2.1: The Bohr Model - Atoms with Orbits

7.2.2: The Quantum-Mechanical Model- Atoms with Orbitals

7.3: Quantum-Mechanical Orbitals and Electron Configurations

7.4: Electron Configurations and the Periodic Table

7.4.1: The Explanatory Power of the Quantum-Mechanical Model

7.5: The Octet Rule

7.5.1: Representing Valence Electrons with Dots

7.5.2: Lewis Structures of Ionic Compounds- Electrons Transferred

7.5.3: Covalent Lewis Structures- Electrons Shared

7.6: Writing Lewis Structures for Covalent Compounds

7.6.1: Resonance - Equivalent Lewis Structures for the Same Molecule

7.6.2: Exceptions to the Octet Rule

7.7: Predicting the Shapes of Molecules

7.8: Electronegativity and Polarity

7.E: Electrons and Chemical Bonds (Exercises)

Template:HideTOC

This page titled 7: Electrons and Chemical Bonding is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

7.1: LIGHT IS VISIBLE ELECTROMAGNETIC RADIATION

Learning Objectives

- Define the terms wavelength and frequency with respect to wave-form energy.
- State the relationship between wavelength and frequency with respect to electromagnetic radiation.

During the summer, almost everyone enjoys going to the beach. Beach-goers can swim, have picnics, and work on their tans. But if a person gets too much sun, they can burn. A particular set of solar wavelengths are especially harmful to the skin. This portion of the solar spectrum is known as UV B, with wavelengths of $280\text{-}320\ \text{nm}$. Sunscreens are effective in protecting skin against both the immediate skin damage and the long-term possibility of skin cancer.

Waves

Waves are characterized by their repetitive motion. Imagine a toy boat riding the waves in a wave pool. As the water wave passes under the boat, it moves up and down in a regular and repeated fashion. While the wave travels horizontally, the boat only travels vertically up and down. The figure below shows two examples of waves.

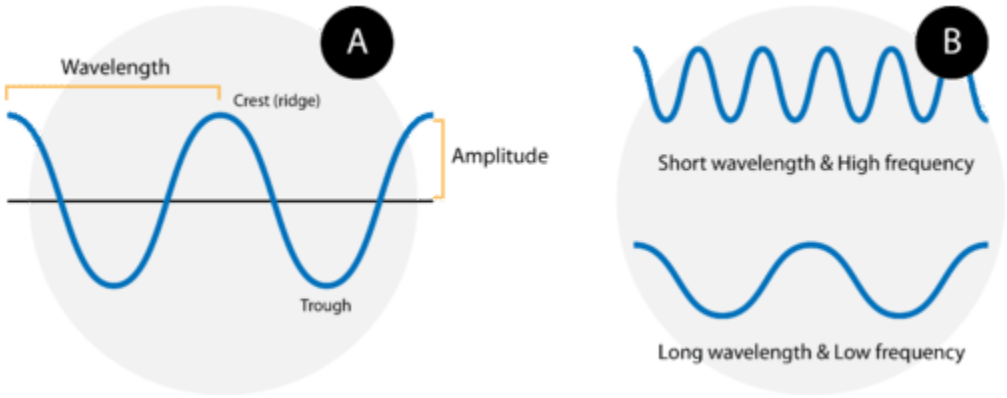


Figure 7.1.1: (A) A wave consists of alternation crests and troughs. The wavelength (λ) is defined as the distance between any two consecutive identical points on the waveform. The amplitude is the height of the wave. (B) A wave with a short wavelength (top) has a high frequency because more waves pass a given point in a certain amount of time. A wave with a longer wavelength (bottom) has a lower frequency.

A wave cycle consists of one complete wave—starting at the zero point, going up to a wave **crest**, going back down to a wave **trough**, and back to the zero point again. The **wavelength** of a wave is the distance between any two corresponding points on adjacent waves. It is easiest to visualize the wavelength of a wave as the distance from one wave crest to the next. In an equation, wavelength is represented by the Greek letter lambda (λ). Depending on the type of wave, wavelength can be measured in meters, centimeters, or nanometers $\left(1\ \text{m} = 10^9\ \text{nm}\right)$. The **frequency**, represented by the Greek letter nu (ν), is the number of waves that pass a certain point in a specified amount of time. Typically, frequency is measured in units of cycles per second or waves per second. One wave per second is also called a Hertz (Hz) and in SI units is a reciprocal second $\left(\text{s}^{-1}\right)$.

Figure B above shows an important relationship between the wavelength and frequency of a wave. The top wave clearly has a shorter wavelength than the second wave. However, if you picture yourself at a stationary point watching these waves pass by, more waves of the first kind would pass by in a given amount of time. Thus the frequency of the first wave is greater than that of the second wave. Wavelength and frequency are therefore inversely related. As the wavelength of a wave increases, its frequency decreases. The equation that relates the two is:

$$c = \lambda\nu$$

The variable c is the speed of light. For the relationship to hold mathematically, if the speed of light is used in m/s, the wavelength must be in meters and the frequency in Hertz.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Example 7.1.1: Orange Light

The color orange within the visible light spectrum has a wavelength of about $620\ \text{nm}$. What is the frequency of orange light?

Solution

Solutions to Example 9.2.1

Steps for Problem Solving	Example 7.1.1
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given : • Wavelength $(\lambda) = 620\ \text{nm}$ • Speed of light $(c) = 3.00 \times 10^8\ \text{m/s}$ Find: Frequency (Hz)
List other known quantities.	$1\ \text{m} = 10^9\ \text{nm}$
Identify steps to get the final answer.	1.Convert the wavelength to m. 2. Apply the equation $c = \lambda\nu$ and solve for frequency. Dividing both sides of the equation by λ yields: $\nu = \frac{c}{\lambda}$
Cancel units and calculate.	$620\ \text{nm} \times \left(\frac{1\ \text{m}}{10^9\ \text{nm}}\right) = 6.20 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{m}$ $\nu = \frac{c}{\lambda} = \frac{3.0 \times 10^8\ \text{m/s}}{6.20 \times 10^{-7}} = 4.8 \times 10^{14}\ \text{Hz}$
Think about your result.	The value for the frequency falls within the range for visible light.

Exercise 7.1.1

What is the wavelength of light if its frequency is $1.55 \times 10^{10}\ \text{s}^{-1}$?

Answer available at the end of this section.

Summary

All waves can be defined in terms of their frequency and intensity. $c = \lambda\nu$ expresses the relationship between wavelength and frequency.

Answers

Exercise 7.1.1

0.0194 m, or 19.4 mm

7.1.1: The Electromagnetic Spectrum

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CC BY NC SA
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

This page titled 7.1: Light is Visible Electromagnetic Radiation is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 9.2: Light- Electromagnetic Radiation by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

7.1.1: The Electromagnetic Spectrum

Learning Objectives

- Know the properties of different types of electromagnetic radiation.

Electromagnetic waves have an extremely wide range of wavelengths, frequencies, and energies. The highest energy form of electromagnetic waves are gamma (γ) rays and the lowest energy form are radio waves.

The figure below shows the **electromagnetic spectrum**, which is all forms of electromagnetic radiation. On the far left of Figure 7.1.1.1 are the highest energy electromagnetic waves. These are called **gamma rays** and can be quite dangerous, in large numbers, to living systems. The next lower energy form of electromagnetic waves are called **x-rays**. Most of you are familiar with the penetration abilities of these waves. They can also be dangerous to living systems. Humans are advised to limit as much as possible the number of medical x-rays they have per year. Next lower, in energy, are **ultraviolet rays**. These rays are part of sunlight and the upper end of the ultraviolet range can cause sunburn and perhaps skin cancer. The tiny section next in the spectrum is the **visible range of light**. The visible light spectrum has been greatly expanded in the bottom half of the figure so that it can be discussed in more detail. The visible range of electromagnetic radiation are the frequencies to which the human eye responds. Lower in the spectrum are infrared rays and radio waves.

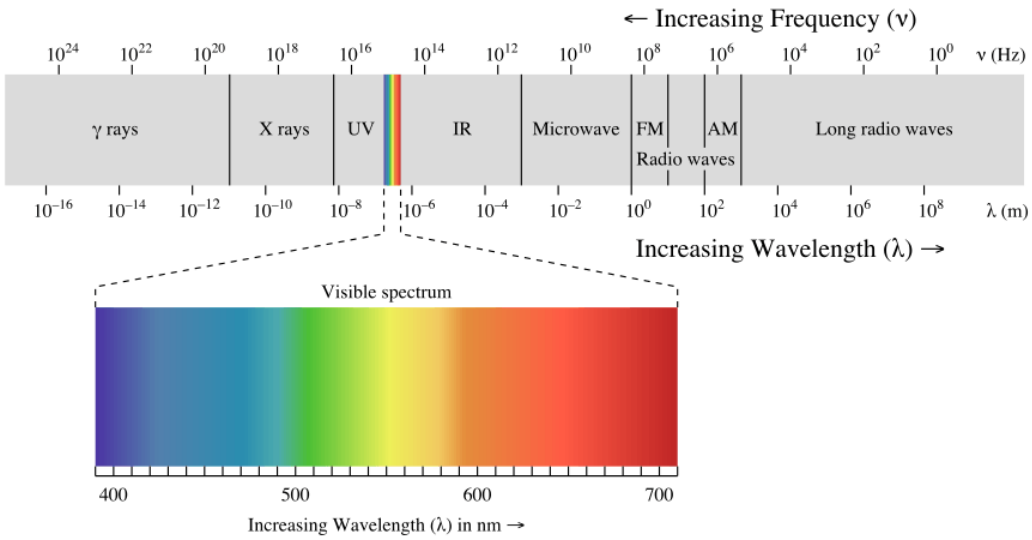


Figure 7.1.1.1: The electromagnetic spectrum, with its various regions labeled. The borders of each region are approximate. (CC BY-NC-SA; anonymous by request).

The light energies that are in the visible range are electromagnetic waves that cause the human eye to respond when those frequencies enter the eye. The eye sends a signal to the brain and the individual "sees" various colors. The highest energy waves in the visible region cause the brain to see violet and as the energy decreases, the colors change to blue, green, yellow, orange, and red. When the energy of the wave is above or below the visible range, the eye does not respond to them. When the eye receives several different frequencies at the same time, the colors are blended by the brain. If all frequencies of light strike the eye together, the brain sees white. If there are no visible frequencies striking the eye, the brain sees black. The objects that you see around you are light absorbers—that is, the chemicals on the surface of the object will absorb certain frequencies and not others. Your eyes detect the frequencies that strike your eye. Therefore, if your friend is wearing a red shirt, it means the dye in that shirt absorbs every frequency except red and the red frequencies are reflected. If your only light source was one exact frequency of blue light and you shined it on a shirt that was red in sunlight, the shirt would appear black because no light would be reflected. The light from fluorescent types of lights do not contain all the frequencies of sunlight and so clothes inside a store may appear to be a slightly different color when you get them home.

Summary

- Electromagnetic radiation has a wide spectrum, including gamma rays, X-rays, UV rays, visible light, IR radiation, microwaves, and radio waves.
- The different colors of light differ in their frequencies (or wavelengths).

This page titled 7.1.1: The Electromagnetic Spectrum is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 9.3: The Electromagnetic Spectrum by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

7.2: MODELS OF ELECTRON BEHAVIOR

Scientists observed the ways in which light interacted with matter and proposed models to try to explain this behavior. Much of this behavior was very unexpected and sometimes appeared to defy logic. There were many intense arguments among the scientists about which models were correct and how to interpret their meaning. Some of these arguments are still unresolved. Creating these models required a lot of detailed math which we will not get into in this textbook. However, we will provide a brief overview of some of the highlights of these models within this section. In the following sections, we will show how these models predict electron behavior and thereby the chemical bonding behaviors of atoms.

7.2.1: The Bohr Model - Atoms with Orbits

7.2.2: The Quantum-Mechanical Model- Atoms with Orbitals

This page titled 7.2: Models of Electron Behavior is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

7.2.1: The Bohr Model - Atoms with Orbits

Learning Objectives

- Define an energy level in terms of the Bohr model.
- Discuss how the Bohr model can be used to explain atomic spectra.

Electric light bulbs contain a very thin wire in them that emits light when heated. The wire is called a filament. The particular wire used in light bulbs is made of tungsten. A wire made of any metal would emit light under these circumstances, but tungsten was chosen because the light it emits contains virtually every frequency and therefore, the light emitted by tungsten appears white. A wire made of some other element would emit light of some color that was not convenient for our uses. Every element emits light when energized by heating or passing electric current through it. Elements in solid form begin to glow when they are heated sufficiently, and elements in gaseous form emit light when electricity passes through them. This is the source of light emitted by neon signs and is also the source of light in a fire.



Figure 7.2.1.1: Human/Need/Desire. Neon sculpture by Bruce Nauman (1983), who has been characterized as a conceptual artist.

Each Element Has a Unique Spectrum

The light frequencies emitted by atoms are mixed together by our eyes so that we see a blended color. Several physicists, including Angstrom in 1868 and Balmer in 1875, passed the light from energized atoms through glass prisms in such a way that the light was spread out so they could see the individual frequencies that made up the light. The **emission spectrum** (or **atomic spectrum**) of a chemical element is the unique pattern of light obtained when the element is subjected to heat or electricity.



Figure 7.2.1.2: Atomic Emission Spectrum of Hydrogen.

When hydrogen gas is placed into a tube and electric current passed through it, the color of emitted light is pink. But when the color is spread out, we see that the hydrogen spectrum is composed of four individual frequencies. The pink color of the tube is the result of our eyes blending the four colors. Every atom has its own characteristic spectrum; no two atomic spectra are alike. The image below shows the emission spectrum of iron. Because each element has a unique emission spectrum, elements can be

defined using them.

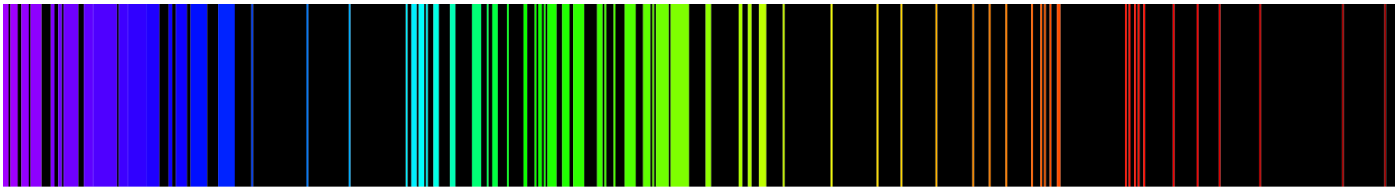


Figure 7.2.1.3: Atomic Emission Spectrum of Iron.

You may have heard or read about scientists discussing what elements are present in the sun or some more distant star, and after hearing that, wondered how scientists could know what elements were present in a place no one has ever been. Scientists determine what elements are present in distant stars by analyzing the light that comes from stars and finding the atomic spectrum of elements in that light. If the exact four lines that compose hydrogen's atomic spectrum are present in the light emitted from the star, that element contains hydrogen.

Bohr's Model of the Atom

By 1913, the concept of the atom had evolved from Dalton's indivisible spheres idea, to J. J. Thomson's plum pudding model, and then to Rutherford's nuclear atom theory. Rutherford, in addition to carrying out the brilliant experiment that demonstrated the presence of the atomic nucleus, also proposed that the electrons circled the nucleus in a planetary type motion. The solar system or planetary model of the atom was attractive to scientists because it was similar to something with which they were already familiar, namely the solar system.



Figure 7.2.1.3: Niels Bohr with Albert Einstein at Paul Ehrenfest's home in Leiden (December 1925).

Unfortunately, there was a serious flaw in the planetary model. It was already known that when a charged particle (such as an electron) moves in a curved path, it gives off some form of light and loses energy in doing so. This is, after all, how we produce TV signals. If the electron circling the nucleus in an atom loses energy, it would necessarily have to move closer to the nucleus as it loses energy, and would eventually crash into the nucleus. Furthermore, Rutherford's model was unable to describe how electrons give off light forming each element's unique atomic spectrum. These difficulties cast a shadow on the planetary model and indicated that, eventually, it would have to be replaced.

In 1913, the Danish physicist Niels Bohr proposed a model of the electron cloud of an atom in which electrons orbit the nucleus and were able to produce atomic spectra. Understanding Bohr's model requires some knowledge of electromagnetic radiation (or light).

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CC BY NC SA
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Energy Levels

Bohr's key idea in his model of the atom is that electrons occupy definite orbitals that require the electron to have a specific amount of energy. In order for an electron to be in the electron cloud of an atom, it must be in one of the allowable orbitals and it must have the precise energy required for that orbit. Orbits closer to the nucleus would require smaller amounts of energy for an electron, and orbits farther from the nucleus would require the electron to have a greater amount of energy. The possible orbits are known as **energy levels**. One of the weaknesses of Bohr's model was that he could not offer a reason why only certain energy levels or orbits were allowed.

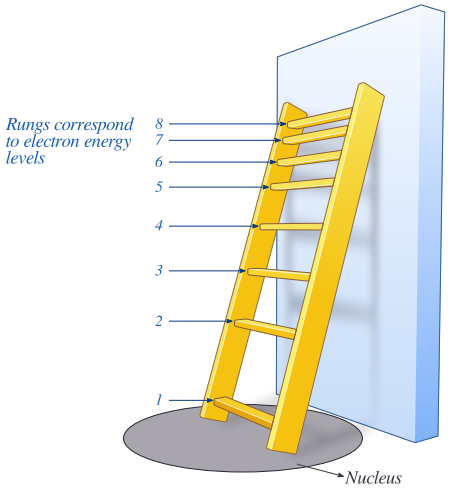


Figure 7.2.1.4: The energy levels of the electrons can be viewed as rungs on a ladder. Note that the spacing between rungs gets smaller at higher energies (CC BY-NC; Ümit Kaya)

Bohr hypothesized that the only way electrons could gain or lose energy would be to move from one energy level to another, thus gaining or losing precise amounts of energy. The energy levels are **quantized**, meaning that only specific amounts are possible. It would be like a ladder that had rungs only at certain heights. The only way you can be on that ladder is to be on one of the rungs, and the only way you could move up or down would be to move to one of the other rungs. Suppose we had such a ladder with 10 rungs. Other rules for the ladder are that only one person can be on a rung in the normal state, and the ladder occupants must be on the lowest rung available. If the ladder had five people on it, they would be on the lowest five rungs. In this situation, no person could move down because all of the lower rungs are full. Bohr worked out rules for the maximum number of electrons that could be in each energy level in his model, and required that an atom in its normal state (ground state) had all electrons in the lowest energy levels available. Under these circumstances, no electron could lose energy because no electron could move down to a lower energy level. In this way, Bohr's model explained why electrons circling the nucleus did not emit energy and spiral into the nucleus.

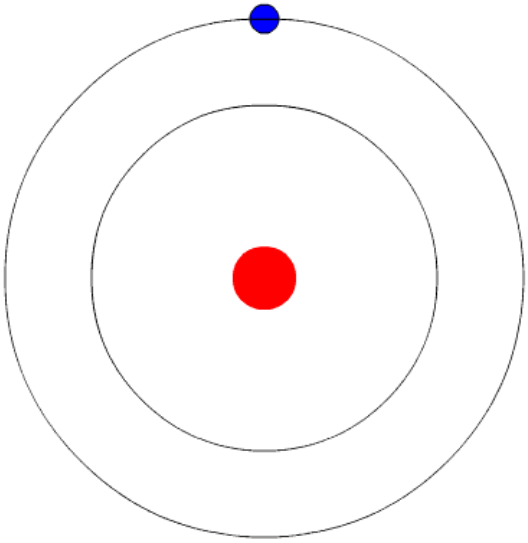


Figure 7.2.1.5: In Bohr's Model of the atom, electrons absorb energy to move to a higher level and release energy to move to lower levels. (CC BY-SA 3.0; Kurzon).

Bohr's Model and Atomic Spectra

The evidence used to support Bohr's model came from the atomic spectra. He suggested that an atomic spectrum is made by the electrons in an atom moving energy levels. The electrons typically have the lowest energy possible, called the **ground state**. If the electrons are given energy (through heat, electricity, light, etc.) the electrons in an atom could absorb energy by jumping to a higher energy level, or **excited state**. The electrons then give off the energy in the form of a piece of light—called a **photon**—that they had absorbed, to fall back to a lower energy level. The energy emitted by electrons dropping back to lower energy levels will always be precise amounts of energy, because the differences in energy levels are precise. This explains why you see specific lines of light when looking at an atomic spectrum—each line of light matches a specific "step down" that an electron can take in that atom. This also explains why each element produces a different atomic spectrum. Because each element has different acceptable energy levels for its electrons, the possible steps each element's electrons can take differ from all other elements.

Summary

- Bohr's model suggests each atom has a set of unchangeable energy levels, and electrons in the electron cloud of that atom must be in one of those energy levels.
- Bohr's model suggests that the atomic spectra of atoms is produced by electrons gaining energy from some source, jumping up to a higher energy level, then immediately dropping back to a lower energy level and emitting the energy difference between the two energy levels.
- The existence of the atomic spectra is support for Bohr's model of the atom.
- Bohr's model was only successful in calculating energy levels for the hydrogen atom.

Vocabulary

- **Emission spectrum** (or **atomic spectrum**) - The unique pattern of light given off by an element when it is given energy.
- **Energy levels** - Possible orbits that an electron can have in the electron cloud of an atom.
- **Ground state** - To be in the lowest energy level possible.
- **Excited state** - To be in a higher energy level.
- **Photon** - A piece of electromagnetic radiation, or light, with a specific amount of energy.
- **Quantized** - To have a specific amount.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CC BY NC SA
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

This page titled 7.2.1: The Bohr Model - Atoms with Orbits is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 9.4: The Bohr Model - Atoms with Orbits by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

7.2.2: The Quantum-Mechanical Model- Atoms with Orbitals

Learning Objectives

- Define quantum mechanics
- Differentiate between an orbit and an orbital.

How do you study something that seemingly makes no sense? We talk about electrons being in orbits and it sounds like we can tell where that electron is at any moment. We can draw pictures of electrons in orbit, but the reality is that we don't know exactly where they are. We are going to take a look at an area of science that even leaves scientists puzzled. When asked about quantum mechanics, Niels Bohr (who proposed the Bohr model of the atom) said: "Anyone who is not shocked by quantum theory has not understood it". Richard Feynman (one of the founders of modern quantum theory) stated: "I think I can safely say that nobody understands quantum theory." So, let's take a short trip into a land that challenges our everyday world.

Quantum Mechanics

The study of motion of large objects such as baseballs is called mechanics, or more specifically, classical mechanics. Because of the quantum nature of the electron and other tiny particles moving at high speeds, classical mechanics is inadequate to accurately describe their motion. **Quantum mechanics** is the study of the motion of objects that are atomic or subatomic in size and thus demonstrate wave-particle duality. In classical mechanics, the size and mass of the objects involved effectively obscures any quantum effects, so that such objects appear to gain or lose energies in any amounts. Particles whose motion is described by quantum mechanics gain or lose energy in small pieces called **quanta**.

One of the fundamental (and hardest to understand) principles of quantum mechanics is that the electron is both a particle and a wave. In the everyday macroscopic world of things we can see, something cannot be both. But this duality can exist in the quantum world of the submicroscopic on the atomic scale.

At the heart of quantum mechanics is the idea that we cannot accurately specify the location of an electron. All we can say is that there is a probability that it exists within this certain volume of space. The scientist Erwin Schrödinger developed an equation that deals with these calculations, which we will not pursue at this time.



Erwin Schrödinger.

Recall that in the Bohr model, the exact path of the electron was restricted to very well-defined circular **orbits** around the nucleus. An **orbital** is the quantum mechanical refinement of Bohr's orbit. In contrast to his concept of a simple circular orbit with a fixed radius, orbitals are mathematically derived regions of space with different *probabilities* of having an electron.

Summary

Quantum mechanics involves the study of material at the atomic level. This field deals with probabilities, since we cannot definitely locate a particle. Orbitals are mathematically derived regions of space with different *probabilities* of having an electron.

This page titled 7.2.2: The Quantum-Mechanical Model- Atoms with Orbitals is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 9.5: The Quantum-Mechanical Model- Atoms with Orbitals by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

7.3: Quantum-Mechanical Orbitals and Electron Configurations

Learning Objectives

- Represent the organization of electrons by an electron configuration and orbital diagram.

The flight path of a commercial airliner is carefully regulated by the Federal Aviation Administration. Each airplane must maintain a distance of five miles from another plane flying at the same altitude and 2,000 feet above and below another aircraft (1,000 feet if the altitude is less than 29,000 feet). So, each aircraft only has certain positions it is allowed to maintain while it flies. As we explore quantum mechanics, we see that electrons have similar restrictions on their locations.

Orbitals

We can apply our knowledge of quantum numbers to describe the arrangement of electrons for a given atom. We do this with something called **electron configurations**. They are effectively a map of the electrons for a given atom. We look at the four quantum numbers for a given electron and then assign that electron to a specific orbital below.

s Orbitals

For any value of n, a value of $l = 0$ places that electron in an s **orbital**. This orbital is spherical in shape:

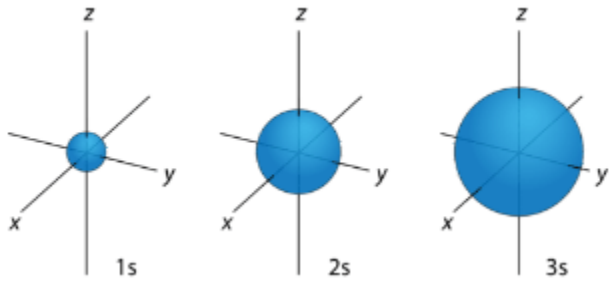


Figure 7.3.1: s orbitals have no orientational preference and resemble spheres.

p Orbitals

For the table below, we see that we can have three possible orbitals when $l = 1$. These are designated as p **orbitals** and have dumbbell shapes. Each of the p orbitals has a different orientation in three-dimensional space.

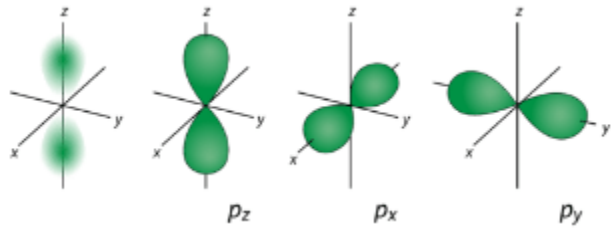


Figure 7.3.2: p orbitals have an orientational preference and resemble dumbbells.

d Orbitals

When $l = 2$, m_l values can be $-2,\ -1,\ 0,\ +1,\ +2$ for a total of five d **orbitals**. Note that all five of the orbitals have specific three-dimensional orientations.

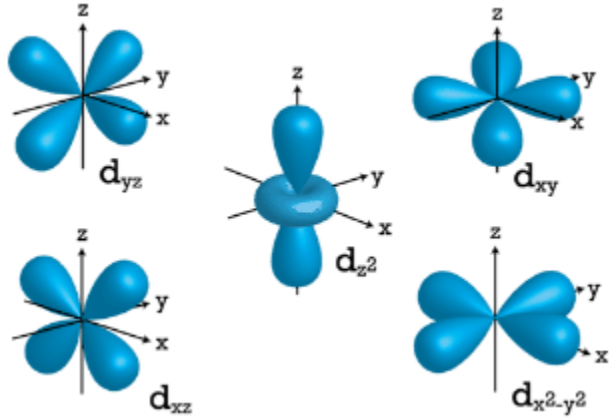


Figure 7.3.3: d orbitals have an orientational preference and exhibit complex structures.

f Orbitals

The most complex set of orbitals are the f **orbitals**. When $l = 3$, m_l values can be $-3,\ -2,\ -1,\ 0,\ +1,\ +2,\ +3$ for a total of seven different orbital shapes. Again, note the specific orientations of the different f orbitals.

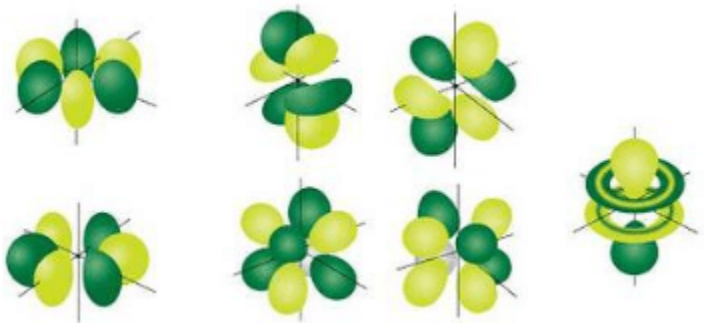


Figure 7.3.4: f orbitals have an orientational preference and exhibit quite complex structures.

Orbitals that have the same value of the principal quantum number form a **shell**. Orbitals within a shell are divided into **subshells** that have the same value of the angular quantum number. Some of the allowed combinations of quantum numbers are compared in Table 7.3.1.

Table 7.3.1: Electron Arrangement Within Energy Levels

Principal Quantum Number (n)	Allowable Sublevels	Number of Orbitals per Sublevel	Number of Orbitals per Principal Energy Level	Number of Electrons per Sublevel	Number of Electrons per Principal Energy Level
1	s	1	1	2	2
2	s	1	4	2	8
	p	3		6	
3	s	1	9	2	18
	p	3		6	
	d	5		10	

Principal Quantum Number (n)	Allowable Sublevels	Number of Orbitals per Sublevel	Number of Orbitals per Principal Energy Level	Number of Electrons per Sublevel	Number of Electrons per Principal Energy Level
4	s	1	16	2	32
	p	3		6	
	d	5		10	
	f	7		14	

Electron Configurations

Can you name one thing that easily distinguishes you from the rest of the world? And we're not talking about DNA—that's a little expensive to sequence. For many people, it is their email address. Your email address allows people all over the world to contact you. It does not belong to anyone else, but serves to identify you. Electrons also have a unique set of identifiers in the quantum numbers that describe their location and spin. Chemists use an **electronic configuration** to represent the organization of electrons in shells and subshells in an atom. An electron configuration simply lists the shell and subshell labels, with a right superscript giving the number of electrons in that subshell. The shells and subshells are listed in the order of filling. Electrons are typically organized around an atom by starting at the lowest possible quantum numbers first, which are the shells-subshells with lower energies.

For example, an H atom has a single electron in the 1s subshell. Its electron configuration is

$$\text{H}: \ 1s^1$$

He has two electrons in the 1s subshell. Its electron configuration is

$$\text{He}: \ 1s^2$$

The three electrons for Li are arranged in the 1s subshell (two electrons) and the 2s subshell (one electron). The electron configuration of Li is

$$\text{Li}: \ 1s^2 2s^1$$

Be has four electrons, two in the 1s subshell and two in the 2s subshell. Its electron configuration is

$$\text{Be}: \ 1s^2 2s^2$$

Now that the 2s subshell is filled, electrons in larger atoms must go into the 2p subshell, which can hold a maximum of six electrons. The next six elements progressively fill up the 2p subshell:

- B: $1s^2 2s^2 2p^1$
- C: $1s^2 2s^2 2p^2$
- N: $1s^2 2s^2 2p^3$
- O: $1s^2 2s^2 2p^4$
- F: $1s^2 2s^2 2p^5$
- Ne: $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6$

Now that the 2p subshell is filled (all possible subshells in the n = 2 shell), the next electron for the next-larger atom must go into the n = 3 shell, s subshell.

Second Period Elements

Periods refer to the horizontal rows of the periodic table. Looking at a periodic table you will see that the first period contains only the elements hydrogen and helium. This is because the first principal energy level consists of only the s sublevel and so only two electrons are required in order to fill the entire principal energy level. Each time a new principal energy level begins, as

with the third element lithium, a new period is started on the periodic table. As one moves across the second period, electrons are successively added. With beryllium $(Z = 4)$, the $2s$ sublevel is complete and the $2p$ sublevel begins with boron $(Z = 5)$. Since there are three $2p$ orbitals and each orbital holds two electrons, the $2p$ sublevel is filled after six elements. Table $7.3.1$ shows the electron configurations of the elements in the second period.

Table $7.3.2$: Electron Configurations of Second-Period Elements

Element Name	Symbol	Atomic Number	Electron Configuration
Lithium	Li	3	$1s^2 2s^1$
Beryllium	Be	4	$1s^2 2s^2$
Boron	B	5	$1s^2 2s^2 2p^1$
Carbon	C	6	$1s^2 2s^2 2p^2$
Nitrogen	N	7	$1s^2 2s^2 2p^3$
Oxygen	O	8	$1s^2 2s^2 2p^4$
Fluorine	F	9	$1s^2 2s^2 2p^5$
Neon	Ne	10	$1s^2 2s^2 2p^6$

Aufbau Principle

Construction of a building begins at the bottom. The foundation is laid and the building goes up step by step. You obviously cannot start with the roof since there is no place to hang it. The building goes from the lowest level to the highest level in a systematic way. In order to create ground state electron configurations for any element, it is necessary to know the way in which the atomic sublevels are organized in order of increasing energy. Figure $7.3.5$ shows the order of increasing energy of the sublevels.

The lowest energy sublevel is always the $1s$ sublevel, which consists of one orbital. The single electron of the hydrogen atom will occupy the $1s$ orbital when the atom is in its ground state. As we proceed with atoms with multiple electrons, those electrons are added to the next lowest sublevel: $2s$, $2p$, $3s$, and so on. The **Aufbau principle** states that an electron occupies orbitals in order from lowest energy to highest. The Aufbau (German: "building up, construction") principle is sometimes referred to as the "building up" principle. It is worth noting that in reality atoms are not built by adding protons and electrons one at a time, and that this method is merely an aid for us to understand the end result.

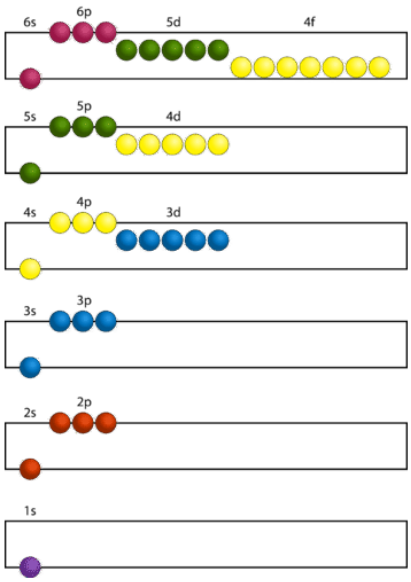


Figure 7.3.5: Electrons are added to atomic orbitals in order from low energy (bottom of the graph) to high (top of the graph) according to the Aufbau principle. Principle energy levels are color coded, while sublevels are grouped together and each circle represents an orbital capable of holding two electrons.

As seen in the figure above, the energies of the sublevels in different principal energy levels eventually begin to overlap. After the $3p$ sublevel, it would seem logical that the $3d$ sublevel should be the next lowest in energy. However, the $4s$ sublevel is slightly lower in energy than the $3d$ sublevel and thus fills first. Following the filling of the $3d$ sublevel is the $4p$, then the $5s$ and the $4d$. Note that the $4f$ sublevel does not fill until just after the $6s$ sublevel. Figure 7.3.6 is a useful and simple aid for keeping track of the order of fill of the atomic sublevels.

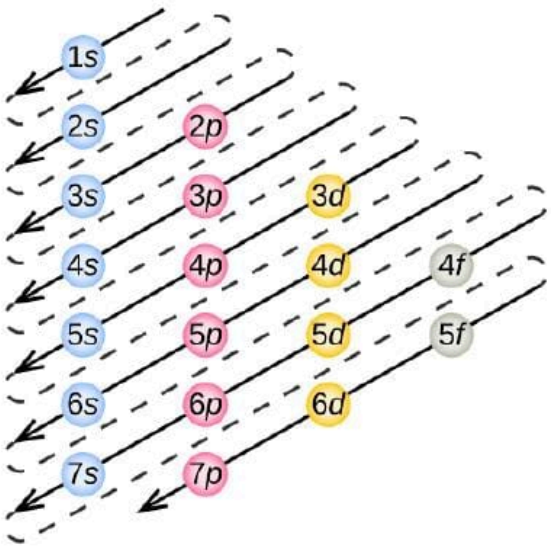


Figure 7.3.6: The arrow leads through each subshell in the appropriate filling order for electron configurations. This chart is straightforward to construct. Simply make a column for all the s orbitals with each n shell on a separate row. Repeat for p, d, and f. Be sure to only include orbitals allowed by the quantum numbers (no 1p or 2d, and so forth). Finally, draw diagonal lines from top to bottom as shown.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Video 7.3.1: Energy levels, sublevels and orbitals.

Example 7.3.1: Nitrogen Atoms

Nitrogen has 7 electrons. Write the electron configuration for nitrogen.

Solution:

Take a close look at Figure 7.3.5, and use it to figure out how many electrons go into each sublevel, and also the order in which the different sublevels get filled.

1. Begin by filling up the 1s sublevel. **This gives $1s^2$**. Now all of the orbitals in the red *n* = 1 block are filled.

Answer available at the end of this section.

2. Next, fill the 2*s* sublevel. This gives **$1s^2 2s^2$**. Now all of the orbitals in the s sublevel of the orange *n* = 2 block are filled.

Answer available at the end of this section.

3. Notice that we haven't filled the entire *n* = 2 block yet... there are still the *p* orbitals!

Answer available at the end of this section.

The overall electron configuration is: **$1s^2 2s^2 2p^3$**.

Example 7.3.2: Potassium Atoms

Potassium has 19 electrons. Write the electron configuration code for potassium.

Solution

This time, take a close look at Figure 7.3.5.

1. Begin by filling up the 1s sublevel. **This gives $1s^2$**. Now the *n* = 1 level is filled.

Answer available at the end of this section.

2. Next, fill the 2*s* sublevel. **This gives $1s^2 2s^2$**

Answer available at the end of this section.

3. Next, fill the 2*p* sublevel. **This gives $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6$.** Now the *n* = 2 level is filled.

Answer available at the end of this section.

4. Next, fill the 3s sublevel. **This gives $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2$**

Answer available at the end of this section.

5. Next, fill the 3*p* sublevel. **This gives $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^6$**

Answer available at the end of this section.

Here's where we have to be careful – right after $3p^6$!

Answer available at the end of this section.

6. The final electron goes into the 4s sublevel. **This gives $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^6 4s^1$**

The overall electron configuration is: **$1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^6 4s^1$**

Exercise 7.3.1: Magnesium and Sodium Atoms

What is the electron configuration for Mg and Na?

Answer Mg available at the end of this section.

Answer Na available at the end of this section.

Pauli Exclusion Principle

When we look at the orbital possibilities for a given atom, we see that there are different arrangements of electrons for each different type of atom. Since each electron must maintain its unique identity, we intuitively sense that the four quantum numbers for any given electron must not match up exactly with the four quantum numbers for any other electron in that atom.

For the hydrogen atom, there is no problem since there is only one electron in the H atom. However, when we get to helium we see that the first three quantum numbers for the two electrons are the same: same energy level, same spherical shape. What differentiates the two helium electrons is their spin. One of the electrons has a $+\frac{1}{2}$ spin while the other electron has a $-\frac{1}{2}$ spin. So the two electrons in the $1s$ orbital are each unique and distinct from one another because their spins are different. This observation leads to the **Pauli exclusion principle**, which states that no two electrons in an atom can have the same set of four quantum numbers. The energy of the electron is specified by the principal, angular momentum, and magnetic quantum numbers. If those three numbers are identical for two electrons, the spin numbers must be different in order for the two electrons to be differentiated from one another. The two values of the spin quantum number allow each orbital to hold two electrons. Figure 7.3.7 shows how the electrons are indicated in a diagram.

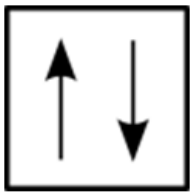


Figure 7.3.7: In an orbital filling diagram, a square represents an orbital, while arrows represent electrons. An arrow pointing upward represents one spin direction, while an arrow pointing downward represents the other spin direction.

Hund's Rule

The last of the three rules for constructing electron arrangements requires electrons to be placed one at a time in a set of orbitals within the same sublevel. This minimizes the natural repulsive forces that one electron has for another. **Hund's rule** states that orbitals of equal energy are each occupied by one electron before any orbital is occupied by a second electron and that each of

the single electrons must have the same spin. The figure below shows how a set of three p orbitals is filled with one, two, three, and four electrons.

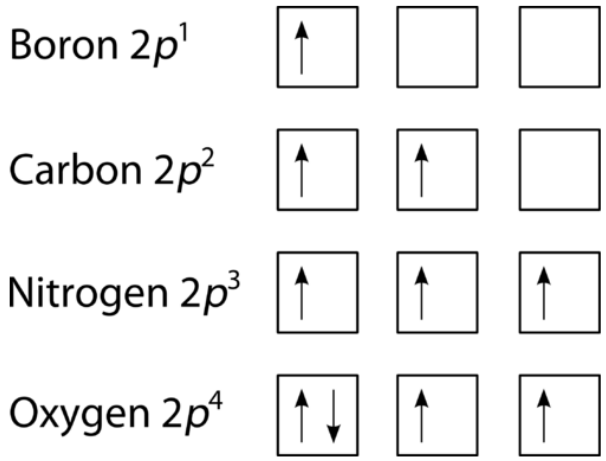


Figure $7.3.8$: The $2p$ sublevel, for the elements boron $(Z = 5)$, carbon $(Z = 6)$, nitrogen $(Z = 7)$, and oxygen $(Z = 8)$. According to Hund's rule, as electrons are added to a set of orbitals of equal energy, one electron enters each orbital before any orbital receives a second electron.

Orbital Filling Diagrams

An **orbital filling diagram** is the more visual way to represent the arrangement of all the electrons in a particular atom. In an orbital filling diagram, the individual orbitals are shown as circles (or squares) and orbitals within a sublevel are drawn next to each other horizontally. Each sublevel is labeled by its principal energy level and sublevel. Electrons are indicated by arrows inside of the circles. An arrow pointing upwards indicates one spin direction, while a downward pointing arrow indicates the other direction. The orbital filling diagrams for hydrogen, helium, and lithium are shown in the figure below.

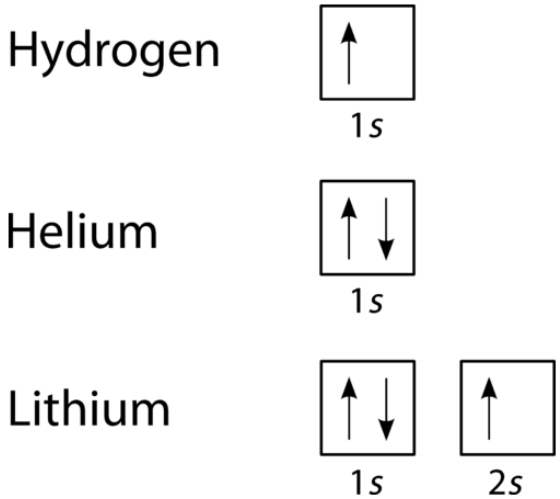


Figure $7.3.9$: Orbital filling diagrams for hydrogen, helium, and lithium.

According to the Aufbau process, sublevels and orbitals are filled with electrons in order of increasing energy. Since the s sublevel consists of just one orbital, the second electron simply pairs up with the first electron as in helium. The next element is lithium and necessitates the use of the next available sublevel, the $2s$.

The filling diagram for carbon is shown in Figure $7.3.10$. There are two $2p$ electrons for carbon and each occupies its own $2p$ orbital.

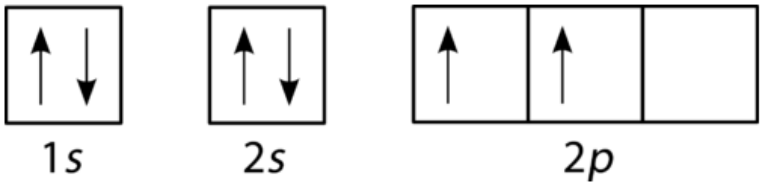


Figure 7.3.10: Orbital filling diagram for carbon.

Oxygen has four $2p$ electrons. After each $2p$ orbital has one electron in it, the fourth electron can be placed in the first $2p$ orbital with a spin opposite that of the other electron in that orbital.

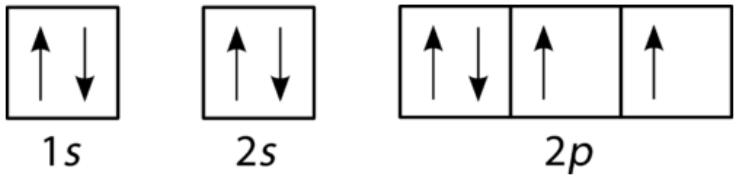


Figure 7.3.11: Orbital filling diagram for oxygen.

If you keep your papers in manila folders, you can pick up a folder and see how much it weighs. If you want to know how many different papers (articles, bank records, or whatever else you keep in a folder), you have to take everything out and count. A computer directory, on the other hand, tells you exactly how much you have in each file. We can get the same information on atoms. If we use an orbital filling diagram, we have to count arrows. When we look at electron configuration data, we simply add up the numbers.

Example 7.3.3: Carbon Atoms

Draw the orbital filling diagram for carbon and write its electron configuration.

Solution

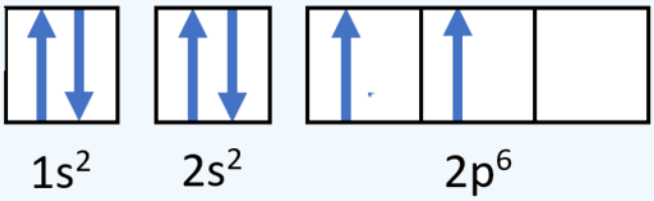
Step 1: List the known quantities and plan the problem.

Known

- Atomic number of carbon, Z=6

Use the order of fill diagram to draw an orbital filling diagram with a total of six electrons. Follow Hund's rule. Write the electron configuration.

Step 2: Construct the diagram.



Orbital filling diagram for carbon.

Electron configuration $1s^2 2s^2 2p^2$

Step 3: Think about your result.

Following the 2s sublevel is the 2p, and p sublevels always consist of three orbitals. All three orbitals need to be drawn even if one or more is unoccupied. According to Hund's rule, the sixth electron enters the second of those p orbitals and has the same spin as the fifth electron.

Exercise 7.3.2: Electronic Configurations

Write the electron configurations and orbital diagrams for

a. Potassium atom: K
b. Arsenic atom: As
c. Phosphorus atom: P

Answer a: available at the end of this section.

Answer b: available at the end of this section.

Answer c: available at the end of this section.

Summary

There are four different classes of electron orbitals. These orbitals are determined by the value of the angular momentum quantum number ℓ. An orbital is a wave function for an electron defined by the three quantum numbers, n, ℓ and m_ℓ. Orbitals define regions in space where you are likely to find electrons. s orbitals ($\ell = 0$) are spherical shaped. p orbitals ($\ell = 1$) are dumb-bell shaped. The three possible p orbitals are always perpendicular to each other.

Electron configuration notation simplifies the indication of where electrons are located in a specific atom. Superscripts are used to indicate the number of electrons in a given sublevel. The Aufbau principle gives the order of electron filling in an atom. It can be used to describe the locations and energy levels of every electron in a given atom. Hund's rule specifies the order of electron filling within a set of orbitals. Orbital filling diagrams are a way of indicating electron locations in orbitals. The Pauli exclusion principle specifies limits on how identical quantum numbers can be for two electrons in the same atom.

Vocabulary

principal quantum number (n)
Defines the energy level of the wave function for an electron, the size of the electron's standing wave, and the number of nodes in that wave.

quantum numbers
Integer numbers assigned to certain quantities in the electron wave function. Because electron standing waves must be continuous and must not "double over" on themselves, quantum numbers are restricted to integer values.

Contributions & Attributions

This page was constructed from content via the following contributor(s) and edited (topically or extensively) by the LibreTexts development team to meet platform style, presentation, and quality:

-
- Marisa Alviar-Agnew (Sacramento City College)
- Henry Agnew (UC Davis)
- Paul Flowers (University of North Carolina - Pembroke), Klaus Theopold (University of Delaware) and Richard Langley (Stephen F. Austin State University) with contributing authors. Textbook content produced by OpenStax College is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution License 4.0 license. Download for free at http://cnx.org/contents/85abf193-2bd...a7ac8df6@9.110).

Answers

Example 7.3.1: Nitrogen Atoms

Since we used 2 electrons, there are 7 – 2 = **5 electrons left**

Example 7.3.1: Nitrogen Atoms

Since we used another 2 electrons, there are 5 – 2 = **3 electrons left**

Example 7.3.1: Nitrogen Atoms

The final 3 electrons go into the 2*p* sublevel. This gives **$1s^2 2s^2 2p^3$**

Example 7.3.2: Potassium Atoms

Since we used 2 electrons, there are 19 – 2 = **17 electrons left**

Example 7.3.2: Potassium Atoms

Since we used another 2 electrons, there are 17 – 2 = **15 electrons left**

Example 7.3.2: Potassium Atoms

Since we used another 6 electrons, there are 15 – 6 = **9 electrons left**

Example 7.3.2: Potassium Atoms

Since we used another 2 electrons, there are 9 – 2 = **7 electrons left**

Example 7.3.2: Potassium Atoms

Since we used another 6 electrons, there are 7 – 6 = **1 electron left**

Example 7.3.2: Potassium Atoms

Remember, 4s comes before 3*d*

Exercise 7.3.1: Magnesium and Sodium Atoms

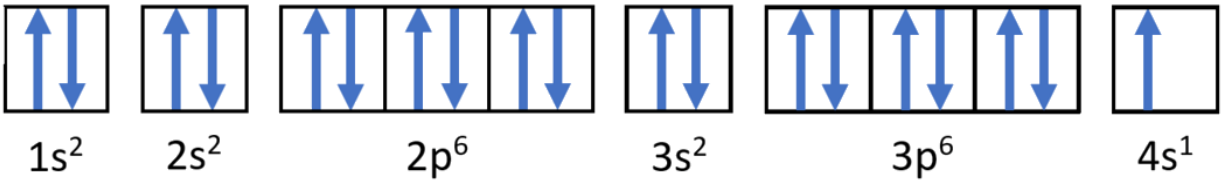
Mg: $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2$

Exercise 7.3.1: Magnesium and Sodium Atoms

Na: $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^1$

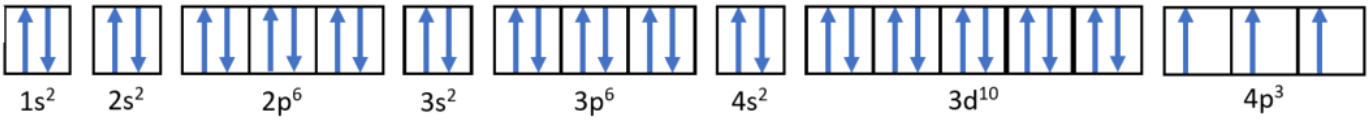
Exercise 7.3.2: Electronic Configurations

Potassium: $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^6 4s^1$



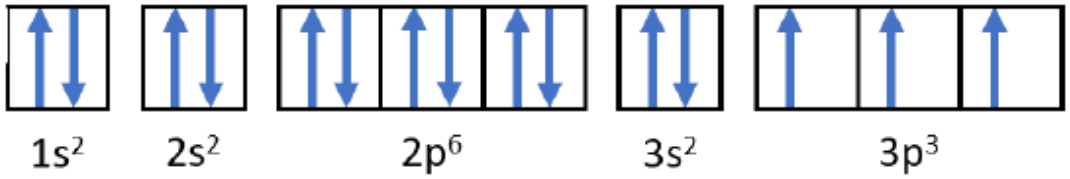
Exercise 7.3.2: Electronic Configurations

Arsenic: $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^6 4s^2 3d^{10} 4p^3$



Exercise 7.3.2: Electronic Configurations

Phosphorus $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6 3s^2 3p^3$



This page titled 7.3: Quantum-Mechanical Orbitals and Electron Configurations is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

7.4: ELECTRON CONFIGURATIONS AND THE PERIODIC TABLE

Learning Objectives

- Relate the electron configurations of the elements to the shape of the periodic table.
- Determine the expected electron configuration of an element by its place on the periodic table.

Previously, we introduced the periodic table as a tool for organizing the known chemical elements. A periodic table is shown in Figure 7.4.1. The elements are listed by atomic number (the number of protons in the nucleus), and elements with similar chemical properties are grouped together in columns.

1 H 1.00794																	2 He 4.002602
3 Li 6.941	4 Be 9.012182											5 B 10.811	6 C 12.0107	7 N 14.00674	8 O 15.9994	9 F 18.9984032	10 Ne 20.1797
11 Na 22.989770	12 Mg 24.3050											13 Al 26.581538	14 Si 28.0855	15 P 30.973761	16 S 32.066	17 Cl 35.4527	18 Ar 39.948
19 K 39.0983	20 Ca 40.078	21 Sc 44.955910	22 Ti 47.867	23 V 50.9415	24 Cr 51.9961	25 Mn 54.938049	26 Fe 55.845	27 Co 58.933200	28 Ni 58.6534	29 Cu 63.545	30 Zn 65.39	31 Ga 69.723	32 Ge 72.61	33 As 74.92160	34 Se 78.96	35 Br 79.504	36 Kr 83.80
37 Rb 85.4678	38 Sr 87.62	39 Y 88.90585	40 Zr 91.224	41 Nb 92.90638	42 Mo 95.94	43 Tc (98)	44 Ru 101.07	45 Rh 102.90550	46 Pd 106.42	47 Ag 196.56655	48 Cd 112.411	49 In 114.818	50 Sn 118.710	51 Sb 121.760	52 Te 127.60	53 I 126.90447	54 Xe 131.29
55 Cs 132.90545	56 Ba 137.327	57 La 138.9055	72 Hf 178.49	73 Ta 180.94.79	74 W 183.84	75 Re 186.207	76 Os 190.23	77 Ir 192.217	78 Pt 195.078	79 Au 196.56655	80 Hg 200.59	81 Tl 204.3833	82 Pb 207.2	83 Bi 208.58038	84 Po (209)	85 At (210)	86 Rn (222)
87 Fr (223)	88 Ra (226)	89 Ac (227)	104 Rf (261)	105 Db (262)	106 Sg (263)	107 Bh (262)	108 Hs (265)	109 Mt (266)	110 (269)	111 (272)	112 (277)		114 (289) (287)		116 (289)		118 (293)

58 Ce 140.116	59 Pr 140.50765	60 Nd 144.24	61 Pm (145)	62 Sm 150.36	63 Eu 151.964	64 Gd 157.25	65 Tb 158.92534	66 Dy 162.50	67 Ho 164.93032	68 Er 167.26	69 Tm 168.93421	70 Yb 173.04	71 Lu 174.967
90 Th 232.0381	91 Pa 231.035888	92 U 238.0289	93 Np (237)	94 Pu (244)	95 Am (243)	96 Cm (247)	97 Bk (247)	98 Cf (251)	99 Es (252)	100 Fm (257)	101 Md (258)	102 No (259)	103 Lr (262)

Figure 7.4.1: The Periodic Table

Why does the periodic table have the structure it does? The answer is rather simple, if you understand electron configurations: the shape of the periodic table mimics the filling of the subshells with electrons.

> The shape of the periodic table mimics the filling of the subshells with electrons.

Let us start with H and He. Their electron configurations are $1s^1$ and $1s^2$, respectively; with He, the $n = 1$ shell is filled. These two elements make up the first row of the periodic table (Figure 7.4.2)

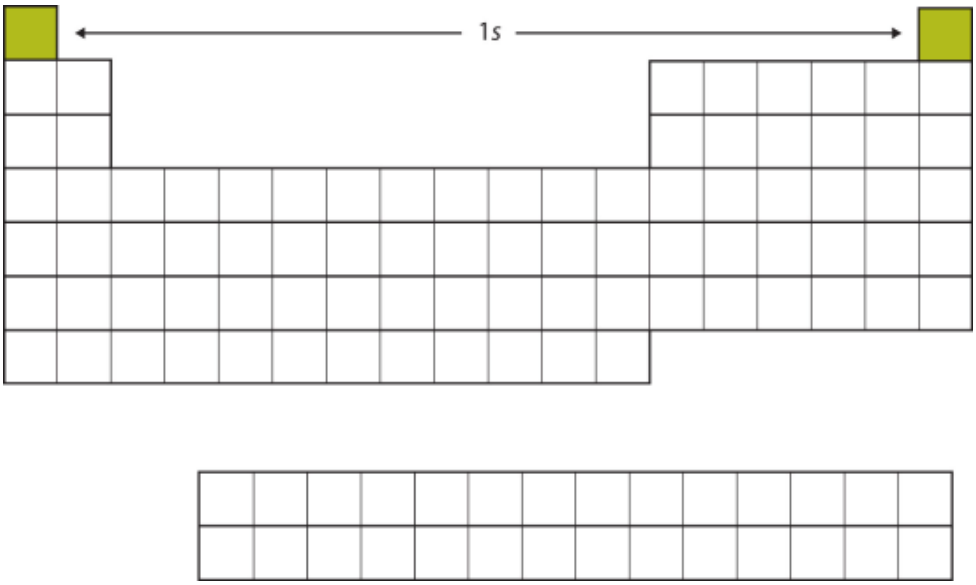


Figure 7.4.2: The 1s Subshell. H and He represent the filling of the 1s subshell.

The next two electrons, for Li and Be, would go into the 2s subshell. Figure 7.4.3 shows that these two elements are adjacent on the periodic table.

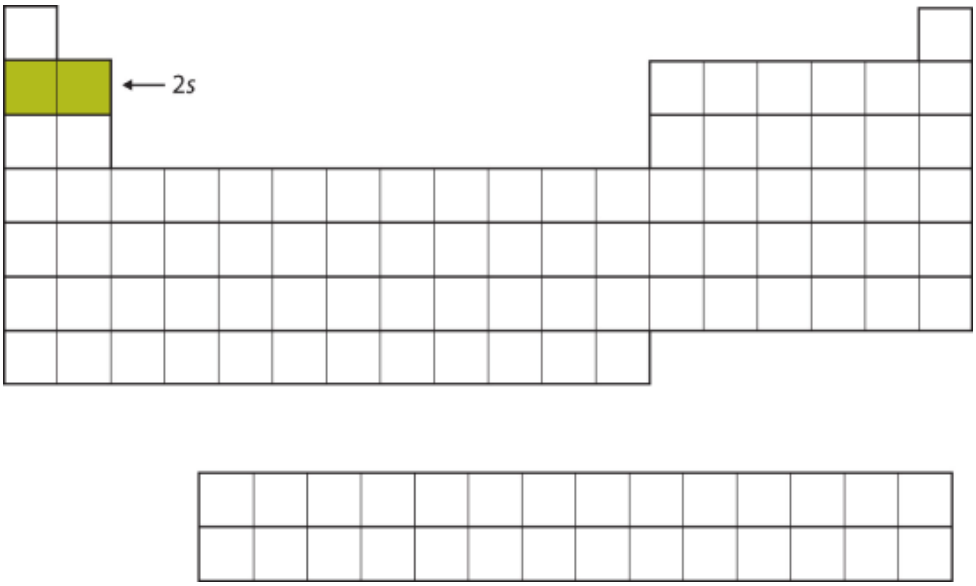


Figure 7.4.3: The 2s Subshell. In Li and Be, the 2s subshell is being filled.

For the next six elements, the 2*p* subshell is being occupied with electrons. On the right side of the periodic table, these six elements (B through Ne) are grouped together (Figure 7.4.4).

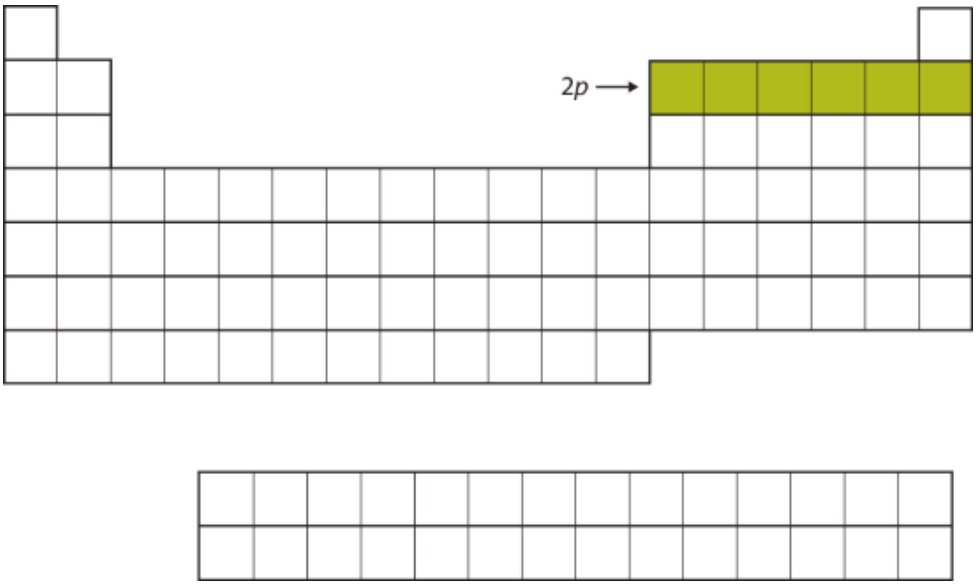


Figure 7.4.4: The 2*p* Subshell. For B through Ne, the 2*p* subshell is being occupied.

The next subshell to be filled is the 3*s* subshell. The elements when this subshell is being filled, Na and Mg, are back on the left side of the periodic table (Figure 7.4.5).

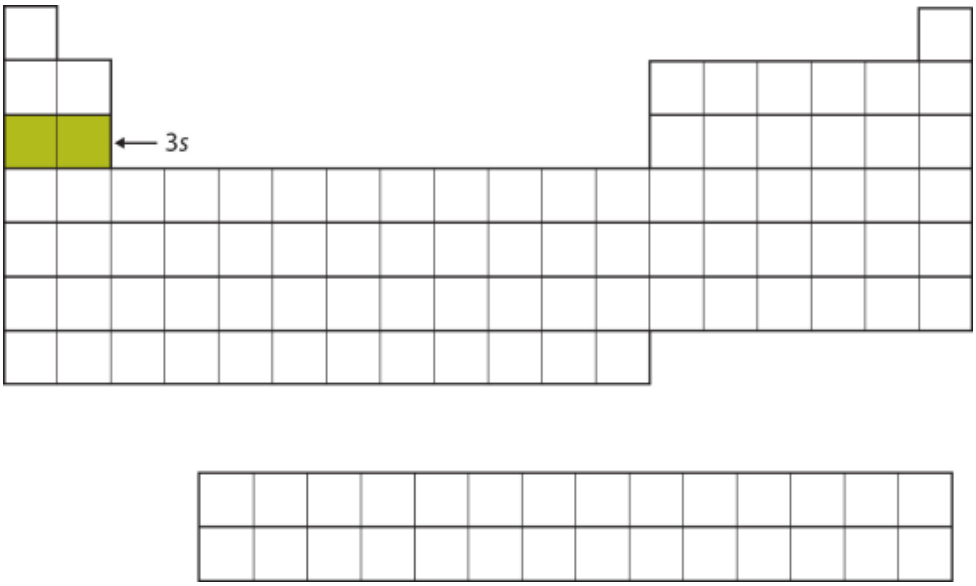


Figure 7.4.5: The 3*s* Subshell. Now the 3*s* subshell is being occupied.

Next, the 3*p* subshell is filled with the next six elements (Figure 7.4.6).

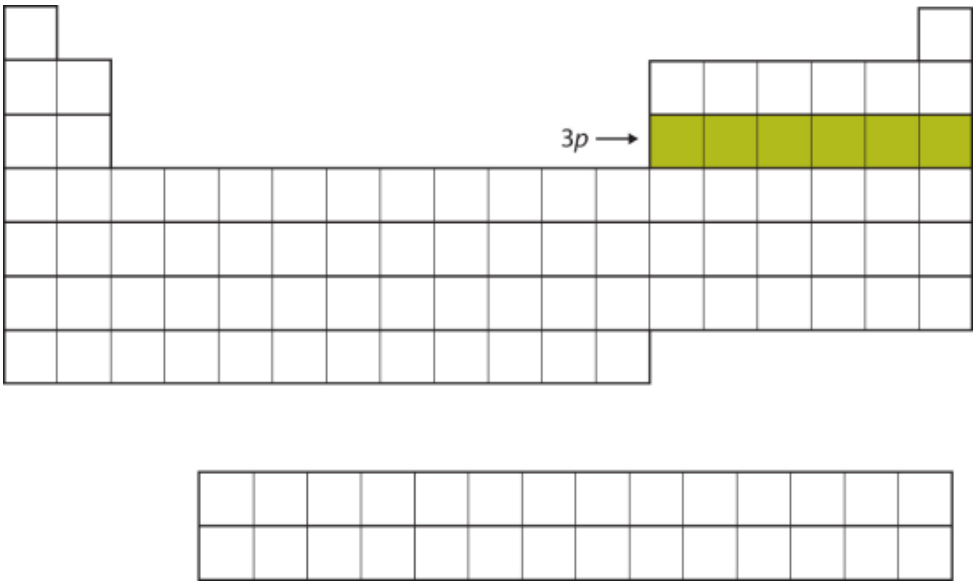


Figure 7.4.6: The 3*p* Subshell. Next, the 3*p* subshell is filled with electrons.

Instead of filling the 3*d* subshell next, electrons go into the 4s subshell (Figure 7.4.7).

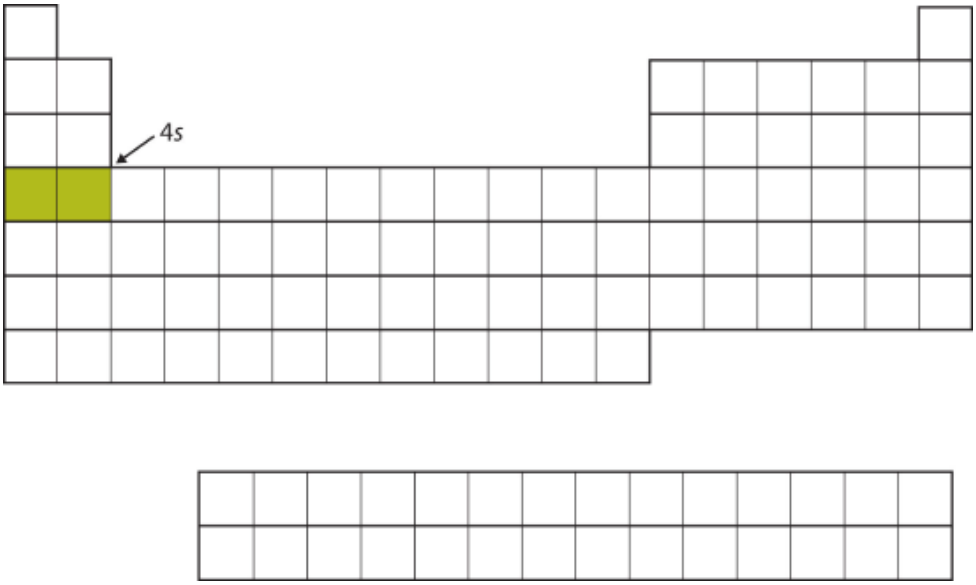


Figure 7.4.7: The 4s Subshell. The 4s subshell is filled before the 3*d* subshell. This is reflected in the structure of the periodic table.

After the 4s subshell is filled, the 3*d* subshell is filled with up to 10 electrons. This explains the section of 10 elements in the middle of the periodic table (Figure 7.4.8).

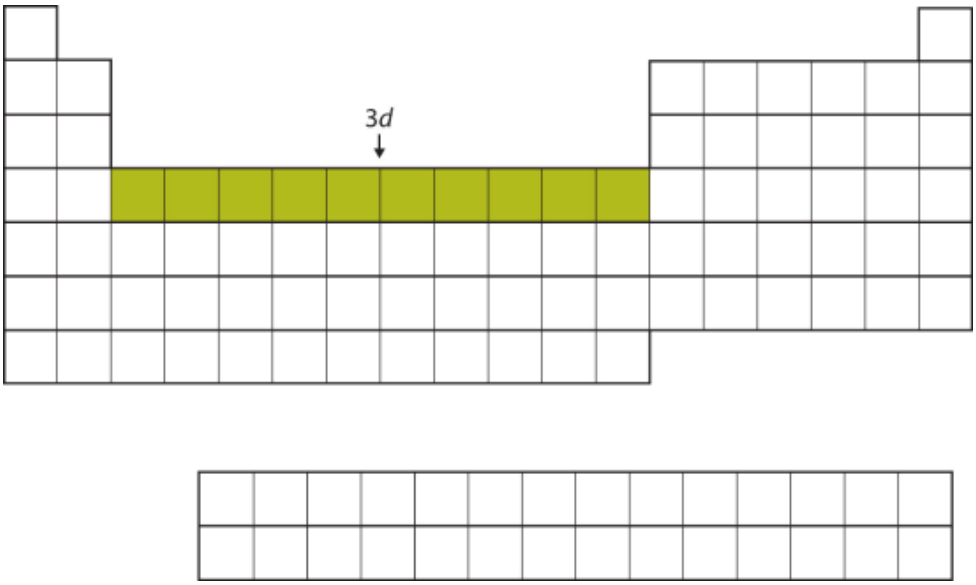


Figure 7.4.8: The 3*d* Subshell. The 3*d* subshell is filled in the middle section of the periodic table.

...And so forth. As we go across the rows of the periodic table, the overall shape of the table outlines how the electrons are occupying the shells and subshells.

The first two columns on the left side of the periodic table are where the s subshells are being occupied. Because of this, the first two rows of the periodic table are labeled the **s block**. Similarly, the **p block** are the right-most six columns of the periodic table, the **d block** is the middle 10 columns of the periodic table, while the **f block** is the 14-column section that is normally depicted as detached from the main body of the periodic table. It could be part of the main body, but then the periodic table would be rather long and cumbersome. Figure 7.4.9 shows the blocks of the periodic table.

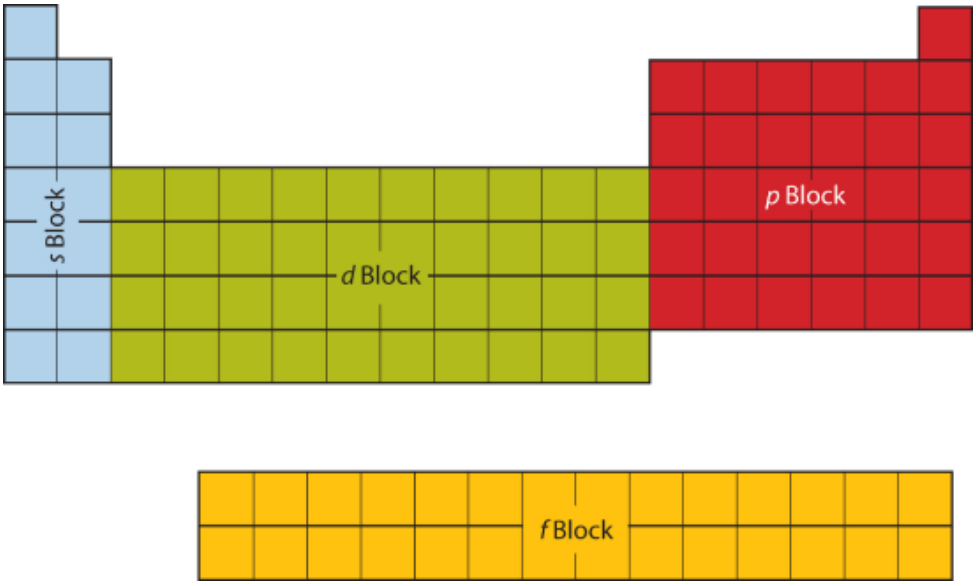


Figure 7.4.9: Blocks on the Periodic Table. The periodic table is separated into blocks depending on which subshell is being filled for the atoms that belong in that section.

The electrons in the highest-numbered shell, plus any electrons in the last unfilled subshell, are called **valence electrons**; the highest-numbered shell is called the **valence shell**. (The inner electrons are called *core electrons*.) The valence electrons largely control the chemistry of an atom. If we look at just the valence shell's electron configuration, we find that in each column, the valence shell's electron configuration is the same. For example, take the elements in the first column of the periodic table: H, Li, Na, K, Rb, and Cs. Their electron configurations (abbreviated for the larger atoms) are as follows, with the valence shell electron configuration highlighted:

Electrons, electron configurations, and the valence shell electron configuration highlighted.

H:	$1s^1$
Li:	$1s^2 2s^1$
Na:	$[Ne]3s^1$
K:	$[Ar]4s^1$
Rb:	$[Kr]5s^1$
Cs:	$[Xe]6s^1$

They all have a similar electron configuration in their valence shells: a single s electron. Because much of the chemistry of an element is influenced by valence electrons, we would expect that these elements would have similar chemistry—*and they do*. The organization of electrons in atoms explains not only the shape of the periodic table, but also the fact that elements in the same column of the periodic table have similar chemistry.

The same concept applies to the other columns of the periodic table. Elements in each column have the same valence shell electron configurations, and the elements have some similar chemical properties. This is strictly true for all elements in the s and *p* blocks. In the *d* and *f* blocks, because there are exceptions to the order of filling of subshells with electrons, similar valence shells are not absolute in these blocks. However, many similarities do exist in these blocks, so a similarity in chemical properties is expected.

Similarity of valence shell electron configuration implies that we can determine the electron configuration of an atom solely by its position on the periodic table. Consider Se, as shown in Figure 7.4.10. It is in the fourth column of the *p* block. This means that its electron configuration should end in a p^4 electron configuration. Indeed, the electron configuration of Se is $[Ar]4s^2 3d^{10} 4p^4$, as expected.

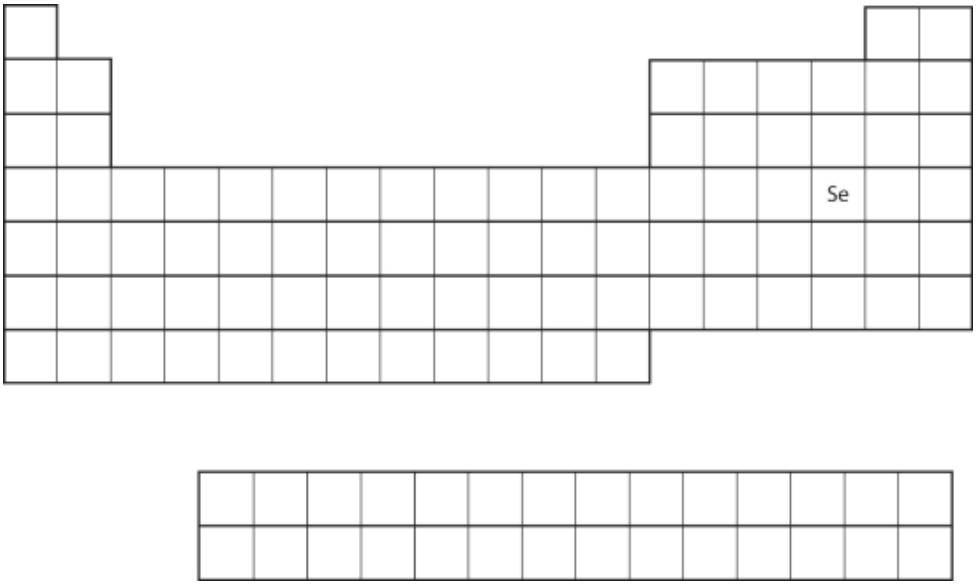


Figure 7.4.10: Selenium on the Periodic Table

Example 7.4.1: Predicting Electron Configurations

Find the position on the periodic table for each of the elements listed. Then predict the valence shell electron configuration for each atom.

a. Ca

b. Sn

Solution

a. Ca is located in the second column of the s block. We expect that its electron configuration should end with s^2. Calcium's electron configuration is $[Ar]4s^2$.
b. Sn is located in the second column of the *p* block, so we expect that its electron configuration would end in p^2. Tin's electron configuration is $[Kr]5s^24d^{10}5p^2$.

Exercise 7.4.1

From the element's position on the periodic table, predict the valence shell electron configuration for each atom. Figure 7.4.11.

a. Ti
b. Cl

Answer a available at the end of this section.

Summary

The arrangement of electrons in atoms is responsible for the shape of the periodic table. Electron configurations can be predicted by the position of an atom on the periodic table.

Answers

Exercise 7.4.1

$[Ar]4s^23d^2$

$[Ne]3s^23p^5$

7.4.1: The Explanatory Power of the Quantum-Mechanical Model

This page titled 7.4: Electron Configurations and the Periodic Table is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 9.7: Electron Configurations and the Periodic Table by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

7.4.1: The Explanatory Power of the Quantum-Mechanical Model

Learning Objectives

- Give the name and location of specific groups on the periodic table, including alkali metals, alkaline earth metals, noble gases, halogens, and transition metals.
- Explain the relationship between the chemical behavior of families in the periodic table and their electron configurations.
- Identify elements that will have the most similar properties to a given element.

The chemical behavior of atoms is controlled by their electron configuration. Since the families of elements were organized by their chemical behavior, it is predictable that the individual members of each chemical family will have similar electron configurations.

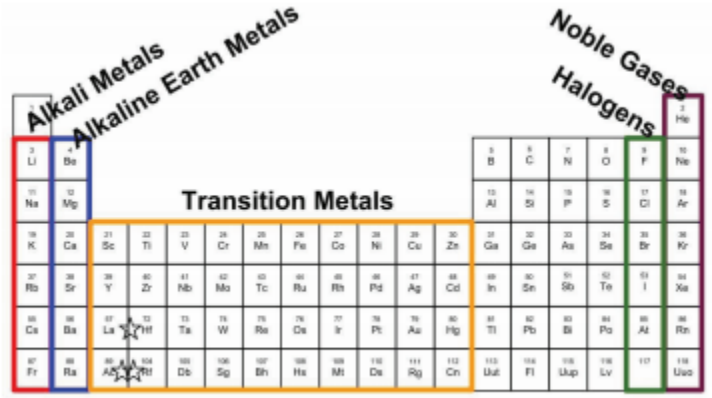
Families of the Periodic Table

Remember that Mendeleev arranged the periodic table so that elements with the most similar properties were placed in the same group. A **group** is a vertical column of the periodic table. All of the 1A elements have one valence electron. This is what causes these elements to react in the same ways as the other members of the family. The elements in 1A are all very reactive and form compounds in the same ratios with similar properties with other elements. Because of their similarities in their chemical properties, Mendeleev put these elements into the same group. Group 1A is also known as the **alkali metals**. Although most metals tend to be very hard, these metals are actually soft and can be easily cut.

Group 2A is also called the **alkaline earth metals**. Once again, because of their similarities in electron configurations, these elements have similar properties to each other. The same pattern is true of other groups on the periodic table. Remember, Mendeleev arranged the table so that elements with the most similar properties were in the same group on the periodic table.

It is important to recognize a couple of other important groups on the periodic table by their group name. Group 7A (or 17) elements are also called **halogens**. This group contains very reactive nonmetal elements.

The **noble gases** are in group 8A. These elements also have similar properties to each other, the most significant property being that they are extremely unreactive, rarely forming compounds. The reason for this will be communicated later, when we discuss how compounds form. The elements in this group are also gases at room temperature.



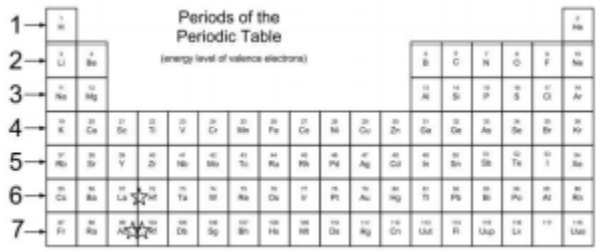
Families of the periodic table.
CC – Tracy Poulsen

An alternate numbering system numbers all of the s, p, and d block elements from 1-18. In this numbering system, group 1A is group 1; group 2A is group 2; the halogens (7A) are group 17; and the noble gases (8A) are group 18. You will come across periodic

tables with both numbering systems. It is important to recognize which numbering system is being used, and to be able to find the number of valence electrons in the main block elements, regardless of which numbering system is being used.

Periods of the Periodic Table

If you can locate an element on the Periodic Table, you can use the element's position to figure out the energy level of the element's valence electrons. A **period** is a horizontal row of elements on the periodic table. For example, the elements sodium (Na) and magnesium (Mg) are both in period 3. The elements astatine (At) and radon (Rn) are both in period 6.



CC – Tracy Poulsen

Summary

- The vertical columns on the periodic table are called groups or families because of their similar chemical behavior.
- All the members of a family of elements have the same number of valence electrons and similar chemical properties.
- The horizontal rows on the periodic table are called periods.

Vocabulary

- **Group (family)** - A vertical column of the periodic table.
- **Alkali metals** - Group 1A of the periodic table.
- **Alkaline earth metals** - Group 2A of the periodic table.
- **Halogens** - Group 7A of the periodic table.
- **Noble gases** - Group 8A of the periodic table.
- **Transition elements** - Groups 3 to 12 of the periodic table.

This page titled 7.4.1: The Explanatory Power of the Quantum-Mechanical Model is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 9.8: The Explanatory Power of the Quantum-Mechanical Model by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

7.5: THE OCTET RULE

In the previous section, we established a direct link between electron configurations, the periodic table, and the similarities of the elements within groups of the periodic table. We can generalize some of the ways in which many compounds and molecules form based on these trends. This generalization is called the octet rule. According to **the octet rule**, atoms will tend to lose, gain, or share electrons such that their valence electron shell resembles that of a noble gas. In most cases, the noble gas has 8 electrons in his valence shell, hence the word octet to describe the number 8.

When ions form, they conform to the **octet rule** by either losing or gaining electrons in order to achieve the electron configuration of the nearest noble gas. You can confirm this by looking at the trends of ion formation that we established in an earlier chapter. The reason why the periodic table is so good at predicting these trends in ion formation is because they result in filled valence electron shells.

In a similar way, nonmetal atoms share electrons in the formation of a covalent bond in such a way that each of the atoms involved in the bond can attain a noble-gas electron configuration. The shared electrons are "counted" for each of the atoms involved in the sharing. For hydrogen (H_2), the shared pair of electrons means that each of the atoms is able to attain the electron configuration of helium, the noble gas with two electrons. For atoms other than hydrogen, the sharing of electrons will usually provide each of the atoms with eight valence electrons. We will explore this concept more within the subsections here using a concept called Lewis structures.

When we first introduced the idea of compounds, we emphasized the difference between ionic and molecular compounds. In fact, it was the most important thing to consider when naming compounds! We can now discuss the reason for that difference: it is because the octet rule is satisfied in different ways in the formation of these compounds. In ionic compounds electrons are lost or gained. In molecular compounds, electrons are shared. It is because of this difference, that we must use different naming conventions for ionic compounds and molecules. Each electron that is lost by a metal will be gained by a nonmetal with forming an ionic compound. In contrast, there are multiple ways to share electrons in molecules as we will see. This difference is why it was necessary to use a different naming convention for ionic compounds compared to molecules.

Summary

- The octet rule is followed when an atom achieves the electron configuration of the nearest noble gas.
- When ions form, they conform to the octet rule by either losing or gaining electrons.
- When molecules form, they conform to the octet rule by sharing electrons.

7.5.1: Representing Valence Electrons with Dots

7.5.2: Lewis Structures of Ionic Compounds- Electrons Transferred

7.5.3: Covalent Lewis Structures- Electrons Shared

This page titled 7.5: The Octet Rule is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- 9.5: Lewis Electron-Dot Structures by CK12 is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://flexbooks.ck12.org/cbook/ck-12-chemistry-flexbook-2.0/.

7.5.1: Representing Valence Electrons with Dots

Learning Objective

- Draw a Lewis electron dot diagram for an atom or a monatomic ion.

In almost all cases, chemical bonds are formed by interactions of valence electrons in atoms. To facilitate our understanding of how valence electrons interact, a simple way of representing those valence electrons would be useful.

A **Lewis electron dot diagram** (or electron dot diagram, or a Lewis diagram, or a Lewis structure) is a representation of the valence electrons of an atom that uses dots around the symbol of the element. The number of dots equals the number of valence electrons in the atom. These dots are arranged to the right and left and above and below the symbol, with no more than two dots on a side. (The order in which the positions are used does not matter.) For example, the Lewis electron dot diagram for hydrogen is simply

$$\mathbf{H}\cdot$$

Because the side is not important, the Lewis electron dot diagram could also be drawn as follows:

$$\dot{\mathbf{H}} \quad or \quad \cdot\mathbf{H} \quad or \quad \underset{\cdot}{\mathbf{H}}$$

The electron dot diagram for helium, with two valence electrons, is as follows:

$$\mathbf{He}\!:$$

By putting the two electrons together on the same side, we emphasize the fact that these two electrons are both in the 1s subshell; this is the common convention we will adopt, although there will be exceptions later. The next atom, lithium, has an electron configuration of $1s^2 2s^1$, so it has only one electron in its valence shell. Its electron dot diagram resembles that of hydrogen, except the symbol for lithium is used:

$$\mathbf{Li}\cdot$$

Beryllium has two valence electrons in its 2*s* shell, so its electron dot diagram is like that of helium:

$$\mathbf{Be}\!:$$

The next atom is boron. Its valence electron shell is $2s^2 2p^1$, so it has three valence electrons. The third electron will go on another side of the symbol:

$$\dot{\mathbf{B}}\!:$$

Again, it does not matter on which sides of the symbol the electron dots are positioned.

For carbon, there are four valence electrons, two in the 2*s* subshell and two in the 2*p* subshell. As usual, we will draw two dots together on one side, to represent the 2*s* electrons. However, conventionally, we draw the dots for the two *p* electrons on different sides. As such, the electron dot diagram for carbon is as follows:

$$\cdot\dot{\mathbf{C}}\!:$$

With N, which has three *p* electrons, we put a single dot on each of the three remaining sides:

$$\cdot\underset{\cdot}{\dot{\mathbf{N}}}\!:$$

For oxygen, which has four *p* electrons, we now have to start doubling up on the dots on one other side of the symbol. When doubling up electrons, make sure that each side has no more than two electrons.



Fluorine and neon have seven and eight dots, respectively:





With the next element, sodium, the process starts over with a single electron because sodium has a single electron in its highest-numbered shell, the $n = 3$ shell. By going through the periodic table, we see that the Lewis electron dot diagrams of atoms will never have more than eight dots around the atomic symbol.

Example 7.5.1.1: Lewis Dot Diagrams

What is the Lewis electron dot diagram for each element?

a. aluminum
b. selenium

Solution

a. The valence electron configuration for aluminum is $3s^2 3p^1$. So it would have three dots around the symbol for aluminum, two of them paired to represent the 3s electrons:



2. The valence electron configuration for selenium is $4s^2 4p^4$. In the highest-numbered shell, the $n = 4$ shell, there are six electrons. Its electron dot diagram is as follows:



Exercise 7.5.1.1

What is the Lewis electron dot diagram for each element?

a. phosphorus
b. argon

Answer a available at the end of this section.

Summary

- Lewis electron dot diagrams use dots to represent valence electrons around an atomic symbol.
- Lewis electron dot diagrams for ions have less (for cations) or more (for anions) dots than the corresponding atom.

Answers

Exercise 7.5.1.1





This page titled 7.5.1: Representing Valence Electrons with Dots is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 10.2: Representing Valence Electrons with Dots by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

7.5.2: Lewis Structures of Ionic Compounds- Electrons Transferred

Learning Objectives

- State the octet rule.
- Define *ionic bond*.
- Draw Lewis structures for ionic compounds.

In a previous section, we demonstrated that ions are formed by losing electrons to make cations, or by gaining electrons to form anions. The astute reader may have noticed something: many of the ions that form have eight electrons in their valence shell. Either atoms gain enough electrons to have eight electrons in the valence shell and become the appropriately charged anion, or they lose the electrons in their original valence shell; the *lower* shell, now the valence shell, has eight electrons in it, so the atom becomes positively charged. For whatever reason, having eight electrons in a valence shell is a particularly energetically stable arrangement of electrons. The **octet rule** explains the favorable trend of atoms having eight electrons in their valence shell. When atoms form compounds, the octet rule is not always satisfied for all atoms at all times, but it is a very good rule of thumb for understanding the kinds of bonding arrangements that atoms can make.

It is not impossible to violate the octet rule. Consider sodium: in its elemental form, it has one valence electron and is stable. It is rather reactive, however, and does not require a lot of energy to remove that electron to make the Na^+ ion. We *could* remove another electron by adding even more energy to the ion, to make the Na^{2+} ion. However, that requires much more energy than is normally available in chemical reactions, so sodium stops at a 1+ charge after losing a single electron. It turns out that the Na^+ ion has a complete octet in its new valence shell, the n = 2 shell, which satisfies the octet rule. The octet rule is a result of trends in energies and is useful in explaining why atoms form the ions that they do.

Now consider an Na atom in the presence of a Cl atom. The two atoms have these Lewis electron dot diagrams and electron configurations:

$$\mathbf{Na}\cdot \qquad \cdot\ddot{\underset{\cdot\,\cdot}{\mathbf{Cl}}}\mathbf{:} \tag{7.5.2.1}$$

$$[Ne]\,3s^1 \qquad [Ne]\,3s^2 3p^5 \tag{7.5.2.2}$$

For the Na atom to obtain an octet, it must lose an electron; for the Cl atom to gain an octet, it must gain an electron. An electron transfers from the Na atom to the Cl atom:

$$\mathbf{Na}\cdot \rightsquigarrow \cdot\ddot{\underset{\cdot\,\cdot}{\mathbf{Cl}}}\mathbf{:} \tag{7.5.2.3}$$

resulting in two ions—the Na^+ ion and the Cl^- ion:

$$\mathbf{Na}^+ \qquad :\ddot{\underset{\cdot\,\cdot}{\mathbf{Cl}}}\mathbf{:}^- \tag{7.5.2.4}$$

$$[Ne] \qquad [Ne]\,3s^2 3p^6 \tag{7.5.2.5}$$

Both species now have complete octets, and the electron shells are energetically stable. From basic physics, we know that opposite charges attract. This is what happens to the Na^+ and Cl^- ions:

$$\mathbf{Na}^+ + :\ddot{\underset{\cdot\,\cdot}{\mathbf{Cl}}}\mathbf{:}^- \rightarrow Na^+Cl^- \;\; or \;\; NaCl \tag{7.5.2.6}$$

where we have written the final formula (the formula for sodium chloride) as per the convention for ionic compounds, without listing the charges explicitly. The attraction between oppositely charged ions is called an **ionic bond,** and it is one of the main types of chemical bonds in chemistry. Ionic bonds are caused by electrons *transferring* from one atom to another.

In electron transfer, the number of electrons lost must equal the number of electrons gained. We saw this in the formation of NaCl. A similar process occurs between Mg atoms and O atoms, except in this case two electrons are transferred:



The two ions each have octets as their valence shell, and the two oppositely charged particles attract, making an ionic bond:

$$\mathbf{Mg}^{2+} + \left[:\ddot{\mathbf{O}}:\right]^{2-} \quad Mg^{2+}O^{2-} \text{ or } MgO \tag{7.5.2.7}$$

Remember, in the final formula for the ionic compound, we do not write the charges on the ions.

What about when an Na atom interacts with an O atom? The O atom needs two electrons to complete its valence octet, but the Na atom supplies only one electron:

$$\mathbf{Na}\cdot \rightharpoonup \cdot\ddot{\mathbf{O}}: \tag{7.5.2.8}$$

The O atom still does not have an octet of electrons. What we need is a second Na atom to donate a second electron to the O atom:



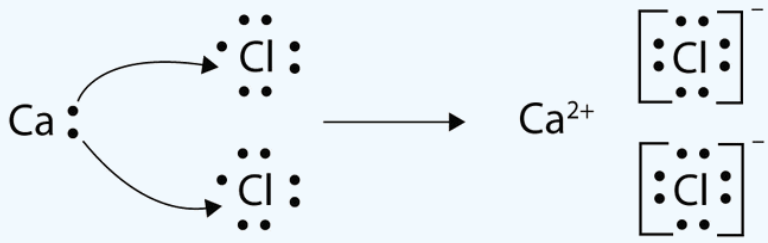
These three ions attract each other to give an overall neutral-charged ionic compound, which we write as Na_2O. The need for the number of electrons lost being equal to the number of electrons gained explains why ionic compounds have the ratio of cations to anions that they do. This is required by the law of conservation of matter as well.

Example 7.5.2.1: Synthesis of Calcium Chloride from Elements

With arrows, illustrate the transfer of electrons to form calcium chloride from Ca atoms and Cl atoms.

Solution

A Ca atom has two valence electrons, while a Cl atom has seven electrons. A Cl atom needs only one more to complete its octet, while Ca atoms have two electrons to lose. Thus we need two Cl atoms to accept the two electrons from one Ca atom. The transfer process looks as follows:



The oppositely charged ions attract each other to make $CaCl_2$.

Exercise 7.5.2.1

With arrows, illustrate the transfer of electrons to form potassium sulfide from K atoms and S atoms.

Answer available at the end of this section.

Summary

- The tendency to form species that have eight electrons in the valence shell is called the octet rule.
- The attraction of oppositely charged ions caused by electron transfer is called an ionic bond.
- The strength of ionic bonding depends on the magnitude of the charges and the sizes of the ions.

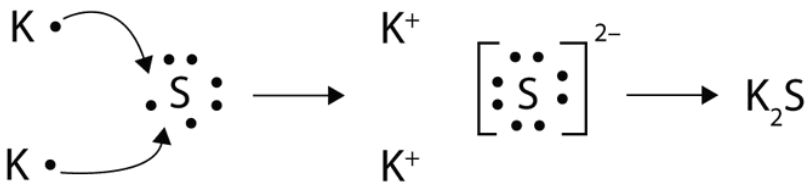
Contributions & Attributions

This page was constructed from content via the following contributor(s) and edited (topically or extensively) by the LibreTexts development team to meet platform style, presentation, and quality:

- Marisa Alviar-Agnew (Sacramento City College)
- Henry Agnew (UC Davis)

Answers

Exercise 7.5.2.1



This page titled 7.5.2: Lewis Structures of Ionic Compounds- Electrons Transferred is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

7.5.3: Covalent Lewis Structures- Electrons Shared

Learning Objectives

- Define *covalent bond*.
- Illustrate covalent bond formation with Lewis electron dot diagrams.

Ionic bonding typically occurs when it is easy for one atom to lose one or more electrons and another atom to gain one or more electrons. However, some atoms won't give up or gain electrons easily. Yet they still participate in compound formation. How? There is another mechanism for obtaining a complete valence shell: *sharing* electrons. When electrons are shared between two atoms, they make a bond called a **covalent bond**.

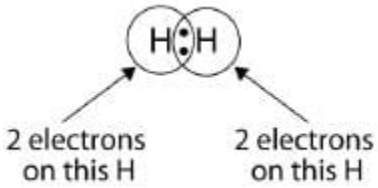
Let us illustrate a covalent bond by using H atoms, with the understanding that H atoms need only two electrons to fill the 1s subshell. Each H atom starts with a single electron in its valence shell:

$$\mathbf{H}\cdot \quad \cdot\mathbf{H}$$

The two H atoms can share their electrons:

$$\mathbf{H:H}$$

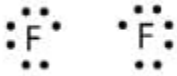
We can use circles to show that each H atom has two electrons around the nucleus, completely filling each atom's valence shell:



Because each H atom has a filled valence shell, this bond is stable, and we have made a diatomic hydrogen molecule. (This explains why hydrogen is one of the diatomic elements.) For simplicity's sake, it is not unusual to represent the covalent bond with a dash, instead of with two dots:

H–H

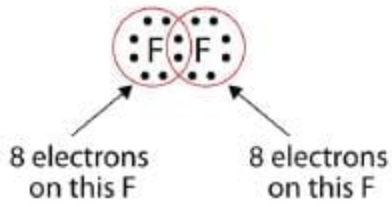
Because two atoms are sharing one pair of electrons, this covalent bond is called a **single bond**. As another example, consider fluorine. F atoms have seven electrons in their valence shell:



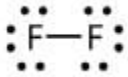
These two atoms can do the same thing that the H atoms did; they share their unpaired electrons to make a covalent bond.



Note that each F atom has a complete octet around it now:



We can also write this using a dash to represent the shared electron pair:

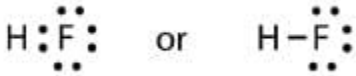


There are two different types of electrons in the fluorine diatomic molecule. The **bonding electron pair** makes the covalent bond. Each F atom has three other pairs of electrons that do not participate in the bonding; they are called **lone pair electrons**. Each F atom has one bonding pair and three lone pairs of electrons.

Covalent bonds can be made between different elements as well. One example is HF. Each atom starts out with an odd number of electrons in its valence shell:



The two atoms can share their unpaired electrons to make a covalent bond:



We note that the H atom has a full valence shell with two electrons, while the F atom has a complete octet of electrons.

Example 7.5.3.1:

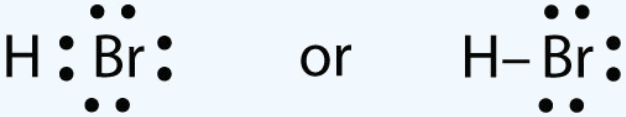
Use Lewis electron dot diagrams to illustrate the covalent bond formation in HBr.

Solution

HBr is very similar to HF, except that it has Br instead of F. The atoms are as follows:



The two atoms can share their unpaired electron:



Exercise 7.5.3.1

Use Lewis electron dot diagrams to illustrate the covalent bond formation in Cl_2.

Answer available at the end of this section.

When working with covalent structures, it sometimes looks like you have leftover electrons. You apply the rules you learned so far, and there are still some electrons that remain unattached. You can't just leave them there. So where do you put them?

Multiple Covalent Bonds

Some molecules are not able to satisfy the octet rule by making only single covalent bonds between the atoms. Consider the compound ethene, which has a molecular formula of C_2H_4. The carbon atoms are bonded together, with each carbon also bonded to two hydrogen atoms.

$$\text{two C atoms } = 2 \times 4 = 8 \text{ valence electrons}$$

$$\text{four H atoms } = 4 \times 1 = 4 \text{ valence electrons}$$

$$\text{total of 12 valence electrons in the molecule}$$

If the Lewis electron dot structure was drawn with a single bond between the carbon atoms and with the octet rule followed, it would look like this:

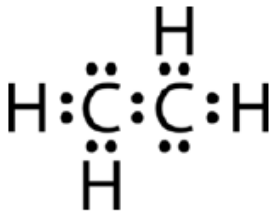


Figure 7.5.3.1: Incorrect dot structure of ethene. (CK12 License)

This Lewis structure is incorrect because it contains a total of 14 electrons. However, the Lewis structure can be changed by eliminating the lone pairs on the carbon atoms and having to share two pairs instead of only one pair.

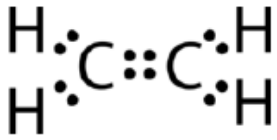


Figure 7.5.3.2: Correct dot structure for ethene. (CK12 License)

A **double covalent bond** is a covalent bond formed by atoms that share two pairs of electrons. The double covalent bond that occurs between the two carbon atoms in ethane can also be represented by a structural formula and with a molecular model as shown in the figure below.

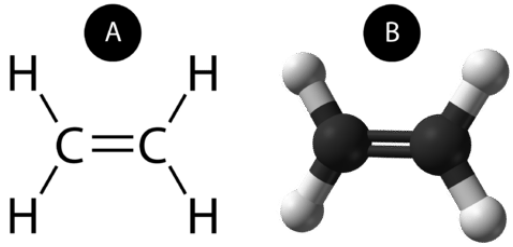


Figure 7.5.3.3: (A) The structural model for C_2H_4 consists of a double covalent bond between the two carbon atoms and single bonds to the hydrogen atoms. (B) Molecular model of C_2H_4.

A **triple covalent bond** is a covalent bond formed by atoms that share three pairs of electrons. The element nitrogen is a gas that composes the majority of Earth's atmosphere. A nitrogen atom has five valence electrons, which can be shown as one pair and three single electrons. When combining with another nitrogen atom to form a diatomic molecule, the three single electrons on each atom combine to form three shared pairs of electrons.

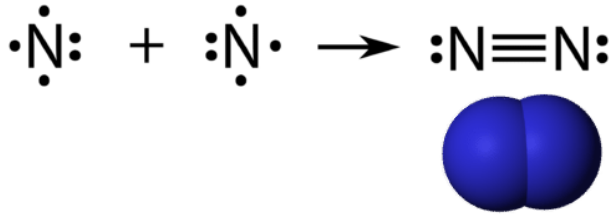


Figure 7.5.3.4: Triple bond in N_2.

Each nitrogen atom follows the octet rule with one lone pair of electrons, and six electrons that are shared between the atoms.

Summary

- Covalent bonds are formed when atoms share electrons.
- Lewis electron dot diagrams can be drawn to illustrate covalent bond formation.
- Double bonds or triple bonds between atoms may be necessary to properly illustrate the bonding in some molecules.

Contributions & Attributions

-

- Anonymous by request

Answers

Exercise 7.5.3.1



This page titled 7.5.3: Covalent Lewis Structures- Electrons Shared is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 10.4: Covalent Lewis Structures- Electrons Shared by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew has no license indicated.

7.6: WRITING LEWIS STRUCTURES FOR COVALENT COMPOUNDS

Learning Objectives

- Draw Lewis structures for covalent compounds.

We have established that molecules form by sharing electrons in covalent bonds. Also, that there are several ways in which these electrons could be shared. However, there is a little bit involved in determining how electrons are shared in a particular molecule. We will go through a series of steps in this section which will help determine the correct sharing of electrons in most molecules. Prior to starting on this section, it is important that you know how to determine the number of valence electrons of any element. Please review the previous section where this was discussed prior to starting this section.

Additional ideas related to Lewis structures for molecules will be discussed in the 2 subsections. We will discuss additional considerations for some molecules when more than one Lewis structure might be possible. We will also mention some exceptions to the octet rule.

The following procedure can be used to construct Lewis electron structures for more complex molecules and ions.

How-to: Constructing Lewis electron structures

1. Determine the total number of valence electrons in the molecule or ion.

- Add together the valence electrons from each atom. (Recall that the number of valence electrons is indicated by the position of the element in the periodic table.)

For OF_2, for example, the oxygen has 6 electrons and each of the 2 fluorines has 7 electrons for a total of 20 electrons.

- If the species is a polyatomic ion, remember to add or subtract the number of electrons necessary to give the total charge on the ion.

  For CO_3^{2-}, for example, we add two electrons to the total because of the –2 charge.

2. Arrange the atoms to show specific connections.

- To begin with, we will consider molecules that have only one central atom along with 2 or more terminal atoms. When we say an atom is central in the molecule, that means each of the other atoms is connected to that central atom. When we say an atom is terminal in the molecule, that means the atom is connected only to the central atom and not to other atoms. (If the molecule has only 2 atoms in it, the distinction between central and terminal doesn't mean anything.)
- When there is a central atom, chemists usually list this central atom first in the chemical formula (as in CCl_4 and CO_3^{2-}, which both have C as the central atom).
- Hydrogen is always connected to only one other atom, so it is always *terminal* rather than central even if it is first in the formula.

3. Place a bonding pair of electrons between each pair of adjacent atoms to give a single bond.

- In H_2O, for example, there is a bonding pair of electrons between oxygen and each hydrogen.

4. Beginning with the terminal atoms, add enough electrons to each atom to give each atom an octet (two for hydrogen).

- These added electrons will usually be lone pairs.
- Remember to count the bonding electrons on these terminal atoms while determining if they have enough electrons to satisfy the octet rule.

5. If any electrons are left over, place them on the central atom.

- Determine the number of left over electrons by counting all of the electrons that have already been added (either as lone pairs or in each of the single bonds) and comparing it to the total number of electrons that you counted in the first step. If they are the same, then there are no leftover electrons. If you had more electrons in the first step, then you are able to add the difference between that amount and the amount you have here.
- We will explain later that some atoms are able to accommodate more than eight electrons.

6. If the central atom has fewer electrons than an octet, use lone pairs from terminal atoms to form multiple (double or triple) bonds to the central atom to achieve an octet.

- This will not change the number of electrons on the terminal atoms, as you are moving the electrons when you do this.

7. Final check

- Always make sure all valence electrons are accounted for. This means that the number of electrons you counted in step one is the same as the number of electrons you can count in step six.
- Each atom has an octet of electrons, except for hydrogen (with two electrons).

Now let's apply this procedure to some particular compounds, beginning with one we have already discussed.

Example 7.6.1: Water

Write the Lewis Structure for H_2O.

Solution

Steps for Writing Lewis Structures	**Example** 7.6.1
1. Determine the total number of valence electrons in the molecule or ion.	Each H atom (group 1) has 1 valence electron, and the O atom (group 16) has 6 valence electrons, for a total of 8 valence electrons.
2. Arrange the atoms to show specific connections.	**H O H** Because H atoms are always terminal, the arrangement within the molecule must be HOH.
3. Place a bonding pair of electrons between each pair of adjacent atoms to give a single bond. 4. Beginning with the terminal atoms, add enough electrons to each atom to give each atom an octet (two for hydrogen).	Placing one bonding pair of electrons between the O atom and each H atom gives **H -O- H** with 4 electrons left over. Each H atom has a full valence shell of 2 electrons.

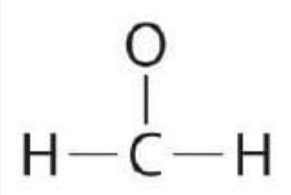
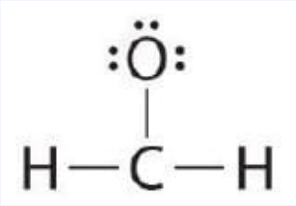
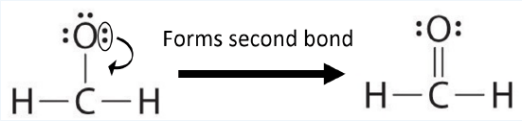
Steps for Writing Lewis Structures	Example 7.6.1
5. If any electrons are left over, place them on the central atom.	Adding the remaining 4 electrons to the oxygen (as two lone pairs) gives the following structure: 
6. If the central atom has fewer electrons than an octet, use lone pairs from terminal atoms to form multiple (double or triple) bonds to the central atom to achieve an octet.	Not necessary.
7. Final check.	The Lewis structure gives oxygen an octet and each hydrogen 2 electrons.

Example 7.6.2

Write the Lewis structure for the CH_2O molecule

Solution

Steps for Writing Lewis Structures	Example 7.6.2
1. Determine the total number of valence electrons in the molecule or ion.	Each hydrogen atom (group 1) has 1 valence electron, carbon (group 14) has 4 valence electrons, and oxygen (group 16) has 6 valence electrons, for a total of [(2)(1) + 4 + 6] = 12 valence electrons.
2. Arrange the atoms to show specific connections.	 Because carbon is first in the formula, we make it the central atom. We are assuming each of the other atoms is a terminal atom connected to the central carbon.

Steps for Writing Lewis Structures	Example 7.6.2
3. Place a bonding pair of electrons between each pair of adjacent atoms to give a single bond.	Placing a bonding pair of electrons between each pair of bonded atoms gives the following:  6 electrons are used, and 6 are left over.
4. Beginning with the terminal atoms, add enough electrons to each atom to give each atom an octet (two for hydrogen).	Adding all 6 remaining electrons to oxygen (as three lone pairs) gives the following:  Although oxygen now has an octet and each hydrogen has 2 electrons, carbon has only 6 electrons.
5. If any electrons are left over, place them on the central atom.	Not necessary. There are no electrons left to place on the central atom.
6. If the central atom has fewer electrons than an octet, use lone pairs from terminal atoms to form multiple (double or triple) bonds to the central atom to achieve an octet.	To give carbon an octet of electrons, we use one of the lone pairs of electrons on oxygen to form a carbon–oxygen double bond: 
7. Final check	The total number of electrons in the final structure is 12, which matches the total number of electrons we counted in step one. Both the oxygen and the carbon now have an octet of electrons, the O has two bonding pairs and two lone pairs, and C has four bonding pairs. Because both of these requirements have been met, this is an acceptable Lewis electron structure.

Exercise 7.6.1

Write Lewis electron structures for CO_2 and SCl_2, a vile-smelling, unstable red liquid that is used in the manufacture of rubber.

Answer CO2 available at the end of this section.

Writing Lewis Structures for Polyatomic Ions

Recall that a polyatomic ion is a group of atoms that are covalently bonded together and which carry an overall electrical charge. The ammonium ion, NH_4^+, is formed when a hydrogen ion (H^+) attaches to the lone pair of an ammonia (NH_3) molecule in a coordinate covalent bond.

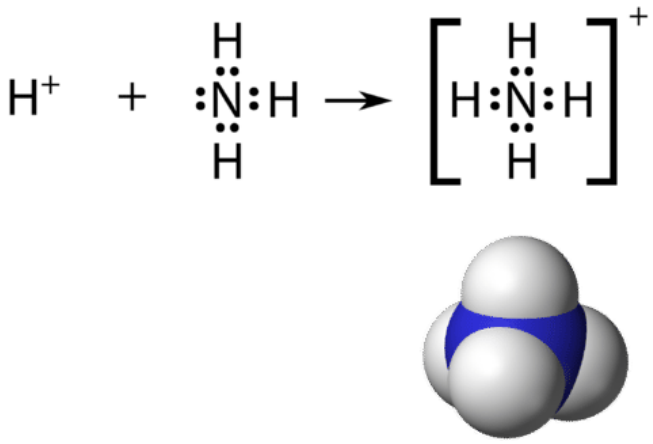


Figure 7.6.3: The ammonium ion.

When drawing the Lewis structure of a polyatomic ion, the charge of the ion is reflected in the number of total valence electrons in the structure. In the case of the ammonium ion:

1 N atom $= 5$ valence electrons

4 H atoms $= 4 \times 1 = 4$ valence electrons

subtract 1 electron for the $1+$ charge of the ion

total of 8 valence electrons in the ion

It is customary to put the Lewis structure of a polyatomic ion into a large set of brackets, with the charge of the ion as a superscript outside of the brackets.

Exercise 7.6.2

Draw the Lewis electron dot structure for the sulfate ion.

Answer available at the end of this section.

Summary

Lewis dot symbols provide a simple rationalization of why elements form compounds with the observed formulas. In Lewis electron structures, we encounter **bonding pairs**, which are shared by two atoms, and **lone pairs**, which are not shared between atoms. A process for creating the correct Lewis structures involves 2 criteria: (1) making sure the total number of valence electrons is the same in the molecule as in the sum of the individual atoms which make it up, and (2) making sure that each atom in the

structure follows the octet rule. Lewis structures for polyatomic ions follow the same rules as those for other covalent compounds.

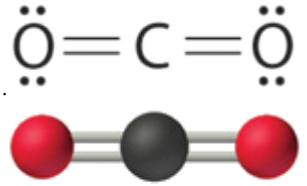
Contributions & Attributions

This page was constructed from content via the following contributor(s) and edited (topically or extensively) by the LibreTexts development team to meet platform style, presentation, and quality:

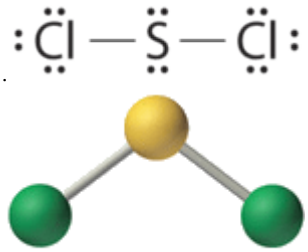
- Modified by Joshua Halpern (Howard University)
-
- Marisa Alviar-Agnew (Sacramento City College)
- Henry Agnew (UC Davis)

Answers

Exercise 7.6.1

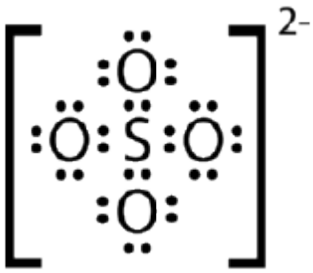


Carbon dioxide



Sulfur dichloride

Exercise 7.6.2



7.6.1: Resonance - Equivalent Lewis Structures for the Same Molecule

7.6.2: Exceptions to the Octet Rule

This page titled 7.6: Writing Lewis Structures for Covalent Compounds is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

7.6.1: Resonance - Equivalent Lewis Structures for the Same Molecule

Learning Objectives

- Explain the concept of resonance and how it works with within molecules.

Resonance

There are some cases in which more than one viable Lewis structure can be drawn for a molecule. An example is the ozone (O_3) molecule in Figure $7.6.1.1$. There are a total of 18 electrons in the structure and so the following two structures are possible.

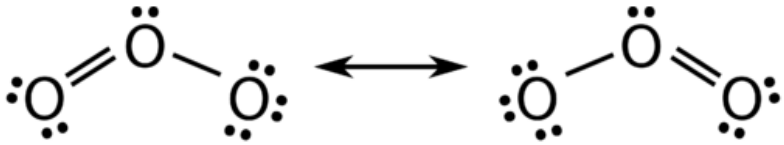


Figure $7.6.1.1$: Resonance forms of ozone. Note the use of the double-headed arrow.

The structure on the left $(7.6.1.1)$ can be converted to the structure on the right by a shifting of electrons without altering the positions of the atoms.

It was once thought that the structure of a molecule such as O_3 consisted of one single bond and one double bond which then shifted back and forth as shown above. However, further studies showed that the two bonds are identical. Any double covalent bond between two given atoms is typically shorter than a single covalent bond. Studies of the O_3 and other similar molecules showed that the bonds were identical in length. Interestingly, the length of the bond is in between the lengths expected for an $O{-}O$ single bond and a double bond.

Resonance is the use of two or more Lewis structures to represent the covalent bonding in a molecule. One of the valid structures is referred to as a resonance structure. It is now understood that the true structure of a molecule which displays resonance is that of an average or a hybrid of all the resonance structures. In the case of the O_3 molecule, each of the covalent bonds between O atoms are best thought of as being "one and a half" bonds, as opposed to either a pure single bond or a pure double bond. This "half-bond" can be shown as a dotted line in both the Lewis structure and the molecular model (Figure $7.6.1.2$).



Figure $7.6.1.2$: "Half-bond" model of ozone molecule. This is a better description of the electronic structure of ozone than either of the resonance structures in Figure $7.6.1.1$.

Many polyatomic ions also display resonance. In some cases, the true structure may be an average of three valid resonance structures, as in the case of the nitrate ion, NO_3^- in Figure $7.6.1.3$.

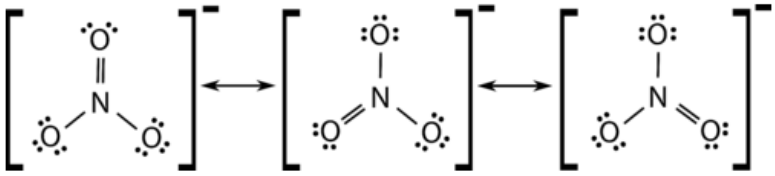


Figure $7.6.1.3$: Resonance structure of nitrate anion.

The bond lengths between the central N atom and each O atom are identical and the bonds can be approximated as being equal to one and one-third bonds.

Summary

- Resonance structures are averages of different Lewis structure possibilities.
- Bond lengths are intermediate between covalent bonds and covalent double bonds.

This page titled 7.6.1: Resonance - Equivalent Lewis Structures for the Same Molecule is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 10.6: Resonance - Equivalent Lewis Structures for the Same Molecule by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

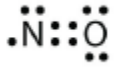
7.6.2: Exceptions to the Octet Rule

Learning Objectives

- Recognize when there is an exception to the octet rule.

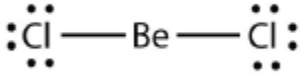
As important and useful as the octet rule is in chemical bonding, there are some well-known violations. This does not mean that the octet rule is useless—quite the contrary. As with many rules, there are exceptions.

There are three violations to the octet rule. Odd-electron molecules represent the first violation to the octet rule. Although they are few, some stable compounds have an odd number of electrons in their valence shells. With an odd number of electrons, at least one atom in the molecule will have to violate the octet rule. Examples of stable odd-electron molecules are NO, NO_2, and ClO_2. The Lewis electron dot diagram for NO is as follows:

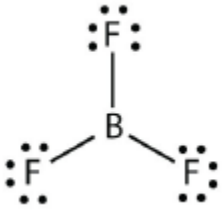


Although the O atom has an octet of electrons, the N atom has only seven electrons in its valence shell. Although NO is a stable compound, it is very chemically reactive, as are most other odd-electron compounds.

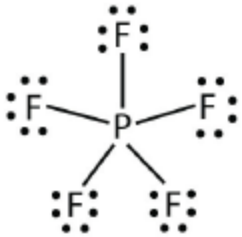
Electron-deficient molecules represent the second violation to the octet rule. These stable compounds have less than eight electrons around an atom in the molecule. The most common examples are the covalent compounds of beryllium and boron. For example, beryllium can form two covalent bonds, resulting in only four electrons in its valence shell:



Boron commonly makes only three covalent bonds, resulting in only six valence electrons around the B atom. A well-known example is BF_3:



The third violation to the octet rule is found in those compounds with more than eight electrons assigned to their valence shell. These are called expanded valence shell molecules. Such compounds are formed only by central atoms in the third row of the periodic table or beyond that have empty *d* orbitals in their valence shells that can participate in covalent bonding. One such compound is PF_5. The only reasonable Lewis electron dot diagram for this compound has the P atom making five covalent bonds:



Formally, the P atom has 10 electrons in its valence shell.

Example 7.6.2.3: Octet Violations

Identify each violation to the octet rule by drawing a Lewis electron dot diagram.

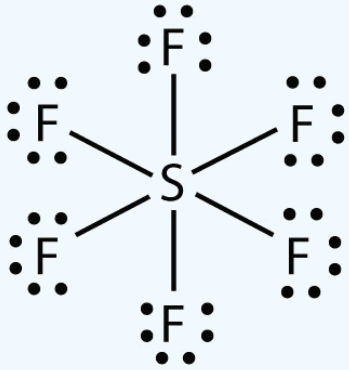
a. ClO
b. SF_6

Solution

a. With one Cl atom and one O atom, this molecule has 6 + 7 = 13 valence electrons, so it is an odd-electron molecule. A Lewis electron dot diagram for this molecule is as follows:



b. In SF_6, the central S atom makes six covalent bonds to the six surrounding F atoms, so it is an expanded valence shell molecule. Its Lewis electron dot diagram is as follows:



Exercise 7.6.2.3: Xenon Difluoride

Identify the violation to the octet rule in XeF_2 by drawing a Lewis electron dot diagram.

Answer available at the end of this section.

Summary

There are three exceptions to the octet rule: odd-electron molecules, electron-deficient molecules, and expanded valence shell molecules.

Contributions & Attributions

This page was constructed from content via the following contributor(s) and edited (topically or extensively) by the LibreTexts development team to meet platform style, presentation, and quality:

- Modified by Joshua Halpern (Howard University)
-
- Marisa Alviar-Agnew (Sacramento City College)
- Henry Agnew (UC Davis)

Answers

Exercise 7.6.2.3**: Xenon Difluoride**



The Xe atom has an expanded valence shell with more than eight electrons around it.

This page titled 7.6.2: Exceptions to the Octet Rule is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

7.7: Predicting the Shapes of Molecules

Learning Objective

- Determine the shape of simple molecules.

Molecules have shapes. There is an abundance of experimental evidence to that effect—from their physical properties to their chemical reactivity. Small molecules—molecules with a single central atom—have shapes that can be easily predicted. The basic idea in molecular shapes is called **valence shell electron pair repulsion (VSEPR).** VSEPR says that electron pairs, being composed of negatively charged particles, repel each other to get as far away from one another as possible. VSEPR makes a distinction between *electron group geometry*, which expresses how electron groups (bonds and nonbonding electron pairs) are arranged, and *molecular geometry*, which expresses how the atoms in a molecule are arranged. However, the two geometries are related.

There are two types of **electron groups**: any type of bond—single, double, or triple—and lone electron pairs. When applying VSEPR to simple molecules, the first thing to do is to count the number of electron groups around the central atom. Remember that a multiple bond counts as only *one* electron group.

Any molecule with only two atoms is linear. A molecule whose central atom contains only two electron groups orients those two groups as far apart from each other as possible—180° apart. When the two electron groups are 180° apart, the atoms attached to those electron groups are also 180° apart, so the overall molecular shape is linear. Examples include BeH_2 and CO_2:



Figure 7.7.1: Beryllium hydride and carbon dioxide bonding.

The two molecules, shown in the figure below in a "ball and stick" model.

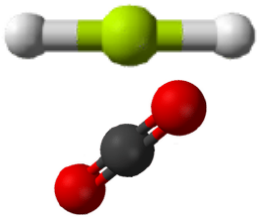


Figure 7.7.2: Beryllium hydride and carbon dioxide models. (CK12 Licence)

A molecule with three electron groups orients the three groups as far apart as possible. They adopt the positions of an equilateral triangle—120° apart and in a plane. The shape of such molecules is *trigonal planar*. An example is BF_3:

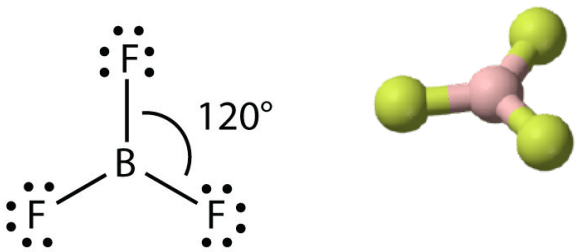


Figure 7.7.3: Boron trifluoride bonding. (CK12 Licence)

Some substances have a trigonal planar electron group distribution but have atoms bonded to only two of the three electron groups. An example is GeF_2:

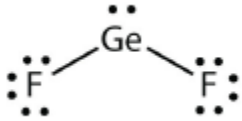


Figure 7.7.4: Germanium difluoride bonding.

From an electron group geometry perspective, GeF_2 has a trigonal planar shape, but its real shape is dictated by the positions of the atoms. This shape is called *bent* or *angular*.

A molecule with four electron groups about the central atom orients the four groups in the direction of a tetrahedron, as shown in Figure 7.7.1 Tetrahedral Geometry. If there are four atoms attached to these electron groups, then the molecular shape is also *tetrahedral*. Methane (CH_4) is an example.

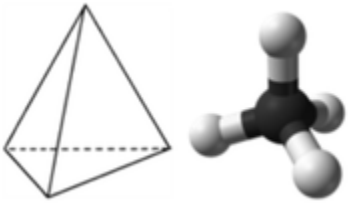


Figure 7.7.5: Tetrahedral structure of methane. (CK12 Licence)

This diagram of CH_4 illustrates the standard convention of displaying a three-dimensional molecule on a two-dimensional surface. The straight lines are in the plane of the page, the solid wedged line is coming out of the plane toward the reader, and the dashed wedged line is going out of the plane away from the reader.

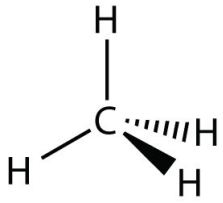


Figure 7.7.6: Methane bonding. (CK12 Licence)

NH_3 is an example of a molecule whose central atom has four electron groups, but only three of them are bonded to surrounding atoms.

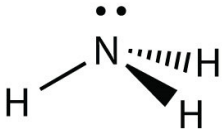


Figure 7.7.7: Ammonia bonding. (CK12 Licence)

Although the electron groups are oriented in the shape of a tetrahedron, from a molecular geometry perspective, the shape of NH_3 is *trigonal pyramidal*.

H_2O is an example of a molecule whose central atom has four electron groups, but only two of them are bonded to surrounding atoms.



Figure 7.7.8: Water bonding.

Although the electron groups are oriented in the shape of a tetrahedron, the shape of the molecule is *bent* or *angular*. A molecule with four electron groups about the central atom, but only one electron group bonded to another atom, is linear because there are only two atoms in the molecule.

Double or triple bonds count as a single electron group. The Lewis electron dot diagram of formaldehyde (CH_2O) is shown in Figure 7.7.9.

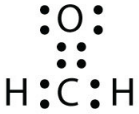


Figure 7.7.9: Lewis Electron Dot Diagram of Formaldehyde.

The central C atom has three electron groups around it because the double bond counts as one electron group. The three electron groups repel each other to adopt a trigonal planar shape.

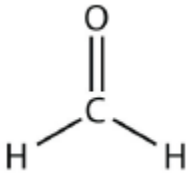


Figure 7.7.10: Formaldehyde bonding.

(The lone electron pairs on the O atom are omitted for clarity.) The molecule will not be a perfect equilateral triangle because the C–O double bond is different from the two C–H bonds, but both planar and triangular describe the appropriate approximate shape of this molecule.

Table 7.7.1 summarizes the shapes of molecules based on the number of electron groups and surrounding atoms.

Table 7.7.1: Summary of Molecular Shapes

Number of Electron Groups on Central Atom	Number of Bonding Groups	Number of Lone Pairs	Approximate angle between electron groups	Electron Geometry	Molecular Shape
2	2	0	180°	linear	linear
3	3	0	120°	trigonal planar	trigonal planar
3	2	1	120°	trigonal planar	bent
4	4	0	109.5°	tetrahedral	tetrahedral
4	3	1	109.5°	tetrahedral	trigonal pyramidal
4	2	2	109.5°	tetrahedral	bent

Example 7.7.1

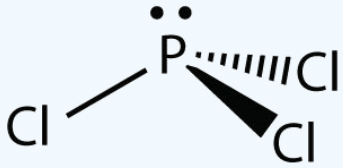
What is the approximate shape of each molecule?

a. PCl3
b. NOF

Solution

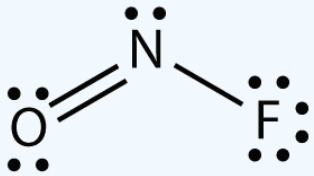
The first step is to draw the Lewis structure of the molecule.

For $\mathrm{PCl_3}$, the electron dot diagram is as follows:



The lone electron pairs on the Cl atoms are omitted for clarity. The P atom has four electron groups with three of them bonded to surrounding atoms, so the molecular shape is trigonal pyramidal.

The electron dot diagram for NOF is as follows:



The N atom has three electron groups on it, two of which are bonded to other atoms. The molecular shape is bent.

Exercise 7.7.1

What is the approximate molecular shape of $\mathrm{CH_2Cl_2}$?

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 7.7.2

Ethylene ($\mathrm{C_2H_4}$) has two central atoms. Determine the geometry around each central atom and the shape of the overall molecule. (Hint: hydrogen is a terminal atom.)

Answer available at the end of this section.

Answer available at the end of this section.

Summary

The approximate shape of a molecule can be predicted from the number of electron groups and the number of surrounding

atoms.

Answers

Exercise 7.7.1

Tetrahedral

Exercise 7.7.2

Exercise 7.7.2

Trigonal planar about both central C atoms.

This page titled 7.7: Predicting the Shapes of Molecules is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 10.7: Predicting the Shapes of Molecules by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew has no license indicated.

7.8: Electronegativity and Polarity

Learning Objectives

- Explain how polar compounds differ from nonpolar compounds.
- Determine if a molecule is polar or nonpolar.
- Given a pair of compounds, predict which would have a higher melting or boiling point.

Bond Polarity

The ability of an atom in a molecule to attract shared electrons is called **electronegativity**. When two atoms combine, the difference between their electronegativities is an indication of the type of bond that will form. If the difference between the electronegativities of the two atoms is small, neither atom can take the shared electrons completely away from the other atom, and the bond will be covalent. If the difference between the electronegativities is large, the more electronegative atom will take the bonding electrons completely away from the other atom (electron transfer will occur), and the bond will be ionic. This is why metals (low electronegativities) bonded with nonmetals (high electronegativities) typically produce ionic compounds.

A bond may be so polar that an electron actually transfers from one atom to another, forming a true ionic bond. How do we judge the degree of polarity? Scientists have devised a scale called **electronegativity**, a scale for judging how much atoms of any element attract electrons. Electronegativity is a unitless number; the higher the number, the more an atom attracts electrons. A common scale for electronegativity is shown in Figure 7.8.1.

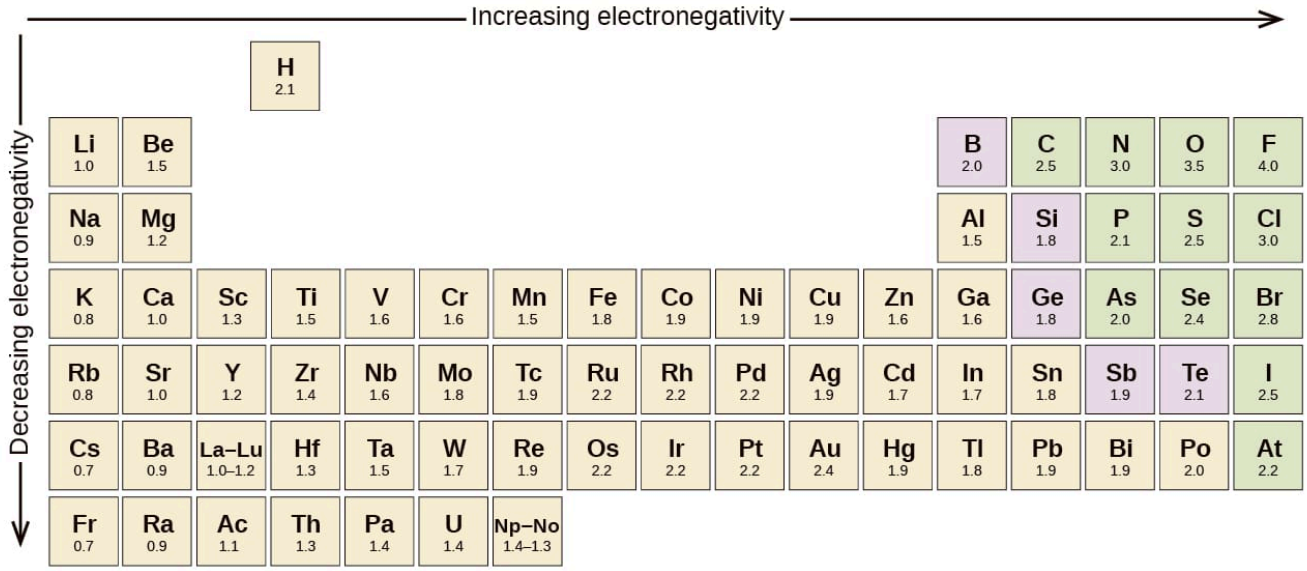


Figure 7.8.1: Electronegativities of the Elements. Electronegativities are used to determine the polarity of covalent bonds.

The polarity of a covalent bond can be judged by determining the *difference* of the electronegativities of the two atoms involved in the covalent bond, as summarized in the following table:

difference of the electronegativities of the two atoms involved in the covalent bond

Electronegativity Difference	Bond Type
0–0.4	pure covalent
0.5–2.0	polar covalent
>2.0	likely ionic

Nonpolar Covalent Bonds

A bond in which the electronegativity difference is less than 1.9 is considered to be mostly covalent in character. However, at this point we need to distinguish between two general types of covalent bonds. A **nonpolar covalent bond** is a covalent bond in which the bonding electrons are shared equally between the two atoms. In a nonpolar covalent bond, the distribution of electrical charge is balanced between the two atoms.

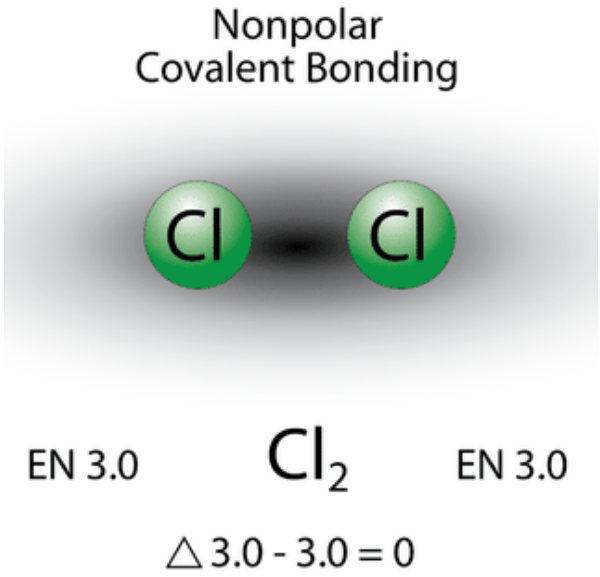


Figure 7.8.2: A nonpolar covalent bond is one in which the distribution of electron density between the two atoms is equal.

The two chlorine atoms share the pair of electrons in the single covalent bond equally, and the electron density surrounding the $\mathrm{Cl_2}$ molecule is symmetrical. Also note that molecules in which the electronegativity difference is very small (<0.5) are also considered nonpolar covalent. An example would be a bond between chlorine and bromine ($\Delta \mathrm{EN} = 3.0 - 2.8 = 0.2$).

Polar Covalent Bonds

A bond in which the electronegativity difference between the atoms is between 0.5 and 2.0 is called a polar covalent bond. A **polar covalent bond** is a covalent bond in which the atoms have an unequal attraction for electrons and so the sharing is unequal. In a polar covalent bond, sometimes simply called a polar bond, the distribution of electrons around the molecule is no longer symmetrical.

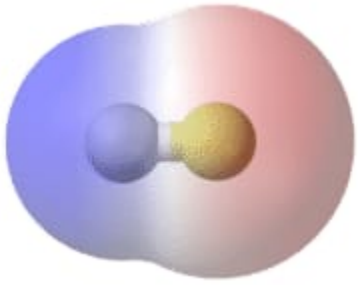


Figure 7.8.3: In the polar covalent bond of HF, the electron density is unevenly distributed. There is a higher density (red) near the fluorine atom, and a lower density (blue) near the hydrogen atom.

An easy way to illustrate the uneven electron distribution in a polar covalent bond is to use the Greek letter delta (δ).

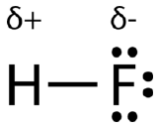


Figure 7.8.4: Use of δ to indicate partial charge.

The atom with the greater electronegativity acquires a partial negative charge, while the atom with the lesser electronegativity acquires a partial positive charge. The delta symbol is used to indicate that the quantity of charge is less than one. A crossed arrow can also be used to indicate the direction of greater electron density.

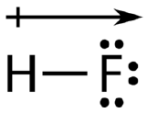


Figure 7.8.5: Use of crossed arrow to indicate polarity.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Electronegativity differences in bonding using Pauling scale. Differences in electronegativity classify bonds as covalent, polar covalent, or ionic.

Example 7.8.1: Bond Polarity

What is the polarity of each bond?

a. C–H
b. O–H

Solution

Using Figure 7.8.1, we can calculate the difference of the electronegativities of the atoms involved in the bond.

a. For the C–H bond, the difference in the electronegativities is 2.5 – 2.1 = 0.4. Thus we predict that this bond will be nonpolar covalent.
b. For the O–H bond, the difference in electronegativities is 3.5 – 2.1 = 1.4, so we predict that this bond will be polar covalent.

Exercise 7.8.1

What is the polarity of each bond?

a. Rb–F
b. P–Cl

Answer a available at the end of this section.

cK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Molecular Polarity

To determine if a molecule is polar or nonpolar, it is generally useful to look at Lewis structures. **Nonpolar compounds** will be symmetric, meaning all of the sides around the central atom are identical—bonded to the same element with no unshared pairs of electrons. **Polar molecules** are asymmetric, either containing lone pairs of electrons on a central atom or having atoms with different electronegativities bonded. This works pretty well, as long as you can visualize the molecular geometry. That's the hard part. To know how the bonds are oriented in space, you have to have a strong grasp of Lewis structures and VSEPR theory. Assuming that you do, you can look at the structure of each one and decide if it is polar or not, *whether or not you know the individual atom's electronegativity*. This is because you know that all bonds between dissimilar elements are polar, and in these particular examples, it doesn't matter which direction the dipole moment vectors are pointing (out or in).

A **polar molecule** is a molecule in which one end of the molecule is slightly positive, while the other end is slightly negative. A diatomic molecule that consists of a polar covalent bond, such as HF, is a polar molecule. The two electrically charged regions on either end of the molecule are called poles, similar to a magnet having a north and a south pole. A molecule with two poles is called a **dipole** (see figure below). Hydrogen fluoride is a dipole.



Figure 7.8.6: A dipole is any molecule with a positive end and a negative end, resulting from unequal distribution of electron density throughout the molecule.

For molecules with more than two atoms, the molecular geometry must also be taken into account when determining if the molecule is polar or nonpolar. The figure below shows a comparison between carbon dioxide and water. Carbon dioxide $(\mathrm{CO_2})$ is a linear molecule. The oxygen atoms are more electronegative than the carbon atom, so there are two individual dipoles pointing outward from the C atom to each O atom. However, since the dipoles are of equal strength and are oriented this way, they cancel out and the overall molecular polarity of $\mathrm{CO_2}$ is zero.

Water is a bent molecule because of the two lone pairs on the central oxygen atom. The individual dipoles point from the H atoms toward the O atom. Because of the shape, the dipoles do not cancel each other out and the water molecule is polar. In the figure below, the net dipole is shown in blue and points upward.

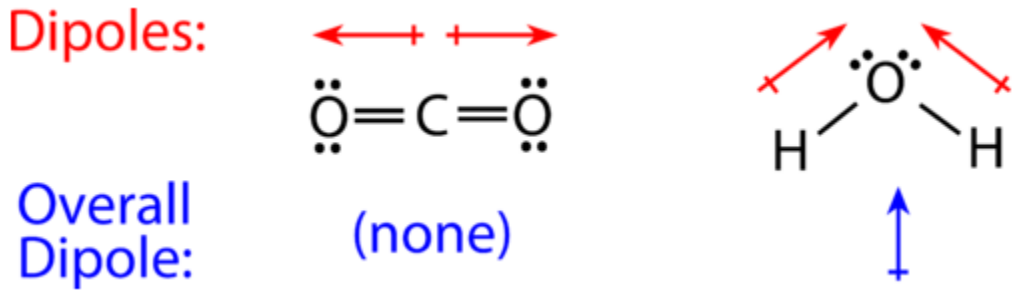


Figure 7.8.7: The molecular geometry of a molecule affects its polarity. Each CO bond has a dipole moment, but they point in opposite directions so that the net CO2 molecule is nonpolar. In contrast, water is polar because the OH bond moments do not cancel out.

Some other molecules are shown in the figure below. Notice that a tetrahedral molecule such as $\mathrm{CH_4}$ is nonpolar. However, if one of the peripheral H atoms is replaced with another atom that has a different electronegativity, the molecule becomes polar. A trigonal planar molecule $(\mathrm{BF_3})$ may be nonpolar if all three peripheral atoms are the same, but a trigonal pyramidal molecule $(\mathrm{NH_3})$ is polar.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

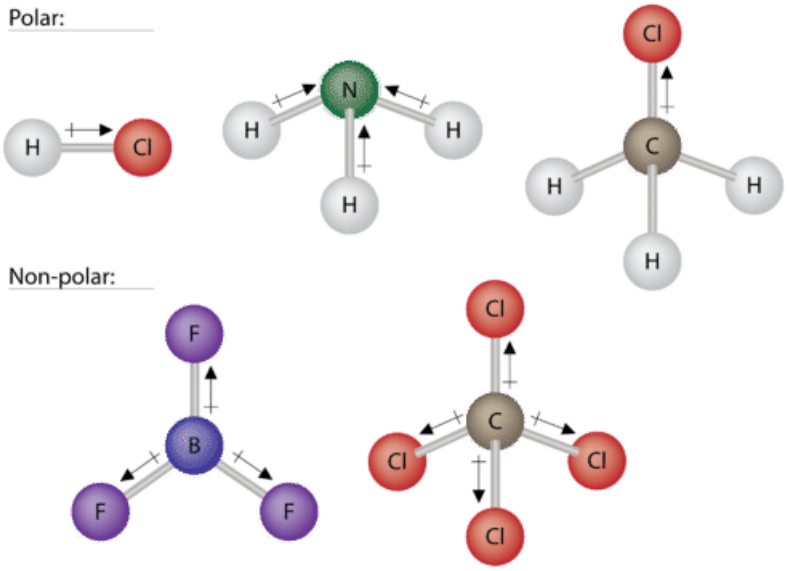


Figure 7.8.8: Some examples of polar and nonpolar molecules based on molecular geometry.

To summarize, to be polar, a molecule must:

1. Contain at least one polar covalent bond.
2. Have a molecular structure such that the sum of the vectors of each bond dipole moment do not cancel.

Steps to Identify Polar Molecules

1. Draw the Lewis structure.
2. Figure out the geometry (using VSEPR theory).
3. Visualize or draw the geometry.
4. Find the net dipole moment (you don't have to actually do calculations if you can visualize it).
5. If the net dipole moment is zero, it is non-polar. Otherwise, it is polar.

Properties of Polar Molecules

Polar molecules tend to align when placed in an electric field with the positive end of the molecule oriented toward the negative plate and the negative end toward the positive plate (Figure 7.8.14). We can use an electrically charged object to attract polar molecules, but nonpolar molecules are not attracted. Also, polar solvents are better at dissolving polar substances, and nonpolar solvents are better at dissolving nonpolar substances.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

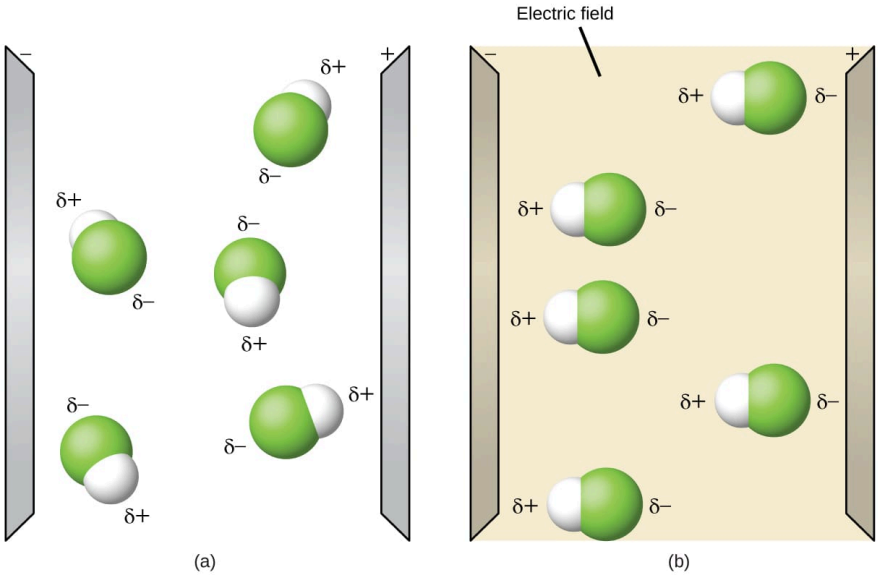


Figure 7.8.9: (a) Molecules are always randomly distributed in the liquid state in the absence of an electric field. (b) When an electric field is applied, polar molecules like HF will align to the dipoles with the field direction. (OpenStax CC-BY-SA);

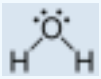
While molecules can be described as "polar covalent" or "ionic", it must be noted that this is often a relative term, with one molecule simply being *more polar* or *less polar* than another. However, the following properties are typical of such molecules. Polar molecules tend to:

- have higher melting points than nonpolar molecules
- have higher boiling points than nonpolar molecules
- be more soluble in water (dissolve better) than nonpolar molecules
- have lower vapor pressures than nonpolar molecules

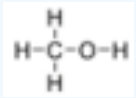
Example 7.8.2:

Label each of the following as polar or nonpolar.

a. Water, H_2O:



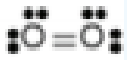
b. Methanol, CH_3OH:



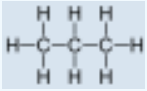
c. Hydrogen Cyanide, HCN:



d. Oxygen, O_2:



e. Propane, C_3H_8:



Solution

a. Water is polar. Any molecule with lone pairs of electrons around the central atom is polar.
b. Methanol is polar. This is not a symmetric molecule. The $-\mathrm{OH}$ side is different from the other 3 $-\mathrm{H}$ sides.
c. Hydrogen cyanide is polar. The molecule is not symmetric. The nitrogen and hydrogen have different electronegativities, creating an uneven pull on the electrons.
d. Oxygen is nonpolar. The molecule is symmetric. The two oxygen atoms pull on the electrons by exactly the same amount.

e. Propane is nonpolar, because it is symmetric, with H atoms bonded to every side around the central atoms and no unshared pairs of electrons.

Exercise 7.8.2

Label each of the following as polar or nonpolar.

a. $\mathrm{SO_3}$
b. $\mathrm{NH_3}$

Answer a available at the end of this section.

Answer b available at the end of this section.

Contributions & Attributions

- StackExchange (thomij).

Answers

Exercise 7.8.1
likely ionic
polar covalent

Exercise 7.8.2
nonpolar

Exercise 7.8.2
polar

This page titled 7.8: Electronegativity and Polarity is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 10.8: Electronegativity and Polarity - Why Oil and Water Do not Mix by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

7.E: Electrons and Chemical Bonds (Exercises)

9.2: Light: Electromagnetic Radiation

9.3: The Electromagnetic Spectrum

1. Choose the correct word for the following statement. Blue light has a (longer or shorter) wavelength than red light.
2. Choose the correct word for the following statement. Yellow light has a (higher or lower) frequency than blue light.
3. Choose the correct word for the following statement. Green light has a (larger or smaller) energy than red light.
4. If "light A" has a longer wavelength than "light B", then "light A" has _____ "light B".
   (a) a lower frequency than

   (b) a higher frequency than

   (c) the same frequency as

5. If "light C" has a shorter wavelength than "light D", then "light C" has _____ "light D".
   (a) a larger energy than

   (b) a smaller energy than

   (c) the same energy as

6. If "light E" has a higher frequency than "light F", then "light E" has _____ "light F".
   (a) a longer wavelength than

   (b) a shorter wavelength than

   (c) the same wavelength as

7. If "light G" has a higher frequency than "light H", then "light G" has _____ "light H".
   (a) a larger energy than

   (b) a smaller energy than

   (c) the same energy as

8. If "light J" has larger energy than "light K", then "light J" has _____ "light K".
   (a) a shorter wavelength than

   (b) a longer wavelength than

   (c) the same wavelength as

9. Which of the following statements is true?
   (a) The frequency of green light is higher than the frequency of blue light and the wavelength of green light is longer than the wavelength of blue light.

   (b) The frequency of green light is higher than the frequency of blue light and the wavelength of green light is shorter than the wavelength of blue light.

   (c) The frequency of green light is lower than the frequency of blue light and the wavelength of green light is shorter than the wavelength of blue light.

   (d) The frequency of green light is lower than the frequency of blue light and the wavelength of green light is longer than the wavelength of blue light.

(e) The frequency of green light is the same as the frequency of blue light and the wavelength of green light is shorter than the wavelength of blue light.

10. As the wavelength of electromagnetic radiation increases:
    (a) its energy increases.

    (b) its frequency increases.

    (c) its speed increases.

    (d) more than one of the above statements is true.

    (e) none of the above statements is true.

11. List three examples of electromagnetic waves.
12. Why do white objects appear white?
13. Name the colors present in white light in order of increasing frequency.
14. Why do objects appear black?

9.4: The Bohr Model: Atoms with Orbits

1. Decide whether each of the following statements is true or false:
    (a) Niels Bohr suggested that the electrons in an atom were restricted to specific orbits and thus could only have certain energies.

    (b) Bohr's model of the atom can be used to accurately predict the emission spectrum of hydrogen.

    (c) Bohr's model of the atom can be used to accurately predict the emission spectrum of neon.

    (d) According to the Bohr model, electrons have more or less energy depending on how far around an orbit they have traveled.

2. According to the Bohr model, electrons in an atom can only have certain, allowable energies. As a result, we say that the energies of these electrons are _____.
3. The Bohr model accurately predicts the emission spectra of atoms with...
    (a) less than 1 electron.

    (b) less than 2 electrons.

    (c) less than 3 electrons.

    (d) less than 4 electrons.

4. Consider an He^+ atom. Like the hydrogen atom, the He+ atom only contains 1 electron, and thus can be described by the Bohr model. Fill in the blanks in the following statements.
    (a) An electron falling from the n = 2 orbit of He^+ to the n = 1 orbit of He^+ releases _____ energy than an electron falling from the n = 3 orbit of He^+ to the n = 1 orbit of He^+.

    (b) An electron falling from the n = 2 orbit of He^+ to the n = 1 orbit of He^+ produces light with a _____ wavelength than the light produced by an electron falling from the n = 3 orbit of He^+ to the n = 1 orbit of He^+.

    (c) An electron falling from the n = 2 orbit of He^+ to the n = 1 orbit of He^+ produces light with a _____ frequency than the light produced by an electron falling from the n = 3 orbit of He^+ to the n = 1 orbit of He^+.

5. According to the Bohr model, higher energy orbits are located (closer to/further from) the atomic nucleus. This makes sense since negative electrons are (attracted to/repelled from) the positive protons in the nucleus, meaning it must take energy to move the electrons (away from/towards) the nucleus of the atom.
6. According to the Bohr model, what is the energy of an electron in the first Bohr orbit of hydrogen?
7. According to the Bohr model, what is the energy of an electron in the tenth Bohr orbit of hydrogen?

8. According to the Bohr model, what is the energy of an electron in the seventh Bohr orbit of hydrogen?
9. If an electron in a hydrogen atom has an energy of -6.06×10^{-20} J, which Bohr orbit is it in?
10. If an electron in a hydrogen atom has an energy of -2.69×10^{-20} J, which Bohr orbit is it in?
11. If an electron falls from the 5th Bohr orbital of hydrogen to the 3rd Bohr orbital of hydrogen, how much energy is released (you can give the energy as a positive number)?
12. If an electron falls from the 6th Bohr orbital of hydrogen to the 3rd Bohr orbital of hydrogen, what wavelength of light is emitted? Is this in the visible light range?

9.5: Electron Configurations and the Periodic Table

13. Use the Periodic Table to determine the energy level of the valence electrons in each of the following elements.
    (a) B

    (b) Ga

    (c) Rb

    (d) At

    (e) He

14. Fill in the blanks:
    (a) B is in the __ level block of the Periodic Table

    (b) Sr is in the __ level block of the Periodic Table

    (c) Fe is in the __ level block of the Periodic Table

    (d) Cs is in the __ level block of the Periodic Table

    (e) O is in the __ level block of the Periodic Table

15. Use the Periodic Table to determine the energy level and sublevel of the highest energy electrons in each of the following elements:
    (a) N

    (b) Ca

    (c) Rb

    (d) P

    (e) In

16. Decide whether each of the following statements is true or false.
    (a) Li has valence electrons in the $n = 1$ energy level.

    (b) Si has valence electrons in the $n = 3$ energy level.

    (c) Ga has valence electrons in the $n = 3$ energy level.

    (d) Xe has valence electrons in the $n = 5$ energy level.

    (e) P has valence electrons in the $n = 2$ energy level.

17. Match the element to the sublevel block it is found in:

(a) C	i. s sublevel block
(b) Cs	ii. *p* sublevel block
(c) Ce	iii. *d* sublevel block

(d) Cr	iv. *f* sublevel block

18. The first row of the Periodic Table has:
    (a) 1 element

    (b) 2 elements

    (c) 3 elements

    (d) 4 elements

    (e) 5 elements

19. Use the Periodic Table to determine which of the following elements has the highest energy valence electrons.
    (a) Sr

    (b) As

    (c) H

    (d) At

    (e) Na

20. Use the Periodic Table to determine which of the following elements has the lowest energy valence electrons.
    (a) Ga

    (b) B

    (c) Cs

    (d) Bi

    (e) Cl

21. Which energy level does the first row in the *d* sublevel block correspond to?

22. Identify the element with each ground state electron configuration.

    1. $[He]2s^2 2p^1$
    2. $[Ar]4s^2 3d^8$
    3. $[Kr]5s^2 4d^{10} 5p^4$
    4. $[Xe]6s^2$

23. Identify the element with each ground state electron configuration.

    1. $[He]2s^2 2p^1$
    2. $[Ar]4s^2 3d^8$
    3. $[Kr]5s^2 4d^{10} 5p^4$
    4. $[Xe]6s^2$

24. Give the complete electron configuration for each element.

    1. magnesium
    2. potassium
    3. titanium
    4. selenium
    5. iodine
    6. uranium

7. germanium

25. Give the complete electron configuration for each element.

    1. tin
    2. copper
    3. fluorine
    4. hydrogen
    5. thorium
    6. yttrium
    7. bismuth

26. Write the valence electron configuration for each element:

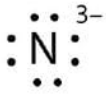
    1. samarium
    2. praseodymium
    3. boron
    4. cobalt

9.6: Lewis Electron Dot Diagrams

1. Explain why the first two dots in a Lewis electron dot diagram are drawn on the same side of the atomic symbol.
2. Is it necessary for the first dot around an atomic symbol to go on a particular side of the atomic symbol?
3. What column of the periodic table has Lewis electron dot diagrams with two electrons?
4. What column of the periodic table has Lewis electron dot diagrams that have six electrons in them?
5. Draw the Lewis electron dot diagram for each element.
    a. strontium
    b. silicon
6. Draw the Lewis electron dot diagram for each element.
    a. krypton
    b. sulfur
7. Draw the Lewis electron dot diagram for each element.
    a. titanium
    b. phosphorus
8. Draw the Lewis electron dot diagram for each element.
    a. bromine
    b. gallium
9. Draw the Lewis electron dot diagram for each ion.
    a. Mg^{2+}
    b. S^{2-}
10. Draw the Lewis electron dot diagram for each ion.
    a. In^{+}
    b. Br^{-}
11. Draw the Lewis electron dot diagram for each ion.
    a. Fe^{2+}
    b. N^{3-}
12. Draw the Lewis electron dot diagram for each ion.
    a. H^{+}
    b. H^{-}

Answers

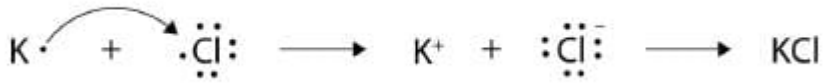
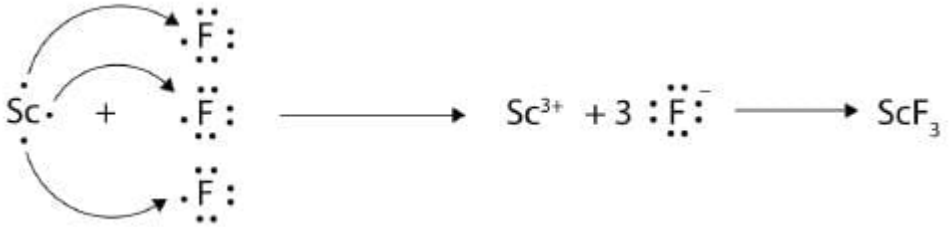
1. The first two electrons in a valence shell are s electrons, which are paired.
2.

3. the second column of the periodic table
4. 
5. a. 
   b.
6. 
7. a. 
   b.
8.
9. a. Mg^{2+}
   
   b.
10.
11. a. Fe^{2+}
    
    b.

9.7: Electron Transfer - Ionic Bonds

1. Comment on the possible formation of the K^{2+} ion. Why is its formation unlikely?
2. Comment on the possible formation of the Cl^{2-} ion. Why is its formation unlikely?
3. How many electrons does a Ba atom have to lose to have a complete octet in its valence shell?
4. How many electrons does a Pb atom have to lose to have a complete octet in its valence shell?
5. How many electrons does an Se atom have to gain to have a complete octet in its valence shell?
6. How many electrons does an N atom have to gain to have a complete octet in its valence shell?
7. With arrows, illustrate the transfer of electrons to form potassium chloride from K atoms and Cl atoms.
8. With arrows, illustrate the transfer of electrons to form magnesium sulfide from Mg atoms and S atoms.
9. With arrows, illustrate the transfer of electrons to form scandium fluoride from Sc atoms and F atoms.
10. With arrows, illustrate the transfer of electrons to form rubidium phosphide from Rb atoms and P atoms.
11. Which ionic compound has the higher lattice energy—KI or MgO? Why?
12. Which ionic compound has the higher lattice energy—KI or LiF? Why?
13. Which ionic compound has the higher lattice energy—BaS or MgO? Why?

Answers

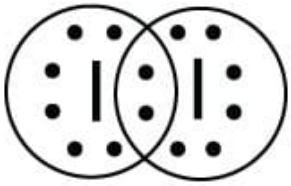
1. The K^{2+} ion is unlikely to form because the K^{+} ion already satisfies the octet rule and is rather stable.
2.
3. two
4.
5. two
6.
7. 
8.
9. 
10.
11. MgO because the ions have a higher magnitude charge
12.
13. MgO because the ions are smaller

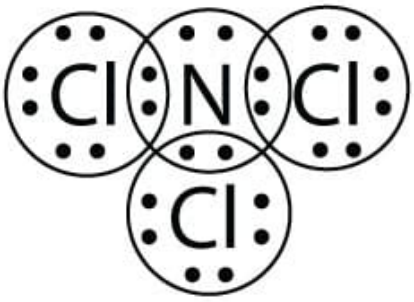
9.8: Covalent Bonds

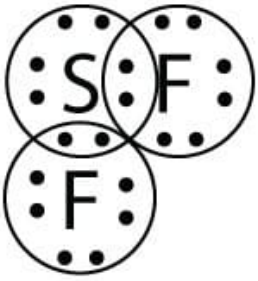
1. How many electrons will be in the valence shell of H atoms when it makes a covalent bond?
2. How many electrons will be in the valence shell of non-H atoms when they make covalent bonds?
3. What is the Lewis electron dot diagram of I_2? Circle the electrons around each atom to verify that each valence shell is filled.
4. What is the Lewis electron dot diagram of H_2S? Circle the electrons around each atom to verify that each valence shell is filled.
5. What is the Lewis electron dot diagram of NCl_3? Circle the electrons around each atom to verify that each valence shell is filled.
6. What is the Lewis electron dot diagram of SiF_4? Circle the electrons around each atom to verify that each valence shell is filled.
7. Draw the Lewis electron dot diagram for each substance.
   a. SF_2
   b. BH_4^-
8. Draw the Lewis electron dot diagram for each substance.
   a. PI_3
   b. OH^-
9. Draw the Lewis electron dot diagram for each substance.
   a. GeH_4
   b. ClF
10. Draw the Lewis electron dot diagram for each substance.
    a. AsF_3
    b. NH_4^+
11. Draw the Lewis electron dot diagram for each substance. Double or triple bonds may be needed.
    a. SiO_2
    b. C_2H_4 (assume two central atoms)
12. Draw the Lewis electron dot diagram for each substance. Double or triple bonds may be needed.

   a. CN^-
   b. C_2Cl_2 (assume two central atoms)
13. Draw the Lewis electron dot diagram for each substance. Double or triple bonds may be needed.
   a. CS_2
   b. NH_2CONH_2 (assume that the N and C atoms are the central atoms)
14. Draw the Lewis electron dot diagram for each substance. Double or triple bonds may be needed.
   a. POCl
   b. HCOOH (assume that the C atom and one O atom are the central atoms)

Answers

1. two
2. 

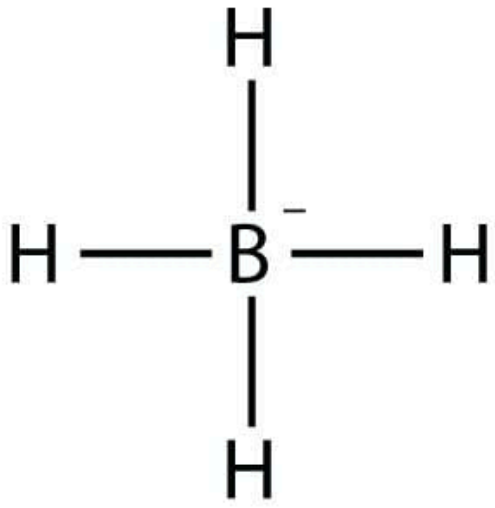
3.
4. 

5.
6. 

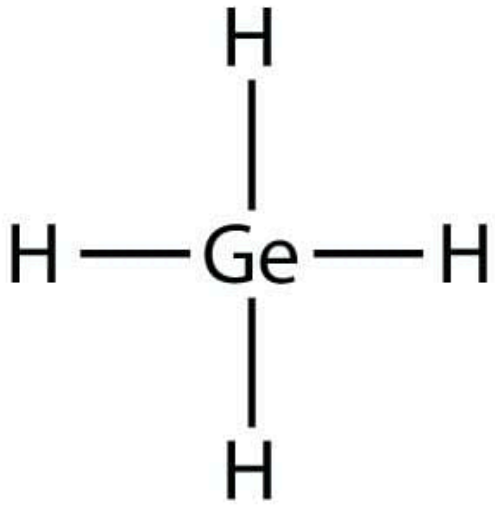
7. a.

b.

8.



9. a.

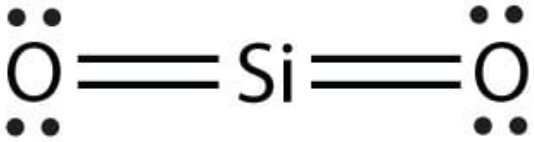


b.

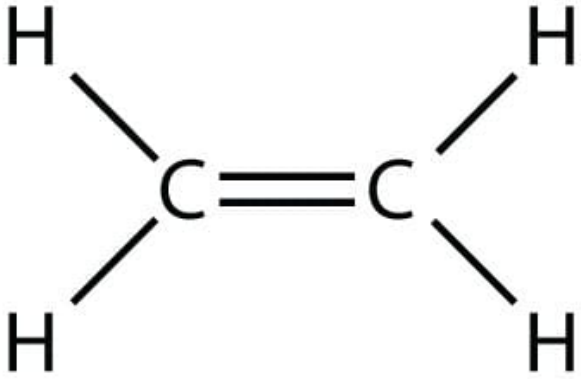
10.



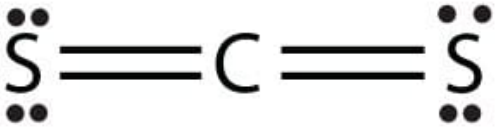
11. a.



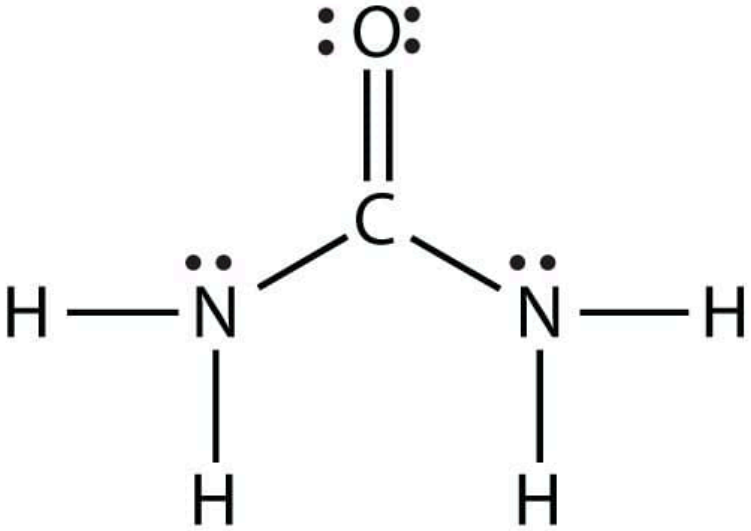
b.



12.



13. a.



b.

9.9: Other Aspects of Covalent Bonds

1. Give an example of a nonpolar covalent bond. How do you know it is nonpolar?
2. Give an example of a polar covalent bond. How do you know it is polar?
3. How do you know which side of a polar bond has the partial negative charge? Identify the negatively charged side of each polar bond.
   a. H–Cl
   b. H–S
4. How do you know which side of a polar bond has the partial positive charge? Identify the positively charged side of each polar bond.
   a. H–Cl
   b. N-F

5. Label the bond between the given atoms as nonpolar covalent, slightly polar covalent, definitely polar covalent, or likely ionic.
   a. H and C
   b. C and F
   c. K and F
6. Label the bond between the given atoms as nonpolar covalent, slightly polar covalent, definitely polar covalent, or likely ionic.
   a. S and Cl
   b. P and O
   c. Cs and O
7. Which covalent bond is stronger—a C–C bond or a C–H bond?
8. Which covalent bond is stronger—an O–O double bond or an N–N double bond?
9. Estimate the enthalpy change for this reaction: $N_2 + 3H_2 \rightarrow 2NH_3$ .Start by drawing the Lewis electron dot diagrams for each substance.
10. Estimate the enthalpy change for this reaction. Start by drawing the Lewis electron dot diagrams for each substance: $HN{=}NH + 2H_2 \rightarrow 2NH_3$
11. Estimate the enthalpy change for this reaction. Start by drawing the Lewis electron dot diagrams for each substance: $CH_4 + 2O_2 \rightarrow CO_2 + 2H_2O$
12. Estimate the enthalpy change for this reaction. Start by drawing the Lewis electron dot diagrams for each substance: $4NH_3 + 3O_2 \rightarrow 2N_2 + 6H_2O$

Answers

1. H–H; it is nonpolar because the two atoms have the same electronegativities (answers will vary).
2.
3. a. Cl side
   b. S side
4.
5. a. slightly polar covalent
   b. definitely polar covalent
   c. likely ionic
6.
7. C–H bond
8.
9. –80 kJ
10.
11. –798 kJ

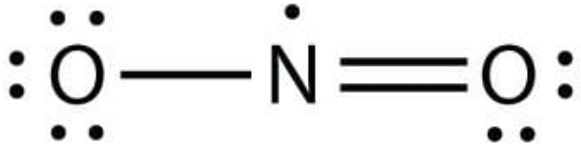
9.10: Violations of the Octet Rule

1. Why can an odd-electron molecule not satisfy the octet rule?
2. Why can an atom in the second row of the periodic table not form expanded valence shell molecules?
3. Draw an acceptable Lewis electron dot diagram for these molecules that violate the octet rule.
   a. NO_2
   b. XeF_4
4. Draw an acceptable Lewis electron dot diagram for these molecules that violate the octet rule.
   a. BCl_3
   b. ClO_2
5. Draw an acceptable Lewis electron dot diagram for these molecules that violate the octet rule.
   a. POF_3
   b. ClF_3
6. Draw an acceptable Lewis electron dot diagram for these molecules that violate the octet rule.
   a. SF_4
   b. BeH_2

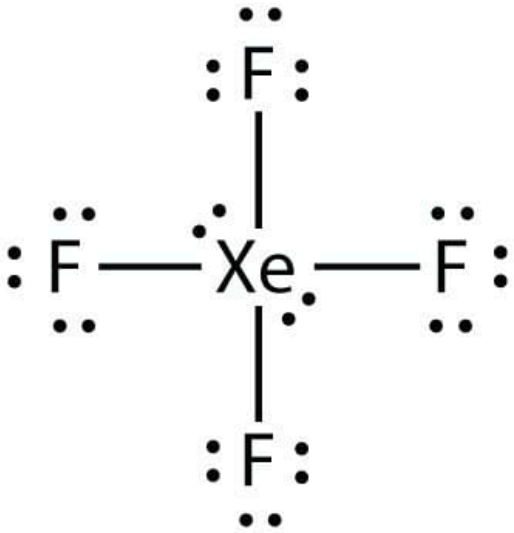
Answers

1. There is no way all electrons can be paired if there are an odd number of them.

2.

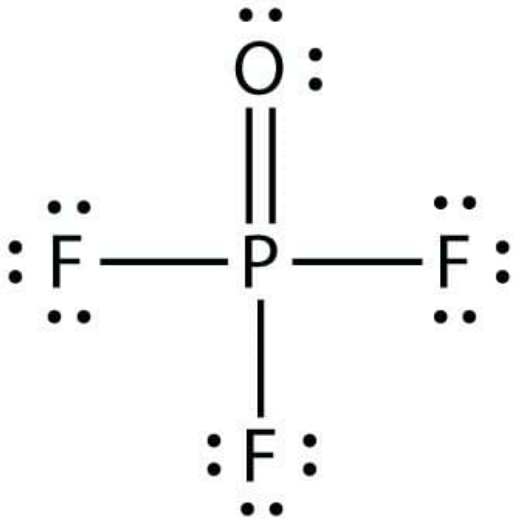


3. a.

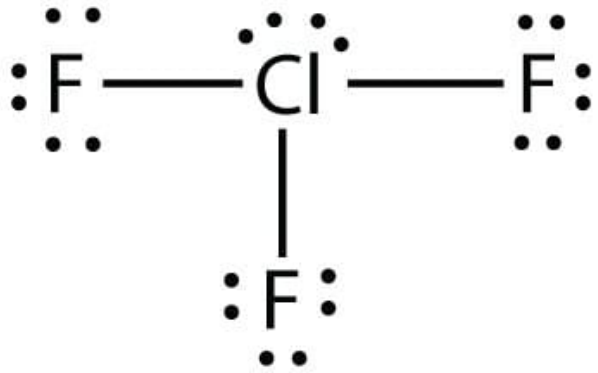


b.

4.



5. a.



b.

9.11: Molecular Shapes

1. What is the basic premise behind VSEPR?
2. What is the difference between the electron group geometry and the molecular geometry?
3. Identify the electron group geometry and the molecular geometry of each molecule.
   a. H_2S
   b. $POCl_3$
4. Identify the electron group geometry and the molecular geometry of each molecule.
   a. CS_2
   b. H_2S
5. Identify the electron group geometry and the molecular geometry of each molecule.
   a. HCN
   b. CCl_4
6. Identify the electron group geometry and the molecular geometry of each molecule.
   a. BI_3
   b. PH_3
7. What is the geometry of each species?
   a. CN^-
   b. PO_4^{3-}
8. What is the geometry of each species?
   a. PO_3^{3-}
   b. NO_3^-
9. What is the geometry of each species?
   a. COF_2
   b. C_2Cl_2 (both C atoms are central atoms and are bonded to each other)
10. What is the geometry of each species?
    a. CO_3^{2-}
    b. N_2H_4 (both N atoms are central atoms and are bonded to each other)

Answers

1. Electron pairs repel each other.
2.
3. a. electron group geometry: tetrahedral; molecular geometry: bent
   b. electron group geometry: tetrahedral; molecular geometry: tetrahedral
4.
5. a. electron group geometry: linear; molecular geometry: linear

b. electron group geometry: tetrahedral; molecular geometry: tetrahedral

6.

7. a. linear
   b. tetrahedral

8.

9. a. trigonal planar
   b. linear and linear about each central atom

9.12 Additional Exercises

1. Explain why iron and copper have the same Lewis electron dot diagram when they have different numbers of electrons.
2. Name two ions with the same Lewis electron dot diagram as the Cl^- ion.
3. Based on the known trends, what ionic compound from the first column of the periodic table and the next-to-last column of the periodic table should have the highest lattice energy?
4. Based on the known trends, what ionic compound from the first column of the periodic table and the next-to-last column of the periodic table should have the lowest lattice energy?
5. P_2 is not a stable form of phosphorus, but if it were, what would be its likely Lewis electron dot diagram?
6. Se_2 is not a stable form of selenium, but if it were, what would be its likely Lewis electron dot diagram?
7. What are the Lewis electron dot diagrams of SO_2, SO_3, and SO_4^{2-}?
8. What are the Lewis electron dot diagrams of PO_3^{3-} and PO_4^{3-}?
9. Which bond do you expect to be more polar—an O–H bond or an N–H bond?
10. Which bond do you expect to be more polar—an O–F bond or an S–O bond?
11. Use bond energies to estimate the energy change of this reaction. $C_3H_8 + 5O_2 \rightarrow 3CO_2 + 4H_2O$
12. Use bond energies to estimate the energy change of this reaction. $N_2H_4 + O_2 \rightarrow N_2 + 2H_2O$
13. Ethylene (C_2H_4) has two central atoms. Determine the geometry around each central atom and the shape of the overall molecule.
14. Hydrogen peroxide (H_2O_2) has two central atoms. Determine the geometry around each central atom and the shape of the overall molecule.

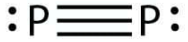
Answers

1. Iron has *d* electrons that typically are not shown on Lewis electron dot diagrams.
2.

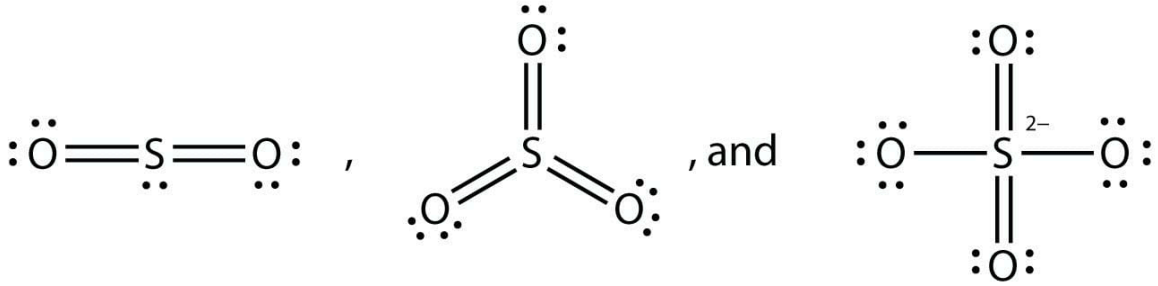
3. LiF

4.

5. It would be like N_2:



6.



7.
8.

9. an O–H bond

10.

11. –2,000 kJ

12.

13. trigonal planar about both central C atoms

This page titled 7.E: Electrons and Chemical Bonds (Exercises) is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

8: GASES

Of the three basic phases of matter—solids, liquids, and gases—only one of them has predictable physical properties: gases. In fact, the study of the properties of gases was the beginning of the development of modern chemistry from its alchemical roots. The interesting thing about some of these properties is that they are independent of the identity of the gas. That is, it doesn't matter if the gas is helium gas, oxygen gas, or sulfur vapors; some of their behavior is predictable and very similar. In this chapter, we will review some of the common behaviors of gases. Gases have no definite shape or volume; they tend to fill whatever container they are in. They can compress and expand, sometimes to a great extent. Gases have extremely low densities, a one-thousandth or less of the density of a liquid or solid. Combinations of gases tend to mix together spontaneously—that is, they form solutions. Air, for example, is a solution of mostly nitrogen and oxygen. Any understanding of the properties of gases must be able to explain these characteristics.

8.1: Solids, Liquids, and Gases- A Molecular Comparison

8.2: Pressure - The Result of Constant Molecular Collisions

8.3: Kinetic Molecular Theory- A Model for Gases

8.4: Simple Gas Laws

8.4.1: Boyle's Law - Pressure and Volume

8.4.2: Charles's Law- Volume and Temperature

8.4.3: Gay-Lussac's Law- Temperature and Pressure

8.4.4: Avogadro's Law- Volume and Moles

8.5: The Ideal Gas Law

8.6: Stoichiometry and the Ideal Gas Law

8.7: Mixtures of Gases

8.8: Gases (Exercises)

Template:HideTOC

This page titled 8: Gases is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

8.1: Solids, Liquids, and Gases- A Molecular Comparison

Learning Objectives

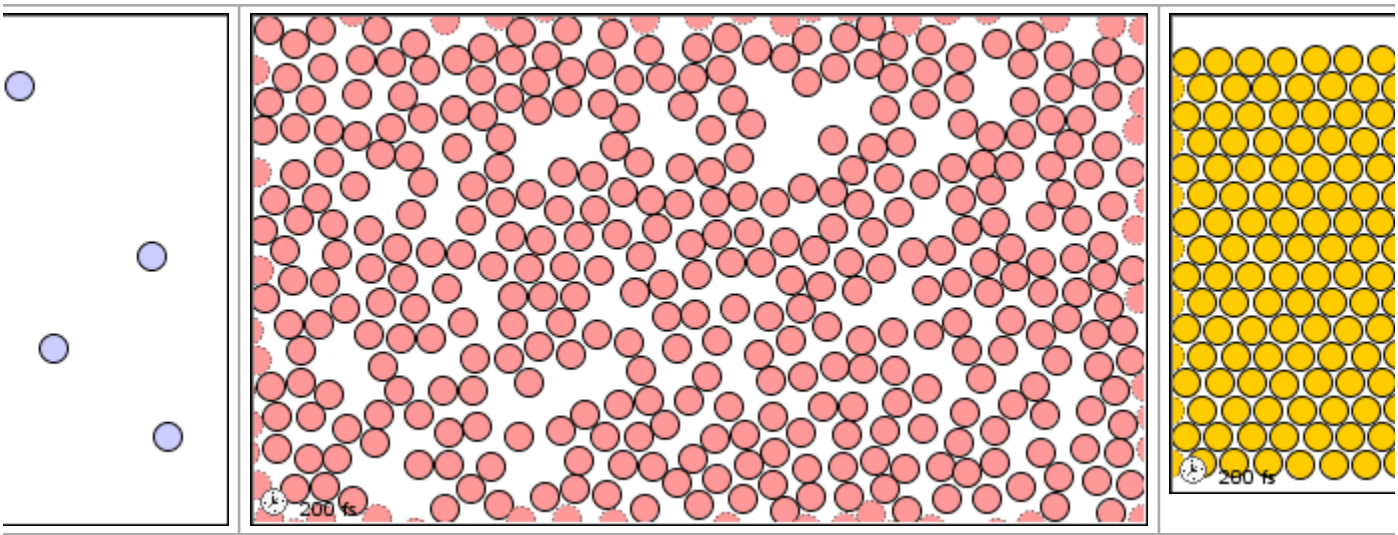
- To be familiar with the kinetic molecular description of solids, liquids, and gases.

The *physical* properties of a substance depends upon its physical state. Water vapor, liquid water and ice all have the same *chemical* properties, but their *physical* properties are considerably different. In general *covalent bond*s determine: molecular shape, bond energies, *chemical* properties, while *intermolecular force*s (non-covalent bonds) influence the *physical* properties of liquids and solids. The kinetic molecular theory of gases gives a reasonably accurate description of the behavior of gases. A similar model can be applied to liquids, but it must take into account the nonzero volumes of particles and the presence of strong intermolecular attractive forces.



Figure 8.1.1: The three common states of matter. From the left, they are solid, liquid, and gas, represented by an ice sculpture, a drop of water, and the air around clouds, respectively. Images used with permission from Wikipedia.

The *state* of a substance depends on the balance between the *kinetic energy* of the individual particles (molecules or atoms) and the *intermolecular forces*. The kinetic energy keeps the molecules apart and moving around, and is a function of the temperature of the substance. The intermolecular forces are attractive forces that try to draw the particles together (Figure 8.1.2). A discussed previously, gasses are very sensitive to temperatures and pressure. However, these also affect liquids and solids too. Heating and cooling can change the *kinetic energy* of the particles in a substance, and so, we can change the physical state of a substance by heating or cooling it. Increasing the pressure on a substance forces the molecules closer together, which *increases* the strength of intermolecular forces.



(b) as a liquid

Figure 8.1.2: Molecular level picture of gases, liquids and solids.

Below is an overview of the general properties of the three different phases of matter.

Properties of Gases

- A collection of widely separated molecules
- The kinetic energy of the molecules is greater than any attractive forces between the molecules
- The lack of any significant attractive force between molecules allows a gas to expand to fill its container
- If attractive forces become large enough, then the gases exhibit non-ideal behavior

Properties of Liquids

- The intermolecular attractive forces are strong enough to hold molecules close together
- Liquids are more dense and less compressible than gasses
- Liquids have a definite volume, independent of the size and shape of their container
- The attractive forces are ***not*** strong enough, however, to keep neighboring molecules in a fixed position and molecules are free to move past or slide over one another

Thus, liquids can be poured and assume the shape of their containers.

Properties of Solids

- The intermolecular forces between neighboring molecules are strong enough to keep them locked in position
- Solids (like liquids) are not very compressible due to the lack of space between molecules
- If the molecules in a solid adopt a highly ordered packing arrangement, the structures are said to be ***crystalline***

Due to the strong intermolecular forces between neighboring molecules, solids are rigid.

Contributors and Attributions

- Mike Blaber (Florida State University)

This page titled 8.1: Solids, Liquids, and Gases- A Molecular Comparison is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 11.1: A Molecular Comparison of Gases, Liquids, and Solids is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

8.2: Pressure - The Result of Constant Molecular Collisions

Learning Objectives

- Define *pressure*.
- Learn the units of pressure and how to convert between them.

The kinetic theory of gases indicates that gas particles are always in motion and are colliding with other particles and the walls of the container holding them. Although collisions with container walls are elastic (i.e., there is no net energy gain or loss because of the collision), a gas particle does exert a force on the wall during the collision. The accumulation of all these forces distributed over the area of the walls of the container causes something we call pressure. **Pressure** (P) is defined as the force of all the gas particle/wall collisions divided by the area of the wall:

$$\text{pressure} = \frac{\text{force}}{\text{area}}$$

All gases exert pressure; it is one of the fundamental measurable quantities of this phase of matter. Even our atmosphere exerts pressure—in this case, the gas is being "held in" by the earth's gravity, rather than the gas being in a container. The pressure of the atmosphere is about 14.7 pounds of force for every square inch of surface area: 14.7 lb/in^2.

Pressure has a variety of units. The formal, SI-approved unit of pressure is the *pascal* (Pa), which is defined as 1 N/m^2 (one newton of force over an area of one square meter). However, this is usually too small in magnitude to be useful. A common unit of pressure is the **atmosphere** (atm), which was originally defined as the average atmospheric pressure at sea level.

However, "average atmospheric pressure at sea level" is difficult to pinpoint because of atmospheric pressure variations. A more reliable and common unit is **millimeters of mercury** (mmHg), which is the amount of pressure exerted by a column of mercury exactly 1 mm high. An equivalent unit is the **torr**, which equals 1 mmHg. (The torr is named after Evangelista Torricelli, a seventeenth-century Italian scientist who invented the mercury barometer.) With these definitions of pressure, the atmosphere unit is redefined: 1 atm is defined as exactly 760 mmHg, or 760 torr. We thus have the following equivalents:

$$1 \text{ atm} = 760 \text{ mmHg} = 760 \text{ torr}$$

We can use these equivalents as with any equivalence—to perform conversions from one unit to another. Relating these to the formal SI unit of pressure, 1 atm = 101,325 Pa.

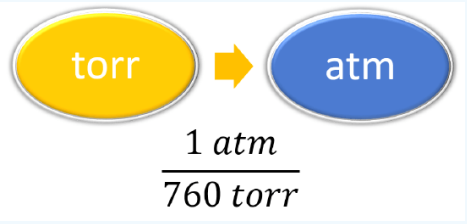
Example 8.2.1: Pressure Conversion

How many atmospheres are there in 595 torr?

Solution

Solutions to Example 11.3.1

Steps for Problem Solving	Unit Conversion
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: 595 torr Find: ? atm
List other known quantities.	1 atm = 760 torr

Steps for Problem Solving	Unit Conversion
Prepare a concept map.	
Cancel units and calculate.	$595\ \cancel{torr} \times \frac{1\ atm}{760\ \cancel{torr}} = 0.783\ atm$
Think about your result.	595 torr is less than 760 torr so the final answer should be less than 1 atm.

Exercise 8.2.1

How many atmospheres are there in 1,022 torr?

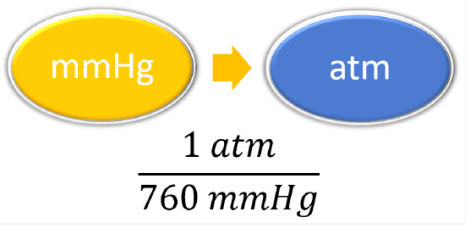
Answer available at the end of this section.

Example 8.2.2: Mars

The atmosphere on Mars is largely CO_2 at a pressure of 6.01 mmHg. What is this pressure in atmospheres?

Solution

Solutions to Example 11.3.2

Steps for Problem Solving	Unit Conversion
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: 6.01mmHg Find: ? atm
List other known quantities.	1 atm = 760 mmHg
Prepare a concept map.	
Cancel units and calculate.	$6.01\ \cancel{mmHg} \times \frac{1\ atm}{760\ \cancel{mmHg}} = 0.00791\ atm = 7.91 \times 10^{-3} atm$

Steps for Problem Solving	Unit Conversion
Think about your result.	6.01 is a very small number relative to 760 mmHg, just like the value in atmospheres.

Exercise 8.2.2

Atmospheric pressure is low in the eye of a hurricane. In a 1979 hurricane in the Pacific Ocean, a pressure of 0.859 atm was reported inside the eye. What is this pressure in torr?

Answer available at the end of this section.

Summary

- Pressure is a force exerted over an area.
- Pressure has several common units that can be converted.

Answers

Exercise 8.2.1

1.345 atm

Exercise 8.2.2

652 torr

This page titled 8.2: Pressure - The Result of Constant Molecular Collisions is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 11.3: Pressure - The Result of Constant Molecular Collisions by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

8.3: Kinetic Molecular Theory- A Model for Gases

Learning Objectives

- State the major concepts behind the kinetic theory of gases.
- Relate the general properties of gases to the kinetic theory.

Gases were among the first substances studied in terms of the modern scientific method, which was developed in the 1600s. It did not take long to recognize that gases all shared certain physical behaviors, suggesting that all gases could be described by one all-encompassing theory. Today, that theory is the **kinetic theory of gases**. It is based on the following statements:

1. Gases consist of tiny particles of matter that are in constant motion.
2. Gas particles are constantly colliding with each other and the walls of a container. These collisions are elastic; that is, there is no net loss of energy from the collisions.
3. Gas particles are separated by large distances, with the size of a gas particle tiny compared to the distances that separate them.
4. There are no interactive forces (i.e., attraction or repulsion) between the particles of a gas.
5. The average speed of gas particles is dependent on the temperature of the gas.

Figure 8.3.1 shows a representation of how we mentally picture the gas phase.

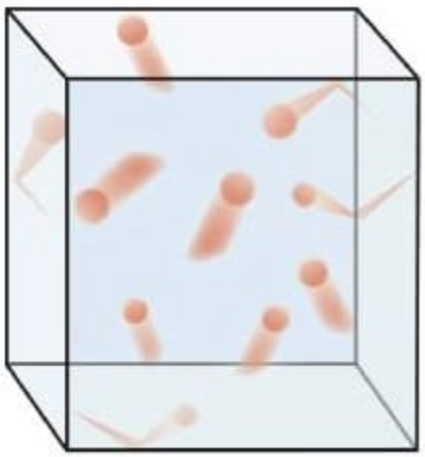


Figure 8.3.1: The Kinetic Theory of Gases. The kinetic theory of gases describes this state of matter as composed of tiny particles in constant motion with a lot of distance between the particles.

This model of gases explains some of the physical properties of gases. Because most of a gas is empty space, a gas has a low density and can expand or contract under the appropriate influence. The fact that gas particles are in constant motion means that two or more gases will always mix, as the particles from the individual gases move and collide with each other.

An **ideal gas** is a gas that exactly follows the statements of the kinetic theory. Unfortunately, *real gases* are not ideal. Many gases deviate slightly from agreeing perfectly with the kinetic theory of gases. However, most gases adhere to the statements so well that the kinetic theory of gases is well accepted by the scientific community.

- The physical behavior of gases is explained by the kinetic theory of gases.
- An ideal gas adheres exactly to the kinetic theory of gases.

This page titled 8.3: Kinetic Molecular Theory- A Model for Gases is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 11.2: Kinetic Molecular Theory- A Model for Gases by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

8.4: SIMPLE GAS LAWS

Learning Objectives

- Learn what is meant by the term *gas laws*.

Researchers in the 1600s to 1800s were able to perform experiments which showed relationships between properties of gases. The results of these experiments are called the gas laws. A **gas law** is a simple mathematical formula that allows you to model, or predict, the behavior of a gas. We will start by introducing the simple gas laws, which only relate changes in one measurable property to changes in one other measurable property. Later, we will show a few ways in which we can relate 3, or even all 4 of these properties.

As you are introduced to these gas laws, focus more upon the relationship itself than the details of when that relationship was discovered, and after whom that relationship was named. The following lists some things to consider while learning these gas laws:

· If one property increases, does the other property increase or decrease?

· How do you show this relationship mathematically?

· What behaviors of real gases can help you remember this relationship?

· What connection can you make between this relationship and kinetic molecular theory?

If you are able to consider these questions, it might be easier to learn these gas laws that if you view them simply as a list of equations to memorize.

8.4.1: Boyle's Law - Pressure and Volume

8.4.2: Charles's Law- Volume and Temperature

8.4.3: Gay-Lussac's Law- Temperature and Pressure

8.4.4: Avogadro's Law- Volume and Moles

This page titled 8.4: Simple Gas Laws is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

8.4.1: Boyle’s Law - Pressure and Volume

Learning Objectives

- Learn and apply Boyle’s Law.

When seventeenth-century scientists began studying the physical properties of gases, they noticed some simple relationships between some of the measurable properties of the gas. Take pressure (*P*) and volume (*V*), for example. Scientists noted that for a given amount of a gas (usually expressed in units of moles [*n*]), if the temperature (*T*) of the gas was kept constant, pressure and volume were related: as one increases, the other decreases. As one decreases, the other increases. This means that pressure and volume are *inversely related*.

There is more to it, however: pressure and volume of a given amount of gas at constant temperature are *numerically* related. If you take the pressure value and multiply it by the volume value, the product is a constant for a given amount of gas at a constant temperature:

$$P \times V = \text{ constant at constant n and T} \tag{8.4.1.1}$$

If either volume or pressure changes while amount and temperature stay the same, then the other property must change so that the product of the two properties still equals that same constant. That is, if the original conditions are labeled P_1 and V_1 and the new conditions are labeled P_2 and V_2, we have

$$P_1V_1 = \text{constant} = P_2V_2 \tag{8.4.1.2}$$

where the properties are assumed to be multiplied together. Leaving out the middle part, we have simply

$$P_1V_1 = P_2V_2 \text{ at constant n and T} \tag{8.4.1.3}$$

This equation is an example of a gas law. A **gas law** is a simple mathematical formula that allows you to model, or predict, the behavior of a gas. This particular gas law is called **Boyle's Law**, after the English scientist Robert Boyle, who first announced it in 1662. Figure $8.4.1.1$ shows two representations of how Boyle’s Law works.

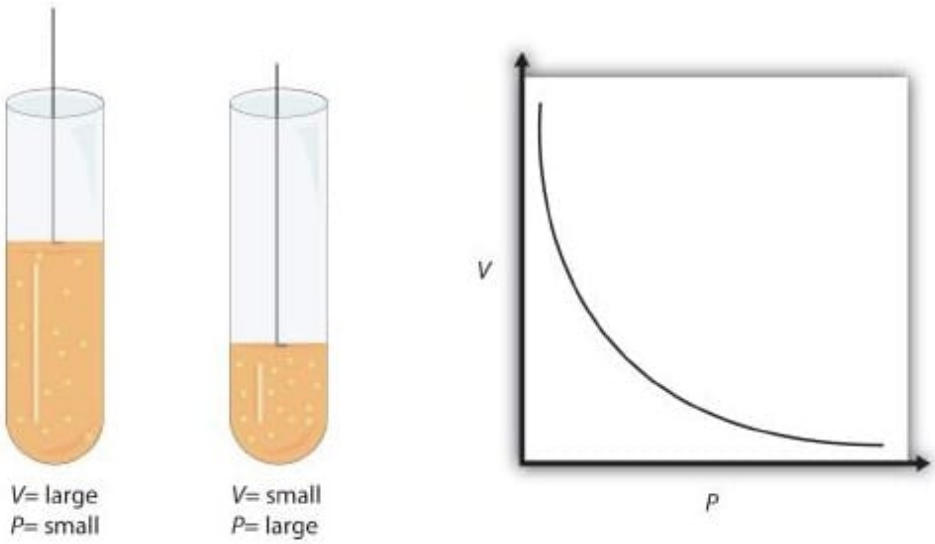


Figure $8.4.1.1$: Boyle’s Law. A piston having a certain pressure and volume (left piston) will have half the volume when its pressure is twice as much (right piston). One can also plot *P* versus *V* for a given amount of gas at a certain temperature; such a plot will look like the graph on the right.

Boyle’s Law is an example of a second type of mathematical problem we see in chemistry—one based on a mathematical formula.

Tactics for working with mathematical formulas are different from tactics for working with conversion factors. First, most of the questions you will have to answer using formulas are word-type questions, so the first step is to identify what quantities are known and assign them to variables. Second, in most formulas, some mathematical rearrangements (i.e., algebra) must be performed to solve for an unknown variable. The rule is that to find the value of the unknown variable, you must mathematically isolate the unknown variable *by itself and in the numerator* of one side of the equation. Finally, units must be consistent. For example, in Boyle's Law there are two pressure variables; they must have the same unit. There are also two volume variables; they also must have the same unit. In most cases, it won't matter *what* the unit is, but the unit must be the *same* on both sides of the equation.

Example 8.4.1.1

A sample of gas has an initial pressure of 2.44 atm and an initial volume of 4.01 L. Its pressure changes to 1.93 atm. What is the new volume if temperature and amount are kept constant?

Solution

Steps for Problem Solving	
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: P_1 = 2.44 atm and V_1 = 4.01 L P_2 = 1.93 atm Find: V_2 = ? L
List other known quantities.	none
Plan the problem.	First, rearrange the equation algebraically to solve for V_2. $$V_2 = \frac{P_1 \times V_1}{P_2}$$
Cancel units and calculate.	Now substitute the known quantities into the equation and solve. $$V_2 = \frac{2.44 \cancel{\text{ atm}} \times 4.01 \text{ L}}{1.93 \cancel{\text{ atm}}} = 5.07 \text{ L}$$
Think about your result.	We know that pressure and volume are inversely related; as one decreases, the other increases. Pressure is decreas 2.44 atm to 1.93 atm), so volume should be increasing to compensate, and it is (from 4.01 L to 5.07 L). So the answ sense based on Boyle's Law.

Exercise 8.4.1.1

If P_1 = 334 torr, V_1 = 37.8 mL, and P_2 = 102 torr, what is V_2?

Answer available at the end of this section.

As mentioned, you can use any units for pressure and volume, but both pressures must be expressed in the same units, and both

volumes must be expressed in the same units.

Example 8.4.1.2:

A sample of gas has an initial pressure of 722 torr and an initial volume of 88.8 mL. Its volume changes to 0.663 L. What is the new pressure?

Solution

Steps for Problem Solving	
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: P_1 = 722 torr and V_1 = 88.8 mL V_2 = 0.633 L Find: P_2 = ? torr
List other known quantities.	1 L = 1000 mL to have the same units for volume.
Plan the problem.	1. Perform the conversion of the second volume unit from L to mL. 2. Rearrange the equation algebraically to solve for P_2. $$P_2 = \frac{P_1 \times V_1}{V_2}$$
Cancel units and calculate.	1. $$0.663 \cancel{L} \times \frac{1000\,ml}{1\,\cancel{L}} = 663\,ml$$ 2. Substitute the known quantities into the equation and solve. $$P_2 = \frac{722 \text{ torr} \times 88.8\ \cancel{\text{mL}}}{663\ \cancel{\text{mL}}} = 96.7 \text{ torr}$$
Think about your result.	When the volume increased, the pressure decreased, which is as expected for Boyle's Law.

Exercise 8.4.1.2

If V_1 = 456 mL, P_1 = 308 torr, and P_2 = 1.55 atm, what is V_2?

Answer available at the end of this section.

Summary

- The behavior of gases can be modeled with gas laws.
- Boyle's Law relates the pressure and volume of a gas at constant temperature and amount.

Contributions & Attributions

This page was constructed from content via the following contributor(s) and edited (topically or extensively) by the LibreTexts development team to meet platform style, presentation, and quality:

-
- Marisa Alviar-Agnew (Sacramento City College)
- Henry Agnew (UC Davis)

Answers

Exercise 8.4.1.1

124 mL

Exercise 8.4.1.2

119 mL

This page titled 8.4.1: Boyle's Law - Pressure and Volume is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

8.4.2: Charles's Law- Volume and Temperature

Learning Objectives

- Learn and apply Charles's Law.

Everybody enjoys the smell and taste of freshly-baked bread. It is light and fluffy as a result of the action of yeast on sugar. The yeast converts the sugar to carbon dioxide, which at high temperatures causes the dough to expand. The end result is an enjoyable treat, especially when covered with melted butter.

Charles's Law

French physicist Jacques Charles (1746-1823) studied the effect of temperature on the volume of a gas at constant pressure. **Charles's Law** states that the volume of a given mass of gas varies directly with the absolute temperature of the gas when pressure is kept constant. The absolute temperature is temperature measured with the Kelvin scale. The Kelvin scale must be used because zero on the Kelvin scale corresponds to a complete stop of molecular motion.

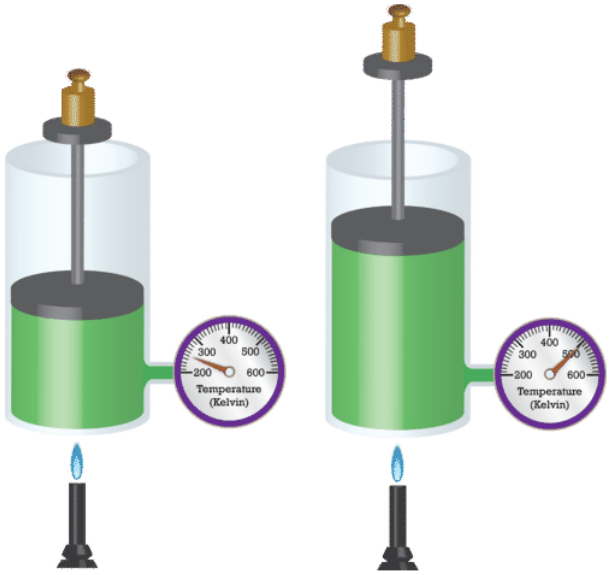


Figure 8.4.2.1: As a container of confined gas is heated, its molecules increase in kinetic energy and push the movable piston outward, resulting in an increase in volume.

Mathematically, the direct relationship of Charles's Law can be represented by the following equation:

$$\frac{V}{T} = k$$

As with Boyle's Law, k is constant only for a given gas sample. The table below shows temperature and volume data for a set amount of gas at a constant pressure. The third column is the constant for this particular data set and is always equal to the volume divided by the Kelvin temperature.

Table 8.4.2.1: Temperature-Volume Data

Temperature (K)	**Volume** (mL)	$\frac{V}{T} = k \left(\frac{\mathrm{mL}}{\mathrm{K}}\right)$
50	20	0.40
100	40	0.40

Temperature (K)	Volume (mL)	$\frac{V}{T} = k \left(\frac{\mathrm{mL}}{\mathrm{K}}\right)$
150	60	0.40
200	80	0.40
300	120	0.40
500	200	0.40
1000	400	0.40

When this data is graphed, the result is a straight line, indicative of a direct relationship, shown in the figure below.

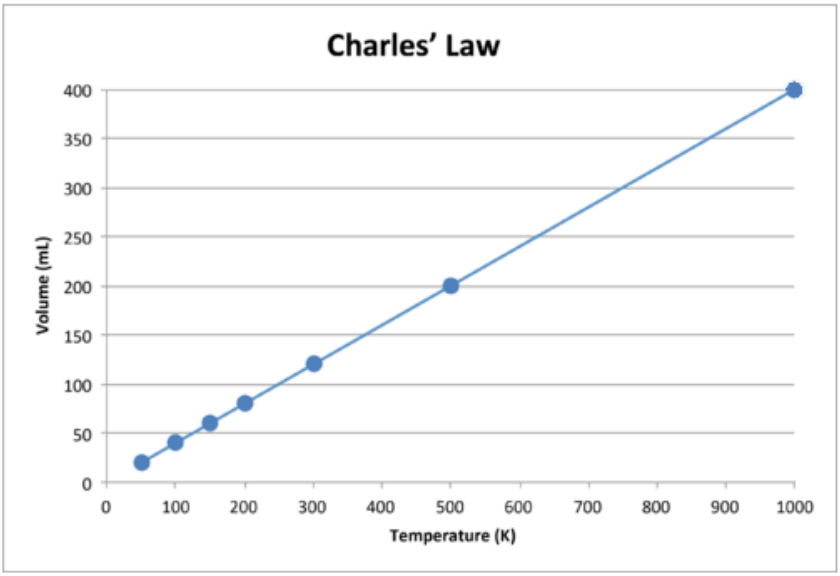


Figure 8.4.2.2:The volume of a gas increases as the Kelvin temperature increases.

Notice that the line goes exactly toward the origin, meaning that as the absolute temperature of the gas approaches zero, its volume approaches zero. However, when a gas is brought to extremely cold temperatures, its molecules would eventually condense into the liquid state before reaching absolute zero. The temperature at which this change into the liquid state occurs varies for different gases.

Charles's Law can also be used to compare changing conditions for a gas. Now we use V_1 and T_1 to stand for the initial volume and temperature of a gas, while V_2 and T_2 stand for the final volume and temperature. The mathematical relationship of Charles's Law becomes:

$$\frac{V_1}{T_1} = \frac{V_2}{T_2}$$

This equation can be used to calculate any one of the four quantities if the other three are known. The direct relationship will only hold if the temperatures are expressed in Kelvin. Temperatures in Celsius will not work. Recall the relationship that $\mathrm{K} = {}^{\circ}\mathrm{C} + 273$.

Example 8.4.2.1:

A balloon is filled to a volume of $2.20\ \mathrm{L}$ at a temperature of $22^{\circ}\mathrm{C}$. The balloon is then heated to a temperature of $71^{\circ}\mathrm{C}$. Find the new volume of the balloon.

Solution

Solutions to Example 11.5.1

Steps for Problem Solving	
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: $V_1 = 2.20\ \text{L}$ and $T_1 = 22^\circ\text{C} = 295\ \text{K}$ $T_2 = 71^\circ\text{C} = 344\ \text{K}$ Find: V_2 = ? L
List other known quantities.	The temperatures have first been converted to Kelvin.
Plan the problem.	First, rearrange the equation algebraically to solve for V_2. $$V_2 = \frac{V_1 \times T_2}{T_1}$$
Cancel units and calculate.	Now substitute the known quantities into the equation and solve. $$V_2 = \frac{2.20\ \text{L} \times 344\ \cancel{\text{K}}}{295\ \cancel{\text{K}}} = 2.57\ \text{L}$$
Think about your result.	The volume increases as the temperature increases. The result has three significant figures.

Exercise 8.4.2.1

If V_1 = 3.77 L and T_1 = 255 K, what is V_2 if T_2 = 123 K?

Answer available at the end of this section.

Example 8.4.2.2:

A sample of a gas has an initial volume of 34.8 L and an initial temperature of −67°C. What must be the temperature of the gas for its volume to be 25.0 L?

Solution

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CC BY NC SA
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Solutions to Example 11.5.2

Steps for Problem Solving	
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: Given:T_1 = -27°C and V_1 = 34.8 L V_2 = 25.0 L Find: T_2 = ? K
List other known quantities.	K = -27°C + 273
Plan the problem.	1. Convert the initial temperature to Kelvin 2. Rearrange the equation algebraically to solve for T_2. $$T_2 = \frac{V_2 \times T_1}{V_1}$$
Cancel units and calculate.	1. –67°C + 273 = 206 K 2. Substitute the known quantities into the equation and solve. $$T_2 = \frac{25.0 \cancel{\text{L}} \times 206 \text{ K}}{34.8 \cancel{\text{L}}} = 148 \text{ K}$$
Think about your result.	This is also equal to –125°C. As temperature decreases, volume decreases—which it does in this example.

Exercise 8.4.2.2

If V_1 = 623 mL, T_1 = 255°C, and V_2 = 277 mL, what is T_2?

Answer available at the end of this section.

Summary

- Charles's Law relates the volume and temperature of a gas at constant pressure and amount.

Answers

Exercise 8.4.2.1

1.82 L

Exercise 8.4.2.2

235 K, or –38°C

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

This page titled 8.4.2: Charles's Law- Volume and Temperature is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 11.5: Charles's Law- Volume and Temperature by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

8.4.3: Gay-Lussac's Law- Temperature and Pressure

Learning Objectives

- Explain Gay-Lussac's Law.

Propane tanks are widely used with barbeque grills. But it's not fun to find out halfway through grilling that you have run out of gas. You can buy gauges that measure the pressure inside the tank to see how much is left. The gauge measures pressure and will register a higher pressure on a hot day than it will on a cold day. So you need to take the air temperature into account when you decide whether or not to refill the tank before your next cook-out.

Gay-Lussac's Law

When the temperature of a sample of gas in a rigid container is increased, the pressure of the gas increases as well. The increase in kinetic energy results in the molecules of gas striking the walls of the container with more force, resulting in a greater pressure. The French chemist Joseph Gay-Lussac (1778-1850) discovered the relationship between the pressure of a gas and its absolute temperature. **Gay-Lussac's Law** states that the pressure of a given mass of gas varies directly with the absolute temperature of the gas, when the volume is kept constant. Gay-Lussac's Law is very similar to Charles's Law, with the only difference being the type of container. Whereas the container in a Charles's Law experiment is flexible, it is rigid in a Gay-Lussac's Law experiment.



Figure 8.4.3.1: Joseph Gay-Lussac.

The mathematical expressions for Gay-Lussac's Law are likewise similar to those of Charles's Law:

$$\frac{P}{T} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{P_1}{T_1} = \frac{P_2}{T_2}$$

A graph of pressure vs. temperature also illustrates a direct relationship. As a gas is cooled at constant volume, its pressure continually decreases until the gas condenses to a liquid.

Example 8.4.3.1

The gas in an aerosol can is under a pressure of 3.00 atm at a temperature of 25°C. It is dangerous to dispose of an aerosol can by incineration. What would the pressure in the aerosol can be at a temperature of 845°C?

Solution

Solutions to Example 11.10.1

Steps for Problem Solving	
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: $P_1 = 3.00\ \text{atm}$ $T_1 = 25^\circ\text{C} = 298\ \text{K}$ $T_2 = 845^\circ\text{C} = 1118\ \text{K}$ Find: $P_2 = ?\ \text{atm}$
List other known quantities.	The temperatures have first been converted to Kelvin.
Plan the problem.	First, rearrange the equation algebraically to solve for P_2. $$P_2 = \frac{P_1 \times T_2}{T_1}$$
Calculate.	Now substitute the known quantities into the equation and solve. $$P_2 = \frac{3.00\ \text{atm} \times 1118\ \cancel{\text{K}}}{298\ \cancel{\text{K}}} = 11.3\ \text{atm}$$
Think about your result.	The pressure increases dramatically due to a large increase in temperature.

Summary

- Pressure and temperature at constant volume are directly proportional.

This page titled 8.4.3: Gay-Lussac's Law- Temperature and Pressure is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 11.11: Gay-Lussac's Law- Temperature and Pressure by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

8.4.4: Avogadro’s Law- Volume and Moles

A flat tire is not very useful. It does not cushion the rim of the wheel and creates a very uncomfortable ride. When air is added to the tire, the pressure increases as more molecules of gas are forced into the rigid tire. How much air should be put into a tire depends on the pressure rating for that tire. Too little pressure and the tire will not hold its shape. Too much pressure and the tire could burst.

Avogadro's Law

You have learned about Avogadro's hypothesis: equal volumes of any gas at the same temperature and pressure contain the same number of molecules. It follows that the volume of a gas is directly proportional to the number of moles of gas present in the sample. **Avogadro's Law** states that the volume of a gas is directly proportional to the number of moles (or number of particles) of gas when the temperature and pressure are held constant. The mathematical expression of Avogadro's Law is:

$$V = k \times n$$

or

$$\frac{V_1}{n_1} = \frac{V_2}{n_2}$$

where n is the number of moles of gas and k is a constant. Avogadro's Law is in evidence whenever you blow up a balloon. The volume of the balloon increases as you add moles of gas to the balloon by blowing it up.

If the container holding the gas is rigid rather than flexible, pressure can be substituted for volume in Avogadro's Law. Adding gas to a rigid container makes the pressure increase.

Example 8.4.4.1

A balloon has been filled to a volume of $1.90\ \text{L}$ with $0.0920\ \text{mol}$ of helium gas. If $0.0210\ \text{mol}$ of additional helium is added to the balloon while the temperature and pressure are held constant, what is the new volume of the balloon?

Solution

Solutions to Example 11.11.1

Steps for Problem Solving	
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: $V_1 = 1.90\ \text{L}$ $n_1 = 0.0920\ \text{mol}$ Find: $V_2 = ?\ \text{L}$
List other known quantities.	Note that the final number of moles has to be calculated by adding the original number of moles to the moles o helium. $n_2 = 0.0920 + 0.0210 = 0.1130\ \text{mol}$

Steps for Problem Solving	
Plan the problem.	First, rearrange the equation algebraically to solve for V_2. $$V_2 = \frac{V_1 \times n_2}{n_1}$$
Calculate.	Now substitute the known quantities into the equation and solve. $$V_2 = \frac{1.90\ \text{L} \times 0.1130\ \cancel{\text{mol}}}{0.0920\ \cancel{\text{mol}}} = 2.33\ \text{L}$$
Think about your result.	Since a relatively small amount of additional helium was added to the balloon, its volume increases slightly.

Exercise 8.4.4.1

A 12.8 L volume of gas contains .000498 moles of oxygen gas. At constant temperature and pressure, what volume does .0000136 moles of the gas fill?

Answer available at the end of this section.

Summary

- Calculations for relationships between volume and number of moles of a gas can be performed using Avogadro's Law.

Answers

Exercise 8.4.4.1

0.350 L

This page titled 8.4.4: Avogadro's Law- Volume and Moles is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 11.7: Avogadro's Law- Volume and Moles by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

8.5: The Ideal Gas Law

Learning Objectives

- Explain the Ideal Gas Law.

There are a number of chemical reactions that require ammonia. In order to carry out the reaction efficiently, we need to know how much ammonia we have for stoichiometric purposes. Using gas laws, we can determine the number of moles present in the tank if we know the volume, temperature, and pressure of the system.

Ideal Gas Law

The Combined Gas Law shows that the pressure of a gas is inversely proportional to volume and directly proportional to temperature. Avogadro's Law shows that volume or pressure is directly proportional to the number of moles of gas. Putting these together leaves us with the following equation:

$$\frac{P_1 \times V_1}{T_1 \times n_1} = \frac{P_2 \times V_2}{T_2 \times n_2}$$

As with the other gas laws, we can also say that $\frac{(P \times V)}{(T \times n)}$ is equal to a constant. The constant can be evaluated provided that the gas being described is considered to be ideal.

The **Ideal Gas Law** is a single equation which relates the pressure, volume, temperature, and number of moles of an ideal gas. If we substitute in the variable R for the constant, the equation becomes:

$$\frac{P \times V}{T \times n} = R$$

The Ideal Gas Law is conveniently rearranged to look this way, with the multiplication signs omitted:

$$PV = nRT$$

The variable R in the equation is called the **ideal gas constant**.

Evaluating the Ideal Gas Constant

The value of R, the ideal gas constant, depends on the units chosen for pressure, temperature, and volume in the ideal gas equation. It is necessary to use Kelvin for the temperature and it is conventional to use the SI unit of liters for the volume. However, pressure is commonly measured in one of three units: kPa, atm, or $\mathrm{mm\ Hg}$. Therefore, R can have three different values.

We will demonstrate how R is calculated when the pressure is measured in kPa. The volume of $1.00\ \mathrm{mol}$ of any gas at STP (Standard temperature, 273.15 K and pressure, 1 atm) is measured to be $22.414\ \mathrm{L}$. We can substitute $101.325\ \mathrm{kPa}$ for pressure, $22.414\ \mathrm{L}$ for volume, and $273.15\ \mathrm{K}$ for temperature into the ideal gas equation and solve for R.

$$\begin{aligned} R &= \frac{PV}{nT} \\ &= \frac{101.325\,\mathrm{kPa} \times 22.414\,\mathrm{L}}{1.000\,\mathrm{mol} \times 273.15\,\mathrm{K}} \\ &= 8.314\,\mathrm{kPa \cdot L/K \cdot mol} \end{aligned}$$

This is the value of R that is to be used in the ideal gas equation when the pressure is given in kPa. The table below shows a summary of this and the other possible values of R. It is important to choose the correct value of R to use for a given problem.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Table 8.5.1: Values of the Ideal Gas Constant

Unit of P	Unit of V	Unit of n	Unit of T	Value and Unit of R
kPa	L	mol	K	$8.314\ \text{J/K} \cdot \text{mol}$
atm	L	mol	K	$0.08206\ \text{L} \cdot \text{atm/K} \cdot \text{mol}$
mm Hg	L	mol	K	$62.36\ \text{L} \cdot \text{mm Hg/K} \cdot \text{mol}$

Notice that the unit for R when the pressure is in kPa has been changed to $\text{J/K} \cdot \text{mol}$. A kilopascal multiplied by a liter is equal to the SI unit for energy, a joule (J).

Example 8.5.1 Oxygen Gas

What volume is occupied by $3.76\ \text{g}$ of oxygen gas at a pressure of $88.4\ \text{kPa}$ and a temperature of 19°C? Assume the oxygen is ideal.

Solution

Solutions to Example 11.5.1

Steps for Problem Solving	
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: • $P = 88.4\ \text{kPa}$ • $T = 19^\circ\text{C} = 292\ \text{K}$ Mass $\text{O}_2 = 3.76\ \text{g}$ Find: *V* = ? L
List other known quantities.	$\text{O}_2 = 32.00\ \text{g/mol}$ $R = 8.314\ \text{J/K} \cdot \text{mol}$
Plan the problem.	1. First, determine the number of moles of O_2 from the given mass and the molar mass. 2. Then, rearrange the equation algebraically to solve for V $$V = \frac{nRT}{P}$$
Calculate.	1. $$3.76\ \cancel{\text{g}} \times \frac{1\ \text{mol O}_2}{32.00\ \cancel{\text{g}}\ \text{O}_2} = 0.1175\ \text{mol O}_2$$ 2. Now substitute the known quantities into the equation and solve. $$V = \frac{nRT}{P} = \frac{0.1175\ \cancel{\text{mol}} \times 8.314\ \cancel{\text{J/K}} \cdot \cancel{\text{mol}} \times 292\ \cancel{\text{K}}}{88.4\ \cancel{\text{kPa}}} = 3.23\ \text{L O}_2$$

Steps for Problem Solving	
Think about your result.	The number of moles of oxygen is far less than one mole, so the volume should be fairly small compared to molar v $(22.4\,\mathrm{L/mol})$ since the pressure and temperature are reasonably close to standard. The result has three significant because of the values for T and P. Since a joule $(\mathrm{J}) = \mathrm{kPa} \cdot \mathrm{L}$, the units cancel out correctly, leaving a volume in lite

Example 8.5.2: Argon Gas

A 4.22 mol sample of Ar has a pressure of 1.21 atm and a temperature of 34°C. What is its volume?

Solution

Solutions to Example 11.5.2

Steps for Problem Solving	
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: n = 4.22 mol P = 1.21 atm T = 34°C Find: *V* = ? L
List other known quantities.	none
Plan the problem.	1. The first step is to convert temperature to Kelvin. 2. Then, rearrange the equation algebraically to solve for V $$V = \frac{nRT}{P}$$
Calculate.	1. 34 + 273 = 307 K 2. Now substitute the known quantities into the equation and solve. $$V = \frac{(4.22\ \cancel{mol})(0.08205 \frac{L.\cancel{atm}}{\cancel{mol.K}})(307\ \cancel{K})}{1.21\ \cancel{atm}}$$ $$= 87.9\,L$$
Think about your result.	The number of moles of Ar is large so the expected volume should also be large.

Exercise 8.5.1

A 0.0997 mol sample of O_2 has a pressure of 0.692 atm and a temperature of 333 K. What is its volume?

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 8.5.2

For a 0.00554 mol sample of H_2, P = 23.44 torr and T = 557 K. What is its volume?

Answer available at the end of this section.

Summary

- The Ideal Gas Law is a single equation which relates the pressure, volume, temperature, and number of moles of an ideal gas.

Answers

Exercise 8.5.1

3.94 L

Exercise 8.5.2

8.21 L

This page titled 8.5: The Ideal Gas Law is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 11.8: The Ideal Gas Law- Pressure, Volume, Temperature, and Moles by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

8.6: Stoichiometry and the Ideal Gas Law

Learning Objectives

- To relate the amount of gas consumed or released in a chemical reaction to the stoichiometry of the reaction.
- To understand how the ideal gas equation and the stoichiometry of a reaction can be used to calculate the volume of gas produced or consumed in a reaction.

You may remember we had previously discussed the concept of a mole roadmap. This was done because the mole concept we had introduced earlier can be connected to many other concepts that we had not introduced yet. Now we can make an additional connection for our mole roadmap: gases. You may note on the example mole road map gases were already included. That existing relationship only works some of the time: when the gas is at a specific temperature and pressure. Now we have learned how to find the moles of a gas using the ideal gas law. We can use the ideal gas law to relate moles to any other of the gas properties, not just volume of a gas at a specified temperature and pressure.

Take a moment to revise your existing mole roadmap to incorporate properties of gases. As you had done previously with stoichiometry, you should be able to convert from any point on the roadmap to any other point. One important thing to remember here is that you can only use the ideal gas law when you have moles of a gas. If you have a substance in any other physical state, you will likely need to use your mole roadmap to convert to moles of a gas prior to using the ideal gas law. In some cases, you may start with gas properties and need to determine the amount of some other substance which is not a gas. Your mole roadmap should be created such that it can solve this variety of problems. Once you have made some changes to your mole roadmap, see if you could use it to answer the following example problems.

Example $8.6.2A$

What volume of carbon dioxide gas is produced at STP by the decomposition of 0.150 g $\mathrm{CaCO_3}$ via the equation:

$$\mathrm{CaCO_3\,(s)} \rightarrow \mathrm{CaO\,(s) + CO_2\,(g)}$$

Solution

Begin by converting the mass of calcium carbonate to moles.

$$\frac{0.150\ g}{100.1\ g/mol} = 0.00150\ mol$$

The stoichiometry of the reaction dictates that the number of moles $\mathrm{CaCO_3}$ decomposed equals the number of moles $\mathrm{CO_2}$ produced. Use the ideal-gas equation to convert moles of $\mathrm{CO_2}$ to a volume.

$$\begin{aligned} V &= \frac{nRT}{PR} \\ &= \frac{(0.00150\ mol)\left(0.08206\ \frac{L \cdot atm}{mol \cdot K}\right)(273.15\ K)}{1\ atm} \\ &= 0.0336\ L\ or\ 33.6\ mL \end{aligned}$$

Example $8.6.2B$: Sulfuric Acid

Sulfuric acid, the industrial chemical produced in greatest quantity (almost 45 million tons per year in the United States alone), is prepared by the combustion of sulfur in air to give $\mathrm{SO_2}$, followed by the reaction of $\mathrm{SO_2}$ with $\mathrm{O_2}$ in the presence of a catalyst to give $\mathrm{SO_3}$, which reacts with water to give $\mathrm{H_2SO_4}$. The overall chemical equation is as follows:

$$\mathrm{2\,S\,(s) + 3\,O_2\,(g) + 2\,H_2O\,(l)} \rightarrow \mathrm{2\,H_2SO_4\,(aq)}$$

What volume of O_2 (in liters) at 22°C and 745 mmHg pressure is required to produce 1.00 ton (907.18 kg) of H_2SO_4?

Given: reaction, temperature, pressure, and mass of one product

Asked for: volume of gaseous reactant

Strategy:

A Calculate the number of moles of H_2SO_4 in 1.00 ton. From the stoichiometric coefficients in the balanced chemical equation, calculate the number of moles of O_2 required.

B Use the ideal gas law to determine the volume of O_2 required under the given conditions. Be sure that all quantities are expressed in the appropriate units.

Solution:

$$\text{mass of } H_2SO_4 \rightarrow \text{moles } H_2SO_4 \rightarrow \text{moles } O_2 \rightarrow \text{liters } O_2$$

A We begin by calculating the number of moles of H_2SO_4 in 1.00 ton:

$$\frac{907.18 \times 10^3 \text{ g } H_2SO_4}{(2 \times 1.008 + 32.06 + 4 \times 16.00) \text{ g/mol}} = 9250 \text{ mol } H_2SO_4$$

We next calculate the number of moles of O_2 required:

$$9250 \text{ mol } H_2SO_4 \times \frac{3\text{mol } O_2}{2\text{mol } H_2SO_4} = 1.389 \times 10^4 \text{ mol } O_2$$

B After converting all quantities to the appropriate units, we can use the ideal gas law to calculate the volume of O_2:

$$\begin{aligned} V &= \frac{nRT}{P} \\ &= \frac{1.389 \times 10^4 \text{ mol} \times 0.08206 \frac{\text{L} \cdot \text{atm}}{\text{mol} \cdot \text{K}} \times (273 + 22) \text{ K}}{745 \text{ mmHg} \times \frac{1 \text{ atm}}{760 \text{ mmHg}}} \\ &= 3.43 \times 10^5 \ L \end{aligned}$$

The answer means that more than 300,000 L of oxygen gas are needed to produce 1 ton of sulfuric acid. These numbers may give you some appreciation for the magnitude of the engineering and plumbing problems faced in industrial chemistry.

If you would like some additional practice applying your mole map to ideal gas stoichiometry, there are additional examples here and here. Please note that all of these examples have a similar form and that not all ideal gas stoichiometry problems will follow this particular form. However, it is probably useful to master this form prior to some of the additional considerations which follow.

Exercise 8.6.2

Charles used a balloon containing approximately 31,150 L of H_2 for his initial flight in 1783. The hydrogen gas was produced by the reaction of metallic iron with dilute hydrochloric acid according to the following balanced chemical equation:

$$Fe(s) + 2\,HCl(aq) \rightarrow H_2(g) + FeCl_2(aq)$$

How much iron (in kilograms) was needed to produce this volume of H_2 if the temperature were 30°C and the atmospheric pressure was 745 mmHg?

Answer available at the end of this section.

Additional applications of relating the mole concept to the ideal gas law can be found here, including a discussion of STP (the conditions necessary to use the original mole map.)

Answers

Exercise 8.6.2

68.6 kg of Fe (approximately 150 lb)

This page titled 8.6: Stoichiometry and the Ideal Gas Law is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 10.5: Further Applications of the Ideal-Gas Equations is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

8.7: Mixtures of Gases

Learning Objectives

- Explain Dalton's Law of Partial Pressures.

The atmosphere of Venus is markedly different from that of Earth. The gases in the Venusian atmosphere are 96.5% carbon dioxide and 3% nitrogen. The atmospheric pressure on Venus is roughly 92 times that of Earth, so the amount of nitrogen on Venus would contribute a pressure well over $2700\ \text{mm Hg}$. And there is no oxygen present, so we couldn't breathe there. Not that we would want to go to Venus, as the surface temperature is usually over 460°C.

Dalton's Law of Partial Pressures

Gas pressure results from collisions between gas particles and the inside walls of their container. If more gas is added to a rigid container, the gas pressure increases. The identities of the two gases do not matter. John Dalton, the English chemist who proposed the atomic theory, also studied mixtures of gases. He found that each gas in a mixture exerts a pressure independently of every other gas in the mixture. For example, our atmosphere is composed of about 78% nitrogen and 21% oxygen, with smaller amounts of several other gases making up the rest. Since nitrogen makes up 78% of the gas particles in a given sample of air, it exerts 78% of the pressure. If the overall atmospheric pressure is $1.00\ \text{atm}$, then the pressure of just the nitrogen in the air is $0.78\ \text{atm}$. The pressure of the oxygen in the air is $0.21\ \text{atm}$.

The **partial pressure** of a gas is the contribution that gas makes to the total pressure when the gas is part of a mixture. The partial pressure of nitrogen is represented by P_{N_2}. **Dalton's Law of Partial Pressures** states that the total pressure of a mixture of gases is equal to the sum of all of the partial pressures of the component gases. Dalton's Law can be expressed with the following equation:

$$P_{\text{total}} = P_1 + P_2 + P_3 + \cdots$$

The figure below shows two gases that are in separate, equal-sized containers at the same temperature and pressure. Each exerts a different pressure, P_1 and P_2, reflective of the number of particles in the container. On the right, the two gases are combined into the same container, with no volume change. The total pressure of the gas mixture is equal to the sum of the individual pressures. If $P_1 = 300\ \text{mm Hg}$ and $P_2 = 500\ \text{mm Hg}$, then $P_{\text{total}} = 800\ \text{mm Hg}$.

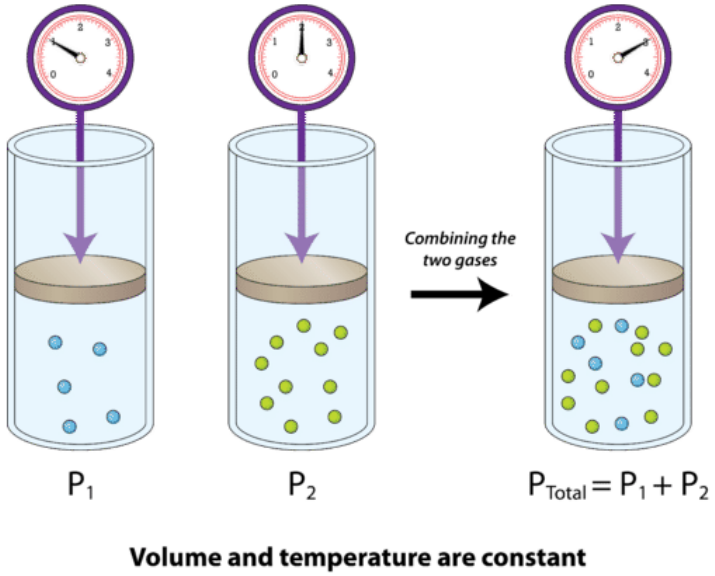


Figure 8.7.1: Dalton's Law states that the pressure of a gas mixture is equal to the partial pressures of the combining gases.

Collecting Gases Over Water

You need to do a lab experiment where hydrogen gas is generated. In order to calculate the yield of gas, you have to know the pressure inside the tube where the gas is collected. But how can you get a barometer in there? Very simple: you don't. All you need is the atmospheric pressure in the room. As the gas pushes out the water, it is pushing against the atmosphere, so the pressure inside is equal to the pressure outside.

Gas Collection by Water Displacement

Gases that are produced in laboratory experiments are often collected by a technique called **water displacement** (Figure $8.7.2$). A bottle is filled with water and placed upside-down in a pan of water. The reaction flask is fitted with rubber tubing, which is then fed under the bottle of water. As the gas is produced in the reaction flask, it exits through the rubber tubing and displaces the water in the bottle. When the bottle is full of the gas, it can be sealed with a lid.



Figure $8.7.2$: A gas produced in a chemical reaction can be collected by water displacement.

Because the gas is collected over water, it is not pure, but is mixed with vapor from the evaporation of the water. Dalton's Law can be used to calculate the amount of the desired gas by subtracting the contribution of the water vapor.

$$P_{\text{Total}} = P_g + P_{H_2O}$$

where P_g is the pressure of the desired gas, which can be solved for:

$$P_g = P_{Total} - P_{H_2O}$$

In order to solve a problem, it is necessary to know the vapor pressure of water at the temperature of the reaction (see table below). The sample problem illustrates the use of Dalton's Law when a gas is collected over water.

Table $8.7.1$*: Vapor Pressure of Water* (mm Hg) *at Selected Temperatures* $(^\circ\text{C})$

0	5	10	15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50	55	60
4.58	6.54	9.21	12.79	17.54	23.76	31.82	42.18	55.32	71.88	92.51	118.04	149.38

Example 14.14.1

A certain experiment generates $2.58\ \text{L}$ of hydrogen gas, which is collected over water. The temperature is 20°C and the atmospheric pressure is $98.60\ \text{kPa}$. Find the volume that the dry hydrogen would occupy at STP.

Solution

Step 1: List the known quantities and plan the problem.

Known

- $V_{\text{Total}} = 2.58\ \text{L}$
- $T = 20^\circ\text{C} = 293\ \text{K}$

- $P_{\text{Total}} = 98.60 \text{ kPa} = 739.7 \text{ mm Hg}$

Unknown

- V_{H_2} at STP $= ?$ L

The atmospheric pressure is converted from kPa to mm Hg in order to match units with the table. The sum of the pressures of the hydrogen and the water vapor is equal to the atmospheric pressure. The pressure of the hydrogen is found by subtraction. Then, the volume of the gas at STP can be calculated by using the combined gas law.

Step 2: Solve.

$$\begin{aligned} P_{H_2} &= P_{\text{Total}} - P_{H_2O} \\ &= 739,7 \text{ mm Hg} - 17.54 \text{ mm Hg} \\ &= 722.2 \text{ mm Hg} \end{aligned}$$

Now the combined gas law is used, solving for V_2, the volume of hydrogen at STP.

$$\begin{aligned} V_2 &= \frac{P_1 \times V_1 \times T_2}{P_2 \times T_1} \\ &= \frac{722.2 \text{ mm Hg} \times 2.58 \text{ L} \times 273 \text{ K}}{760 \text{ mm Hg} \times 293 \text{ K}} \\ &= 2.28 \text{ L } H_2 \end{aligned}$$

Step 3: Think about your result.

If the hydrogen gas were to be collected at STP and without the presence of the water vapor, its volume would be 2.28 L. This is less than the actual collected volume because some of that is water vapor. The conversion using STP is useful for stoichiometry purposes.

Summary

- Dalton's Law of Partial Pressures states that the total pressure in a system is equal to the sum of the partial pressures of the gases present.
- The vapor pressure due to water in a sample can be corrected for, in order to get the true value for the pressure of the gas.

This page titled 8.7: Mixtures of Gases is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 11.9: Mixtures of Gases - Why Deep-Sea Divers Breathe a Mixture of Helium and Oxygen by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

8.8: Gases (Exercises)

Many of the questions here were taken from the following source. For additional practice using the ideas covered in this chapter, please see the links found at this source.

Q10.1.1

Explain the differences between the microscopic and the macroscopic properties of matter. Is the boiling point of a compound a microscopic or macroscopic property? molecular mass? Why?

Q10.1.2

How do the microscopic properties of matter influence the macroscopic properties? Can you relate molecular mass to boiling point? Why or why not?

Q10.1.3

For a substance that has gas, liquid, and solid phases, arrange these phases in order of increasing density.

1. strength of intermolecular interactions.
2. compressibility.
3. molecular motion.
4. order in the arrangement of the molecules or atoms.

Q10.1.4

Which elements of the periodic table exist as gases at room temperature and pressure? Of these, which are diatomic molecules and which are monatomic? Which elements are liquids at room temperature and pressure? Which portion of the periodic table contains elements whose binary hydrides are most likely gases at room temperature?

Q10.3.5

A 1.00 mol sample of gas at 25°C and 1.0 atm has an initial volume of 22.4 L. Calculate the results of each change, assuming all the other conditions remain constant.

1. The pressure is changed to 85.7 mmHg. How many milliliters does the gas occupy?
2. The volume is reduced to 275 mL. What is the pressure in millimeters of mercury?
3. The pressure is increased to 25.3 atm. What is the temperature in degrees Celsius?
4. The sample is heated to 30°C. What is the volume in liters?
5. The sample is compressed to 1255 mL, and the pressure is increased to 2555 torr. What is the temperature of the gas in kelvins?

S10.3.5

1. 1.99×10^5 mL
2. 6.19×10^4 mmHg
3. 7270°C
4. 22.8 L
5. 51.4 K

Q10.3.6

A 1.00 mol sample of gas is at 300 K and 4.11 atm. What is the volume of the gas under these conditions? The sample is compressed to 6.0 atm at constant temperature, giving a volume of 3.99 L. Is this result consistent with Boyle's law?

Q10.4.19

A 8.60 L tank of nitrogen gas at a pressure of 455 mmHg is connected to an empty tank with a volume of 5.35 L. What is the final pressure in the system after the valve connecting the two tanks is opened? Assume that the temperature is constant.

S10.4.19

281 mmHg

Q10.4.20

At constant temperature, what pressure in atmospheres is needed to compress 14.2 L of gas initially at 25.2 atm to a volume of 12.4 L? What pressure is needed to compress 27.8 L of gas to 20.6 L under similar conditions?

Q10.4.21

One method for preparing hydrogen gas is to pass HCl gas over hot aluminum; the other product of the reaction is $AlCl_3$. If you wanted to use this reaction to fill a balloon with a volume of 28,500 L at sea level and a temperature of 78°F, what mass of aluminum would you need? What volume of HCl at STP would you need? (STP means conditions of 1.00 atm and 273 K.)

S10.4.21

20.9 kg Al, 5.20×10^4 L HCl

Q10.4.21

An 3.50 g sample of acetylene is burned in excess oxygen according to the following reaction:

$2C2H2(g)+5O2(g) \rightarrow 4CO2(g)+2H2O(l)(10.E.2)(10.E.2)2C2H2(g)+5O2(g) \rightarrow 4CO2(g)+2H2O(l)$

At STP, what volume of $CO_2(g)$ is produced?

Q10.4.22

Calculate the density of ethylene (C_2H_4) under each set of conditions.

1. 7.8 g at 0.89 atm and 26°C
2. 6.3 mol at 102.6 kPa and 38°C
3. 9.8 g at 3.1 atm and –45°C

S10.4.22

1. 1.0 g/L
2. 1.1 g/L
3. 4.6 g/L

Q10.4.23

Determine the density of O_2 under each set of conditions.

1. 42 g at 1.1 atm and 25°C
2. 0.87 mol at 820 mmHg and 45°C
3. 16.7 g at 2.4 atm and 67°C

Q10.4.24

At 140°C, the pressure of a diatomic gas in a 3.0 L flask is 635 kPa. The mass of the gas is 88.7 g. What is the most likely identity of the gas?

Q10.4.25

What volume must a balloon have to hold 6.20 kg of H_2 for an ascent from sea level to an elevation of 20,320 ft, where the temperature is –37°C and the pressure is 369 mmHg?

Q10.4.26

What must be the volume of a balloon that can hold 313.0 g of helium gas and ascend from sea level to an elevation of 1.5 km, where the temperature is 10.0°C and the pressure is 635.4 mmHg?

S10.4.26

2174 L

Q10.4.27

A typical automobile tire is inflated to a pressure of 28.0 lb/in.^{2} Assume that the tire is inflated when the air temperature is 20°C; the car is then driven at high speeds, which increases the temperature of the tire to 43°C. What is the pressure in the tire? If the volume of the tire had increased by 8% at the higher temperature, what would the pressure be?

Q10.4.28

The average respiratory rate for adult humans is 20 breaths per minute. If each breath has a volume of 310 mL of air at 20°C and 0.997 atm, how many moles of air does a person inhale each day? If the density of air is 1.19 kg/m^3, what is the average molecular mass of air?

Q10.4.29

Kerosene has a self-ignition temperature of 255°C. It is a common accelerant used by arsonists, but its presence is easily detected in fire debris by a variety of methods. If a 1.0 L glass bottle containing a mixture of air and kerosene vapor at an initial pressure of 1 atm and an initial temperature of 23°C is pressurized, at what pressure would the kerosene vapor ignite?

Additional Exercises

1. What is the pressure in pascals if a force of 4.88 kN is pressed against an area of 235 cm^2?
2. What is the pressure in pascals if a force of 3.44×10^4 MN is pressed against an area of 1.09 km^2?

3. What is the final temperature of a gas whose initial conditions are 667 mL, 822 torr, and 67°C and whose final volume and pressure are 1.334 L and 2.98 atm, respectively? Assume the amount remains constant.
4. What is the final pressure of a gas whose initial conditions are 1.407 L, 2.06 atm, and –67°C and whose final volume and temperature are 608 mL and 449 K, respectively? Assume the amount remains constant.
5. Propose a combined gas law that relates volume, pressure, and amount at constant temperature.
6. Propose a combined gas law that relates amount, pressure, and temperature at constant volume.
7. A sample of 6.022×10^{23} particles of gas has a volume of 22.4 L at 0°C and a pressure of 1.000 atm. Although it may seem silly to contemplate, what volume would 1 particle of gas occupy?
8. One mole of liquid N_2 has a volume of 34.65 mL at –196°C. At that temperature, 1 mol of N_2 gas has a volume of 6.318 L if the pressure is 1.000 atm. What pressure is needed to compress the N_2 gas to 34.65 mL?
9. Use two values of *R* to determine the ratio between an atmosphere and a torr. Does the number make sense?
10. Use two values of *R* to determine how many joules are in a liter·atmosphere.
11. At an altitude of 40 km above the earth's surface, the atmospheric pressure is 5.00 torr, and the surrounding temperature is –20°C. If a weather balloon is filled with 1.000 mol of He at 760 torr and 22°C, what is its
    a. initial volume before ascent?
    b. final volume when it reaches 40 km in altitude? (Assume the pressure of the gas equals the surrounding pressure.)
12. If a balloon is filled with 1.000 mol of He at 760 torr and 22°C, what is its
    a. initial volume before ascent?
    b. final volume if it descends to the bottom of the Mariana Trench, where the surrounding temperature is 1.4°C and the pressure is 1,060 atm?
13. Air, a mixture of mostly N_2 and O_2, can be approximated as having a molar mass of 28.8 g/mol. What is the density of air at 1.00 atm and 22°C? (This is approximately sea level.)
14. Air, a mixture of mostly N_2 and O_2, can be approximated as having a molar mass of 28.8 g/mol. What is the density of air at 0.26 atm and –26°C? (This is approximately the atmospheric condition at the summit of Mount Everest.)
15. On the surface of Venus, the atmospheric pressure is 91.8 atm, and the temperature is 460°C. What is the density of CO_2 under these conditions? (The Venusian atmosphere is composed largely of CO_2.)
16. On the surface of Mars, the atmospheric pressure is 4.50 torr, and the temperature is –87°C. What is the density of CO_2 under these conditions? (The Martian atmosphere, similar to its Venusian counterpart, is composed largely of CO_2.)
17. HNO_3 reacts with iron metal according to

$$Fe(s) + 2HNO_3(aq) \rightarrow Fe(NO_3)_2(aq) + H_2(g)$$

In a reaction vessel, 23.8 g of Fe are reacted but only 446 mL of H_2 are collected over water at 25°C and a pressure of 733 torr. What is the percent yield of the reaction?

18. $NaHCO_3$ is decomposed by heat according to

$$2NaHCO_3(s) \rightarrow Na_2CO_3(s) + H_2O(\ell) + CO_2(g)$$

If you start with 100.0 g of $NaHCO_3$ and collect 10.06 L of CO_2 over water at 20°C and 0.977 atm, what is the percent yield of the decomposition reaction?

Answers

1. 208,000 Pa
2.
3. 1,874 K
4.
5. $$\frac{P_1V_1}{n_1} = \frac{P_2V_2}{n_2}$$
6.
7. 3.72×10^{-23} L
8.

9. 1 atm = 760 torr
10.
11.
    1. 24.2 L
    2. 3155 L
12.
13. 1.19 g/L
14.
15. 67.2 g/L
16.
17. 3.99%

This page titled 8.8: Gases (Exercises) is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 6.E: Gases (Exercises) by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/beginning-chemistry.

9: ATTRACTIVE FORCES

All matter is subject to attractive forces, though we could ignore these when we talked about gases.

Sometimes these attractive forces are the ionic or covalent bonds that were explored previously, but these are not the only types of attractive forces. In this chapter we will introduce additional types of attractive forces. Some attractive forces are much weaker than those we've looked at previously. These are called intermolecular forces, and we will look at these in section 9.1. In section 9.2 we will look at some stronger bonds, both reviewing what we saw earlier and introducing some new possibilities.

Attractive forces are important to understand, because they are the reasons why matter will exist in condensed states such as solids and liquids. Attractive forces are also responsible for solutions forming (and for the substances that form when solutions are mixed together). In section 9.3 we will describe the phase transitions between different physical states. In section 9.4 we will discuss why solutions form based on attractive forces. And in section 9.5 we will revisit double replacement reactions with our new understanding of attractive forces.

Prior to starting chapter 9 you will want to make sure you are familiar with a few things introduced in previous chapters. The early sections of this chapter will assume you remember some of the concepts related to bonding and molecular polarity that were discussed previously. Section 9.5 builds on the concepts of predicting reactions that we last saw when first introducing chemical reactions. Please review these previous sections if necessary prior to starting this chapter.

9.1: Intermolecular Forces- Dispersion, Dipole–Dipole, Hydrogen Bonding

9.2: Types of Crystalline Solids

9.3: Phase Transitions

9.3.1: Melting, Freezing, and Sublimation

9.3.2: Boiling, Evaporation and Condensation

9.3.3: Calculations for Phase Changes

9.3.4: Heating Curve for Water

9.4: Solutions - Homogeneous Mixtures

9.4.1: How Solutions Form

9.4.2: Electrolytes and Nonelectrolytes

9.4.3: Aqueous Solutions and Solubility - Compounds Dissolved in Water

9.5: Precipitation Reactions

9.5.1: Writing Chemical Equations for Reactions in Solution- Complete Chemical, Complete Ionic, and Net Ionic Equations

9.E: Attractive Forces

This page titled 9: Attractive Forces is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

9.1: Intermolecular Forces- Dispersion, Dipole–Dipole, Hydrogen Bonding

Learning Objectives

- To describe the intermolecular forces.

In contrast to *intra*molecular forces, such as the covalent bonds that hold atoms together in molecules and polyatomic ions, *inter*molecular forces hold molecules together in a liquid or solid. Intermolecular forces are generally much weaker than covalent bonds. For example, it requires 927 kJ to overcome the intramolecular forces and break both O–H bonds in 1 mol of water, but it takes only about 41 kJ to overcome the intermolecular attractions and convert 1 mol of liquid water to water vapor at 100°C. (Despite this seemingly low value, the intermolecular forces in liquid water are among the strongest such forces known!) Given the large difference in the strengths of intra- and intermolecular forces, changes between the solid, liquid, and gaseous states almost invariably occur for molecular substances *without breaking covalent bonds*.

The properties of liquids are intermediate between those of gases and solids, but are more similar to solids.

Intermolecular forces determine bulk properties, such as the melting points of solids and the boiling points of liquids. Liquids boil when the molecules have enough thermal energy to overcome the intermolecular attractive forces that hold them together, thereby forming bubbles of vapor within the liquid. Similarly, solids melt when the molecules acquire enough thermal energy to overcome the intermolecular forces that lock them into place in the solid.

Intermolecular forces are electrostatic in nature; that is, they arise from the interaction between positively and negatively charged species. Like covalent and ionic bonds, intermolecular interactions are the sum of both attractive and repulsive components. Because electrostatic interactions fall off rapidly with increasing distance between molecules, intermolecular interactions are most important for solids and liquids, where the molecules are close together. These interactions become important for gases only at very high pressures, where they are responsible for the observed deviations from the ideal gas law at high pressures.

Dipole–Dipole Interactions

Polar covalent bonds behave as if the bonded atoms have localized fractional charges that are equal but opposite (i.e., the two bonded atoms generate a *dipole*). If the structure of a molecule is such that the individual bond dipoles do not cancel one another, then the molecule has a net dipole moment. Molecules with net dipole moments tend to align themselves so that the positive end of one dipole is near the negative end of another and vice versa, as shown in Figure $9.1.1a$.

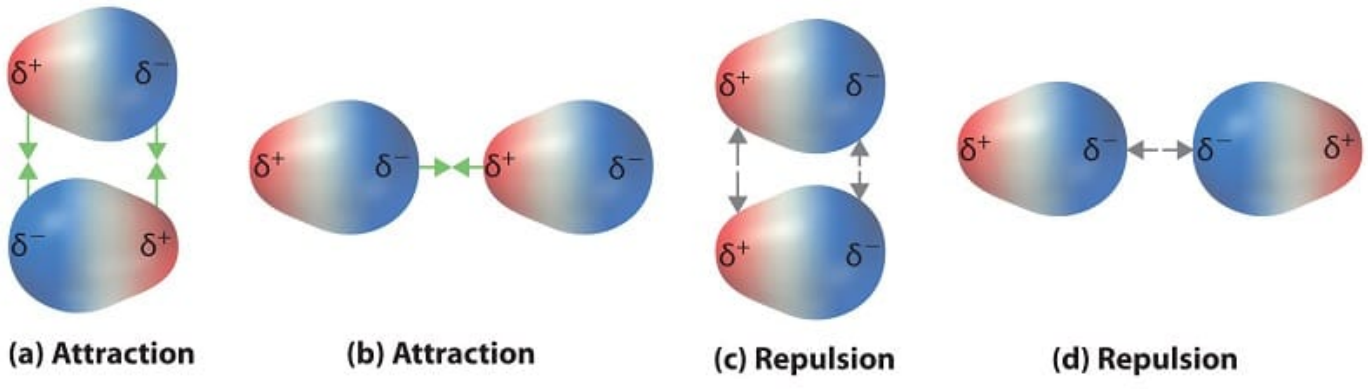


Figure $9.1.1$: Attractive and Repulsive Dipole–Dipole Interactions. (a and b) Molecular orientations in which the positive end of one dipole (δ^+) is near the negative end of another (δ^-) (and vice versa) produce attractive interactions. (c and d) Molecular orientations that juxtapose the positive or negative ends of the dipoles on adjacent molecules produce repulsive interactions.

These arrangements are more stable than arrangements in which two positive or two negative ends are adjacent (Figure $9.1.1c$

). Hence dipole–dipole interactions, such as those in Figure 9.1.1*b*, are *attractive intermolecular interactions*, whereas those in Figure 9.1.1*d* are *repulsive intermolecular interactions*. Because molecules in a liquid move freely and continuously, molecules always experience both attractive and repulsive dipole–dipole interactions simultaneously, as shown in Figure 9.1.2. On average, however, the attractive interactions dominate.

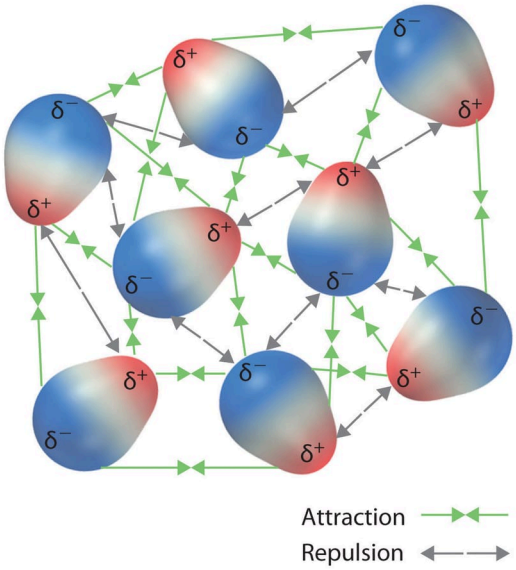


Figure 9.1.2: Both attractive and repulsive dipole–dipole interactions occur in a liquid sample with many molecules.

Because each end of a dipole possesses only a fraction of the charge of an electron, dipole–dipole interactions are substantially weaker than the interactions between two ions, each of which has a charge of at least ±1, or between a dipole and an ion, in which one of the species has at least a full positive or negative charge. In addition, the attractive interaction between dipoles falls off much more rapidly with increasing distance than do the ion–ion interactions. Thus a substance such as HCl, which is partially held together by dipole–dipole interactions, is a gas at room temperature and 1 atm pressure. Conversely, NaCl, which is held together by interionic interactions, is a high-melting-point solid. Within a series of compounds of similar molar mass, the strength of the intermolecular interactions increases as the dipole moment of the molecules increases, as shown in Table 9.1.1.

Table 9.1.1: Relationships Between the Dipole Moment and the Boiling Point for Organic Compounds of Similar Molar Mass

Compound	Molar Mass (g/mol)	Dipole Moment (D)	Boiling Point (K)
C_3H_6 (cyclopropane)	42	0	240
CH_3OCH_3 (dimethyl ether)	46	1.30	248
CH_3CN (acetonitrile)	41	3.9	355

The following video contains some examples of determining whether a molecule can have dipole intermolecular forces. It includes some review of when we first introduced the idea of molecular polarity.

YouTube Video

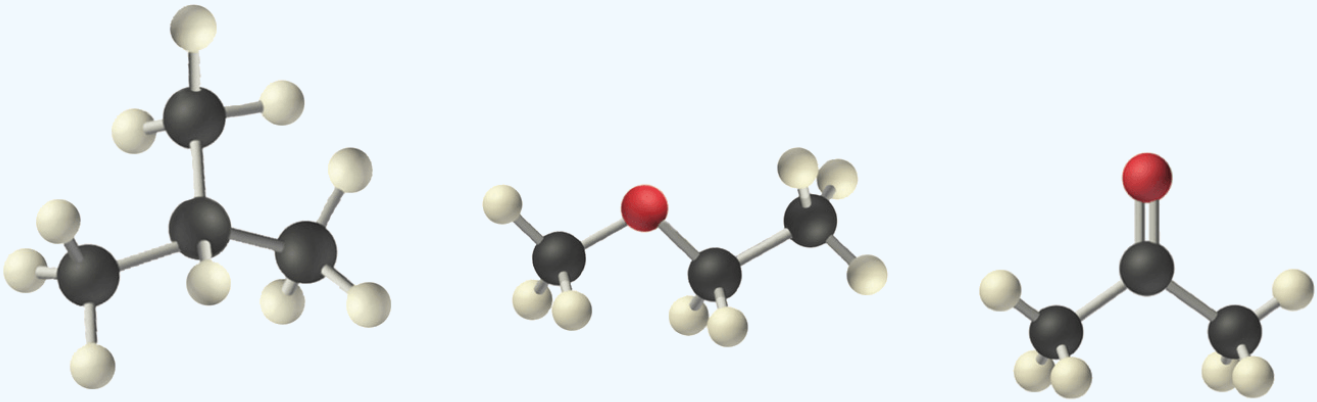
This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Video Discussing Dipole Intermolecular Forces. Source: https://youtu.be/ACq_95SIBck

Example 9.1.1

Arrange ethyl methyl ether ($CH_3OCH_2CH_3$), 2-methylpropane [isobutane, $(CH_3)_2CHCH_3$], and acetone (CH_3COCH_3) in order of increasing boiling points. Their structures are as follows:



Given: compounds.

Asked for: order of increasing boiling points.

Strategy:

Compare the molar masses and the polarities of the compounds. Compounds with higher molar masses and that are polar will have the highest boiling points.

Solution:

The three compounds have essentially the same molar mass (58–60 g/mol), so we must look at differences in polarity to predict the strength of the intermolecular dipole–dipole interactions and thus the boiling points of the compounds.

The first compound, 2-methylpropane, contains only C–H bonds, which are not very polar because C and H have similar electronegativities. It should therefore have a very small (but nonzero) dipole moment and a very low boiling point.

Ethyl methyl ether has a structure similar to H_2O; it contains two polar C–O single bonds oriented at about a 109° angle to each other, in addition to relatively nonpolar C–H bonds. As a result, the C–O bond dipoles partially reinforce one another and generate a significant dipole moment that should give a moderately high boiling point.

Acetone contains a polar C=O double bond oriented at about 120° to two methyl groups with nonpolar C–H bonds. The C–O bond dipole therefore corresponds to the molecular dipole, which should result in both a rather large dipole moment and a high boiling point.

Thus we predict the following order of boiling points:

2-methylpropane < ethyl methyl ether < acetone

This result is in good agreement with the actual data: 2-methylpropane, boiling point = –11.7°C, and the dipole moment (μ) = 0.13 D; methyl ethyl ether, boiling point = 7.4°C and μ = 1.17 D; acetone, boiling point = 56.1°C and μ = 2.88 D.

Exercise 9.1.1

Arrange carbon tetrafluoride (CF_4), ethyl methyl sulfide ($CH_3SC_2H_5$), dimethyl sulfoxide [$(CH_3)_2S{=}O$], and 2-methylbutane [isopentane, $(CH_3)_2CHCH_2CH_3$] in order of decreasing boiling points.

Answer available at the end of this section.

London Dispersion Forces

Thus far, we have considered only interactions between polar molecules. Other factors must be considered to explain why many nonpolar molecules, such as bromine, benzene, and hexane, are liquids at room temperature; why others, such as iodine and naphthalene, are solids. Even the noble gases can be liquefied or solidified at low temperatures, high pressures, or both (Table 9.1.2).

What kind of attractive forces can exist between nonpolar molecules or atoms? This question was answered by Fritz London (1900–1954), a German physicist who later worked in the United States. In 1930, London proposed that temporary fluctuations in the electron distributions within atoms and nonpolar molecules could result in the formation of short-lived instantaneous dipole moments, which produce attractive forces called London dispersion forces between otherwise nonpolar substances.

Table 9.1.2: Normal Melting and Boiling Points of Some Elements and Nonpolar Compounds

Substance	Molar Mass (g/mol)	Melting Point (°C)	Boiling Point (°C)
Ar	40	–189.4	–185.9
Xe	131	–111.8	–108.1
N_2	28	–210	–195.8
O_2	32	–218.8	–183.0
F_2	38	–219.7	–188.1
I_2	254	113.7	184.4
CH_4	16	–182.5	–161.5

Consider a pair of adjacent He atoms, for example. On average, the two electrons in each He atom are uniformly distributed around the nucleus. Because the electrons are in constant motion, however, their distribution in one atom is likely to be asymmetrical at any given instant, resulting in an instantaneous dipole moment. As shown in part (a) in Figure 9.1.3, the instantaneous dipole moment on one atom can interact with the electrons in an adjacent atom, pulling them toward the positive end of the instantaneous dipole or repelling them from the negative end. The net effect is that the first atom causes the temporary formation of a dipole, called an induced dipole, in the second. Interactions between these temporary dipoles cause atoms to be attracted to one another. These attractive interactions are weak and fall off rapidly with increasing distance.

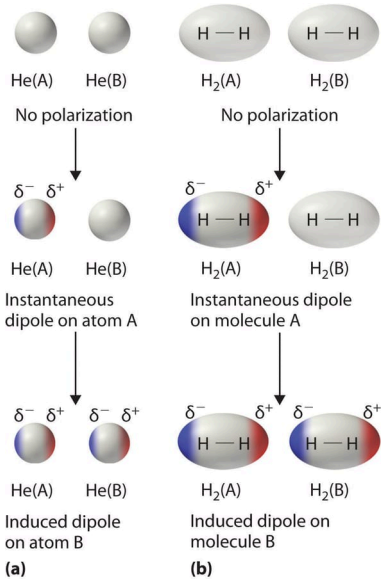


Figure 9.1.3: Instantaneous Dipole Moments. The formation of an instantaneous dipole moment on one He atom (a) or an H_2 molecule (b) results in the formation of an induced dipole on an adjacent atom or molecule.

Instantaneous dipole–induced dipole interactions between nonpolar molecules can produce intermolecular attractions just as they produce interatomic attractions in monatomic substances like Xe. This effect, illustrated for two H_2 molecules in part (b) in Figure 9.1.3, tends to become more pronounced as atomic and molecular masses increase (Table 9.1.2). For example, Xe boils at −108.1°C, whereas He boils at −269°C. The reason for this trend is that the strength of London dispersion forces is related to the ease with which the electron distribution in a given atom can be perturbed. In small atoms such as He, the two 1s electrons are held close to the nucleus in a very small volume, and electron–electron repulsions are strong enough to prevent significant asymmetry in their distribution. In larger atoms such as Xe, however, the outer electrons are much less strongly attracted to the nucleus because of filled intervening shells. As a result, it is relatively easy to temporarily deform the electron distribution to generate an instantaneous or induced dipole. The ease of deformation of the electron distribution in an atom or molecule is called its polarizability. Because the electron distribution is more easily perturbed in large, heavy species than in small, light species, we say that heavier substances tend to be much more *polarizable* than lighter ones.

For similar substances, London dispersion forces get stronger with increasing molecular size.

The polarizability of a substance also determines how it interacts with ions and species that possess permanent dipoles. Thus, London dispersion forces are responsible for the general trend toward higher boiling points with increased molecular mass and greater surface area in a homologous series of compounds, such as the alkanes (part (a) in Figure 9.1.4). The strengths of London dispersion forces also depend significantly on molecular shape because shape determines how much of one molecule can interact with its neighboring molecules at any given time. For example, part (b) in Figure 9.1.4 shows 2,2-dimethylpropane (neopentane) and *n*-pentane, both of which have the empirical formula C_5H_{12}. Neopentane is almost spherical, with a small surface area for intermolecular interactions, whereas *n*-pentane has an extended conformation that enables it to come into close contact with other *n*-pentane molecules. As a result, the boiling point of neopentane (9.5°C) is more than 25°C lower than the boiling point of *n*-pentane (36.1°C).

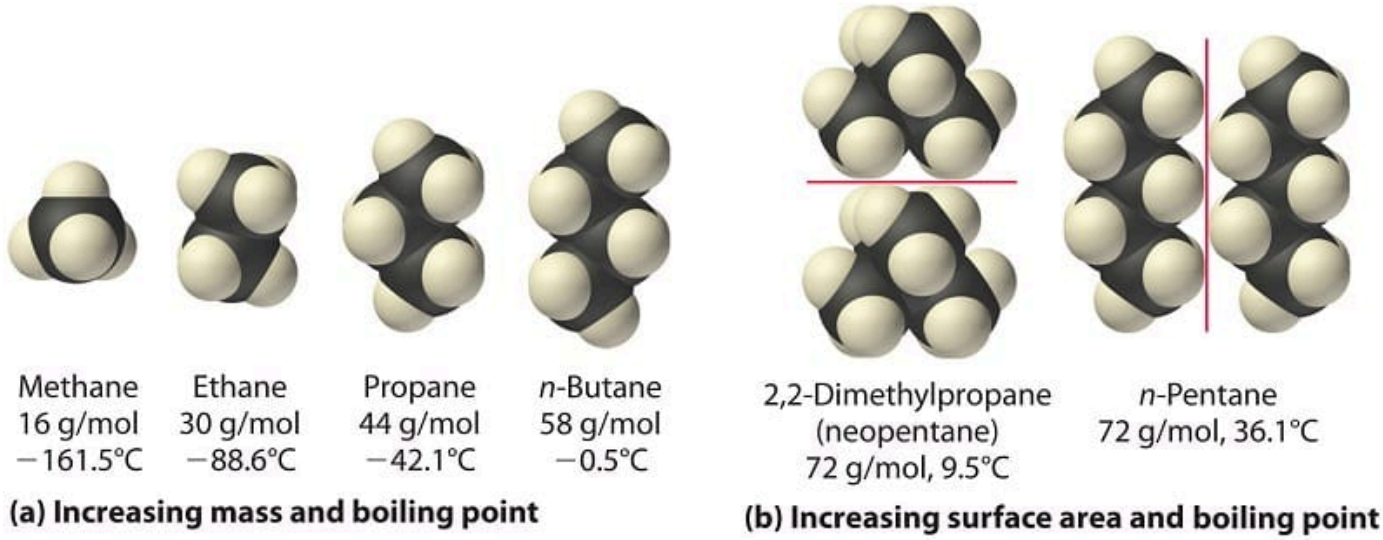


Figure 9.1.4: Mass and Surface Area Affect the Strength of London Dispersion Forces. (a) In this series of four simple alkanes, larger molecules have stronger London forces between them than smaller molecules do, and consequently have higher boiling points. (b) Linear *n*-pentane molecules have a larger surface area and stronger intermolecular forces than spherical neopentane molecules. As a result, neopentane is a gas at room temperature, whereas *n*-pentane is a volatile liquid.

All molecules, whether polar or nonpolar, are attracted to one another by London dispersion forces in addition to any other attractive forces that may be present. In general, however, dipole–dipole interactions in small polar molecules are significantly stronger than London dispersion forces, so the former predominate.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Video Discussing London/Dispersion Intermolecular Forces. Source: https://youtu.be/RCRTcIEQ-Hk

Example 9.1.2

Arrange *n*-butane, propane, 2-methylpropane [isobutene, $(CH_3)_2CHCH_3$], and *n*-pentane in order of increasing boiling points.

Given: compounds

Asked for: order of increasing boiling points

Strategy:

Determine the intermolecular forces in the compounds, and then arrange the compounds according to the strength of those forces. The substance with the weakest forces will have the lowest boiling point.

Solution:

The four compounds are alkanes and nonpolar, so London dispersion forces are the only important intermolecular forces. These forces are generally stronger with increasing molecular mass, so propane should have the lowest boiling point and *n*-pentane should have the highest, with the two butane isomers falling in between. Of the two butane isomers, 2-methylpropane is more compact, and *n*-butane has the more extended shape. Consequently, we expect intermolecular interactions for *n*-butane to be stronger due to its larger surface area, resulting in a higher boiling point. The overall order is thus as follows, with actual boiling points in parentheses: propane (−42.1°C) < 2-methylpropane (−11.7°C) < *n*-butane (−0.5°C) < *n*-pentane (36.1°C).

Exercise 9.1.2

Arrange GeH_4, $SiCl_4$, SiH_4, CH_4, and $GeCl_4$ in order of decreasing boiling points.

Answer available at the end of this section.

Hydrogen Bonds

Molecules with hydrogen atoms bonded to electronegative atoms such as O, N, and F (and to a much lesser extent, Cl and S) tend to exhibit unusually strong intermolecular interactions. These result in much higher boiling points than are observed for substances in which London dispersion forces dominate, as illustrated for the covalent hydrides of elements of groups 14–17 in Figure 9.1.5. Methane and its heavier congeners in group 14 form a series whose boiling points increase smoothly with increasing molar mass. This is the expected trend in nonpolar molecules, for which London dispersion forces are the exclusive intermolecular forces. In contrast, the hydrides of the lightest members of groups 15–17 have boiling points that are more than 100°C greater than predicted on the basis of their molar masses. The effect is most dramatic for water: if we extend the straight line connecting the points for H_2Te and H_2Se to the line for period 2, we obtain an estimated boiling point of −130°C for water! Imagine the implications for life on Earth if water boiled at −130°C rather than 100°C.

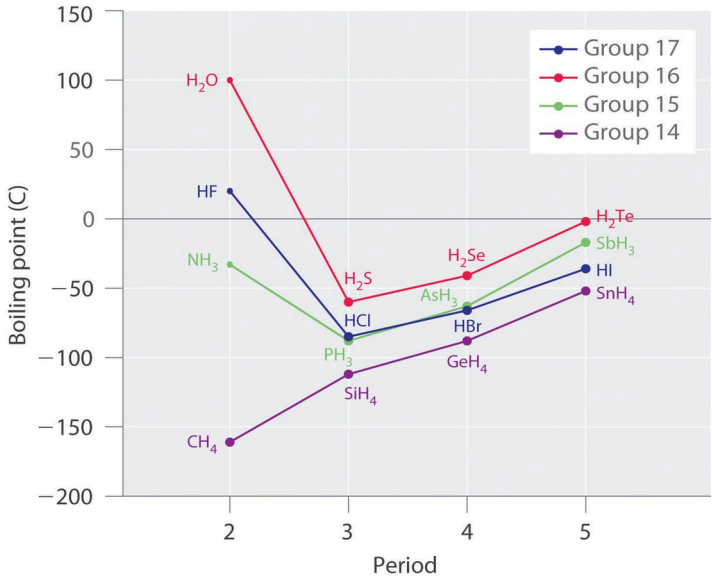


Figure 9.1.5: The Effects of Hydrogen Bonding on Boiling Points. These plots of the boiling points of the covalent hydrides of the elements of groups 14–17 show that the boiling points of the lightest members of each series for which hydrogen bonding is possible (HF, NH_3, and H_2O) are anomalously high for compounds with such low molecular masses.

Why do strong intermolecular forces produce such anomalously high boiling points and melting points? The answer lies in the highly polar nature of the bonds between hydrogen and very electronegative elements such as O, N, and F. The large difference in electronegativity results in a large partial positive charge on hydrogen and a correspondingly large partial negative charge on the O, N, or F atom. Consequently, H–O, H–N, and H–F bonds have very large bond dipoles that can interact strongly with one another. Because a hydrogen atom is so small, these dipoles can also approach one another more closely than most other dipoles. The combination of large bond dipoles and short dipole–dipole distances results in very strong dipole–dipole interactions called

hydrogen bonds, as shown for ice in Figure 9.1.6. A hydrogen bond is usually indicated by a dotted line between the hydrogen atom attached to O, N, or F (the *hydrogen bond donor*) and the atom that has the lone pair of electrons (the *hydrogen bond acceptor*). Because each water molecule contains two hydrogen atoms and two lone pairs, a tetrahedral arrangement maximizes the number of hydrogen bonds that can be formed. In the structure of ice, each oxygen atom is surrounded by a distorted tetrahedron of hydrogen atoms that form bridges to the oxygen atoms of adjacent water molecules. The bridging hydrogen atoms are *not* equidistant from the two oxygen atoms they connect, however. Instead, each hydrogen atom is 101 pm from one oxygen and 174 pm from the other. In contrast, each oxygen atom is bonded to two H atoms at the shorter distance and two at the longer distance, corresponding to two O–H covalent bonds and two O · · · H hydrogen bonds from adjacent water molecules, respectively. The resulting open, cagelike structure of ice means that the solid is actually slightly less dense than the liquid, which explains why ice floats on water, rather than sinks.

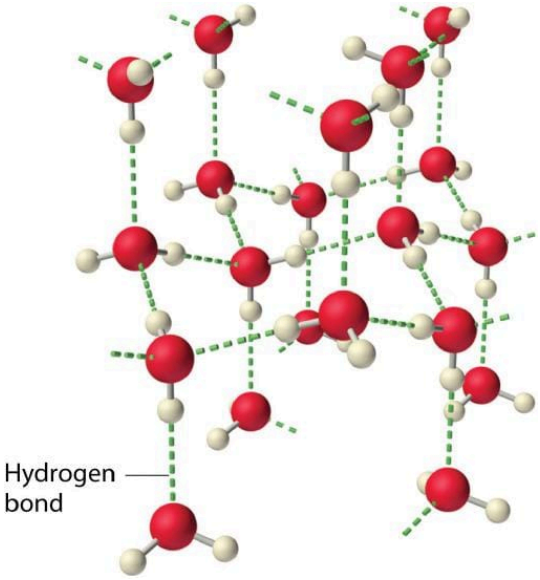


Figure 9.1.6: The Hydrogen-Bonded Structure of Ice

Each water molecule accepts two hydrogen bonds from two other water molecules and donates two hydrogen atoms to form hydrogen bonds with two more water molecules, producing an open, cagelike structure. The structure of liquid water is very similar, but in the liquid, the hydrogen bonds are continually broken and formed because of rapid molecular motion.

Hydrogen bond formation requires both a hydrogen bond donor and a hydrogen bond acceptor.

Because ice is less dense than liquid water, rivers, lakes, and oceans freeze from the top down. In fact, the ice forms a protective surface layer that insulates the rest of the water, allowing fish and other organisms to survive in the lower levels of a frozen lake or sea. If ice were denser than the liquid, the ice formed at the surface in cold weather would sink as fast as it formed. Bodies of water would freeze from the bottom up, which would be lethal for most aquatic creatures. The expansion of water when freezing also explains why automobile or boat engines must be protected by “antifreeze” and why unprotected pipes in houses break if they are allowed to freeze.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Video Discussing Hydrogen Bonding Intermolecular Forces. Source: https://youtu.be/92rbjSpHbr0

Example 9.1.3

Considering CH_3OH, C_2H_6, Xe, and $(CH_3)_3N$, which can form hydrogen bonds with themselves? Draw the hydrogen-bonded structures.

Given: compounds

Asked for: formation of hydrogen bonds and structure

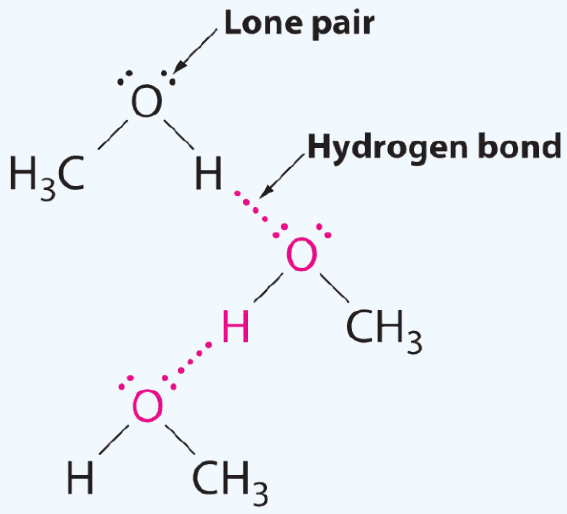
Strategy:

A. Identify the compounds with a hydrogen atom attached to O, N, or F. These are likely to be able to act as hydrogen bond donors.
B. Of the compounds that can act as hydrogen bond donors, identify those that also contain lone pairs of electrons, which allow them to be hydrogen bond acceptors. If a substance is both a hydrogen donor and a hydrogen bond acceptor, draw a structure showing the hydrogen bonding.

Solution:

A. Of the species listed, xenon (Xe), ethane (C_2H_6), and trimethylamine [$(CH_3)_3N$] do not contain a hydrogen atom attached to O, N, or F; hence they cannot act as hydrogen bond donors.

B. The one compound that can act as a hydrogen bond donor, methanol (CH_3OH), contains both a hydrogen atom attached to O (making it a hydrogen bond donor) and two lone pairs of electrons on O (making it a hydrogen bond acceptor); methanol can thus form hydrogen bonds by acting as either a hydrogen bond donor or a hydrogen bond acceptor. The hydrogen-bonded structure of methanol is as follows:



Hydrogen bonding in methanol

Exercise 9.1.3

Considering CH_3CO_2H, $(CH_3)_3N$, NH_3, and CH_3F, which can form hydrogen bonds with themselves? Draw the hydrogen-bonded structures.

Answer available at the end of this section.

Although hydrogen bonds are significantly weaker than covalent bonds, with typical dissociation energies of only 15–25 kJ/mol, they have a significant influence on the physical properties of a compound. Compounds such as HF can form only two hydrogen

bonds at a time as can, on average, pure liquid NH_3. Consequently, even though their molecular masses are similar to that of water, their boiling points are significantly lower than the boiling point of water, which forms *four* hydrogen bonds at a time.

Example 9.1.4: Buckyballs

Arrange C_{60} (buckminsterfullerene, which has a cage structure), NaCl, He, Ar, and N_2O in order of increasing boiling points.

Given: compounds.

Asked for: order of increasing boiling points.

Strategy:

Identify the intermolecular forces in each compound and then arrange the compounds according to the strength of those forces. The substance with the weakest forces will have the lowest boiling point.

Solution:

Electrostatic interactions are strongest for an ionic compound, so we expect NaCl to have the highest boiling point. To predict the relative boiling points of the other compounds, we must consider their polarity (for dipole–dipole interactions), their ability to form hydrogen bonds, and their molar mass (for London dispersion forces). Helium is nonpolar and by far the lightest, so it should have the lowest boiling point. Argon and N_2O have very similar molar masses (40 and 44 g/mol, respectively), but N_2O is polar while Ar is not. Consequently, N_2O should have a higher boiling point. A C_{60} molecule is nonpolar, but its molar mass is 720 g/mol, much greater than that of Ar or N_2O. Because the boiling points of nonpolar substances increase rapidly with molecular mass, C_{60} should boil at a higher temperature than the other nonionic substances. The predicted order is thus as follows, with actual boiling points in parentheses:

$$\text{He } (-269^\circ\text{C}) < \text{Ar } (-185.7^\circ\text{C}) < N_2O\ (-88.5^\circ\text{C}) < C_{60}\ (>280^\circ\text{C}) < \text{NaCl } (1465^\circ\text{C}).$$

Exercise 9.1.4

Arrange 2,4-dimethylheptane, Ne, CS_2, Cl_2, and KBr in order of decreasing boiling points.

Answer available at the end of this section.

Example 9.1.5:

Identify the most significant intermolecular force in each substance.

a. C_3H_8
b. CH_3OH
c. H_2S

Solution

a. Although C–H bonds are polar, they are only minimally polar. The most significant intermolecular force for this substance would be dispersion forces.

b. This molecule has an H atom bonded to an O atom, so it will experience hydrogen bonding.

c. Although this molecule does not experience hydrogen bonding, the Lewis electron dot diagram and VSEPR indicate that it is bent, so it has a permanent dipole. The most significant force in this substance is dipole-dipole interaction.

Exercise 9.1.6

Identify the most significant intermolecular force in each substance.

a. HF
b. HCl

Answer a available at the end of this section.

Summary

Intermolecular forces are electrostatic in nature and include van der Waals forces and hydrogen bonds. Molecules in liquids are held to other molecules by intermolecular interactions, which are weaker than the intramolecular interactions that hold the atoms together within molecules and polyatomic ions. Transitions between the solid and liquid, or the liquid and gas phases, are due to changes in intermolecular interactions, but do not affect intramolecular interactions. The three major types of intermolecular interactions are dipole–dipole interactions, London dispersion forces (these two are often referred to collectively as **van der Waals forces**), and hydrogen bonds. **Dipole–dipole interactions** arise from the electrostatic interactions of the positive and negative ends of molecules with permanent dipole moments. **London dispersion forces** are due to the formation of **instantaneous dipole moments** in polar or nonpolar molecules as a result of short-lived fluctuations of electron charge distribution, which in turn cause the temporary formation of an **induced dipole** in adjacent molecules. Larger atoms tend to be more **polarizable** than smaller ones, because their outer electrons are less tightly bound and are therefore more easily perturbed. **Hydrogen bonds** are especially strong dipole–dipole interactions between molecules that have hydrogen bonded to a highly electronegative atom, such as O, N, or F. The resulting partially positively charged H atom on one molecule (the *hydrogen bond donor*) can interact strongly with a lone pair of electrons of a partially negatively charged O, N, or F atom on adjacent molecules (the *hydrogen bond acceptor*). Because of strong O · · · H hydrogen bonding between water molecules, water has an unusually high boiling point, and ice has an open, cagelike structure that is less dense than liquid water.

Answers

Exercise 9.1.1

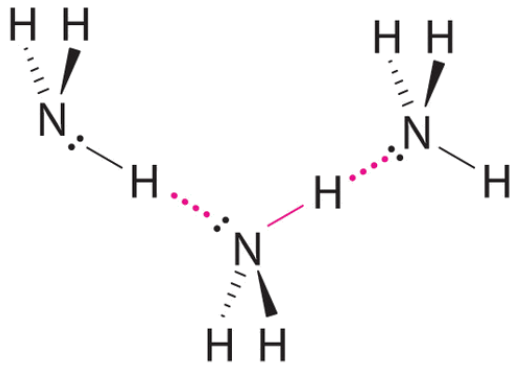
dimethyl sulfoxide (boiling point = 189.9°C) > ethyl methyl sulfide (boiling point = 67°C) > 2-methylbutane (boiling point = 27.8°C) > carbon tetrafluoride (boiling point = –128°C)

Exercise 9.1.2

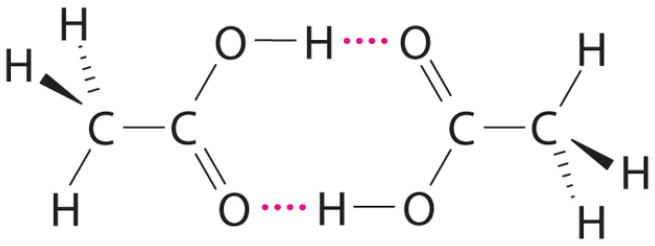
$GeCl_4$ (87°C) > $SiCl_4$ (57.6°C) > GeH_4 (–88.5°C) > SiH_4 (–111.8°C) > CH_4 (–161°C)

Exercise 9.1.3

CH_3CO_2H and NH_3;



Hydrogen bonding in ammonia



Hydrogen bonding in acetic acid

Exercise 9.1.4

KBr (1435°C) > 2,4-dimethylheptane (132.9°C) > CS_2 (46.6°C) > Cl_2 (–34.6°C) > Ne (–246°C)

Exercise 9.1.6

hydrogen bonding
dipole-dipole interactions

This page titled 9.1: Intermolecular Forces- Dispersion, Dipole–Dipole, Hydrogen Bonding is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 11.2: Intermolecular Forces is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

9.2: Types of Crystalline Solids

Learning Objectives

- Identify different types of solid substances.

As a society, we sometimes take things for granted. For example, it is often assumed that we will get electric power when we connect a plug to an electrical outlet. The wire that comprises that outlet is almost always copper, a material that conducts electricity well. The unique properties of the solid copper allow electrons to flow freely through the wire and into whatever device we connect it to. Then we can enjoy music, television, computer work, or whatever other activity we want to undertake. However, these activities—and the miracle of electricity itself—would not be possible without that copper wire!

Classes of Crystalline Solids

Crystalline substances can be described by the types of particles in them and the types of chemical bonding that take place between the particles. There are four types of crystals: (1) **ionic**, (2) **metallic**, (3) **covalent network**, and (4) **molecular**. Properties and several examples of each type are listed in the following table and are described in the table below. The bonding responsible for ionic solids and molecular solids have each been discussed earlier in this book. The other two bonding types have not been discussed yet.

Table 9.2.1: Crystalline Solids: Melting and Boiling Points

Type of Crystalline Solid	Examples (formulas)	Melting Point (°C)	Normal Boiling Point (°C)
Ionic	$NaCl$	801	1413
	CaF_2	1418	1533
Metallic	Hg	-39	630
	Na	371	883
	Au	1064	2856
	W	3410	5660
Covalent Network	B	2076	3927
	C (diamond)	3500	3930
	SiO_2	1600	2230
Molecular	H_2	-259	-253
	I_2	114	184
	NH_3	-78	-33
	H_2O	0	100

Ionic crystals - The ionic crystal structure consists of alternating positively-charged cations and negatively-charged anions (see figure below). The ions may either be monatomic or polyatomic. Generally, ionic crystals form from a combination of Group 1 or 2 metals and Group 16 or 17 nonmetals or nonmetallic polyatomic ions. Ionic crystals are hard and brittle and have high melting points. Ionic compounds do not conduct electricity as solids, but do conduct electricity when molten or in aqueous solution.

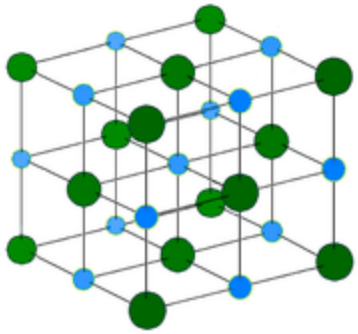


Figure 9.2.1: NaCl crystal.

Metallic crystal - Metallic crystals consist of metal cations surrounded by a "sea" of mobile valence electrons (see figure below). These electrons, also referred to as delocalized electrons, do not belong to any one atom, but are capable of moving through the entire crystal. As a result, metals are good conductors of electricity. As seen in the table above, the melting points of metallic crystals span a wide range.

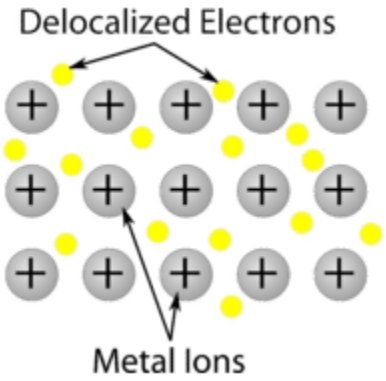


Figure 9.2.2: Metallic crystal lattice with free electrons able to move among positive metal atoms.

Covalent network crystals - A covalent network crystal consists of atoms at the lattice points of the crystal, with each atom being covalently bonded to its nearest neighbor atoms (see figure below). The covalently bonded network is three-dimensional and contains a very large number of atoms. Network solids include diamond, quartz, many metalloids, and oxides of transition metals and metalloids. Network solids are hard and brittle, with extremely high melting and boiling points. Being composed of atoms rather than ions, they do not conduct electricity in any state.

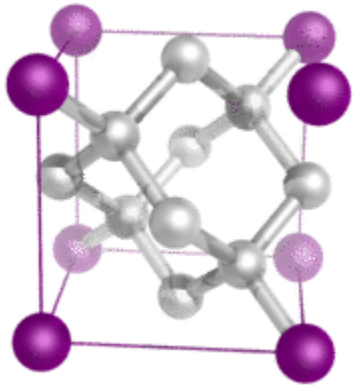


Figure 9.2.3: Diamond is a network solid and consists of carbon atoms covalently bonded to one another in a repeating three-dimensional pattern. Each carbon atom makes for single covalent bonds in a tetrahedral geometry.

Molecular crystals - Molecular crystals typically consist of molecules at the lattice points of the crystal, held together by relatively weak intermolecular forces (see figure below). The intermolecular forces may be dispersion forces in the case of nonpolar crystals, or dipole-dipole forces in the case of polar crystals. Some molecular crystals, such as ice, have molecules held together

by hydrogen bonds. When one of the noble gases is cooled and solidified, the lattice points are individual atoms rather than molecules. In all cases, the intermolecular forces holding the particles together are far weaker than either ionic or covalent bonds. As a result, the melting and boiling points of molecular crystals are much lower. Lacking ions or free electrons, molecular crystals are poor electrical conductors.

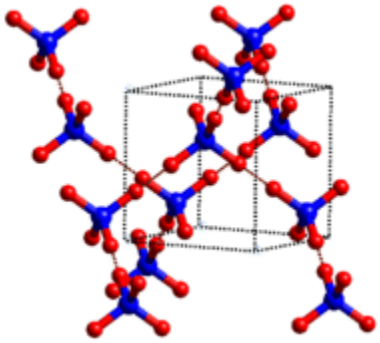


Figure 9.2.4: Ice crystal structure.

Some general properties of the four major classes of solids are summarized in Table 9.2.2.

Table 9.2.2: Properties of the Major Classes of Solids

Ionic Solids	Molecular Solids	Covalent Solids	Metallic Solids
poor conductors of heat and electricity	poor conductors of heat and electricity	poor conductors of heat and electricity*	good conductors of heat and electricity
relatively high melting point	low melting point	high melting point	melting points depend strongly on electron configuration
hard but brittle; shatter under stress	soft	very hard and brittle	easily deformed under stress; ductile and malleable
relatively dense	low density	low density	usually high density
dull surface	dull surface	dull surface	lustrous
***Many exceptions exist. For example, graphite has a relatively high electrical conductivity within the carbon planes, and diamond has the highest thermal conductivity of any known substance.**			

Example 9.2.1

Classify Ge, RbI, $C_6(CH_3)_6$, and Zn as ionic, molecular, covalent, or metallic solids and arrange them in order of increasing melting points.

Given: compounds

Asked for: classification and order of melting points

Strategy:

A. Locate the component element(s) in the periodic table. Based on their positions, predict whether each solid is ionic, molecular, covalent, or metallic.
B. Arrange the solids in order of increasing melting points based on your classification, beginning with molecular solids.

Solution:

A. **Germanium** lies in the p block just under Si, along the diagonal line of semi-metallic elements, which suggests that elemental Ge is likely to have the same structure as Si (the diamond structure). Thus Ge is probably a **covalent solid**.

RbI contains a metal from group 1 and a nonmetal from group 17, so it is **an ionic solid** containing Rb^+ and I^- ions.

The compound $C_6(CH_3)_6$ is a hydrocarbon (hexamethylbenzene), which consists of isolated molecules that stack to form **a molecular solid** with no covalent bonds between them.

Zn is a d-block element, so it is **a metallic solid**.

B. Arranging these substances in order of increasing melting points is straightforward, with one exception. We expect $C_6(CH_3)_6$ to have the lowest melting point and Ge to have the highest melting point, with RbI somewhere in between. The melting points of metals, however, are difficult to predict based on the models presented thus far. Because Zn has a filled valence shell, it should not have a particularly high melting point, so a reasonable guess is

$$\mathbf{C_6(CH_3)_6 < Zn \sim RbI < Ge.}$$

The actual melting points are $C_6(CH_3)_6$, 166°C; Zn, 419°C; RbI, 642°C; and Ge, 938°C. This agrees with our prediction.

Exercise 9.2.1

Classify CO_2, $BaBr_2$, GaAs, and AgZn as ionic, covalent, molecular, or metallic solids and then arrange them in order of increasing melting points.

Answer available at the end of this section.

Summary

- Ionic crystals are composed of alternating positive and negative ions.
- Metallic crystals consist of metal cations surrounded by a "sea" of mobile valence electrons.
- Covalent crystals are composed of atoms which are covalently bonded to one another.
- Molecular crystals are held together by weak intermolecular forces.

Contributions & Attributions

This page was constructed from content via the following contributor(s) and edited (topically or extensively) by the LibreTexts development team to meet platform style, presentation, and quality:

-
- Marisa Alviar-Agnew (Sacramento City College)
- Henry Agnew (UC Davis)

Answers

Exercise 9.2.1

CO_2 (molecular) < AgZn (metallic) ~ $BaBr_2$ (ionic) < GaAs (covalent).

The actual melting points are: CO_2, about -15.6°C; AgZn, about 700°C; $BaBr_2$, 856°C; and GaAs, 1238°C.

This page titled 9.2: Types of Crystalline Solids is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

9.3: PHASE TRANSITIONS

Learning Objective

- Describe what happens during a phase change.

Substances can change phase—often because of a temperature change. At low temperatures, most substances are solid; as the temperature increases, they become liquid; at higher temperatures still, they become gaseous.

The process of a solid becoming a liquid is called **melting**. The opposite process, a liquid becoming a solid, is called **freezing**. For any pure substance, the temperature at which melting occurs—known as the **melting point**—is a characteristic of that substance. It requires energy for a solid to melt into a liquid. Generally, the temperature at which something freezes is the same as its melting point. But melting point is how it is generally tabulated. During melting, energy goes exclusively to changing the phase of a substance; it does not go into changing the temperature of a substance. Hence melting is an **isothermal** process because a substance stays at the same temperature. Only when all of a substance is melted does additional energy go to changing its temperature.

What happens when a solid becomes a liquid? In a solid, individual particles are stuck in place because the intermolecular forces cannot be overcome by the energy of the particles. When more energy is supplied (e.g., by raising the temperature), there comes a point at which the particles have enough energy to move around, but not enough energy to separate. This is the liquid phase: particles are still in contact, but are able to move around each other. This explains why liquids can assume the shape of their containers: the particles move around and, under the influence of gravity, fill the lowest volume possible (unless the liquid is in a zero-gravity environment—see Figure 9.3.1.



Figure 9.3.1: Liquids and Gravity. (a) A liquid fills the bottom of its container as it is drawn downward by gravity and the particles slide over each other. (b) A liquid floats in a zero-gravity environment. The particles still slide over each other because they are in the liquid phase, but now there is no gravity to pull them down. Source: Photo on the left © Thinkstock. Photo on the right courtesy of NASA, http://www.nasa.gov/mission_pages/st...image_009.html.

The phase change between a liquid and a gas has some similarities to the phase change between a solid and a liquid. At a certain temperature, the particles in a liquid have enough energy to become a gas. The process of a liquid becoming a gas is called **boiling (or vaporization)**, while the process of a gas becoming a liquid is called **condensation**. However, unlike the solid/liquid conversion process, the liquid/gas conversion process is noticeably affected by the surrounding pressure on the liquid because gases are strongly affected by pressure. This means that the temperature at which a liquid becomes a gas, the **boiling point**, can change with surrounding pressure. In fact, it is possible for this phase change to occur at temperatures below the boiling point through a process called **evaporation**.

What happens when a liquid becomes a gas? We have already established that a liquid is composed of particles in contact with each other. When a liquid becomes a gas, the particles separate from each other, with each particle going its own way in space. This is how gases tend to fill their containers. Indeed, in the gas phase most of the volume is empty space; only about 1/1,000th of the volume is actually taken up by matter (Figure 9.3.1). It is this property of gases that explains why they can be compressed, a fact that is considered in a previous chapter.

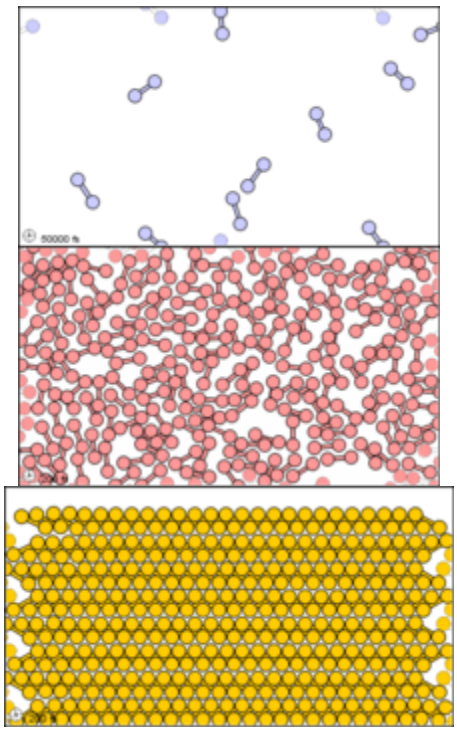


Figure 9.3.2: Sub-microscopic view of the diatomic molecules of the element bromine (a) in the gaseous state (above 58°C); (b) in liquid form (between -7.2 and 58.8°C); and (c) in solid form (below -7.2°C). As a solid, the molecules are fixed, but fluctuate. As a liquid, the molecules are in contact but are also able to move around each other. As a gas, most of the volume is actually empty space. The particles are not to scale; in reality, the dots representing the particles would be about 1/100th of the size depicted.

There is also a phase change where a solid goes directly to a gas:

$$\text{solid} \rightarrow \text{gas} \tag{9.3.1}$$

This phase change is called **sublimation.** Each substance has a characteristic heat of sublimation associated with this process. For example, the heat of sublimation (ΔH_{sub}) of H_2O is 620 cal/g.

Chemical equations can be used to represent a phase change. In such cases, it is crucial to use phase labels on the substances. For example, the chemical equation for the melting of ice to make liquid water is as follows:

$$H_2O(s) \rightarrow H_2O(\ell)$$

No chemical change is taking place; however, a physical change is taking place.

The details of these phase changes are outlined within the subsections of this section. Phase changes between solids and other physical states are discussed in 9.3.1. Phase changes between liquids and gases are discussed in 9.3.2. Calculations for any of these phase changes are discussed in 9.3.3. And finally, we will look at how to graphically show the relationship between energy transfer and changes in physical state and temperature in 9.3.4.

Summary

- Phase changes can occur between any two phases of matter.
- All phase changes occur with a simultaneous change in energy.
- All phase changes are isothermal.

9.3.1: Melting, Freezing, and Sublimation
9.3.2: Boiling, Evaporation and Condensation
9.3.3: Calculations for Phase Changes
9.3.4: Heating Curve for Water

This page titled 9.3: Phase Transitions is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 10.3: Phase Transitions - Melting, Boiling, and Subliming by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/beginning-chemistry.

9.3.1: Melting, Freezing, and Sublimation

Learning Objectives

- Define melting, freezing, and sublimation.

A phase change is a physical process in which a substance goes from one phase to another. In this subsection, we will be focusing on the transitions between liquids and solids, as well as between solids and gases. The process of a solid becoming a liquid is called **melting** (an older term that you may see sometimes is *fusion*). The opposite process, a liquid becoming a solid, is called **freezing** (some textbooks also use the word *solidification* for this process). Although we associate the term freezing with low temperatures and melting with high temperatures, the temperature at which these changes occur depends upon the substance. For example, bacon grease becomes solid at room temperature; we could say that it freezes even though we do not experience that temperature as being "cold." Even more extreme, many metals freeze at temperatures greater than 1000°C! (And based on what we have already covered related to crystalline solids, hopefully you can predict that metals will freeze at much higher temperatures than water.)

Usually the phase change occurs when adding or removing heat at a particular temperature, known as the melting point or the boiling point of the substance. The melting point is the temperature at which the substance goes from a solid to a liquid (or from a liquid to a solid). The boiling point is the temperature at which a substance goes from a liquid to a gas (or from a gas to a liquid). The nature of the phase change depends on the direction of the heat transfer. Heat going *into* a substance changes it from a solid to a liquid, or a liquid to a gas. Removing heat *from* a substance changes a gas to a liquid, or a liquid to a solid.

Two key points are worth emphasizing. First, at a substance's melting point or boiling point, two phases can exist simultaneously. Take water (H_2O) as an example. On the Celsius scale, H_2O has a melting point of 0°C and a boiling point of 100°C. At 0°C, both the solid and liquid phases of H_2O can coexist. However, if heat is added, some of the solid H_2O will melt and turn into liquid H_2O. If heat is removed, the opposite happens: some of the liquid H_2O turns into solid H_2O. A similar process can occur at 100°C: adding heat increases the amount of gaseous H_2O, while removing heat increases the amount of liquid H_2O (Figure 9.3.1.1).



Figure 9.3.1.1: The Boiling Point of Water. Nucleate boiling of water over a kitchen stove burner. (Source: Wikipedia). *Water is a good substance to use as an example because many people are already familiar with it. Other substances have melting points and boiling points as well.*

Second, the temperature of a substance does not change as the substance goes from one phase to another. In other words, phase changes are isothermal (isothermal means "constant temperature"). Again, consider H_2O as an example. Solid water (ice) can exist at 0°C. If heat is added to ice at 0°C, some of the solid changes phase to make liquid, which is also at 0°C. Remember, the solid and liquid phases of H_2O can coexist at 0°C. Only after all of the solid has melted into liquid does the addition of heat change the temperature of the substance.

For each phase change of a substance, there is a characteristic quantity of heat needed to perform the phase change per gram (or per mole) of material. The heat of fusion (ΔH_{fus}) is the amount of heat per gram (or per mole) required for a phase change that occurs at the melting point. Calculations related to the heat of fusion will be covered in a later subsection.

Melting Point

Solids are similar to liquids in that both are condensed states, with particles that are far closer together than those of a gas. However, while liquids are fluid, solids are not. The particles of most solids are packed tightly together in an orderly arrangement. The motion of individual atoms, ions, or molecules in a solid is restricted to **vibrational motion** about a fixed point. Solids are almost completely **incompressible** and are the most dense of the three states of matter.

As a solid is heated, its particles vibrate more rapidly as the solid absorbs kinetic energy. Eventually, the organization of the particles within the solid structure begins to break down and the solid starts to melt. The **melting point** is the temperature at which a solid changes into a liquid. At its melting point, the disruptive vibrations of the particles of the solid overcome the attractive forces operating within the solid. As with boiling points, the melting point of a solid is dependent on the strength of those attractive forces. Sodium chloride (NaCl) is an ionic compound that consists of a multitude of strong ionic bonds. Sodium chloride melts at $801^{\circ}\mathrm{C}$. Ice (solid $\mathrm{H_2O}$) is a molecular compound composed of molecules that are held together by hydrogen bonds. Though hydrogen bonds are the strongest of the intermolecular forces, the strength of hydrogen bonds is much less than that of ionic bonds. The melting point of ice is $0^{\circ}\mathrm{C}$.

The melting point of a solid is the same as the freezing point of the liquid. At that temperature, the solid and liquid states of the substance are in equilibrium. For water, this equilibrium occurs at $0^{\circ}\mathrm{C}$.

$$\mathrm{H_2O}\,(s) \rightleftharpoons \mathrm{H_2O}\,(l) \tag{9.3.1.1}$$

We tend to think of solids as those materials that are solid at room temperature. However, all materials have melting points of some sort. Gases become solids at extremely low temperatures, and liquids will also become solid if the temperature is low enough. The table below gives the melting points of some common materials.

Table 9.3.1.2: Melting Points of Common Materials

Materials	Melting Point (°C)
Hydrogen	-259
Oxygen	-219
Diethyl ether	-116
Ethanol	-114
Water	0
Pure silver	961
Pure gold	1063
Iron	1538

Exercise 9.3.1.2

a. Explain what happens when heat flows into or out of a substance at its melting point or boiling point.
b. How does the amount of heat required for a phase change relate to the mass of the substance?

Answer a available at the end of this section.

Answer b available at the end of this section.

Sublimation

Under some circumstances, the solid phase can transition directly to the gas phase without going through a liquid phase, and a

gas can directly become a solid. The solid-to-gas change is called **sublimation**, while the reverse process is called **deposition.** Sublimation is isothermal, like the other phase changes. There is a measurable energy change during sublimation—this energy change is called the **enthalpy of sublimation**, represented as ΔH_{sub}. The relationship between the ΔH_{sub} and the other enthalpy changes is as follows:

$$\Delta H_{sub} = \Delta H_{fus} + \Delta H_{vap}$$

As such, ΔH_{sub} is not always tabulated because it can be simply calculated from ΔH_{fus} and ΔH_{vap}.

There are several common examples of sublimation. A well-known product, dry ice, is actually solid CO_2. Dry ice is dry because it sublimes, with the solid bypassing the liquid phase and going straight to the gas phase. The sublimation occurs at temperature of –77°C, so it must be handled with caution. If you have ever noticed that ice cubes in a freezer tend to get smaller over time, it is because the solid water is very slowly subliming. "Freezer burn" isn't actually a burn; it occurs when certain foods, such as meats, slowly lose solid water content because of sublimation. The food is still good, but looks unappetizing. Reducing the temperature of a freezer will slow the sublimation of solid water.

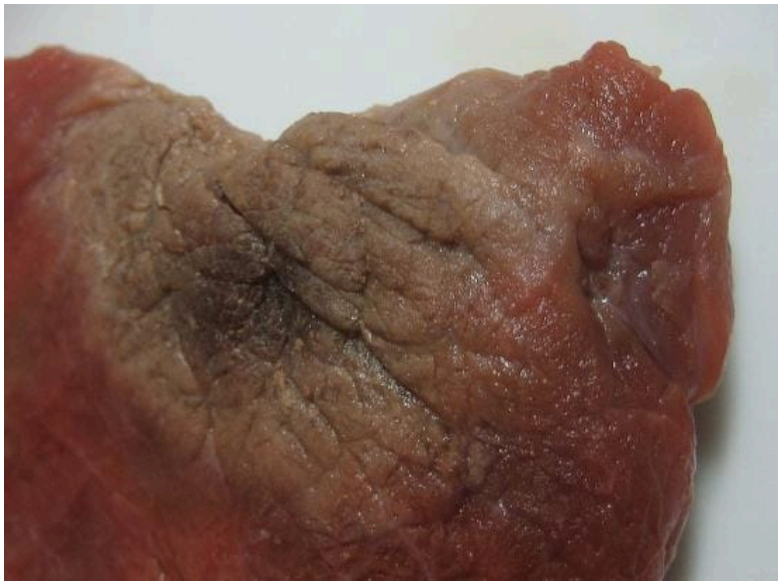


Figure 9.3.1.3: Freezer burn on a piece of beef. (Public Domain; RolloM.)

Summary

- There is an energy change associated with any phase change.
- Sublimation is the change of state from a solid to a gas, without passing through the liquid state.
- Deposition is the change of state from a gas to a solid.
- Carbon dioxide is an example of a material that easily undergoes sublimation.
- The melting point is the temperature at which a solid changes into a liquid.
- Intermolecular forces have a strong influence on melting point.

Contributions & Attributions

This page was constructed from content via the following contributor(s) and edited (topically or extensively) by the LibreTexts development team to meet platform style, presentation, and quality:

-

Answers

Exercise 9.3.1.2

The energy goes into changing the phase, not the temperature.

Exercise 9.3.1.2

The amount of heat is a constant per gram of substance.

This page titled 9.3.1: Melting, Freezing, and Sublimation is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 10.3: Phase Transitions - Melting, Boiling, and Subliming by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/beginning-chemistry.

9.3.2: Boiling, Evaporation and Condensation

Learning Objectives

- Explain how intermolecular forces affect rates of vaporization, evaporation, and condensation.

On the roof of the house in the picture below is a device known as a "swamp cooler". This piece of equipment traces its origin back to the ancient Egyptians who hung wet blankets across the doors of their homes. As the warm air passed through the blankets, water would evaporate and cool the air. The royalty went one step further and had servants fan wet cloths over jugs of water to get more evaporation and cooling.



Figure 9.3.2.1: A home with a swamp cooler attached to the roof.

The origin of the term "swamp cooler" is not known - they certainly don't work in a swamp. Best conditions for cooling include a high temperature (over $80^{\circ}\mathrm{F}$) and a low humidity (preferably less than 30%). These coolers work well in desert areas, but don't provide any cooling in the humid areas of the country.

Evaporation

A puddle of water left undisturbed eventually disappears. The liquid molecules escape into the gas phase, becoming water vapor. **Vaporization** is the process in which a liquid is converted to a gas. **Evaporation** is the conversion of a liquid to its vapor below the boiling temperature of the liquid. If the water is instead kept in a closed container, the water vapor molecules do not have a chance to escape into the surroundings and so the water level does not change. As some water molecules become vapor, an equal number of water vapor molecules condense back into the liquid state. **Condensation** is the change of state from a gas to a liquid.

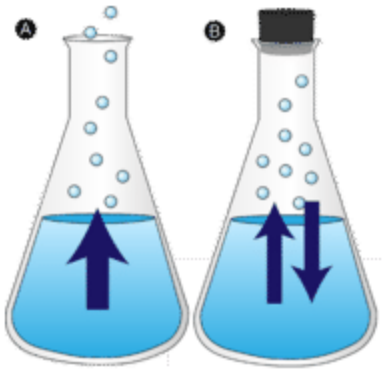


Figure 9.3.2.2: Evaporation (A) and condensation (B).

In order for a liquid molecule to escape into the gas state, the molecule must have enough kinetic energy to overcome the intermolecular attractive forces in the liquid. Recall that a given liquid sample will have molecules with a wide range of kinetic energies. Liquid molecules that have this certain threshold kinetic energy escape the surface and become vapor. As a result, the liquid molecules that remain now have lower kinetic energy. As evaporation occurs, the temperature of the remaining liquid decreases. You have observed the effects of evaporative cooling. On a hot day, the water molecules in your perspiration absorb body heat and evaporate from the surface of your skin. The evaporating process leaves the remaining perspiration cooler, which in turn absorbs more heat from your body.

A given liquid will evaporate more quickly when it is heated. This is because the heating process results in a greater fraction of the liquid's molecules having the necessary kinetic energy to escape the surface of the liquid. The figure below shows the kinetic energy distribution of liquid molecules at two temperatures. The numbers of molecules that have the required kinetic energy to evaporate are shown in the shaded area under the curve at the right. The higher temperature liquid (T_2) has more molecules that are capable of escaping into the vapor phase than the lower temperature liquid (T_1).

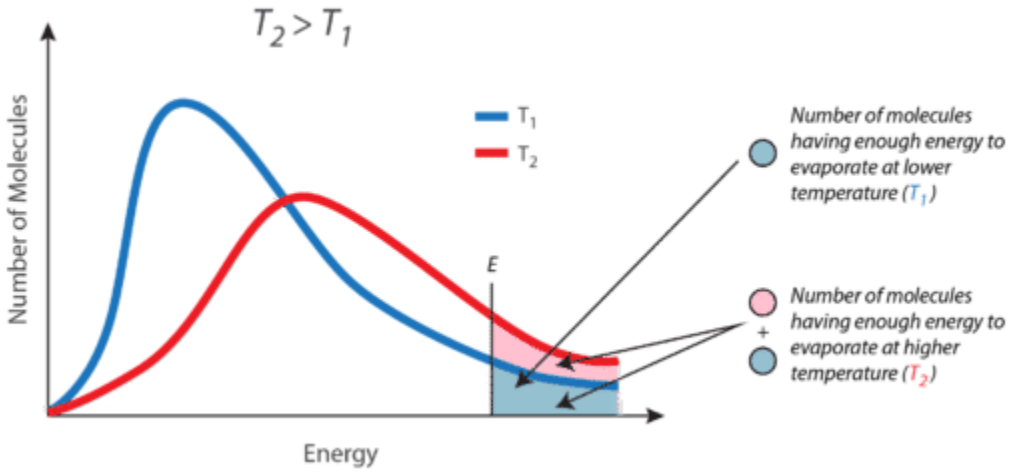


Figure 9.3.2.3: Kinetic energy distribution curves for a liquid at two temperatures T_1 and T_2. The shaded area represents the molecules with enough kinetic energy to escape the liquid and become vapor.

At 29,029 feet $(8848\ \mathrm{m})$, Mount Everest in the Himalayan range on the border between China and Nepal is the highest point on the earth. Its altitude presents many practical problems to climbers. The oxygen content of the air is much lower than at sea level, making it necessary to bring oxygen tanks along (although a few climbers have reached the peak without oxygen). One other problem is that of boiling water for cooking food. Although water boils at $100^\circ\mathrm{C}$ at sea level, the boiling point on top of Mount Everest is only about $70^\circ\mathrm{C}$. This difference makes it very difficult to get a decent cup of tea (which definitely frustrated some of the British climbers).

Boiling

As a liquid is heated, the average kinetic energy of its particles increases. The rate of evaporation increases as more and more molecules are able to escape the liquid's surface into the vapor phase. Eventually a point is reached when the molecules all

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

throughout the liquid have enough kinetic energy to **vaporize**. At this point the liquid begins to boil. The **boiling point** is the temperature at which the vapor pressure of a liquid is equal to the external pressure. The figure below illustrates the boiling of liquid.

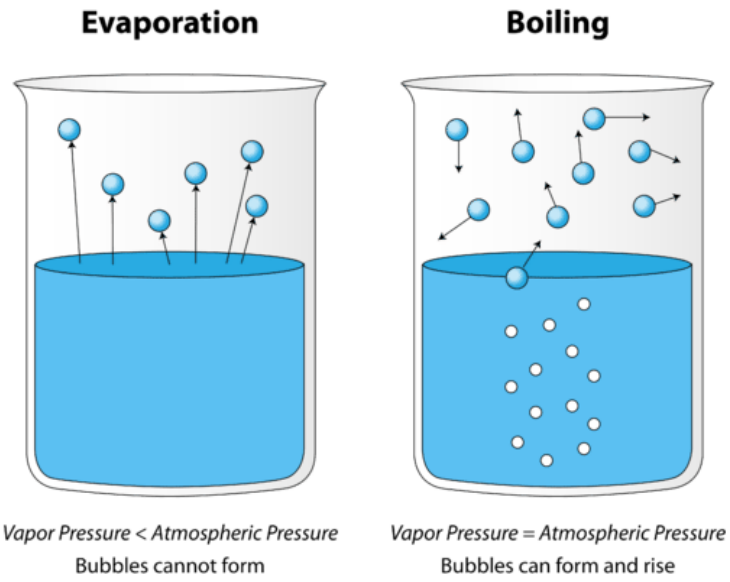


Figure 9.3.2.4: Comparison between evaporation and boiling.

In the picture on the left, the liquid is below its boiling point, yet some of the liquid evaporates. On the right, the temperature has been increased until bubbles begin to form in the body of the liquid. When the vapor pressure inside the bubble is equal to the external atmospheric pressure, the bubbles rise to the surface of the liquid and burst. The temperature at which this process occurs is the boiling point of the liquid.

The normal boiling point is the temperature at which the vapor pressure of the liquid is equal to standard pressure. Because atmospheric pressure can change based on location, the boiling point of a liquid changes with the external pressure. The normal boiling point is a constant because it is defined relative to the standard atmospheric pressure of $760\ \text{mm Hg}$ (or $1\ \text{atm}$ or $101.3\ \text{kPa}$).

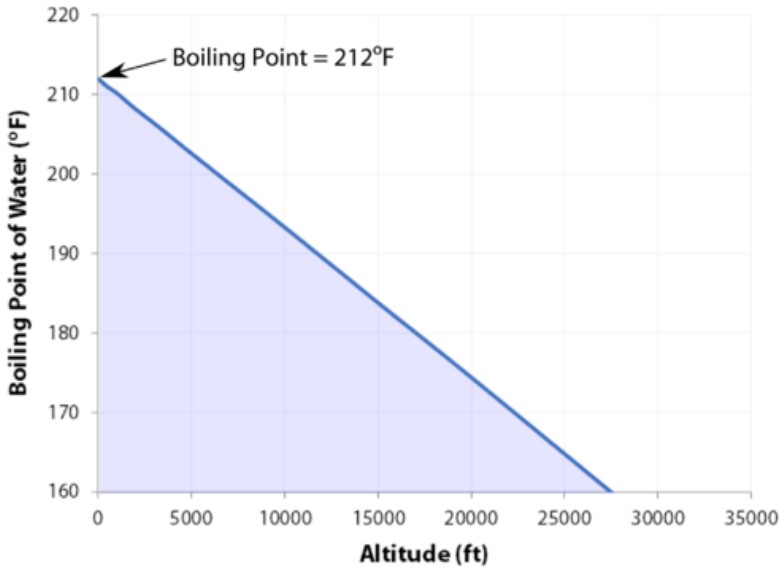


Figure 9.3.2.5: Influence of altitude on the boiling point of water.

Summary

- The boiling point is the temperature at which the vapor pressure of a liquid is equal to the external pressure.
- As the altitude increases, the boiling point decreases.
- Evaporation is the conversion of a liquid to its vapor below the boiling temperature of the liquid.
- Condensation is the change of state from a gas to a liquid.
- As the temperature increases, the rate of evaporation increases.

This page titled 9.3.2: Boiling, Evaporation and Condensation is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 12.4: Evaporation and Condensation by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

9.3.3: Calculations for Phase Changes

Learning Objectives

- Calculate the energy change needed for a phase change.

For each phase change of a substance, there is a characteristic quantity of heat needed to perform the phase change per gram (or per mole) of material. The heat of fusion (ΔH_{fus}) is the amount of heat per gram (or per mole) required for a phase change that occurs at the melting point. The heat of vaporization (ΔH_{vap}) is the amount of heat per gram (or per mole) required for a phase change that occurs at the boiling point. If you know the total number of grams or moles of material, you can use the ΔH_{fus} or the ΔH_{vap} to determine the total heat being transferred for melting or solidification using these expressions:

$$\text{heat} = n \times \Delta H_{fus} \tag{9.3.3.1}$$

where n is the number of moles and ΔH_{fus} is expressed in energy/mole or

$$\text{heat} = m \times \Delta H_{fus} \tag{9.3.3.2}$$

where m is the mass in grams and ΔH_{fus} is expressed in energy/gram.

For the boiling or condensation, use these expressions:

$$\text{heat} = n \times \Delta H_{vap} \tag{9.3.3.3}$$

where n is the number of moles) and ΔH_{vap} is expressed in energy/mole or

$$\text{heat} = m \times \Delta H_{vap} \tag{9.3.3.4}$$

where m is the mass in grams and ΔH_{vap} is expressed in energy/gram.

Remember that a phase change depends on the direction of the heat transfer. If heat transfers in, solids become liquids, and liquids become solids at the melting and boiling points, respectively. If heat transfers out, liquids solidify, and gases condense into liquids.

Some ΔH_{fus} values are listed in Table 9.3.3.1; it is assumed that these values are for the melting point of the substance. Note that the unit of ΔH_{fus} is kilojoules per mole, so we need to know the quantity of material to know how much energy is involved. The ΔH_{fus} is always tabulated as a positive number. However, it can be used for both the melting and the freezing processes, minding that melting is always endothermic (so ΔH will be positive), while freezing is always exothermic (so ΔH will be negative).

Table 9.3.3.1: Enthalpies of Fusion for Various Substances

Substance (Melting Point)	ΔH_{fus} (kJ/mol)
Water (0°C)	6.01
Aluminum (660°C)	10.7
Benzene (5.5°C)	9.95
Ethanol (–114.3°C)	5.02
Mercury (–38.8°C)	2.29

Example 9.3.3.1

What is the energy change when 45.7 g of H_2O melt at 0°C?

Solution

The ΔH_{fus} of H_2O is 6.01 kJ/mol. However, our quantity is given in units of grams, not moles, so the first step is to convert grams to moles using the molar mass of H_2O, which is 18.0 g/mol. Then we can use ΔH_{fus} as a conversion factor. Because the substance is melting, the process is endothermic, so the energy change will have a positive sign.

$$45.7\ \cancel{g\ H_2O} \times \frac{1\ \cancel{mol\ H_2O}}{18.0\ \cancel{g}} \times \frac{6.01 kJ}{\cancel{mol}} = 15.3\ kJ$$

Without a sign, the number is assumed to be positive.

Exercise 9.3.3.1

What is the energy change when 108 g of C_6H_6 freeze at 5.5°C?

Answer available at the end of this section.

Like the solid/liquid phase change, the liquid/gas phase change involves energy. The amount of energy required to convert a liquid to a gas is called the **enthalpy of vaporization** (or heat of vaporization), represented as ΔH_{vap}. Some ΔH_{vap} values are listed in Table 9.3.3.2; it is assumed that these values are for the normal boiling point temperature of the substance, which is also given in the table. The unit for ΔH_{vap} is also kilojoules per mole, so we need to know the quantity of material to know how much energy is involved. The ΔH_{vap} is also always tabulated as a positive number. It can be used for both the boiling and the condensation processes as long as you keep in mind that boiling is always endothermic (so ΔH will be positive), while condensation is always exothermic (so ΔH will be negative).

Table 9.3.3.2: Enthalpies of Vaporization for Various Substances

Substance (Normal Boiling Point)	ΔH_{vap} (kJ/mol)
Water (100°C)	40.68
Bromine (59.5°C)	15.4
Benzene (80.1°C)	30.8
Ethanol (78.3°C)	38.6
Mercury (357°C)	59.23

Example 9.3.3.2

What is the energy change when 66.7 g of Br_2(g) condense to a liquid at 59.5°C?

Solution

The ΔH_{vap} of Br_2 is 15.4 kJ/mol. Even though this is a condensation process, we can still use the numerical value of ΔH_{vap} as long as we realize that we must take energy out, so the ΔH value will be negative. To determine the magnitude of the energy change, we must first convert the amount of Br_2 to moles. Then we can use ΔH_{vap} as a conversion factor.

$$66.7\ \cancel{g\ Br_2} \times \frac{1\ \cancel{mol\ Br_2}}{159.8\ \cancel{g}} \times \frac{15.4 kJ}{\cancel{mol}} = 6.43\ kJ$$

Because the process is exothermic, the actual value will be negative: ΔH = −6.43 kJ.

Exercise 9.3.3.2

What is the energy change when 822 g of $C_2H_5OH(\ell)$ boil at its normal boiling point of 78.3°C?

Answer available at the end of this section.

As with melting, the energy in boiling goes exclusively to changing the phase of a substance; it does not go into changing the temperature of a substance. So boiling is also an isothermal process. Only when all of a substance has boiled does any additional energy go to changing its temperature.

Sometimes, a table will contain both the heat of fusion and the heat of vaporization. If you are provided such a table as a reference for performing a calculation, make sure that you are selecting the correct constant from the table. Also pay attention to the units. In the first two tables you were provided units of kJ/mol, but in the following table the units are cal/g. Use the following table to answer the questions which follow it.

Table 9.3.3.3: Heats of Fusion and Vaporization for Selected Substances

Substance	ΔH_{fus} (cal/g)	ΔH_{vap} (cal/g)
aluminum (Al)	94.0	2,602
gold (Au)	15.3	409
iron (Fe)	63.2	1,504
water (H_2O)	79.9	540
sodium chloride (NaCl)	123.5	691
ethanol (C_2H_5OH)	45.2	200.3
benzene (C_6H_6)	30.4	94.1

Example 9.3.3.1

How many cal are necessary to melt 55.8 g of ice (solid H_2O) at 0°C?

Solution

We can use the relationship between heat and the heat of fusion (Eq. 9.3.3.1b) to determine how many joules of heat are needed to melt this ice:

Extra close brace or missing open brace

Exercise 9.3.3.1

How many cal are necessary to vaporize 685 g of H_2O at 100°C?

Summary

Contributions & Attributions

This page was constructed from content via the following contributor(s) and edited (topically or extensively) by the LibreTexts development team to meet platform style, presentation, and quality:

Answers

Exercise 9.3.3.1

–13.8 kJ

Exercise 9.3.3.2

689 kJ

This page titled 9.3.3: Calculations for Phase Changes is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 10.3: Phase Transitions - Melting, Boiling, and Subliming by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/beginning-chemistry.

9.3.4: Heating Curve for Water

Freezing, condensation, and deposition, which are the reverse of fusion, sublimation, and vaporization—are exothermic. Thus heat pumps that use refrigerants are essentially air-conditioners running in reverse. Heat from the environment is used to vaporize the refrigerant, which is then condensed to a liquid in coils within a house to provide heat. The energy changes that occur during phase changes can be quantified by using a heating or cooling curve.

Heating Curves

Figure 9.3.4.3 shows a heating curve, a plot of temperature versus heating time, for a 75 g sample of water. The sample is initially ice at 1 atm and –23°C; as heat is added, the temperature of the ice increases linearly with time. The slope of the line depends on both the mass of the ice and the specific heat (C_s) of ice, which is the number of joules required to raise the temperature of 1 g of ice by 1°C. As the temperature of the ice increases, the water molecules in the ice crystal absorb more and more energy and vibrate more vigorously. At the melting point, they have enough kinetic energy to overcome attractive forces and move with respect to one another. As more heat is added, the temperature of the system does *not* increase further but remains constant at 0°C until all the ice has melted. Once all the ice has been converted to liquid water, the temperature of the water again begins to increase. Now, however, the temperature increases more slowly than before because the specific heat capacity of water is *greater* than that of ice. When the temperature of the water reaches 100°C, the water begins to boil. Here, too, the temperature remains constant at 100°C until all the water has been converted to steam. At this point, the temperature again begins to rise, but at a *faster* rate than seen in the other phases because the heat capacity of steam is *less* than that of ice or water.

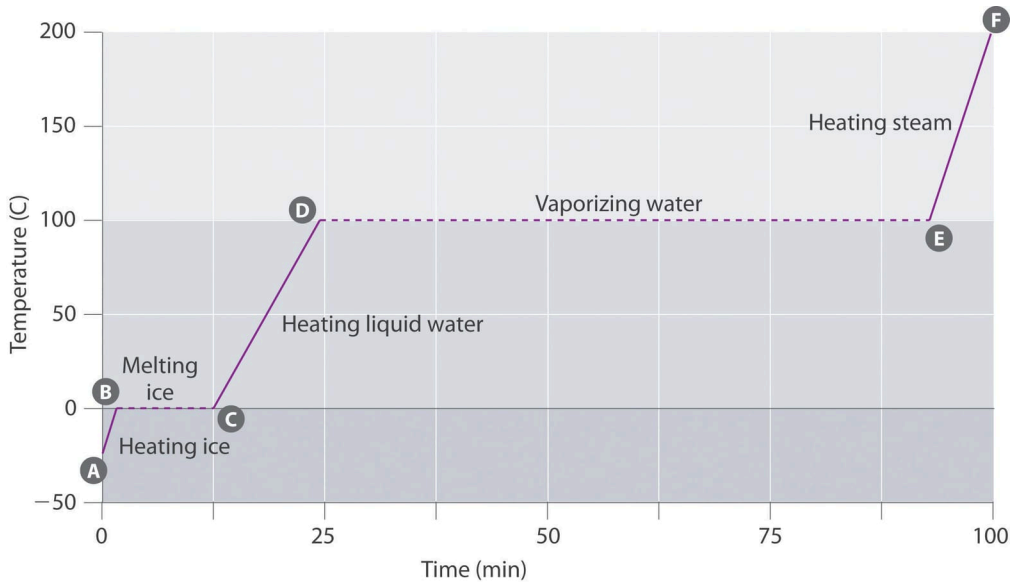


Figure 9.3.4.1: A Heating Curve for Water. This plot of temperature shows what happens to a 75 g sample of ice initially at 1 atm and –23°C as heat is added at a constant rate: A–B: heating solid ice; B–C: melting ice; C–D: heating liquid water; D–E: vaporizing water; E–F: heating steam.

Thus *the temperature of a system does not change during a phase change*. In this example, as long as even a tiny amount of ice is present, the temperature of the system remains at 0°C during the melting process, and as long as even a small amount of liquid water is present, the temperature of the system remains at 100°C during the boiling process. The rate at which heat is added does *not* affect the temperature of the ice/water or water/steam mixture because the added heat is being used exclusively to overcome the attractive forces that hold the more condensed phase together. Many cooks think that food will cook faster if the heat is turned up higher so that the water boils more rapidly. Instead, the pot of water will boil to dryness sooner, but the temperature of the water does not depend on how vigorously it boils.

> The temperature of a sample does not change during a phase change.

If heat is added at a constant rate, as in Figure 9.3.4.3, then the length of the horizontal lines, which represents the time during which the temperature does not change, is directly proportional to the magnitude of the enthalpies associated with the phase

changes. In Figure 9.3.4.3, the horizontal line at 100°C is much longer than the line at 0°C because the enthalpy of vaporization of water is several times greater than the enthalpy of fusion.

A superheated liquid is a sample of a liquid at the temperature and pressure at which it should be a gas. Superheated liquids are not stable; the liquid will eventually boil, sometimes violently. The phenomenon of superheating causes “bumping” when a liquid is heated in the laboratory. When a test tube containing water is heated over a Bunsen burner, for example, one portion of the liquid can easily become too hot. When the superheated liquid converts to a gas, it can push or “bump” the rest of the liquid out of the test tube. Placing a stirring rod or a small piece of ceramic (a “boiling chip”) in the test tube allows bubbles of vapor to form on the surface of the object so the liquid boils instead of becoming superheated. Superheating is the reason a liquid heated in a smooth cup in a microwave oven may not boil until the cup is moved, when the motion of the cup allows bubbles to form.

Cooling Curves

The cooling curve, a plot of temperature versus cooling time, in Figure 9.3.4.4 plots temperature versus time as a 75 g sample of steam, initially at 1 atm and 200°C, is cooled. Although we might expect the cooling curve to be the mirror image of the heating curve in Figure 9.3.4.3, the cooling curve is *not* an identical mirror image. As heat is removed from the steam, the temperature falls until it reaches 100°C. At this temperature, the steam begins to condense to liquid water. No further temperature change occurs until all the steam is converted to the liquid; then the temperature again decreases as the water is cooled. We might expect to reach another plateau at 0°C, where the water is converted to ice; in reality, however, this does not always occur. Instead, the temperature often drops below the freezing point for some time, as shown by the little dip in the cooling curve below 0°C. This region corresponds to an unstable form of the liquid, a supercooled liquid. If the liquid is allowed to stand, if cooling is continued, or if a small crystal of the solid phase is added (a seed crystal), the supercooled liquid will convert to a solid, sometimes quite suddenly. As the water freezes, the temperature increases slightly due to the heat evolved during the freezing process and then holds constant at the melting point as the rest of the water freezes. Subsequently, the temperature of the ice decreases again as more heat is removed from the system.

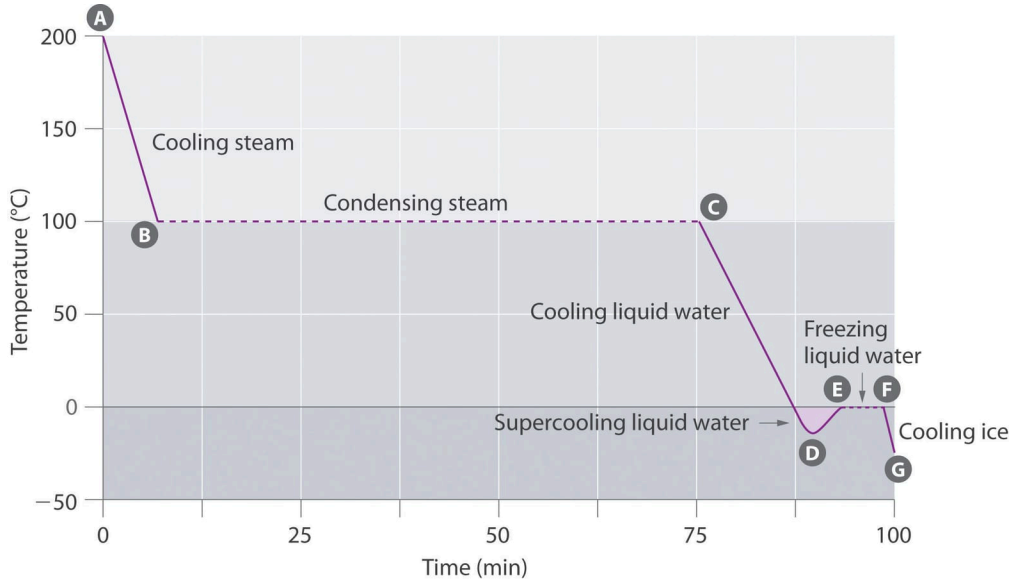


Figure 9.3.4.2: A Cooling Curve for Water. This plot of temperature shows what happens to a 75 g sample of steam initially at 1 atm and 200°C as heat is removed at a constant rate: A–B: cooling steam; B–C: condensing steam; C–D: cooling liquid water to give a supercooled liquid; D–E: warming the liquid as it begins to freeze; E–F: freezing liquid water; F–G: cooling ice.

Supercooling effects have a huge impact on Earth’s climate. For example, supercooling of water droplets in clouds can prevent the clouds from releasing precipitation over regions that are persistently arid as a result. Clouds consist of tiny droplets of water, which in principle should be dense enough to fall as rain. In fact, however, the droplets must aggregate to reach a certain size before they can fall to the ground. Usually a small particle (a *nucleus*) is required for the droplets to aggregate; the nucleus can be a dust particle, an ice crystal, or a particle of silver iodide dispersed in a cloud during *seeding* (a method of inducing rain). Unfortunately, the small droplets of water generally remain as a supercooled liquid down to about –10°C, rather than freezing into ice crystals that are more suitable nuclei for raindrop formation. One approach to producing rainfall from an existing cloud is to cool the water droplets so that they crystallize to provide nuclei around which raindrops can grow. This is best done by dispersing small granules of solid CO_2 (dry ice) into the cloud from an airplane. Solid CO_2 sublimes directly to the gas at pressures of 1 atm

or lower, and the enthalpy of sublimation is substantial (25.3 kJ/mol). As the CO_2 sublimes, it absorbs heat from the cloud, often with the desired results.

Example 9.3.4.1: Cooling Hot Tea

If a 50.0 g ice cube at 0.0°C is added to 500 mL of tea at 20.0°C, what is the temperature of the tea when the ice cube has just melted? Assume that no heat is transferred to or from the surroundings. The density of water (and iced tea) is 1.00 g/mL over the range 0°C–20°C, the specific heats of liquid water and ice are 4.184 J/(g•°C) and 2.062 J/(g•°C), respectively, and the enthalpy of fusion of ice is 6.01 kJ/mol.

Given: mass, volume, initial temperature, density, specific heats, and ΔH_{fus}

Asked for: final temperature

Strategy:

Substitute the values given into the general equation relating heat gained to heat lost (Equation 5.39) to obtain the final temperature of the mixture.

Solution:

When two substances or objects at different temperatures are brought into contact, heat will flow from the warmer one to the cooler. The amount of heat that flows is given by

$$q = mC_s\Delta T \tag{9.3.4.1}$$

where q is heat, m is mass, C_s is the specific heat, and ΔT is the temperature change. Eventually, the temperatures of the two substances will become equal at a value somewhere between their initial temperatures. Calculating the temperature of iced tea after adding an ice cube is slightly more complicated. The general equation relating heat gained and heat lost is still valid, but in this case we also have to take into account the amount of heat required to melt the ice cube from ice at 0.0°C to liquid water at 0.0°C.

Exercise 9.3.4.1: Death by Freezing

Suppose you are overtaken by a blizzard while ski touring and you take refuge in a tent. You are thirsty, but you forgot to bring liquid water. You have a choice of eating a few handfuls of snow (say 400 g) at –5.0°C immediately to quench your thirst or setting up your propane stove, melting the snow, and heating the water to body temperature before drinking it. You recall that the survival guide you leafed through at the hotel said something about not eating snow, but you cannot remember why—after all, it's just frozen water. To understand the guide's recommendation, calculate the amount of heat that your body will have to supply to bring 400 g of snow at –5.0°C to your body's internal temperature of 37°C. Use the data in Example 9.3.4.1

Answer

200 kJ (4.1 kJ to bring the ice from –5.0°C to 0.0°C, 133.6 kJ to melt the ice at 0.0°C, and 61.9 kJ to bring the water from 0.0°C to 37°C), which is energy that would not have been expended had you first melted the snow.

This page titled 9.3.4: Heating Curve for Water is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

9.4: SOLUTIONS - HOMOGENEOUS MIXTURES

Learning Objectives

- Learn terminology involving solutions.

Attractive forces are also important for the formation of solutions. We will discuss why attractive forces are important in one of the subsections of this chapter, but first we will define a few terms that are important for solutions.

The major component of a solution is called the **solvent.** The minor component of a solution is called the **solute**. By major and minor we mean whichever component has the greater or lesser presence by mass or by moles. Sometimes this becomes confusing, especially with substances with very different molar masses. However, here we will confine the discussion to solutions for which the major component and the minor component are obvious.

Solutions exist for every possible phase of the solute and the solvent. Salt water, for example, is a solution of solid NaCl in liquid water, while air is a solution of a gaseous solute (O_2) in a gaseous solvent (N_2). In all cases, however, the overall phase of the solution is the same phase as the solvent. Table $9.4.1$ lists some common types of solutions, with examples of each.

Table $9.4.1$*: Types of Solutions*

Solvent Phase	Solute Phase	Example
gas	gas	air
liquid	gas	carbonated beverages
liquid	liquid	ethanol (C_2H_5OH) in H_2O (alcoholic beverages)
liquid	solid	salt water
solid	gas	H_2 gas absorbed by Pd metal
solid	liquid	Hg(ℓ) in dental fillings
solid	solid	steel alloys



Figure $9.4.1$: Making a saline water solution by dissolving table salt (NaCl) in water. The salt is the solute and the water the solvent. (CC-BY-SA 3.0; Chris 73).

Example 9.4.1: Sugar and Water

A solution is made by dissolving 1.00 g of sucrose ($C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$) in 100.0 g of liquid water. Identify the solvent and solute in the resulting solution.

Solution

Either by mass or by moles, the obvious minor component is **sucrose**, so it is **the solute**. **Water**—the majority component—is **the solvent**. The fact that the resulting solution is the same phase as water also suggests that water is the solvent.

Exercise 9.4.1

A solution is made by dissolving 3.33 g of $HCl(g)$ in 40.0 g of liquid methyl alcohol (CH_3OH). Identify the solvent and solute in the resulting solution.

Answer available at the end of this section.

Summary

- Solutions are composed of a solvent (major component) and a solute (minor component).

Contributions & Attributions

This page was constructed from content via the following contributor(s) and edited (topically or extensively) by the LibreTexts development team to meet platform style, presentation, and quality:

- Marisa Alviar-Agnew (Sacramento City College)
- Henry Agnew (UC Davis)

Answers

Exercise 9.4.1

solute: HCl(g); solvent: CH3OH

9.4.1: How Solutions Form

9.4.2: Electrolytes and Nonelectrolytes

9.4.3: Aqueous Solutions and Solubility - Compounds Dissolved in Water

This page titled 9.4: Solutions - Homogeneous Mixtures is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

9.4.1: How Solutions Form

Learning Objectives

- Explain the significance of the statement "like dissolves like."
- Explain why certain substances dissolve in other substances.

A simple way to predict which compounds will dissolve in other compounds is the phrase "like dissolves like". What this means is that polar compounds dissolve polar compounds, nonpolar compounds dissolve nonpolar compounds, but polar and nonpolar do not dissolve in each other.

Even some nonpolar substances dissolve in water but only to a limited degree. Have you ever wondered why fish are able to breathe? Oxygen gas, a nonpolar molecule, does dissolve in water—it is this oxygen that the fish take in through their gills. The reason we can enjoy carbonated sodas is also due to a nonpolar compound that dissolves in water. Pepsi-cola and all the other sodas have carbon dioxide gas, CO_2, a nonpolar compound, dissolved in a sugar-water solution. In this case, to keep as much gas in solution as possible, the sodas are kept under pressure.

This general trend of "like dissolves like" is summarized in the following table:

Table 9.4.1.2: Summary of Solubilities

Solute (Polarity of Compound)	Solvent (Polarity of Compound)	Dominant Intermolecular Force	Is Solution Formed?
Polar	Polar	Dipole-Dipole Force and/or Hydrogen Bond	yes
Non-polar	Non-polar	Dispersion Force	yes
Polar	Non-polar		no
Non-polar	Polar		no
Ionic	Polar	Ion-Dipole	yes
Ionic	Non-polar		no

Note that every time charged particles (ionic compounds or polar substances) are mixed, a solution is formed. When particles with no charges (nonpolar compounds) are mixed, they will form a solution. However, if substances with charges are mixed with other substances without charges, a solution does not form. When an ionic compound is considered "insoluble", it doesn't necessarily mean the compound is completely untouched by water. All ionic compounds dissolve to some extent. An insoluble compound just doesn't dissolve in any noticeable or appreciable amount.

What is it that makes a solute soluble in some solvents but not others?

The answer is intermolecular interactions. The intermolecular interactions include London dispersion forces, dipole-dipole interactions, and hydrogen bonding (as described in Chapter 10). From experimental studies, it has been determined that if molecules of a solute experience the same intermolecular forces that the solvent does, the solute will likely dissolve in that solvent. So, NaCl—a very polar substance because it is composed of ions—dissolves in water, which is very polar, but not in oil, which is generally nonpolar. Nonpolar wax dissolves in nonpolar hexane, but not in polar water.



Figure 9.4.1.2: Water (clear liquid) and oil (yellow) do not form liquid solutions. (CC BY-SA 1.0 Generic; Victor Blacus)

Example 9.4.1.2: Polar and Nonpolar Solvents

Would I_2 be more soluble in CCl_4 or H_2O? Explain your answer.

Solution

I_2 is nonpolar. Of the two solvents, CCl_4 is nonpolar and H_2O is polar, so I_2 would be expected to be more soluble in CCl_4.

Exercise 9.4.1.2

Would C_3H_7OH be more soluble in CCl_4 or H_2O? Explain your answer.

Answer available at the end of this section.

Example 9.4.1.3

Water is considered a polar solvent. Which substances should dissolve in water?

a. methanol (CH_3OH)
b. sodium sulfate (Na_2SO_4)
c. octane (C_8H_{18})

Solution

Because water is polar, substances that are polar or ionic will dissolve in it.

a. Because of the OH group in methanol, we expect its molecules to be polar. Thus, we expect it to be soluble in water. As both water and methanol are liquids, the word *miscible* can be used in place of *soluble*.
b. Sodium sulfate is an ionic compound, so we expect it to be soluble in water.
c. Like other hydrocarbons, octane is nonpolar, so we expect that it would not be soluble in water.

Exercise 9.4.1.3

Toluene ($C_6H_5CH_3$) is widely used in industry as a nonpolar solvent. Which substances should dissolve in toluene?

a. water (H_2O)
b. sodium sulfate (Na_2SO_4)
c. octane (C_8H_{18})

Answer available at the end of this section.

Summary

- "Like dissolves like" is a useful rule for deciding if a solute will be soluble in a solvent.

Contributions & Attributions

This page was constructed from content via the following contributor(s) and edited (topically or extensively) by the LibreTexts development team to meet platform style, presentation, and quality:

- Marisa Alviar-Agnew (Sacramento City College)
- Henry Agnew (UC Davis)

Answers

Exercise 9.4.1.2

H2O, because both experience hydrogen bonding.

Exercise 9.4.1.3

Octane (C_8H_{18}) will dissolve. It is also non-polar.

This page titled 9.4.1: How Solutions Form is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

9.4.2: Electrolytes and Nonelectrolytes

Learning Objectives

- Define electrolytes and non electrolytes
- Discuss the idea of water as the "universal solvent".
- Explain how water molecules attract ionic solids when they dissolve in water.

When some substances are dissolved in water, they undergo either a physical or a chemical change that yields ions in solution. These substances constitute an important class of compounds called **electrolytes**. Substances that do not yield ions when dissolved are called **nonelectrolytes**. If the physical or chemical process that generates the ions is essentially 100% efficient (all of the dissolved compound yields ions), then the substance is known as a strong electrolyte (good conductor). If only a relatively small fraction of the dissolved substance undergoes the ion-producing process, the substance is a weak electrolyte (does not conduct electricity as well).

Substances may be identified as strong, weak, or nonelectrolytes by measuring the electrical conductance of an aqueous solution containing the substance. To conduct electricity, a substance must contain freely mobile, charged species. Most familiar is the conduction of electricity through metallic wires, in which case the mobile, charged entities are electrons. Solutions may also conduct electricity if they contain dissolved ions, with conductivity increasing as ion concentration increases. Applying a voltage to electrodes immersed in a solution permits assessment of the relative concentration of dissolved ions, either quantitatively, by measuring the electrical current flow, or qualitatively, by observing the brightness of a light bulb included in the circuit (Figure 9.4.2.1).

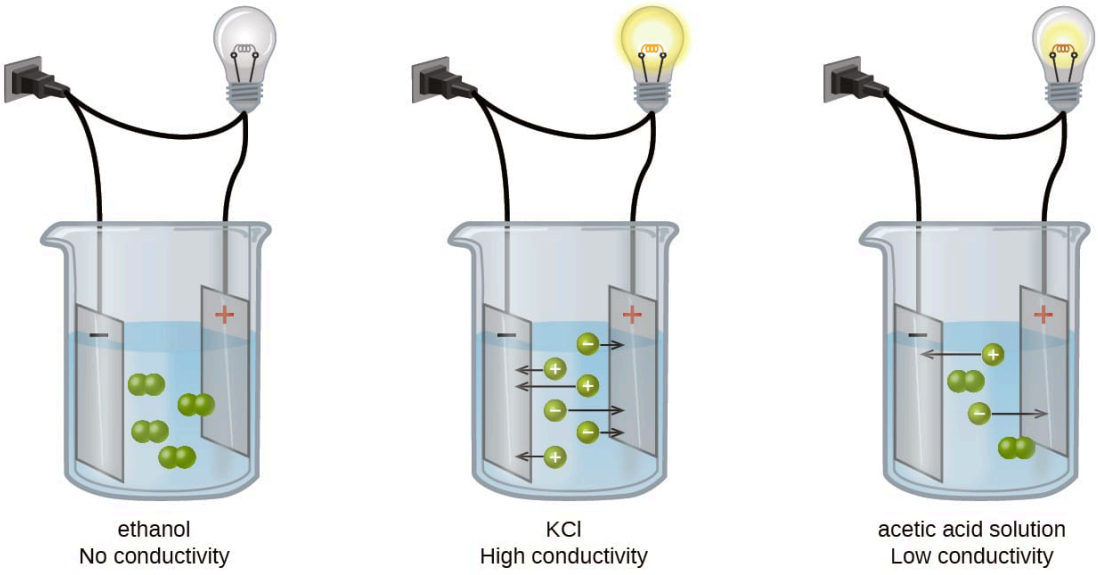


Figure 9.4.2.1: Solutions of nonelectrolytes, such as ethanol, do not contain dissolved ions and cannot conduct electricity. Solutions of electrolytes contain ions that permit the passage of electricity. The conductivity of an electrolyte solution is related to the strength of the electrolyte.

Water and other polar molecules are attracted to ions, as shown in Figure 9.4.2.2. The electrostatic attraction between an ion and a molecule with a dipole is called an **ion-dipole attraction**. They are similar to the dipole-dipole interactions which were discussed earlier, but often stronger due to the full charge on the ions. These interactions are strong enough to play an important role in the dissolution of ionic compounds in water.

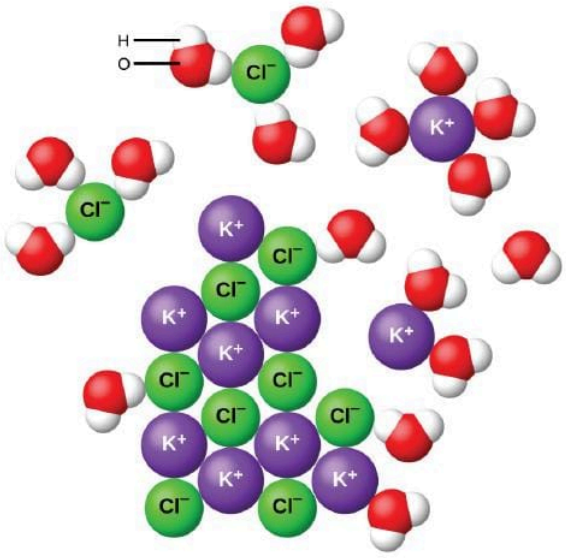


Figure 9.4.2.2: As potassium chloride (KCl) dissolves in water, the ions are hydrated. The polar water molecules are attracted by the charges on the K^+ and Cl^- ions. Water molecules in front of and behind the ions are not shown.

When ionic compounds dissolve in water, the ions in the solid separate and disperse uniformly throughout the solution because water molecules surround and solvate the ions, reducing the strong electrostatic forces between them. This process represents a physical change known as dissociation. Under most conditions, ionic compounds will dissociate nearly completely when dissolved, and so they are classified as strong electrolytes.

Example 9.4.2.1: Identifying Ionic Compounds

Which compound(s) will dissolve in solution to separate into ions?

a. LiF
b. $\mathrm{P_2F_5}$
c. $\mathrm{C_2H_5OH}$

Solution

LiF will separate into ions when dissolved in solution, because it is an ionic compound. $\mathrm{P_2F_5}$ and $\mathrm{C_2H_5OH}$ are both covalent and will stay as molecules in a solution.

Exercise 9.4.2.1

Which compounds will dissolve in solution to separate into ions?

a. $C_6H_{12}O_{11}$, glucose
b. CCl_4
c. $CaCl_2$
d. $AgNO_3$

Answer available at the end of this section.

Contributions & Attributions

This page was constructed from content via the following contributor(s) and edited (topically or extensively) by the LibreTexts development team to meet platform style, presentation, and quality:

- Marisa Alviar-Agnew (Sacramento City College)
- Henry Agnew (UC Davis)

Answers

Exercise 9.4.2.1

c & d

This page titled 9.4.2: Electrolytes and Nonelectrolytes is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

9.4.3: Aqueous Solutions and Solubility - Compounds Dissolved in Water

Learning Objectives

- Know how to use solubility rules.

Water and other polar molecules are attracted to ions, as shown in Figure 9.4.3.2. The electrostatic attraction between an ion and a molecule with a dipole is called an ion-dipole attraction. These attractions play an important role in the dissolution of ionic compounds in water.

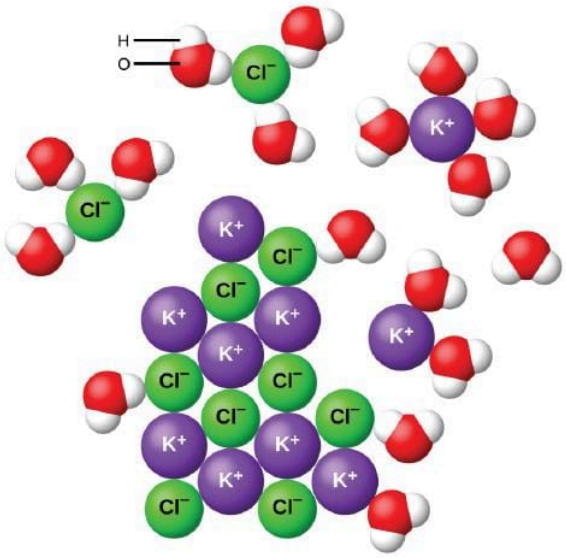


Figure 9.4.3.2: As potassium chloride (KCl) dissolves in water, the ions are hydrated. The polar water molecules are attracted by the charges on the K^+ and Cl^- ions. Water molecules in front of and behind the ions are not shown.

When ionic compounds dissolve in water, the ions in the solid separate and disperse uniformly throughout the solution because water molecules surround and solvate the ions, reducing the strong electrostatic forces between them. This process represents a physical change known as dissociation. Under most conditions, ionic compounds will dissociate nearly completely when dissolved, and so they are classified as strong electrolytes.

Let us consider what happens at the microscopic level when we add solid KCl to water. Ion-dipole forces attract the positive (hydrogen) end of the polar water molecules to the negative chloride ions at the surface of the solid, and they attract the negative (oxygen) ends to the positive potassium ions. The water molecules penetrate between individual K^+ and Cl^- ions and surround them, reducing the strong interionic forces that bind the ions together and letting them move off into solution as solvated ions, as Figure 9.4.3.2 shows. The reduction of the electrostatic attraction permits the independent motion of each hydrated ion in a dilute solution, resulting in an increase in the disorder of the system, as the ions change from their fixed and ordered positions in the crystal to mobile and much more disordered states in solution. This increased disorder is responsible for the dissolution of many ionic compounds, including KCl, which dissolve with absorption of heat.

In other cases, the electrostatic attractions between the ions in a crystal are so large, or the ion-dipole attractive forces between the ions and water molecules are so weak, that the increase in disorder cannot compensate for the energy required to separate the ions, and the crystal is insoluble. Such is the case for compounds such as calcium carbonate (limestone), calcium phosphate (the inorganic component of bone), and iron oxide (rust).

Solubility Rules

Some combinations of aqueous reactants result in the formation of a solid precipitate as a product. However, some combinations will not produce such a product. If solutions of sodium nitrate and ammonium chloride are mixed, no reaction occurs. One could write a molecular equation showing a double-replacement reaction, but both products, sodium chloride and ammonium nitrate, are soluble and would remain in the solution as ions. Every ion is a spectator ion and there is no net ionic equation at all. It is useful to be able to predict when a precipitate will occur in a reaction. To do so, you can use a set of guidelines called the **solubility rules** (Tables 9.4.3.1 and 9.4.3.2).

Table 9.4.3.1: Solubility Rules for Soluble Substances

Soluble in Water	Important Exceptions (Insoluble)
All Group IA and NH_4^+ salts	none
All nitrates, chlorates, perchlorates and acetates	none
All sulfates	$CaSO_4$, $BaSO_4$, $SrSO_4$, $PbSO_4$
All chlorides, bromides, and iodides	AgX, Hg_2X_2, PbX_2 (X= Cl, Br, or I)

Table 9.4.3.2: Solubility Rules for Sparingly Soluble Substances

Insoluble in Water	Important Exceptions (Soluble)
All carbonates and phosphates	Group IA and NH_4^+ salts
All hydroxides	Group IA and NH_4^+ salts; Ba^{2+}, Sr^{2+}, Ca^{2+} sparingly soluble
All sulfides	Group IA, IIA and NH_4^+ salts; Mg^{2+}, Ca^{2+}, Ba^{2+} sparingly soluble
Like most things in the real world, solubility exists on a spectrum, and these "rules" are only general guidelines for some more common ionic compounds. For example, the following electrolytes are of only moderate solubility in water: CH_3COOAg, Ag_2SO_4, $KClO_4$. They will precipitate only if rather concentrated solutions are used.	

As an example on how to use the solubility rules, predict if a precipitate will form when solutions of cesium bromide and lead (II) nitrate are mixed.

$$\mathrm{Cs^+}\,(aq) + \mathrm{Br^-}\,(aq) + \blacksquare\,(aq) + 2\mathrm{NO_3^-}\,(aq) \rightarrow ?$$

The potential precipitates from a double-replacement reaction are cesium nitrate and lead (II) bromide. According to the solubility rules table, cesium nitrate is soluble because all compounds containing the nitrate ion, as well as all compounds containing the alkali metal ions, are soluble. Most compounds containing the bromide ion are soluble, but lead (II) is an exception. Therefore, the cesium and nitrate ions are spectator ions and the lead (II) bromide is a precipitate. The balanced net ionic reaction is:

$$\blacksquare\,(aq) + 2\mathrm{Br^-}\,(aq) \rightarrow \mathrm{PbBr_2}\,(s)$$

Example 9.4.3.1: Solubility

Classify each compound as soluble or insoluble

a. Zn(NO3)2
b. PbBr2
c. Sr3(PO4)2

Solution

a. All nitrates are soluble in water, so Zn(NO3)2 is soluble.

b. All bromides are soluble in water, except those combined with Pb^{2+}, so $PbBr_2$ is insoluble.
c. All phosphates are insoluble, so $Sr_3(PO_4)_2$ is insoluble.

Exercise 9.4.3.1: Solubility

Classify each compound as soluble or insoluble.

a. $Mg(OH)_2$
b. KBr
c. $Pb(NO_3)_2$

Answer a available at the end of this section.

Answer b available at the end of this section.

Answer c available at the end of this section.

Summary

Substances that dissolve in water to yield ions are called electrolytes. Nonelectrolytes are substances that do not produce ions when dissolved in water. Solubility rules allow prediction of what products will be insoluble in water.

Contributions & Attributions

This page was constructed from content via the following contributor(s) and edited (topically or extensively) by the LibreTexts development team to meet platform style, presentation, and quality:

- Paul Flowers (University of North Carolina - Pembroke), Klaus Theopold (University of Delaware) and Richard Langley (Stephen F. Austin State University) with contributing authors. Textbook content produced by OpenStax College is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution License 4.0 license. Download for free at http://cnx.org/contents/85abf193-2bd...a7ac8df6@9.110).
-
- Marisa Alviar-Agnew (Sacramento City College)
- Henry Agnew (UC Davis)

Answers

Exercise 9.4.3.1: Solubility
insoluble

Exercise 9.4.3.1: Solubility
soluble

Exercise 9.4.3.1: Solubility
soluble

This page titled 9.4.3: Aqueous Solutions and Solubility - Compounds Dissolved in Water is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

9.5: PRECIPITATION REACTIONS

Learning Objectives

- To identify a precipitation reaction and predict solubility.

A precipitation reaction is a reaction that yields an insoluble product—a precipitate—when two solutions are mixed. When a colorless solution of silver nitrate is mixed with a yellow-orange solution of potassium dichromate, a reddish precipitate of silver dichromate is produced.

$$\mathrm{AgNO_3\,(aq) + K_2Cr_2O_7\,(aq)\ \rightarrow Ag_2Cr_2O_7\,(s) + KNO_3\,(aq)} \tag{9.5.1}$$

This unbalanced equation has the general form of an exchange reaction:

$$\mathrm{AC + BD\ \rightarrow \underset{insoluble}{AD} + BC} \tag{9.5.2}$$

Thus precipitation reactions are a subclass of exchange reactions that occur between ionic compounds when one of the products is insoluble. Because both components of each compound change partners, such reactions are sometimes called **double-displacement reactions**. Precipitation reactions are used to isolate metals that have been extracted from their ores, and to recover precious metals for recycling.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Video: Mixing potassium dichromate and silver nitrate together to initiate a precipitation reaction (Equation 9.5.1).

Just as important as predicting the product of a reaction is knowing when a chemical reaction will *not* occur. Simply mixing solutions of two different chemical substances does *not* guarantee that a reaction will take place. For example, if 500 mL of aqueous $NaCl$ solution is mixed with 500 mL of aqueous KBr solution, the final solution has a volume of 1.00 L and contains $\mathrm{Na^+\,(aq)}$, $\mathrm{Cl^-\,(aq)}$, $\mathrm{K^+\,(aq)}$, and $\mathrm{Br^-\,(aq)}$. As you will see in (Figure 9.5.1), none of these species reacts with any of the others. When these solutions are mixed, the only effect is to dilute each solution with the other.

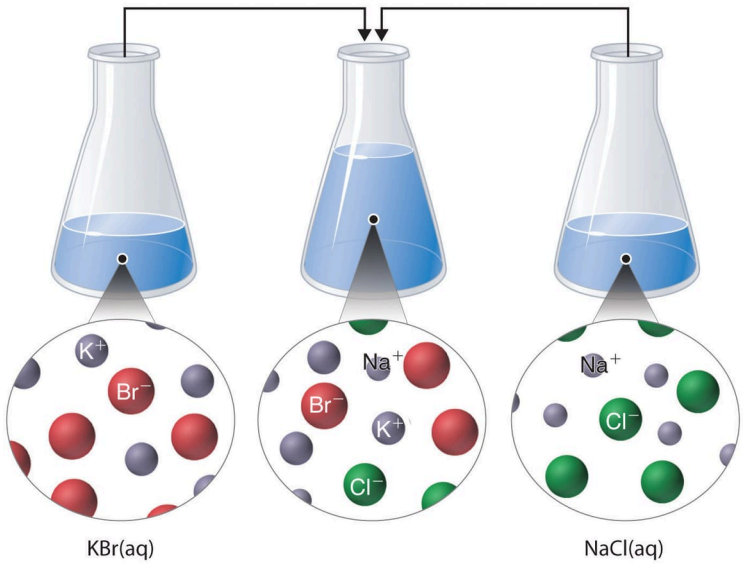


Figure 9.5.1: The Effect of Mixing Aqueous KBr and NaCl Solutions. Because no net reaction occurs, the only effect is to dilute each solution with the other. (Water molecules are omitted from molecular views of the solutions for clarity.)

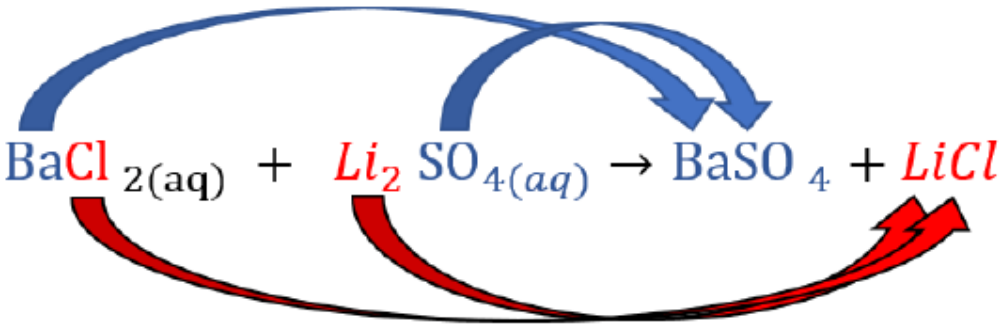
Predicting Precipitation Reactions

Previously, we had discussed the prediction of double replacement reactions without considering solubility. Now that we have learned how to use solubility rules, we will revisit double replacement reactions with this new knowledge. The steps for predicting the result of a double replacement reaction are essentially the same as before, but with an additional step included for using the solubility rules.

We will go through the same examples as previously, but adding the additional staff of using solubility rules. When a reaction does occur, we will obtain the same result but with the additional information of which of the products is solid and which is aqueous. If the reaction does not occur, we are now able to determine that using the solubility rules when we were not able to do so earlier.

Predict what will happen when aqueous solutions of barium chloride and lithium sulfate are mixed.

Change the partners of the anions and cations on the reactant side to form new compounds (products):



Because barium chloride and lithium sulfate are strong electrolytes, each dissociates completely in water to give a solution that contains the constituent anions and cations. Mixing the two solutions *initially* gives an aqueous solution that contains $\mathrm{Ba^{2+}}$, $\mathrm{Cl^-}$, $\mathrm{Li^+}$, and $\mathrm{SO_4{}^{2-}}$ ions. The only possible exchange reaction is to form LiCl and $\mathrm{BaSO_4}$.

Correct the formulas of the products based on the charges of the ions.

No need to correct the formula as both compounds already have their charges balanced.

$$\mathrm{BaCl_2\,(aq) + Li_2SO_4\,(aq) \;\rightarrow BaSO_4 + LiCl}$$

Refer to the solubility rules table to determine insoluble products which will therefore form a precipitate.

$$\mathrm{BaCl_2\,(aq) + Li_2SO_4\,(aq) \rightarrow BaSO_4\,(s) + LiCl\,(aq)}$$

Table 7.5.1 from the previous section shows that LiCl is soluble in water, but $\mathrm{BaSO_4}$ is not soluble in water.

Balance the equation:

$$\mathrm{BaCl_2\,(aq) + Li_2SO_4\,(aq) \rightarrow BaSO_4\,(s) + 2\,LiCl\,(aq)}$$

Although soluble barium salts are toxic, $\mathrm{BaSO_4}$ is so insoluble that it can be used to diagnose stomach and intestinal problems without being absorbed into tissues. An outline of the digestive organs appears on x-rays of patients who have been given a "barium milkshake" or a "barium enema"—a suspension of very fine $\mathrm{BaSO_4}$ particles in water.

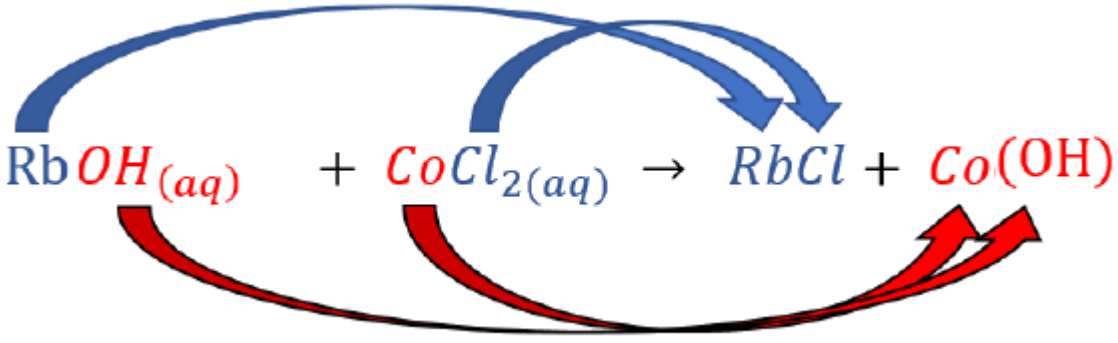


Figure 9.5.2: An x-ray of the digestive organs of a patient who has swallowed a "barium milkshake." A barium milkshake is a suspension of very fine $BaSO_4$ particles in water; the high atomic mass of barium makes it opaque to x-rays. (Public Domain; Glitzy queen00 via Wikipedia).

Example 9.5.1

Predict what will happen if aqueous solutions of rubidium hydroxide and cobalt(II) chloride are mixed.

Solution

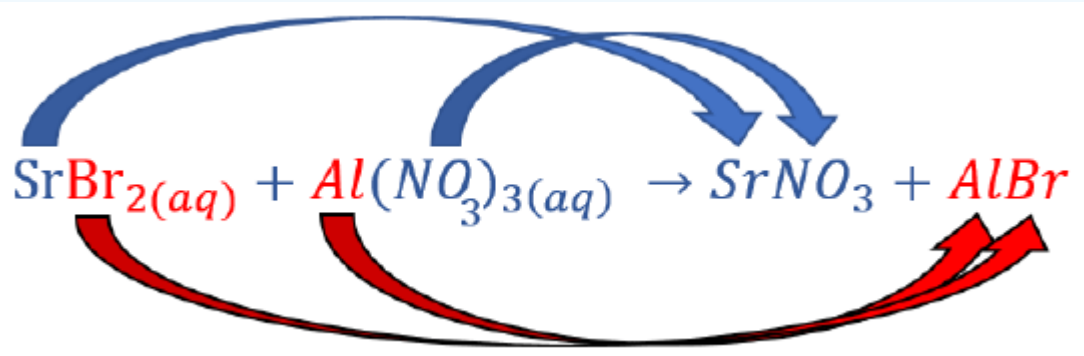
Steps	Example
Change the partners of the anions and cations on the reactant side to form new compounds (products).	

Steps	Example
Correct the formulas of the products based on the charges of the ions.	$\mathrm{RbOH\,(aq) + CoCl_2\,(aq) \rightarrow RbCl + Co(OH)_2}$
Refer to the solubility rules table to determine insoluble products which will therefore form a precipitate.	$\mathrm{RbOH\,(aq) + CoCl_2\,(aq) \rightarrow RbCl\,(aq) + Co(OH)_2\,(s)}$
Balance the equation.	Coefficients already balanced. $\mathrm{RbOH\,(aq) + CoCl_2\,(aq) \rightarrow RbCl\,(aq) + Co(OH)_2\,(s)}$

Example 9.5.2

Predict what will happen if aqueous solutions of strontium bromide and aluminum nitrate are mixed.

Solution

Steps	Example
Change the partners of the anions and cations on the reactant side to form new compounds (products).	

Steps	Example
Correct the formulas of the products based on the charges of the ions.	$\mathrm{SrBr_2\,(aq) + Al(NO_3)_3\,(aq)\ \rightarrow Sr(NO_3)_2 + AlBr_3}$
Refer to the solubility rules table to determine insoluble products which will therefore form a precipitate.	$\mathrm{SrBr_2\,(aq) + Al(NO_3)_3\,(aq)\ \rightarrow Sr(NO_3)_2\,(aq) + AlBr_3\,(aq)}$ According to Table 7.5.1 from the previous section, both $\mathrm{AlBr_3}$ (rule 4) and $\mathrm{Sr(NO_3)_2}$ (rule 2) are soluble.
If all possible products are soluble, then no net reaction will occur.	$\mathrm{SrBr_2\,(aq) + Al(NO_3)_3\,(aq)\ \rightarrow}$ **NO REACTION**

Exercise $9.5.2$

Using the information in Table 7.5.1 from the previous section, predict what will happen in each case involving strong electrolytes.

a. An aqueous solution of strontium hydroxide is added to an aqueous solution of iron(II) chloride.
b. Solid potassium phosphate is added to an aqueous solution of mercury(II) perchlorate.
c. Solid sodium fluoride is added to an aqueous solution of ammonium formate.
d. Aqueous solutions of calcium bromide and cesium carbonate are mixed.

Answer a available at the end of this section.

Answer b available at the end of this section.

Answer c available at the end of this section.

Answer d available at the end of this section.

Summary

In a **precipitation reaction**, a subclass of exchange reactions, an insoluble material (a **precipitate**) forms when two electrolyte solutions are mixed. To predict the product of a precipitation reaction, all species initially present in the solutions are identified, as are any combinations likely to produce an insoluble salt.

Contributions & Attributions

This page was constructed from content via the following contributor(s) and edited (topically or extensively) by the LibreTexts development team to meet platform style, presentation, and quality:

- Modified by Joshua Halpern (Howard University)

- Marisa Alviar-Agnew (Sacramento City College)
- Henry Agnew (UC Davis)

Answers

Exercise 9.5.2

$Fe(OH)_2$ precipitate is formed.

Exercise 9.5.2

$Hg_3(PO_4)_2$ precipitate is formed.

Exercise 9.5.2

No Reaction.

Exercise 9.5.2

$CaCO_3$ is precipitate formed.

9.5.1: Writing Chemical Equations for Reactions in Solution- Complete Chemical, Complete Ionic, and Net Ionic Equations

This page titled 9.5: Precipitation Reactions is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

9.5.1: Writing Chemical Equations for Reactions in Solution- Complete Chemical, Complete Ionic, and Net Ionic Equations

A typical precipitation reaction occurs when an aqueous solution of barium chloride is mixed with one containing sodium sulfate. The **complete chemical equation** can be written to describe what happens, and such an equation is useful in making chemical calculations. (In some textbooks this is referred to as the molecular equation. This can be somewhat confusing, because the equation does not typically contain any molecules. For this reason, we will continue to refer to it as the complete chemical equation in this textbook.)

$$\underbrace{\mathrm{BaCl_2\,(aq) + Na_2SO_4\,(aq) \longrightarrow BaSO_4\,(s) + 2\,NaCl\,(aq)}}_{\text{Complete Chemical Equation}} \tag{9.5.1.1}$$

However, Equation 9.5.1.1 does not really represent the microscopic particles (that is, the ions) present in the solution. Below is the complete ionic equation:

$$\underbrace{\mathrm{Ba^{2+}\,(aq) + \overbrace{2Cl^-(aq)}^{\text{spectator}} + \overbrace{2Na^+(aq)}^{\text{spectator}} + {SO_4}^{2-}\,(aq) \longrightarrow BaSO_4\,(s) + \overbrace{2Na^+(aq)}^{\text{spectator}} + \overbrace{Cl^-(aq)}^{\text{spectator}}}}_{\text{Complete Ionic Equation}} \tag{9.5.1.2}$$

Equation 9.5.1.2 is rather cumbersome and includes so many different ions that it may be confusing. In any case, we are often interested in the independent behavior of ions, not the specific compound from which they came. A precipitate of $\mathrm{BaSO_4\,(s)}$ will form when *any* solution containing $\mathrm{Ba^{2+}\,(aq)}$ is mixed with *any* solution containing $\mathrm{{SO_4}^{2-}\,(aq)}$ (provided concentrations are not extremely small). This happens independently of the $\mathrm{Cl^-\,(aq)}$ and $\mathrm{Na^+\,(aq)}$ ions in Equation 9.5.1.2. These ions are called **spectator ions** because they do not participate in the reaction. When we want to emphasize the independent behavior of ions, a **net ionic equation** is written, omitting the spectator ions. For precipitation of $\mathrm{BaSO_4}$ the net ionic equation is

$$\underbrace{\mathrm{Ba^{2+}\,(aq) + {SO_4}^{2-}\,(aq) \longrightarrow BaSO_4\,(s)}}_{\text{Net Ionic Equation}} \tag{9.5.1.3}$$

Example 9.5.1.1

a. When a solution of $\mathrm{AgNO_3}$ is added to a solution of $\mathrm{CaCl_2}$, insoluble AgCl precipitates. Write three equations (complete chemical equation, complete ionic equation, and net ionic equation) that describe this process.
b. Write the balanced net ionic equation to describe any reaction that occurs when the solutions of $\mathrm{Na_2SO_4}$ and $\mathrm{NH_4I}$ are mixed.

Solution

Equation Type	Example 9.5.1.1*a*	Example 9.5.1.1*b*
Complete Chemical Equation	$\mathrm{2\,AgNO_3\,(aq) + CaCl_2\,(aq) \longrightarrow\ 2\,AgCl\,(s) + Ca(NO_3)_2\,(aq)}$ The proper states and formulas of all products are written and the chemical equation is balanced.	$\mathrm{Na_2SO_4\,(aq) + NH_4I_2\,(aq) \longrightarrow 2\,NaI\,(aq) + (NH_4)_2SO_4\,(aq)}$ Both products are aqueous so there is no net ionic equation that can be written.

Equation Type	Example 9.5.1.1a	Example 9.5.1.1b
Complete Ionic Equation	$2\,Ag^+(aq) + 2\,NO_3^-(aq) + Ca^{2+}(aq) + Cl^-(aq) \longrightarrow 2\,AgCl(s) + Ca^{2+}(aq) + 2\,NO_3^-(aq)$ AgCl is a solid so it does not break up into ions in solution.	
Net Ionic Equation	$Ag^+(aq) + Cl^-(aq) \longrightarrow AgCl(s)$ All spectator ions are removed.	NaI and $(NH_4)_2SO_4$ are both soluble. No net ionic equation

The occurrence or nonoccurrence of precipitates can be used to detect the presence or absence of various species in solution. A $BaCl_2$ solution, for instance, is often used as a test for the presence of $SO_4^{2-}(aq)$ ions. There are several insoluble salts of Ba, but they all dissolve in dilute acid except for $BaSO_4$. Thus, if $BaCl_2$ solution is added to an unknown solution which has previously been acidified, the occurrence of a white precipitate is proof of the presence of the SO_4^{2-} ion.



Figure 9.5.1.1: The three common silver halide precipitates: AgI, $AgBr$ and $AgCl$ (left to right). The silver halides precipitate out of solution, but often form suspensions before settling. (CC BY-SA 3.0; Cychr).

$AgNO_3$ solutions are often used in a similar way to test for halide ions. If $AgNO_3$ solution is added to an acidified unknown solution, a white precipitate indicates the presence of Cl^- ions, a cream-colored precipitate indicates the presence of Br^- ions, and a yellow precipitate indicates the presence of I^- ions (Figure 9.5.1.1). Further tests can then be made to see whether perhaps a mixture of these ions is present. When $AgNO_3$ is added to tap water, a white precipitate is almost always formed. The Cl^- ions in tap water usually come from the Cl_2 which is added to municipal water supplies to kill microorganisms.

Exercise 9.5.1.1

Write balanced net ionic equations to describe any reaction that occurs when the following solutions are mixed.

a. $K_2CO_3 + SrCl_2$
b. $FeSO_4 + Ba(NO_3)_2$

Answer a available at the end of this section.

Answer b available at the end of this section.

Precipitates are also used for quantitative analysis of solutions, that is, to determine the amount of solute or the mass of solute in a given solution. For this purpose it is often convenient to use the first of the three types of equations described above. Then the rules of stoichiometry may be applied.

Contributions & Attributions

This page was constructed from content via the following contributor(s) and edited (topically or extensively) by the LibreTexts development team to meet platform style, presentation, and quality:

- Ed Vitz (Kutztown University), John W. Moore (UW-Madison), Justin Shorb (Hope College), Xavier Prat-Resina (University of Minnesota Rochester), Tim Wendorff, and Adam Hahn.
- Marisa Alviar-Agnew (Sacramento City College)
- Henry Agnew (UC Davis)

Answers

Exercise 9.5.1.1

$$\mathrm{Sr^{2+}(aq) + {CO_3}^{2-}(aq) \longrightarrow SrCO_3(s)}$$

Exercise 9.5.1.1

$$\mathrm{Ba^{2+}(aq) + {SO_4}^{2-}(aq) \longrightarrow Ba(SO_4)(s)}$$

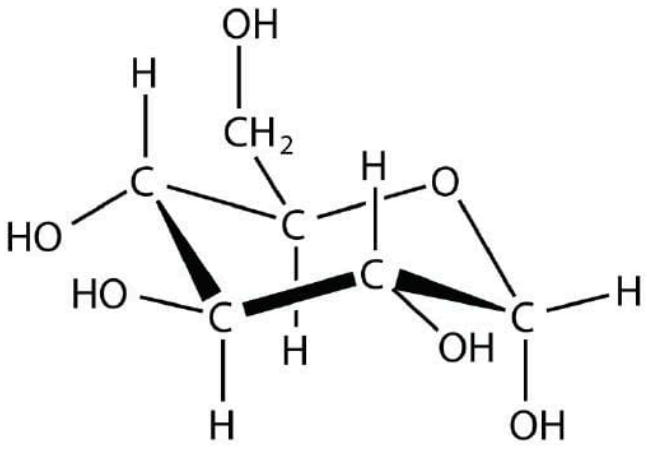
This page titled 9.5.1: Writing Chemical Equations for Reactions in Solution- Complete Chemical, Complete Ionic, and Net Ionic Equations is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

9.E: Attractive Forces

The following questions are related to the material covered in this chapter. For additional discussion on each topic, also check the links included in each heading.

10.2: Intermolecular Forces

1. What type of intermolecular force do all substances have?
2. What is necessary for a molecule to experience dipole-dipole interactions?
3. What is necessary for a molecule to experience hydrogen bonding?
4. How does varying the temperature change the preferred phase of a substance?
5. Identify the strongest intermolecular force present in each substance.
   a. He
   b. $CHCl_3$
   c. HOF
6. Identify the strongest intermolecular force present in each substance.
   a. CH_3OH
   b. $(CH_3)_2CO$
   c. N_2
7. Identify the strongest intermolecular force present in each substance.
   a. HBr
   b. $C_6H_5NH_2$
   c. CH_4
8. Identify the strongest intermolecular force present in each substance.
   a. $C_{10}H_{22}$
   b. HF
   c. glucose



Answers

1. dispersion force
2.
3. An H atom must be bonded to an N, O, or F atom.
4.
5. a. dispersion forces
   b. dipole-dipole interactions
   c. hydrogen bonding
6.

7. a. dipole-dipole interactions
   b. hydrogen bonding
   c. dispersion forces

10.3: Phase Transitions - Melting, Boiling, and Subliming

1. What is the difference between *melting* and *solidification*?
2. What is the difference between *boiling* and *condensation*?
3. Describe the molecular changes when a solid becomes a liquid.
4. Describe the molecular changes when a liquid becomes a gas.
5. What is the energy change when 78.0 g of Hg melt at −38.8°C?
6. What is the energy change when 30.8 g of Al solidify at 660°C?
7. What is the energy change when 111 g of Br_2 boil at 59.5°C?
8. What is the energy change when 98.6 g of H_2O condense at 100°C?
9. Each of the following statements is incorrect. Rewrite them so they are correct.
   a. Temperature changes during a phase change.
   b. The process of a liquid becoming a gas is called sublimation.
10. Each of the following statements is incorrect. Rewrite them so they are correct.
    a. The volume of a gas contains only about 10% matter, with the rest being empty space.
    b. ΔH_{sub} is equal to ΔH_{vap}.
11. Write the chemical equation for the melting of elemental sodium.
12. Write the chemical equation for the solidification of benzene (C_6H_6).
13. Write the chemical equation for the sublimation of CO_2.
14. Write the chemical equation for the boiling of propanol (C_3H_7OH).
15. What is the ΔH_{sub} of H_2O? (Hint: see Table 10.3.1 "Enthalpies of Fusion for Various Substances" and Table 10.3.2 "Enthalpies of Vaporization for Various Substances".)
16. The ΔH_{sub} of I_2 is 60.46 kJ/mol, while its ΔH_{vap} is 41.71 kJ/mol. What is the ΔH_{fus} of I_2?

Answers

1. Melting is the phase change from a solid to a liquid, whereas solidification is the phase change from a liquid to a solid.
2.
3. The molecules have enough energy to move about each other but not enough to completely separate from each other.
4.
5. 890 J
6.
7. 10.7 kJ
8.
9. a. Temperature does not change during a phase change.
   b. The process of a liquid becoming a gas is called boiling; the process of a solid becoming a gas is called sublimation.
10.
11. $Na(s) \rightarrow Na(\ell)$
12.
13. $CO_2(s) \rightarrow CO_2(g)$
14.
15. 46.69 kJ/mol

10.4: Properties of Liquids

1. What is the difference between evaporation and boiling?
2. What is the difference between a gas and vapor?
3. Define *normal boiling point* in terms of vapor pressure.
4. Is the boiling point higher or lower at higher environmental pressures? Explain your answer.
5.

Answers

1. Evaporation occurs when a liquid becomes a gas at temperatures below that liquid's boiling point, whereas boiling is the conversion of a liquid to a gas at the liquid's boiling point.
2.
3. the temperature at which the vapor pressure of a liquid is 760 torr
4.

10.5: Solids

1. What is the difference between a crystalline solid and an amorphous solid?
2. What two properties do solids have in common? What two properties of solids can vary?
3. Explain how the bonding in an ionic solid explains some of the properties of these solids.
4. Explain how the bonding in a molecular solid explains some of the properties of these solids.
5. Explain how the bonding in a covalent network solid explains some of the properties of these solids.
6. Explain how the bonding in a metallic solid explains some of the properties of these solids.
7. Which type(s) of solid has/have high melting points?
8. Which type(s) of solid conduct(s) electricity in their solid state? In their liquid state?
9. Which type of solid(s) is/are considered relatively soft?
10. Which type of solid(s) is/are considered very hard?
11. Predict the type of solid exhibited by each substance.
    a. Hg
    b. PH_3
    c. CaF_2
12. Predict the type of solid exhibited by each substance.
    a. $(CH_2)_n$ (polyethylene, a form of plastic)
    b. PCl_3
    c. NH_4Cl
13. Predict the type of solid exhibited by each substance.
    a. SO_3
    b. Br_2
    c. Na_2SO_3
14. Predict the type of solid exhibited by each substance.
    a. BN (boron nitride, a diamond-like compound)
    b. B_2O_3
    c. $NaBF_4$
15. Predict the type of solid exhibited by each substance.
    a. H_2S
    b. Si
    c. CsF
16. Predict the type of solid exhibited by each substance.
    a. Co
    b. CO
    c. $CaCO_3$

Answers

1. At the atomic level, a crystalline solid has a regular arrangement of atoms, whereas an amorphous solid has a random arrangement of atoms.
2.
3. The oppositely charged ions are very strongly held together, so ionic crystals have high melting points. Ionic crystals are also brittle because any distortion of the crystal moves same-charged ions closer to each other, so they repel.
4.
5. The covalent network solid is essentially one molecule, making it very hard and giving it a very high melting point.
6.
7. ionic solids, covalent network solids
8.

9. molecular solids
10.
11. a. metallic
    b. molecular solid
    c. ionic crystal
12.
13. a. molecular solid
    b. molecular solid
    c. ionic crystal
14.
15. a. molecular solid
    b. molecular solid
    c. ionic crystal

4.1: General Properties of Aqueous Solutions

1. What are the advantages to carrying out a reaction in solution rather than simply mixing the pure reactants?
2. What types of compounds dissolve in polar solvents?
3. Describe the charge distribution in liquid water. How does this distribution affect its physical properties?
4. Must a molecule have an asymmetric charge distribution to be polar? Explain your answer.
5. Why are many ionic substances soluble in water?
6. Explain the phrase *like dissolves like*.
7. What kinds of covalent compounds are soluble in water?
8. Why do most aromatic hydrocarbons have only limited solubility in water? Would you expect their solubility to be higher, lower, or the same in ethanol compared with water? Why?
9. Predict whether each compound will dissolve in water and explain why.
    1. toluene
    2. acetic acid
    3. sodium acetate
    4. butanol
    5. pentanoic acid
10. Predict whether each compound will dissolve in water and explain why.
    1. ammonium chloride
    2. 2-propanol
    3. heptane
    4. potassium dichromate
    5. 2-octanol
11. Given water and toluene, predict which is the better solvent for each compound and explain your reasoning.
    1. sodium cyanide
    2. benzene
    3. acetic acid
    4. sodium ethoxide (CH_3CH_2ONa)
12. Of water and toluene, predict which is the better solvent for each compound and explain your reasoning.
    1. *t*-butanol
    2. calcium chloride
    3. sucrose
    4. cyclohexene
13. Compound *A* is divided into three equal samples. The first sample does not dissolve in water, the second sample dissolves only slightly in ethanol, and the third sample dissolves completely in toluene. What does this suggest about the polarity of *A*?
14. You are given a mixture of three solid compounds—*A*, *B*, and *C*—and are told that *A* is a polar compound, *B* is slightly polar, and *C* is nonpolar. Suggest a method for separating these three compounds.
15. A laboratory technician is given a sample that contains only sodium chloride, sucrose, and cyclodecanone (a ketone). You must tell the technician how to separate these three compounds from the mixture. What would you suggest?
16. Many over-the-counter drugs are sold as ethanol/water solutions rather than as purely aqueous solutions. Give a plausible reason for this practice.
17. What distinguishes a weak electrolyte from a strong electrolyte?
18. Which organic groups result in aqueous solutions that conduct electricity?

19. It is considered highly dangerous to splash barefoot in puddles during a lightning storm. Why?
20. Which solution(s) would you expect to conduct electricity well? Explain your reasoning.
    1. an aqueous solution of sodium chloride
    2. a solution of ethanol in water
    3. a solution of calcium chloride in water
    4. a solution of sucrose in water
21. Which solution(s) would you expect to conduct electricity well? Explain your reasoning.
    1. an aqueous solution of acetic acid
    2. an aqueous solution of potassium hydroxide
    3. a solution of ethylene glycol in water
    4. a solution of ammonium chloride in water
22. Which of the following is a strong electrolyte, a weak electrolyte, or a nonelectrolyte in an aqueous solution? Explain your reasoning.
    1. potassium hydroxide
    2. ammonia
    3. calcium chloride
    4. butanoic acid
23. Which of the following is a strong electrolyte, a weak electrolyte, or a nonelectrolyte in an aqueous solution? Explain your reasoning.
    1. magnesium hydroxide
    2. butanol
    3. ammonium bromide
    4. pentanoic acid
24. Which of the following is a strong electrolyte, a weak electrolyte, or a nonelectrolyte in aqueous solution? Explain your reasoning.
    1. H_2SO_4
    2. diethylamine
    3. 2-propanol
    4. ammonium chloride
    5. propanoic acid

Conceptual Answers

1.
2.
3.
4.

5. Ionic compounds such as NaCl are held together by electrostatic interactions between oppositely charged ions in the highly ordered solid. When an ionic compound dissolves in water, the partially negatively charged oxygen atoms of the H_2O molecules surround the cations, and the partially positively charged hydrogen atoms in H_2O surround the anions. The favorable electrostatic interactions between water and the ions compensate for the loss of the electrostatic interactions between ions in the solid.
6.
7.
8.
9.
    1. Because toluene is an aromatic hydrocarbon that lacks polar groups, it is unlikely to form a homogenous solution in water.
    2. Acetic acid contains a carboxylic acid group attached to a small alkyl group (a methyl group). Consequently, the polar characteristics of the carboxylic acid group will be dominant, and acetic acid will form a homogenous solution with water.
    3. Because most sodium salts are soluble, sodium acetate should form a homogenous solution with water.
    4. Like all alcohols, butanol contains an –OH group that can interact well with water. The alkyl group is rather large, consisting of a 4-carbon chain. In this case, the nonpolar character of the alkyl group is likely to be as important as the polar character of the –OH, decreasing the likelihood that butanol will form a homogeneous solution with water.
    5. Like acetic acid, pentanoic acid is a carboxylic acid. Unlike acetic acid, however, the alkyl group is rather large, consisting of a 4-carbon chain as in butanol. As with butanol, the nonpolar character of the alkyl group is likely to be as important as the polar character of the carboxylic acid group, making it unlikely that pentanoic acid will form a homogeneous solution with water. (In fact, the solubility of both butanol and pentanoic acid in water is quite low, only about 3 g per 100 g water

at 25°C.)

10.
11.
12.
13.
14.
15.
16.
17. An *electrolyte* is any compound that can form ions when it dissolves in water. When a strong electrolyte dissolves in water, it dissociates completely to give the constituent ions. In contrast, when a weak electrolyte dissolves in water, it produces relatively few ions in solution.

4.2: Types of Chemical Reactions - Single and Double Displacement Reactions

1. Assuming that each double-replacement reaction occurs, predict the products and write each balanced chemical equation.
   1. $Zn(NO_3)_2 + NaOH \rightarrow ?$
   2. $HCl + Na_2S \rightarrow ?$
2. Assuming that each double-replacement reaction occurs, predict the products and write each balanced chemical equation.
   1. $Ca(C_2H_3O_2)_2 + HNO_3 \rightarrow ?$
   2. $Na_2CO_3 + Sr(NO_2)_2 \rightarrow ?$
3. Assuming that each double-replacement reaction occurs, predict the products and write each balanced chemical equation.
   1. $Pb(NO_3)_2 + KBr \rightarrow ?$
   2. $K_2O + MgCO_3 \rightarrow ?$
4. Assuming that each double-replacement reaction occurs, predict the products and write each balanced chemical equation.
   1. $Sn(OH)_2 + FeBr_3 \rightarrow ?$
   2. $CsNO_3 + KCl \rightarrow ?$
5. Use the solubility rules to predict if each double-replacement reaction will occur and, if so, write a balanced chemical equation.
   1. $Pb(NO_3)_2 + KBr \rightarrow ?$
   2. $K_2O + Na_2CO_3 \rightarrow ?$
6. Use the solubility rules to predict if each double-replacement reaction will occur and, if so, write a balanced chemical equation.
   1. $Na_2CO_3 + Sr(NO_2)_2 \rightarrow ?$
   2. $(NH_4)_2SO_4 + Ba(NO_3)_2 \rightarrow ?$
7. Use the solubility rules to predict if each double-replacement reaction will occur and, if so, write a balanced chemical equation.
   1. $K_3PO_4 + SrCl_2 \rightarrow ?$
   2. $NaOH + MgCl_2 \rightarrow ?$
8. Use the solubility rules to predict if each double-replacement reaction will occur and, if so, write a balanced chemical equation.
   1. $KC_2H_3O_2 + Li_2CO_3 \rightarrow ?$
   2. $KOH + AgNO_3 \rightarrow ?$

Answers

1.
1. $Zn(NO_3)_2 + 2NaOH \rightarrow Zn(OH)_2 + 2NaNO_3$
   1. $2HCl + Na_2S \rightarrow 2NaCl + H_2S$
2.
3.
   1. $Pb(NO_3)_2 + 2KBr \rightarrow PbBr_2 + 2KNO_3$
   2. $K_2O + MgCO_3 \rightarrow K_2CO_3 + MgO$
4.
5.
   1. $Pb(NO_3)_2 + 2KBr \rightarrow PbBr_2(s) + 2KNO_3$

2. No reaction occurs.
6.
7. 1. $2K_3PO_4 + 3SrCl_2 \rightarrow Sr_3(PO_4)_2(s) + 6KCl$
   2. $2NaOH + MgCl_2 \rightarrow 2NaCl + Mg(OH)_2(s)$

4.3: Ionic Equations - A Closer Look

1. Write a chemical equation that represents NaBr(s) dissociating in water.
2. Write a chemical equation that represents $SrCl_2(s)$ dissociating in water.
3. Write a chemical equation that represents $(NH_4)_3PO_4(s)$ dissociating in water.
4. Write a chemical equation that represents $Fe(C_2H_3O_2)_3(s)$ dissociating in water.
5. Write the complete ionic equation for the reaction of $FeCl_2(aq)$ and $AgNO_3(aq)$. You may have to consult the solubility rules.
6. Write the complete ionic equation for the reaction of $BaCl_2(aq)$ and $Na_2SO_4(aq)$. You may have to consult the solubility rules.
7. Write the complete ionic equation for the reaction of KCl(aq) and $NaC_2H_3O_2(aq)$. You may have to consult the solubility rules.
8. Write the complete ionic equation for the reaction of $Fe_2(SO_4)_3(aq)$ and $Sr(NO_3)_2(aq)$. You may have to consult the solubility rules.
9. Write the net ionic equation for the reaction of $FeCl_2(aq)$ and $AgNO_3(aq)$. You may have to consult the solubility rules.
10. Write the net ionic equation for the reaction of $BaCl_2(aq)$ and $Na_2SO_4(aq)$. You may have to consult the solubility rules.
11. Write the net ionic equation for the reaction of KCl(aq) and $NaC_2H_3O_2(aq)$. You may have to consult the solubility rules.
12. Write the net ionic equation for the reaction of $Fe_2(SO_4)_3(aq)$ and $Sr(NO_3)_2(aq)$. You may have to consult the solubility rules.
13. Identify the spectator ions in Exercises 9 and 10.
14. Identify the spectator ions in Exercises 11 and 12.

Answers

1. $NaBr(s) \xrightarrow{H_2O} Na^+(aq) + Br^-(aq)$
2.
3. $(NH_4)_3PO_4(s) \xrightarrow{H_2O} 3NH_4^+(aq) + PO_4^{3-}(aq)$
4.
5. $Fe^{2+}(aq) + 2Cl^-(aq) + 2Ag^+(aq) + 2NO_3^-(aq) \rightarrow Fe^{2+}(aq) + 2NO_3^-(aq) + 2AgCl(s)$
6.
7. $K^+(aq) + Cl^-(aq) + Na^+(aq) + C_2H_3O_2^-(aq) \rightarrow Na^+(aq) + Cl^-(aq) + K^+(aq) + C_2H_3O_2^-(aq)$
8.
9. $2Cl^-(aq) + 2Ag^+(aq) \rightarrow 2AgCl(s)$
10.
11. There is no overall reaction.
12.
13. In Exercise 9, $Fe^{2+}(aq)$ and $NO_3^-(aq)$ are spectator ions; in Exercise 10, $Na^+(aq)$ and $Cl^-(aq)$ are spectator ions.

This page titled 9.E: Attractive Forces is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

10: AQUEOUS SOLUTIONS

Solutions were introduced in an earlier chapter as the mixture in which the substances involved are mixed at the molecular level. There was also a discussion about how solutions form based on the intermolecular forces that occur between solvent and solute particles. These ideas about solutions are important to understand as we move forward in this chapter to focus on a particular type of solution which is both very common and very important: aqueous solutions.

In section 10.1 we will continue some of the discussions around why substances dissolve, but focus here on the effects of external pressures such as pressure and temperature. In sections 10.2 and 10.3 we look at some of the numerical calculations that are important to consider for solutions. Finally, in section 10.4 we look at how the properties of the solvent are changed when it becomes a solution.

10.1: Solubility Trends

10.1.1: Solutions of Solids Dissolved in Water

10.1.2: Solutions of Gases in Water

10.2: Measures of Concentration

10.2.1: Percent Solutions

10.2.2: Solution Concentration- Molarity

10.3: Concentration Calculations

10.3.1: A Mole Map for Concentration

10.3.2: Solution Dilution

10.3.3: Solution Stoichiometry

10.3.4: Acid–Base Titration

10.4: Colligative Properties

10.4.1: Freezing Point Depression and Boiling Point Elevation

10.4.2: Osmosis

10.E: Solutions (Exercises)

This page titled 10: Aqueous Solutions is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

10.1: SOLUBILITY TRENDS

Learning Objectives

- Define solubility and saturation.

We have learned that solutions can be formed in a variety of combinations using solids, liquids, and gases. We also know that solutions have the same composition throughout, and that the ratio of components can be varied up to a point to maintain the homogeneous nature of the solution. In this section, we will discuss how that restriction on components is defined, and how changing external conditions might change the range of possible compositions for a solution.

Solubility and Saturation

Table salt (NaCl) readily dissolves in water. In most cases, only a certain maximum amount of solute can be dissolved in a given amount of solvent. This maximum amount is specified as the **solubility** of the solute. It is usually expressed in terms of the amount of solute that can dissolve in 100 g of the solvent at a given temperature. Table $10.1.1$ lists the solubilities of some simple ionic compounds. These solubilities vary widely. NaCl can dissolve up to 31.6 g per 100 g of H_2O, while AgCl can dissolve only 0.00019 g per 100 g of H_2O.

Table $10.1.1$*: Solubilities of Some Ionic Compounds*

Solute	Solubility (g per 100 g of H_2O at 25°C)
AgCl	0.00019
$CaCO_3$	0.0006
KBr	70.7
NaCl	36.1
$NaNO_3$	94.6

When the maximum amount of solute has been dissolved in a given amount of solvent, we say that the solution is **saturated** with solute. When less than the maximum amount of solute is dissolved in a given amount of solute, the solution is **unsaturated**. These terms are also qualitative terms because each solute has its own solubility. A solution of 0.00019 g of AgCl per 100 g of H_2O may be saturated, but with so little solute dissolved, it is also rather dilute. A solution of 36.1 g of NaCl in 100 g of H_2O is also saturated, but rather concentrated. In some circumstances, it is possible to dissolve more than the maximum amount of a solute in a solution. Usually, this happens by heating the solvent, dissolving more solute than would normally dissolve at regular temperatures, and letting the solution cool down slowly and carefully. Such solutions are called **supersaturated** solutions and are not stable; given an opportunity (such as dropping a crystal of solute in the solution), the excess solute will precipitate from the solution.The figure below illustrates the above process and shows the distinction between unsaturated and saturated.

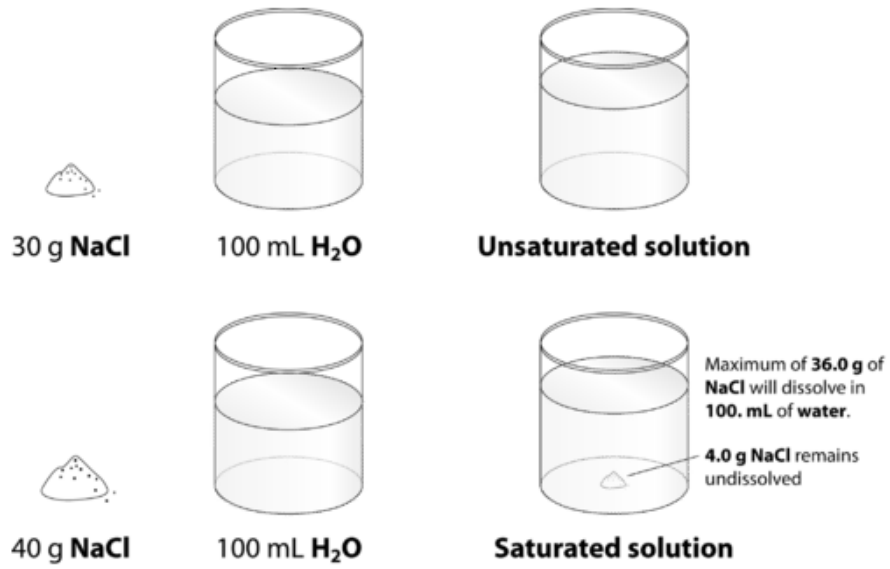


Figure 10.1.1: When $30.0\ \text{g}$ of NaCl is added to $100\ \text{mL}$, it all dissolves, forming an unsaturated solution. When $40.0\ \text{g}$ is added, $36.0\ \text{g}$ dissolves and $4.0\ \text{g}$ remains undissolved, forming a saturated solution.

How can you tell if a solution is saturated or unsaturated? If more solute is added and it does not dissolve, then the original solution was saturated. If the added solute dissolves, then the original solution was unsaturated. A solution that has been allowed to reach equilibrium, but which has extra undissolved solute at the bottom of the container, must be saturated. In the subsections that follow, we will discuss how some external properties might affect the solubility of a solution.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Summary

- Solubility is the specific amount of solute that can dissolve in a given amount of solvent.
- Saturated and unsaturated solutions are defined.

Vocabulary

- **Miscible** - Liquids that have the ability to dissolve in each other.
- **Immiscible** - Liquids that do not have the ability to dissolve in each other.

10.1.1: Solutions of Solids Dissolved in Water

10.1.2: Solutions of Gases in Water

This page titled 10.1: Solubility Trends is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

10.1.1: Solutions of Solids Dissolved in Water

Learning Objectives

- Explain how temperature influences solubility of solids.

The **solubility** of a substance is the amount of that substance that is required to form a saturated solution in a given amount of solvent at a specified temperature. Solubility is often measured as the grams of solute per $100\ \text{g}$ of solvent. The solubility of sodium chloride in water is $36.0\ \text{g}$ per $100\ \text{g}$ water at 20°C. The temperature must be specified because solubility varies with temperature. For gases, the pressure must also be specified. Solubility is specific for a particular solvent. We will consider solubility of material in water as solvent.

The solubility of the majority of solid substances increases as the temperature increases. However, the effect is difficult to predict and varies widely from one solute to another. The temperature dependence of solubility can be visualized with the help of a **solubility curve**, a graph of the solubility vs. temperature (Figure $10.1.1.4$).

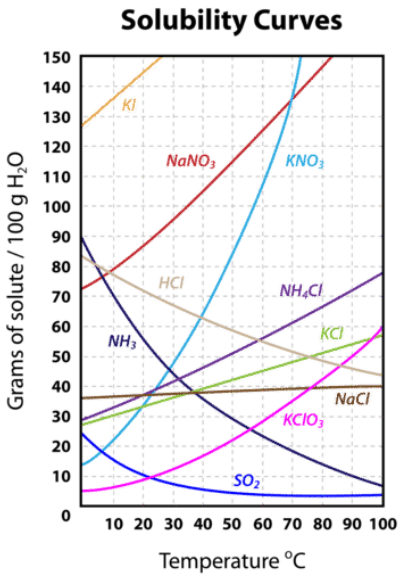


Figure $10.1.1.4$: Solubility curves for several compounds.

Notice how the temperature dependence of NaCl is fairly flat, meaning that an increase in temperature has relatively little effect on the solubility of NaCl. The curve for KNO_3, on the other hand, is very steep and so an increase in temperature dramatically increases the solubility of KNO_3.

The trends for gas solubility in aqueous solution are often different than those for solids. You may notice on the graph that there are several substances—HCl, NH_3, and SO_2— which have solubility that decreases as temperature increases. They are all gases at standard pressure. Additionally, changes in pressure can affect solubility of gases whereas they generally have little or no effect on solubility of solids. Trends of gas solubility will be discussed in the next subsection.

Solubility curves can be used to determine if a given solution is saturated or unsaturated. Suppose that $80\ \text{g}$ of KNO_3 is added to $100\ \text{g}$ of water at 30°C. According to the solubility curve, approximately $48\ \text{g}$ of KNO_3 will dissolve at 30°C. This means that the solution will be saturated since $48\ \text{g}$ is less than $80\ \text{g}$. We can also determine that there will be $80 - 48 = 32\ \text{g}$ of undissolved KNO_3 remaining at the bottom of the container. Now suppose that this saturated solution is heated to 60°C. According to the curve, the solubility of KNO_3 at 60°C is about $107\ \text{g}$. Now the solution is unsaturated since it contains only the original $80\ \text{g}$ of dissolved solute. Now suppose the solution is cooled all the way down to 0°C. The solubility at 0°C is about $14\ \text{g}$, meaning that $80 - 14 = 66\ \text{g}$ of the KNO_3 will re-crystallize.

Summary

- The solubility of a solid in water usually increases with an increase in temperature.

Contributions & Attributions

This page was constructed from content via the following contributor(s) and edited (topically or extensively) by the LibreTexts development team to meet platform style, presentation, and quality:

-
- Marisa Alviar-Agnew (Sacramento City College)
- Henry Agnew (UC Davis)

This page titled 10.1.1: Solutions of Solids Dissolved in Water is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

10.1.2: Solutions of Gases in Water

Learning Objectives

- Explain how temperature and pressure affect the solubility of gases.

In an earlier section of this book, the effect of intermolecular attractive forces on solution formation was discussed. The chemical structures of the solute and solvent dictate the types of forces possible and, consequently, are important factors in determining solubility. For example, under similar conditions, the water solubility of oxygen is approximately three times greater than that of helium, but 100 times less than the solubility of chloromethane, $CHCl_3$. Considering the role of the solvent's chemical structure, note that the solubility of oxygen in the liquid hydrocarbon hexane, C_6H_{14}, is approximately 20 times greater than it is in water.

Other factors also affect the solubility of a given substance in a given solvent. Temperature is one such factor, with gas solubility typically decreasing as temperature increases (Figure 10.1.2.1). This is one of the major impacts resulting from the thermal pollution of natural bodies of water.

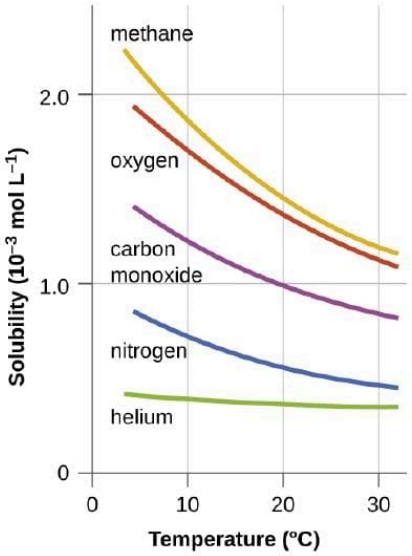


Figure 10.1.2.1: The solubilities of these gases in water decrease as the temperature increases. All solubilities were measured with a constant pressure of 101.3 kPa (1 atm) of gas above the solutions.

When the temperature of a river, lake, or stream is raised abnormally high, usually due to the discharge of hot water from some industrial process, the solubility of oxygen in the water is decreased. Decreased levels of dissolved oxygen may have serious consequences for the health of the water's ecosystems and, in severe cases, can result in large-scale fish kills (Figure 10.1.2.2).



Figure 10.1.2.2: (a) The small bubbles of air in this glass of chilled water formed when the water warmed to room temperature and the solubility of its dissolved air decreased. (b) The decreased solubility of oxygen in natural waters subjected to thermal pollution can result in large-scale fish kills. (Credit a: modification of work by Liz West; credit b: modification of work by U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service.)

The solubility of a gaseous solute is also affected by the partial pressure of solute in the gas to which the solution is exposed. Gas solubility increases as the pressure of the gas increases. Carbonated beverages provide a nice illustration of this relationship. The carbonation process involves exposing the beverage to a relatively high pressure of carbon dioxide gas and then sealing the beverage container, thus saturating the beverage with CO_2 at this pressure. When the beverage container is opened, a familiar hiss is heard as the carbon dioxide gas pressure is released, and some of the dissolved carbon dioxide is typically seen leaving solution in the form of small bubbles (Figure 10.1.2.3). At this point, the beverage is *supersaturated* with carbon dioxide and, with time, the dissolved carbon dioxide concentration will decrease to its equilibrium value and the beverage will become “flat.”

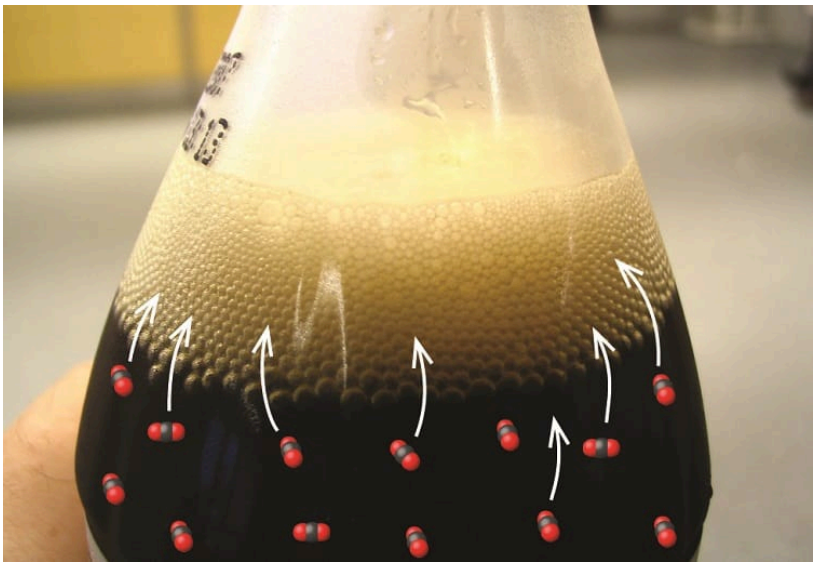


Figure 10.1.2.3: Opening the bottle of carbonated beverage reduces the pressure of the gaseous carbon dioxide above the beverage. The solubility of CO_2 is thus lowered, and some dissolved carbon dioxide may be seen leaving the solution as small gas bubbles. (Credit: modification of work by Derrick Coetzee.)

"Fizz"

The dissolution in a liquid, also known as fizz, usually involves carbon dioxide under high pressure. When the pressure is reduced, the carbon dioxide is released from the solution as small bubbles, which causes the solution to become effervescent, or fizzy. A common example is the dissolving of carbon dioxide in water, resulting in carbonated water.

Carbon dioxide is weakly soluble in water, therefore it separates into a gas when the pressure is released. This process is generally represented by the following reaction, where a pressurized dilute solution of carbonic acid in water releases gaseous carbon dioxide at decompression:

$$\mathrm{H_2CO_3\,(aq) \longrightarrow H_2O\,(l) + CO_2\,(g)}$$

In simple terms, it is the result of the chemical reaction occurring in the liquid which produces a gaseous product.

For many gaseous solutes, the relation between solubility, C_g, and partial pressure, P_g, is a proportional one:

$$C_\mathrm{g} = kP_\mathrm{g} \tag{10.1.2.1}$$

where *k* is a proportionality constant that depends on the identities of the gaseous solute and solvent, and on the solution temperature. This is a mathematical statement of Henry's law: *The quantity of an ideal gas that dissolves in a definite volume of liquid is directly proportional to the pressure of the gas.*

Example 10.1.2.1: Application of Henry's Law

At 20 °C, the concentration of dissolved oxygen in water exposed to gaseous oxygen at a partial pressure of 101.3 kPa (760 torr) is 1.38 × 10^{-3} mol L^{-1}. Use Henry's law to determine the solubility of oxygen when its partial pressure is 20.7 kPa (155 torr), the approximate pressure of oxygen in earth's atmosphere.

Solution

According to Henry's law, for an ideal solution the solubility, C_g, of a gas (1.38 × 10^{-3} mol L^{-1}, in this case) is directly proportional to the pressure, P_g, of the undissolved gas above the solution (101.3 kPa, or 760 torr, in this case). Because we know both C_g and P_g, we can rearrange this expression to solve for *k*.

$$\begin{aligned} C_\mathrm{g} &= kP_\mathrm{g} \\ k &= \frac{C_\mathrm{g}}{P_\mathrm{g}} \\ &= \frac{1.38 \times 10^{-3}\ \mathrm{mol\ L^{-1}}}{101.3\ \mathrm{kPa}} \\ &= 1.36 \times 10^{-5}\ \mathrm{mol\ L^{-1}\ kPa^{-1}} \\ &\quad (1.82 \times 10^{-6}\ \mathrm{mol\ L^{-1}\ torr^{-1}}) \end{aligned}$$

Now we can use *k* to find the solubility at the lower pressure.

$$C_\mathrm{g} = kP_\mathrm{g} \tag{10.1.2.2}$$

$$\begin{gathered} 1.36 \times 10^{-5}\ \mathrm{mol\ L^{-1}\ kPa^{-1}} \times 20.7\ \mathrm{kPa} \\ (\text{or } 1.82 \times 10^{-6}\ \mathrm{mol\ L^{-1}\ torr^{-1}} \times 155\ \mathrm{torr}) \\ = 2.82 \times 10^{-4}\ \mathrm{mol\ L^{-1}} \end{gathered}$$

Note that various units may be used to express the quantities involved in these sorts of computations. Any combination of units that yield to the constraints of dimensional analysis are acceptable.

Exercise 10.1.2.1

A 100.0 mL sample of water at 0 °C to an atmosphere containing a gaseous solute at 20.26 kPa (152 torr) resulted in the dissolution of 1.45 × 10^{-3} g of the solute. Use Henry's law to determine the solubility of this gaseous solute when its pressure is 101.3 kPa (760 torr).

Answer available at the end of this section.

Case Study: Decompression Sickness (“The Bends”)

Decompression sickness (DCS), or “the bends,” is an effect of the increased pressure of the air inhaled by scuba divers when swimming underwater at considerable depths. In addition to the pressure exerted by the atmosphere, divers are subjected to additional pressure due to the water above them, experiencing an increase of approximately 1 atm for each 10 m of depth. Therefore, the air inhaled by a diver while submerged contains gases at the corresponding higher ambient pressure, and the concentrations of the gases dissolved in the diver’s blood are proportionally higher per Henry’s law.

As the diver ascends to the surface of the water, the ambient pressure decreases and the dissolved gases becomes less soluble. If the ascent is too rapid, the gases escaping from the diver’s blood may form bubbles that can cause a variety of symptoms ranging from rashes and joint pain to paralysis and death. To avoid DCS, divers must ascend from depths at relatively slow speeds (10 or 20 m/min) or otherwise make several decompression stops, pausing for several minutes at given depths during the ascent. When these preventative measures are unsuccessful, divers with DCS are often provided hyperbaric oxygen therapy in pressurized vessels called decompression (or recompression) chambers (Figure 10.1.2.4).

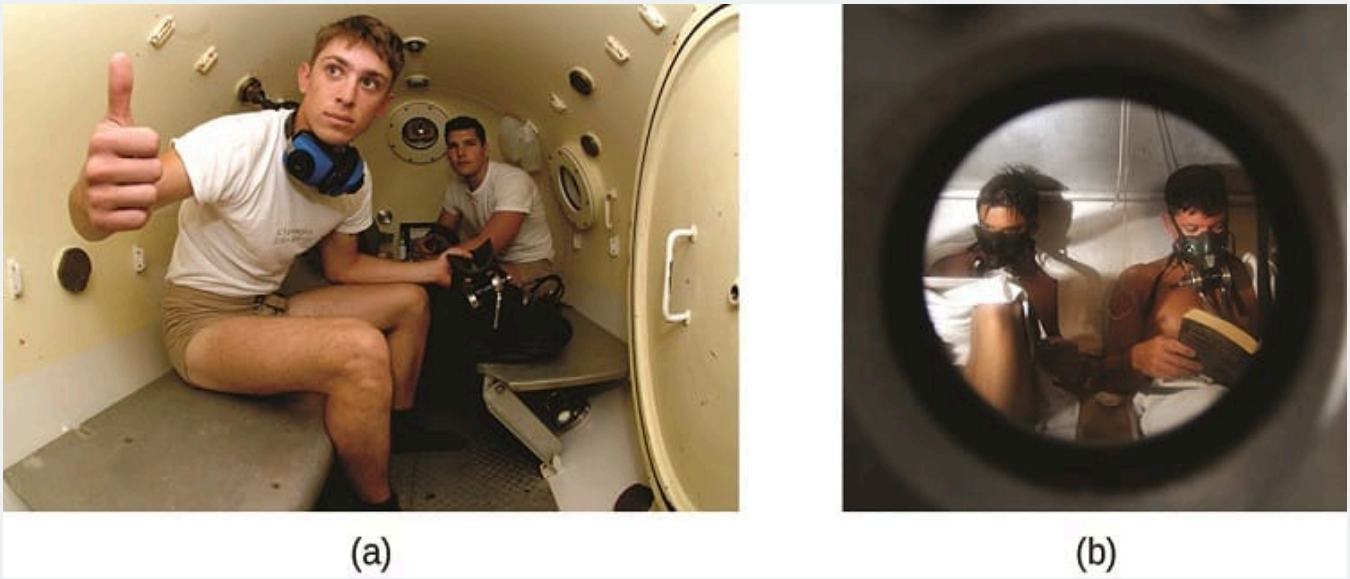


Figure 10.1.2.4: (a) US Navy divers undergo training in a recompression chamber. (b) Divers receive hyperbaric oxygen therapy.

Deviations from Henry’s law are observed when a chemical reaction takes place between the gaseous solute and the solvent. Thus, for example, the solubility of ammonia in water does not increase as rapidly with increasing pressure as predicted by the law because ammonia, being a base, reacts to some extent with water to form ammonium ions and hydroxide ions.

This reaction diagram shows three H atoms bonded to an N atom above, below, and two the left of the N. A single pair of dots is present on the right side of the N. This is followed by a plus, then two H atoms bonded to an O atom to the left and below the O. Two pairs of dots are present on the O, one above and the other to the right of the O. A double arrow, with a top arrow pointing right and a bottom arrow pointing left follows. To the right of the double arrow, four H atoms are shown bonded to a central N atom. These 5 atoms are enclosed in brackets with a superscript plus outside. A plus follows, then an O atom linked by a bond to an H atom on its right. The O atom has pairs of dots above, to the left, and below the atom. The linked O and H are enclosed in brackets with superscript minus outside.

Gases can form supersaturated solutions. If a solution of a gas in a liquid is prepared either at low temperature or under pressure (or both), then as the solution warms or as the gas pressure is reduced, the solution may become supersaturated.

Contributions & Attributions

This page was constructed from content via the following contributor(s) and edited (topically or extensively) by the LibreTexts development team to meet platform style, presentation, and quality:

- Wikipedia
- Paul Flowers (University of North Carolina - Pembroke), Klaus Theopold (University of Delaware) and Richard Langley (Stephen F. Austin State University) with contributing authors. Textbook content produced by OpenStax College is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution License 4.0 license. Download for free at http://cnx.org/contents/85abf193-2bd...a7ac8df6@9.110).
- Marisa Alviar-Agnew (Sacramento City College)
- Henry Agnew (UC Davis)

Answers

Exercise 10.1.2.1

7.25×10^{-3} g

This page titled 10.1.2: Solutions of Gases in Water is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

10.2: MEASURES OF CONCENTRATION

Learning Objectives

- Understand what is meant by the term solution concentration.

To define a solution precisely, we need to state its concentration: how much solute is dissolved in a certain amount of solvent. Words such as *dilute* or *concentrated* are used to describe solutions that have a little or a lot of dissolved solute, respectively, but these are relative terms with meanings that depend on various factors.

Concentration is the measure of how much of a given substance is mixed with another substance. Solutions are said to be either dilute or concentrated. When we say that vinegar is 5% acetic acid in water, we are giving the concentration. If we said the mixture was 10% acetic acid, this would be more concentrated than the vinegar solution.

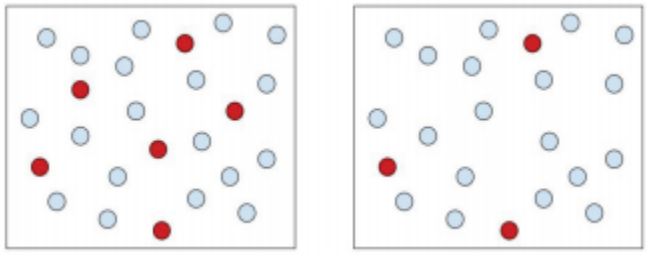


Figure $10.2.1$: The solution on the left is more concentrated than the solution on the right because there is a greater ratio of solute (red balls) to solvent (blue balls) particles. The solution particles are closer together. The solution on the right is more dilute (less concentrated). (CC-SA-BY-3.0 Tracy Poulsen).

A **concentrated** solution is one in which there is a large amount of solute in a given amount of solvent. A **dilute** solution is one in which there is a small amount of solute in a given amount of solvent. A dilute solution is a concentrated solution that has been, in essence, watered down. Think of the frozen juice containers you buy in the grocery store. To make juice, you have to mix the frozen juice concentrate from inside these containers with three or four times the container size full of water. Therefore, you are diluting the concentrated juice. In terms of solute and solvent, the concentrated solution has a lot of solute versus the dilute solution that would have a smaller amount of solute.

The terms "concentrated" and "dilute" provide qualitative methods of describing concentration. Although qualitative observations are necessary and have their place in every part of science, including chemistry, we have seen throughout our study of science that there is a definite need for quantitative measurements in science. This is particularly true in solution chemistry. In this section, we will explore some quantitative methods of expressing solution concentration.

There have been many ways that people have measured concentrations. We will be looking at a few of them in this book in the following subsections.

Contributors and Attributions

- Marisa Alviar-Agnew (Sacramento City College)
- Henry Agnew (UC Davis)

10.2.1: Percent Solutions

10.2.2: Solution Concentration- Molarity

This page titled 10.2: Measures of Concentration is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

10.2.1: Percent Solutions

There are human cultures that do not recognize numbers above three. Anything greater than that is simply referred to as "much" or "many". Although this form of calculation may seem very limited, American culture does the same thing to a certain degree. For example, there are several ways to express the amount of solute in a solution in a quantitative manner. The **concentration** of a solution is a measure of the amount of solute that has been dissolved in a given amount of solvent or solution. A **concentrated** solution is one that has a relatively large amount of dissolved solute. A **dilute** solution is one that has a relatively small amount of dissolved solute. However, those terms are vague, and it is often necessary to express concentration with numbers.

Percent Solutions

One way to describe the concentration of a solution is by the percent of a solute in the solvent. The percent can further be determined in one of two ways: (1) the ratio of the mass of the solute divided by the mass of the solution or (2) the ratio of the volume of the solute divided by the volume of the solution.

Mass Percent

When the solute in a solution is a solid, a convenient way to express the concentration is by mass percent $\left(\frac{\text{mass}}{\text{mass}}\right)$, which is the grams of solute per $100\ \text{g}$ of solution.

$$\text{Percent by mass} = \frac{\text{mass of solute}}{\text{mass of solution}} \times 100\%$$

Suppose that a solution was prepared by dissolving $25.0\ \text{g}$ of sugar into $100\ \text{g}$ of water. The percent by mass would be calculated by:

$$\text{Percent by mass} = \frac{25\ \text{g sugar}}{125\ \text{g solution}} \times 100\% = 20\%\ \text{sugar}$$

Sometimes you may want to make up a particular mass of solution of a given percent by mass, and need to calculate what mass of the solvent to use. For example, you need to make $3000\ \text{g}$ of a 5% solution of sodium chloride. You can rearrange and solve for the mass of solute:

$$\text{mass of solute} = \frac{\text{percent by mass}}{100\%} \times \text{mass of solution} = \frac{5\%}{100\%} \times 3000\ \text{g} = 150\ \text{g NaCl}$$

You would need to weigh out $150\ \text{g}$ of NaCl and add it to $2850\ \text{g}$ of water. Notice that it was necessary to subtract the mass of the $\text{NaCl}\ (150\ \text{g})$ from the mass of solution $(3000\ \text{g})$ to calculate the mass of the water that would need to be added.

Volume Percent

The percentage of solute in a solution can more easily be determined by volume when the solute and solvent are both liquids. The volume of the solute divided by the volume of the solution, expressed as a percent, yields the percent by volume $\left(\frac{\text{volume}}{\text{volume}}\right)$ of the solution. If a solution is made by adding $40\ \text{mL}$ of ethanol to $200\ \text{mL}$ of water, the percent by volume is:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Percent by volume} &= \frac{\text{volume of solute}}{\text{volume of solution}} \times 100\% \\ &= \frac{40\ \text{mL ethanol}}{240\ \text{mL solution}} \times 100\% \\ &= 16.7\%\ \text{ethanol}\end{aligned}$$

Frequently, ingredient labels on food products and medicines have amounts listed as percentages (see figure below).

cK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

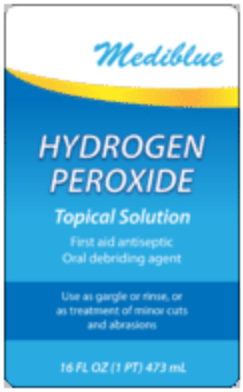


Figure 10.2.1.1: Hydrogen peroxide is commonly labeled as a 3% by volume solution for use as a disinfectant.

Summary

- The concentration of a solution is a measure of the amount of solute that has been dissolved in a given amount of solvent or solution.
- A concentrated solution has a relatively large amount of dissolved solute.
- A dilute solution has a relatively small amount of dissolved solute.
- Techniques for calculation of percent mass and percent volume solution concentrations are described.

This page titled 10.2.1: Percent Solutions is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- 16.7: Percent Solutions by CK12 is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://flexbooks.ck12.org/cbook/ck-12-chemistry-flexbook-2.0/.

10.2.2: Solution Concentration- Molarity

Learning Objectives

- Use molarity to determine quantities in chemical reactions.
- Use molarity as a conversion factor in calculations.

Another way of expressing concentration is to give the number of moles of solute per unit volume of solution. Of all the quantitative measures of concentration, molarity is the one used most frequently by chemists. **Molarity** is defined as the number of moles of solute per liter of solution.

$$\text{molarity} = \frac{\text{number of moles of solute}}{\text{number of liters of solution}} \tag{10.2.2.1}$$

The symbol for molarity is M or moles/liter. Chemists also use square brackets to indicate a reference to the molarity of a substance. For example, the expression $[\mathrm{Ag}^+]$ refers to the molarity of the silver ion in solution. Solution concentrations expressed in molarity are the easiest to perform calculations with, but the most difficult to make in the lab. Such concentration units are useful for discussing chemical reactions in which a solute is a product or a reactant. Molar mass can then be used as a conversion factor to convert amounts in moles to amounts in grams.

It is important to remember that “mol” in this expression refers to moles of solute and that “L” refers to liters of solution. For example, if you have 1.5 mol of NaCl dissolved in 0.500 L of solution, its molarity is

$$\frac{1.5\ \text{mol NaCl}}{0.500\ \text{L solution}} = 3.0\ \text{M NaCl} \tag{10.2.2.2}$$

Sometimes (aq) is added when the solvent is water, as in “3.0 M NaCl (aq).” This is read as "a 3.00 ***molar*** sodium chloride solution," meaning that there are 3.00 moles of NaOH dissolved per one liter of solution.

> Be sure to note that molarity is calculated as the total volume of the **entire** solution, not just volume of solvent! The solute contributes to total volume.

If the quantity of the solute is given in mass units, you must convert mass units to mole units before using the definition of molarity to calculate concentration. For example, what is the molar concentration of a solution of 22.4 g of HCl dissolved in 1.56 L?

First, convert the mass of solute to moles using the molar mass of HCl (36.5 g/mol):

$$22.4\ \cancel{g HCl} \times \frac{1\ mol\ HCl}{36.5\ \cancel{g HCl}} = 0.614\ mol\ HCl \tag{10.2.2.3}$$

Now we can use the definition of molarity to determine a concentration:

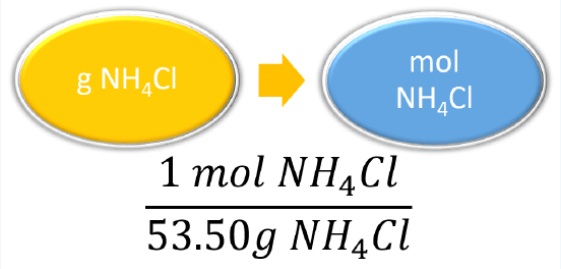
$$M\ =\ \frac{0.614\ mol\ HCl}{1.56 L\ solution} = 0.394\ M HCl \tag{10.2.2.4}$$

Before a molarity concentration can be calculated, the amount of the solute must be expressed in moles, and the volume of the solution must be expressed in liters, as demonstrated in the following example.

Example 10.2.2.1

A solution is prepared by dissolving $42.23\ \mathrm{g}$ of $\mathrm{NH_4Cl}$ into enough water to make $500.0\ \mathrm{mL}$ of solution. Calculate its molarity.

Solution

Steps for Problem Solving	
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: Mass $= 42.23\ \text{g}\ \text{NH}_4\text{Cl}$ Volume solution $= 500.0\ \text{mL} = 0.5000\ \text{L}$ Find: Molarity = ? M
List other known quantities.	Molar mass $\text{NH}_4\text{Cl} = 53.50\ \text{g/mol}$
Plan the problem.	1. The mass of the ammonium chloride is first converted to moles.  2. Then the molarity is calculated by dividing by liters. Note the given volume has been converted to liters. $\text{M} = \frac{\text{mol NH}_4\text{Cl}}{\text{L solution}}$
Cancel units and calculate.	Now substitute the known quantities into the equation and solve. $42.23\ \cancel{\text{g NH}_4\text{Cl}} \times \frac{1\ \text{mol}\ \cancel{\text{NH}_4\text{Cl}}}{53.50\ \text{g NH}_4\text{Cl}} = 0.7893\ \text{mol NH}_4\text{Cl}$ $\frac{0.7893\ \text{mol NH}_4\text{Cl}}{0.5000\ \text{L solution}} = 1.579\ \text{M}$
Think about your result.	The molarity is $1.579\ \text{M}$, meaning that a liter of the solution would contain $1.579\ \text{mol}\ \text{NH}_4\text{Cl}$. Four significant figures appropriate.

Exercise 10.2.2.1

What is the molarity of a solution made when 66.2 g of $C_6H_{12}O_6$ are dissolved to make 235 mL of solution?

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 10.2.2.2

What is the concentration, in $\mathrm{mol/L}$, where $137\ \mathrm{g}$ of NaCl has been dissolved in enough water to make $500\ \mathrm{mL}$ of solution?

Answer available at the end of this section.

Using Molarity in Calculations

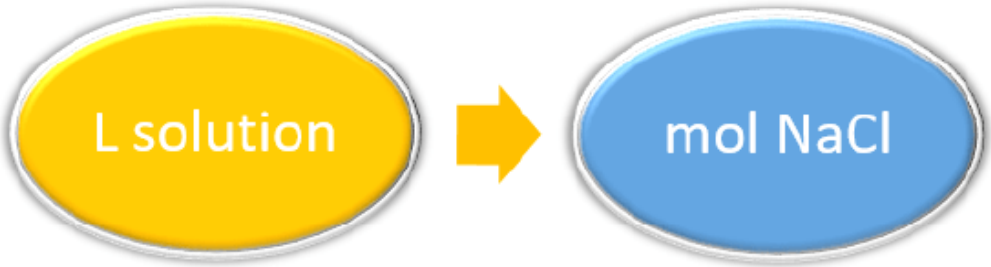
Concentration can be a conversion factor between the amount of solute and the amount of solution or solvent (depending on the definition of the concentration unit). As such, concentrations can be useful in a variety of stoichiometry problems. In many cases, it is best to use the original definition of the concentration unit; it is that definition that provides the conversion factor.

A simple example of using a concentration unit as a conversion factor is one in which we use the definition of the concentration unit and rearrange; we can do the calculation again as a unit conversion, rather than as a definition.

Determining Moles of Solute, Given the Concentration and Volume of a Solution

For example, suppose we ask how many moles of solute are present in 0.108 L of a 0.887 M NaCl solution. Because 0.887 M means 0.887 mol/L, we can use this second expression for the concentration as a conversion factor:

Solution



$$\frac{.887\ mol\ NaCl}{1\ L\ solution}$$

$$0.108\ \cancel{L\ NaCl} \times \frac{0.887\ mol\ NaCl}{\cancel{1 L\ solution}} = 0.0958\ mol\ NaCl \tag{10.2.2.7}$$

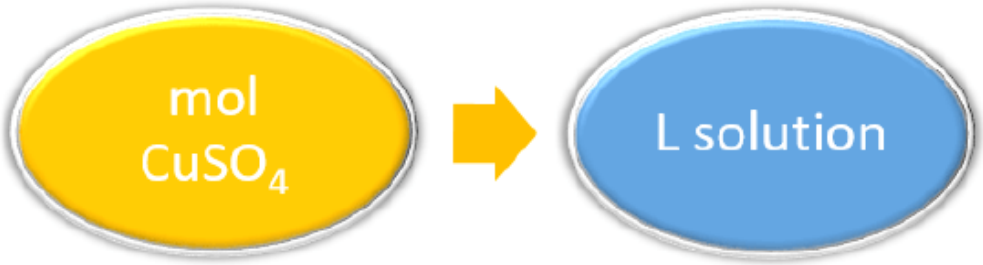
If we used the definition approach, we get the same answer, but now we are using conversion factor skills. Like any other conversion factor that relates two different types of units, the reciprocal of the concentration can be also used as a conversion factor.

Determining Volume of a Solution, Given the Concentration and Moles of Solute

Using concentration as a conversion factor, how many liters of 2.35 M CuSO4 are needed to obtain 4.88 mol of CuSO4?

Solution

This is a one-step conversion, but the concentration must be written as the reciprocal for the units to work out:



$$\frac{1\ L\ solution}{2.35\ mol\ CuSO_4}$$

$$4.88\ \cancel{mol\ CuSO_4} \times \frac{1\ L\ solution}{2.35\ \cancel{mol\ CuSO_4}} = 2.08\ L\ of\ solution \tag{10.2.2.8}$$

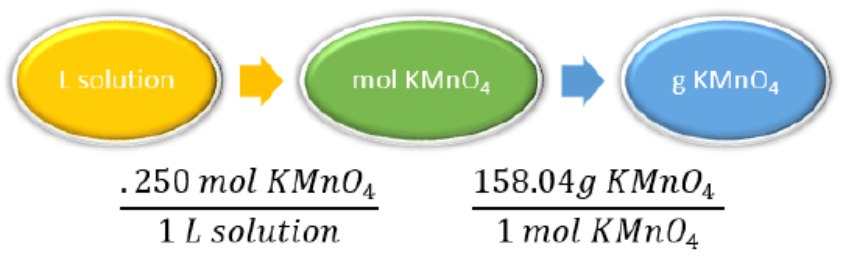
In a laboratory situation, a chemist must frequently prepare a given volume of solutions of a known molarity. The task is to calculate the mass of the solute that is necessary. The molarity equation can be rearranged to solve for moles, which can then be converted to grams. The following example illustrates this.

Example 10.2.2.2

A chemist needs to prepare $3.00\ \text{L}$ of a $0.250\ \text{M}$ solution of potassium permanganate (KMnO_4). What mass of KMnO_4 does she need to make the solution?

Solution

Steps for Problem Solving	
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: Molarity $= 0.250\ \text{M}$ Volume $= 3.00\ \text{L}$ Find: Mass $\text{KMnO}_4 = ?\ \text{g}$
List other known quantities.	Molar mass $\text{KMnO}_4 = 158.04\ \text{g/mol}$ 0.250 mol $KMnO_4$ to 1 L of $KMnO_4$ solution

Steps for Problem Solving	
Plan the problem.	
Cancel units and calculate.	Now substitute the known quantities into the equation and solve. $\text{mol KMnO}_4 = 0.250\ \text{M KMnO}_4 \times 3.00\ \text{L} = 0.750\ \text{mol KMnO}_4$ $3.00\ \cancel{L\ solution} \times \frac{0.250\ \cancel{\text{mol KMnO}_4}}{1\ \cancel{L\ solution}} \times \frac{158.04\ \text{g KMnO}_4}{1\ \cancel{\text{mol KMnO}_4}} = 119\ \text{g KMnO}_4$
Think about your result.	When $119\ \text{g}$ of potassium permanganate is dissolved into water to make $3.00\ \text{L}$ of solution, the molarity is $0.250\ \text{M}$.

Exercise 10.2.2.3

Using concentration as a conversion factor, how many liters of 0.0444 M CH_2O are needed to obtain 0.0773 mol of CH_2O?

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 10.2.2.4

Answer the problems below using concentration as a conversion factor.

a. What mass of solute is present in 1.08 L of 0.0578 M H_2SO_4?
b. What volume of 1.50 M HCl solution contains 10.0 g of hydrogen chloride?

Answer a available at the end of this section.

How to Indicate Concentration

- Square brackets are often used to represent concentration, e.g., [NaOH] = 0.50 M.
- Use the capital letter M for molarity, not a lower case m (this is a different concentration unit called *molality*).

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Watch as the Flinn Scientific Tech Staff demonstrates "How To Prepare Solutions."

It is important to note that there are many different ways you can set up and solve your chemistry equations. Some students prefer to answer multi-step calculations in one long step, while others prefer to work out each step individually. Neither method is necessarily better or worse than the other method—whichever makes the most sense to ***you*** is the one that you should use. In this text, we will typically use unit analysis (also called dimension analysis or factor analysis).

Contributors and Attributions

- Peggy Lawson (Oxbow Prairie Heights School). Funded by Saskatchewan Educational Technology Consortium.
- Marisa Alviar-Agnew (Sacramento City College)
- Henry Agnew (UC Davis)

Answers

Exercise 10.2.2.1

1.57 M $C_6H_{12}O_6$

Exercise 10.2.2.2

4.69 M NaCl

Exercise 10.2.2.3

1.74 L

Exercise 10.2.2.4

6.12 g

183 mL or 0.183L

This page titled 10.2.2: Solution Concentration- Molarity is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

10.3: CONCENTRATION CALCULATIONS

Many examples of calculations based on the molarity concept were already introduced in the previous section. In this section, we will build on those ideas by looking at some specific calculations which involve molarity. Please make sure you are comfortable with the molarity concept before continuing in this section.

10.3.1: A Mole Map for Concentration

10.3.2: Solution Dilution

10.3.3: Solution Stoichiometry

10.3.4: Acid–Base Titration

This page titled 10.3: Concentration Calculations is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

10.3.1: A Mole Map for Concentration

When we make stoichiometric calculations on solutions, we will be using molarity as the measure of concentration. Remember, the formula for molarity is:

$$\text{molarity} = \frac{\text{number of moles of solute}}{\text{number of liters of solution}} \tag{10.3.1.1}$$

You have already seen a few examples of calculations using the definition of molarity. There are numerous possible ways to use the molarity concept in a calculation. You could be using molarity as a conversion factor to find either moles of solute for liters of solution. Or you could be finding the molarity if provided the moles of solute and liters of solution. And of course, the point of a mole roadmap is to have a method for going through a series of several calculations, so you would not necessarily be given everything that is suggested in the examples above in every single problem.

Take a moment to add something to your mole roadmap which incorporates the concept of molarity along with the concepts already listed in your mole roadmap. Please refer back to the examples in the section where molarity was first introduced as you come up with your mole roadmap. Once you have completed your mole roadmap, move on through the remainder of the subsections and see if applying your mole roadmap works for solving the problems listed there. If not, revise your mole roadmap as appropriate.

This page titled 10.3.1: A Mole Map for Concentration is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

10.3.2: Solution Dilution

Learning Objectives

- Explain how concentrations can be changed in the lab.
- Understand how stock solutions are used in the laboratory.

We are often concerned with how much solute is dissolved in a given amount of solution. We will begin our discussion of solution concentration with two related and relative terms: **dilute** and **concentrated**.

- A **dilute** solution is one in which there is a relatively small amount of solute dissolved in the solution.
- A **concentrated** solution contains a relatively large amount of solute.

These two terms do not provide any quantitative information (actual numbers), but they are often useful in comparing solutions in a more general sense. These terms also do not tell us whether or not the solution is saturated or unsaturated, or whether the solution is "strong" or "weak". These last two terms will have special meanings when we discuss acids and bases, so be careful not to confuse them.

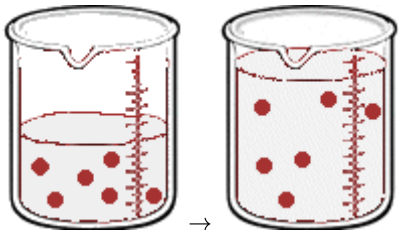
Stock Solutions

It is often necessary to have a solution with a concentration that is very precisely known. Solutions containing a precise mass of solute in a precise volume of solution are called **stock (or standard) solutions.** To prepare a standard solution, a piece of lab equipment called a volumetric flask should be used. These flasks range in size from 10 mL to 2000 mL and are carefully calibrated to a single volume. On the narrow stem is a **calibration mark**. The precise mass of solute is dissolved in a bit of the solvent, and this is added to the flask. Then, enough solvent is added to the flask until the level reaches the calibration mark.

Often, it is convenient to prepare a series of solutions of known concentrations by first preparing a single **stock solution**, as described in the previous section. **Aliquots** (carefully measured volumes) of the stock solution can then be diluted to any desired volume. In other cases, it may be inconvenient to weigh a small mass of sample accurately enough to prepare a small volume of a dilute solution. Each of these situations requires that a solution be diluted to obtain the desired concentration.

Dilutions of Stock (or Standard) Solutions

Imagine we have a salt water solution with a certain concentration. That means we have a certain amount of salt (a certain mass or a certain number of moles) dissolved in a certain volume of solution. Next, we will dilute this solution. This is done by adding more water, not more salt:



Before Dilution and After Dilution

The molarity of solution 1 is

$$M_1 = \frac{\text{moles}_1}{\text{liter}_1}$$

and the molarity of solution 2 is

$$M_2 = \frac{\text{moles}_2}{\text{liter}_2}$$

rearrange the equations to find moles:

$$\text{moles}_1 = M_1 \text{liter}_1$$

and

$$\text{moles}_2 = M_2 \text{liter}_2$$

What stayed the same and what changed between the two solutions? By adding more water, we changed the volume of the solution. Doing so also changed its concentration. **However, the number of moles of solute did not change.** So,

$$moles_1 = moles_2$$

Therefore

$$\boxed{M_1 V_1 = M_2 V_2} \tag{10.3.2.1}$$

where

- M_1 and M_2 are the concentrations of the original and diluted solutions
- V_1 and V_2 are the volumes of the two solutions

Preparing dilutions is a common activity in the chemistry lab and elsewhere. Once you understand the above relationship, the calculations are simple.

Suppose that you have $100.\ \text{mL}$ of a $2.0\ \text{M}$ solution of HCl. You dilute the solution by adding enough water to make the solution volume $500.\ \text{mL}$. The new molarity can easily be calculated by using the above equation and solving for M_2.

$$M_2 = \frac{M_1 \times V_1}{V_2} = \frac{2.0\ \text{M} \times 100.\ \text{mL}}{500.\ \text{mL}} = 0.40\ \text{M HCl}$$

The solution has been diluted by one-fifth since the new volume is five times as great as the original volume. Consequently, the molarity is one-fifth of its original value.

Another common dilution problem involves calculating what amount of a highly concentrated solution is required to make a desired quantity of solution of lesser concentration. The highly concentrated solution is typically referred to as the stock solution.

Example 10.3.2.1: Diluting Nitric Acid

Nitric acid (HNO_3) is a powerful and corrosive acid. When ordered from a chemical supply company, its molarity is $16\ \text{M}$. How much of the stock solution of nitric acid needs to be used to make $8.00\ \text{L}$ of a $0.50\ \text{M}$ solution?

Solution

Solutions to Example13.7.1

Steps for Problem Solving	
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: M_1, Stock $\mathrm{HNO_3} = 16\ \mathrm{M}$ $V_2 = 8.00\ \mathrm{L}$ $M_2 = 0.50\ \mathrm{M}$ Find: Volume stock $\mathrm{HNO_3}\ (V_1) = ?\ \mathrm{L}$
List other known quantities.	none
Plan the problem.	First, rearrange the equation algebraically to solve for V_1. $$V_1 = \frac{M_2 \times V_2}{M_1}$$
Calculate and cancel units.	Now substitute the known quantities into the equation and solve. $$V_1 = \frac{0.50\ \mathrm{M} \times 8.00\ \mathrm{L}}{16\ \mathrm{M}} = 0.25\ \mathrm{L}$$
Think about your result.	$0.25\ \mathrm{L}\ (250\ \mathrm{mL})$ of the stock $\mathrm{HNO_3}$ needs to be diluted with water to a final volume of $8.00\ \mathrm{L}$. The dilution is by a f 32 to go from $16\ \mathrm{M}$ to $0.5\ \mathrm{M}$.

Exercise 10.3.2.1

A 0.885 M solution of KBr with an initial volume of 76.5 mL has more water added until its concentration is 0.500 M. What is the new volume of the solution?

Answer

135.4 mL

Note that the calculated volume will have the same dimensions as the input volume, and dimensional analysis tells us that in this case we don't need to convert to liters, since L cancels when we divide M (mol/L) by M (mol/L).

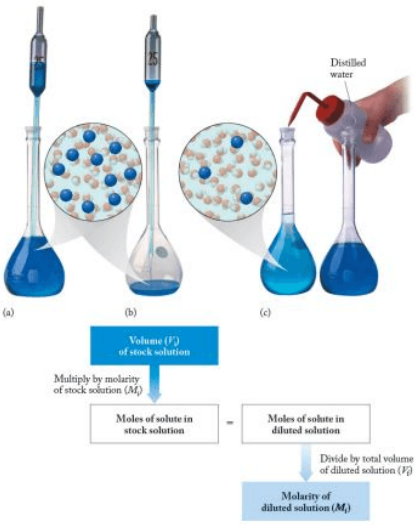
Diluting and Mixing Solutions

Diluting and Mixing Solutions

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

How to Dilute a Solution by CarolinaBiological



This page titled 10.3.2: Solution Dilution is shared under a CC BY-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

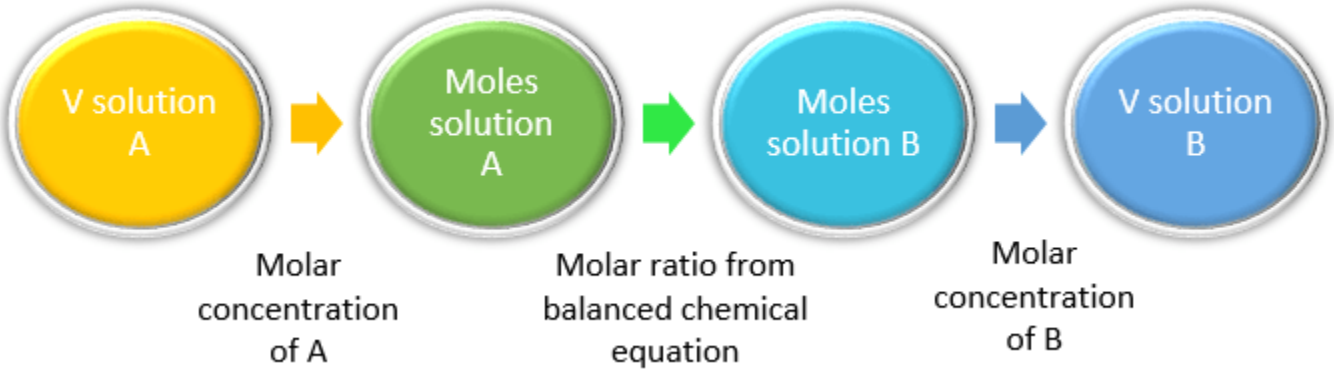
- 13.7: Solution Dilution by Marisa Alviar-Agnew and Henry Agnew is licensed CC BY-SA 4.0.

10.3.3: Solution Stoichiometry

Learning Objectives

- Determine amounts of reactants or products in aqueous solutions.

As we learned previously, double replacement reactions involve the reaction between ionic compounds in solution and, in the course of the reaction, the ions in the two reacting compounds are "switched" (they *replace* each other). Because these reactions occur in aqueous solution, we can use the concept of molarity to directly calculate the number of moles of reactants or products that will be formed, and therefore their amounts (i.e. volume of solutions or mass of precipitates).



As an example, lead (II) nitrate and sodium chloride react to form sodium nitrate and the *insoluble* compound, lead (II) chloride.

$$\mathrm{Pb(NO_3)_2\,(aq) + 2\,NaCl\,(aq) \longrightarrow PbCl_2\,(s) + 2\,NaNO_3\,(aq)} \tag{10.3.3.1}$$

In the reaction shown above, if we mixed 0.123 L of a 1.00 M solution of NaCl with 1.50 M solution of $\mathrm{Pb(NO_3)_2}$, we could calculate the volume of $\mathrm{Pb(NO_3)_2}$ solution needed to completely precipitate the $\mathrm{Pb^{2+}}$ ions.

The molar concentration can also be expressed as the following:

$$1.00\,M\,\mathrm{NaCl} = \frac{1.00\ mol\ \mathrm{NaCl}}{1\ L\ \mathrm{NaCl\ solution}}$$

and

$$1.50\,M\,\mathrm{Pb(NO_3)_2} = \frac{1.50\ mol\ \mathrm{Pb(NO_3)_2}}{1\ L\ \mathrm{Pb(NO_3)_2 solution}}$$

First, we must examine the reaction stoichiometry in the balanced reaction (Equation 10.3.3.1). In this reaction, one mole of $\mathrm{Pb(NO_3)_2}$ reacts with two moles of NaCl to give one mole of $\mathrm{PbCl_2}$ precipitate. Thus, the concept map utilizing the stoichiometric ratios is:



so the volume of lead (II) nitrate that reacted is calculated as:

$$0.123\ L\ \text{NaCl solution} \times \frac{1.00\ mol\ \text{NaCl}}{1\ L\ \text{NaCl solution}} \times \frac{1\ mol\ Pb(NO_3)_2}{2\ mol\ \text{NaCl}} \times \frac{1\ L\ Pb(NO_3)_2\ \text{solution}}{1.5\ mol\ Pb(NO_3)_2} = 0.041\ Pb(NO_3)_2\ L\ \text{solution}$$

This volume makes intuitive sense for two reasons: (1) the number of moles of $Pb(NO_3)_2$ required is half of the number of moles of $NaCl$, based off of the stoichiometry in the balanced reaction (Equation 10.3.3.1); (2) the concentration of $Pb(NO_3)_2$ solution is 50% greater than the $NaCl$ solution, so less volume is needed.

Example 10.3.3.1

What volume (in L) of 0.500 M sodium sulfate will react with 275 mL of 0.250 M barium chloride to completely precipitate all Ba^{2+} in the solution?

Solution

Solutions to Example 13.8.1

Steps for Problem Solving	Example 10.3.3.1
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: 275 mL $BaCl_2$ 0.250 M $BaCl_2$ or $\frac{0.250\ mol BaCl_2}{1\ L\ BaCl_2\ solution}$ 0.500 M Na_2SO_4 or $\frac{0.500\ mol Na_2SO_4}{1\ L\ Na_2SO_4\ solution}$ Find: Volume Na_2SO_4 solution.
Set up and balance the chemical equation.	$Na_2SO_4\,(aq) + BaCl_2\,(aq) \longrightarrow BaSO_4\,(s) + 2NaCl\,(aq)$ An insoluble product is formed after the reaction.
List other known quantities.	1 mol of Na_2SO_4 to 1 mol $BaCl_2$ 1000 mL = 1 L
Prepare a concept map and use the proper conversion factor.	mL $BaCl_2$ solution → L $BaCl_2$ solution → mol $BaCl_2$ solution → mol Na_2SO_4 solution →  $\frac{1\ L}{1000\ mL}$ $\frac{0.250\ mol\ BaCl_2}{1\ L\ BaCl_2 solution}$ $\frac{1\ mol\ Na_2SO_4}{1\ mol\ BaCl_2}$ $\frac{1\ L\ Na_2SO_4\ solution}{0.500\ mol}$

Steps for Problem Solving	Example 10.3.3.1
Cancel units and calculate.	$275\ \cancel{mL\ BaCl_2\ solution} \times \frac{1\ \cancel{L}}{1000\ \cancel{mL}} \times \frac{0.250\ \cancel{mol\ BaCl_2}}{1\ \cancel{L\ BaCl_2\ solution}} \times \frac{1\ \cancel{mol\ Na_2SO}}{1\ \cancel{mol\ BaCl}$ $\times \frac{1\ L\ Na_2SO_4\ solution}{0.500\ \cancel{mol Na_2SO_4}}$ = 0.1375 L sodium sulfate
Think about your result.	The lesser amount (almost half) of sodium sulfate is to be expected as it is more concentrated than barium chloride. Also, the units are correct.

Exercise 10.3.3.1

What volume of 0.250 M lithium hydroxide will completely react with 0.500 L of 0.250 M of sulfuric acid solution?

Answer available at the end of this section.

Answers

Exercise 10.3.3.1

0.250 L $LiOH$ solution

This page titled 10.3.3: Solution Stoichiometry is shared under a CC BY-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 13.8: Solution Stoichiometry by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew, Paul Young is licensed CC BY-SA 4.0.

10.3.4: Acid–Base Titration

Learning Objectives

- Understand the basics of acid-base titrations.
- Understand the use of indicators.
- Perform a titration calculation correctly.

The reaction of an acid with a base to make a salt and water is a common reaction in the laboratory, partly because so many compounds can act as acids or bases. Another reason that acid-base reactions are so prevalent is because they are often used to determine quantitative amounts of one or the other. Performing chemical reactions quantitatively to determine the exact amount of a reagent is called a **titration**. A titration can be performed with almost any chemical reaction for which the balanced chemical equation is known. Here, we will consider titrations that involve acid-base reactions.

During an acid-base titration, an acid with a known concentration (a **standard solution**) is slowly added to a base with an unknown concentration (or vice versa). A few drops of indicator solution are added to the base. The indicator will signal, by color change, when the base has been neutralized (when $[H^+] = [OH^-]$). At that point—called the **equivalence point,** or **end point**—the titration is stopped. By knowing the volumes of acid and base used, and the concentration of the standard solution, calculations allow us to determine the concentration of the other solution.

It is important to accurately measure volumes when doing titrations. The instrument you would use is called a burette (or buret).



Figure 10.3.4.1: Equipment for Titrations. A burette is a type of liquid dispensing system that can accurately indicate the volume of liquid dispensed.

For example, suppose 25.66 mL (or 0.02566 L) of 0.1078 M HCl was used to titrate an unknown sample of NaOH. What mass of NaOH was in the sample? We can calculate the number of moles of HCl reacted:

$$\text{\# mol HCl} = (0.02566\ \text{L})(0.1078\ \text{M}) = 0.002766\ \text{mol HCl}$$

We also have the balanced chemical reaction between HCl and NaOH:

$$\mathrm{HCl} + \mathrm{NaOH} \longrightarrow \mathrm{NaCl} + \mathrm{H_2O}$$

So we can construct a conversion factor to convert to number of moles of NaOH reacted:

$$0.002766\ \cancel{mol\ HCl} \times \frac{1\ mol\ NaOH}{1\ \cancel{mol\ HCl}} = 0.002766\ mol\ NaOH$$

Then we convert this amount to mass, using the molar mass of NaOH (40.00 g/mol):

$$0.002766\ \cancel{mol\ HCl} \times \frac{40.00\ g\ NaOH}{1\ \cancel{mol\ HCl}} = 0.1106\ g\ NaOH$$

This type of calculation is performed as part of a titration.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CC BY NC SA
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Example 10.3.4.1: Equivalence Point

What mass of Ca(OH)2 is present in a sample if it is titrated to its equivalence point with 44.02 mL of 0.0885 M HNO3? The balanced chemical equation is as follows:

$$2\,HNO_3 + Ca(OH)_2 \longrightarrow Ca(NO_3)_2 + 2\,H_2O$$

Solution

In liters, the volume is 0.04402 L. We calculate the number of moles of titrant:

moles HNO3 = (0.04402 L)(0.0885 M) = 0.00390 mol HNO3

Using the balanced chemical equation, we can determine the number of moles of Ca(OH)2 present in the analyte:

$$0.00390\ \cancel{mol\ HNO_3} \times \frac{1\,mol\,Ca(OH)_2}{2\ \cancel{mol\ HNO_3}} = 0.00195\,mol\,Ca(OH)_2$$

Then we convert this to a mass using the molar mass of Ca(OH)2:

$$0.00195\ \cancel{mol\,Ca(OH)_2} \times \frac{74.1\,g\,Ca(OH)_2}{\cancel{mol\,Ca(OH)_2}} = 0.144\,g\,Ca(OH)_2$$

Exercise 10.3.4.1

What mass of H2C2O4 is present in a sample if it is titrated to its equivalence point with 18.09 mL of 0.2235 M NaOH? The balanced chemical reaction is as follows:

$$H_2C_2O_4 + 2\,NaOH \longrightarrow Na_2C_2O_4 + 2\,H_2O$$

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 10.3.4.2

If 25.00 mL of HCl solution with a concentration of 0.1234 M is neutralized by 23.45 mL of NaOH, what is the concentration of the base?

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 10.3.4.3

A 20.0 mL solution of strontium hydroxide, $Sr(OH)_2$, is placed in a flask and a drop of indicator is added. The solution turns color after 25.0 mL of a standard 0.0500 M HCl solution is added. What was the original concentration of the $Sr(OH)_2$ solution?

Answer available at the end of this section.

Indicator Selection for Titrations

The indicator used depends on the type of titration performed. The indicator of choice should change color when enough of one substance (acid or base) has been added to exactly use up the other substance. Only when a strong acid and a strong base are produced will the resulting solution be neutral. The three main types of acid-base titrations, and suggested indicators, are:

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

The three main types of acid-base titrations, suggested indicators, and explanations

Titration between . . .	Indicator	Explanation
strong acid and strong base	any	
strong acid and weak base	methyl orange	changes color in the acidic range (3.2 - 4.4)
weak acid and strong base	phenolphthalein	changes color in the basic range (8.2 - 10.6)

Summary

A titration is the quantitative reaction of an acid and a base. Indicators are used to show that all the analyte has reacted with the titrant.

Contributions & Attributions

- Peggy Lawson (Oxbow Prairie Heights School). Funded by Saskatchewan Educational Technology Consortium.

Answers

Exercise 10.3.4.1

0.182 g

Exercise 10.3.4.2

0.1316 M NaOH

Exercise 10.3.4.3

3.12×10^{-2} M $Sr(OH)_2$

This page titled 10.3.4: Acid–Base Titration is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 14.6: Acid–Base Titration by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

10.4: COLLIGATIVE PROPERTIES

Colligative properties are properties that differ based on the concentration of solute in a solvent, but not on the type of solute. What changes are the properties of the solvent. What causes this change is the number of solute particles in the solution. As we will see, solute particles refers to the number of particles as they exist in solution which may be different than the number of particles as they exist prior to being dissolved. For covalent compounds this will be the same, but for ionic compounds this will be different as the solvent falls apart the compound into ions.

There are several colligative properties, but we will be looking at just a few of them in this textbook. First we will look at changes in the temperatures of phase changes (both melting point and boiling point). Then we will look at changes related to flow across membranes. All three of these colligative properties are things that affect our everyday lives.

10.4.1: Freezing Point Depression and Boiling Point Elevation

10.4.2: Osmosis

This page titled 10.4: Colligative Properties is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

10.4.1: Freezing Point Depression and Boiling Point Elevation

Learning Objectives

- Explain what the term "colligative" means, and list the colligative properties.
- Indicate what happens to the boiling point and the freezing point of a solvent when a solute is added to it.
- Calculate boiling point elevations and freezing point depressions for a solution.

People who live in colder climates have seen trucks put salt on the roads when snow or ice is forecast. Why is this done? As a result of the information you explore in this section, you will understand why these events occur. You will also learn to calculate exactly how much of an effect a specific solute can have on the boiling point or freezing point of a solution.

The example given in the introduction is an example of a colligative property. **Colligative properties** are properties that differ based on the concentration of solute in a solvent, but not on the type of solute. What this means for the example above is that people in colder climates do not necessarily need salt to get the same effect on the roads—any solute will work. However, the higher the concentration of solute, the more these properties will change.

Boiling Point Elevation

Water boils at $100^{\circ}\mathrm{C}$ at $1\ \mathrm{atm}$ of pressure, but a solution of saltwater does not . When table salt is added to water, the resulting solution has a higher boiling point than the water did by itself. The ions form an attraction with the solvent particles that prevents the water molecules from going into the gas phase. Therefore, the saltwater solution will not boil at $100^{\circ}\mathrm{C}$. In order for the saltwater solution to boil, the temperature must be raised above $100^{\circ}\mathrm{C}$. This is true for any solute added to a solvent; the boiling point will be higher than the boiling point of the pure solvent (without the solute). In other words, when anything is dissolved in water, the solution will boil at a higher temperature than pure water would.

The boiling point elevation due to the presence of a solute is also a colligative property. That is, the amount of change in the boiling point is related to the number of particles of solute in a solution and is not related to the chemical composition of the solute. A $0.20\ \mathrm{m}$ solution of table salt and a $0.20\ \mathrm{m}$ solution of hydrochloric acid would have the same effect on the boiling point.

Freezing Point Depression

The effect of adding a solute to a solvent has the opposite effect on the freezing point of a solution as it does on the boiling point. A solution will have a lower freezing point than a pure solvent. The **freezing point** is the temperature at which the liquid changes to a solid. At a given temperature, if a substance is added to a solvent (such as water), the solute-solvent interactions prevent the solvent from going into the solid phase. The solute-solvent interactions require the temperature to decrease further in order to solidify the solution. A common example is found when salt is used on icy roadways. Salt is put on roads so that the water on the roads will not freeze at the normal $0^{\circ}\mathrm{C}$ but at a lower temperature, as low as $-9^{\circ}\mathrm{C}$. The de-icing of planes is another common example of freezing point depression in action. A number of solutions are used, but commonly a solution such as ethylene glycol, or a less toxic monopropylene glycol, is used to de-ice an aircraft. The aircrafts are sprayed with the solution when the temperature is predicted to drop below the freezing point. The **freezing point depression** is the difference in the freezing points of the solution from the pure solvent. This is true for any solute added to a solvent; the freezing point of the solution will be lower than the freezing point of the pure solvent (without the solute). Thus, when anything is dissolved in water, the solution will freeze at a lower temperature than pure water would.

The freezing point depression due to the presence of a solute is also a colligative property. That is, the amount of change in the freezing point is related to the number of particles of solute in a solution and is not related to the chemical composition of the solute. A $0.20\ \mathrm{m}$ solution of table salt and a $0.20\ \mathrm{m}$ solution of hydrochloric acid would have the same effect on the freezing point.

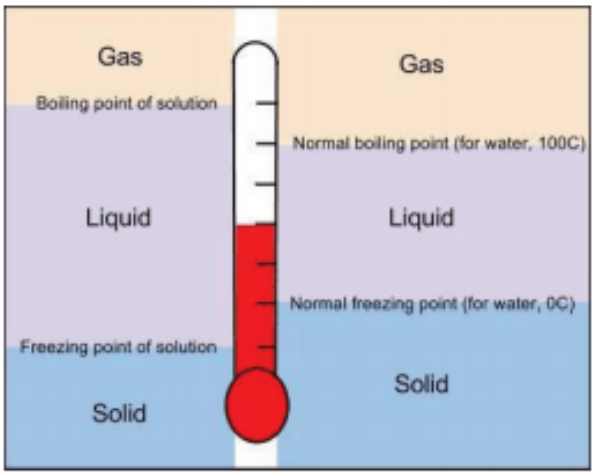


Figure 10.4.1.1: Comparison of boiling and freezing points of a pure liquid (right side) with a solution (left side).

Comparing the Freezing and Boiling Point of Solutions

Recall that covalent and ionic compounds do not dissolve in the same way. Ionic compounds break up into cations and anions when they dissolve. Covalent compounds typically do not break up. For example a sugar/water solution stays as sugar and water, with the sugar molecules staying as molecules. Remember that colligative properties are due to the number of solute particles in the solution. Adding 10 molecules of sugar to a solvent will produce 10 solute particles in the solution. When the solute is ionic, such as NaCl however, adding 10 formulas of solute to the solution will produce 20 ions (solute particles) in the solution. Therefore, adding enough NaCl solute to a solvent to produce a $0.20\ \mathrm{m}$ solution will have twice the effect of adding enough sugar to a solvent to produce a $0.20\ \mathrm{m}$ solution. Colligative properties depend on the number of solute particles in the solution.

"i" is the number of particles that the solute will dissociate into upon mixing with the solvent. For example, sodium chloride, NaCl, will dissociate into two ions so for NaCl, $i = 2$; for lithium nitrate, $\mathrm{LiNO_3}$, $i = 2$; and for calcium chloride, $\mathrm{CaCl_2}$, $i = 3$. For covalent compounds, i is always equal to 1.

By knowing the *molality* of a solution and the number of particles a compound will dissolve to form, it is possible to predict which solution in a group will have the lowest freezing point. To compare the boiling or freezing points of solutions, follow these general steps:

1. Label each solute as ionic or covalent.
2. If the solute is ionic, determine the number of *ions* in the formula. Be careful to look for polyatomic ions.
3. Multiply the original molality (m) of the solution by the number of particles formed when the solution dissolves. This will give you the total concentration of particles dissolved.
4. Compare these values. The higher total concentration will result in a higher boiling point and a lower freezing point.

Example 10.4.1.1

Rank the following solutions in water in order of *increasing* (lowest to highest) freezing point:

- $0.1\ \mathrm{m}\ \mathrm{NaCl}$
- $0.1\ \mathrm{m}\ \mathrm{C_6H_{12}O_6}$
- $0.1\ \mathrm{m}\ \mathrm{CaI_2}$

Solution

To compare freezing points, we need to know the total concentration of all particles when the solute has been dissolved.

- $0.1\ \mathrm{m}\ \mathrm{NaCl}$: This compound is ionic (metal with nonmetal), and will dissolve into 2 parts. The total final concentration is: $(0.1\ \mathrm{m})\,(2) = 0.2\ \mathrm{m}$

- $0.1\ \text{m}\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_6$: This compound is covalent (nonmetal with nonmetal), and will stay as 1 part. The total final concentration is: $(0.1\ \text{m})\,(1) = 0.1\ \text{m}$
- $0.1\ \text{m}\ \text{CaI}_2$: This compound is ionic (metal with nonmetal), and will dissolve into 3 parts. The total final concentration is: $(0.1\ \text{m})\,(3) = 0.3\ \text{m}$

Remember, the greater the concentration of particles, the lower the freezing point will be. $0.1\ \text{m}\ \text{CaI}_2$ will have the lowest freezing point, followed by $0.1\ \text{m}\ \text{NaCl}$, and the highest of the three solutions will be $0.1\ \text{m}\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_6$, but all three of them will have a lower freezing point than pure water.

The boiling point of a solution is higher than the boiling point of a pure solvent, and the freezing point of a solution is lower than the freezing point of a pure solvent. However, the amount to which the boiling point increases or the freezing point decreases depends on the amount of solute that is added to the solvent. A mathematical equation is used to calculate the boiling point elevation or the freezing point depression.

The boiling point elevation is the amount that the boiling point temperature *increases* compared to the original solvent. For example, the boiling point of pure water at $1.0\ \text{atm}$ is 100°C while the boiling point of a 2% saltwater solution is about 102°C. Therefore, the boiling point elevation would be 2°C. The freezing point depression is the amount that the freezing temperature *decreases*.

Both the boiling point elevation and the freezing point depression are related to the molality of the solution. Looking at the formula for the boiling point elevation and freezing point depression, we see similarities between the two. The equation used to calculate the increase in the boiling point is:

$$\Delta T_b = k_b \cdot \text{m} \cdot i \tag{10.4.1.1}$$

Where:

- $\Delta T_b =$ the amount the boiling point increases.
- $k_b =$ the boiling point elevation constant which depends on the solvent (for water, this number is 0.515°C/m).
- $\text{m} =$ the molality of the solution.
- $i =$ the number of particles formed when that compound dissolves (for covalent compounds, this number is always 1).

The following equation is used to calculate the decrease in the freezing point:

$$\Delta T_f = k_f \cdot \text{m} \cdot i \tag{10.4.1.2}$$

Where:

- $\Delta T_f =$ the amount the freezing temperature decreases.
- $k_f =$ the freezing point depression constant which depends on the solvent (for water, this number is 1.86°C/m).
- $\text{m} =$ the molality of the solution.
- $i =$ the number of particles formed when that compound dissolves (for covalent compounds, this number is always 1).

Example 10.4.1.2: Adding Antifreeze to Protein Engines

Antifreeze is used in automobile radiators to keep the coolant from freezing. In geographical areas where winter temperatures go below the freezing point of water, using pure water as the coolant could allow the water to freeze. Since water expands when it freezes, freezing coolant could crack engine blocks, radiators, and coolant lines. The main component in antifreeze is ethylene glycol, $\text{C}_2\text{H}_4(\text{OH})_2$. What is the concentration of ethylene glycol in a solution of water, in molality, if the freezing point dropped by 2.64°C? The freezing point constant, k_f, for water is 1.86°C/m.

Solution

Use the equation for freezing point depression of solution (Equation 10.4.1.2):

$$\Delta T_f = k_f \cdot \text{m} \cdot i$$

Substituting in the appropriate values we get:

$$2.64^{\circ}\text{C} = (1.86^{\circ}\text{C/m})\,(\text{m})\,(1)$$

Solve for m by dividing both sides by 1.86°C/m.

$$\text{m} = 1.42$$

Example 10.4.1.3: Adding Salt to Elevate Boiling Temperature

A solution of $10.0\ \text{g}$ of sodium chloride is added to $100.0\ \text{g}$ of water in an attempt to elevate the boiling point. What is the boiling point of the solution? k_b for water is 0.52°C/m.

Solution

Use the equation for boiling point elevation of solution (Equation 10.4.1.1):

$$\Delta T_b = k_b \cdot \text{m} \cdot i$$

We need to be able to substitute each variable into this equation.

- $k_b = 0.52^{\circ}\text{C/m}$
- m: We must solve for this using stoichiometry. Given: $10.0\ \text{g NaCl}$ and $100.0\ \text{g H}_2\text{O}$ Find: $\text{mol NaCl/kg H}_2\text{O}$. Ratios: molar mass of NaCl, $1000\ \text{g} = 1\ \text{kg}$

$$\frac{10.0\ \cancel{\text{g NaCl}}}{100.0\ \cancel{\text{g H}_2\text{O}}} \cdot \frac{1\ \text{mol NaCl}}{58.45\ \cancel{\text{g NaCl}}} \cdot \frac{1000\ \cancel{\text{g H}_2\text{O}}}{1\ \text{kg H}_2\text{O}} = 1.71\ \text{m}$$

- For NaCl, $i = 2$

Substitute these values into the equation $\Delta T_b = k_b \cdot \text{m} \cdot i$. We get:

$$\Delta T_b = \left(0.52 \frac{^{\circ}\text{C}}{\cancel{\text{m}}}\right)(1.71\ \cancel{\text{m}})\,(2) = 1.78^{\circ}\text{C}$$

Water normally boils at 100°C, but our calculation shows that the boiling point increased by 1.78°C. Our new boiling point is 101.78°C.

Note: Since sea water contains roughly 28.0 g of NaCl per liter, this saltwater solution is approximately **four times** more concentrated than sea water (all for a 2° C rise of boiling temperature).

Summary

- Colligative properties are properties that are due only to the number of particles in solution, and are not related to the chemical properties of the solute.
- Boiling points of solutions are higher than the boiling points of the pure solvents.
- Freezing points of solutions are lower than the freezing points of the pure solvents.
- Ionic compounds split into ions when they dissolve, forming more particles. Covalent compounds stay as complete molecules when they dissolve.

Vocabulary

- **Colligative property** - A property that is due only to the number of particles in solution, and not the type of the solute.
- **Boiling point elevation** - The amount that the boiling point of a solution increases from the boiling point of the pure solvent.
- **Freezing point depression** - The amount that the freezing point of a solution decreases from the freezing point of the pure solvent.

This page titled 10.4.1: Freezing Point Depression and Boiling Point Elevation is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 13.9: Freezing Point Depression and Boiling Point Elevation by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

10.4.2: Osmosis

Learning Objectives

- Explain the how osmosis works.

Before we introduce the final colligative property, we need to present a new concept. A **semipermeable membrane** is a thin membrane that will pass certain small molecules, but not others. A thin sheet of cellophane, for example, acts as a semipermeable membrane. Consider the system in Figure 10.4.2.1.

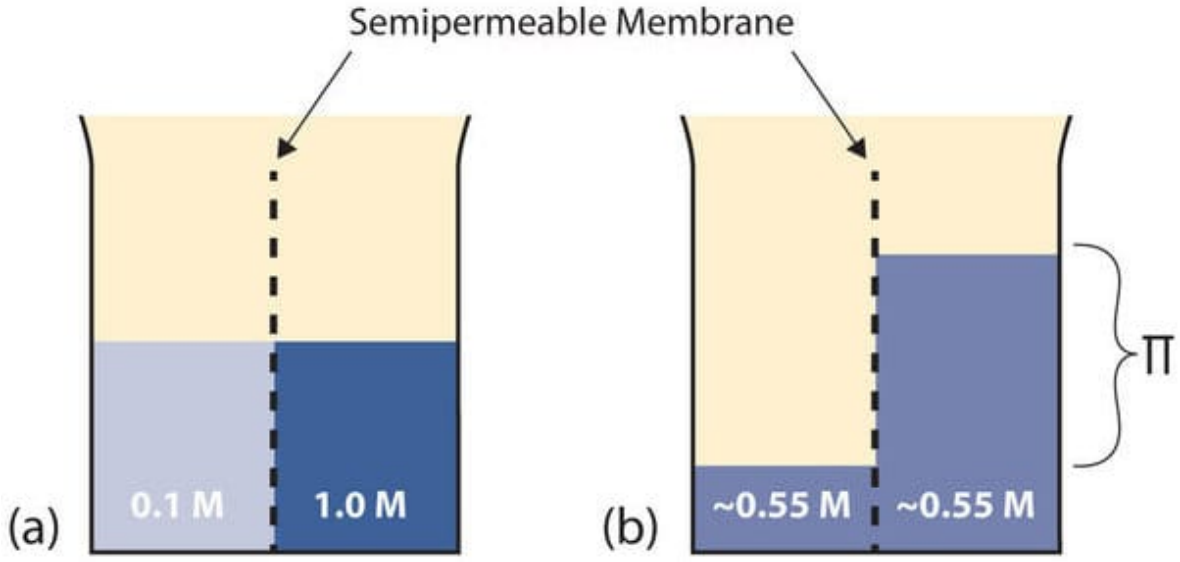


Figure 10.4.2.1: Osmosis. (a) Two solutions of differing concentrations are placed on either side of a semipermeable membrane. (b) When osmosis occurs, solvent molecules selectively pass through the membrane from the dilute solution to the concentrated solution, diluting it until the two concentrations are the same. The pressure exerted by the different height of the solution on the right is called the osmotic pressure. (CC BY-SA-NC 3.0; anonymous)

a. A semipermeable membrane separates two solutions having the different concentrations marked. Curiously, this situation is not stable; there is a tendency for water molecules to move from the dilute side (on the left) to the concentrated side (on the right) until the concentrations are equalized, as in Figure 10.4.2.1*b*.
b. This tendency is called **osmosis**. In osmosis, the solute remains in its original side of the system; only solvent molecules move through the semipermeable membrane. In the end, the two sides of the system will have different volumes. Because a column of liquid exerts a pressure, there is a pressure difference (Π) on the two sides of the system that is proportional to the height of the taller column. This pressure difference is called the **osmotic pressure**, which is a colligative property.

The osmotic pressure of a solution is easy to calculate:

$$\Pi = MRT \tag{10.4.2.1}$$

where Π is the osmotic pressure of a solution, *M* is the molarity of the solution, *R* is the ideal gas law constant, and *T* is the absolute temperature. This equation is reminiscent of the ideal gas law we considered in Chapter 6.

Example 10.4.2.5: Osmotic Pressure

What is the osmotic pressure of a 0.333 M solution of $C_6H_{12}O_6$ at 25°C?

Solution

First we need to convert our temperature to kelvins:

$$T = 25 + 273 = 298 \text{ K}$$

Now we can substitute into the equation for osmotic pressure, recalling the value for *R*:

$$\Pi = (0.333M)\left(0.08205\frac{L.atm}{mol.K}\right)(298K)$$

The units may not make sense until we realize that molarity is defined as moles per liter:

$$\Pi = \left(0.333\frac{mol}{L}\right)\left(0.08205\frac{L.atm}{mol.K}\right)(298K)$$

Now we see that the moles, liters, and kelvins cancel, leaving atmospheres, which is a unit of pressure. Solving,

$$\Pi = 8.14\,atm$$

This is a substantial pressure! It is the equivalent of a column of water 84 m tall.

Exercise 10.4.2.5

What is the osmotic pressure of a 0.0522 M solution of $C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$ at 55°C?

Answer available at the end of this section.

Osmotic pressure is important in biological systems because cell walls are semipermeable membranes. In particular, when a person is receiving intravenous (IV) fluids, the osmotic pressure of the fluid needs to be approximately the same as blood serum to avoid any negative consequences. Figure 10.4.2.3 shows three red blood cells:

- A healthy red blood cell.
- A red blood cell that has been exposed to a lower concentration than normal blood serum (a *hypotonic* solution); the cell has plumped up as solvent moves into the cell to dilute the solutes inside.
- A red blood cell exposed to a higher concentration than normal blood serum (*hypertonic*); water leaves the red blood cell, so it collapses onto itself. Only when the solutions inside and outside the cell are the same (*isotonic*) will the red blood cell be able to do its job.

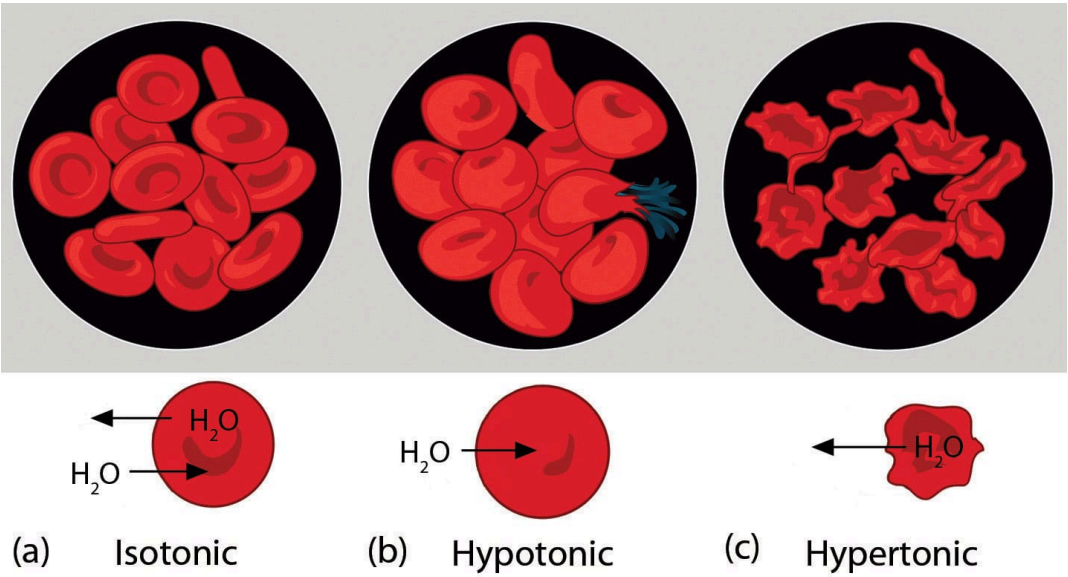


Figure 10.4.2.3: Osmotic Pressure and Red Blood Cells. (a) This is what a normal red blood cell looks like. (b) When a red blood cell is exposed to a hypotonic solution, solvent goes through the cell membrane and dilutes the inside of the cell. (c) When a red blood cell is exposed to a hypertonic solution, solvent goes from the cell to the surrounding solution, diluting the hypertonic solution and collapsing the cell. Neither of these last two cases is desirable, so IV solutions must be isotonic with blood serum to not cause deleterious effects. (Public Domain; Mariana Ruiz Villareal)

Osmotic pressure is also the reason you should not drink seawater if you're stranded on a lifeboat in the ocean; seawater has a higher osmotic pressure than most of the fluids in your body. You *can* drink the water, but ingesting it will pull water out of your cells as osmosis works to dilute the seawater. Ironically, your cells will die of thirst, and you will also die. (It is okay to drink the water if you are stranded on a body of freshwater, at least from an osmotic pressure perspective.) Osmotic pressure is also thought to be important—in addition to capillary action—in getting water to the tops of tall trees.

Summary

- Osmotic pressure is caused by concentration differences between solutions separated by a semipermeable membrane, and is an important biological consideration.

Contributions & Attributions

This page was constructed from content via the following contributor(s) and edited (topically or extensively) by the LibreTexts development team to meet platform style, presentation, and quality:

- Marisa Alviar-Agnew (Sacramento City College)
- Henry Agnew (UC Davis)

Answers

Exercise 10.4.2.5

1.40 atm

This page titled 10.4.2: Osmosis is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

10.E: Solutions (Exercises)

The following questions are related to the material covered in this chapter. For additional discussion on each topic, also check the links included in each heading.

9.1: Solutions

Concept Review Exercises

1. What causes a solution to form?
2. How does the phrase *like dissolves like* relate to solutions?

Answers

1. Solutions form because a solute and a solvent have similar intermolecular interactions.
2. It means that substances with similar intermolecular interactions will dissolve in each other.

Exercises

1. Define *solution*.

2. Give several examples of solutions.

3. What is the difference between a solvent and a solute?

4. Can a solution have more than one solute in it? Can you give an example?

5. Does a solution have to be a liquid? Give several examples to support your answer.

6. Give at least two examples of solutions found in the human body.

7. Which substances will probably be soluble in water, a very polar solvent?

    1. sodium nitrate ($NaNO_3$)
    2. hexane (C_6H_{14})
    3. isopropyl alcohol [$(CH_3)_2CHOH$]
    4. benzene (C_6H_6)

8. Which substances will probably be soluble in toluene ($C_6H_5CH_3$), a nonpolar solvent?

    1. sodium nitrate ($NaNO_3$)
    2. hexane (C_6H_{14})
    3. isopropyl alcohol [$(CH_3)_2CHOH$]
    4. benzene (C_6H_6)

9. The solubility of alcohols in water varies with the length of carbon chain. For example, ethanol (CH_3CH_2OH) is soluble in water in any ratio, while only 0.0008 mL of heptanol ($CH_3CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2CH_2OH$) will dissolve in 100 mL of water. Propose an explanation for this behavior.

10. Dimethyl sulfoxide [$(CH_3)_2SO$] is a polar liquid. Based on the information in Exercise 9, which do you think will be more soluble in it—ethanol or heptanol?

Answers

1. a homogeneous mixture

2. vinegar, dextrose IV, saline IV, coffee, tea, wine

3. A solvent is the majority component of a solution; a solute is the minority component of a solution.

4. yes. Coke or Pepsi has sugar, caffeine and carbon dioxide as solutes.

5. A solution does not have to be liquid; air is a gaseous solution, while some alloys are solid solutions (answers will vary).

6. Urine, plasma

7. 1. probably soluble
   2. probably not soluble
   3. probably soluble
   4. probably not soluble

8.

1. probably not soluble
2. probably soluble
3. probably not soluble
4. probably soluble

9. Small alcohol molecules have strong polar intermolecular interactions, so they dissolve in water. In large alcohol molecules, the nonpolar end overwhelms the polar end, so they do not dissolve very well in water.

10. Ethanol is a smaller molecule. It will be more soluble in water than heptanol.

9.2: Concentration

Concept Review Exercises

1. What are some of the units used to express concentration?

2. Distinguish between the terms *solubility* and *concentration*.

Answers

1. % m/m, % m/v, ppm, ppb, molarity, and Eq/L (answers will vary)

2. Solubility is typically a limit to how much solute can dissolve in a given amount of solvent. Concentration is the quantitative amount of solute dissolved at any concentration in a solvent.

Exercises

1. Define *solubility*. Do all solutes have the same solubility?

2. Explain why the terms *dilute* or *concentrated* are of limited usefulness in describing the concentration of solutions.

3. If the solubility of sodium chloride (NaCl) is 30.6 g/100 mL of H_2O at a given temperature, how many grams of NaCl can be dissolved in 250.0 mL of H_2O?

4. If the solubility of glucose ($C_6H_{12}O_6$) is 120.3 g/100 mL of H_2O at a given temperature, how many grams of $C_6H_{12}O_6$ can be dissolved in 75.0 mL of H_2O?

5. How many grams of sodium bicarbonate ($NaHCO_3$) can a 25.0°C saturated solution have if 150.0 mL of H_2O is used as the solvent?

6. If 75.0 g of potassium bromide (KBr) are dissolved in 125 mL of H_2O, is the solution saturated, unsaturated, or supersaturated?

7. Calculate the mass/mass percent of a saturated solution of NaCl. Use the data from Table 9.E.19.E.1 "Solubilities of Various Solutes in Water at 25°C (Except as Noted)", assume that masses of the solute and the solvent are additive, and use the density of H_2O (1.00 g/mL) as a conversion factor.

8. Calculate the mass/mass percent of a saturated solution of $MgCO_3$ Use the data from Table 9.E.19.E.1 "Solubilities of Various Solutes in Water at 25°C (Except as Noted)", assume that masses of the solute and the solvent are additive, and use the density of H_2O (1.00 g/mL) as a conversion factor.

9. Only 0.203 mL of C_6H_6 will dissolve in 100.000 mL of H_2O. Assuming that the volumes are additive, find the volume/volume percent of a saturated solution of benzene in water.

10. Only 35 mL of aniline ($C_6H_5NH_2$) will dissolve in 1,000 mL of H_2O. Assuming that the volumes are additive, find the volume/volume percent of a saturated solution of aniline in water.

11. A solution of ethyl alcohol (C_2H_5OH) in water has a concentration of 20.56% v/v. What volume of C_2H_5OH is present in 255 mL of solution?

12. What mass of KCl is present in 475 mL of a 1.09% m/v aqueous solution?

13. The average human body contains 5,830 g of blood. What mass of arsenic is present in the body if the amount in blood is 0.55 ppm?

14. The Occupational Safety and Health Administration has set a limit of 200 ppm as the maximum safe exposure level for carbon monoxide (CO). If an average breath has a mass of 1.286 g, what is the maximum mass of CO that can be inhaled at that maximum safe exposure level?

15. Which concentration is greater—15 ppm or 1,500 ppb?

16. Express the concentration 7,580 ppm in parts per billion.

17. What is the molarity of 0.500 L of a potassium chromate solution containing 0.0650 mol of K_2CrO_4?

18. What is the molarity of 4.50 L of a solution containing 0.206 mol of urea [$(NH_2)_2CO$]?

19. What is the molarity of a 2.66 L aqueous solution containing 56.9 g of NaBr?

20. If 3.08 g of $Ca(OH)_2$ is dissolved in enough water to make 0.875 L of solution, what is the molarity of the $Ca(OH)_2$?

21. What mass of HCl is present in 825 mL of a 1.25 M solution?

22. What mass of isopropyl alcohol (C_3H_8O) is dissolved in 2.050 L of a 4.45 M aqueous C_3H_8O solution?

23. What volume of 0.345 M NaCl solution is needed to obtain 10.0 g of NaCl?

24. How many milliliters of a 0.0015 M cocaine hydrochloride ($C_{17}H_{22}ClNO_4$) solution is needed to obtain 0.010 g of the solute?

25. Aqueous calcium chloride reacts with aqueous silver nitrate according to the following balanced chemical equation:

$$CaCl_2(aq) + 2AgNO_3(aq) \rightarrow 2AgCl(s) + Ca(NO_3)_2(aq)$$

How many moles of AgCl(s) are made if 0.557 L of 0.235 M $CaCl_2$ react with excess $AgNO_3$? How many grams of AgCl are made?

26. Sodium bicarbonate ($NaHCO_3$) is used to react with acid spills. The reaction with sulfuric acid (H_2SO_4) is as follows:

$$2NaHCO_3(s) + H_2SO_4(aq) \rightarrow Na_2SO_4(aq) + 2H_2O(\ell) + 2CO_2(g)$$

If 27.6 mL of a 6.25 M H_2SO_4 solution were spilled, how many moles of $NaHCO_3$ would be needed to react with the acid? How many grams of $NaHCO_3$ is this?

27. The fermentation of glucose to make ethanol and carbon dioxide has the following overall chemical equation:

$$C_6H_{12}O_6(aq) \rightarrow 2C_2H_5OH(aq) + 2CO_2(g)$$

If 1.00 L of a 0.567 M solution of $C_6H_{12}O_6$ were completely fermented, what would be the resulting concentration of the C_2H_5OH solution? How many moles of CO_2 would be formed? How many grams is this? If each mole of CO_2 had a volume of 24.5 L, what volume of CO_2 is produced?

28. Aqueous sodium bisulfite gives off sulfur dioxide gas when heated:

$$2NaHSO_3(aq) \rightarrow Na_2SO_3(aq) + H_2O(\ell) + SO_2(g)$$

If 567 mL of a 1.005 M $NaHSO_3$ solution were heated until all the $NaHSO_3$ had reacted, what would be the resulting concentration of the Na_2SO_3 solution? How many moles of SO_2 would be formed? How many grams of SO_2 would be formed? If each mole of SO_2 had a volume of 25.78 L, what volume of SO_2 would be produced?

29. What is the concentration of a 1.0 M solution of $K^+(aq)$ ions in equivalents/liter?

30. What is the concentration of a 1.0 M solution of $SO_4^{2-}(aq)$ ions in equivalents/liter?

31. A solution having initial concentration of 0.445 M and initial volume of 45.0 mL is diluted to 100.0 mL. What is its final concentration?

32. A 50.0 mL sample of saltwater that is 3.0% m/v is diluted to 950 mL. What is its final mass/volume percent?

Answers

1. Solubility is the amount of a solute that can dissolve in a given amount of solute, typically 100 mL. The solubility of solutes varies widely.

2. The term *dilute* means relatively less solute and the term *concentrated* implies relatively more solute. Both are of limited usefulness because these are not accurate.

3. 76.5 g

4. 90.2 g

5. 12.6 g

6. unsaturated

7. 26.5%

8. 2.15%

9. 0.203%

10. 3.4%

11. 52.4 mL

12. 5.18 g

13. 0.00321 g

14. 2.57×10^{-4} g

15. 15 ppm

16. 7,580,000 ppb

17. 0.130 M

18. 0.0458 M

19. 0.208 M

20. 0.0475 M

21. 37.6 g

22. 548 g

23. 0.496 L

24. 20 mL

25. 0.262 mol; 37.5 g

26. 0.345 mol; 29.0 g

27. 1.13 M C_2H_5OH; 1.13 mol of CO_2; 49.7 g of CO_2; 27.7 L of CO_2

28. 0.503 M Na_2SO_3; 0.285 mol SO_2; 18.3 g SO_2; 471 L SO_2

29. 1.0 Eq/L

30. 2.0 Eq/L

31. 0.200 M

32. 0.16 % m/v

9.3: The Dissolution Process

Concept Review Exercise

1. Explain how the solvation process describes the dissolution of a solute in a solvent.

Answer

1. Each particle of the solute is surrounded by particles of the solvent, carrying the solute from its original phase.

Exercises

1. Describe what happens when an ionic solute like Na_2SO_4 dissolves in a polar solvent.

2. Describe what happens when a molecular solute like sucrose ($C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$) dissolves in a polar solvent.

3. Classify each substance as an electrolyte or a nonelectrolyte. Each substance dissolves in H_2O to some extent.

    1. NH_4NO_3
    2. CO_2
    3. NH_2CONH_2
    4. HCl

4. Classify each substance as an electrolyte or a nonelectrolyte. Each substance dissolves in H_2O to some extent.

    1. $CH_3CH_2CH_2OH$
    2. $Ca(CH_3CO_2)_2$
    3. I_2
    4. KOH

5. Will solutions of each solute conduct electricity when dissolved?

    1. $AgNO_3$
    2. $CHCl_3$
    3. $BaCl_2$
    4. Li_2O

6. Will solutions of each solute conduct electricity when dissolved?

    1. CH_3COCH_3
    2. $N(CH_3)_3$
    3. $CH_3CO_2C_2H_5$
    4. $FeCl_2$

Answers

1. Each ion of the ionic solute is surrounded by particles of solvent, carrying the ion from its associated crystal.

2. Each sucrose molecule is surrounded by solvent molecules (attracted to each other via intermolecular forces of attraction).

3.
    1. electrolyte
    2. nonelectrolyte
    3. nonelectrolyte
    4. electrolyte

4.

- nonelectrolyte
- electrolyte
- nonelectrolyte
- electrolyte

5.

1. yes
2. no
3. yes

4. yes

6.

a. no

b. no

c. no

d. yes

9.4: Properties of Solutions

Concept Review Exercises

1. What are the colligative properties of solutions?

2. Explain how the following properties of solutions differ from those of the pure solvent: vapor pressure, boiling point, freezing point, and osmotic pressure.

Answers

1. Colligative properties are characteristics that a solution has that depend on the number, not the identity, of solute particles.

2. In solutions, the vapor pressure is lower, the boiling point is higher, the freezing point is lower, and the osmotic pressure is higher.

Exercises

1. In each pair of aqueous systems, which will have the lower vapor pressure?

    1. pure water or 1.0 M NaCl
    2. 1.0 M NaCl or 1.0 M $C_6H_{12}O_6$
    3. 1.0 M CaCl2CaCl2 or 1.0 M $(NH_4)_3PO_4$

2. In each pair of aqueous systems, which will have the lower vapor pressure?

    1. 0.50 M $Ca(NO_3)_2$ or 1.0 M KBr
    2. 1.5 M $C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$ or 0.75 M $Ca(OH)_2$
    3. 0.10 M $Cu(NO_3)_2$ or pure water

3. In each pair of aqueous systems, which will have the higher boiling point?

    1. pure water or a 1.0 M NaCl
    2. 1.0 M NaCl or 1.0 M $C_6H_{12}O_6$
    3. 1.0 M CaCl2CaCl2 or 1.0 M $(NH_4)_3PO_4$

4. In each pair of aqueous systems, which will have the higher boiling point?

    1. 0.50 M $Ca(NO_3)_2$ or 1.0 M KBr
    2. 1.5 M $C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$ or 0.75 M $Ca(OH)_2$
    3. 0.10 M $Cu(NO_3)_2$ or pure water

5. Estimate the boiling point of each aqueous solution. The boiling point of pure water is 100.0°C.

    1. 0.50 M NaCl
    2. 1.5 M Na_2SO_4
    3. 2.0 M $C_6H_{12}O_6$

6. Estimate the freezing point of each aqueous solution. The freezing point of pure water is 0.0°C.

    1. 0.50 M NaCl
    2. 1.5 M Na_2SO_4
    3. 2.0 M $C_6H_{12}O_6$

7. Explain why salt (NaCl) is spread on roads and sidewalks to inhibit ice formation in cold weather.

8. Salt (NaCl) and calcium chloride (CaCl2) are used widely in some areas to minimize the formation of ice on sidewalks and roads. One of these ionic compounds is better, mole for mole, at inhibiting ice formation. Which is that likely to be? Why?

9. What is the osmolarity of each aqueous solution?

    1. 0.500 M NH_2CONH_2
    2. 0.500 M NaBr
    3. 0.500 M $Ca(NO_3)_2$

10. What is the osmolarity of each aqueous solution?

    1. 0.150 M KCl
    2. 0.450 M $(CH_3)_2CHOH$
    3. 0.500 M $Ca_3(PO_4)_2$

11. A 1.0 M solution of an unknown soluble salt has an osmolarity of 3.0 osmol. What can you conclude about the salt?

12. A 1.5 M NaCl solution and a 0.75 M $Al(NO_3)_3$ solution exist on opposite sides of a semipermeable membrane. Determine the osmolarity of each solution and the direction of solvent flow, if any, across the membrane.

Answers

1.
    1. 1.0 M NaCl
    2. 1.0 M NaCl
    3. 1.0 M $(NH_4)_3PO_4$

2.

- 1.0 M KBr
- 0.75 M $Ca(OH)_2$
- 0.10 M $Cu(NO_3)_2$

3.

1. 1.0 M NaCl
2. 1.0 M NaCl
3. 1.0 M $(NH_4)_3PO_4$

4.

- 1.0 M KBr
- 0.75 M $Ca(OH)_2$
- 0.10 M $Cu(NO_3)_2$

5.

1. 100.5°C
2. 102.3°C
3. 101°C

6.

1. -1.9°C
2. -8.6°C
3. -3.8°C

7. NaCl lowers the freezing point of water, so it needs to be colder for the water to freeze.

8. CaCl2 splits up into 3 ions while NaCl splits up into 2 ions only. CaCl2 will be more effective.

9.

1. 0.500 osmol
2. 1.000 osmol
3. 1.500 osmol

10.

1. 0.300 osmol
2. 0.450 osmol
3. 2.50 osmol

11. It must separate into three ions when it dissolves.

12. Both NaCl and $Al(NO_3)_3$ have 3.0 osmol. There will be no net difference in the solvent flow.

11.4: Dilutions and Concentrations

1. What is the difference between dilution and concentration?
2. What quantity remains constant when you dilute a solution?
3. A 1.88 M solution of NaCl has an initial volume of 34.5 mL. What is the final concentration of the solution if it is diluted to 134 mL?
4. A 0.664 M solution of NaCl has an initial volume of 2.55 L. What is the final concentration of the solution if it is diluted to 3.88 L?
5. If 1.00 mL of a 2.25 M H_2SO_4 solution needs to be diluted to 1.00 M, what will be its final volume?
6. If 12.00 L of a 6.00 M HNO_3 solution needs to be diluted to 0.750 M, what will be its final volume?
7. If 665 mL of a 0.875 M KBr solution are boiled gently to concentrate the solute to 1.45 M, what will be its final volume?
8. If 1.00 L of an LiOH solution is boiled down to 164 mL and its initial concentration is 0.00555 M, what is its final concentration?
9. How much water must be added to 75.0 mL of 0.332 M $FeCl_3(aq)$ to reduce its concentration to 0.250 M?
10. How much water must be added to 1.55 L of 1.65 M $Sc(NO_3)_3(aq)$ to reduce its concentration to 1.00 M?

Answers

1. Dilution is a decrease in a solution's concentration, whereas concentration is an increase in a solution's concentration.
2.
3. 0.484 M
4.
5. 2.25 mL
6.
7. 401 mL

8.
9. 24.6 mL

11.5: Concentrations as Conversion Factors

1. Using concentration as a conversion factor, how many moles of solute are in 3.44 L of 0.753 M $CaCl_2$?
2. Using concentration as a conversion factor, how many moles of solute are in 844 mL of 2.09 M $MgSO_4$?
3. Using concentration as a conversion factor, how many liters are needed to provide 0.822 mol of NaBr from a 0.665 M solution?
4. Using concentration as a conversion factor, how many liters are needed to provide 2.500 mol of $(NH_2)_2CO$ from a 1.087 M solution?
5. What is the mass of solute in 24.5 mL of 0.755 M $CoCl_2$?
6. What is the mass of solute in 3.81 L of 0.0232 M $Zn(NO_3)_2$?
7. What volume of solution is needed to provide 9.04 g of NiF_2 from a 0.332 M solution?
8. What volume of solution is needed to provide 0.229 g of CH_2O from a 0.00560 M solution?
9. What volume of 3.44 M HCl will react with 5.33 mol of $CaCO_3$? $2HCl + CaCO_3 \rightarrow CaCl_2 + H_2O + CO_2$
10. What volume of 0.779 M NaCl will react with 40.8 mol of $Pb(NO_3)_2$? $Pb(NO_3)_2 + 2NaCl \rightarrow PbCl_2 + 2NaNO_3$
11. What volume of 0.905 M H_2SO_4 will react with 26.7 mL of 0.554 M NaOH? $H_2SO_4 + 2NaOH \rightarrow Na_2SO_4 + 2H_2O$
12. What volume of 1.000 M Na_2CO_3 will react with 342 mL of 0.733 M H_3PO_4? $3Na_2CO_3 + 2H_3PO_4 \rightarrow 2Na_3PO_4 + 3H_2O + 3CO_2$
13. It takes 23.77 mL of 0.1505 M HCl to titrate with 15.00 mL of $Ca(OH)_2$. What is the concentration of $Ca(OH)_2$? You will need to write the balanced chemical equation first.
14. It takes 97.62 mL of 0.0546 M NaOH to titrate a 25.00 mL sample of H_2SO_4. What is the concentration of H_2SO_4? You will need to write the balanced chemical equation first.
15. It takes 4.667 mL of 0.0997 M HNO_3 to dissolve some solid Cu. What mass of Cu can be dissolved? $Cu + 4HNO_3(aq) \rightarrow Cu(NO_3)_2(aq) + 2NO_2 + 2H_2O$
16. It takes 49.08 mL of 0.877 M NH_3 to dissolve some solid AgCl. What mass of AgCl can be dissolved? $AgCl(s) + 4NH_3(aq) \rightarrow Ag(NH_3)_4Cl(aq)$
17. What mass of 3.00% H_2O_2 is needed to produce 66.3 g of $O_2(g)$? $2H_2O_2(aq) \rightarrow 2H_2O(\ell) + O_2(g)$
18. A 0.75% solution of Na_2CO_3 is used to precipitate Ca^{2+} ions from solution. What mass of solution is needed to precipitate 40.7 L of solution with a concentration of 0.0225 M $Ca^{2+}(aq)$?

$Na_2CO_3(aq) + Ca^{2+}(aq) \rightarrow CaCO_3(s) + 2Na^+(aq)$

Answers

1. 2.59 mol
2.
3. 1.24 L
4.
5. 2.40 g
6.
7. 0.282 L
8.
9. 3.10 L
10.
11. 8.17 mL
12.
13. 0.1192 M
14.
15. 7.39 mg
16.
17. 4.70 kg

11.6: Colligative Properties of Solutions

1. What are the three colligative properties that involve phase changes?
2. Which colligative property does not involve a phase change? Give an example of its importance.
3. If 45.0 g of C_6H_6 and 60.0 g of $C_6H_5CH_3$ are mixed together, what is the mole fraction of each component?
4. If 125 g of N_2 are mixed with 175 g of O_2, what is the mole fraction of each component?
5. If 36.5 g of NaCl are mixed with 63.5 g of H_2O, what is the mole fraction of each component?
6. An alloy of stainless steel is prepared from 75.4 g of Fe, 12.6 g of Cr, and 10.8 g of C. What is the mole fraction of each component?
7. A solution is made by mixing 12.0 g of $C_{10}H_8$ in 45.0 g of C_6H_6. If the vapor pressure of pure C_6H_6 is 76.5 torr at a particular temperature, what is the vapor pressure of the solution at the same temperature?
8. A solution is made by mixing 43.9 g of $C_6H_{12}C_6$ in 100.0 g of H_2O. If the vapor pressure of pure water is 26.5 torr at a particular temperature, what is the vapor pressure of the solution at the same temperature?
9. At 300°C, the vapor pressure of Hg is 32.97 torr. If 0.775 g of Au were dissolved into 3.77 g of Hg, what would be the vapor pressure of the solution?
10. At 300°C, the vapor pressure of Hg is 32.97 torr. What mass of Au would have to be dissolved in 5.00 g of Hg to lower its vapor pressure to 25.00 torr?
11. If 25.0 g of $C_6H_{12}O_6$ are dissolved in 100.0 g of H_2O, what is the boiling point of this solution?
12. If 123 g of $C_{10}H_{16}O$ are dissolved in 355 g of C_6H_6, what is the boiling point of this solution?
13. If 1 mol of solid CBr_4 is mixed with 2 mol of CCl_4, what is the boiling point of this solution?
14. A solution of $C_2H_2O_4$ in CH_3COOH has a boiling point of 123.40°C. What is the molality of the solution?
15. If 123 g of $C_{10}H_{16}O$ are dissolved in 355 g of C_6H_6, what is the freezing point of this solution?
16. If 25.0 g of $C_6H_{12}O_6$ are dissolved in 100.0 g of H_2O, what is the freezing point of this solution?
17. $C_8H_{17}OH$ is a nonvolatile solid that dissolves in C_6H_{12}. If 7.22 g of $C_8H_{17}OH$ is dissolved in 45.3 g of C_6H_{12}, what is the freezing point of this solution?
18. A solution of $C_2H_2O_4$ in CH_3COOH has a freezing point of 10.00°C. What is the molality of the solution?
19. If 25.0 g of $C_6H_{12}O_6$ are dissolved in H_2O to make 0.100 L of solution, what is the osmotic pressure of this solution at 25°C?
20. If 2.33 g of $C_{27}H_{46}O$ are dissolved in liquid CS_2 to make 50.00 mL of solution, what is the osmotic pressure of this solution at 298 K?
21. At 298 K, what concentration of solution is needed to have an osmotic pressure of 1.00 atm?
22. The osmotic pressure of blood is about 7.65 atm at 37°C. What is the approximate concentration of dissolved solutes in blood? (There are many different solutes in blood, so the answer is indeed an approximation.)

Answers

1. boiling point elevation, freezing point depression, vapor pressure depression
2.
3. mole fraction C_6H_6: 0.469; mole fraction $C_6H_5CH_3$: 0.531
4.
5. mole fraction NaCl: 0.157; mole fraction H_2O: 0.843
6.
7. 65.8 torr
8.
9. 27.26 torr
10.
11. 100.71°C
12.
13. 92.9°C
14.
15. –5.65°C
16.
17. –18.3°C
18.
19. 33.9 atm

20.
21. 0.0409 M

Additional Exercises

1. One brand of ethyl alcohol (Everclear) is 95% ethyl alcohol, with the remaining 5% being water. What is the solvent and what is the solute of this solution?
2. Give an example of each type of solution from your own experience.
   a. A solution composed of a gas solute in a liquid solvent.
   b. A solution composed of a solid solute in a liquid solvent.
   c. A solution composed of a liquid solute in a liquid solvent.
   d. A solution composed of a solid solute in a solid solvent. (Hint: usually such solutions are made as liquids and then solidified.)
3. Differentiate between the terms *saturated* and *concentrated*.
4. Differentiate between the terms *unsaturated* and *dilute*.
5. What mass of $FeCl_2$ is present in 445 mL of 0.0812 M $FeCl_2$ solution?
6. What mass of SO_2 is present in 26.8 L of 1.22 M SO_2 solution?
7. What volume of 0.225 M $Ca(OH)_2$ solution is needed to deliver 100.0 g of $Ca(OH)_2$?
8. What volume of 12.0 M HCl solution is needed to obtain exactly 1.000 kg of HCl?
9. The World Health Organization recommends that the maximum fluoride ion concentration in drinking water is 1.0 ppm. Assuming water has the maximum concentration, if an average person drinks 1,920 mL of water per day, how many milligrams of fluoride ion are being ingested?
10. For sanitary reasons, water in pools should be chlorinated to a maximum level of 3.0 ppm. In a typical 5,000 gal pool that contains 21,200 kg of water, what mass of chlorine must be added to obtain this concentration?
11. Given its notoriety, you might think that uranium is very rare, but it is present at about 2–4 ppm of the earth's crust, which is more abundant than silver or mercury. If the earth's crust is estimated to have a mass of 8.50×10^{20} kg, what range of mass is thought to be uranium in the crust?
12. Chromium is thought to be an ultratrace element, with about 8.9 ng present in a human body. If the average body mass is 75.0 kg, what is the concentration of chromium in the body in pptr?
13. What mass of 3.00% H_2O_2 solution is needed to produce 35.7 g of $O_2(g)$ at 295 K at 1.05 atm pressure?

    $2H_2O_2(aq) \rightarrow 2H_2O(\ell) + O_2(g)$
14. What volume of pool water is needed to generate 1.000 L of $Cl_2(g)$ at standard temperature and pressure if the pool contains 4.0 ppm HOCl and the water is slightly acidic? The chemical reaction is as follows:

    $HOCl(aq) + HCl(aq) \rightarrow H_2O(\ell) + Cl_2(g)$

    Assume the pool water has a density of 1.00 g/mL.
15. A 0.500 *m* solution of $MgCl_2$ has a freezing point of –2.60°C. What is the true van 't Hoff factor of this ionic compound? Why is it less than the ideal value?
16. The osmotic pressure of a 0.050 M LiCl solution at 25.0°C is 2.26 atm. What is the true van 't Hoff factor of this ionic compound? Why is it less than the ideal value?

17. Order these solutions in order of increasing boiling point, assuming an ideal van 't Hoff factor for each: 0.10 *m* $C_6H_{12}O_6$, 0.06 *m* NaCl, 0.4 *m* $Au(NO_3)_3$, and 0.4 *m* $Al_2(SO_4)_3$.

18. Order these solutions in order of decreasing osmotic pressure, assuming an ideal van 't Hoff factor: 0.1 M HCl, 0.1 M $CaCl_2$, 0.05 M $MgBr_2$, and 0.07 M $Ga(C_2H_3O_2)_3$

Answers

1. solvent: ethyl alcohol; solute: water
2.
3. Saturated means all the possible solute that can dissolve is dissolved, whereas concentrated implies that a lot of solute is dissolved.
4.
5. 4.58 g
6.
7. 6.00 L
8.
9. 1.92 mg
10.
11. 1.7×10^{15} to 3.4×10^{15} kg
12.
13. 2,530 g
14.
15. 2.80; it is less than 3 because not all ions behave as independent particles.
16.
17. 0.10 *m* $C_6H_{12}O_6$ < 0.06 *m* NaCl < 0.4 *m* $Au(NO_3)_3$ < 0.4 *m* $Al_2(SO_4)_3$

This page titled 10.E: Solutions (Exercises) is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 11.E: Solutions (Exercises) by Anonymous is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0. Original source: https://2012books.lardbucket.org/books/beginning-chemistry.

11: ACIDS AND BASES

Acids and bases are common substances found in many every day items, from fruit juices and soft drinks to soap. In this chapter, we will examine the properties of acids and bases, and learn about the chemical nature of these important compounds. We will cover pH, and how to calculate the pH of a solution.

11.1: Properties of Acids and Bases

11.1.1: Acids- Properties and Examples

11.1.2: Bases- Properties and Examples

11.2: Chemistry of Acids and Bases

11.2.1: Molecular Definitions of Acids and Bases

11.2.2: Reactions of Acids and Bases

11.2.3: Strong and Weak Acids and Bases

11.3: Acid-Base Equilibria

11.3.1: Water - Acid and Base in One

11.3.2: The pH and pOH Scales - Ways to Express Acidity and Basicity

Dynamic Equilibrium

11.4: Buffers are Solutions that Resist pH Change

11.E: Acids and Bases

Template:HideTOC

This page titled 11: Acids and Bases is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

11.1: PROPERTIES OF ACIDS AND BASES

In ancient times, acids and bases were mostly defined by their properties. We will be looking at modern definitions more in a forthcoming section, however these properties are still useful to talk about. Many of the ways in which we interact with acids and bases on an every day basis as well as determine acid or base properties in the laboratory setting are related to these properties which will be explored in this section.

11.1.1: Acids- Properties and Examples

11.1.2: Bases- Properties and Examples

This page titled 11.1: Properties of Acids and Bases is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

11.1.1: Acids- Properties and Examples

Learning Objectives

- Examine properties of acids.

Many people enjoy drinking coffee. A cup first thing in the morning helps start the day. But keeping the coffee maker clean can be a problem. Lime deposits build up after a while and slow down the brewing process. The best cure for this is to put vinegar (dilute acetic acid) in the pot and run it through the brewing cycle. The vinegar dissolves the deposits and cleans the maker, which will speed up the brewing process back to its original rate. Just be sure to run water through the brewing process after the vinegar, or you will get some really horrible coffee.

Acids

Acids are very common in some of the foods that we eat. Citrus fruits such as oranges and lemons contain citric acid and ascorbic acid, which is better known as vitamin C. Carbonated sodas contain phosphoric acid. Vinegar contains acetic acid. Your own stomach utilizes hydrochloric acid to digest food. Acids are a distinct class of compounds because of the properties of their aqueous solutions as outlined below:

1. Aqueous solutions of acids are electrolytes, meaning that they conduct electrical current. Some acids are strong electrolytes because they ionize completely in water, yielding a great many ions. Other acids are weak electrolytes that exist primarily in a non-ionized form when dissolved in water.
2. Acids have a sour taste. Lemons, vinegar, and sour candies all contain acids.
3. Acids change the color of certain acid-base indicates. Two common indicators are litmus and phenolphthalein. Blue litmus turns red in the presence of an acid, while phenolphthalein turns colorless.
4. Acids react with active metals to yield hydrogen gas. Recall that an activity series is a list of metals in descending order of reactivity. Metals that are above hydrogen in the activity series will replace the hydrogen from an acid in a single-replacement reaction, as shown below:

$$\mathrm{Zn}\,(s) + \mathrm{H_2SO_4}\,(aq) \rightarrow \mathrm{ZnSO_4}\,(aq) + \mathrm{H_2}\,(g) \tag{11.1.1.1}$$

5. Acids react with bases to produce a salt compound and water. When equal moles of an acid and a base are combined, the acid is neutralized by the base. The products of this reaction are an ionic compound, which is labeled as a salt, and water.

It should not be hard for you to name several common acids (but you might find that listing bases is a little more difficult). Below is a partial list of some common acids, along with some chemical formulas:

Table 11.1.1.1*: Common Acids and Their Uses*

Chemist Name	Common Name	Uses
hydrochloric acid, HCl	muriatic acid (used in pools) and stomach acid is HCl	Used in cleaning (refining) metals, in maintenance of swimming pools, and for household cleaning.

Chemist Name	Common Name	Uses
sulfuric acid, H_2SO_4		Used in car batteries, and in the manufacture of fertilizers.
nitric acid, HNO_3		Used in the manufacture of fertilizers, explosives and in extraction of gold.
acetic acid, $HC_2H_3O_2$	vinegar	Main ingredient in vinegar.
carbonic acid, H_2CO_3	responsible for the "fizz" in carbonated drinks	As an ingredient in carbonated drinks.
citric acid, $C_6H_8O_7$		Used in food and dietary supplements. Also added as an acidulant in creams, gels, liquids, and lotions.
acetylsalicylic acid, $C_6H_4(OCOCH_3)CO_2H$	aspirin	The active ingredient in aspirin.

What exactly makes an acid an acid, and what makes a base act as a base? Take a look at the formulas given in the above table and take a guess.

Hydrochloric Acid

Hydrochloric acid is a corrosive, strong mineral acid with many industrial uses. A colorless, highly pungent solution of hydrogen chloride (HCl) in water. Hydrochloric acid is usually prepared by treating HCl with water.

$$\mathrm{HCl\,(g) + H_2O\,(l) \longrightarrow H_3O^+\,(aq) + Cl^-\,(aq)}$$

Hydrochloric acid can therefore be used to prepare chloride salts. Hydrochloric acid is a strong acid, since it is completely dissociated in water. Hydrochloric acid is the preferred acid in titration for determining the amount of bases.

Sulfuric Acid

Sulfuric acid is a highly corrosive strong mineral acid with the molecular formula $\mathrm{H_2SO_4}$. Sulfuric acid is a diprotic acid and has a wide range of applications including use in domestic acidic drain cleaners, as an electrolyte in lead-acid batteries, and in various cleaning agents. It is also a central substance in the chemical industry.



Figure 11.1.1.1: Drops of concentrated sulfuric acid rapidly decompose a piece of cotton towel by dehydration. (CC BY-SA 3.0; Toxic Walker).

Because the hydration of sulfuric acid is thermodynamically favorable (and is highly exothermic) and the affinity of it for water is sufficiently strong, sulfuric acid is an excellent dehydrating agent. Concentrated sulfuric acid has a very powerful dehydrating property, removing water (H_2O) from other compounds including sugar and other carbohydrates and producing carbon, heat, steam. Sulfuric acid behaves as a typical acid in its reaction with most metals by generating hydrogen gas (Equation 11.1.1.2).

$$M + H_2SO_4 \longrightarrow M(SO_4) + H_2 \tag{11.1.1.2}$$

Nitric Acid

Nitric acid (HNO_3) is a highly corrosive mineral acid and is also commonly used as a strong oxidizing agent. Nitric acid is normally considered to be a strong acid at ambient temperatures. Nitric acid can be made by reacting nitrogen dioxide ($NO_2\,(g)$) with water.

$$3\,NO_2\,(g) + H_2O\ (l) \longrightarrow 2\,HNO_3\,(ag) + NO\,(g)$$

Nitric acid reacts with most metals, but the details depend on the concentration of the acid and the nature of the metal. Dilute nitric acid behaves as a typical acid in its reaction with most metals (e.g., nitric acid with magnesium, manganese or zinc will liberate H_2 gas):

$$Mg + 2\,HNO_3 \longrightarrow Mg(NO_3)_2 + H_2$$

$$Mn + 2\,HNO_3 \longrightarrow Mn(NO_3)_2 + H_2$$

$$Zn + 2\,HNO_3 \longrightarrow Zn(NO_3)_2 + H_2$$

Nitric acid is a corrosive acid and a powerful oxidizing agent. The major hazard it poses is chemical burn, as it carries out acid hydrolysis with proteins (amide) and fats (ester) which consequently decomposes living tissue (Figure 11.1.1.2). Concentrated nitric acid stains human skin yellow due to its reaction with the keratin

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CC BY NC SA
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



Figure 11.1.1.2: Second degree burn caused by nitric acid. (CC BY-SA 3.0; Alcamán).

Carbonic Acid

Carbonic acid is a chemical compound with the chemical formula $\mathrm{H_2CO_3}$ and is also a name sometimes given to solutions of carbon dioxide in water (carbonated water), because such solutions contain small amounts of $\mathrm{H_2CO_3\,(aq)}$. Carbonic acid, which is a weak acid, forms two kinds of salts: the carbonates and the bicarbonates. In geology, carbonic acid causes limestone to dissolve, producing calcium bicarbonate—which leads to many limestone features such as stalactites and stalagmites. Carbonic acid is a polyprotic acid, specifically it is diprotic, meaning that it has two protons which may dissociate from the parent molecule.

When carbon dioxide dissolves in water, it exists in chemical equilibrium (discussed in Chapter 15), producing carbonic acid:

$$\mathrm{CO_2 + H_2O \rightleftharpoons H_2CO_3}$$

The reaction can be pushed to favor the reactants to generate $\mathrm{CO_2\,(g)}$ from solution, which is key to the bubbles observed in carbonated beverages (Figure 11.1.1.3).



Figure 11.1.1.3: A glass of sparkling water. (CC BY-SA 3.0; Nevit Dilmen).

Formic Acid

Formic acid ($\mathrm{HCO_2H}$) is the simplest carboxylic acid and is an important intermediate in chemical synthesis and occurs naturally,

most notably in some ants. The word "formic" comes from the Latin word for ant, formica, referring to its early isolation by the distillation of ant bodies. Formic acid occurs widely in nature as its conjugate base formate.

Citric Acid

Citric acid ($C_6H_8O_7$) is a weak organic tricarboxylic acid that occurs naturally in citrus fruits. The citrate ion is an intermediate in the TCA cycle (Krebs cycle), a central metabolic pathway for animals, plants and bacteria. Because it is one of the stronger edible acids, the dominant use of citric acid is used as a flavoring and preservative in food and beverages, especially soft drinks.

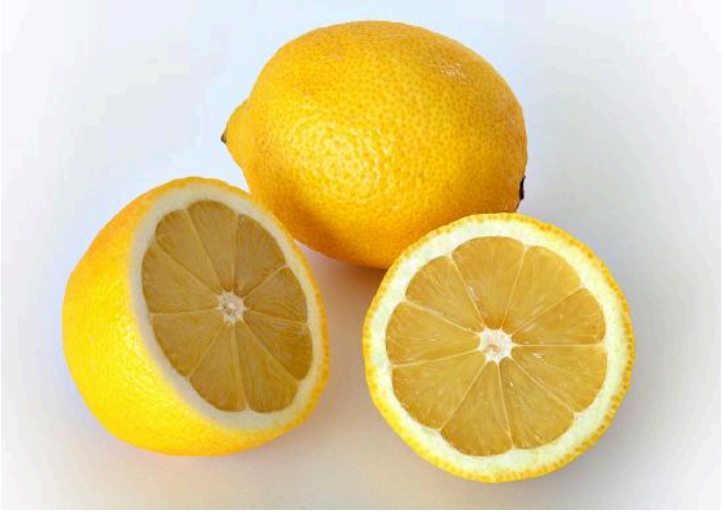


Figure 11.1.1.4: Lemons, oranges, limes, and other citrus fruits possess high concentrations of citric acid (CC BY-SA 2.5; André Karwath).

Acetylsalicylic Acid

Acetylsalicylic acid (also known as aspirin) is a medication used to treat pain, fever, and inflammation. Aspirin, in the form of leaves from the willow tree, has been used for its health effects for at least 2,400 years.

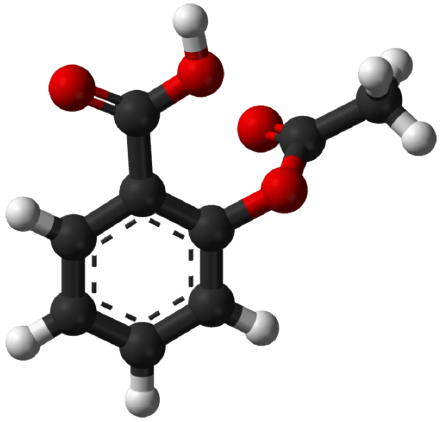


Figure 11.1.1.5: Ball-and-stick model of the aspirin molecule. (Public Domain; Ben Mills).

Aspirin is a white, crystalline, weakly acidic substance.

Summary

A brief summary of key aspects of several acids commonly encountered by students was given. Acids are a distinct class of compounds because of the properties of their aqueous solutions.

Contributions & Attributions

-

- Peggy Lawson (Oxbow Prairie Heights School). Funded by Saskatchewan Educational Technology Consortium.

This page titled 11.1.1: Acids- Properties and Examples is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 14.2: Acids- Properties and Examples by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

11.1.2: Bases- Properties and Examples

Learning Objectives

- Examine properties of bases.

Perhaps you have eaten too much pizza and felt very uncomfortable hours later. This feeling is due to excess stomach acid being produced. The discomfort can be dealt with by taking an antacid. The base in the antacid will react with the HCl in the stomach and neutralize it, taking care of that unpleasant feeling.

Bases

Bases have properties that mostly contrast with those of acids.

1. Aqueous solutions of bases are also electrolytes. Bases can be either strong or weak, just as acids can.
2. Bases often have a bitter taste and are found in foods less frequently than acids. Many bases, like soaps, are slippery to the touch.
3. Bases also change the color of indicators. Litmus turns blue in the presence of a base, while phenolphthalein turns pink.
4. Bases do not react with metals in the way that acids do.
5. Bases react with acids to produce a salt and water.



Figure 11.1.2.1: Phenolphthalein indicator in presence of base.

Warning!

Tasting chemicals and touching them are NOT good lab practices and should be avoided—in other words—don't do this at home.

Bases are less common as foods, but they are nonetheless present in many household products. Many cleaners contain ammonia, a base. Sodium hydroxide is found in drain cleaner. **Antacids**, which combat excess stomach acid, are comprised of bases such as magnesium hydroxide or sodium hydrogen carbonate. Various common bases and corresponding uses are given in Table 11.1.2.2.

Table 11.1.2.1: Common Bases and Corresponding Uses

Some Common Bases	Uses
sodium hydroxide, NaOH (lye or caustic soda)	Used in the manufacture of soaps and detergents, and as the main ingredient in oven and drain cleaners.

Some Common Bases	Uses
potassium hydroxide, KOH (lye or caustic potash)	Used in the production of liquid soaps and soft soaps. Used in alkaline batteries.
magnesium hydroxide, $Mg(OH)_2$ (milk of magnesia)	Used as an ingredient in laxatives, antacids, and deodorants. Also used in the neutralization of acidic wastewater.
calcium hydroxide, $Ca(OH)_2$ (slaked lime)	Used in the manufacture of cement and lime water. Also, added to neutralize acidic soil.
aluminum hydroxide	Used in water purification and as an ingredient in antacids.
ammonia, NH_3	Used as a building block for the synthesis of many pharmaceutical products and in many commercial cleaning products. Used in the manufacture of fertilizers.

Sodium Hydroxide

Sodium hydroxide, also known as lye and caustic soda, is an inorganic compound with formula NaOH. It is a white solid ionic compound consisting of sodium cations $\mathrm{Na^+}$ and hydroxide anions $\mathrm{OH^-}$.

Dissolution of solid sodium hydroxide in water is a highly exothermic reaction:

$$\mathrm{NaOH\,(s)\ \rightarrow Na^+\,(aq) + OH^-\,(aq)}$$

The resulting solution is usually colorless and odorless and feels slippery when it comes in contact with skin.



Figure 11.1.2.1: Sample of sodium hydroxide as pellets in a watch glass. (Public Domain; Walkerma.)

Potassium Hydroxide

Potassium hydroxide is an inorganic compound with the formula KOH, and is commonly called caustic potash. Along with sodium hydroxide (NaOH), this colorless solid is a prototypical strong base. It has many industrial and niche applications, most of which exploit its corrosive nature and its reactivity toward acids. Its dissolution in water is strongly exothermic.

$$\mathrm{KOH\,(s)\ \rightarrow K^+\,(aq) + OH^-\,(aq)}$$

Concentrated aqueous solutions are sometimes called *potassium lyes*.

Magnesium Hydroxide

Magnesium hydroxide is the inorganic compound with the chemical formula $\mathrm{Mg(OH)_2}$. Magnesium hydroxide is a common

component of antacids, such as milk of magnesia, as well as laxatives.



Figure 11.1.2.1: Bottle of Antacid tablets. (CC BY 2.,5; Midnightcomm).

It is a white solid with low solubility in water. Combining a solution of many magnesium salts with basic water induces precipitation of solid $\mathrm{Mg(OH)_2}$. However, a weak concentration of dissociated ions can be found in solution:

$$\mathrm{Mg(OH)_2\,(s) \rightleftharpoons Mg^{2+}\,(aq) + 2\,OH^-\,(aq)}$$

Calcium Hydroxide

Calcium hydroxide (traditionally called slaked lime) is an inorganic compound with the chemical formula $\mathrm{Ca(OH)_2}$. It is a colorless crystal or white powder. It has many names including hydrated lime, caustic lime, builders' lime, slaked lime, cal, or pickling lime. Calcium hydroxide is used in many applications, including food preparation. Limewater is the common name for a saturated solution of calcium hydroxide.

Calcium hydroxide is relatively insoluble in water, but is large enough that its solutions are basic according to the following reaction:

$$\mathrm{Ca(OH)_2\,(s) \rightleftharpoons Ca^{2+}\,(aq) + 2\,OH^-\,(aq)}$$

Ammonia

Ammonia is a compound of nitrogen and hydrogen with the formula $\mathrm{NH_3}$ and is a colorless gas with a characteristic pungent smell. It is the active product of “smelling salts,” and can quickly revive the faint of heart and light of head. Although common in nature and in wide use, ammonia is both caustic and hazardous in its concentrated form.

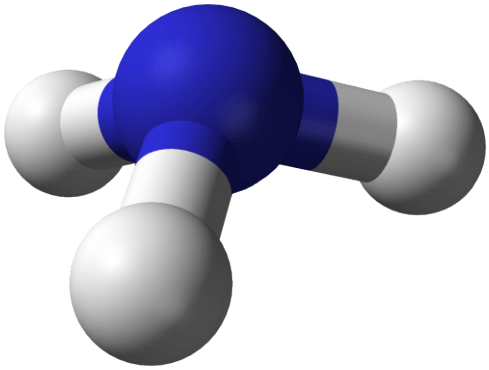


Figure 11.1.2.1: Ball-and-stick model of the ammonia molecule. (Public Domain; Ben Mills).

In aqueous solution, ammonia acts as a base, acquiring hydrogen ions from $\mathrm{H_2O}$ to yield ammonium and hydroxide ions:

$$\mathrm{NH_3\,(g) + H_2O\,(l) \rightleftharpoons NH_4{}^+\,(aq) + OH^-\,(aq)}$$

Ammonia is also a building block for the synthesis of many pharmaceutical products and is used in many commercial cleaning products.

Summary

- A brief summary of properties of bases was given.
- The properties of bases mostly contrast those of acids.
- Bases have many, varied uses.

This page titled 11.1.2: Bases- Properties and Examples is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 14.3: Bases- Properties and Examples by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

11.2: CHEMISTRY OF ACIDS AND BASES

In this section we will be exploring some of the chemistry of acids and bases. We will start with a couple of different definitions and look at the chemistry which results from these definitions. As we have done for precipitation reactions, we can also predict the results of certain acid-base reactions. Finally, we will see that not all acids and bases behave exactly the same in water and we will discuss the terms used to describe that feature.

11.2.1: Molecular Definitions of Acids and Bases

11.2.2: Reactions of Acids and Bases

11.2.3: Strong and Weak Acids and Bases

This page titled 11.2: Chemistry of Acids and Bases is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

11.2.1: Molecular Definitions of Acids and Bases

Learning Objectives

- Identify an Arrhenius acid and an Arrhenius base.
- Identify a Brønsted-Lowry acid and a Brønsted-Lowry base.
- Identify conjugate acid-base pairs in an acid-base reaction.

There are three major classifications of substances known as acids or bases. The theory developed by Svante Arrhenius in 1883, the Arrhenius definition, states that an acid produces H^+ in solution and a base produces OH^-. Later, two more sophisticated and general theories were proposed. These theories are the Brønsted-Lowry and Lewis definitions of acids and bases. This section will cover the Arrhenius and Brønsted-Lowry theories; the Lewis theory is discussed elsewhere.

The Arrhenius Theory of Acids and Bases

In 1884, the Swedish chemist Svante Arrhenius proposed two specific classifications of compounds, termed acids and bases. When dissolved in an aqueous solution, certain ions were released into the solution. An **Arrhenius acid** is a compound that **increases the concentration of H^+ ions** that are present when added to water. These H^+ ions form the hydronium ion (H_3O^+) when they combine with water molecules. This process is represented in a chemical equation by adding H_2O to the reactants side.

$$\mathrm{HCl\,(aq)} \rightarrow \mathrm{H^+\,(aq) + Cl^-\,(aq)}$$

In this reaction, hydrochloric acid (HCl) dissociates completely into hydrogen (H^+) and chlorine (Cl^-) ions when dissolved in water, thereby releasing H^+ ions into solution. Formation of the hydronium ion equation:

$$\mathrm{HCl\,(aq) + H_2O\,(l)} \rightarrow \mathrm{H_3O^+\,(aq) + Cl^-\,(aq)}$$

An **Arrhenius base** is a compound that **increases the concentration of OH^- ions** that are present when added to water. The dissociation is represented by the following equation:

$$\mathrm{NaOH\ \ (aq)} \rightarrow \mathrm{Na^+\ \ (aq) + OH^-\ \ (aq)}$$

In this reaction, sodium hydroxide (NaOH) disassociates into sodium (Na^+) and hydroxide (OH^-) ions when dissolved in water, thereby releasing OH^- ions into solution.

> Arrhenius acids are substances which produce hydrogen ions in solution and Arrhenius bases are substances which produce hydroxide ions in solution.

Limitations to the Arrhenius Theory

The Arrhenius theory has many more limitations than the other two theories. The theory does not explain the weak base ammonia (NH_3), which in the presence of water, releases hydroxide ions into solution, but does not contain OH- itself. The Arrhenius definition of acid and base is also limited to aqueous (i.e., water) solutions.

The Brønsted-Lowry Theory of Acids and Bases

In 1923, Danish chemist Johannes Brønsted and English chemist Thomas Lowry independently proposed new definitions for acids and bases, ones that focus on proton transfer. A **Brønsted-Lowry acid** is any species that can donate a proton (H^+) to another molecule. A **Brønsted-Lowry base** is any species that can accept a proton from another molecule. In short, **a Brønsted-Lowry**

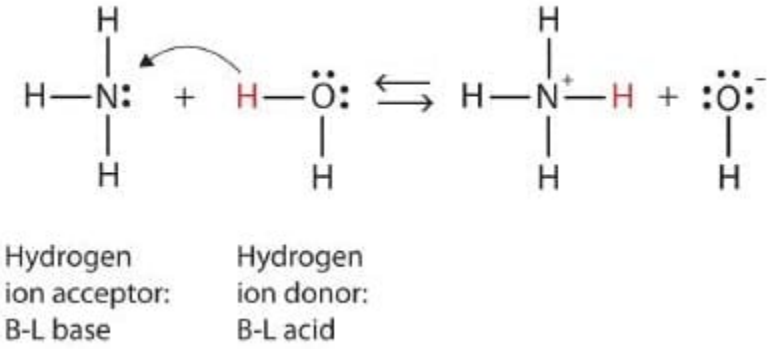
acid is a **proton donor (PD)**, while **a Brønsted-Lowry base** is a **proton acceptor (PA)**.

A Brønsted-Lowry acid is a proton donor, while a Brønsted-Lowry base is a proton acceptor.

Let us use the reaction of ammonia in water to demonstrate the Brønsted-Lowry definitions of an acid and a base. Ammonia and water molecules are reactants, while the ammonium ion and the hydroxide ion are products:

$$\mathrm{NH_3\,(aq) + H_2O\ (\ell) \rightleftharpoons NH_4^+\,(aq) + OH^-\,(aq)} \tag{11.2.1.1}$$

What has happened in this reaction is that the original water molecule has donated a hydrogen ion to the original ammonia molecule, which in turn has accepted the hydrogen ion. We can illustrate this as follows:

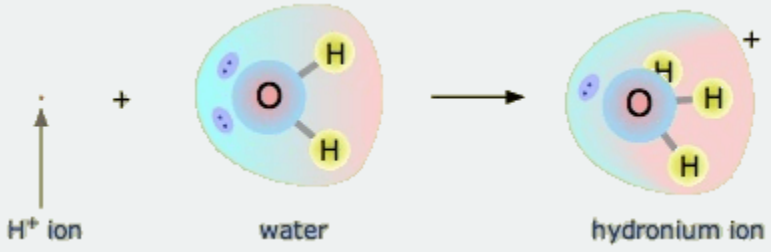


Because the water molecule donates a hydrogen ion to the ammonia, it is the Brønsted-Lowry acid, while the ammonia molecule—which accepts the hydrogen ion—is the Brønsted-Lowry base. Thus, ammonia acts as a base in both the Arrhenius sense and the Brønsted-Lowry sense.

Is an Arrhenius acid like hydrochloric acid still an acid in the Brønsted-Lowry sense? Yes, but it requires us to understand what really happens when HCl is dissolved in water. Recall that the hydrogen *atom* is a single proton surrounded by a single electron. To make the hydrogen *ion*, we remove the electron, leaving a bare proton. Do we *really* have bare protons floating around in aqueous solution? No, we do not. What really happens is that the H^+ ion attaches itself to H_2O to make H_3O^+, which is called the *hydronium ion*. For most purposes, H^+ and H_3O^+ represent the same species, but writing H_3O^+ instead of H^+ shows that we understand that there are no bare protons floating around in solution. Rather, these protons are actually attached to solvent molecules.

The Hydronium Ion

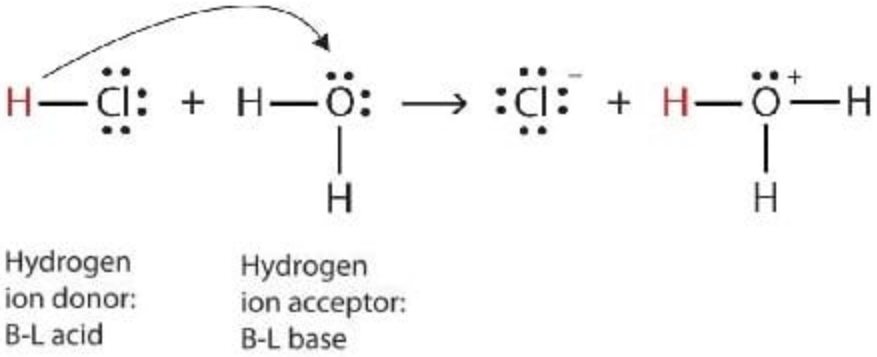
A proton in aqueous solution may be surrounded by more than one water molecule, leading to formulas like $\mathrm{H_5O_2^+}$ or $\mathrm{H_9O_4^+}$ rather than $\mathrm{H_3O^+}$. It is simpler, however, to use $\mathrm{H_3O^+}$ to represent the hydronium ion.



With this in mind, how do we define HCl as an acid in the Brønsted-Lowry sense? Consider what happens when HCl is dissolved in H_2O:

$$\mathrm{HCl\,(g) + H_2O\ (\ell)\ \rightarrow H_3O^+\,(aq) + Cl^-\,(aq)} \tag{11.2.1.2}$$

We can depict this process using Lewis electron dot diagrams:



Now we see that a hydrogen ion is transferred from the HCl molecule to the H_2O molecule to make chloride ions and hydronium ions. As the hydrogen ion donor, HCl acts as a Brønsted-Lowry acid; as a hydrogen ion acceptor, H_2O is a Brønsted-Lowry base. So HCl is an acid not just in the Arrhenius sense, but also in the Brønsted-Lowry sense. Moreover, by the Brønsted-Lowry definitions, H_2O is a base in the formation of aqueous HCl. So the Brønsted-Lowry definitions of an acid and a base classify the dissolving of HCl in water as a reaction between an acid and a base—although the Arrhenius definition would not have labeled H_2O a base in this circumstance.

- A Brønsted-Lowry acid is a proton (hydrogen ion) donor.
- A Brønsted-Lowry base is a proton (hydrogen ion) acceptor.
- All Arrhenius acids and bases are Brønsted-Lowry acids and bases as well. However, not all Brønsted-Lowry acids and bases are Arrhenius acids and bases.

Example 11.2.1.1

Aniline ($C_6H_5NH_2$) is slightly soluble in water. It has a nitrogen atom that can accept a hydrogen ion from a water molecule, just like the nitrogen atom in ammonia does. Write the chemical equation for this reaction and identify the Brønsted-Lowry acid and base.

Solution

$C_6H_5NH_2$ and H_2O are the reactants. When $C_6H_5NH_2$ accepts a proton from H_2O, it gains an extra H and a positive charge and leaves an OH^- ion behind. The reaction is as follows:

$$C_6H_5NH_2\,(aq) + H_2O(\ell) \rightleftharpoons C_6H_5NH_3{}^+\,(aq) + OH^-\,(aq)$$

Because $C_6H_5NH_2$ accepts a proton, it is the Brønsted-Lowry base. The H_2O molecule, because it donates a proton, is the Brønsted-Lowry acid.

Exercise 11.2.1.1

Identify the Brønsted-Lowry acid and the Brønsted-Lowry base in this chemical equation.

$$H_2PO_4{}^- + H_2O \rightleftharpoons HPO_4{}^{2-} + H_3O^+$$

Answer available at the end of this section.

Exercise 11.2.1.2

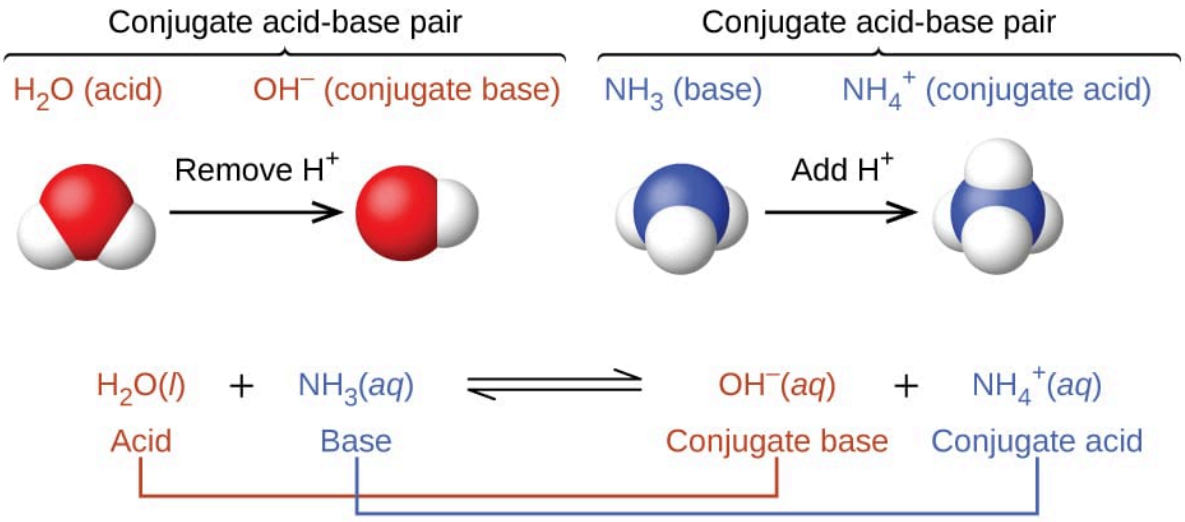
Which of the following compounds is a Bronsted-Lowry base?

a. HCl
b. HPO_4^{2-}
c. H_3PO_4
d. NH_4^+
e. $CH_3NH_3^+$

Answer available at the end of this section.

Conjugate Acid-Base Pair

In reality, all acid-base reactions involve the transfer of protons between acids and bases. For example, consider the acid-base reaction that takes place when ammonia is dissolved in water. A water molecule (functioning as an acid) transfers a proton to an ammonia molecule (functioning as a base), yielding the conjugate base of water, $\mathrm{OH^-}$, and the conjugate acid of ammonia, $\mathrm{NH_4^+}$:



This figure has three parts in two rows. In the first row, two diagrams of acid-base pairs are shown. On the left, a space filling model of H subscript 2 O is shown with a red O atom at the center and two smaller white H atoms attached in a bent shape. Above this model is the label “H subscript 2 O (acid)” in purple. An arrow points right, which is labeled “Remove H superscript plus.” To the right is another space filling model with a single red O atom to which a single smaller white H atom is attached. The label in purple above this model reads, “O H superscript negative (conjugate base).” Above both of these red and white models is an upward pointing bracket that is labeled “Conjugate acid-base pair.” To the right is a space filling model with a central blue N atom to which three smaller white H atoms are attached in a triangular pyramid arrangement. A label in green above reads “N H subscript 3 (base).” An arrow labeled “Add H superscript plus” points right. To the right of the arrow is another space filling model with a blue central N atom and four smaller white H atoms in a tetrahedral arrangement. The green label above reads “N H subscript 3 superscript plus (conjugate acid).” Above both of these blue and white models is an upward pointing bracket that is labeled “Conjugate acid-base pair.” The second row of the figure shows the chemical reaction, H subscript 2 O (l) is shown in purple, and is labeled below in purple as “acid,” plus N H subscript 3 (a q) in green, labeled below in green as “base,” followed by a double sided arrow arrow and O H superscript negative (a q) in purple, labeled in purple as “conjugate base,” plus N H subscript 4 superscript plus (a q)” in green, which is labeled in green as “conjugate acid.” The acid on the left side of the equation is connected to the conjugate base on the right with a purple line. Similarly, the base on the left is connected to the conjugate acid on the right side.

In the reaction of ammonia with water to give ammonium ions and hydroxide ions, ammonia acts as a base by accepting a proton from a water molecule, which in this case means that water is acting as an acid. In the reverse reaction, an ammonium ion acts as an acid by donating a proton to a hydroxide ion, and the hydroxide ion acts as a base. The conjugate acid–base pairs for this reaction are NH_4^+/NH_3 and H_2O/OH^-.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

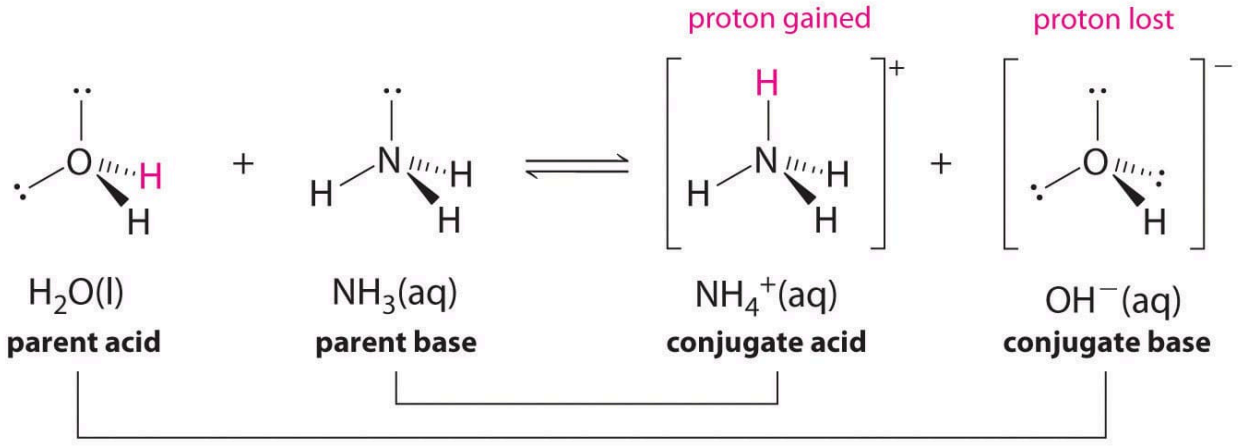


Figure 11.2.1.1. The pairing of parent acids and bases with conjugate acids and bases.

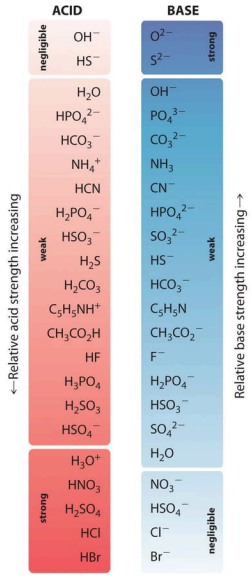


Figure 11.2.1.1: The Relative Strengths of Some Common Conjugate Acid-Base Pairs. The strongest acids are at the bottom left, and the strongest bases are at the top right. The conjugate base of a strong acid is a very weak base, and, conversely, the conjugate acid of a strong base is a very weak acid.

Example 11.2.1.2

Identify the conjugate acid-base pairs in this equilibrium.

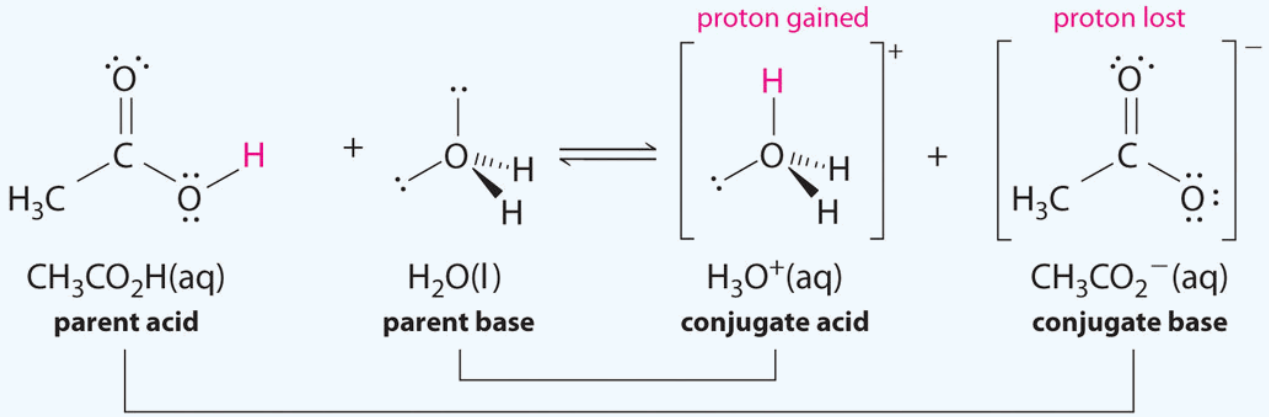
$$\mathrm{CH_3CO_2H + H_2O \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+ + CH_3CO_2^-}$$

Solution

Similarly, in the reaction of acetic acid with water, acetic acid **donates** a proton to water, which acts as the base. In the reverse reaction, H_3O^+ is the acid that donates a proton to the acetate ion, which acts as the base.

Once again, we have two conjugate acid-base pairs:

- the parent acid and its conjugate base ($CH_3CO_2H/CH_3CO_2^-$) and
- the parent base and its conjugate acid (H_3O^+/H_2O).



Example 11.2.1.3

Identify the conjugate acid-base pairs in this equilibrium.

$$(CH_3)_3N + H_2O \rightleftharpoons (CH_3)_3NH^+ + OH^-$$

Solution

One pair is H2O and OH^-, where H2O has one more H^+ and is the conjugate acid, while OH^- has one less H^+ and is the conjugate base.

The other pair consists of (CH3)3N and $(CH_3)_3NH^+$, where $(CH_3)_3NH^+$ is the conjugate acid (it has an additional proton) and (CH3)3N is the conjugate base.

Exercise 11.2.1.3

Identify the conjugate acid-base pairs in this equilibrium.

$$NH_2^- + H_2O \rightleftharpoons NH_3 + OH^-$$

Answer available at the end of this section.

Answers

Exercise 11.2.1.1

Brønsted-Lowry acid: $H_2PO_4^-$; Brønsted-Lowry base: H2O

Exercise 11.2.1.2

A Brønsted-Lowry Base is a proton acceptor, which means it will take in an H^+. This eliminates HCl, H_3PO_4, NH_4^+ and $CH_3NH_3^+$ because they are Bronsted-Lowry acids. They all give away protons. In the case of HPO_4^{2-}, consider the following equation:

$$HPO_4^{2-}(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightarrow PO_4^{3-}(aq) + H_3O^+(aq)$$

Here, it is clear that HPO_4^{2-} is the acid since it donates a proton to water to make H_3O^+ and PO_4^{3-}. Now consider the following equation:

$$HPO_4^{2-}(aq) + H_2O(l) \rightarrow H_2PO_4^- + OH^-(aq)$$

In this case, HPO_4^{2-} is the base since it accepts a proton from water to form $H_2PO_4^-$ and OH^-. Thus, HPO_4^{2-} is an acid and base together, making it amphoteric.

Since HPO_4^{2-} is the only compound from the options that can act as a base, the answer is **(b) HPO_4^{2-}.**

Exercise 11.2.1.3

H2O (acid) and OH^- (base); NH_2^- (base) and NH3 (acid)

This page titled 11.2.1: Molecular Definitions of Acids and Bases is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 14.4: Molecular Definitions of Acids and Bases by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

11.2.2: Reactions of Acids and Bases

Learning Objectives

- Write acid-base neutralization reactions.
- Write reactions of acids with metals.
- Write reactions of bases with metals.

Neutralization Reactions

The reaction that happens when an acid, such as HCl, is mixed with a base, such as NaOH:

$$\mathrm{HCl\,(aq) + NaOH\,(aq) \longrightarrow NaCl\,(aq) + H_2O\,(l)}$$

When an acid and a base are combined, water and a salt are the products. Salts are ionic compounds containing a positive ion other than $\mathrm{H^+}$ and a negative ion other than the hydroxide ion, $\mathrm{OH^-}$. Double displacement reactions of this type are called **neutralization reactions**. We can write an expanded version of this equation, with aqueous substances written in their longer form:

$$\mathrm{H^+\,(aq) + Cl^-\,(aq) + Na^+\,(aq) + OH^-\,(aq) \longrightarrow Na^+\,(aq) + Cl^-\,(aq) + H_2O\,(l)}$$

After removing the spectator ions, we get the net ionic equation:

$$\mathrm{H^+\,(aq) + OH^-\,(aq) \longrightarrow H_2O\,(l)}$$

When a strong acid and a strong base are combined in the proper amounts—when $[\mathrm{H^+}]$ equals $[\mathrm{OH^-}]$\)—a neutral solution results in which pH = 7. The acid and base have neutralized each other, and the acidic and basic properties are no longer present.

Salt solutions do not always have a pH of 7, however. Through a process known as **hydrolysis**, the ions produced when an acid and base combine may react with the water molecules to produce a solution that is slightly acidic or basic. As a general concept, if a strong acid is mixed with a weak base, the resulting solution will be slightly acidic. If a strong base is mixed with a weak acid, the solution will be slightly basic.

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Video: Equimolar (~0.01 M) and equivolume solutions of HCl and NaOH are combined to make salt water. https://youtu.be/TS-I9KrUjB0

Example 11.2.2.1: Propionic Acid + Calcium Hydroxide

Calcium propionate is used to inhibit the growth of molds in foods, tobacco, and some medicines. Write a balanced chemical equation for the reaction of aqueous propionic acid ($CH_3CH_2CO_2H$) with aqueous calcium hydroxide [$Ca(OH)_2$].

Solution

Solutions to Example 14.5.1

Steps	Reaction
Write the unbalanced equation. This is a double displacement reaction, so the cations and anions swap to create the water and the salt.	$CH_3CH_2CO_2H(aq) + Ca(OH)_2(aq) \rightarrow (CH_3CH_2CO_2)_2Ca(aq) + H_2O(l)$
Balance the equation. Because there are two OH^- ions in the formula for $Ca(OH)_2$, we need two moles of propionic acid, $CH_3CH_2CO_2H$, to provide H^+ ions.	$\underline{2}CH_3CH_2CO_2H(aq) + Ca(OH)_2(aq) \rightarrow (CH_3CH_2CO_2)_2Ca(aq) + \underline{2}H_2O(l)$

Exercise 11.2.2.1

Write a balanced chemical equation for the reaction of solid barium hydroxide with dilute acetic acid.

Answer available at the end of this section.

Acids and Bases React with Metals

Acids react with most metals to form a salt and hydrogen gas. As discussed previously, metals that are more active than acids can undergo a **single displacement reaction**. For example, zinc metal reacts with hydrochloric acid, producing zinc chloride and hydrogen gas.

$$\mathrm{Zn\,(s) + 2\,HCl\,(aq) \longrightarrow ZnCl_2\,(aq) + H_2\,(g)}$$

Bases also react with certain metals, like zinc or aluminum, to produce hydrogen gas. For example, sodium hydroxide reacts with zinc and water to form sodium zincate and hydrogen gas.

$$\mathrm{Zn\,(s) + 2\,NaOH\,(aq) + 2\,H_2O\,(l) \longrightarrow Na_2Zn(OH)_4\,(aq) + H_2\,(g).}$$

Answers

Exercise 11.2.2.1

$$\mathrm{Ba(OH)_2\,(s) + 2\,CH_3CO_2H\ (aq) \longrightarrow Ba(CH_3CO_2)_2\,(aq) + 2\,H_2O\,(l)}$$

This page titled 11.2.2: Reactions of Acids and Bases is shared under a Public Domain license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 14.5: Reactions of Acids and Bases by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew, Peggy Lawson is licensed Public Domain. Original source: https://sites.prairiesouth.ca/legacy/chemistry/chem30.

11.2.3: Strong and Weak Acids and Bases

Learning Objectives

- Define a strong and a weak acid and base.
- Recognize an acid or a base as strong or weak.
- Determine if a salt produces an acidic or a basic solution.

Strong and Weak Acids

Except for their names and formulas, so far we have treated all acids as equals, especially in a chemical reaction. However, acids can be very different in a very important way. Consider HCl(aq). When HCl is dissolved in H_2O, it completely dissociates into H^+(aq) and Cl^-(aq) ions; all the HCl molecules become ions:

$$HCl \overset{100\%}{\rightarrow} H^+(aq) + Cl^-(aq)$$

Any acid that dissociates 100% into ions is called a **strong acid**. If it does not dissociate 100%, it is a **weak acid**. $HC_2H_3O_2$ is an example of a weak acid:

$$HC_2H_3O_2 \overset{\sim 5\%}{\longrightarrow} H^+(aq) + C_2H_3O_2^-(aq)$$

Because this reaction does not go 100% to completion, it is more appropriate to write it as **a reversible reaction**:

$$HC_2H_3O_2 \rightleftharpoons H^+(aq) + C_2H_3O_2^-(aq)$$

As it turns out, there are very few strong acids, which are given in Table 11.2.3.1. If an acid is not listed here, it is a weak acid. It may be 1% ionized or 99% ionized, but it is still classified as a weak acid.

> Any acid that dissociates 100% into ions is called a strong acid. If it does not dissociate 100%, it is a weak acid.

Table 11.2.3.1: Strong Acids and Bases

Acids	Bases
HCl	LiOH
HBr	NaOH
HI	KOH
HNO_3	RbOH
H_2SO_4	CsOH
$HClO_3$	$Mg(OH)_2$
$HClO_4$	$Ca(OH)_2$
	$Sr(OH)_2$
	$Ba(OH)_2$

Strong and Weak Bases

The issue is similar with bases: a **strong base** is a base that is 100% ionized in solution. If it is less than 100% ionized in

solution, it is a **weak base**. There are very few strong bases (Table 11.2.3.1); any base not listed is a weak base. All strong bases are OH^- compounds. So a base based on some other mechanism, such as NH_3 (which does not contain OH^- ions as part of its formula), will be a weak base.

Example 11.2.3.1: Identifying Strong and Weak Acids and Bases

Identify each acid or base as strong or weak.

a. HCl
b. $Mg(OH)_2$
c. C_5H_5N

Solution

a. Because HCl is listed in Table 11.2.3.1, it is a strong acid.
b. Because $Mg(OH)_2$ is listed in Table 11.2.3.1, it is a strong base.
c. The nitrogen in C_5H_5N would act as a proton acceptor and therefore can be considered a base, but because it does not contain an OH compound, it cannot be considered a strong base; it is a weak base.

Exercise 11.2.3.1

Identify each acid or base as strong or weak.

a. RbOH
b. $\mathrm{HNO_2}$

Answer a available at the end of this section.

Example 11.2.3.2: Characterizing Base Ionization

Write the balanced chemical equation for the dissociation of $Ca(OH)_2$ and indicate whether it proceeds 100% to products or not.

Solution

This is an ionic compound of Ca^{2+} ions and OH^- ions. When an ionic compound dissolves, it separates into its constituent ions:

$$\mathrm{Ca(OH)_2 \longrightarrow Ca^{2+}(aq) + 2\,OH^-(aq)}$$

Because $Ca(OH)_2$ is listed in Table 11.2.3.1, this reaction proceeds 100% to products.

Exercise 11.2.3.2

Write the balanced chemical equation for the dissociation of hydrazoic acid (HN_3) and indicate whether it proceeds 100% to products or not.

Answer a available at the end of this section.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Key Takeaways

- Strong acids and bases are 100% ionized in aqueous solution.
- Weak acids and bases are less than 100% ionized in aqueous solution.
- Salts of weak acids or bases can affect the acidity or basicity of their aqueous solutions.

Contributions & Attributions

Answers

Exercise 11.2.3.1

strong base

weak acid

Exercise 11.2.3.2

The reaction is as follows:

$$\mathrm{HN_3} \longrightarrow \mathrm{H^+(aq) + N_3^-(aq)}$$

It does not proceed 100% to products because hydrazoic acid is not a strong acid.

This page titled 11.2.3: Strong and Weak Acids and Bases is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 14.7: Strong and Weak Acids and Bases by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

11.3: ACID-BASE EQUILIBRIA

We will not explore the concept of chemical equilibrium in great depth in this textbook, but only as it relates to acid-base chemistry. (If this is of interest to you, other chemistry textbooks do explore acid-base equilibrium in greater detail.) As it turns out, acid-base equilibrium is present in every sample of water that you will ever encounter in your life!

11.3.1: Water - Acid and Base in One

11.3.2: The pH and pOH Scales - Ways to Express Acidity and Basicity

Dynamic Equilibrium

This page titled 11.3: Acid-Base Equilibria is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

11.3.1: Water - Acid and Base in One

Learning Objectives

- Describe the autoionization of water.
- Calculate the concentrations of H_3O^+ and OH^- in aqueous solutions, knowing the other concentration.

We have already seen that H_2O can act as an acid or a base:

$$\underbrace{NH_3}_{\text{base}} + \underbrace{H_2O}_{\text{acid}} \rightleftharpoons NH_4{}^+ + OH^-$$

where H_2O acts as an acid (in red).

$$\underbrace{HCl}_{\text{acid}} + \underbrace{H_2O}_{\text{base}} \longrightarrow H_3O^+ + Cl^-$$

where H_2O acts as an base (in blue).

It may not surprise you to learn, then, that within any given sample of water, some H_2O molecules are acting as acids, and other H_2O molecules are acting as bases. The chemical equation is as follows:

$$\underbrace{H_2O}_{\text{acid}} + \underbrace{H_2O}_{\text{base}} \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+ + OH^- \tag{11.3.1.1}$$

This occurs only to a very small degree: only about 6 in 10^8 H_2O molecules are participating in this process, which is called the **autoionization of water**.

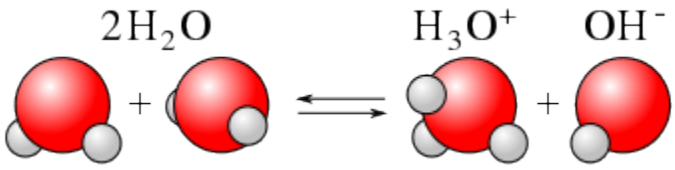


Figure 11.3.1.1: Autoionization of water, resulting in hydroxide and hydronium ions.

At this level, the concentration of both $H_3O^+(aq)$ and $OH^-(aq)$ in a sample of pure H_2O is about $1.0 \times 10^{-7}\ M$ (at room temperature). If we use square brackets—[ ]—around a dissolved species to imply the molar concentration of that species, we have

$$[H_3O^+]=[OH^-] = 1.0 \times 10^{-7} \tag{11.3.1.2}$$

for *any* sample of pure water because H2O can act as both an acid and a base. The product of these two concentrations is 1.0×10^{-14}:

$$[H_3O^+]\times[OH^-] = (1.0 \times 10^{-7})(1.0 \times 10^{-7}) = 1.0 \times 10^{-14}$$

- For acids, the concentration of $H_3O^+(aq)$ (i.e., $[H_3O^+]$) is greater than $1.0 \times 10^{-7}\ M$.
- For bases the concentration of $OH^-(aq)$ (i.e., $[OH^-]$) is greater than $1.0 \times 10^{-7}\ M$.

However, the *product* of the two concentrations—$[H_3O^+][OH^-]$—is *always* equal to 1.0×10^{-14}, no matter whether the aqueous solution is an acid, a base, or neutral:

$$[H_3O^+][OH^-] = 1.0 \times 10^{-14}$$

This value of the product of concentrations is so important for aqueous solutions that it is called the **autoionization constant of water** and is denoted K_w:

cK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 license
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

$$K_w = [H_3O^+][OH^-] = 1.0 \times 10^{-14} \tag{11.3.1.3}$$

This means that if you know $[H_3O^+]$ for a solution, you can calculate what $[OH^-]$) has to be for the product to equal 1.0×10^{-14}; or if you know $[OH^-]$), you can calculate $[H_3O^+]$. This also implies that as one concentration goes up, the other must go down to compensate so that their product always equals the value of K_w.

Warning: Temperature Matters

The degree of autoionization of water (Equation 11.3.1.1)—and hence the value of K_w—changes with temperature, so Equations 11.3.1.2 - 11.3.1.3 are accurate only at room temperature.

Example 11.3.1.1: Hydroxide Concentration

What is $[OH^-]$) of an aqueous solution if $[H_3O^+]$ is $1.0 \times 10^{-4} M$?

Solution

Solutions to Example 14.7.1

Steps for Problem Solving	
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: $[H_3O^+] = 1.0 \times 10^{-4}\ M$ Find: [OH¯] = ? M
List other known quantities.	none
Plan the problem.	Using the expression for K_w, (Equation 11.3.1.3), rearrange the equation algebraically to solve for [OH¯]. $$[OH^-] = \frac{1.0 \times 10^{-14}}{[H_3O^+]}$$
Calculate.	Now substitute the known quantities into the equation and solve. $$[OH^-] = \frac{1.0 \times 10^{-14}}{1.0 \times 10^{-4}} = 1.0 \times 10^{-10} M$$ It is assumed that the concentration unit is molarity, so $[OH^-]$ is 1.0 × 10^{-10} M.
Think about your result.	The concentration of the acid is high (> 1 x 10^{-7} M), so $[OH^-]$ should be low.

Exercise 11.3.1.1

What is $[OH^-]$ in a 0.00032 M solution of H_2SO_4?

Hint available at the end of this section.

Answer available at the end of this section.

When you have a solution of a particular acid or base, you need to look at the formula of the acid or base to determine the number of H_3O^+ or OH^- ions in the formula unit because $[H_3O^+]$ or $[OH^-]$) may not be the same as the concentration of the acid or base itself.

Example 11.3.1.2: Hydronium Concentration

What is $[H_3O^+]$ in a 0.0044 M solution of $Ca(OH)_2$?

Solution

Solutions to Example 14.7.2

Steps for Problem Solving	
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: $[Ca(OH)_2] = 0.0044\ M$ Find: $[H_3O^+]$ = ? M
List other known quantities.	We begin by determining $[OH^-]$. The concentration of the solute is 0.0044 M, but because $Ca(OH)_2$ is a strong there are two OH^- ions in solution for every formula unit dissolved, so the actual $[OH^-]$ is two times this: $$[OH^-] = 2\ \times 0.0044\ \text{M} = 0.0088\,\text{M}\cdot$$
Plan the problem.	Use the expression for K_w (Equation 11.3.1.3) and rearrange the equation algebraically to solve for $[H_3O^+]$. $$[H_3O^+] = \frac{1.0 \times 10^{-14}}{[OH^-]}$$
Calculate.	Now substitute the known quantities into the equation and solve. $$[H_3O^+] = \frac{1.0 \times 10^{-14}}{(0.0088)} = 1.1 \times 10^{-12} M$$ $[H_3O^+]$ has decreased significantly in this basic solution.
Think about your result.	The concentration of the base is high (> 1 x 10^{-7} M) so Extra close brace or missing open brace should b

Exercise 11.3.1.2

What is $[H_3O^+]$ of an aqueous solution if $[OH^-]$ is $1.0 \times 10^{-9}\ M$?

Answer available at the end of this section.

In any aqueous solution, the product of $[H_3O^+]$ and $[OH^-]$ equals 1.0×10^{-14} (at room temperature).

Contributions & Attributions

Answers

Exercise 11.3.1.1

Assume **both** protons ionize from the molecule...although this is not the case.

Exercise 11.3.1.1

$3.1 \times 10^{-11}\ M$

Exercise 11.3.1.2

1.0×10^{-5} M

This page titled 11.3.1: Water - Acid and Base in One is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 14.8: Water - Acid and Base in One by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

11.3.2: The pH and pOH Scales - Ways to Express Acidity and Basicity

Learning Objectives

- Define pH and pOH.
- Determine the pH of acidic and basic solutions.
- Determine the hydronium ion concentration and pOH from pH.

As we have seen, $[H_3O^+]$ and $[OH^-]$ values can be markedly different from one aqueous solution to another. So chemists defined a new scale that succinctly indicates the concentrations of either of these two ions.

pH is a logarithmic function of $[H_3O^+]$:

$$pH = -\log[H_3O^+] \tag{11.3.2.1}$$

pH is usually (but not always) between 0 and 14. Knowing the dependence of pH on $[H_3O^+]$, we can summarize as follows:

- If pH < 7, then the solution is acidic.
- If pH = 7, then the solution is neutral.
- If pH > 7, then the solution is basic.

This is known as the pH scale. The pH scale is the range of values from 0 to 14 that describes the acidity or basicity of a solution. You can use pH to make a quick determination whether a given aqueous solution is acidic, basic, or neutral. Figure 11.3.2.1 illustrates this relationship, along with some examples of various solutions. Because hydrogen ion concentrations are generally less than one (for example $1.3 \times 10^{-3}\ M$), the log of the number will be a negative number. To make pH even easier to work with, pH is defined as the ***negative*** **log of** $[H_3O^+]$, which will give a positive value for pH.

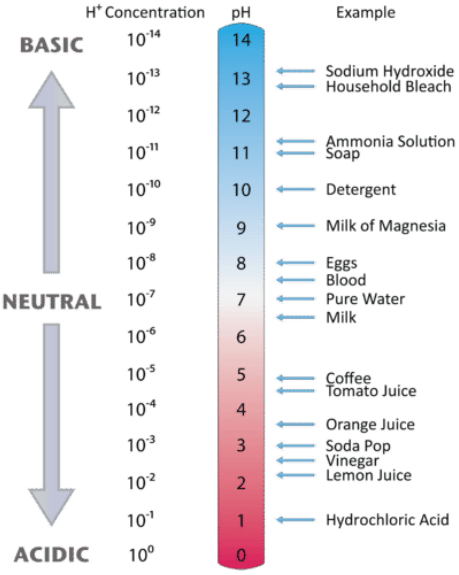


Figure 11.3.2.1: The pH values for several common materials.

Example 11.3.2.1

Label each solution as acidic, basic, or neutral based only on the stated pH.

a. milk of magnesia, pH = 10.5
b. pure water, pH = 7
c. wine, pH = 3.0

Answer

a. With a pH greater than 7, milk of magnesia is basic. (Milk of magnesia is largely $Mg(OH)_2$.)
b. Pure water, with a pH of 7, is neutral.
c. With a pH of less than 7, wine is acidic.

Exercise 11.3.2.1

Identify each substance as acidic, basic, or neutral based only on the stated pH.

a. human blood with pH = 7.4
b. household ammonia with pH = 11.0
c. cherries with pH = 3.6

Answer a available at the end of this section.

Answer b available at the end of this section.

Answer c available at the end of this section.

Calculating pH from Hydronium Concentration

The pH of solutions can be determined by using logarithms as illustrated in the next example for stomach acid. Stomach acid is a solution of HCl with a hydronium ion concentration of $1.2 \times 10^{-3}\ M$, what is the pH of the solution?

$$\begin{aligned} \text{pH} &= -\log[\text{H}_3\text{O}^+] \\ &= -\log(1.2 \times 10^{-3}) \\ &= -(-2.92) = 2.92 \end{aligned}$$

Logarithms

To get the **log value** on your calculator, enter the number (in this case, the hydronium ion concentration) first, then press the LOG key.

If the number is 1.0 x 10^{-5} (for $[H_3O^+]$ = 1.0 x 10^{-5} M) you should get an answer of "-5".

If you get a different answer, or an error, try pressing the LOG key before you enter the number.

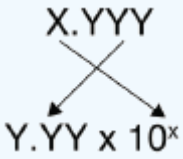
Example 11.3.2.2: Converting Ph to Hydronium Concentration

Find the pH, given the $[H_3O^+]$ of the following:

a. 1 ×10^{-3} M
b. 2.5 ×10^{-11} M
c. 4.7 ×10^{-9} M

Solution

Solutions to Example 11.3.2.2

Steps for Problem Solving	
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: a. $[H_3O^+]$ =1 × 10^{-3} M b. $[H_3O^+]$ =2.5 ×10^{-11} M c. $[H_3O^+]$ = 4.7 ×10^{-9} M Find: ? pH
Plan the problem.	Need to use the expression for pH (Equation 11.3.2.1). $pH = - \log [H_3O^+]$
Calculate.	Now substitute the known quantity into the equation and solve. a. pH = - log [1 × 10^{-3}] = 3.0 (1 decimal places since 1 has 1 significant figure) b. pH = - log [2.5 ×10^{-11}] = 10.60 (2 decimal places since 2.5 has 2 significant figures) c. pH = - log [4.7 ×10^{-9}] = 8.30 (2 decimal places since 4.7 has 2 significant figures) The other issue that concerns us here is significant figures. Because the number(s) before the decimal point in a logarithm relate to the power on 10, the number of digits *after* the decimal point is what determines the number of significant figures in the final answer: 

Exercise 11.3.2.2

Find the pH, given $[H_3O^+]$ of the following:

a. 5.8 ×10^{-4} M
b. 1.0×10^{-7}

Answer a available at the end of this section.

Answer b available at the end of this section.

Calculating Hydronium Concentration from pH

Sometimes you need to work "backwards"—you know the pH of a solution and need to find $[H_3O^+]$, or even the concentration of the acid solution. How do you do that? To convert pH into $[H_3O^+]$ we solve Equation 11.3.2.1 for $[H_3O^+]$. This involves taking the antilog (or inverse log) of the negative value of pH .

$$[H_3O^+] = \text{antilog}(-pH)$$

or

$$[H_3O^+] = 10^{-pH} \tag{11.3.2.2}$$

As mentioned above, different calculators work slightly differently—make sure you can do the following calculations using ***your*** calculator.

Calculator Skills

We have a solution with a pH = 8.3. What is $[H_3O^+]$?

With some calculators you will do things in the following order:

1. Enter 8.3 as a negative number (use the key with both the +/- signs, not the subtraction key).
2. Use your calculator's 2nd or Shift or INV (inverse) key to type in the symbol found above the LOG key. The shifted function should be 10^x.
3. You should get the answer **5.0×10^{-9}**.

Other calculators require you to enter keys in the order they appear in the equation.

1. Use the Shift or second function to key in the 10^x function.
2. Use the +/- key to type in a negative number, then type in 8.3.
3. You should get the answer **5.0×10^{-9}**.

If neither of these methods work, try rearranging the order in which you type in the keys. Don't give up—you must master your calculator!

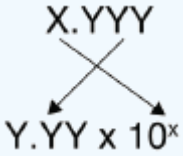
Example 11.3.2.3: Calculating Hydronium Concentration from pH

Find the hydronium ion concentration in a solution with a pH of 12.6. Is this solution an acid or a base? How do you know?

Solution

Solutions to Example 11.3.2.3

Steps for Problem Solving	
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: pH = 12.6 Find: $[H_3O^+]$ = ? M
Plan the problem.	Need to use the expression for $[H_3O^+]$ (Equation 11.3.2.2). $[H_3O^+]$ = antilog (-pH) or $[H_3O^+] = 10^{-pH}$

Steps for Problem Solving	
Calculate.	Now substitute the known quantity into the equation and solve. $[H_3O^+]$ = antilog (12.60) = 2.5 x 10^{-13} M (2 significant figures since 4.7 has 12.60 2 decimal places) or $[H_3O^+] = 10^{-12.60} = 2.5 \times 10^{-13}$ M (2 significant figures since 4.7 has 12.60 2 decimal places) The other issue that concerns us here is significant figures. Because the number(s) before the decimal point in a logarithm relate to the power on 10, the number of digits *after* the decimal point is what determines the number of significant figures in the final answer: 

Exercise 11.3.2.3

If moist soil has a pH of 7.84, what is $[H_3O^+]$ of the soil solution?

Answer available at the end of this section.

The pOH scale

As with the hydrogen-ion concentration, the concentration of the hydroxide ion can be expressed logarithmically by the pOH. The **pOH** of a solution is the negative logarithm of the hydroxide-ion concentration.

$$\mathrm{pOH} = -\log\left[\mathrm{OH}^-\right]$$

The relation between the hydronium and hydroxide ion concentrations expressed as p-functions is easily derived from the K_w expression:

$$K_\mathrm{w} = [\mathrm{H_3O^+}][\mathrm{OH}^-] \tag{11.3.2.3}$$

$$-\log K_\mathrm{w} = -\log([\mathrm{H_3O^+}][\mathrm{OH}^-]) = -\log[\mathrm{H_3O^+}] + -\log[\mathrm{OH}^-] \tag{11.3.2.4}$$

$$\mathrm{p}K_\mathrm{w} = \mathrm{pH} + \mathrm{pOH} \tag{11.3.2.5}$$

At 25 °C, the value of K_w is 1.0×10^{-14}, and so:

$$14.00 = \mathrm{pH} + \mathrm{pOH} \tag{11.3.2.6}$$

The hydronium ion molarity in pure water (or any neutral solution) is $1.0 \times 10^{-7}\ M$ at 25 °C. The pH and pOH of a neutral solution at this temperature are therefore:

$$\mathrm{pH} = -\log[\mathrm{H_3O^+}] = -\log(1.0 \times 10^{-7}) = 7.00 \tag{11.3.2.7}$$

$$\mathrm{pOH} = -\log[\mathrm{OH}^-] = -\log(1.0 \times 10^{-7}) = 7.00 \tag{11.3.2.8}$$

And so, at this temperature, acidic solutions are those with hydronium ion molarities greater than $1.0 \times 10^{-7}\ M$ and hydroxide ion molarities less than $1.0 \times 10^{-7}\ M$ (corresponding to pH values less than 7.00 and pOH values greater than 7.00). Basic solutions are those with hydronium ion molarities less than $1.0 \times 10^{-7}\ M$ and hydroxide ion molarities greater than $1.0 \times 10^{-7}\ M$ (corresponding to pH values greater than 7.00 and pOH values less than 7.00).

Example 11.3.2.4:

Find the pOH of a solution with a pH of 4.42.

Solution

Solutions to Example 11.3.2.4

Steps for Problem Solving	
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: pH =4.42 Find: ? pOH
Plan the problem.	Need to use the expression pOH = 14 - pH
Calculate.	Now substitute the known quantity into the equation and solve. pOH=14−4.42=9.58
Think about your result.	The pH is that of an acidic solution, and the resulting pOH is the difference after subtracting from 14. The answer has two significant figures because the given pH has two decimal places.

Exercise 11.3.2.4

The pH of a solution is 8.22. What is the pOH?

Answer available at the end of this section.

The diagram below shows all of the interrelationships between [H3O+][H3O+], [OH−][OH−], pH, and pOH.

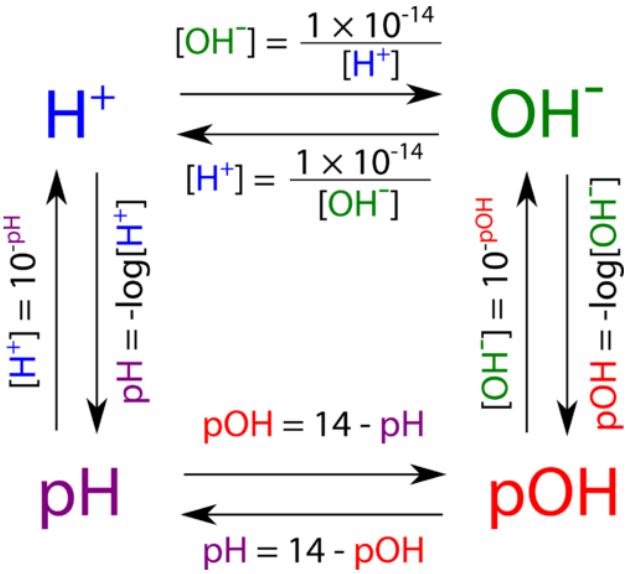


Figure 11.3.2.1: Relationships between hydrogen ion concentration, hydroxide ion concentration, pH and pOH.

Contributions & Attributions

- Peggy Lawson (Oxbow Prairie Heights School). Funded by Saskatchewan Educational Technology Consortium.
-
- Template:OpenStax

Answers

Exercise 11.3.2.1
basic

Exercise 11.3.2.1
basic

Exercise 11.3.2.1
acidic

Exercise 11.3.2.2
3.22

Exercise 11.3.2.2
7.00

Exercise 11.3.2.3
1.5 x 10^{-8} M

Exercise 11.3.2.4
5.78

This page titled 11.3.2: The pH and pOH Scales - Ways to Express Acidity and Basicity is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 14.9: The pH and pOH Scales - Ways to Express Acidity and Basicity by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

Dynamic Equilibrium

Interactive Content

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this Interactive Content online

This page titled Dynamic Equilibrium is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

11.4: Buffers are Solutions that Resist pH Change

Learning Objective

- Define *buffer* and describe how it reacts with an acid or a base.

Weak acids are relatively common, even in the foods we eat. But we occasionally come across a strong acid or base, such as stomach acid, that has a strongly acidic pH of 1–2. By definition, strong acids and bases can produce a relatively large amount of hydrogen or hydroxide ions and, as a consequence, have marked chemical activity. In addition, very small amounts of strong acids and bases can change the pH of a solution very quickly. If 1 mL of stomach acid [which we will approximate as 0.05 M HCl(aq)] is added to the bloodstream, and if no correcting mechanism is present, the pH of the blood would go from about 7.4 to about 4.9—a pH that is not conducive to life. Fortunately, the body has a mechanism for minimizing such dramatic pH changes.

This mechanism involves a buffer, a solution that resists dramatic changes in pH. Buffers do so by being composed of certain pairs of solutes: either a weak acid plus a salt derived from that weak acid, or a weak base plus a salt of that weak base. For example, a buffer can be composed of dissolved acetic acid ($HC_2H_3O_2$, a weak acid) and sodium acetate ($NaC_2H_3O_2$, a salt derived from that acid). Another example of a buffer is a solution containing ammonia (NH_3, a weak base) and ammonium chloride (NH_4Cl, a salt derived from that base).

Let us use an acetic acid–sodium acetate buffer to demonstrate how buffers work. If a strong base—a source of $\mathrm{OH^-\,(aq)}$ ions—is added to the buffer solution, those hydroxide ions will react with the acetic acid in an acid-base reaction:

$$\mathrm{HC_2H_3O_2\,(aq) + OH^-\,(aq) \rightarrow H_2O(\ell) + C_2H_3O_2^-\,(aq)} \tag{11.4.1}$$

Rather than changing the pH dramatically by making the solution basic, the added hydroxide ions react to make water, and the pH does not change much.

> Many people are aware of the concept of buffers from *buffered aspirin*, which is aspirin that also has magnesium carbonate, calcium carbonate, magnesium oxide, or some other salt. The salt acts like a base, while aspirin is itself a weak acid.

If a strong acid—a source of H^+ ions—is added to the buffer solution, the H^+ ions will react with the anion from the salt. Because $HC_2H_3O_2$ is a weak acid, it is not ionized much. This means that if lots of hydrogen ions and acetate ions (from sodium acetate) are present in the same solution, they will come together to make acetic acid:

$$\mathrm{H^+\,(aq) + C_2H_3O_2^-\,(aq) \rightarrow HC_2H_3O_2\,(aq)} \tag{11.4.2}$$

Rather than changing the pH dramatically and making the solution acidic, the added hydrogen ions react to make molecules of a weak acid. Figure 11.4.1 illustrates both actions of a buffer.

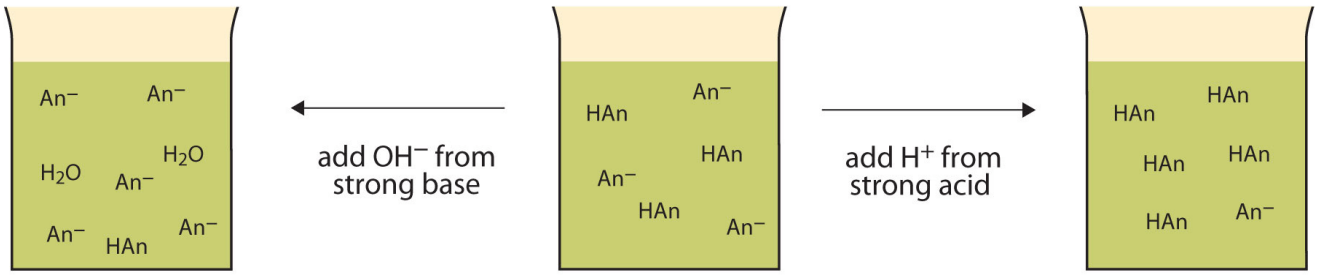


Figure 11.4.1: The Action of Buffers. Buffers can react with both strong acids (top) and strong bases (bottom) to minimize large changes in pH.

Buffers made from weak bases and salts of weak bases act similarly. For example, in a buffer containing NH_3 and NH_4Cl, ammonia molecules can react with any excess hydrogen ions introduced by strong acids:

$$\mathrm{NH_3\,(aq) + H^+\,(aq) \;\rightarrow NH_4^+\,(aq)} \tag{11.4.3}$$

while the **ammonium ion** ($\mathrm{NH_4{}^+\,(aq)}$) can react with any hydroxide ions introduced by strong bases:

$$\mathrm{NH_4^+\,(aq) + OH^-\,(aq) \;\rightarrow NH_3\,(aq) + H_2O(\ell)} \tag{11.4.4}$$

Example 11.4.1: Making Buffer Solutions

Which solute combinations can make a buffer solution? Assume that all are aqueous solutions.

a. $HCHO_2$ and $NaCHO_2$
b. HCl and NaCl
c. CH_3NH_2 and CH_3NH_3Cl
d. NH_3 and NaOH

Solution

a. Formic acid ($HCHO_2$) is a weak acid, while $NaCHO_2$ is the salt made from the anion of the weak acid—the formate ion (CHO_2^-). The combination of these two solutes would make a buffer solution.
b. Hydrochloric acid (HCl) is a strong acid, not a weak acid, so the combination of these two solutes would not make a buffer solution.
c. Methylamine (CH_3NH_2) is like ammonia with one of its hydrogen atoms substituted with a CH_3 (methyl) group. Because it is not on our list of strong bases, we can assume that it is a weak base. The compound CH_3NH_3Cl is a salt made from that weak base, so the combination of these two solutes would make a buffer solution.
d. Ammonia (NH_3) is a weak base, but NaOH is a strong base. The combination of these two solutes would not make a buffer solution.

Exercise 11.4.1

Which solute combinations can make a buffer solution? Assume that all are aqueous solutions.

a. $NaHCO_3$ and NaCl
b. H_3PO_4 and NaH_2PO_4
c. NH_3 and $(NH_4)_3PO_4$
d. NaOH and NaCl

Answer a available at the end of this section.

Answer b available at the end of this section.

Answer c available at the end of this section.

Answer d available at the end of this section.

Buffers work well only for limited amounts of added strong acid or base. Once either solute is all reacted, the solution is no longer a buffer, and rapid changes in pH may occur. We say that a buffer has a certain **capacity**. Buffers that have more solute dissolved in them to start with have larger capacities, as might be expected.

Human blood has a buffering system to minimize extreme changes in pH. One buffer in blood is based on the presence of HCO_3^- and H_2CO_3 [H_2CO_3 is another way to write CO_2(aq)]. With this buffer present, even if some stomach acid were to find its way directly into the bloodstream, the change in the pH of blood would be minimal. Inside many of the body's cells, there is a buffering

system based on phosphate ions.

Career Focus: Blood Bank Technology Specialist

At this point in this text, you should have the idea that the chemistry of blood is fairly complex. Because of this, people who work with blood must be specially trained to work with it properly.

A blood bank technology specialist is trained to perform routine and special tests on blood samples from blood banks or transfusion centers. This specialist measures the pH of blood, types it (according to the blood's ABO+/– type, Rh factors, and other typing schemes), tests it for the presence or absence of various diseases, and uses the blood to determine if a patient has any of several medical problems, such as anemia. A blood bank technology specialist may also interview and prepare donors to give blood and may actually collect the blood donation.

Blood bank technology specialists are well trained. Typically, they require a college degree with at least a year of special training in blood biology and chemistry. In the United States, training must conform to standards established by the American Association of Blood Banks.

Key Takeaway

- A buffer is a solution that resists sudden changes in pH.

Contributions & Attributions

Answers

Exercise 11.4.1

Yes.

Exercise 11.4.1

No. Need a weak acid or base and a salt of its conjugate base or acid.

Exercise 11.4.1

Yes.

Exercise 11.4.1

No. Need a weak base or acid.

This page titled 11.4: Buffers are Solutions that Resist pH Change is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 14.10: Buffers- Solutions that Resist pH Change by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

11.E: Acids and Bases

The following questions are related to the material covered in this chapter. For additional discussion on each topic, also check the links included in each heading.

12.1: Introduction

12.2: Arrhenius Acids and Bases

1. Define *Arrhenius acid*.
2. Define *Arrhenius base*.
3. What are some general properties of Arrhenius acids?
4. What are some general properties of Arrhenius bases?
5. Identify each substance as an Arrhenius acid, an Arrhenius base, or neither.
   a. NaOH
   b. C_2H_5OH
   c. H_3PO_4
6. Identify each substance as an Arrhenius acid, an Arrhenius base, or neither.
   a. $C_6H_{12}O_6$
   b. HNO_2
   c. $Ba(OH)_2$
7. Write the balanced chemical equation for the neutralization reaction between KOH and $H_2C_2O_4$. What is the salt?
8. Write the balanced chemical equation for the neutralization reaction between $Sr(OH)_2$ and H_3PO_4. What is the salt?
9. Write the balanced chemical equation for the neutralization reaction between HCl and $Fe(OH)_3$. What is the salt?
10. Write the balanced chemical equation for the neutralization reaction between H_2SO_4 and $Cr(OH)_3$. What is the salt?
11. $CaCl_2$ would be the product of the reaction of what acid and what base?
12. $Zn(NO_3)_2$ would be product of the reaction of what acid and what base?
13. $BaSO_4$ would be product of the reaction of what acid and what base?
14. Na_3PO_4 would be product of the reaction of what acid and what base?

Answers

1. a compound that increases the H^+ concentration in water
2.
3. sour taste, react with metals, and turn litmus red
4.
5. a. Arrhenius base
   b. neither
   c. Arrhenius acid
6.
7. $2KOH + H_2C_2O_4 \rightarrow 2H_2O + K_2C_2O_4$; $K_2C_2O_4$
8.
9. $3HCl + Fe(OH)_3 \rightarrow 3H_2O + FeCl_3$; $FeCl_3$
10.
11. HCl and $Ca(OH)_2$
12.

13. H_2SO_4 and $Ba(OH)_2$

12.3: Brønsted-Lowry Acids and Bases

Exercise 11.E.1

1. Define *Brønsted-Lowry acid*. How does it differ from an Arrhenius acid?
2. Define *Brønsted-Lowry base*. How does it differ from an Arrhenius base?
3. Write the dissociation of hydrogen bromide in water as a Brønsted-Lowry acid-base reaction and identify the proton donor and proton acceptor.
4. Write the dissociation of nitric acid in water as a Brønsted-Lowry acid-base reaction and identify the proton donor and proton acceptor.
5. Pyridine (C_5H_5N) acts as a Brønsted-Lowry base in water. Write the hydrolysis reaction for pyridine and identify the Brønsted-Lowry acid and Brønsted-Lowry base.
6. The methoxide ion (CH_3O^-) acts as a Brønsted-Lowry base in water. Write the hydrolysis reaction for the methoxide ion and identify the Brønsted-Lowry acid and Brønsted-Lowry base.
7. Identify the Brønsted-Lowry acid and Brønsted-Lowry base in this chemical equation.

   $$H_3PO_4 + OH^- \rightarrow H_2PO_4^- + H_2O$$

8. Identify the Brønsted-Lowry acid and Brønsted-Lowry base in this chemical equation.

   $$H_2C_2O_4 + 2F^- \rightarrow 2HF + C_2O_4^{2-}$$

9. Predict the products of this reaction, assuming it undergoes a Brønsted-Lowry acid-base reaction.

   $$HC_2H_3O_2 + C_5H_5N \rightarrow ?$$

10. Predict the products of this reaction, assuming it undergoes a Brønsted-Lowry acid-base reaction.

    $$(C_2H_5)_3N + H_2O \rightarrow ?$$

11. What is the conjugate acid of H_2O? of NH_3?
12. What is the conjugate acid of $H_2PO_4^-$? of NO_3^-?
13. What is the conjugate base of HSO_4^-? of H_2O?
14. What is the conjugate base of H_3O^+? of H_2SO_4?
15. Identify the conjugate acid-base pairs in this reaction.

    $$HSO_4^- + PO_4^{3-} \rightarrow SO_4^{2-} + HPO_4^{2-}$$

16. Identify the conjugate acid-base pairs in this reaction.

    $$HClO_3 + (C_2H_5)_3N \rightarrow ClO_3^- + (C_2H_5)_3NH^+$$

17. Identify the conjugate acid-base pairs in this reaction.

    $$NH_3 + C_6H_5O^- \rightarrow C_6H_5OH + NH_2^-$$

18. Identify the conjugate acid-base pairs in this reaction.

    $$C_5H_5NH^+ + C_2O_4^{2-} \rightarrow C_5H_5N + HC_2O_4^-$$

nswers

1. A Brønsted-Lowry acid is a proton donor. It does not necessarily increase the H^+ concentration in water.
2.
3. $HBr + H_2O \rightarrow H_3O^+ + Br^-$; PD: HBr; PA: H_2O
4.
5. $C_5H_5N + H_2O \rightarrow C_5H_5NH^+ + OH^-$; PD: H_2O; PA: C_5H_5N
6.
7. BL acid: H_3PO_4; BL base: OH^-
8.
9. $C_2H_3O_2^-$ and $C_5H_5NH^+$
10.
11. H_3O^+; NH_4^+
12.
13. SO_4^{2-}; OH^-
14.
15. HSO_4^- and SO_4^{2-}; PO_4^{3-} and HPO_4^{2-}
16.
17. NH_3 and NH_2^-; $C_6H_5O^-$ and C_6H_5OH

12.4: Acid-Base Titrations

Exercise 11.E.1

1. Define *titration*.
2. What is the difference between the titrant and the analyte?
3. True or false: An acid is always the titrant. Explain your answer.
4. True or false: An analyte is always dissolved before reaction. Explain your answer.
5. If 55.60 mL of 0.2221 M HCl was needed to titrate a sample of NaOH to its equivalence point, what mass of NaOH was present?
6. If 16.33 mL of 0.6664 M KOH was needed to titrate a sample of $HC_2H_3O_2$ to its equivalence point, what mass of $HC_2H_3O_2$ was present?
7. It takes 45.66 mL of 0.1126 M HBr to titrate 25.00 mL of $Ca(OH)_2$ to its equivalence point. What is the original concentration of the $Ca(OH)_2$ solution?
8. It takes 9.77 mL of 0.883 M H_2SO_4 to titrate 15.00 mL of KOH to its equivalence point. What is the original concentration of the KOH solution?

Answers

1. a chemical reaction performed in a quantitative fashion
2.
3. False; a base can be a titrant, or the reaction being performed may not even be an acid-base reaction.
4.

5. 0.494 g
6.
7. 0.1028 M

12.5: Strong and Weak Acids and Bases and their Salts

Exercise 11.E.1

1. Differentiate between a strong acid and a weak acid.
2. Differentiate between a strong base and a weak base.
3. Identify each as a strong acid or a weak acid. Assume aqueous solutions.
   a. HF
   b. HCl
   c. HC_2O_4
4. Identify each as a strong base or a weak base. Assume aqueous solutions.
   a. NaOH
   b. $Al(OH)_3$
   c. $C_4H_9NH_2$
5. Write a chemical equation for the ionization of each acid and indicate whether it proceeds 100% to products or not.
   a. HNO_3
   b. HNO_2
   c. HI_3
6. Write a chemical equation for the ionization of each base and indicate whether it proceeds 100% to products or not.
   a. NH_3
   b. $(CH_3)_3N$
   c. $Mg(OH)_2$
7. Write the balanced chemical equation for the reaction of each acid and base pair.
   a. HCl + C_5H_5N
   b. $H_2C_2O_4$ + NH_3
   c. HNO_2 + C_7H_9N
8. Write the balanced chemical equation for the reaction of each acid and base pair.
   a. $H_3C_5H_5O_7$ + $Mg(OH)_2$
   b. $HC_3H_3O_3$ + $(CH_3)_3N$
   c. HBr + $Fe(OH)_3$
9. Write the hydrolysis reaction that occurs, if any, when each salt dissolves in water.
   a. K_2SO_3
   b. KI
   c. NH_4ClO_3
10. Write the hydrolysis reaction that occurs, if any, when each salt dissolves in water.
    a. $NaNO_3$
    b. CaC_2O_4
    c. C_5H_5NHCl
11. When NH_4NO_2 dissolves in H_2O, both ions hydrolyze. Write chemical equations for both reactions. Can you tell if the solution will be acidic or basic overall?
12. When pyridinium acetate ($C_5H_5NHC_2H_3O_2$) dissolves in H_2O, both ions hydrolyze. Write chemical equations for both reactions. Can you tell if the solution will be acidic or basic overall?
13. A lab technician mixes a solution of 0.015 M $Mg(OH)_2$. Is the resulting OH^- concentration greater than, equal to, or less than 0.015 M? Explain your answer.
14. A lab technician mixes a solution of 0.55 M HNO_3. Is the resulting H^+ concentration greater than, equal to, or less than 0.55 M? Explain your answer.

Answers

1. A strong acid is 100% ionized in aqueous solution, whereas a weak acid is not 100% ionized.
2.
3. a. weak acid
   b. strong acid
   c. weak acid
4.
5. a. $HNO_3(aq) \rightarrow H^+(aq) + NO_3^-(aq)$; proceeds 100%
   b. $HNO_2(aq) \rightarrow H^+(aq) + NO_2^-(aq)$; does not proceed 100%
   c. $HI_3(aq) \rightarrow H^+(aq) + I_3^-(aq)$; does not proceed 100%
6.
7. a. $HCl + C_5H_5N \rightarrow Cl^- + C_5H_5NH^+$
   b. $H_2C_2O_4 + 2NH_3 \rightarrow C_2O_4^{2-} + 2NH_4^+$
   c. $HNO_2 + C_7H_9N \rightarrow NO_2^- + C_7H_9NH^+$
8.
9. a. $SO_3^{2-} + H_2O \rightarrow HSO_3^- + OH^-$
   b. no reaction
   c. $NH_4^+ + H_2O \rightarrow NH_3 + H_3O^+$
10.
11. $NH_4^+ + H_2O \rightarrow NH_3 + H_3O^+$; $NO_2^- + H_2O \rightarrow HNO_2 + OH^-$; it is not possible to determine whether the solution will be acidic or basic.
12.
13. greater than 0.015 M because there are two OH^- ions per formula unit of $Mg(OH)_2$

12.6: Autoionization of Water

Exercise 11.E.4

1. Does $[H^+]$ remain constant in all aqueous solutions? Why or why not?
2. Does $[OH^-]$ remain constant in all aqueous solutions? Why or why not?
3. What is the relationship between $[H^+]$ and K_W? Write a mathematical expression that relates them.
4. What is the relationship between $[OH^-]$ and K_W? Write a mathematical expression that relates them.
5. Write the chemical equation for the autoionization of water and label the conjugate acid-base pairs.
6. Write the reverse of the reaction for the autoionization of water. It is still an acid-base reaction? If so, label the acid and base.
7. For a given aqueous solution, if $[H^+] = 1.0 \times 10^{-3}$ M, what is $[OH^-]$?
8. For a given aqueous solution, if $[H^+] = 1.0 \times 10^{-9}$ M, what is $[OH^-]$?
9. For a given aqueous solution, if $[H^+] = 7.92 \times 10^{-5}$ M, what is $[OH^-]$?
10. For a given aqueous solution, if $[H^+] = 2.07 \times 10^{-11}$ M, what is $[H^+]$?
11. For a given aqueous solution, if $[OH^-] = 1.0 \times 10^{-5}$ M, what is $[H^+]$?
12. For a given aqueous solution, if $[OH^-] = 1.0 \times 10^{-12}$ M, what is $[H^+]$?
13. For a given aqueous solution, if $[OH^-] = 3.77 \times 10^{-4}$ M, what is $[H^+]$?
14. For a given aqueous solution, if $[OH^-] = 7.11 \times 10^{-10}$ M, what is $[H^+]$?

15. What are $[H^+]$ and $[OH^-]$ in a 0.344 M solution of HNO_3?
16. What are $[H^+]$ and $[OH^-]$ in a 2.86 M solution of HBr?
17. What are $[H^+]$ and $[OH^-]$ in a 0.00338 M solution of KOH?
18. What are $[H^+]$ and $[OH^-]$ in a 6.02×10^{-4} M solution of $Ca(OH)_2$?
19. If HNO_2 is dissociated only to an extent of 0.445%, what are $[H^+]$ and $[OH^-]$ in a 0.307 M solution of HNO_2?
20. If $(C_2H_5)_2NH$ is dissociated only to an extent of 0.077%, what are $[H^+]$ and $[OH^-]$ in a 0.0955 M solution of $(C_2H_5)_2NH$?

Answers

1. $[H^+]$ varies with the amount of acid or base in a solution.
2.
3. $$[H^+] = \frac{K_W}{[OH^-]} \tag{11.E.1}$$
4.
5. $H_2O + H_2O \rightarrow H_3O^+ + OH^-$; H_2O/H_3O^+ and H_2O/OH^-
6.
7. 1.0×10^{-11} M
8.
9. 1.26×10^{-10} M
10.
11. 1.0×10^{-9} M
12.
13. 2.65×10^{-11} M
14.
15. $[H^+] = 0.344$ M; $[OH^-] = 2.91 \times 10^{-14}$ M
16.
17. $[OH^-] = 0.00338$ M; $[H^+] = 2.96 \times 10^{-12}$ M
18.
19. $[H^+] = 0.00137$ M; $[OH^-] = 7.32 \times 10^{-12}$ M

12.7: The pH Scale

Exercise 11.E.1

1. Define *pH*. How is it related to pOH?
2. Define *pOH*. How is it related to pH?
3. What is the pH range for an acidic solution?
4. What is the pH range for a basic solution?

5. What is $[H^+]$ for a neutral solution?
6. What is $[OH^-]$ for a neutral solution? Compare your answer to Exercise 6. Does this make sense?

7. Which substances in Table 12.7.1 are acidic?
8. Which substances in Table 12.7.1 are basic?
9. What is the pH of a solution when $[H^+]$ is 3.44×10^{-4} M?
10. What is the pH of a solution when $[H^+]$ is 9.04×10^{-13} M?
11. What is the pH of a solution when $[OH^-]$ is 6.22×10^{-7} M?
12. What is the pH of a solution when $[OH^-]$ is 0.0222 M?
13. What is the pOH of a solution when $[H^+]$ is 3.44×10^{-4} M?
14. What is the pOH of a solution when $[H^+]$ is 9.04×10^{-13} M?
15. What is the pOH of a solution when $[OH^-]$ is 6.22×10^{-7} M?
16. What is the pOH of a solution when $[OH^-]$ is 0.0222 M?
17. If a solution has a pH of 0.77, what is its pOH, $[H^+]$, and $[OH^-]$?
18. If a solution has a pOH of 13.09, what is its pH, $[H^+]$, and $[OH^-]$?

Answers

1. pH is the negative logarithm of $[H^+]$ and is equal to 14 – pOH.
2.
3. pH < 7
4.
5. 1.0×10^{-7} M
6.
7. Every entry above pure water is acidic.
8.
9. 3.46
10.
11. 7.79
12.
13. 10.54
14.
15. 6.21
16.
17. pOH = 13.23; $[H^+] = 1.70 \times 10^{-1}$ M; $[OH^-] = 5.89 \times 10^{-14}$ M

12.8: Buffers

Exercise 11.E.1

1. Define *buffer*. What two related chemical components are required to make a buffer?

2. Can a buffer be made by combining a strong acid with a strong base? Why or why not?
3. Which combinations of compounds can make a buffer? Assume aqueous solutions.
   a. HCl and NaCl
   b. HNO_2 and $NaNO_2$
   c. NH_4NO_3 and HNO_3
   d. NH_4NO_3 and NH_3
4. Which combinations of compounds can make a buffer? Assume aqueous solutions.
   a. H_3PO_4 and Na_3PO_4
   b. $NaHCO_3$ and Na_2CO_3
   c. $NaNO_3$ and $Ca(NO_3)_2$
   d. HN_3 and NH_3
5. For each combination in Exercise 3 that is a buffer, write the chemical equations for the reactions of the buffer components when a strong acid and a strong base is added.
6. For each combination in Exercise 4 that is a buffer, write the chemical equations for the reactions of the buffer components when a strong acid and a strong base is added.
7. The complete phosphate buffer system is based on four substances: H_3PO_4, $H_2PO_4^-$, HPO_4^{2-}, and PO_4^{3-}. What different buffer solutions can be made from these substances?
8. Explain why NaBr cannot be a component in either an acidic or a basic buffer.
9. Two solutions are made containing the same concentrations of solutes. One solution is composed of H_3PO_4 and Na_3PO_4, while the other is composed of HCN and NaCN. Which solution should have the larger capacity as a buffer?
10. Two solutions are made containing the same concentrations of solutes. One solution is composed of NH_3 and NH_4NO_3, while the other is composed of H_2SO_4 and Na_2SO_4. Which solution should have the larger capacity as a buffer?

Answers

1. A buffer is the combination of a weak acid or base and a salt of that weak acid or base.
2.
3. a. no
   b. yes
   c. no
   d. yes
4.
5. 3b: strong acid: $NO_2^- + H^+ \rightarrow HNO_2$; strong base: $HNO_2 + OH^- \rightarrow NO_2^- + H_2O$; 3d: strong base: $NH_4^+ + OH^- \rightarrow NH_3 + H_2O$; strong acid: $NH_3 + H^+ \rightarrow NH_4^+$
6.
7. Buffers can be made from three combinations: (1) H_3PO_4 and $H_2PO_4^-$, (2) $H_2PO_4^-$ and HPO_4^{2-}, and (3) HPO_4^{2-} and PO_4^{3-}. (Technically, a buffer can be made from any two components.)
8.
9. The phosphate buffer should have the larger capacity.

This page titled 11.E: Acids and Bases is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

12: STOICHIOMETRY APPLICATIONS

As you have probably gathered by now, stoichiometry is one of the core principles of chemistry which we have revisited again and again. This is our final chapter on stoichiometry: we will both revisit some of the ideas covered previously and introduce some concepts which may not have been covered earlier in the semester.

12.1: Stoichiometry Review

12.1.1: Stoichiometry Basics

12.1.2: Review of Stoichiometry and the Ideal Gas Laws

12.1.3: Review of Titrations

12.2: Limiting Reactant

12.3: Theoretical Yield, and Percent Yield

12.4: Enthalpy Change is a Measure of the Heat Evolved or Absorbed

12.E: Stoichiometry Applications (Exercises)

Template:HideTOC

This page titled 12: Stoichiometry Applications is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

12.1: STOICHIOMETRY REVIEW

In this section, we will review some of the ideas related to stoichiometry that we have previously seen earlier in this textbook. The information presented here will be written differently than what you had seen previously, but it is about the same thing. Before starting on the section, please take a minute to review the mole maps that you have developed throughout your studying of this textbook. Do they still make sense to you? If you would change anything about them, please do so now. As you move through the example problems presented in this section, refer to your mole map and see if you could solve those problems using your mole map before looking at the solutions. If not, revise your mole map so that it is more helpful to you the next time you try out a stoichiometry problem.

If you would like to go back and review the information covered in this section prior to covering it again, or would like to make some comparisons between the previous time we looked at it and how we are looking at it now the following links might be helpful. For the basics of stoichiometry, review this chapter (excluding the stoichiometry applications, as we will be looking at those in more detail later in this chapter.) For stoichiometry and the ideal gas law, review this section. For stoichiometry and titrations, review the section.

12.1.1: Stoichiometry Basics

12.1.2: Review of Stoichiometry and the Ideal Gas Laws

12.1.3: Review of Titrations

This page titled 12.1: Stoichiometry Review is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

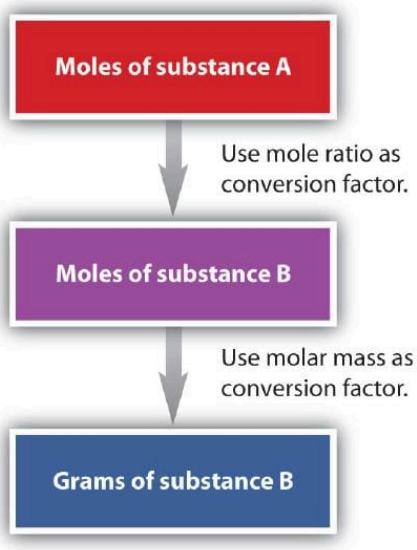
12.1.1: Stoichiometry Basics

Learning Objectives

- Convert from mass or moles of one substance to mass or moles of another substance in a chemical reaction.

Mole to Mass Conversions

We have established that a balanced chemical equation is balanced in terms of moles, as well as atoms or molecules. We have used balanced equations to set up ratios, in terms of moles of materials, that we can use as conversion factors to answer stoichiometric questions—such as how many moles of substance A react with so many moles of reactant B. We can extend this technique even further. Recall that we can relate a molar amount to a mass amount using molar mass. We can use that relation to answer stoichiometry questions in terms of the masses of a particular substance, in addition to moles. We do this using the following sequence:



Collectively, these conversions are called mole-mass calculations. Flowchart of mole mass calculations: To convert from moles of substance A to moles of substance B, use the mole ratio conversion factor, and to convert from moles to grams of substance B, use molar mass conversion factor

As an example, consider the balanced chemical equation

$$\mathrm{Fe_2O_3} + 3\,\mathrm{SO_3} \rightarrow \mathrm{Fe_2(SO_4)_3} \tag{12.1.1.1}$$

If we have 3.59 mol of $\mathrm{Fe_2O_3}$, how many grams of $\mathrm{SO_3}$ can react with it? Using the mole-mass calculation sequence, we can determine the required mass of $\mathrm{SO_3}$ in two steps. First, we construct the appropriate molar ratio, determined from the balanced chemical equation, to calculate the number of moles of $\mathrm{SO_3}$ needed. Then, using the molar mass of $\mathrm{SO_3}$ as a conversion factor, we determine the mass that this number of moles of $\mathrm{SO_3}$ has.

As usual, we start with the quantity we were given:

$$3.59\ \cancel{\mathrm{mol\ Fe_2O_3}} \times \left(\frac{3\ \mathrm{mol\ SO_3}}{1\ \cancel{\mathrm{mol\ Fe_2O_3}}} \right) = 10.77\ \mathrm{mol\ SO_3} \tag{12.1.1.2}$$

The mol $\mathrm{Fe_2O_3}$ units cancel, leaving mol $\mathrm{SO_3}$ unit. Now, we take this answer and convert it to grams of $\mathrm{SO_3}$, using the molar mass of $\mathrm{SO_3}$ as the conversion factor:

$$10.77 \cancel{\text{ mol SO}_3} \times \left(\frac{80.06 \text{ g SO}_3}{1 \cancel{\text{ mol SO}_3}} \right) = 862 \text{ g SO}_3 \tag{12.1.1.3}$$

Our final answer is expressed to three significant figures. Thus, in a two-step process, we find that 862 g of SO_3 will react with 3.59 mol of Fe_2O_3. Many problems of this type can be answered in this manner.

The same two-step problem can also be worked out in a single line, rather than as two separate steps, as follows:

$$3.59 \ \cancel{mol\ Fe_2O_3} \times \underbrace{\left(\frac{3 \ \cancel{mol\ SO_3}}{1 \ \cancel{mol\ Fe_2O_3}} \right)}_{\text{converts to moles of SO}_3} \times \underbrace{\left(\frac{80.06\ g\ SO_3}{1 \ \cancel{mol\ SO_3}} \right)}_{\text{converts to grams of SO}_3} = 862\ g\ SO_3$$

We get exactly the same answer when combining all math steps together.

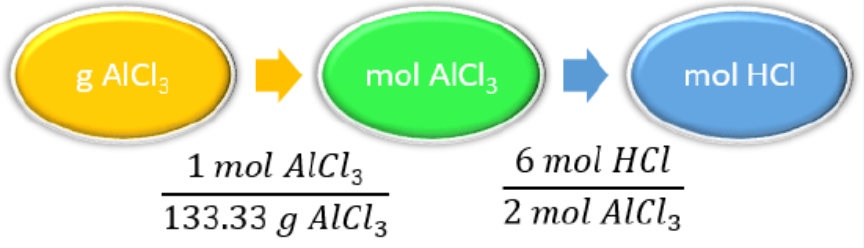
Example 12.1.1.1: Generation of Aluminum Oxide

How many moles of HCl will be produced when 249 g of $AlCl_3$ are reacted according to this chemical equation?

$$2\,AlCl_3 + 3\,H_2O(\ell) \longrightarrow Al_2O_3 + 6\,HCl\,(g)$$

Solution

Solutions to Example 8.5.1

Steps for Problem Solving	Example 12.1.1.1
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: 249 g AlCl3 Find: moles HCl
List other known quantities.	1 mol AlCl3 = 133.33 g AlCl3 6 mol of HCl to 2 mol AlCl3
Prepare a concept map and use the proper conversion factor.	 Flowchart of needed conversion factors: 1 mole AlCl3 to 133.33 grams AlCl3, and 6 moles HCl to 2 moles AlCl3
Cancel units and calculate.	$249 \ \cancel{g\ AlCl_3} \times \frac{1 \ \cancel{mol\ AlCl_3}}{133.33 \ \cancel{g\ AlCl_3}} \times \frac{6\ mol\ HCl}{2 \ \cancel{mol\ AlCl_3}} = 5.60\ mol\ HCl$
Think about your result.	Since 249 g of $AlCl_3$ is less than 266.66 g, the mass for 2 moles of $AlCl_3$ and the relationship is 6 mol of HCl to 2 mol $AlCl_3$, the answer should be less than 6 moles of HCl.

Exercise 12.1.1.1: Generation of Aluminum Oxide

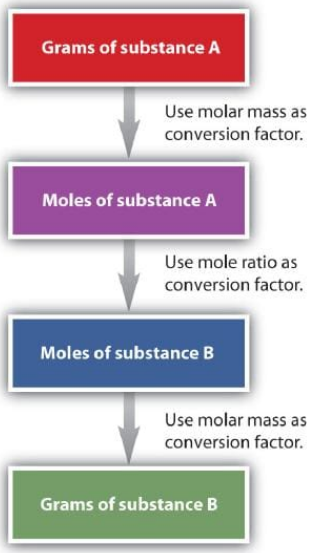
How many moles of Al_2O_3 will be produced when 23.9 g of H_2O are reacted according to this chemical equation?

$$2\,AlCl_3 + 3\,H_2O(\ell) \longrightarrow Al_2O_3 + 6\,HCl\,(g)$$

Answer available at the end of this section.

Mass to Mass Conversions

It is a small step from mole-mass calculations to mass-mass calculations. If we start with a known mass of one substance in a chemical reaction (instead of a known number of moles), we can calculate the corresponding masses of other substances in the reaction. The first step in this case is to convert the known mass into moles, using the substance's molar mass as the conversion factor. Then—and only then—we use the balanced chemical equation to construct a conversion factor to convert that quantity to moles of another substance, which in turn can be converted to a corresponding mass. Sequentially, the process is as follows:



This three-part process can be carried out in three discrete steps or combined into a single calculation that contains three conversion factors. The following example illustrates both techniques. Flowchart of mole mass calculations: To convert from grams to moles of substance A, use molar mass conversion factor; To convert from moles of substance A to moles of substance B, use the mole ratio conversion factor, and to convert from moles to grams of substance B, use molar mass conversion factor

Example 12.1.1.2: Decomposition of Ammonium Nitrate

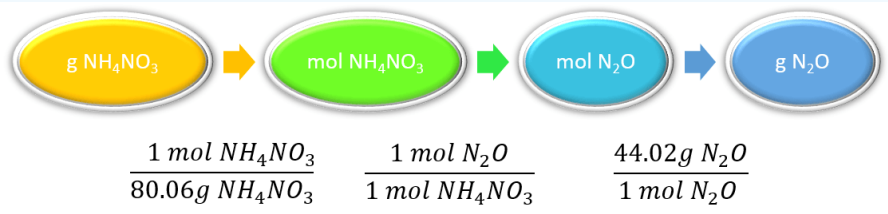
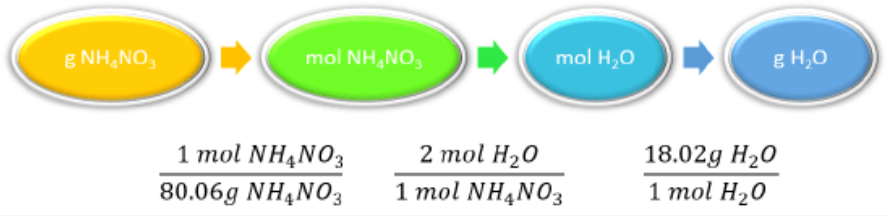
Ammonium nitrate decomposes to dinitrogen monoxide and water according to the following equation.

$$NH_4NO_3\,(s) \rightarrow N_2O\,(g) + 2H_2O\,(l)$$

In a certain experiment, $45.7\ \text{g}$ of ammonium nitrate is decomposed. Find the mass of each of the products formed.

Solutions to Example 8.5.2

Steps for Problem Solving	Example 12.1.1.2
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: $45.7\ \text{g}\ NH_4NO_3$ Find: Mass $N_2O = ?\ \text{g}$ Mass $H_2O = ?\ \text{g}$

Steps for Problem Solving	Example 12.1.1.2
List other known quantities.	1 mol $NH_4NO_3 = 80.06$ g 1 mol $N_2O = 44.02$ g 1 mol $H_2O = 18.02$ g 1 mol NH_4NO_3 to 1 mol N_2O to 2 mol H_2O
Prepare two concept maps and use the proper conversion factor.	 $\frac{1\ mol\ NH_4NO_3}{80.06g\ NH_4NO_3}$ $\frac{1\ mol\ N_2O}{1\ mol\ NH_4NO_3}$ $\frac{44.02g\ N_2O}{1\ mol\ N_2O}$ Flowchart of conversion factors: 1 mole NH4NO3 to 80.06 grams NH4NO3, 1 mole N2O to 1 mole NH4NO3, 44.02 grams N2O to 1 mole N2O  $\frac{1\ mol\ NH_4NO_3}{80.06g\ NH_4NO_3}$ $\frac{2\ mol\ H_2O}{1\ mol\ NH_4NO_3}$ $\frac{18.02g\ H_2O}{1\ mol\ H_2O}$ Flowchart of conversion factors: 1 mole NH4NO3 to 80.06 grams NH4NO3, 2 moles H2O to 1 mole NH4NO3, 18.02 grams H2O to 1 mole H2O
Cancel units and calculate.	$45.7\ \text{g}\ NH_4NO_3 \times \frac{1\ \text{mol}\ NH_4NO_3}{80.06\ \text{g}\ NH_4NO_3} \times \frac{1\ \text{mol}\ N_2O}{1\ \text{mol}\ NH_4NO_3} \times \frac{44.02\ \text{g}\ N_2O}{1\ \text{mol}\ N_2O} = 25.1\ \text{g}\ N_2O$ $45.7\ \text{g}\ NH_4NO_3 \times \frac{1\ \text{mol}\ NH_4NO_3}{80.06\ \text{g}\ NH_4NO_3} \times \frac{2\ \text{mol}\ H_2O}{1\ \text{mol}\ NH_4NO_3} \times \frac{18.02\ \text{g}\ H_2O}{1\ \text{mol}\ H_2O} = 20.6\ \text{g}\ H_2O$
Think about your result.	The total mass of the two products is equal to the mass of ammonium nitrate which decomposed, demonstrating the law of conservation of mass. Each answer has three significant figures.

Exercise 12.1.1.2: Carbon Tetrachloride

Methane can react with elemental chlorine to make carbon tetrachloride (CCl_4). The balanced chemical equation is as follows:

$$CH_4\,(g) + 4\,Cl_2\,(g) \longrightarrow CCl_2\,(l) + 4\,HCl\,(l)$$

How many grams of HCl are produced by the reaction of 100.0 g of CH_4?

Answer available at the end of this section.

Summary

- Calculations involving conversions between moles of a substance and the mass of that substance can be done using conversion factors.

- A balanced chemical reaction can be used to determine molar and mass relationships between substances.

Answers

Exercise 12.1.1.1**: Generation of Aluminum Oxide**

0.442 mol Al_2O_3

Exercise 12.1.1.2**: Carbon Tetrachloride**

908.7g HCl

This page titled 12.1.1: Stoichiometry Basics is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 8.4: Making Molecules- Mass-to-Mass Conversions by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

12.1.2: Review of Stoichiometry and the Ideal Gas Laws

With an understanding of the ideal gas laws, it is now possible to apply these principles to chemical stoichiometry problems. For example, zinc metal and hydrochloric acid (hydrogen chloride dissolved in water) react to form zinc (II) chloride and hydrogen gas according to the equation shown below:

2 HCl *(aq)* + Zn *(s)* → $ZnCl_2$ *(aq)* + H_2 *(g)*

Example 12.1.2.1:

A sample of pure zinc with a mass of 5.98 g is reacted with excess hydrochloric acid and the (dry) hydrogen gas is collected at 25.0 ˚C and 742 mm Hg. What *volume* of hydrogen gas would be produced?

Solution

This is a "single state" problem, so we can solve it using the ideal gas law, *PV* = *nRT*. In order to find the volume of hydrogen gas (*V*), we need to know the number of *moles* of hydrogen that will be produced by the reaction. Our stoichiometry is simply *one mole of hydrogen per mole of zinc*, so we need to know the number of moles of zinc that are present in 5.98 grams of zinc metal. The temperature is given in centigrade, so we need to convert into Kelvin, and we also need to convert mm Hg into atm.

Conversions:

$$25.0\ C + 273 = 298\ K$$

$$(742\ mm\ Hg) \times \left(\frac{1\ atm}{760\ mm\ Hg}\right) = 0.976\ atm$$

$$(5.98\ g\ Zn) \times \left(\frac{1.00\ mol}{65.39\ g\ Zn}\right) = 0.0915\ mol$$

Substituting:

$$PV = nRT$$

$$(0.976\ atm) \times V = (0.0915\ mol)(0.0821\ L\ atm\ mol^{-1}K^{-1})(298\ K)$$

$$V = \frac{(0.0915\ mol)(0.0821\ L\ atm\ mol^{-1}K^{-1})(298\ K)}{(0.976\ atm)} = 2.29\ L$$

We can also use the fact that one mole of a gas occupies 22.414 L at STP in order to calculate the number of moles of a gas that is produced in a reaction. For example, the organic molecule ethane (CH_3CH_3) reacts with oxygen to give carbon dioxide and water according to the equation shown below:

2 CH_3CH_3 *(g)* + 7 O_2 *(g)* → 4 CO_2 *(g)* + 6 H_2O *(g)*

Example 12.1.2.1:

An unknown mass of ethane is allowed to react with excess oxygen and the carbon dioxide produced is separated and collected. The carbon dioxide collected is found to occupy 11.23 L at STP; what mass of ethane was in the original sample?

Solution

Because the volume of carbon dioxide is measured at STP, the observed value can be converted directly into *moles of carbon dioxide* by dividing by 22.414 L mol^{-1}. Once moles of carbon dioxide are known, the stoichiometry of the problem can be used to directly give moles of ethane (molar mass 30.07 g mol^{-1}), which leads directly to the *mass* of ethane in the sample.

$$(11.23\ L\ CO_2) \times \left(\frac{1\ mol}{22.414\ L}\right) = 0.501\ mol\ CO_2$$

Reaction stoichiometry:

$$(0.501\ mol\ CO_2) \times \left(\frac{2\ mol\ CH_3CH_3}{4\ mol\ CO_2}\right) = 0.250\ mol\ CH_3CH_3$$

The ideal gas laws allow a quantitative analysis of whole spectrum of chemical reactions. When you are approaching these problems, remember to *first* decide on the *class* of the problem:

- If it is a “single state” problem (a gas is produced at a single, given, set of conditions), then you want to use *PV* = *nRT*.
- If it is a “two state” problem (a gas is changed from one set of conditions to another) you want to use

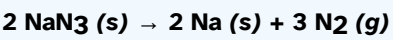
$$\frac{P_1V_1}{n_1T_1} = \frac{P_2V_2}{n_2T_2}$$

- If the volume of gas is quoted at STP, you can quickly convert this volume into moles with by dividing by 22.414 L mol^{-1}.

Once you have isolated your approach ideal gas law problems are no more complex that the stoichiometry problems we have addressed in earlier chapters.

Exercise 12.1.2.1

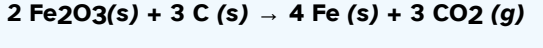
1. An automobile air bag requires about 62 L of nitrogen gas in order to inflate. The nitrogen gas is produced by the decomposition of sodium azide, according to the equation shown below



2 NaN_3 *(s)* → 2 Na *(s)* + 3 N_2 *(g)*

What mass of sodium azide is necessary to produce the required volume of nitrogen at 25 ˚C and 1 atm?

2. When Fe_2O_3 is heated in the presence of carbon, CO_2 gas is produced, according to the equation shown below. A sample of 96.9 grams of Fe_2O_3 is heated in the presence of excess carbon and the CO_2 produced is collected and measured at 1 atm and 453 K. What volume of CO_2 will be observed?



2 Fe_2O_3*(s)* + 3 C *(s)* → 4 Fe *(s)* + 3 CO_2 *(g)*

3. The reaction of zinc and hydrochloric acid generates hydrogen gas, according to the equation shown below. An unknown quantity of zinc in a sample is observed
to produce 7.50 L of hydrogen gas at a temperature of 404 K and a pressure of 1.75 atm. How many moles of zinc were in the sample?



Zn *(s)* + 2 HCl *(aq)* → $ZnCl_2$ *(aq)* + H_2 *(g)*

This page titled 12.1.2: Review of Stoichiometry and the Ideal Gas Laws is shared under a CC BY-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- 9.6: Combining Stoichiometry and the Ideal Gas Laws by Paul R. Young is licensed CC BY-SA 4.0. Original source: https://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Introductory_Chemistry_Online.

12.1.3: Review of Titrations

One of the standard laboratory exercises in General Chemistry is an **acid-base titration**. In order to perform an acid-base titration, you must have a solution of acid or base with a known concentration. You then slowly add a known volume of this solution, using a volumetric **burette**, to an acid or base solution with an *unknown* concentration until neutrality has been achieved. At that point, you know the volume and concentration of the reactant you have added, which means that you can calculate the number of *mole*s that you added. Based on the stoichiometry of your neutralization reaction, you then know how many moles of acid or base were in the unknown sample. How do you know when you have reached neutrality? Generally an indicator or a *p*H meter is used (as described in Section 8.5). For example, if we had a solution of NaOH that was exactly 0.100 M and we had a beaker containing an *unknown* concentration of HCl. To perform the titration we would add a few drops of a stock phenolphthalein solution to our HCl, and then slowly add a measured amount of the NaOH solution until all of the acid had been consumed and the indicator changed from colorless to pink.

HCl *(aq)* + NaOH *(aq)* → NaCl *(aq)* + H_2O

Working with the above example, if the volume of base that we added (as measured on the buret) was 12.6 mL, we could calculate the number of moles present in the unknown acid solution. This is equal to the known concentration of our NaOH (0.100 M) multiplied by the volume required for neutrality (0.0126 L), or:

$$(0.100 moles/L)(0.0126 L) = 1.26 \times 10^{-3} moles$$

If we had used exactly 100.0 mL of our unknown acid in our titration, the concentration of our acid would be:

$$\frac{(1.26 \times 10^{-3} moles)}{(0.1000 L)} = 1.26 \times 10^{-2} M$$

Exercise 12.1.3.1

1. You are given a solution containing an unknown concentration of HCl. You carefully measure 50.0 mL of this solution into a flask and then add a few drops of phenolphthalein solution. You prepare a buret containing 0.055 M NaOH and note that the initial level of the solution in the buret is 12.6 mL. You slowly add the NaOH solution to the acid until the color change *just* occurs (as evidence of the color change becomes visible, you carefully stir the solution after each drop has been added). When the acid solution turns (and remains) pink, you note that the volume in the buret is now 28.9 mL. What is the concentration of the unknown acid solution?
2. If 25.00 mL of HCl solution with a concentration of 0.1234 M is neutralized by 23.45 mL of NaOH, what is the concentration of the base?

This page titled 12.1.3: Review of Titrations is shared under a CC BY-SA 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur via source content that was edited to the style and standards of the LibreTexts platform.

- 8.7: Titrations - Neutralization and Stoichiometry by Paul R. Young is licensed CC BY-SA 4.0. Original source: https://en.wikibooks.org/wiki/Introductory_Chemistry_Online.

12.2: Limiting Reactant

Learning Objectives

- Identify the limiting reactant (limiting reagent) in a given chemical reaction.
- Calculate how much product will be produced from the limiting reactant.
- Calculate how much reactant(s) remains when the reaction is complete.

In all examples discussed thus far, the reactants were assumed to be present in stoichiometric quantities. Consequently, none of the reactants were left over at the end of the reaction. This is often desirable—as in the case of a space shuttle—where excess oxygen or hydrogen is not only extra freight to be hauled into orbit, but also an explosion hazard. More often, however, reactants are present in mole ratios that are not the same as the ratio of the coefficients in the balanced chemical equation. As a result, one or more of them will not be used up completely, but will be left over when the reaction is completed. In this situation, the amount of product that can be obtained is limited by the amount of only one of the reactants. The reactant that restricts the amount of product obtained is called the limiting reactant. The reactant that remains after a reaction has gone to completion is in excess.

Consider a nonchemical example. Assume you have invited some friends for dinner and want to bake brownies for dessert. You find two boxes of brownie mix in your pantry and see that each package requires two eggs. The balanced equation for brownie preparation is:

$$1\,\text{box mix} + 2\,\text{eggs} \rightarrow 1\,\text{batch brownies} \tag{12.2.1}$$

If you have a dozen eggs, which ingredient will determine the number of batches of brownies that you can prepare? Because each box of brownie mix requires two eggs and you have two boxes, you need four eggs. Twelve eggs is eight more eggs than you need. Although the ratio of eggs to boxes in is 2:1, the ratio in your possession is 6:1. Hence the eggs are the ingredient (reactant) present in excess, and the brownie mix is the limiting reactant. Even if you had a refrigerator full of eggs, you could make only two batches of brownies.

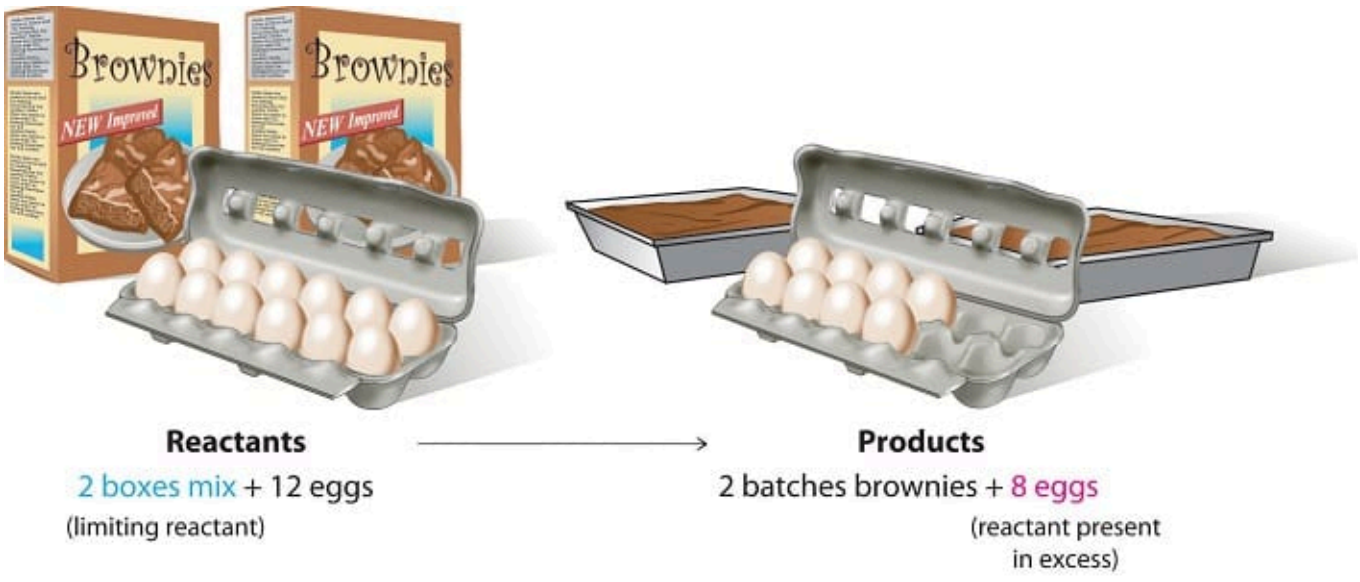


Figure 12.2.1: The Concept of a Limiting Reactant in the Preparation of Brownies. For a chemist, the **balanced** chemical equation is the recipe that must be followed.

2 boxes of brownie mix and 12 eggs results in 2 batches of brownies and 8 eggs; in this case the 8 eggs are reactant present in excess

PhET Simulation: Reactants, Products and Leftovers

View this interactive simulation illustrating the concepts of limiting and excess reactants.

Consider this concept now with regard to a chemical process, the reaction of hydrogen with chlorine to yield hydrogen chloride:

$$\mathrm{H_2} + \mathrm{Cl_2}(g) \rightarrow 2\,\mathrm{HCl}(g)$$

The balanced equation shows that hydrogen and chlorine react in a 1:1 stoichiometric ratio. If these reactants are provided in any other amounts, one of the reactants will nearly always be entirely consumed, thus limiting the amount of product that may be generated. This substance is the limiting reactant, and the other substance is the excess reactant. Identifying the limiting and excess reactants for a given situation requires computing the molar amounts of each reactant provided and comparing them to the stoichiometric amounts represented in the balanced chemical equation. For example, imagine combining 3 moles of H_2 and 2 moles of Cl_2. This represents a 3:2 (or 1.5:1) ratio of hydrogen to chlorine present for reaction, which is greater than the stoichiometric ratio of 1:1. Hydrogen, therefore, is present in excess, and chlorine is the limiting reactant. Reaction of all the provided chlorine (2 mol) will consume 2 mol of the 3 mol of hydrogen provided, leaving 1 mol of hydrogen non-reacted.

An alternative approach to identifying the limiting reactant involves comparing the amount of product expected for the complete reaction of each reactant. Each reactant amount is used to separately calculate the amount of product that would be formed per the reaction's stoichiometry. The reactant yielding the lesser amount of product is the limiting reactant. For the example, in the previous paragraph, complete reaction of the hydrogen would yield:

$$\text{mol HCl produced} = 3\ \text{mol}\ \mathrm{H_2} \times \frac{2\ \text{mol HCl}}{1\ \text{mol}\ \mathrm{H_2}} = 6\ \text{mol HCl}$$

Complete reaction of the provided chlorine would produce:

$$\text{mol HCl produced} = 2\ \text{mol}\ \mathrm{Cl_2} \times \frac{2\ \text{mol HCl}}{1\ \text{mol}\ \mathrm{Cl_2}} = 4\ \text{mol HCl}$$

The chlorine will be completely consumed once 4 moles of HCl have been produced. Since enough hydrogen was provided to yield 6 moles of HCl, there will be non-reacted hydrogen remaining once this reaction is complete. Chlorine, therefore, is the limiting reactant and hydrogen is the excess reactant (Figure 12.2.2).

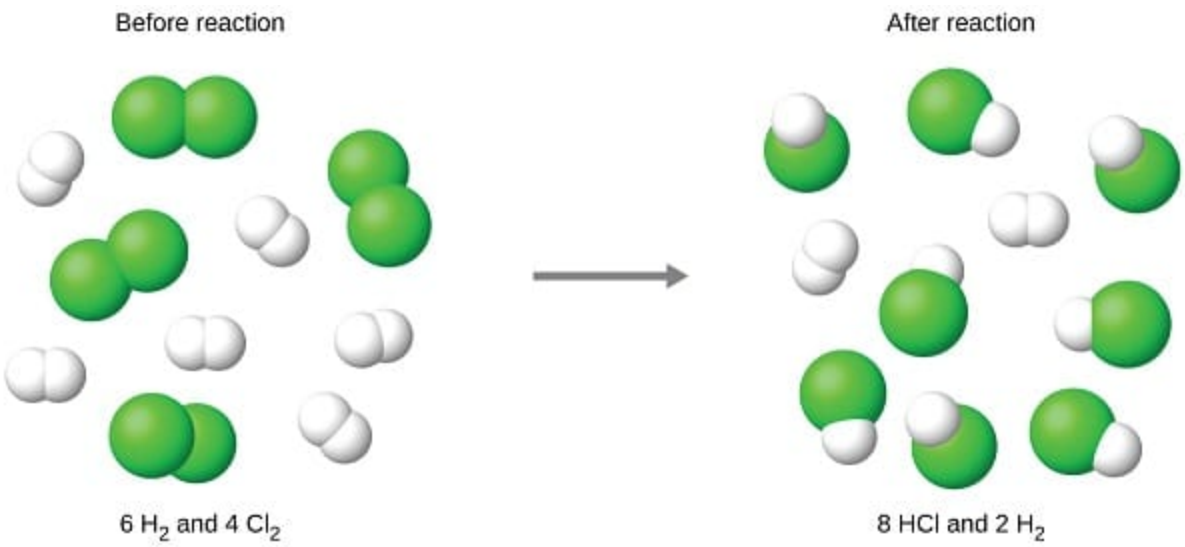


Figure 12.2.2: When H_2 and Cl_2 are combined in nonstoichiometric amounts, one of these reactants will limit the amount of HCl that can be produced. This illustration shows a reaction in which hydrogen is present in excess and chlorine is the limiting reactant. The figure shows a space-filling molecular models reacting. There is a reaction arrow pointing to the right in the middle. To the left of the reaction arrow there are three molecules each consisting of two green spheres bonded together. There are also five molecules each consisting of two smaller, white spheres bonded together. Above these molecules is the label, “Before reaction,” and below these molecules is the label, “6 H subscript 2 and 4 C l subscript 2.” To the right of the reaction arrow, there are eight molecules each consisting of one green sphere bonded to a smaller white sphere. There are also two molecules each consisting of two white spheres bonded together. Above these molecules is the label, “After reaction,” and below these molecules is the label, “8 H C l and 2 H subscript 2.”

A similar situation exists for many chemical reactions: you usually run out of one reactant before all of the other reactant has reacted. The reactant you run out of is called the limiting reactant; the other reactant or reactants are considered to be *in excess*. A crucial skill in evaluating the conditions of a chemical process is to determine which reactant is the limiting reactant and which is in excess.

How to Identify the Limiting Reactant (Limiting Reagent)

There are two ways to determine the limiting reactant. One method is to find and compare the mole ratio of the reactants used in the reaction (Approach 1). Another way is to calculate the grams of products produced from the given quantities of reactants; the reactant that produces the **smallest** amount of product is the limiting reactant (Approach 2). This section will focus more on the second method.

Approach 1 (The "Reactant Mole Ratio Method"): Find the limiting reactant by looking at the number of moles of each reactant.

1. Determine the balanced chemical equation for the chemical reaction.
2. Convert all given information into moles (most likely, through the use of molar mass as a conversion factor).
3. Calculate the mole ratio from the given information. Compare the calculated ratio to the actual ratio.
4. Use the amount of limiting reactant to calculate the amount of product produced.
5. If necessary, calculate how much is left in excess of the non-limiting (excess) reactant.

Approach 2 (The "The Product Method"): Find the limiting reactant by calculating and comparing the amount of product that each reactant will produce.

1. Balance the chemical equation for the chemical reaction.
2. Convert the given information into moles.
3. Use stoichiometry for each individual reactant to find the mass of product produced.
4. The reactant that produces a lesser amount of product is the limiting reactant.
5. The reactant that produces a larger amount of product is the excess reactant.
6. To find the amount of remaining excess reactant, subtract the mass of excess reactant consumed from the total mass of excess reactant given.

The key to recognizing which reactant is the limiting reactant is based on a mole-mass or mass-mass calculation: whichever reactant gives the *lesser* amount of product is the limiting reactant. What we need to do is determine an amount of one product (either moles or mass) assuming all of each reactant reacts. Whichever reactant gives the least amount of that particular product is the limiting reactant. It does not matter which product we use, as long as we use the same one each time. It does not matter whether we determine the number of moles or grams of that product; however, we will see shortly that knowing the final mass of product can be useful.

Example 12.2.1: Identifying the Limiting Reactant

As an example, consider the balanced equation

$$4\,C_2H_3Br_3 + 11\,O_2 \rightarrow 8\,CO_2 + 6\,H_2O + 6\,Br_2$$

What is the limiting reactant if 76.4 grams of $C_2H_3Br_3$ reacted with 49.1 grams of O_2?

Solution

Using Approach 1:

Step 1: *Balance the chemical equation.*

The equation is already balanced with the relationship

$$4 \text{ mol } C_2H_3Br_3 \text{ to } 11 \text{ mol } O_2 \text{ to } 6 \text{ mol } H_2O \text{ to } 6 \text{ mol } Br$$

Step 2: Convert all given information into moles.

$$76.4 \text{ g } C_2H_3Br_3 \times \frac{1 \text{ mol } C_2H_3Br_3}{266.72 \text{ g } C_2H_3B_3} = 0.286 \text{ mol } C_2H_3Br_3$$

$$49.1 \text{ g } O_2 \times \frac{1 \text{ mol } O_2}{32.00 \text{ g } O_2} = 1.53 \text{ mol } O_2$$

Step 3: Calculate the mole ratio from the given information. Compare the calculated ratio to the actual ratio.

Assuming that all of the oxygen is used up,

$$1.53 \text{ mol } O_2 \times \frac{4 \text{ mol } C_2H_3Br_3}{11 \text{ mol } O_2} = 0.556 \text{ mol } C_2H_3Br_3 \text{ are required.}$$

Because 0.556 moles of $C_2H_3Br_3$ required > 0.286 moles of $C_2H_3Br_3$ available, $C_2H_3Br_3$ is the limiting reactant.

Using Approach 2:

Step 1: *Balance the chemical equation.*

The equation is already balanced with the relationship

$$4 \text{ mol } C_2H_3Br_3 \text{ to } 11 \text{ mol } O_2 \text{ to } 6 \text{ mol } H_2O \text{ to } 6 \text{ mol } Br_2$$

Step 2 and Step 3: Convert mass to moles and stoichiometry.

$$76.4 \text{ g } C_2H_3Br_3 \times \frac{1 \text{ mol } C_2H_3Br_3}{266.72 \text{ g } C_2H_3Br_3} \times \frac{8 \text{ mol } CO_2}{4 \text{ mol } C_2H_3Br_3} \times \frac{44.01 \text{ g } CO_2}{1 \text{ mol } CO_2} = 25.2 \text{ g } CO_2$$

$$49.1 \text{ g } O_2 \times \frac{1 \text{ mol } O_2}{32.00 \text{ g } O_2} \times \frac{8 \text{ mol } CO_2}{11 \text{ mol } O_2} \times \frac{44.01 \text{ g } CO_2}{1 \text{ mol } CO_2} = 49.1 \text{ g } CO_2$$

Step 4: The reactant that produces a smaller amount of product is the limiting reactant.

Therefore, by either method, $C_2H_3Br_3$ is the limiting reactant.

Example 12.2.2: Identifying the Limiting Reactant and the Mass of Excess Reactant

For example, in the reaction of magnesium metal and oxygen, calculate the mass of magnesium oxide that can be produced if 2.40 g Mg reacts with 10.0 g O_2. Also determine the amount of excess reactant. MgO is the only product in the reaction.

Solution

Following Approach 1:

Step 1: Balance the chemical equation.

$$\underline{\mathbf{2}}\ \mathrm{Mg\ (s)} + \mathrm{O_2\ (g)} \rightarrow \underline{\mathbf{2}}\ \mathrm{MgO\ (s)}$$

The balanced equation provides the relationship of 2 mol Mg to 1 mol O_2 to 2 mol MgO

Step 2 and Step 3: Convert mass to moles and stoichiometry.

$$2.40\ \cancel{\mathrm{g\ Mg}} \times \frac{1\ \cancel{\mathrm{mol\ Mg}}}{24.31\ \cancel{\mathrm{g\ Mg}}} \times \frac{2\ \cancel{\mathrm{mol\ MgO}}}{2\ \cancel{\mathrm{mol\ Mg}}} \times \frac{40.31\ \mathrm{g\ MgO}}{1\ \cancel{\mathrm{mol\ MgO}}} = 3.98\ \mathrm{g\ MgO}$$

$$10.0\ \cancel{\mathrm{g\ O_2}} \times \frac{1\ \cancel{\mathrm{mol\ O_2}}}{32.00\ \cancel{\mathrm{g\ O_2}}} \times \frac{2\ \cancel{\mathrm{mol\ MgO}}}{1\ \cancel{\mathrm{mol\ O_2}}} \times \frac{40.31\ \mathrm{g\ MgO}}{1\ \cancel{\mathrm{mol\ MgO}}} = 25.2\ \mathrm{g\ MgO}$$

Step 4: The reactant that produces a smaller amount of product is the limiting reactant.

Mg produces less MgO than does O_2 (3.98 g MgO vs. 25.2 g MgO), therefore Mg is the limiting reactant in this reaction.

Step 5: The reactant that produces a larger amount of product is the excess reactant.

O_2 produces more amount of MgO than Mg (25.2g MgO vs. 3.98 MgO), therefore O_2 is the excess reactant in this reaction.

Step 6: Find the amount of remaining excess reactant by subtracting the mass of the excess reactant consumed from the total mass of excess reactant given.

Mass of excess reactant calculated using the limiting reactant:

$$2.40\ \cancel{\mathrm{g\ Mg}} \times \frac{1\ \cancel{\mathrm{mol\ Mg}}}{24.31\ \cancel{\mathrm{g\ Mg}}} \times \frac{1\ \cancel{\mathrm{mol\ O_2}}}{2\ \cancel{\mathrm{mol\ Mg}}} \times \frac{32.00\ \mathrm{g\ O_2}}{1\ \cancel{\mathrm{mol\ O_2}}} = 1.58\ \mathrm{g\ O_2}$$

OR

Mass of excess reactant calculated using the mass of the product:

$$3.98\ \cancel{\mathrm{g\ MgO}} \times \frac{1\ \cancel{\mathrm{mol\ MgO}}}{40.31\ \cancel{\mathrm{g\ MgO}}} \times \frac{1\ \cancel{\mathrm{mol\ O_2}}}{2\ \cancel{\mathrm{mol\ MgO}}} \times \frac{32.0\ \mathrm{g\ O_2}}{1\ \cancel{\mathrm{mol\ O_2}}} = 1.58\ \mathrm{g\ O_2}$$

Mass of total excess reactant given – mass of excess reactant consumed in the reaction:

10.0g O_2 - (available) 1.58g O_2 (used) = 8.42g O_2 (excess)

Therefore, O_2 is in excess.

Example 12.2.3: Limiting Reactant

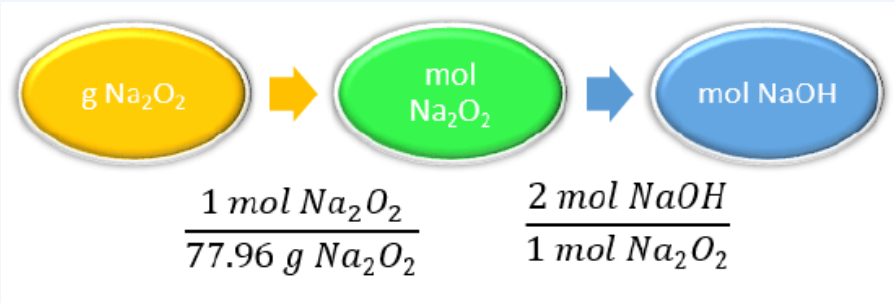
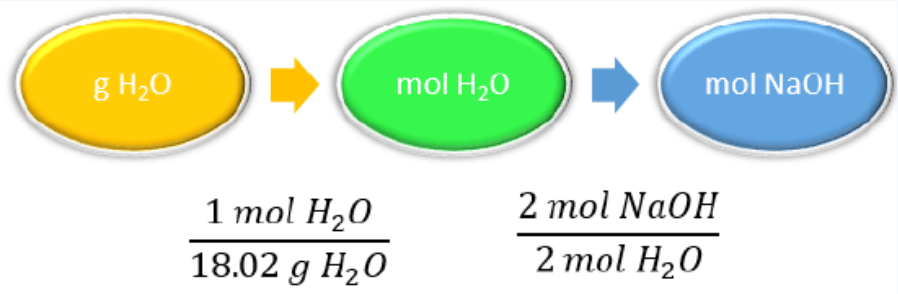
What is the limiting reactant if 78.0 grams of Na_2O_2 were reacted with 29.4 grams of H_2O? The unbalanced chemical equation is

$$Na_2O_2\,(s) + H_2O\,(l) \longrightarrow NaOH\,(aq) + H_2O_2\,(l)$$

Solution

Solutions to Example 8.4.3

Steps for Problem Solving- The Product Method	**Example** 12.2.1
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: 78.0 grams of Na_2O_2 29.4 g H_2O Find: limiting reactant
List other known quantities.	1 mol Na_2O_2= 77.96 g/mol 1 mol H_2O = 18.02 g/mol Since the amount of product in grams is not required, only the molar mass of the reactants is needed.
Balance the equation.	Na_2O_2 (s) + **2**H_2O (l) → **2**NaOH (aq) + H_2O_2 (l) The balanced equation provides the relationship of 1 mol Na_2O_2 to 2 mol H_2O 2mol NaOH to 1 mol H_2O_2

Steps for Problem Solving- The Product Method	Example 12.2.1
Prepare a concept map and use the proper conversion factor.	  Because the question only asks for the limiting reactant, we can perform two **mass-mole** calculations and de which amount is less.
Cancel units and calculate.	$78.0\ \text{g}\ \text{Na}_2\text{O}_2 \times \frac{1\ \text{mol}\ \text{Na}_2\text{O}_2}{77.96\ \text{g}\ \text{Na}_2\text{O}_2} \times \frac{2\ \text{mol NaOH}}{1\ \text{mol}\ \text{Na}_2\text{O}_2} \times \frac{40\ \text{g NaOH}}{1\ \text{mol NaOH}} = 2.00\ \text{mol NaOH}$ $29.4\ \text{g}\ \text{H}_2\text{O} \times \frac{1\ \text{mol}\ \text{H}_2\text{O}}{18.02\ \text{g}\ \text{H}_2\text{O}} \times \frac{2\ \text{mol NaOH}}{2\ \text{mol}\ \text{Na}_2\text{O}_2} \times \frac{40\ \text{g NaOH}}{1\ \text{mol NaOH}} = 1.63\ \text{mol NaOH}$ Therefore, H_2O is the *limiting reactant*.

Think about your result.

Example 12.2.4: Limiting Reactant and Mass of Excess Reactant

A 5.00 g quantity of Rb is combined with 3.44 g of MgCl_2 according to this chemical reaction:

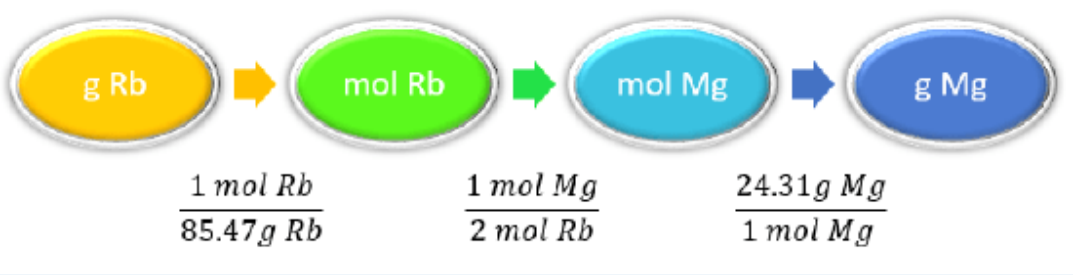
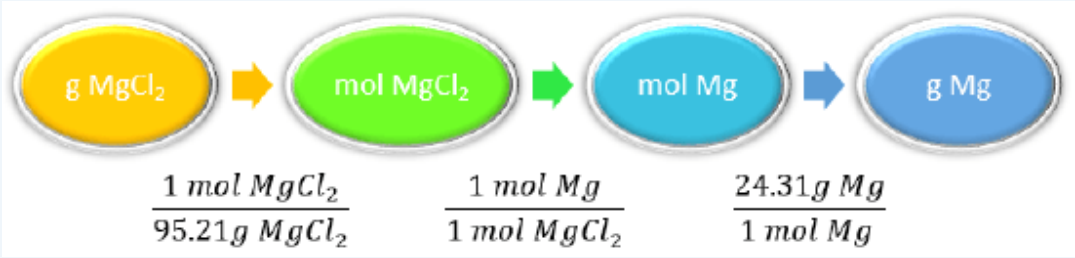
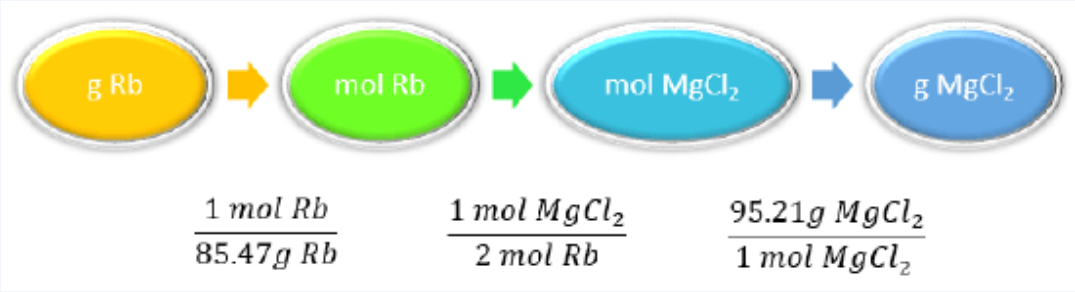
$$2Rb(s) + MgCl_2(s) \rightarrow Mg(s) + 2RbCl(s)$$

What mass of Mg is formed, and what mass of remaining reactant is left over?

Solution

Solutions to Example 8.4.10

Steps for Problem Solving- The Product Method	Example 12.2.2
Steps for Problem Solving	A 5.00 g quantity of Rb is combined with 3.44 g of $MgCl_2$ according to this chemical reaction: $$2Rb(s) + MgCl_2(s) \rightarrow Mg(s) + 2RbCl(s)$$ What mass of Mg is formed, and what mass of remaining reactant is left over?
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: 5.00g Rb, 2.44g MgCl2 Find: mass of Mg formed, mass of remaining reactant
List other known quantities.	• molar mass: Rb = 85.47 g/mol • molar mass: $MgCl_2$ = 95.21 g/mol • molar mass: Mg = 24.31 g/mol

Steps for Problem Solving- The Product Method	Example 12.2.2
Prepare concept maps and use the proper conversion factor.	Find mass Mg formed based on mass of Rb  Find mass of Mg formed based on mass of $MgCl_2$  Conversion factors: 1 mole MgCl2 to 95.21 grams MgCl2, 1 mole Mg to 1 mole MgCl2, 24.31 grams Mg to 1 mole Mg Use limiting reactant to determine amount of excess reactant consumed  Conversion factors: 1 mole Rb to 85.47 grams Rb, 1 mole MgCl2 to 2 moles Rb, 95.21 grams MgCl2 to 1 mole MgCl2

Steps for Problem Solving- The Product Method	**Example** 12.2.2
Cancel units and calculate.	Because the question asks what mass of magnesium is formed, we can perform two mass-mass calculations an determine which amount is less. $$5.00\ \cancel{g\ Rb} \times \frac{1\ \cancel{mol\ Rb}}{85.47\ \cancel{g\ Rb}} \times \frac{1\ \cancel{mol\ Mg}}{2\ \cancel{mol\ Rb}} \times \frac{24.31\ g\ Mg}{1\ \cancel{mol\ Mg}} = 0.711\ g\ Mg$$ $$3.44\ \cancel{g\ MgCl_2} \times \frac{1\ \cancel{mol\ MgCl_2}}{95.21\ \cancel{g\ MgCl_2}} \times \frac{1\ \cancel{mol\ Mg}}{1\ \cancel{mol\ MgCl_2}} \times \frac{24.31\ g\ Mg}{1\ \cancel{mol\ Mg}} = 0.878\ g\ Mg$$ The 0.711 g of Mg is the lesser quantity, so the associated reactant—5.00 g of Rb—is the limiting reactant. To de how much of the other reactant is left, we have to do one more mass-mass calculation to determine what mass reacted with the 5.00 g of Rb, and then subtract the amount reacted from the original amount. $$5.00\ \cancel{g\ Rb} \times \frac{1\ \cancel{mol\ Rb}}{85.47\ \cancel{g\ Rb}} \times \frac{1\ \cancel{mol\ MgCl_2}}{2\ \cancel{mol\ Rb}} \times \frac{95.21\ g\ MgCl_2}{1\ \cancel{mol\ MgCl_2}} = 2.78\ g\ MgCl_2\ \ reacted$$ Because we started with 3.44 g of $MgCl_2$, we have 3.44 g $MgCl_2$ – 2.78 g $MgCl_2$ reacted = 0.66 g $MgCl_2$ left
Think about your result.	It usually is not possible to determine the limiting reactant using just the initial masses, as the reagents have diffe masses and coefficients.

Exercise 12.2.1

Given the initial amounts listed, what is the limiting reactant, and what is the mass of the leftover reactant?

$$\underbrace{22.7\ g}_{MgO(s)} + \underbrace{17.9\ g}_{H_2S} \rightarrow MgS(s) + H_2O(l)$$

Answer available at the end of this section.

Answers

Exercise 12.2.1

H2S is the limiting reagent; 1.5 g of MgO are left over.

This page titled 12.2: Limiting Reactant is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 8.6: Limiting Reactant and Theoretical Yield by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew, Sarick Shah is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

12.3: Theoretical Yield, and Percent Yield

Learning Objectives

- Calculate percentage or actual yields from known amounts of reactants.

The world of pharmaceutical production is an expensive one. Many drugs have several steps in their synthesis and use costly chemicals. A great deal of research takes place to develop better ways to make drugs faster and more efficiently. Studying how much of a compound is produced in any given reaction is an important part of cost control.

Percent Yield

Chemical reactions in the real world don't always go exactly as planned on paper. In the course of an experiment, many things will contribute to the formation of less product than predicted. Besides spills and other experimental errors, there are usually losses due to an incomplete reaction, undesirable side reactions, etc. Chemists need a measurement that indicates how successful a reaction has been. This measurement is called the percent yield.

To compute the percent yield, it is first necessary to determine how much of the product should be formed based on stoichiometry. This is called the **theoretical yield**, the maximum amount of product that can be formed from the given amounts of reactants. The **actual yield** is the amount of product that is actually formed when the reaction is carried out in the laboratory. The **percent yield** is the ratio of the actual yield to the theoretical yield, expressed as a percentage.

$$\text{Percent Yield} = \frac{\text{Actual Yield}}{\text{Theoretical Yield}} \times 100\%$$

Percent yield is very important in the manufacture of products. Much time and money is spent improving the percent yield for chemical production. When complex chemicals are synthesized by many different reactions, one step with a low percent yield can quickly cause a large waste of reactants and unnecessary expense.

Typically, percent yields are understandably less than 100% because of the reasons indicated earlier. However, percent yields greater than 100% are possible if the measured product of the reaction contains impurities that cause its mass to be greater than it actually would be if the product was pure. When a chemist synthesizes a desired chemical, he or she is always careful to purify the products of the reaction. Example $12.3.1$ illustrates the steps for determining percent yield.

Example $12.3.1$: Decomposition of Potassium Chlorate

Potassium chlorate decomposes upon slight heating in the presence of a catalyst, according to the reaction below:

$$2\text{KClO}_3\,(s) \rightarrow 2\text{KCl}\,(s) + 3\text{O}_2\,(g)$$

In a certain experiment, $40.0\ \text{g}\ \text{KClO}_3$ is heated until it completely decomposes. The experiment is performed and the oxygen gas is collected and its mass is found to be $14.9\ \text{g}$.

a. What is the theoretical yield of oxygen gas?
b. What is the percent yield for the reaction?

Solution

a. Calculation of theoretical yield

First, we will calculate the theoretical yield based on the stoichiometry.

Step 1: Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find".

Given: Mass of $KClO_3 = 40.0\ g$

Mass of O_2 collected = 14.9g

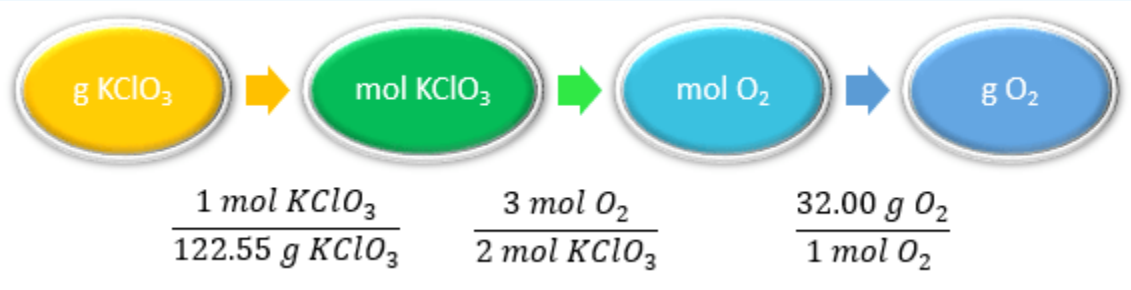
Find: Theoretical yield, g O_2

Step 2: List other known quantities and plan the problem.

1 mol $KClO_3$ = 122.55 g/mol

1 mol O_2 = 32.00 g/mol

Step 3: Apply stoichiometry to convert from the mass of a reactant to the mass of a product:



Step 4: Solve.

$$40.0\ \cancel{\text{g KClO}_3} \times \frac{1\ \cancel{\text{mol KClO}_3}}{122.55\ \cancel{\text{g KClO}_3}} \times \frac{3\ \cancel{\text{mol O}_2}}{2\ \cancel{\text{mol KClO}_3}} \times \frac{32.00\ \text{g O}_2}{1\ \cancel{\text{mol O}_2}} = 15.7\ \text{g O}_2$$

The theoretical yield of O_2 is $15.7\ g$, 15.67 g unrounded.

Step 5: Think about your result.

The mass of oxygen gas must be less than the $40.0\ g$ of potassium chlorate that was decomposed.

b. Calculation of percent yield

Now we will use the actual yield and the theoretical yield to calculate the percent yield.

Step 1: Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find".

Given: Theoretical yield =15.67 g, use the un-rounded number for the calculation.

Actual yield = 14.9g

Find: Percent yield, % Yield

Step 2: List other known quantities and plan the problem.

No other quantities needed.

Step 3: Use the percent yield equation below.

$$\text{Percent Yield} = \frac{\text{Actual Yield}}{\text{Theoretical Yield}} \times 100\%$$

Step 4: Solve.

$$\text{Percent Yield} = \frac{14.9\ \text{g}}{15.67\ \text{g}} \times 100\% = 94.9\%$$

Step 5: Think about your result.

Since the actual yield is slightly less than the theoretical yield, the percent yield is just under 100%.

Example 12.3.2: Oxidation of Zinc

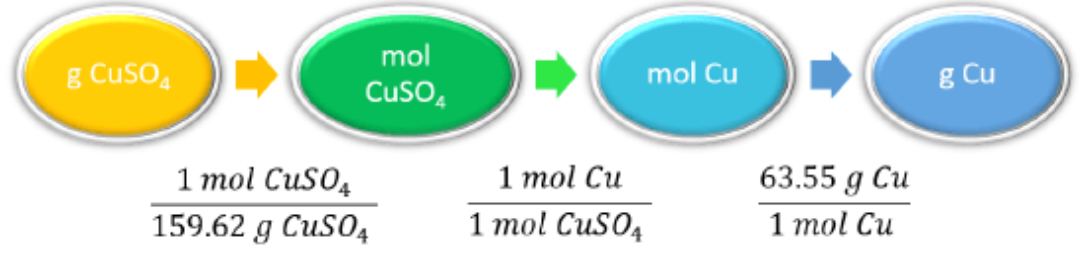
Upon reaction of 1.274 g of copper sulfate with excess zinc metal, 0.392 g copper metal was obtained according to the equation:

$$\mathrm{CuSO_4}(aq) + \mathrm{Zn}(s) \rightarrow \mathrm{Cu}(s) + \mathrm{ZnSO_4}(aq)$$

What is the percent yield?

Solution

Solutions to Example 8.6.2

Steps for Problem Solving-The Product Method	**Example** 12.3.1
Identify the "given" information and what the problem is asking you to "find."	Given: 1.274 g CuSO4 Actual yield = 0.392 g Cu Find: Percent yield
List other known quantities.	1 mol CuSO4= 159.62 g/mol 1 mol Cu = 63.55 g/mol Since the amount of product in grams is not required, only the molar mass of the reactants is needed.
Balance the equation.	The chemical equation is already balanced. The balanced equation provides the relationship of 1 mol CuSO4 to 1 mol Zn to 1 mol Cu to 1 mol ZnSO4.
Prepare a concept map and use the proper conversion factor.	 The provided information identifies copper sulfate as the limiting reactant, and so the theoretical yield (g Cu) is found by performing **mass-mass** calculation based on the initial amount of $CuSO_4$.

Steps for Problem Solving-The Product Method	Example 12.3.1
Cancel units and calculate.	Double subscripts: use braces to clarify Using this theoretical yield and the provided value for actual yield, the percent yield is calculated to be: $$\text{percent yield} = \left(\frac{\text{actual yield}}{\text{theoretical yield}}\right) \times 100$$ $$= \left(\frac{0.392\,g\,\text{Cu}}{0.5072\,g\,\text{Cu}}\right) \times 100$$ $$= 77.3\%$$
Think about your result.	Since the actual yield is slightly less than the theoretical yield, the percent yield is just under 100%.

Exercise 12.3.1

What is the percent yield of a reaction that produces 12.5 g of the Freon CF_2Cl_2 from 32.9 g of CCl_4 and excess HF?

$$CCl_4 + 2\,HF \rightarrow CF_2Cl_2 + 2\,HCl$$

Answer available at the end of this section.

Summary

Theoretical yield is calculated based on the stoichiometry of the chemical equation. The actual yield is experimentally determined. The percent yield is determined by calculating the ratio of actual yield to theoretical yield.

Answers

Exercise 12.3.1

48.3%

This page titled 12.3: Theoretical Yield, and Percent Yield is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 8.7: Limiting Reactant, Theoretical Yield, and Percent Yield from Initial Masses of Reactants by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 3.0.

12.4: Enthalpy Change is a Measure of the Heat Evolved or Absorbed

When physical or chemical changes occur, they are generally accompanied by a transfer of energy. The **law of conservation of energy** states that in any physical or chemical process, energy is neither created nor destroyed. In other words, the entire energy in the universe is conserved. In order to better understand the energy changes taking place during a reaction, we need to define two parts of the universe, called the system and the surroundings. The **system** is the specific portion of matter in a given space that is being studied during an experiment or an observation. The **surroundings** are everything in the universe that is not part of the system. In practical terms for a laboratory chemist, the system is the particular chemicals being reacted, while the surroundings is the immediate vicinity within the room. During most processes, energy is exchanged between the system and the surroundings. If the system loses a certain amount of energy, that same amount of energy is gained by the surroundings. If the system gains a certain amount of energy, that energy is supplied by the surroundings.

A chemical reaction or physical change is **endothermic** if heat is absorbed by the system from the surroundings. In the course of an endothermic process, the system gains heat from the surroundings and so the temperature of the surroundings decreases. The quantity of heat for a process is represented by the letter q. The sign of q for an endothermic process is positive because the system is gaining heat. A chemical reaction or physical change is **exothermic** if heat is released by the system into the surroundings. Because the surroundings are gaining heat from the system, the temperature of the surroundings increases. The sign of q for an exothermic process is negative because the system is losing heat.

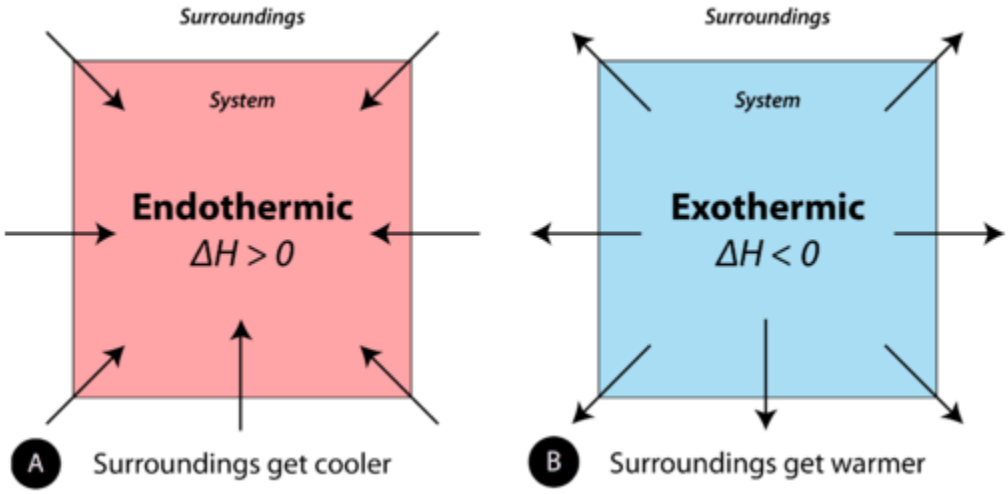


Figure 12.4.1: (A) Endothermic reaction. (B) Exothermic reaction.

Enthalpy

Heat changes in chemical reactions are often measured in the laboratory under conditions in which the reacting system is open to the atmosphere. In that case, the system is at a constant pressure. **Enthalpy** (H) is the heat content of a system at constant pressure. Chemists routinely measure changes in enthalpy of chemical systems as reactants are converted into products. The heat that is absorbed or released by a reaction at constant pressure is the same as the enthalpy change, and is given the symbol ΔH. Unless otherwise specified, all reactions in this material are assumed to take place at constant pressure.

The change in enthalpy of a reaction is a measure of the differences in enthalpy of the reactants and products. The enthalpy of a system is determined by the energies needed to break chemical bonds and the energies needed to form chemical bonds. Energy needs to be put into the system in order to break chemical bonds, as they do not come apart spontaneously in most cases. Bond formation to produce products will involve release of energy. The change in enthalpy shows the trade-offs made in these two processes. Does it take more energy to break bonds than that needed to form bonds? If so, the reaction is endothermic and the enthalpy change is positive. If more energy is produced in bond formation than that needed for bond breaking, the reaction is exothermic and the enthalpy is negative.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CC BY NC SA
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Several factors influence the enthalpy of a system. Enthalpy is an extensive property, determined in part by the amount of material we work with. The state of reactants and products (solid, liquid, or gas) influences the enthalpy value for a system. The direction of the reaction affects the enthalpy value. A reaction that takes place in the opposite direction has the same numerical enthalpy value, but the opposite sign.

Thermochemical Equation

When methane gas is combusted, heat is released, making the reaction exothermic. Specifically, the combustion of $1\ \text{mol}$ of methane releases 890.4 kilojoules of heat energy. This information can be shown as part of the balanced equation:

$$\text{CH}_4\,(g) + 2\text{O}_2\,(g) \rightarrow \text{CO}_2\,(g) + 2\text{H}_2\text{O}\,(l) + 890.4\,\text{kJ}$$

The equation tells us that $1\ \text{mol}$ of methane combines with $2\ \text{mol}$ of oxygen to produce $1\ \text{mol}$ of carbon dioxide and $2\ \text{mol}$ of water. In the process, $890.4\ \text{kJ}$ is released and so it is written as a product of the reaction. A **thermochemical equation** is a chemical equation that includes the enthalpy change of the reaction. The process in the above thermochemical equation can be shown visually in Figure $12.4.2$.

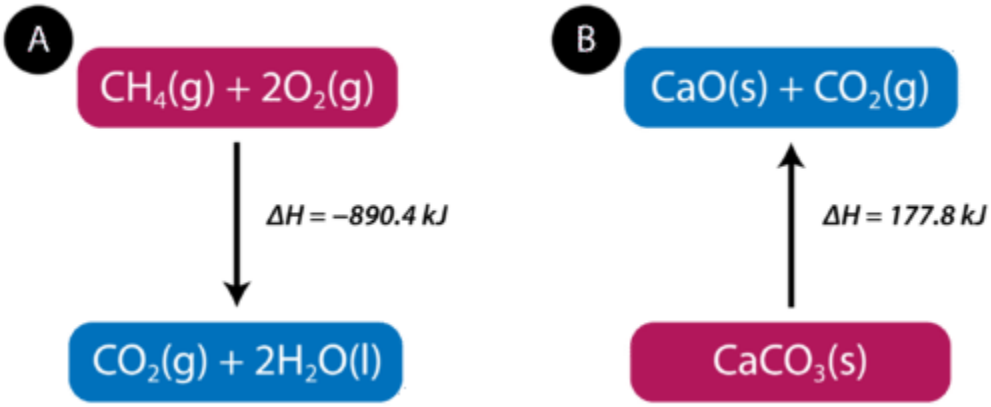


Figure $12.4.2$: (A) As reactants are converted to products in an exothermic reaction, enthalpy is released into the surroundings. The enthalpy change of the reaction is negative. (B) As reactants are converted to products in an endothermic reaction, enthalpy is absorbed from the surroundings. The enthalpy change of the reaction is positive.

In the combustion of methane example, the enthalpy change is negative because heat is being released by the system. Therefore, the overall enthalpy of the system decreases. The **heat of reaction** is the enthalpy change for a chemical reaction. In the case above, the heat of reaction is $-890.4\ \text{kJ}$. The thermochemical reaction can also be written in this way:

$$\text{CH}_4\,(g) + 2\text{O}_2\,(g) \rightarrow \text{CO}_2\,(g) + 2\text{H}_2\text{O}\,(l) \quad \Delta H = -890.4\,\text{kJ}$$

Heats of reaction are typically measured in kilojoules. It is important to include the physical states of the reactants and products in a thermochemical equation as the value of the ΔH depends on those states.

Endothermic reactions absorb energy from the surroundings as the reaction occurs. When $1\ \text{mol}$ of calcium carbonate decomposes into $1\ \text{mol}$ of calcium oxide and $1\ \text{mol}$ of carbon dioxide, $177.8\ \text{kJ}$ of heat is absorbed. The process is shown visually in Figure $12.4.2B$. The thermochemical reaction is shown below.

$$\text{CaCO}_3\,(s) + 177.8\,\text{kJ} \rightarrow \text{CaO}\,(s) + \text{CO}_2\,(g)$$

Because the heat is absorbed by the system, the $177.8\ \text{kJ}$ is written as a reactant. The heat of reaction is positive for an endothermic reaction.

$$\text{CaCO}_3\,(s) \rightarrow \text{CaO}\,(s) + \text{CO}_2\,(g) \quad \Delta H = 177.8\,\text{kJ}$$

The way in which a reaction is written influences the value of the enthalpy change for the reaction. Many reactions are reversible, meaning that the product(s) of the reaction are capable of combining and reforming the reactant(s). If a reaction is written in the reverse direction, the sign of the ΔH changes. For example, we can write an equation for the reaction of calcium oxide with carbon dioxide to form calcium carbonate.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CC BY NC SA
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

$$\mathrm{CaO}\,(s) + \mathrm{CO_2}\,(g) \rightarrow \mathrm{CaCO_3}\,(s) + 177.8\ \mathrm{kJ}$$

The reaction is exothermic and thus the sign of the enthalpy change is negative.

$$\mathrm{CaO}\,(s) + \mathrm{CO_2}\,(g) \rightarrow \mathrm{CaCO_3}\,(s) \quad \Delta H = -177.8\ \mathrm{kJ}$$

Stoichiometric Calculations and Enthalpy Changes

Chemistry problems that involve enthalpy changes can be solved by techniques similar to stoichiometry problems. Refer again to the combustion reaction of methane. Since the reaction of $1\ \mathrm{mol}$ of methane released $890.4\ \mathrm{kJ}$, the reaction of $2\ \mathrm{mol}$ of methane would release $2 \times 890.4\ \mathrm{kJ} = 1781\ \mathrm{kJ}$. The reaction of $0.5\ \mathrm{mol}$ of methane would release $\frac{890,4\ \mathrm{kJ}}{2} = 445.2\ \mathrm{kJ}$. As with other stoichiometry problems, the moles of a reactant or product can be linked to mass or volume.

Example 12.4.1

Sulfur dioxide gas reacts with oxygen to form sulfur trioxide in an exothermic reaction, according to the following thermochemical equation.

$$2\mathrm{SO_2}\,(g) + \mathrm{O_2}\,(g) \rightarrow 2\mathrm{SO_3}\,(g) + 198\ \mathrm{kJ}$$

Calculate the enthalpy change that occurs when $58.0\ \mathrm{g}$ of sulfur dioxide is reacted with excess oxygen.

Solution

Step 1: List the known quantities and plan the problem.

- Mass $\mathrm{SO_2} = 58.0\ \mathrm{g}$
- Molar mass $\mathrm{SO_2} = 64.07\ \mathrm{g/mol}$
- $\Delta H = -198\ \mathrm{kJ}$ for the reaction of $2\ \mathrm{mol}\ \mathrm{SO_2}$

Unknown

- $\Delta H = ?\ \mathrm{kJ}$

The calculation requires two steps. The mass of $\mathrm{SO_2}$ is converted to moles. Then the moles of $\mathrm{SO_2}$ is multiplied by the conversion factor of $\left(\frac{-198\ \mathrm{kJ}}{2\ \mathrm{mol\ SO_2}}\right)$.

Step 2: Solve.

$$\Delta H = 58.0\ \mathrm{g\ SO_2} \times \frac{1\ \mathrm{mol\ SO_2}}{64.07\ \mathrm{g\ SO_2}} \times \frac{-198\ \mathrm{kJ}}{2\ \mathrm{mol\ SO_2}} = 89.6\ \mathrm{kJ}$$

Step 3: Think about your result.

The mass of sulfur dioxide is slightly less than $1\ \mathrm{mol}$. Since $198\ \mathrm{kJ}$ is released for every $2\ \mathrm{mol}$ of $\mathrm{SO_2}$ that reacts, the heat released when about $1\ \mathrm{mol}$ reacts is one half of 198. The $89.6\ \mathrm{kJ}$ is slightly less than half of 198. The sign of ΔH is negative because the reaction is exothermic.

This page titled 12.4: Enthalpy Change is a Measure of the Heat Evolved or Absorbed is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 8.8: Enthalpy Change is a Measure of the Heat Evolved or Absorbed by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

12.E: Stoichiometry Applications (Exercises)

The following questions are related to the material covered in this chapter. For additional discussion on each topic, also check the links included in each heading.

5.1: Stoichiometry

1. Think back to the pound cake recipe. What possible conversion factors can you construct relating the components of the recipe?
2. Think back to the pancake recipe. What possible conversion factors can you construct relating the components of the recipe?
3. What are all the conversion factors that can be constructed from the balanced chemical reaction:

$$2\,H_2\,(g) + O_2\,(g) \longrightarrow 2\,H_2O(\ell)? \tag{12.E.1}$$

4. What are all the conversion factors that can be constructed from the balanced chemical reaction $N_2(g) + 3H_2(g) \rightarrow 2NH_3(g)$?
5. Given the chemical equation : $Na(s) + H_2O(\ell) \rightarrow NaOH(aq) + H_2(g)$
   a. Balance the equation.
   b. How many molecules of H_2 are produced when 332 atoms of Na react?
6. Given the chemical equation: $S(s) + O_2(g) \rightarrow SO_3(g)$
   a. Balance the equation.
   b. How many molecules of O_2 are needed when 38 atoms of S react?
7. For the balanced chemical equation:

$6H^+(aq) + 2MnO_4^-(aq) + 5H_2O_2(\ell) \rightarrow 2Mn^{2+}(aq) + 5O_2(g) + 8H_2O(\ell)$

how many molecules of H_2O are produced when 75 molecules of H_2O_2 react?

8. For the balanced chemical reaction $2C_6H_6(\ell) + 15O_2(g) \rightarrow 12CO_2(g) + 6H_2O(\ell)$

   how many molecules of CO_2 are produced when 56 molecules of C_6H_6 react?

9. Given the balanced chemical equation $Fe_2O_3(s) + 3SO_3(g) \rightarrow Fe_2(SO_4)_3$

   how many molecules of $Fe_2(SO_4)_3$ are produced if 321 atoms of S are reacted?

10. For the balanced chemical equation $CuO(s) + H_2S(g) \rightarrow CuS + H_2O(\ell)$

    how many molecules of CuS are formed if 9,044 atoms of H react?

11. For the balanced chemical equation $Fe_2O_3(s) + 3SO_3(g) \rightarrow Fe_2(SO_4)_3$

    suppose we need to make 145,000 molecules of $Fe_2(SO_4)_3$. How many molecules of SO_3 do we need?

12. One way to make sulfur hexafluoride is to react thioformaldehyde, CH_2S, with elemental fluorine:

$CH_2S + 6F_2 \rightarrow CF_4 + 2HF + SF_6$

If 45,750 molecules of SF_6 are needed, how many molecules of F_2 are required?

13. Construct the three independent conversion factors possible for these two reactions:
    a. $2H_2 + O_2 \rightarrow 2H_2O$
    b. $H_2 + O_2 \rightarrow H_2O_2$

Why are the ratios between H_2 and O_2 different?

The conversion factors are different because the stoichiometries of the balanced chemical reactions are different.

14. Construct the three independent conversion factors possible for these two reactions:
    a. 2Na + Cl2 → 2NaCl
    b. 4Na + 2Cl2 → 4NaCl

What similarities, if any, exist in the conversion factors from these two reactions?

Answers

1. $$\frac{1\,pound\,butter}{1\,pound\,flour} \tag{12.E.2}$$

   or

   $$\frac{1\,pound\,sugar}{1\,pound\,eggs} \tag{12.E.3}$$

   are two conversion factors that can be constructed from the pound cake recipe. Other conversion factors are also possible.
2.
3. 2 molecules H21 molecule O2" role="presentation" style="position:relative;" tabindex="0">

   $$\frac{2\,molecules\,H_2}{1\,molecule\,O_2} \tag{12.E.4}$$

   ,

   $$\frac{1\,molecule\,O_2}{2\,molecules\,H_2O} \tag{12.E.5}$$

   ,

   $$\frac{2\,molecules\,H_2}{2\,molecules\,H_2O} \tag{12.E.6}$$

   and their reciprocals are the conversion factors that can be constructed. 2 molecules H21 molecule O2" role="presentation" style="position:relative;" tabindex="0">
4.
5. a. 2Na(s) + 2H2O(ℓ) → 2NaOH(aq) + H2(g)
   b. 166 molecules
6.
7. 120 molecules
8.
9. 107 molecules
10.
11. 435,000 molecules
12.
13. a. $$\frac{2\,molecules\,H_2}{1\,molecule\,O_2}, \frac{1\,molecule\,O_2}{2\,molecules\,H_2O}, \frac{2\,molecules\,H_2}{2\,molecules\,H_2O} \tag{12.E.7}$$
    b. $$\frac{1\,molecules\,H_2}{1\,molecule\,O_2}, \frac{1\,molecule\,O_2}{2\,molecules\,H_2O_2}, \frac{1\,molecule\,H_2}{1\,molecule\,H_2O_2} \tag{12.E.8}$$

5.4: Mole-Mass and Mass-Mass Calculations

1. What mass of CO2 is produced by the combustion of 1.00 mol of CH4?CH4(g) + 2O2(g) → CO2(g) + 2H2O(ℓ)
2. What mass of H2O is produced by the combustion of 1.00 mol of CH4? CH4(g) + 2O2(g) → CO2(g) + 2H2O(ℓ)
3. What mass of HgO is required to produce 0.692 mol of O2? 2HgO(s) → 2Hg(ℓ) + O2(g)
4. What mass of NaHCO3 is needed to produce 2.659 mol of CO2? 2NaHCO3(s) → Na2CO3(s) + H2O(ℓ) + CO2(g)
5. How many moles of Al can be produced from 10.87 g of Ag? Al(NO3) 3(s) + 3Ag → Al + 3AgNO3
6. How many moles of HCl can be produced from 0.226 g of SOCl2? SOCl2(ℓ) + H2O(ℓ) → SO2(g) + 2HCl(g)

7. How many moles of O_2 are needed to prepare 1.00 g of $Ca(NO_3)_2$? $Ca(s) + N_2(g) + 3O_2(g) \rightarrow Ca(NO_3)_2(s)$
8. How many moles of C_2H_5OH are needed to generate 106.7 g of H_2O? $C_2H_5OH(\ell) + 3O_2(g) \rightarrow 2CO_2(g) + 3H_2O(\ell)$
9. What mass of O_2 can be generated by the decomposition of 100.0 g of $NaClO_3$? $2NaClO_3 \rightarrow 2NaCl(s) + 3O_2(g)$
10. What mass of Li_2O is needed to react with 1,060 g of CO_2? $Li_2O(aq) + CO_2(g) \rightarrow Li_2CO_3(aq)$
11. What mass of Fe_2O_3 must be reacted to generate 324 g of Al_2O_3? $Fe_2O_3(s) + 2Al(s) \rightarrow 2Fe(s) + Al_2O_3(s)$
12. What mass of Fe is generated when 100.0 g of Al are reacted? $Fe_2O_3(s) + 2Al(s) \rightarrow 2Fe(s) + Al_2O_3(s)$
13. What mass of MnO_2 is produced when 445 g of H_2O are reacted? $H_2O(\ell) + 2MnO_4^-(aq) + Br^-(aq) \rightarrow BrO_3^-(aq) + 2MnO_2(s) + 2OH^-(aq)$
14. What mass of $PbSO_4$ is produced when 29.6 g of H_2SO_4 are reacted? $Pb(s) + PbO_2(s) + 2H_2SO_4(aq) \rightarrow 2PbSO_4(s) + 2H_2O(\ell)$
15. If 83.9 g of ZnO are formed, what mass of Mn_2O_3 is formed with it? $Zn(s) + 2MnO_2(s) \rightarrow ZnO(s) + Mn_2O_3(s)$
16. If 14.7 g of NO_2 are reacted, what mass of H_2O is reacted with it? $3NO_2(g) + H_2O(\ell) \rightarrow 2HNO_3(aq) + NO(g)$
17. If 88.4 g of CH_2S are reacted, what mass of HF is produced? $CH_2S + 6F_2 \rightarrow CF_4 + 2HF + SF_6$
18. If 100.0 g of Cl_2 are needed, what mass of NaOCl must be reacted?

    $NaOCl + HCl \rightarrow NaOH + Cl_2$

Answers

1. 44.0 g
2.
3. 3.00×10^2 g
4.
5. 0.0336 mol
6.
7. 0.0183 mol
8.
9. 45.1 g
10.
11. 507 g
12.
13. 4.30×10^3 g
14.
15. 163 g
16.
17. 76.7 g

5.5: Yields

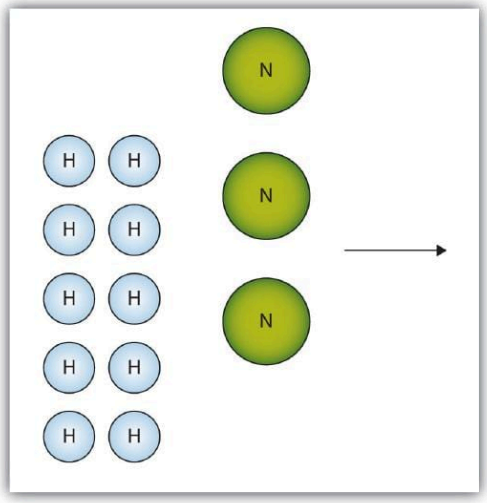
1. What is the difference between the theoretical yield and the actual yield?
2. What is the difference between the actual yield and the percent yield?
3. A worker isolates 2.675 g of SiF_4 after reacting 2.339 g of SiO_2 with HF. What are the theoretical yield and the actual yield? $SiO_2(s) + 4HF(g) \rightarrow SiF_4(g) + 2H_2O(\ell)$
4. A worker synthesizes aspirin, $C_9H_8O_4$, according to this chemical equation. If 12.66 g of $C_7H_6O_3$ are reacted and 12.03 g of aspirin are isolated, what are the theoretical yield and the actual yield? $C_7H_6O_3 + C_4H_6O_3 \rightarrow C_9H_8O_4 + HC_2H_3O_2$
5. A chemist decomposes 1.006 g of $NaHCO_3$ and obtains 0.0334 g of Na_2CO_3. What are the theoretical yield and the actual yield? $2NaHCO_3(s) \rightarrow Na_2CO_3(s) + H_2O(\ell) + CO_2(g)$
6. A chemist combusts a 3.009 g sample of C_5H_{12} and obtains 3.774 g of H_2O. What are the theoretical yield and the actual yield? $C_5H_{12}(\ell) + 8O_2(g) \rightarrow 5CO_2 + 6H_2O(\ell)$
7. What is the percent yield in Exercise 3?
8. What is the percent yield in Exercise 4?
9. What is the percent yield in Exercise 5?
10. What is the percent yield in Exercise 6?

Answers

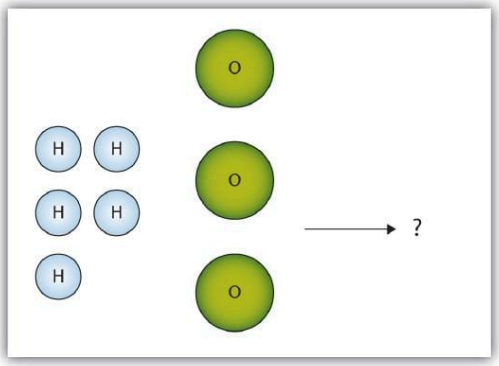
1. Theoretical yield is what you expect stoichiometrically from a chemical reaction; actual yield is what you actually get from a chemical reaction.
2.
3. theoretical yield = 4.052 g; actual yield = 2.675 g
4.
5. theoretical yield = 0.635 g; actual yield = 0.0334 g
6.
7. 66.02%
8.
9. 5.26%

5.6: Limiting Reagents

1. The box below shows a group of nitrogen and hydrogen molecules that will react to produce ammonia, NH_3. What is the limiting reagent?



2. The box below shows a group of hydrogen and oxygen molecules that will react to produce water, H_2O. What is the limiting reagent?



3. Given the statement "20.0 g of methane is burned in excess oxygen," is it obvious which reactant is the limiting reagent?
4. Given the statement "the metal is heated in the presence of excess hydrogen," is it obvious which substance is the limiting reagent despite not specifying any quantity of reactant?
5. Acetylene (C_2H_2) is formed by reacting 7.08 g of C and 4.92 g of H_2. $2C(s) + H_2(g) \rightarrow C_2H_2(g)$

   What is the limiting reagent? How much of the other reactant is in excess?

6. Ethane (C_2H_6) is formed by reacting 7.08 g of C and 4.92 g of H_2. $2C(s) + 3H_2(g) \rightarrow C_2H_6(g)$

   What is the limiting reagent? How much of the other reactant is in excess?

7. Given the initial amounts listed, what is the limiting reagent, and how much of the other reactant is in excess?

$$\underset{35.6\ g}{P_4O_6(s)} + \underset{4.77\ g}{6H_2O(l)} \rightarrow 4H_3PO_4 \tag{12.E.9}$$

8. Given the initial amounts listed, what is the limiting reagent, and how much of the other reactant is in excess?

$$\underset{377\ g}{3NO_2(g)} + \underset{244\ g}{H_2O(l)} \rightarrow 2HNO_3(aq) + NO(g) \tag{12.E.10}$$

9. To form the precipitate $PbCl_2$, 2.88 g of NaCl and 7.21 g of $Pb(NO_3)_2$ are mixed in solution. How much precipitate is formed? How much of which reactant is in excess?

10. In a neutralization reaction, 18.06 g of KOH are reacted with 13.43 g of HNO_3. What mass of H_2O is produced, and what

mass of which reactant is in excess?

Answers

1. Nitrogen is the limiting reagent.
2.
3. Yes; methane is the limiting reagent.
4.
5. C is the limiting reagent; 4.33 g of H_2 are left over.
6.
7. H_2O is the limiting reagent; 25.9 g of P_4O_6 are left over.
8.
9. 6.06 g of $PbCl_2$ are formed; 0.33 g of NaCl is left over.

7 Energy and Chemical Processes

1. Sulfur dioxide (SO_2) is a pollutant gas that is one cause of acid rain. It is oxidized in the atmosphere to sulfur trioxide (SO_3), which then combines with water to make sulfuric acid (H_2SO_4).

- Write the balanced reaction for the oxidation of SO_2 to make SO_3. (The other reactant is diatomic oxygen.)
- When 1 mol of SO_2 reacts to make SO_3, 23.6 kcal of energy are given off. If 100 lb (1 lb = 454 g) of SO_2 were converted to SO_3, what would be the total energy change?

2. Ammonia (NH_3) is made by the direct combination of H_2 and N_2 gases according to this reaction:

$N_2(g) + 3H_2(g) \rightarrow 2NH_3(g) + 22.0$ kcal

- Is this reaction endothermic or exothermic?
- What is the overall energy change if 1,500 g of N_2 are reacted to make ammonia?

3. A 5.69 g sample of iron metal was heated in boiling water to 99.8°C. Then it was dropped into a beaker containing 100.0 g of H_2O at 22.6°C. Assuming that the water gained all the heat lost by the iron, what is the final temperature of the H_2O and Fe?

4. A 5.69 g sample of copper metal was heated in boiling water to 99.8°C. Then it was dropped into a beaker containing 100.0 g of H_2O at 22.6°C. Assuming that the water gained all the heat lost by the copper, what is the final temperature of the H_2O and Cu?

5. When 1 g of steam condenses, 540 cal of energy is released. How many grams of ice can be melted with 540 cal?

6. When 1 g of water freezes, 79.9 cal of energy is released. How many grams of water can be boiled with 79.9 cal?

7. The change in energy is +65.3 kJ for each mole of calcium hydroxide [$Ca(OH)_2$] according to the following reaction:

$Ca(OH)_2(s) \rightarrow CaO(s) + H_2O(g)$

8. How many grams of $Ca(OH)_2$ could be reacted if 575 kJ of energy were available?

9. The thermite reaction gives off so much energy that the elemental iron formed as a product is typically produced in the liquid state:

$2Al(s) + Fe_2O_3(s) \rightarrow Al_2O_3(s) + 2Fe(\ell) + 204$ kcal

How much heat will be given off if 250 g of Fe are to be produced?

10. A normal adult male requires 2,500 kcal per day to maintain his metabolism.

- Nutritionists recommend that no more than 30% of the calories in a person's diet come from fat. At 9 kcal/g, what is the maximum mass of fat an adult male should consume daily?
- At 4 kcal/g each, how many grams of protein and carbohydrates should an adult male consume daily?

11. A normal adult male requires 2,500 kcal per day to maintain his metabolism.

- At 9 kcal/g, what mass of fat would provide that many kilocalories if the diet was composed of nothing but fats?
- At 4 kcal/g each, what mass of protein and/or carbohydrates is needed to provide that many kilocalories?

12. The volume of the world's oceans is approximately 1.34×10^{24} cm^3.

- How much energy would be needed to increase the temperature of the world's oceans by 1°C? Assume that the heat capacity of the oceans is the same as pure water.
- If Earth receives 6.0×10^{22} J of energy per day from the sun, how many days would it take to warm the oceans by 1°C, assuming all the energy went into warming the water?

13. Does a substance that has a small specific heat require a small or large amount of energy to change temperature? Explain.

14. Some biology textbooks represent the conversion of adenosine triphosphate (ATP) to adenosine diphosphate (ADP) and phosphate ions as follows:

ATP → ADP + phosphate + energy

What is wrong with this reaction?

15. Assuming that energy changes are additive, how much energy is required to change 15.0 g of ice at –15°C to 15.0 g of steam at 115°C? (Hint: you will have five processes to consider.)

Answers

1. $2SO_2 + O_2 \rightarrow 2SO_3$
2. 16,700 kcal

2.

exothermic 1177 kcal

about 23.1°C

4. about 23.0°C

5. 6.76 g

6. 0.148 g

652 g

8. 457 kcal

1. 83.3 g
2. 438 g

10.

a. 278 g

b. 625 g

11.

1.34×10^{24} cal 93 days

12. A substance with **smaller specific heat** requires **less energy** per unit of mass to raise its temperature,

13. A reactant is missing: H_2O is missing.

14. Total energy = 11,019 cal

5.7: Additional Exercises

1. How many molecules of O_2 will react with 6.022×10^{23} molecules of H_2 to make water? The reaction is $2H_2(g) + O_2(g) \rightarrow 2H_2O(\ell)$.
2. How many molecules of H_2 will react with 6.022×10^{23} molecules of N_2 to make ammonia? The reaction is $N_2(g) + 3H_2(g) \rightarrow 2NH_3(g)$.
3. How many moles are present in 6.411 kg of CO_2? How many molecules is this?
4. How many moles are present in 2.998 mg of SCl_4? How many molecules is this?
5. What is the mass in milligrams of 7.22×10^{20} molecules of CO_2?
6. What is the mass in kilograms of 3.408×10^{25} molecules of SiS_2?
7. What is the mass in grams of 1 molecule of H_2O?
8. What is the mass in grams of 1 atom of Al?
9. What is the volume of 3.44 mol of Ga if the density of Ga is 6.08 g/mL?
10. What is the volume of 0.662 mol of He if the density of He is 0.1785 g/L?
11. For the chemical reaction $2C_4H_{10}(g) + 13O_2(g) \rightarrow 8CO_2(g) + 10H_2O(\ell)$

    assume that 13.4 g of C_4H_{10} reacts completely to products. The density of CO_2 is 1.96 g/L. What volume in liters of CO_2 is produced?

12. For the chemical reaction $2GaCl_3(s) + 3H_2(g) \rightarrow 2Ga(\ell) + 6HCl(g)$

    if 223 g of $GaCl_3$ reacts completely to products and the density of Ga is 6.08 g/mL, what volume in milliliters of Ga is produced?

13. Calculate the mass of each product when 100.0 g of CuCl react according to the reaction $2CuCl(aq) \rightarrow CuCl_2(aq) + Cu(s)$

    What do you notice about the sum of the masses of the products? What concept is being illustrated here?

14. Calculate the mass of each product when 500.0 g of $SnCl_2$ react according to the reaction $2SnCl_2(aq) \rightarrow SnCl_4(aq) + Sn(s)$

    What do you notice about the sum of the masses of the products? What concept is being illustrated here?

15. What mass of CO_2 is produced from the combustion of 1 gal of gasoline? The chemical formula of gasoline can be approximated as C_8H_{18}. Assume that there are 2,801 g of gasoline per gallon.
16. What mass of H_2O is produced from the combustion of 1 gal of gasoline? The chemical formula of gasoline can be approximated as C_8H_{18}. Assume that there are 2,801 g of gasoline per gallon.
17. A chemical reaction has a theoretical yield of 19.98 g and a percent yield of 88.40%. What is the actual yield?
18. A chemical reaction has an actual yield of 19.98 g and a percent yield of 88.40%. What is the theoretical yield?
19. Given the initial amounts listed, what is the limiting reagent, and how much of the other reactants are in excess?

$$\underset{35.0\ g}{P_4} + 3NaOH + \underset{9.33\ g}{3H_2O} \rightarrow 2Na_2HPO_4 + PH_3 \tag{12.E.11}$$

20. Given the initial amounts listed, what is the limiting reagent, and how much of the other reactants are in excess?

$$\underset{46.3\ g}{2NaCrO_2} + \underset{88.2\ g}{3NaBrO_4} + \underset{32.5\ g}{2NaOH} \rightarrow 3NaBrO_3 + 2Na_2CrO_4 + H_2O \tag{12.E.12}$$

21. Verify that it does not matter which product you use to predict the limiting reagent by using both products in this combustion reaction to determine the limiting reagent and the amount of the reactant in excess. Initial amounts of each reactant are given.

$$\underset{26.3\ g}{C_3H_8} + \underset{21.8\ g}{5O_2} \rightarrow 3CO_2(g) + 4H_2O(l) \tag{12.E.13}$$

22. Just in case you suspect Exercise 21 is rigged, do it for another chemical reaction and verify that it does not matter which product you use to predict the limiting reagent by using both products in this combustion reaction to determine the limiting reagent and the amount of the reactant in excess. Initial amounts of each reactant are given.

$$\underset{35.0\ g}{2P_4} + \underset{12.7\ g}{6NaOH} + \underset{9.33\ g}{6H_2O} \rightarrow 3Na_2HPO_4 + 5PH_3 \tag{12.E.14}$$

1. 1.2044 × 10^{24} molecules
2.
3. 145.7 mol; 8.77 × 10^{25} molecules
4.
5. 52.8 mg
6.
7. 2.99 × 10^{-23} g
8.
9. 39.4 mL
10.
11. 20.7 L
12.
13. 67.91 g of $CuCl_2$; 32.09 g of Cu. The two masses add to 100.0 g, the initial amount of starting material, demonstrating the law of conservation of matter.
14.
15. 8,632 g
16.
17. 17.66 g
18.
19. The limiting reagent is NaOH; 21.9 g of P_4 and 3.61 g of H_2O are left over.

20.

21. Both products predict that O_2 is the limiting reagent; 20.3 g of C_3H_8 are left over.

This page titled 12.E: Stoichiometry Applications (Exercises) is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

13: OXIDATION AND REDUCTION

An Introductory Chemistry Libretexts Textmap organized around Tro's textbook
Introductory Chemistry

Template:HideTOC

The rusting of an old car. A burning campfire. A toy battery-operated car. The chemical processes in your body that break down carbohydrates to produce water, carbon dioxide and energy. The ripening of fruit. It's not easy to see what all of these types of reactions have in common, but they all belong to a very important category of chemical reactions known as oxidation-reduction (or redox) reactions.

13.1: Oxidation and Reduction- Some Definitions

13.2: Keeping Track of Redox Reactions

13.2.1: Oxidation States - Electron Bookkeeping

13.2.2: Determining Redox Reactions from Oxidation States

13.2.3: Balancing Redox Equations

13.3: Applications of Redox Reactions

13.3.1: The Activity Series- Predicting Spontaneous Redox Reactions

13.3.2: Batteries- Using Chemistry to Generate Electricity

13.3.3: Corrosion - Undesirable Redox Reactions

13.3.4: Electrolysis- Using Electricity to Do Chemistry

13.E: Oxidation and Reduction (Exercises)

Template:HideTOC

This page titled 13: Oxidation and Reduction is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

13.1: Oxidation and Reduction- Some Definitions

"Redox" is short for "oxidation and reduction", two complimentary types of chemical reactions. The term **oxidation** originally referred to substances combining with oxygen, as happens when an iron bar rusts or a campfire log burns. We often refer to these two examples as corrosion and combustion. **Reduction** originally referred to the process of converting metal ores to pure metals, a process that is accompanied by a reduction in the mass of the ore.

These two terms have broader meanings now. In all oxidation-reduction reactions, an exchange of electrons occurs—one substance loses electrons while another gains them. That is the key to understanding redox reactions. We'll define these terms below.



Figure 13.1.1: *Reaction of copper wire in a silver nitrate solution.*

A simple demonstration of a redox reaction involves placing a solid piece of copper wire in a silver nitrate solution. Within minutes, the wire begins to look fuzzy or furry as small silver crystals begin to form on the wire. Meanwhile, the originally clear silver nitrate solution begins to take on a pale bluish tint. Furthermore, if the crystals are shaken off of the wire, we see that the wire partially disintegrated.

The overall equation for our demonstration describes the events:

$$\mathrm{Cu\,(s) + 2\,AgNO_3\,(aq) \longrightarrow Cu(NO_3)_2\,(aq) + 2\,Ag\,(s)} \tag{13.1.1}$$

You may notice that this is a single replacement reaction. You may also notice that this reaction occurs in aqueous solution, and that we could write this reaction as either a complete or net ionic equation. Remember that when we have aqueous solutions of ionic compounds, the ions are really present as separate ions, not as bonded particles. So we can write an expanded equation:

$$\mathrm{Cu\,(s) + 2\,Ag^{+}\,(aq) + 2\,NO_3^{-}\,(aq) \longrightarrow Cu^{2+}\,(aq) + 2\,NO_3^{-}\,(aq) + 2\,Ag\,(s)} \tag{13.1.2}$$

Finally we remove spectator ions from the equation. Remember that spectator ions are ions that undergo no change during a reaction. Notice the nitrate ions, NO_3^-, they start as aqueous ions and end up exactly the same.

Removing the spectator ions gives us our **net ionic equation:**

$$\mathrm{Cu\,(s) + 2\,Ag^{+}\,(aq) \longrightarrow Cu^{2+}\,(aq) + 2\,Ag\,(s)} \tag{13.1.3}$$

We can now see a bit more clearly what changes are occurring with this reaction.

Oxidation of Copper Metal to Make Copper Ions

Copper began as a neutral atom with no charge, but changed into an ion with a charge of +2. An atom becomes a positive ion by losing electrons:

$$\mathrm{Cu\,(s)} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Cu^{2+}\,(aq)} + 2\,\mathrm{e^-} \tag{13.1.4}$$

Notice that copper began as a solid, but is converted into aqueous ions—this is why the copper wire disintegrates. We say that copper was **oxidized** because it has lost electrons (i.e., electrons appear on the product side of the Equation 13.1.4).

Reduction of Silver Ions to Make Silver Metal

Silver was converted from an ion with a charge of +1, Ag+, to a neutral atom, Ag. The only way an ion can undergo this change is to gain an electron:

$$\mathrm{Ag^+\,(aq)} + \mathrm{e^-} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Ag\,(s)} \tag{13.1.5}$$

Notice that solid silver is formed—this is what causes the fuzzy appearance to begin appearing on the wire—solid silver crystals. Silver has gained electrons, it has been reduced (i.e., electrons appear on the reactant side of Equation 13.1.5).

The electrons that silver gained had to come from somewhere—they came from copper. Conversely, a substance such as copper can only lose electrons if there is something else that will take them up, the silver ions. **One cannot occur without the other**. This exchange of electrons is what defines an **oxidation-reduction reaction**.

Definition: Oxidation

Oxidation is the **loss** of electrons.

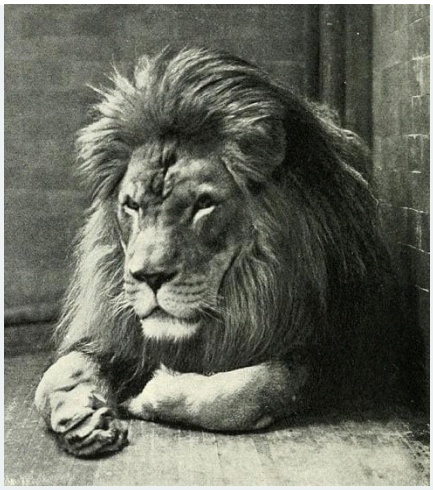
Definition: Reduction

Reduction is the **gain** of electrons.

You will be learning several new terms in this chapter and it is important that you learn them very quickly. You may find it useful to have some tricks to help you remember these terms, including the LEO/GER.

LEO the Lion Says GER

- LEO: Loss of Electrons is Oxidation.
- GER: Gain of Electrons is Reduction.



For simple single replacement reactions between metals such as the one examined here, it can be fairly straightforward to determine which of the metals is oxidized and which is reduced. The metal in its elemental form which is a reactant will always be oxidized because metals tend to lose electrons when they react. Conversely, the metal in its elemental form which is a product will always have been reduced, because it would need to gain electrons to revert from an anion back to its elemental form. Such reactions can be inspected to determine which element is oxidized and which is reduced.

However, there are many redox reactions which are much more complicated than this and need additional considerations in order to make this determination. In the next section, we will discuss the process used for such a determination.

This page titled 13.1: Oxidation and Reduction- Some Definitions is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

13.2: KEEPING TRACK OF REDOX REACTIONS

There are many important redox reactions, and not all of them can be solved by inspection. For reactions which are more complicated than the simple single replacement reactions introduced in the last section, we need to have ways of keeping track of the movement of electrons. We do this through a process of electron bookkeeping. This process starts with assigning oxidation numbers to each element. Changes in these oxidation numbers are indications of the movement of electrons, and therefore what is oxidized and what is reduced. When balancing a redox reaction, it is important to keep track of the electrons and not just the atoms. Each of these topics will be covered in one of the subsections of this section.

13.2.1: Oxidation States - Electron Bookkeeping

13.2.2: Determining Redox Reactions from Oxidation States

13.2.3: Balancing Redox Equations

This page titled 13.2: Keeping Track of Redox Reactions is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

13.2.1: Oxidation States - Electron Bookkeeping

Redox reactions are all about electrons being transferred from one substance to another, so it is useful to have a system for keeping track of what gains and what loses electrons, and how many electrons are involved. The record-keeping system for redox reactions is called **Oxidation Numbers.** You may also remember something called **electronegativity** from earlier chemistry classes.

Electronegativity

The ability of a bonded atom to attract shared electrons toward itself.

When two atoms of different elements are bonded together by a covalent bond (sharing electrons), the electrons are generally not shared equally between the two atoms due to differences in their electronegativities. Think of this as a tug-of-war for electrons. Sometimes both atoms pull with equal strength on shared electrons; other times there is clearly a stronger player that will pull the electrons closer to itself.

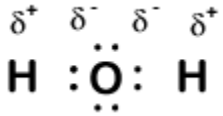
Consider the bond between a hydrogen atom (with one valence electron) and an oxygen atom (with its six valence electrons):



Because oxygen has a higher electronegativity than hydrogen, the shared electrons are closer to the oxygen atom than to the hydrogen atom. This is not the total transfer of electrons that would create an ion, but partial charges do form. The hydrogen end of the bond is partially positive (+1) because it has partially lost one electron, and the oxygen end of the H–O is partially negative (-1) because it has partially gained the one electron from hydrogen:



Our molecule is incomplete, however, because there is a lone electron around oxygen. Let's add one more hydrogen to complete our water molecule:



We see that each of the two hydrogens has "lost" one electron to oxygen. Oxygen has "gained" two electrons—one from each hydrogen. Again, these are not true ions, but it is useful to think of them in the same way.

Charges given to atoms in a molecule in this way are called **oxidation numbers**. We can use oxidation numbers to keep track of where electrons are in a molecule, and how they move during a reaction. In our water example, hydrogen is assigned an oxidation number of +1 because each individual hydrogen has "lost" one electron. Oxygen has an oxidation number of -2 because the single oxygen atom has "gained" a total of two electrons, one from each hydrogen.

Here is another molecule involving hydrogen and oxygen—hydrogen peroxide, H_2O_2:



In hydrogen peroxide, each hydrogen still has an oxidation number of +1 because each hydrogen "gives up" a single electron to oxygen. Oxygen, however, now has an oxidation number of -1 because each oxygen gains just one electron from its neighboring hydrogen. The electrons between the two identical oxygen atoms are shared equally, so there is no partial charge resulting from that bond.

Oxidation Number

A positive or negative number assigned to an atom in a molecule or ion that reflects a partial gain or loss of electrons.

Knowing the oxidation number of each individual element in a molecule will be a key step in our understanding of redox reactions. Fortunately it will not usually involve drawing electron dot diagrams. Instead, there are a series of rules that we can use to determine oxidation numbers. Here are the main rules:

1. The oxidation number of a pure element (by itself, and not an ion) is zero.

Element	Oxidation Number
Na	0
H_2	0
O_2	0
P_4	0

2. The oxidation number of a monatomic ion (by itself or as part of an ionic compound) is equal to its charge.

Alkali metals—elements in the first column of the periodic table—will always have an oxidation number of +1;
Alkaline earth metals (column 2) are almost always +2.

Ionic Compound	Ions	Charge	Oxidation Number
NaCl	Na^+	+1	+1
	Cl^-	-1	-1
Mg_3N_2	Mg^{+2}	+2	+2
	N^{-3}	-3	-3

3. The oxidation number of hydrogen is almost always +1 when it is in a compound.

Compound	Element	Oxidation Number
HCl	H	+1
	Cl	-1
H_2S	H	+1
	S	-2

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CC BY NC SA
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

1. **The oxidation number of a pure element (by itself, and not an ion) is zero.**

Element	Oxidation Number
Na	0
H_2	0
O_2	0
P_4	0

4.

The oxidation number of oxygen is almost always -2 when it is in a compound.

The exceptions:

- Peroxides, such as hydrogen peroxide. In peroxides, oxygen has an oxidation number of -1.
- When oxygen is combined with fluorine, its oxidation number is +2.

Compound	Element	Oxidation Number
MgO magnesium oxide	Mg	+2
	O	-2
Na_2O sodium oxide	Na	+1
	O	-2
Na_2O_2 sodium peroxide	Na	+1
	O	-1

5.

The sum of the oxidation numbers in a compound is zero.

To determine the oxidation number of Mn in Mn_2O_7, we must work backwards:

- We know each oxygen is -2 (Rule 4).
- 7 oxygen gives a total of:

$$-2 \times 7 \text{ atoms} = -14 \text{ total}$$

Since the sum of oxidation numbers must be zero, the total oxidation number of Mn must be +14 to cancel out oxygen's -14, but since there are 2 Mn atoms, each **individual atom** will have an oxidation number of +7:

$$\frac{+14 \text{ total}}{2 \text{ Mn atoms}} = +7$$

Compound	Element	Oxidation Number	Number of Atoms	Total
Mg_3N_2	Mg	+2	3	+6
	N	-3	2	-6
			SUM	0
Mn_2O_7	Mn	+7	2	+14
	O	-2	7	-14
			SUM	**0**
Cl_2O_3	Cl	+3	2	+6
	O	-2	3	-6
			SUM	**0**

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CC BY NC SA
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

1. **The oxidation number of a pure element (by itself, and not an ion) is zero.**

Element	Oxidation Number
Na	0
H_2	0
O_2	0
P_4	0

6.

The sum of the oxidation numbers in a polyatomic ion is equal to the charge on that ion.

Again, work backwards to determine the oxidation number of any non-oxygen or non-hydrogen atom.

To determine the oxidation number of Cr in $Cr_2O_7^{2-}$:

- Oxygen will be -2 (Rule 4), for a total of:

$$-2 \times 7 = -14$$

- Since the sum of the oxidation numbers will be -2 (the charge on the entire ion), the total for all Cr must be +12 because:

$$\mathbf{+12} + (-14) = -2$$

- Since there are two Cr, each Cr will have an oxidation number of +6.

$$= +7$$

$$\frac{+12}{2} = +6$$

Compound	Element	Oxidation Number	Number of Atoms	Total
NO_3^-	N	+5	1	+5
	O	-2	3	-6
			SUM	-1
$Cr_2O_7^{2-}$	Cr	+6	2	+12
	O	-2	7	-14
			SUM	**-2**
SO_4^{2-}	S	+6	1	+6
	O	-2	4	-8
			SUM	**-2**

It is important to note that oxidation number always refers to ***each individual atom*** in the compound, not to the total for that element.

For example, in H_2O, the total positive "charge" for both hydrogen atoms will be +2 (which balances with the -2 from oxygen), but *each hydrogen* has an oxidation number of +1.

This page titled 13.2.1: Oxidation States - Electron Bookkeeping is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 16.3: Oxidation States- Electron Bookkeeping by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

13.2.2: Determining Redox Reactions from Oxidation States

Learning Objectives

- Define *oxidation* and *reduction*.
- Assign oxidation numbers to atoms in simple compounds.
- Recognize a reaction as an oxidation-reduction reaction.

In the course of a chemical reaction between a metal and a nonmetal, electrons are transferred from the metal atoms to the nonmetal atoms. For example, when zinc metal is mixed with sulfur and heated, the compound zinc sulfide is produced. Two valence electrons from each zinc atom are transferred to each sulfur atom.

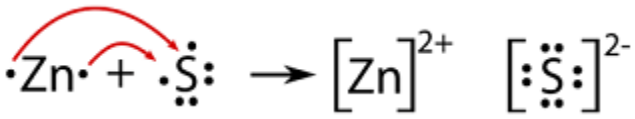


Figure 13.2.2.1: Reaction between zinc and sulfur.

Since the zinc is losing electrons in the reaction, it is being oxidized. The sulfur is gaining electrons and is thus being reduced. An **oxidation-reduction reaction** is a reaction that involves the full or partial transfer of electrons from one reactant to another. **Oxidation** is the full or partial loss of electrons or the gain of oxygen. **Reduction** is the full or partial gain of electrons or the loss of oxygen. A **redox reaction** is another term for an oxidation-reduction reaction.

Each of these processes can be shown in a separate equation called a half-reaction. A **half-reaction** is an equation that shows either the oxidation or the reduction reaction that occurs during a redox reaction.

$$\underbrace{\mathrm{Zn} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Zn_2^{2+}} + \mathrm{e^-}}_{\text{Oxidation}} \tag{13.2.2.1}$$

$$\underbrace{\mathrm{S^+} \ 2\,\mathrm{e^-} \longrightarrow \mathrm{S^{2-}}}_{\text{Reduction}} \tag{13.2.2.2}$$

It is important to remember that the two half-reactions occur simultaneously. The resulting ions that are formed are then attracted to one another in an ionic bond.

Another example of an oxidation-reduction reaction involving electron transfer is the well-known combination of metallic sodium and chlorine gas to form sodium chloride:

$$2\,\mathrm{Na^+Cl_2} \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{NaCl} \tag{13.2.2.3}$$

The half reactions are as follows:

$$\underbrace{2\,\mathrm{Na} \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{Na^+} + 2\,\mathrm{e^-}}_{\text{Oxidation}} \tag{13.2.2.4}$$

$$\underbrace{\mathrm{Cl_2} + 2\,\mathrm{e^-} \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{Cl^-}}_{\text{Reduction}} \tag{13.2.2.5}$$

We will concern ourselves with the balancing of these equations at another time.

Oxidation Numbers

Redox reactions require that we keep track of the electrons assigned to each atom in a chemical reaction. How do we do that? We use **oxidation numbers** to keep track of electrons in atoms. Oxidation numbers are assigned to atoms based on four rules. Oxidation numbers are not necessarily equal to the charge on the atom (although sometimes they can be); we must keep the concepts of charge and oxidation numbers separate.

Assigning Oxidation Numbers

The rules for assigning oxidation numbers to atoms are as follows:

1. Atoms in their elemental state are assigned an oxidation number of 0.

In H_2, both H atoms have an oxidation number of 0.

2. Atoms in monatomic (i.e., one-atom) ions are assigned an oxidation number equal to their charge. Oxidation numbers are usually written with the sign first, then the magnitude, to differentiate them from charges.

In $MgCl_2$, magnesium has an oxidation number of +2, while chlorine has an oxidation number of –1.

3. In compounds, fluorine is assigned a –1 oxidation number; oxygen is usually assigned a –2 oxidation number (except in peroxide compounds [where it is –1] and in binary compounds with fluorine [where it is positive]); and hydrogen is usually assigned a +1 oxidation number [except when it exists as the hydride ion (H^-), in which case rule 2 prevails].

In H_2O, the H atoms each have an oxidation number of +1, while the O atom has an oxidation number of –2, even though hydrogen and oxygen do not exist as ions in this compound (rule 3). By contrast, by rule 3, each H atom in hydrogen peroxide (H_2O_2) has an oxidation number of +1, while each O atom has an oxidation number of –1.

4. In compounds, all other atoms are assigned an oxidation number so that the sum of the oxidation numbers on all the atoms in the species equals the charge on the species (which is zero if the species is neutral).

In SO_2, each O atom has an oxidation number of –2; for the sum of the oxidation numbers to equal the charge on the species (which is zero), the S atom is assigned an oxidation number of +4. Does this mean that the sulfur atom has a 4+ charge on it? No, it means only that the S atom is assigned a +4 oxidation number by our rules of apportioning electrons among the atoms in a compound.

Example 13.2.2.1: Assigning Oxidation States

Assign oxidation numbers to the atoms in each substance.

a. Cl_2
b. GeO_2
c. $Ca(NO_3)_2$

Solution

a. Cl_2 is the elemental form of chlorine. Rule 1 states that each atom has an oxidation number of 0.
b. By rule 3, oxygen is normally assigned an oxidation number of –2. For the sum of the oxidation numbers to equal the charge on the species (zero), the Ge atom is assigned an oxidation number of +4.
c. $Ca(NO_3)_2$ can be separated into two parts: the Ca^{2+} ion and the NO_3^- ion. Considering these separately, the Ca^{2+} ion has an oxidation number of +2 by rule 2. Now consider the NO_3^- ion. Oxygen is assigned an oxidation number of –2, and there are three of them. According to rule 4, the sum of the oxidation numbers on all atoms must equal the charge on the species, so we have the simple algebraic equation

$$x + 3(-2) = -1$$

where *x* is the oxidation number of the N atom and the –1 represents the charge on the species. Evaluating for *x*,

$$x + (-6) = -1x = +5$$

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CC BY NC SA
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Thus the oxidation number on the N atom in the NO_3^- ion is +5.

Exercise 13.2.2.1: Assigning Oxidation States

Assign oxidation numbers to the atoms in the following:

a. H_3PO_4
b. MgO

Answer a available at the end of this section.

Answer b available at the end of this section.

All redox reactions occur with a simultaneous change in the oxidation numbers of some atoms. At least two elements must change their oxidation numbers. When an oxidation number of an atom is increased in the course of a redox reaction, that atom is being *oxidized*. When an oxidation number of an atom is decreased in the course of a redox reaction, that atom is being *reduced*. Thus oxidation and reduction can also be defined in terms of increasing or decreasing oxidation numbers, respectively.

Example 13.2.2.2: Formation of Sodium Bromide

Identify what is being oxidized and reduced in the following redox reaction.

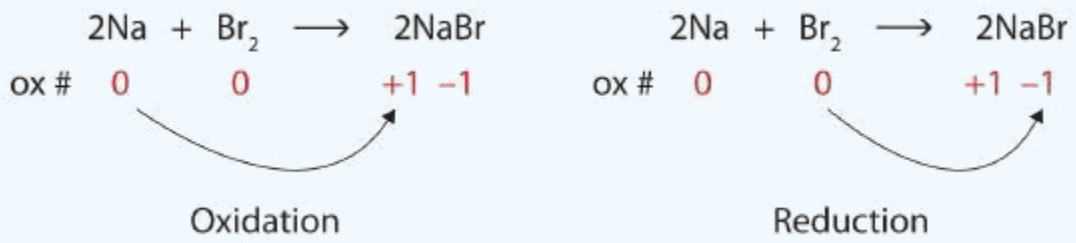
$$2\,\mathrm{Na} + \mathrm{Br_2} \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{NaBr}$$

Solution

Both reactants are the elemental forms of their atoms, so the Na and Br atoms have oxidation numbers of 0. In the ionic product, the Na^+ ions have an oxidation number of +1, while the Br^- ions have an oxidation number of –1.

$$\overset{0}{2Na} + \overset{0}{Br_2} \rightarrow \overset{+1-1}{2NaBr}$$

Sodium is increasing its oxidation number from 0 to +1, so it is being oxidized; bromine is decreasing its oxidation number from 0 to –1, so it is being reduced:



Equation of sodium and bromine reacting, labeled with sodium's oxidation number change from 0 to +1 and bromine's oxidation number change from 0 to -1

Because oxidation numbers are changing, this is a redox reaction. The total number of electrons being lost by sodium (two, one lost from each Na atom) is gained by bromine (two, one gained for each Br atom).

Exercise 13.2.2.2: Oxidation of Carbon

Identify what is being oxidized and reduced in this redox reaction.

$$C + O_2 \rightarrow CO_2$$

cK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Answer available at the end of this section.

Answer available at the end of this section.

Oxidation reactions can become quite complex, as attested by the following redox reaction:

$$6H^+(aq) + 2\underset{+7}{MnO_4^-}(aq) + 5\underset{-1}{H_2O_2}(l) \rightarrow 2\underset{+2}{Mn^{2+}}(aq) + 5\underset{0}{O_2}(g) + 8H_2O(l)$$

To demonstrate that this is a redox reaction, the oxidation numbers of the species being oxidized and reduced are listed; can you determine what is being oxidized and what is being reduced? This is also an example of a net ionic reaction; spectator ions that do not change oxidation numbers are not displayed in the equation. Eventually, we will need to learn techniques for writing correct (i.e., balanced) redox reactions.

Combustion Reactions

A **combustion reaction** is a reaction in which a substance reacts with oxygen gas, releasing energy in the form of light and heat. Combustion reactions must involve $\mathrm{O_2}$ as one reactant. The combustion of hydrogen gas produces water vapor.

$$\mathrm{2H_2\,(g) + O_2\,(g) \rightarrow 2H_2O\,(g)} \tag{13.2.2.6}$$

Notice that this reaction also qualifies as a combination reaction.

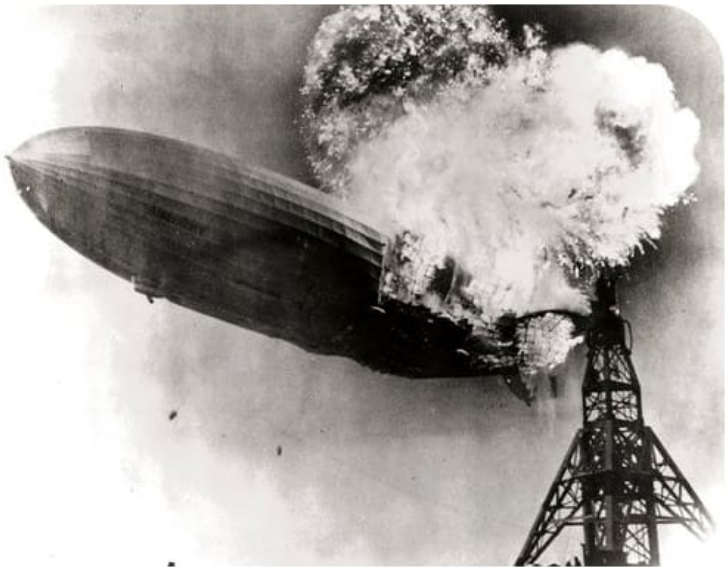


Figure 13.2.2.2: Explosion of the Hindenberg.

The *Hindenberg* was a hydrogen-filled airship that suffered an accident upon its attempted landing in New Jersey in 1937. The hydrogen immediately combusted in a huge fireball, destroying the airship and killing 36 people. The chemical reaction was a simple one: hydrogen combining with oxygen to produce water (Equation 13.2.2.6).

Many combustion reactions occur with a hydrocarbon, a compound made up solely of carbon and hydrogen. The products of the combustion of hydrocarbons are carbon dioxide and water. Many hydrocarbons are used as fuel because their combustion releases very large amounts of heat energy. Propane $(\mathrm{C_3H_8})$ is a gaseous hydrocarbon that is commonly used as the fuel source in gas grills.

$$\mathrm{C_3H_8\,(g) + 5O_2\,(g) \rightarrow 3CO_2\,(g) + 4H_2O\,(g)}$$

Example 13.2.2.3: Combustion of Ethanol

Ethanol can be used as a fuel source in an alcohol lamp. The formula for ethanol is $\mathrm{C_2H_5OH}$. Write the balanced equation for the combustion of ethanol.

Solution

Solutions to Example 7.9.3

Steps	Example Solution
Write the unbalanced reaction.	$\mathrm{C_2H_5OH\,(l) + O_2\,(g) \rightarrow CO_2\,(g) + H_2O\,(g)}$ Ethanol and atmospheric oxygen are the reactants. As with a hydrocarbon, the products of the combustion of an alcohol are carbon dioxide and water.
Balance the equation.	$\mathrm{C_2H_5OH\,(l) + 3O_2\,(g) \rightarrow 2CO_2\,(g) + 3H_2O\,(g)}$
Think about your result.	Combustion reactions must have oxygen as a reactant. Note that the water produced is in the gas state, rather than the liquid state, because of the high temperatures that accompany a combustion reaction.

Exercise 13.2.2.3: Combustion of Hexane

Write the balanced equation for the combustion of hexane, C_6H_{14}

Answer available at the end of this section.

Contributors & Affiliations

-

Answers

Exercise 13.2.2.1: Assigning Oxidation States

H: +1; O: −2; P: +5

Exercise 13.2.2.1: Assigning Oxidation States

Mg: +2, O: −2

Exercise 13.2.2.2: Oxidation of Carbon

C is being oxidized from 0 to +4; O is being reduced from 0 to −2

Exercise 13.2.2.2: Oxidation of Carbon

Exercise 13.2.2.3: Combustion of Hexane

$$\mathrm{2\,C_6H_{14}\,(\ell) + 19\,O_2\,(g) \longrightarrow 12\,CO_2\,(g) + 14\,H_2O(\ell)}$$

This page titled 13.2.2: Determining Redox Reactions from Oxidation States is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 7.9: Oxidation–Reduction Reactions by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

13.2.3: Balancing Redox Equations

Balancing Redox Equations Using Half-Reactions

Another way to balance redox reactions is by the half-reaction method. This technique involves breaking an equation into its two separate components—the oxidation reaction and the reduction reaction. Since neither oxidation nor reduction can actually occur without the other, we refer to the separate equations as **half-reactions**.

The general technique involves the following:

- The overall equation is broken down into **two** half-reactions. If there are any spectator ions, they are removed from the equations.
- Each half-reaction is balanced separately, first for atoms and then for charge. Electrons are added to one side of the equation or the other in order to balance charge. For example, if the reactant side of the equation has a total charge of +3, the product side must also equal +3.
- Next, the two equations are compared to make sure electrons lost equal electrons gained. One of the half reactions will be an oxidation reaction, the other will be a reduction reaction.
- Finally, the two half-reactions are added together, and any spectator ions that were removed are placed back into the equation.

Consider the following reaction:

$$Mg_{(s)} + Cl_{2(g)} \rightarrow MgCl_{2(s)}$$

In this reaction, Mg is oxidized and Cl is reduced. You may find it useful to use oxidation numbers to help you determine this. Mg changes from 0 to +2; Cl changes from 0 to -1.

When we write the half-reactions, we break apart compounds that contain either of the key elements (elements undergoing oxidation or reduction). Oxidation numbers are written as if they were ion charges. Notice that the chlorine from $MgCl_2$ is written as two separate ions, not combined, as is Cl_2. Balance the two reactions for atoms.

$Mg \rightarrow Mg^{+2}$	$Cl_2 \rightarrow 2\ Cl^-$

Next balance the equations for charge by adding electrons. Remember, one half-reaction will be an oxidation reaction (electrons on the product side) and the other will be reduction (electrons will be on the reactant side).

$Mg \rightarrow Mg^{+2} + 2\ e^-$	$Cl_2 + 2\ e^- \rightarrow 2\ Cl^-$
oxidation	**reduction**

In this example, balancing for charge results in both sides, of both equations, having net charges of 0. That won't always be the case. Be sure you see in this example how charges are balanced.

We then compare the two equations for numbers of electrons. We see that both equations have 2 electrons so we do not need to make any adjustments for that. Finally, add the two equations together:

$$Mg + Cl_2 \rightarrow Mg^{+2} + 2Cl^-$$

and reform any compounds broken apart in the earlier steps:

$$Mg + Cl_2 \rightarrow MgCl_2$$

We see that the original equation was already balanced, not just for atoms, but for electrons as well.

Example 2

$$Cu_{(s)} + AgNO_{3(aq)} \rightarrow Cu(NO_3)2(aq) + Ag_{(s)}$$

Solution

Identify the elements undergoing oxidation (Cu) and reduction (Ag). The nitrate group (NO_3) is a spectator ion which we will not include in our half-reactions.

$Cu \rightarrow Cu^{+2} + 2\ e^-$	$Ag^+ + 1\ e^- \rightarrow Ag$
oxidation	**reduction**

After balancing for atoms and for charge, we see that the two equations do not have the same number of electrons—there are 2 in the copper reaction, but only one in the silver reaction. Multiply everything in the silver reaction by 2, then we will add the equations together:

Step 1	Step 2	Step 3
Write the balanced half-reactions	**Balance electrons**	**Add half-reactions**
$Cu \rightarrow Cu^{+2} + 2\ e^-$		$Cu \rightarrow Cu^{+2} + \cancel{2\ e^-}$
$Ag + 1\ e^- \rightarrow Ag^-$	× 2	$2\ Ag^+ + \cancel{2e^-} \rightarrow 2\ Ag$
Add equations together		$Cu + 2\ Ag^+ \rightarrow Cu^{+2} + 2\ Ag$
Reform compound/return spectator ions		**$Cu + 2\ AgNO_3 \rightarrow Cu(NO_3)_2 + 2\ Ag$**

Here is a reaction occurring in an acid solution, which accounts for the presence of the H^+ions. This example adds a little more complexity to our problem.

$MnO_4^- + Fe^{2+} + H^+ \rightarrow Mn^{2+} + Fe^{3+} + H_2O$

In this example, spectator ions have already been removed. Even though hydrogen and oxygen do not undergo changes in oxidation number, they are not spectators, and we need to work with them in our half-reactions.

We determine that Mn undergoes reduction (+7 to +2) while Fe undergoes oxidation (+2 to +3). The iron half-reaction is straight forward, but the manganese reaction is more complex—we must include hydrogen and oxygen in its half-reaction:

$Fe^{2+} \rightarrow Fe^{+3} + 1e^-$	$MnO_4^- + 8\ H^+ + 5\ e^- \rightarrow Mn^{2+} + 4\ H_2O$
oxidation	**reduction**

To balance the manganese half-reaction, first balance for Mn and O atoms. Next balance the H atoms, and finally add enough electrons to balance the charge on both sides of the equation. Be sure you see what has been done, so that you can do it on your own.

Step 1	Step 2	Step 3
Write the balanced half-reactions		**Add half-reactions**

Step 1	Step 2	Step 3
$Fe^{2+} \rightarrow Fe^{+3} + 1e^-$	× 5	$5Fe^{2+} \rightarrow 5Fe^{+3} + \cancel{5e^-}$
$MnO_4^- + 8H^+ + 5e^- \rightarrow Mn^{2+} + 4H_2O$		$MnO_4^- + 8\ H^+ + \cancel{5e^-} \rightarrow Mn^{2+} + 4\ H_2O$
Add equations together	**$MnO_4^- + 5\ Fe^{2+} + 8\ H^+ \rightarrow Mn^{2+} + 5\ Fe^{3+} + 4H_2O$**	

Example 3

$$HNO_3 + Cu + H^+ \rightarrow NO_2 + Cu^{2+} + H_2O$$

Solution

1. Determine what is oxidized, what is reduced, and write the two **balanced** half-reactions (Step 1).
2. Balance for electrons lost = electrons gained (Step 2).
3. Add equations together.

Step 1	Step 2	Step 3
Write the balanced half-reactions		**Add half-reactions**
$Cu \rightarrow Cu^{+2} + 2e^-$		$Cu \rightarrow Cu^{+2} + \cancel{2e^-}$
$HNO_3 + H^+ + 1\ e^- \rightarrow NO_2 + H_2O$	× 2	$2HNO_3 + 2H^+ + \cancel{2e^-} \rightarrow 2NO_2 + 2H_2O$
Add equations together		**$2HNO_3 + Cu + 2H^+ \rightarrow 2NO_2 + Cu^{2+} + 2H_2O$**

When balancing redox reactions, either the oxidation number method or the half-reaction method may be used. Often you'll find that one method works best for some equations, while the other method is more suited for other reactions. Or you may find one method just easier to use. The practice exercises and assignments tell you which method to use for a reaction, but as you get get more experience you'll be able to make your own decision as to which method to use.

Writing half-reactions, however, is a skill you will need for our final topic in this course—Electrochemistry—so be sure you can write balanced half-reactions.

Check your understanding with the practice questions, set 3, then complete Assignment 2 .

This page titled 13.2.3: Balancing Redox Equations is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 16.4: Balancing Redox Equations by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

13.3: APPLICATIONS OF REDOX REACTIONS

13.3.1: The Activity Series- Predicting Spontaneous Redox Reactions
13.3.2: Batteries- Using Chemistry to Generate Electricity
13.3.3: Corrosion - Undesirable Redox Reactions
13.3.4: Electrolysis- Using Electricity to Do Chemistry

This page titled 13.3: Applications of Redox Reactions is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

13.3.1: The Activity Series- Predicting Spontaneous Redox Reactions

Learning Objectives

- Use the activity series to predict if a reaction will occur.

We see below two metals that can be exposed to water. The picture on the left is of sodium, which has a violent reaction when it comes in contact with water. The picture on the right is of silver, a metal so unreactive with water that it can be made into drinking vessels. Both metals have a single s electron in their outer shell, so you would predict a similar reactivity from each. However, we have a tool that allows us to make better predictions about how certain elements will react with others.



Figure 13.3.1.1: On the left, sodium reacts with water. On the right, silver in the form of cups does not react with water.

The Activity Series

Single-replacement reactions only occur when the element that is doing the replacing is more reactive than the element that is being replaced. Therefore, it is useful to have a list of elements in order of their relative reactivity. The **activity series** is a list of elements in decreasing order of their reactivity. Since metals replace other metals, while nonmetals replace other nonmetals, they each have a separate activity series. The table 13.3.1.1 below is an activity series of most common metals, and the table 13.3.1.2 is an activity series of the halogens.

Table 13.3.1.1*: Activity Series of Metal Elements*

Elements, from most to least reactive	Reaction Occurring
Li K Ba Sr Ca Na	React with cold water, replacing hydrogen.

Elements, from most to least reactive	Reaction Occurring
Mg Al Zn Cr Fe Cd	React with steam, but not cold water, replacing hydrogen.
Co Ni Sn Pb	Do not react with water. React with acids, replacing hydrogen.
H_2	
Cu Hg Ag Pt Au	Unreactive with water or acids.

Table 13.3.1.2*: Activity Series of Nonmetal elements*

Elements, from most to least reactive
F_2
Cl_2
Br_2
I_2

For a single-replacement reaction, a given element is capable of replacing an element that is below it in the activity series. This can be used to predict if a reaction will occur. Suppose that small pieces of the metal nickel were placed into two separate aqueous solutions: one of iron (III) nitrate and one of lead (II) nitrate. Looking at the activity series, we see that nickel is below iron, but above lead. Therefore, the nickel metal will be capable of replacing the lead in a reaction, but will not be capable of replacing iron.

$$\mathrm{Ni}\,(s) + \mathrm{Pb(NO_3)_2}\,(aq) \rightarrow \mathrm{Ni(NO_3)_2}\,(aq) + \mathrm{Pb}\,(s)$$

$$\mathrm{Ni}\,(s) + \mathrm{Fe(NO_3)_3}\,(aq) \rightarrow \mathrm{NR\ (no\ reaction)}$$

In the descriptions that accompany the activity series of metals, a given metal is also capable of undergoing the reactions described below that section. For example, lithium will react with cold water, replacing hydrogen. It will also react with steam and

cK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

with acids, since that requires a lower degree of reactivity.

Examples 13.3.1.1

Use the activity series to predict if the following reactions will occur. If not, write NR. If the reaction does occur, write the products of the reaction and balance the equation.

a. $\mathrm{Al}\,(s) + \mathrm{Zn(NO_3)_2}\,(aq) \rightarrow$
b. $\mathrm{Ag}\,(s) + \mathrm{HCl}\,(aq) \rightarrow$

Solution

Solutions to Example 7.11.1

Steps	**Example** 13.3.1.1A $\mathrm{Al}\,(s) + \mathrm{Zn(NO_3)_2}\,(aq) \rightarrow$	**Example** 13.3.1.1B $\mathrm{Ag}\,(s) + \mathrm{HCl}\,(aq) \rightarrow$
Plan the problem.	Compare the placements of aluminum and zinc on the activity series (Table 13.3.1.1)	Compare the placements of silver and hydrogen (Table 13.3.1.1)
Solve.	Since aluminum is above zinc, it is capable of replacing it and a reaction will occur. The products of the reaction will be aqueous aluminum nitrate and solid zinc. Take care to write the correct formulas for the products before balancing the equation. Aluminum adopts a $+3$ charge in an ionic compound, so the formula for aluminum nitrate is $\mathrm{Al(NO_3)_3}$. The balanced equation is: $2\mathrm{Al}\,(s) + 3\mathrm{Zn(NO_3)_2}\,(aq) \rightarrow 2\mathrm{Al(NO_3)_3}\,(aq) + 3\mathrm{Zn}\,(s)$	Since silver is below hydrogen, it is not capable of replacing hydrogen in a reaction with an acid. $\mathrm{Ag}\,(s) + \mathrm{HCl}\,(aq) \rightarrow \mathrm{NR}$

Exercise 13.3.1.1

Use the activity series to predict the products, if any, of each equation.

a. $\mathrm{FeCl_2} + \mathrm{Zn} \longrightarrow$
b. $\mathrm{HNO_3} + \mathrm{Au} \longrightarrow$

Answer a available at the end of this section.

Answer b available at the end of this section.

Summary

- Metals and halogens are ranked according to their ability to displace other metals or halogens below them in the activity series.

Answers

Exercise 13.3.1.1

The products are $\mathrm{ZnCl_2}$ + Fe.

Exercise 13.3.1.1

No reaction.

This page titled 13.3.1: The Activity Series- Predicting Spontaneous Redox Reactions is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 7.11: The Activity Series- Predicting Spontaneous Redox Reactions by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

13.3.2: Batteries- Using Chemistry to Generate Electricity

Learning Objectives

- Identify the substance being oxidized and the substance being reduced in an oxidation-reduction reaction.
- Identify the anode and the cathode given a diagram of an electrolysis apparatus that includes the compound being electrolyzed.
- Describe how batteries can produce electrical energy.

Electricity is an important form of energy that you use every day. It runs your calculators, cell phones, dishwashers, and watches. This form of energy involves moving electrons through a wire and using the energy of these electrons. Electrochemical cells used for power generation are called batteries. Although batteries come in many different shapes and sizes, there are a few basic types. You won't be required to remember details of the batteries, but some general information and features of each type are presented here. Many important chemical reactions involve the exchange of one or more electrons, and we can use this movement of electrons as electricity; batteries are one way of producing this type of energy. The reactions that drive electricity are called oxidation-reduction (or "redox") reactions.

Oxidation and Reduction

Reactions in which electrons are transferred are called oxidation-reduction (or "redox") reactions. There are two parts to these changes: one atom must lose electrons and another atom must gain them. These two parts are described by the terms "oxidation" and "reduction".

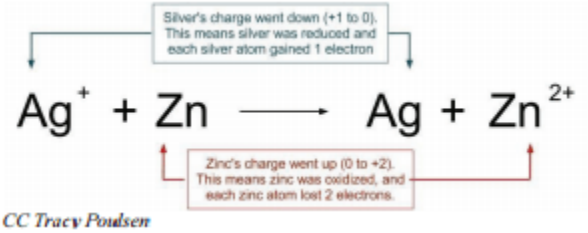
Originally, a substance was said to be oxidized when it reacted with oxygen. Today, the word "oxidized" is still used for those situations, but now we have a much broader second meaning for these words. Today, the broader sense of the word **oxidation** is defined as losing electrons. When a substance loses electrons, its charge will increase. This may feel a bit backwards, but remember that electrons are negative. If an atom loses electrons, it is losing negative particles—so its charge will increase.

The other half of this process, the gaining of electrons, also needs a name. When an atom or an ion gains electrons, the charge on the particle goes down. For example, if a sulfur atom whose charge is zero (0) gains two electrons, its charge becomes (-2) ; if an Fe^{3+} ion gains an electron, its charge changes from $+3$ to $+2$. In both cases, the charge on the particle is reduced by the gain of electrons. Remember that electrons have a negative charge, so gaining electrons will result in the charge decreasing. The word **reduction** is defined to mean gaining electrons and the reduction of charge.

In chemical systems, these two processes (oxidation and reduction) must occur simultaneously and the number of electrons lost in the oxidation must be the same as the number of electrons gained in the reduction. In oxidation-reduction reactions, electrons are transferred from one substance to another. Here is an example of an oxidation-reduction reaction:

$$2\mathrm{Ag}^{+}\,(aq) + \mathrm{Cu}\,(s) \rightarrow 2\mathrm{Ag}\,(s) + \mathrm{Cu}^{2+}\,(aq)$$

In this reaction, the silver ions are gaining electrons to become silver atoms. Therefore, the silver ions are being reduced and the charge of silver is decreasing. The copper atoms are losing electrons to become copper $+2$ ions, are therefore being oxidized, and the charge of copper is increasing. Whenever a chemical reaction involves electrons being transferred from one substance to another, the reaction is an **oxidation-reduction reaction** (or a redox reaction).



CC Tracy Poulsen

Half-equations are very helpful in discussing and analyzing processes, but half-reactions cannot occur as they appear. The half-reactions for the reaction above would be:

$$2\text{Ag}^{+}\,(aq) + 2\text{e}^{-} \rightarrow 2\text{Ag}\,(s)$$

$$\text{Cu}\,(s) \rightarrow \text{Cu}^{2+}\,(aq) + 2\text{e}^{-}$$

Both oxidation and reduction must occur at the same time, so the electrons are donated and absorbed nearly simultaneously. The two half-reactions may be added together to represent a complete reaction. In order to add the half-reactions, the number of electrons donated and the number of electrons accepted must be equal.

Example 9.3.1

For each reaction, identify what is oxidized and what is reduced.

a) $\text{Zn} + \text{HCl} \rightarrow \text{H}_2 + \text{ZnCl}_2$

b) $\text{Fe} + \text{O}_2 \rightarrow \text{Fe}_2\text{O}_3$

c) $\text{NaBr} + \text{I}_2 \rightarrow \text{NaI} + \text{Br}_2$

Solution

In order to determine what is being oxidized and reduced, we must look at charges of atoms and see if they increase or decrease. (Remember, elements have no charge. In a compound, we can use our periodic table and what we learned in Chapter 4 to assign charges.) If the charge increases, the atom was oxidized. If the charge decreases, the atom was reduced.

a) This reaction written with charges is:

$$\text{Zn}^{0} + \text{H}^{+}\text{Cl}^{-} \rightarrow \text{H}_2{}^{0} + \text{Zn}^{2+}\text{Cl}_2{}^{-}$$

Zn is oxidized because it went from 0 to $+2$. H is reduced because it went from $+1$ to 0. Cl was neither oxidized nor reduced.

b) This reaction written with charges is:

$$\text{Fe}^{0} + \text{O}_2{}^{0} \rightarrow \text{Fe}_2{}^{3+}\text{O}_3{}^{2-}$$

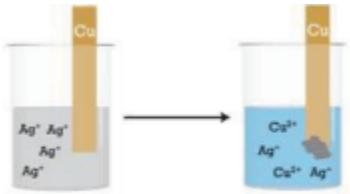
Fe is oxidized because it went from 0 to $+3$. O is reduced because it went from 0 to -2.

c) This reaction written with charges is:

$$\text{Na}^{+}\text{Br}^{-} + \text{I}_2{}^{0} \rightarrow \text{Na}^{+}\text{I}^{-} + \text{Br}_2{}^{0}$$

Br is oxidized because it went from -2 to 0. I is reduced because it went from 0 to -1. Na was neither oxidized nor reduced as it stayed $+1$ the whole time.

Batteries



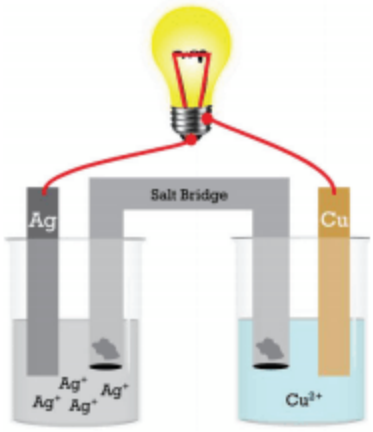
Redox reaction in one beaker does not produce electricity. (Source: Richard Parsons. CC-BY-SA)

Batteries are devices that use chemical reactions to produce electrical energy. These reactions occur because the products contain less potential energy in their bonds than the reactants. The energy produced from excess potential energy not only allows the reaction to occur, but also often gives off energy to the surroundings. Some of these reactions can be physically arranged so that the energy given off is in the form of an electric current. These are the type of reactions that occur inside batteries. When a reaction is arranged to produce an electric current as it

cK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

runs, the arrangement is called an **electrochemical cell** or a **Galvanic Cell.**

If a strip of copper is placed in a solution of silver nitrate, the following reaction takes place:



In a battery, the oxidation and reduction half-reactions occur in separate containers, allowing the electrons to flow through a wire producing electricity.

$$2\text{Ag}^{+}\,(aq) + \text{Cu}\,(s) \rightarrow 2\text{Ag}\,(s) + \text{Cu}^{2+}\,(aq)$$

In this reaction, copper atoms are donating electrons to silver ions, so the silver ions are reduced to silver atoms and copper atoms are oxidized to copper (II) ions.

As the reaction occurs, an observer would see the solution slowly turn blue (Cu^{2+} ions are blue in solution) and a mass of solid silver atoms would build up on the copper strip.

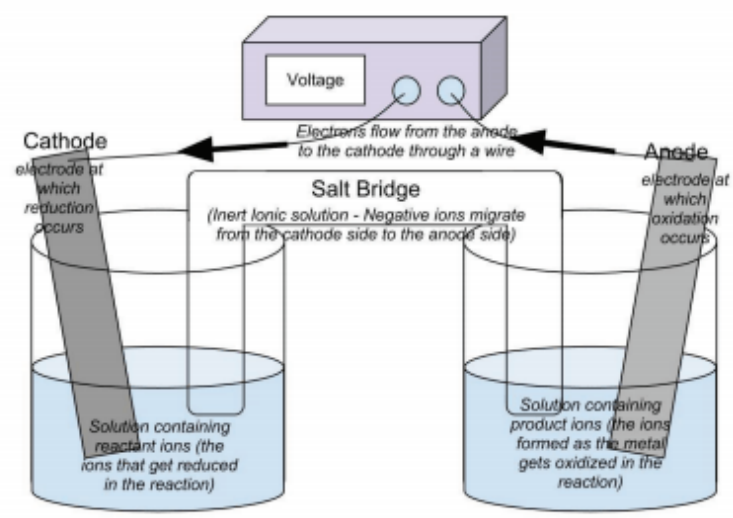
The reaction we just described is not set up in such a way as to produce electricity. It is true that electrons are being transferred, but to produce electricity, we need electrons flowing through a wire so that we can use the energy of these electrons. This reaction, $2\text{Ag}^{+}\,(aq) + \text{Cu}\,(s) \rightarrow 2\text{Ag}\,(s) + \text{Cu}^{2+}\,(aq)$, is one that could be arranged to produce electricity. To do this, the two half-reactions (oxidation and reduction) must occur in separate compartments, and the separate compartments must remain in contact through an ionic solution and an external wire.

In this electrochemical cell, the copper metal must be separated from the silver ions to avoid a direct reaction. Each electrode in its solution could be represented by a half-reaction.

$$\text{Cu} \rightarrow \blacksquare + 2\text{e}^{-}$$

$$2\text{Ag}^{+} + 2\text{e}^{-} \rightarrow 2\text{Ag}$$

The wire connects the two halves of the reaction, allowing electrons to flow from one metal strip to the other. In this particular example, electrons will flow from the copper electrode (which is losing electrons) into the silver electrode (which is where the silver ions gain the electrons). The cell produces electricity through the wire and will continue to do so as long as there are sufficient reactants (Ag^{+} and Cu) to continue the reaction.



CC Tracy Poulsen

Electrochemical cells will always have two electrodes—the pieces of metal where electrons are gained or lost. (In this example, the strip of Ag metal and Cu metal are the electrodes.) The electrode where reduction occurs and electrons are gained is called the **cathode**. The electrode where oxidation occurs and electrons are lost is called the **anode**. Electrons will always move from the anode to the cathode. The electrons that pass through the external circuit can do useful work such as lighting lights, running cell phones, and so forth.

If the light bulb is removed from the circuit with the electrochemical cell and replaced with a voltmeter, the voltmeter will measure the voltage (electrical potential energy per unit charge) of the combination of half-cells. The size of the voltage produced by a cell depends on the temperature, the metals used for electrodes, and the concentrations of the ions in the solutions. If you increase the concentration of the reactant ion (not the product ion), the reaction rate will increase and so will the voltage.

It may seem complicated to construct an electrochemical cell due to all of their complexities. Electrochemical cells are actually easy to make and sometimes even occur accidentally. If you take two coins of different denomination, push them part way through the peel of a whole lemon, and then connect the two coins with a wire, a small electric current will flow.

1. Primary Batteries (Dry Cell Batteries)

- Non-rechargeable.
- Electrolytes are present as a paste rather than as a liquid.
- General purpose battery used for flashlights, transistor radios, toys, etc.
- The basic dry cell battery consists of: zinc case as the anode (oxidation); a graphite rod as the cathode (reduction) surrounded by a moist paste of either MnO_2, NH_4Cl, and $ZnCl_2$ (or, in alkaline dry cells, a KOH electrolytic paste).
- General reactions for the battery: manganese (IV) oxide-zinc cell (different batteries have different reactions—you don't need to remember any of these reactions).

cathode	$2MnO_{2(s)} + 2\ NH_4^+{}_{(aq)} + 2e^- \rightarrow Mn_2O_{3\ (s)} + H_2O_{(l)} + 2NH_{3\ (aq)}$
anode	$Zn_{(s)} \rightarrow Zn^{2+}{}_{(aq)} + 2e^-$

- - Maximum voltage of 1.5V. By connecting several cells in a series, 90V can be achieved.
  - Advantages of alkaline batteries: consistent voltage, increased capacity, longer shelf life, and reliable operation at temperatures as low as -40°C.
  - Disadvantage: higher cost.

2. Secondary Batteries (Storage Batteries)

- Rechargeable

- An example: the lead-acid battery used in cars. The anode is a grid of lead-antimony or lead-calcium alloy packed with spongy lead; the cathode is lead (IV) oxide. The electrolyte is aqueous sulfuric acid. This battery consists of numerous small cells connected in parallels (anode to anode; cathode to cathode).
- General reaction:

cathode	$PbO_{2(s)} + 4H^{+}_{(aq)} + SO_4^{2-}{}_{(aq)} + 2e^{-} \rightarrow PbSO_{4\,(s)} + 2H_2O_{(l)} + 2NH_{3\,(aq)}$
anode	$Pb_{(s)} + SO_4^{2-}{}_{(aq)} \rightarrow PbSO_{4\,(s)} + 2e^{-}$

- - Secondary batteries are recharged by passing a current through the battery in the opposite direction. In a car battery, this occurs when the engine is running.
  - Other examples include the nickel-iron alkaline battery, nickel-zinc battery, nickel-cadmium alkaline battery, silver-zinc battery, and silver-cadmium battery.

3. Fuel Cells

- Fuel cells are electrochemical cells that convert the energy of a redox combustion reaction directly into electrical energy. Fuel cells require a continuous supply of reactants and a constant removal of products.
- The cathode reactant is usually air or pure oxygen; the anode fuel is a gas such as hydrogen, methane, or propane. Carbon electrodes typically contain a catalyst. The electrolyte is typically KOH.
- General reaction:

cathode	$O_{2(g)} + 2H_2O_{(l)} + 4e^{-} \rightarrow 4OH^{-}{}_{(aq)}$
anode	$2H_{2\,(g)} + 4OH^{-}{}_{(aq)} \rightarrow 4H_2O_{(l)} + 4e^{-}$
net	$2H_{2\,(g)} + O_{2(g)} \rightarrow 2H_2O_{(l)}$

- - Advantages: no toxic waste products (water is the only product); very efficient energy conversion (70-80% efficient).
  - Disadvantage: too expensive for large-scale use.

Summary

- A reaction in which there is a transfer of electrons is said to be an oxidation-reduction reaction, or a redox reaction.
- A substance that loses electrons is said to be oxidized, and the substance that gains electrons is said to be reduced.
- Redox reactions can be used in electrochemical cells to produce electricity.
- Electrochemical cells are composed of an anode and cathode in two separate solutions. These solutions are connected by a salt bridge and a conductive wire.
- An electric current consists of a flow of charged particles.
- The electrode where oxidation occurs is called the anode, and the electrode where reduction occurs is called the cathode.

Vocabulary

- **Electrochemical cell** - An arrangement of electrodes and ionic solutions in which a redox reaction is used to make electricity (a battery).
- **Electrolysis** - A chemical reaction brought about by an electric current.
- **Electroplating** - A process in which electrolysis is used as a means of coating an object with a layer of metal.

This page titled 13.3.2: Batteries- Using Chemistry to Generate Electricity is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 16.6: Batteries- Using Chemistry to Generate Electricity by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

13.3.3: Corrosion - Undesirable Redox Reactions

Corrosion of metals is a serious economic problem. Corrosion occurs as a result of spontaneous electrochemical reaction as metal undergoes oxidation. For example, the rusting of iron begins with the oxidation of solid iron:

$$\mathrm{Fe\,(s)} \longrightarrow \mathrm{Fe^{2+}\,(aq)} + 2\,\mathrm{e^-}$$

The corresponding reduction reaction involves water:

$$\mathrm{H_2O\,(l)} + \tfrac{1}{2}\,\mathrm{O_2\,(g)} + 2\,\mathrm{e^-} \longrightarrow 2\,\mathrm{OH^-\,(aq)}$$

The flaky brown solid that we call rust forms when Fe^{2+} undergoes additional oxidation to form Fe^{3+}, then reacts with hydroxide ions to form iron (III) oxide, Fe_2O_3, and iron (III) hydroxide, $Fe(OH)_3$.

The rate of corrosion can be affected by several factors. Some examples:

- Metals corrode faster when in contact with another metal. The Statue of Liberty, for example, has a skin made of copper, but is supported by iron ribs. Since iron is oxidized more readily than copper, it acts as the anode. Earlier repairs to strengthen the statue used iron bolts, which exacerbated the problem. More recent repairs have replaced the iron ribs with stainless steel alloys. Stainless steel resists corrosion.
- Salt water speeds up the corrosion process, because the ions in salt water form a salt bridge between the anodic and cathodic sites. Salt may be great for icy roads, but it is tough on cars.

There are a number of ways to slow down corrosion, if not prevent it:

- Prevent oxygen and water from contacting the metal. This can be accomplished by paint, grease, plastic, or other methods of covering the metal.
- Cathodic protection: pieces of zinc or magnesium metal may be bolted to the surface of iron. Because they are more readily oxidized than Fe, Zn and Mg become oxidized over time, thus sparing and protecting the iron. Propeller shafts of speedboats are often protected this way. Anode rods in water heaters also work this way (they are often called **sacrificial anodes**). Galvanized nails—nails coated with the more reactive zinc—provide yet another example.
- Metal alloys: an alloy is a mixture of metals, or a mixture of a nonmetal with a metal. An alloy such as stainless steel (chromium is added to steel—a mixture of iron and other elements such as carbon—to make stainless steel) is highly resistant to corrosion, but can be prohibitively expensive.

This page titled 13.3.3: Corrosion - Undesirable Redox Reactions is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

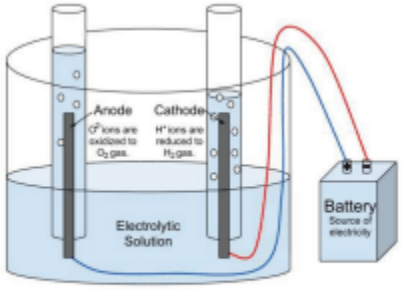
- 16.8: Corrosion- Undesirable Redox Reactions by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

13.3.4: Electrolysis- Using Electricity to Do Chemistry

So far, we have discussed how electricity can be produced from chemical reactions in batteries. Some reactions will, instead, use electricity to get a reaction to occur. In these reactions, electrical energy is given to the reactants, causing them to react to form the products. These reactions have many uses. For example, electrolysis is a process that involves forcing electricity through a liquid or solution to cause a reaction to occur. Electrolysis reactions will not run unless energy is put into the system from outside. In the case of electrolysis reactions, the energy is provided by the battery. Think of electrolysis and electrolytic cells as the opposite of electrochemical cells:

	Electrochemical Cells	Electrolytic Cells
Energy conversion	Chemical → Electrical	Electrical → Chemical
Spontaneous chemical reaction?	Yes	No
Value of E°	Positive	Negative

In an electrochemical cell, a spontaneous redox reaction is used to create an electric current; in an electrolytic cell, the reverse will occur—an electric current will be required in order to cause a non-spontaneous chemical reaction to occur. We will look at three examples of the electrolytic process, keeping our discussion on a very basic level—the electrolysis of molten sodium chloride, the electrolysis of water, and electroplating.



In this image, an electrical current is passed through water, splitting the water into hydrogen and oxygen gases.
CC Tracy Poulsen

Figure 16.7.1: An electrical current is passed through water, splitting the water into hydrogen and oxygen gases.

If electrodes connected to battery terminals are placed in liquid sodium chloride, the sodium ions will migrate toward the negative electrode and be reduced while the chloride ions migrate toward the positive electrode and are oxidized. The processes that occur at the electrodes can be represented by what are called half-equations.

Reduction occurs at the positive electrode:

$$\mathrm{Na^+ + e^- \rightarrow Na}$$

Oxidation occurs at the negative electrode:

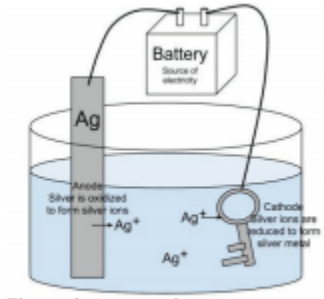
$$\mathrm{2Cl^- \rightarrow Cl_2 + 2e^-}$$

The overall reaction for this reaction is:

$$\mathrm{2Na^+ + 2Cl^- \rightarrow 2Na{+}Cl_2}$$

With appropriate treatment from the battery, it is possible to get the metal being reduced in an electrolysis process to adhere strongly to the electrode. The use of electrolysis to coat one material with a layer of metal is called **electroplating**. Usually, electroplating is used to cover a cheap metal with a layer of more expensive and more attractive metal. Many people buy jewelry that is plated in gold. Sometimes, electroplating is used to get a surface metal that is a better conductor of electricity. When you wish to have the surface properties of gold (attractive, corrosion resistant, or good conductor), but you don't want to have

the great cost of making an entire object out of solid gold, the answer may be to use cheap metal to make the object and then electroplate a thin layer of gold on the surface.



Electroplating uses electricity to coat one metal with another metal.
CC Tracy Poulsen

Figure 16.7.2: Silver plating.

To silver plate an object like a spoon (plated silverware is less expensive than pure silver), the spoon is placed in the position of the cathode in an electrolysis set up with a solution of silver nitrate. When the current is turned on, the silver ions will migrate through the solution, touch the cathode (spoon) and adhere to it. With enough time and care, a layer of silver can be plated over the entire spoon. The anode for this operation would often be a large piece of silver, from which silver ions would be oxidized and these ions would enter the solution. This is a way of ensuring a steady supply of silver ions for the plating process.

- Half-reaction at the cathode:

$$\mathrm{Ag^+ + e^- \rightarrow Ag}$$

- Half-reaction at the anode:

$$\mathrm{Ag \rightarrow Ag^+ + e^-}$$

Some percentage of the gold and silver jewelry sold is electroplated. The connection points in electric switches are often gold plated to improve electrical conductivity, and most of the chromium pieces on automobiles are chromium plated.

Electrolysis of Molten Sodium Chloride

If we look at the latin roots of the word "electrolysis" we learn that it means, essentially, to "break apart" (*lysis*) using electricity. Our first example of an electrolytic cell will examine how an electric current can be used to break apart an ionic compound into its elements. The following equation represents the breaking apart of $NaCl_{(l)}$:

$$2NaCl_{(l)} \rightarrow 2Na_{(l)} + Cl_{2\,(g)}$$

The half-reactions involved in this process are:

			E°
reduction	$2Na^+_{(l)} + 2e^- \rightarrow Na_{(s)}$		-2.71 V
oxidation	$Cl^-_{(l)} \rightarrow Cl_{2\,(g)} + 2\,e^-$		-1.36V
	net voltage required		**- 4.07V**

Notice that a negative voltage (-4.07V) results when we add up the half-reactions. This tells us that the overall reaction will **NOT** be spontaneous, and a minimum of 4.07 volts will be required for this reaction to occur.

As we shall see, our set-up will have a number of similarities to our electrochemical cells. We will need electrodes and an electrolyte to carry the electric current.

In our NaCl example, the electrodes will simply carry the current, but otherwise will not be directly involved in the reaction. The electrolyte will be the actual molten (melted) NaCl. The electrodes and electrolyte are both required to carry the electric current. Molten NaCl must be used because solid ionic compounds do not carry an electric charge.

Some key differences with an electrochemical cell set-up:

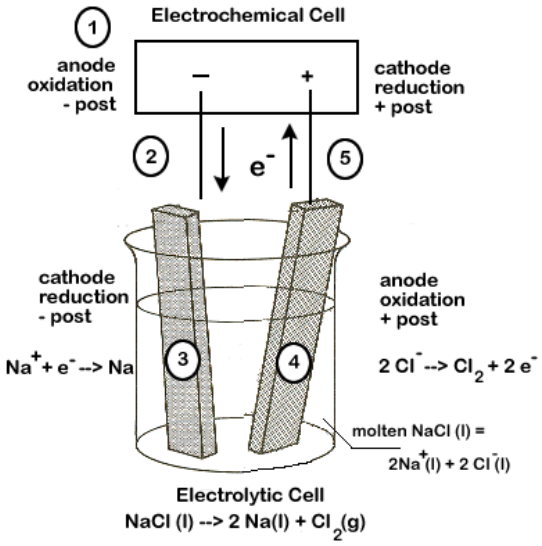
- The two half-reactions are not separated by a salt bridge.
- An electrochemical cell (or other source of electric current) will be required.

Other important items to note:

- The anode of the electrolytic cell is the site of oxidation and the cathode is the site of reduction, just as in an electrochemical cell.
- In an electrochemical cell, the anode is negative and cathode positive, but this is reversed in the electrolytic cell—the anode is positive and the cathode is negative.

Carefully study the diagram of our set up, taking special care to trace the path of the electrons. Unless electrons make a complete circuit, a reaction will not occur.

1. 1. Electrons are "produced" in the battery at the anode, the site of oxidation.
   2. The electrons leave the electrochemical cell through the external circuit.
   3. These negative electrons create a negative electrode in the electrolytic cell, which attracts the positive Na^+ ions in the electrolyte. Na^+ ions combine with the free electrons and become reduced ($2Na^+ + 2e^- \rightarrow Na$).
   4. Meanwhile, the negative Cl^- become attracted to the positive electrode of the electrolytic cell. At this electrode, chlorine is oxidized, releasing electrons ($Cl^- \rightarrow Cl_2 + 2\ e^-$).
   5. These electrons travel through the external circuit, returning to the electrochemical cell.



Electrolysis of Water

Our second example of electrolysis and electrolytic cells involves the breakdown of water. We will find a situation very similar to the electrolysis of molten NaCl. The following equation represents the breaking apart of $H_2O_{(l)}$:

$$2H_2O_{(l)} \rightarrow 2H_{2(g)} + O_{2\ (g)}$$

It may be more difficult to predict the half-reactions involved, but they are:

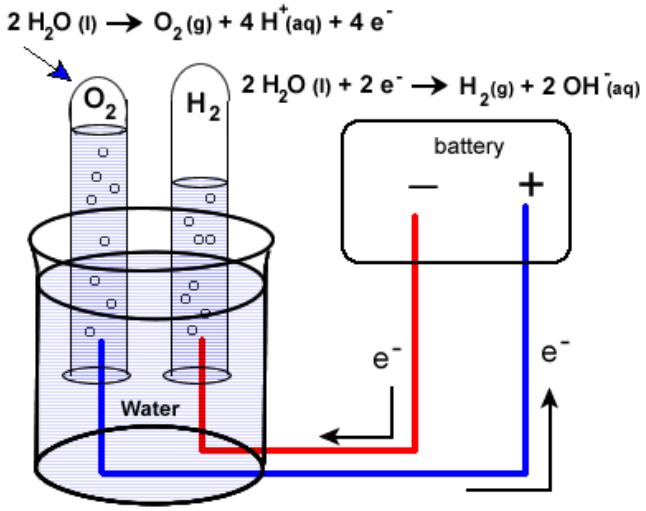
			E°
reduction	$2H_2O_{(l)} + 2e^- \rightarrow H_2 + 2\ OH^-$		-0.83 V
oxidation	$2H_2O_{(l)} \rightarrow O_2 + 4H^+ + 4e^-$		-1.23V
	(see note below for net equation)		
	net voltage required		**- 2.06V**

The set up will be very similar to our last example with some minor differences. Water does not carry a charge well, so an electrolyte is added to the water. Vinegar, a weak acid (acetic acid) may be used. To collect the hydrogen and oxygen gases produced, inverted test tubes are often added, as shown in our diagram below.

Again, take special care to trace the path of the electrons. Unless electrons make a complete circuit, a reaction will not occur.

$$2H_2O_{(l)} + 2e^- \rightarrow H_{2(g)} + 2\ OH^-_{(aq)}$$

$$2H_2O_{(l)} \rightarrow O_{2\ (g)} + 4H^+_{\ (aq)} + 4e^-$$



1. 1. Electrons are "produced" in the battery at the anode, the site of oxidation.
   2. The electrons leave the electrochemical cell through the external circuit.
   3. These negative electrons create a negative electrode in the electrolytic cell which causes the reduction of water.
      Note that the area around this electrode will become basic as OH^- ions are produced.
   4. Meanwhile, the positive electrode water will undergo oxidation.
   5. Electrons produced during this oxidation process will return to the electrochemical cell.

A note about the balanced equation for the electrolysis of water:

You may notice from the half reactions that adding up the equations doesn't initially give us our net equation of:

$$2H_2O_{(l)} \rightarrow 2H_{2(g)} + O_{2\ (g)}$$

Once you balance for electrons (multiply the reduction equation by 2), you'll find that the equations actually add up to:

$$6H_2O_{(l)} \rightarrow 2H_{2(g)} + O_{2\ (g)} + 4H^+_{\ (aq)} + 4\ OH^-_{(aq)}$$

The hydrogen and hydroxide ions will combine to form 4 moles of $H_2O_{(l)}$. Finding our net amount of $H_2O_{(l)}$ involved gives us our final equation:

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CC BY NC SA
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

$$2H_2O_{(l)} \rightarrow 2H_{2(g)} + O_{2\,(g)}$$

Summary

- Electrochemical cells are composed of an anode and cathode in two separate solutions. These solutions are connected by a salt bridge and a conductive wire.
- An electric current consists of a flow of charged particles.
- The electrode where oxidation occurs is called the anode and the electrode where reduction occurs is called the cathode.
- In electroplating, the object to be plated is made the cathode.

Vocabulary

- **Electrochemical cell** - An arrangement of electrodes and ionic solutions in which a redox reaction is used to make electricity (also known as a battery).
- **Electrolysis** - A chemical reaction brought about by an electric current.
- **Electroplating** - A process in which electrolysis is used as a means of coating an object with a layer of metal.

This page titled 13.3.4: Electrolysis- Using Electricity to Do Chemistry is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 16.7: Electrolysis- Using Electricity to Do Chemistry by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

13.E: Oxidation and Reduction (Exercises)

Is the reaction

$2K(s) + Br_2(\ell) \rightarrow 2KBr(s)$

an oxidation-reduction reaction? Explain your answer.

2. Is the reaction $NaCl(aq) + AgNO_3(aq) \rightarrow NaNO_3(aq) + AgCl(s)$

   an oxidation-reduction reaction? Explain your answer.

3. In the reaction $2Ca(s) + O_2(g) \rightarrow 2CaO$

   indicate what has lost electrons and what has gained electrons.

4. In the reaction $16Fe(s) + 3S_8(s) \rightarrow 8Fe_2S_3(s)$

   indicate what has lost electrons and what has gained electrons.

5. In the reaction $2Li(s) + O_2(g) \rightarrow Li_2O_2(s)$

   indicate what has been oxidized and what has been reduced.

6. In the reaction $2Ni(s) + 3I_2(s) \rightarrow 2NiI_3(s)$

   indicate what has been oxidized and what has been reduced.

7. What are two different definitions of oxidation?

8. What are two different definitions of reduction?
9. Assign oxidation numbers to each atom in each substance.
   1. P_4
   2. SO_2
   3. SO_2^{2-}
   4. $Ca(NO_3)_2$
10. Assign oxidation numbers to each atom in each substance.
   1. PF_5
   2. $(NH_4)_2S$
   3. Hg
   4. Li_2O_2 (lithium peroxide)
11. Assign oxidation numbers to each atom in each substance.
   1. CO
   2. CO_2
   3. $NiCl_2$
   4. $NiCl_3$
12. Assign oxidation numbers to each atom in each substance.
   1. NaH (sodium hydride)
   2. NO_2
   3. NO_2^-
   4. $AgNO_3$
13. Assign oxidation numbers to each atom in each substance.
   1. CH_2O

2. NH_3
3. Rb_2SO_4
4. $Zn(C_2H_3O_2)_2$

14. Assign oxidation numbers to each atom in each substance.
    1. C_6H_6
    2. $B(OH)_3$
    3. Li_2S
    4. Au
15. Identify what is being oxidized and reduced in this redox equation by assigning oxidation numbers to the atoms.

$2NO + Cl_2 \rightarrow 2NOCl$

16. Identify what is being oxidized and reduced in this redox equation by assigning oxidation numbers to the atoms.

$Fe + SO_3 \rightarrow FeSO_3$

17. Identify what is being oxidized and reduced in this redox equation by assigning oxidation numbers to the atoms. $2KrF_2 + 2H_2O \rightarrow 2Kr + 4HF + O_2$
18. Identify what is being oxidized and reduced in this redox equation by assigning oxidation numbers to the atoms. $SO_3 + SCl_2 \rightarrow SOCl_2 + SO_2$
19. Identify what is being oxidized and reduced in this redox equation by assigning oxidation numbers to the atoms. $2K + MgCl_2 \rightarrow 2KCl + Mg$
20. Identify what is being oxidized and reduced in this redox equation by assigning oxidation numbers to the atoms.

$C_7H_{16} + 11O_2 \rightarrow 7CO_2 + 8H_2O$

Answers

1. Yes; both K and Br are changing oxidation numbers.
2.
3. Ca has lost electrons, and O has gained electrons.
4.
5. Li has been oxidized, and O has been reduced.
6.
7. loss of electrons; increase in oxidation number
8.
9.
    1. P: 0
    2. S: +4; O: −2
    3. S: +2; O: −2
    4. Ca: 2+; N: +5; O: −2
10.
11.
    1. C: +2; O: −2
    2. C: +4; O: −2
    3. Ni: +2; Cl: −1
    4. Ni: +3; Cl: −1
12.
13.
    1. C: 0; H: +1; O: −2
    2. N: −3; H: +1
    3. Rb: +1; S: +6; O: −2
    4. Zn: +2; C: 0; H: +1; O: −2
14.
15. N is being oxidized, and Cl is being reduced.
16.
17. O is being oxidized, and Kr is being reduced.
18.
19. K is being oxidized, and Mg is being reduced.

Additional Exercises

1. What is the difference between a combination reaction and a redox reaction? Are all combination reactions also redox reactions? Are all redox reactions also combination reactions?

2. Are combustion reactions always redox reactions as well? Explain.

3. A friend argues that the equation

$$Fe^{2+} + Na \rightarrow Fe + Na^{+}$$

is balanced because each side has one iron atom and one sodium atom. Explain why your friend is incorrect.

4. Historically, the first true battery was the Leclanché cell, named after its discoverer, Georges Leclanché. It was based on the following reaction:

$$Zn(s) + Cu^{2+}(aq) \rightarrow Zn^{2+}(aq) + Cu(s)$$

Identify what is being oxidized, what is being reduced, and the respective reducing and oxidizing agents.

Answers

1. A combination reaction makes a new substance from more than one reactant; a redox reaction rearranges electrons. Not all combination reactions are redox reactions, and not all redox reactions are combination reactions.

3. Your friend is incorrect because the number of electrons transferring is not balanced.

This page titled 13.E: Oxidation and Reduction (Exercises) is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

14: RADIOACTIVITY AND NUCLEAR CHEMISTRY

An Introductory Chemistry Libretexts Textmap organized around Tro's textbook
Introductory Chemistry

Template:HideTOC

In today's society, the term *radioactivity* conjures up a variety of images:

- Nuclear power plants producing hydrocarbon-free energy, but with potentially deadly by-products that are difficult to store safely.
- Bombs with the capacity to use nuclear reactions that produce devastating explosions with horrible side effects on the earth as we know it, and on the surviving populations that inhabit it.
- Medical technology that utilizes nuclear chemistry to peer inside living things to detect disease, and the power to irradiate tissues to potentially cure these diseases.
- Fusion reactors that hold the promise of limitless energy with few toxic side products.

Radioactivity has a colorful history and clearly presents a variety of social and scientific dilemmas. In this chapter we will introduce the basic concepts of radioactivity, nuclear equations, and the processes involved in nuclear fission and nuclear fusion.

14.1: The Discovery of Radioactivity

14.2: Types of Radioactivity- Alpha, Beta, and Gamma Decay

14.3: Natural Radioactivity and Half-Life

14.4: Applications of Nuclear Chemistry

14.4.1: Detecting Radioactivity

14.4.2: Radiocarbon Dating- Using Radioactivity to Measure the Age of Fossils and Other Artifacts

14.4.3: The Discovery of Fission and the Atomic Bomb

14.4.4: Nuclear Power- Using Fission to Generate Electricity

14.4.5: Nuclear Fusion- The Power of the Sun

14.4.6: The Effects of Radiation on Life

14.4.7: Radioactivity in Medicine

14.E: Nuclear Chemistry (Exercises)

Template:HideTOC

Contributions & Attributions

This page was constructed from content via the following contributor(s) and edited (topically or extensively) by the LibreTexts development team to meet platform style, presentation, and quality:

- Wikibooks

This page titled 14: Radioactivity and Nuclear Chemistry is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

14.1: The Discovery of Radioactivity

Learning Objectives

- List the most common emissions from naturally radioactive nuclei.
- Compare the energy released per gram of matter in nuclear reactions to that in chemical reactions.
- Express the relationship between nuclear stability and the nuclei's binding energy per nucleon ratio.

No one could have known in the 1800's that the discovery of the fascinating science and art form of photography would eventually lead to the splitting of the atom. The basis of photography is the fact that visible light causes certain chemical reactions. If the chemicals are spread thinly on a surface but protected from light by a covering, no reaction occurs. When the covering is removed, however, light acting on the chemicals causes them to darken. With millions of cameras in use today, we do not think of it as a strange phenomenon—but at the time of its discovery, photography was a strange and wonderful thing.

Even stranger was the discovery by Wilhelm Roentgen—that radiation other than visible light could expose photographic film. He found that film wrapped in dark paper would react when x-rays went through the paper and struck the film.

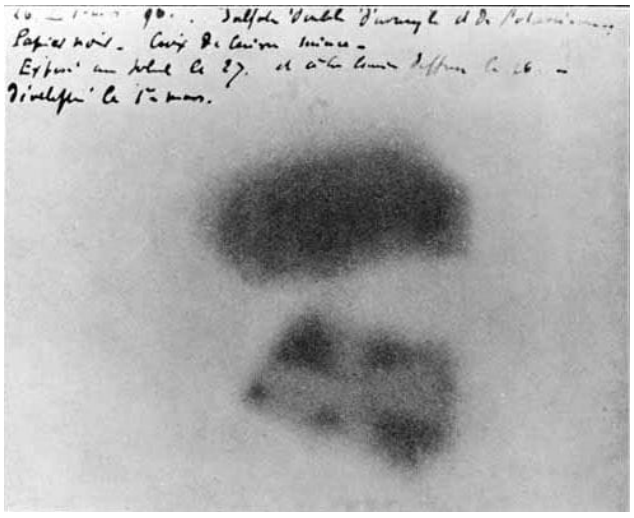


Figure 14.1.1: Image of Becquerel's photographic plate, which has been fogged by exposure to radiation from a uranium salt. The shadow of a metal Maltese Cross placed between the plate and the uranium salt is clearly visible (Public Domain).

When Henri Becquerel heard about Roentgen's discovery, he wondered if his fluorescent minerals would give the same x-rays. Becquerel placed some of his rock crystals on top of a well-covered photographic plate and sat them in the sunlight. The sunlight made the crystals glow with a bright fluorescent light, but when Becquerel developed the film he was very disappointed. He found that only one of his minerals, a uranium salt, had fogged the photographic plate. He decided to try again, and this time, to leave them out in the sun for a longer period of time. Fortunately, the weather didn't cooperate, and Becquerel had to leave the crystals and film stored in a drawer for several cloudy days. Before continuing his experiments, Becquerel decided to check one of the photographic plates to make sure the chemicals were still good. To his amazement, he found that the plate had been exposed in spots where it had been near the uranium containing rocks, and some of these rocks had not been exposed to sunlight at all. In later experiments, Becquerel confirmed that the radiation from the uranium had no connection with light or fluorescence, but the amount of radiation was directly proportional to the concentration of uranium in the rock. Becquerel had discovered **radioactivity**.

The Curies and Radium

One of Becquerel's assistants, a young Polish scientist named Maria Sklowdowska (to become Marie Curie after she married Pierre Curie), became interested in the phenomenon of radioactivity. With her husband, she decided to find out if chemicals other than uranium were radioactive. The Austrian government was happy to send the Curies a ton of pitchblende from the mining region of Joachimstahl, because it was waste material that had to be disposed of anyway. The Curies wanted the pitchblende

because it was the residue of uranium mining. From the ton of pitchblende, the Curies separated $0.10\ \text{g}$ of a previously unknown element, radium, in the form of the compound radium chloride. This radium was many times more radioactive than uranium.

By 1902, the world was aware of a new phenomenon called radioactivity and of new elements which exhibited natural radioactivity. For this work, Becquerel and the Curies shared the 1903 Nobel Prize and for subsequent work; Marie Cure received a second Nobel Prize in 1911. She is the only person ever to receive two Nobel Prizes in science.

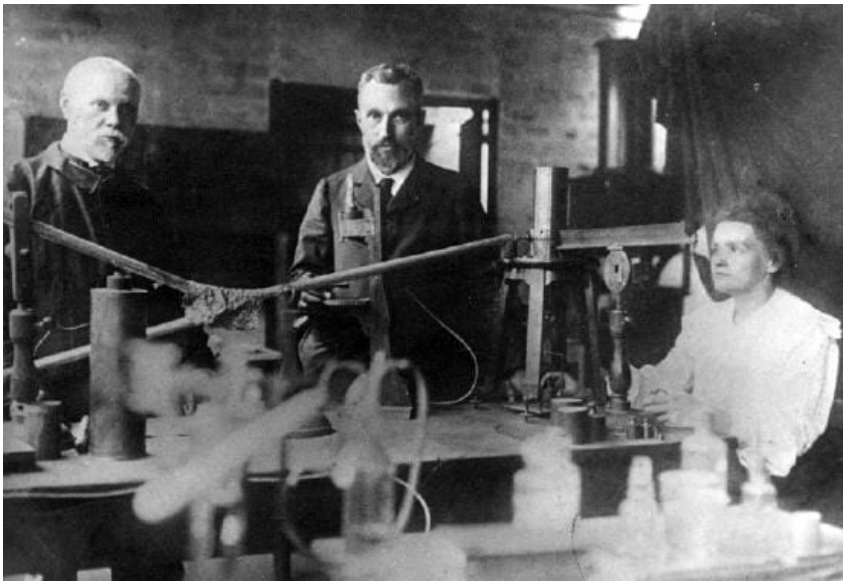


Figure 14.1.2: Marie Curie (right) and Pierre Curie (middle) with Henri Becquerel (left) shared the 1903 Nobel Prize.

Further experiments provided information about the characteristics of the penetrating emissions from radioactive substances. It was soon discovered that there were three common types of radioactive emissions. Some of the radiation could pass easily through aluminum foil while some of the radiation was stopped by the foil. Some of the radiation could even pass through foil up to a centimeter thick. The three basic types of radiation were named alpha, beta, and gamma radiation. The actual composition of the three types of radiation was still not known.

Eventually, scientists were able to demonstrate experimentally that the alpha particle, α, was a helium nucleus (a particle containing two protons and two neutrons), a beta particle, β, was a high speed electron, and gamma rays, γ, were a very high energy form of light (even higher energy than x-rays).

Unstable Nuclei May Disintegrate

A nucleus (with one exception, hydrogen-1) consists of some number of protons and neutrons pulled together in an extremely tiny volume. Since protons are positively charged and like charges repel, it is clear that protons cannot remain together in the nucleus unless there is a powerful force holding them there. The force which holds the nucleus together is generated by **nuclear binding energy**.

A nucleus with a large amount of binding energy per nucleon (proton or neutron) will be held together tightly and is referred to as stable. These nuclei do not break apart. When there is too little binding energy per nucleon, the nucleus will be less stable and may disintegrate (come apart). Such disintegration is referred to as **natural radioactivity**. It is also possible for scientists to smash nuclear particles together and cause nuclear reactions between normally stable nuclei. This disintegration is referred to as **artificial radioactivity**. None of the elements above #92 on the periodic table occur on earth naturally—they are all products of artificial (manmade) radioactivity.

When nuclei come apart, they come apart violently accompanied by a tremendous release of energy in the form of heat, light, and radiation. This energy comes from some of the nuclear binding energy. In nuclear changes, the energy involved comes from the nuclear binding energy. However, in chemical reactions, the energy comes from electrons moving energy levels. A typical nuclear change (such as fission) may involve millions of times more energy per atom changing compared to a chemical change (such as burning)!

Summary

- Henri Becquerel, Marie Curie, and Pierre Curie shared the discovery of radioactivity.

Contributions & Attributions

- Wikibooks
-

This page titled 14.1: The Discovery of Radioactivity is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 17.2: The Discovery of Radioactivity by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

14.2: Types of Radioactivity- Alpha, Beta, and Gamma Decay

Learning Objectives

- Compare qualitatively the ionizing and penetration power of alpha particles (α), beta particles (β), and gamma rays (γ).
- Express the changes in the atomic number and mass number of a radioactive nuclei when an alpha, beta, or gamma particle is emitted.
- Write nuclear equations for alpha and beta decay reactions.

Many nuclei are radioactive; that is, they decompose by emitting particles and in doing so, become a different nucleus. In our studies up to this point, atoms of one element were unable to change into different elements. That is because in all other types of changes discussed, only the electrons were changing. In these changes, the nucleus, which contains the protons that dictate which element an atom is, is changing. All nuclei with 84 or more protons are radioactive, and elements with less than 84 protons have both stable and unstable isotopes. All of these elements can go through nuclear changes and turn into different elements.

In natural radioactive decay, three common emissions occur. When these emissions were originally observed, scientists were unable to identify them as some already known particles and so named them:

- alpha particles (α)
- beta particles (β)
- gamma rays (γ)

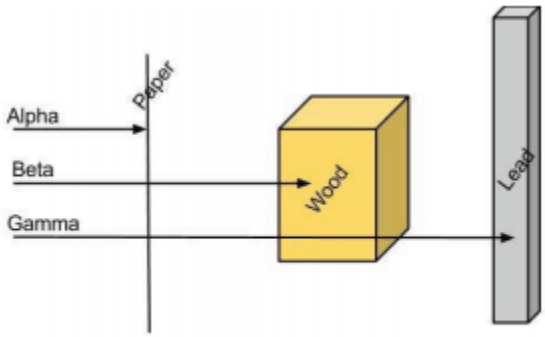
These particles were named using the first three letters of the Greek alphabet. Some later time, alpha particles were identified as helium-4 nuclei, beta particles were identified as electrons, and gamma rays as a form of electromagnetic radiation like x-rays, except much higher in energy and even more dangerous to living systems.

The Ionizing and Penetration Power of Radiation

With all the radiation from natural and man-made sources, we should quite reasonably be concerned about how all the radiation might affect our health. The damage to living systems is done by radioactive emissions when the particles or rays strike tissue, cells, or molecules and alter them. These interactions can alter molecular structure and function; cells no longer carry out their proper function and molecules, such as DNA, no longer carry the appropriate information. Large amounts of radiation are very dangerous, even deadly. In most cases, radiation will damage a single (or very small number) of cells by breaking the cell wall or otherwise preventing a cell from reproducing.

The ability of radiation to damage molecules is analyzed in terms of what is called **ionizing power**. When a radiation particle interacts with atoms, the interaction can cause the atom to lose electrons and thus become ionized. The greater the likelihood that damage will occur by an interaction is the ionizing power of the radiation.

Much of the threat from radiation is involved with the ease or difficulty of protecting oneself from the particles. How thick of a wall do you need to hide behind to be safe? The ability of each type of radiation to pass through matter is expressed in terms of **penetration power.** The more material the radiation can pass through, the greater the penetration power and the more dangerous it is. In general, the greater mass present, the greater the ionizing power, and the lower the penetration power.



Alpha particles can be blocked with paper. Beta particles penetrate through paper, but are blocked by wood. Gamma particles are capable of penetrating paper and wood but can be blocked by a few inches of lead.
CC Tracy Poulsen

Comparing only the three common types of ionizing radiation, alpha particles have the greatest mass. Alpha particles have approximately four times the mass of a proton or neutron and approximately 8,000 times the mass of a beta particle. Because of the large mass of the alpha particle, it has the highest ionizing power and the greatest ability to damage tissue. That same large size of alpha particles, however, makes them less able to penetrate matter. They collide with

molecules very quickly when striking matter, add two electrons, and become a harmless helium atom. Alpha particles have the least penetration power and can be stopped by a thick sheet of paper or even a layer of clothes. They are also stopped by the outer layer of dead skin on people. This may seem to remove the threat from alpha particles, but it is only from external sources. In a nuclear explosion or some sort of nuclear accident, where radioactive emitters are spread around in the environment, the emitters can be inhaled or taken in with food or water and once the alpha emitter is inside you, you have no protection at all.

Beta particles are much smaller than alpha particles and therefore, have much less ionizing power (less ability to damage tissue), but their small size gives them much greater penetration power. Most resources say that beta particles can be stopped by a one-quarter inch thick sheet of aluminum. Once again, however, the greatest danger occurs when the beta emitting source gets inside of you.

Gamma rays are not particles, but a high energy form of electromagnetic radiation (like x-rays, except more powerful). Gamma rays are energy that has no mass or charge. Gamma rays have tremendous penetration power and require several inches of dense material (like lead) to shield them. Gamma rays may pass all the way through a human body without striking anything. They are considered to have the least ionizing power and the greatest penetration power.

Table $14.2.1$ *Comparison of Penetrating Power,Ionizing Power and Shielding of Alpha and Beta Particles, and Gamma Rays.*

Particle	Symbol	Mass	Penetrating Power	Ionizing Power	Shielding
Alpha	α	4amu	Very Low	Very High	Paper Skin
Beta	β	$1/2000\text{amu}$	Intermediate	Intermediate	Aluminum
Gamma	γ	0 (energy only)	Very High	Very Low	2 inches lead

The safest amount of radiation to the human body is zero. It is impossible to completely avoid ionizing radiation, so the next best goal is to be exposed to as little as possible. The two best ways to minimize exposure are to limit time of exposure, and to increase distance from the source.

Alpha Decay

The nuclear disintegration process that emits alpha particles is called alpha decay. An example of a nucleus that undergoes alpha decay is uranium-238. The alpha decay of U-238 is

$$^{238}_{92}\text{U} \rightarrow {}^{4}_{2}\text{He} + {}^{234}_{90}\text{Th} \tag{14.2.1}$$

In this nuclear change, the uranium atom $\left({}^{238}_{92}\text{U}\right)$ transmuted into an atom of thorium $\left({}^{234}_{90}\text{Th}\right)$ and, in the process, gave off an alpha particle. Look at the symbol for the alpha particle: ${}^{4}_{2}\text{He}$. Where does an alpha particle get this symbol? The bottom number in a nuclear symbol is the number of protons. That means that the alpha particle has two protons in it that were lost by the uranium atom. The two protons also have a charge of $+2$. The top number, 4, is the mass number or the total of the protons and neutrons in the particle. Because it has two protons, and a total of four protons and neutrons, alpha particles must also have two neutrons. Alpha particles always have this same composition: two protons and two neutrons.

Another alpha particle producer is thorium-230.

$$^{230}_{90}\text{Th} \rightarrow {}^{4}_{2}\text{He} + {}^{226}_{88}\text{Ra} \tag{14.2.2}$$

These types of equations are called nuclear equations and are similar to the chemical equivalent discussed through the previous chapters.

Beta Decay

Another common decay process is beta particle emission, or beta decay. A beta particle is simply a high energy electron that is emitted from the nucleus. It may occur to you that we have a logically difficult situation here. Nuclei do not contain electrons and yet during beta decay, an electron is emitted from a nucleus. At the same time that the electron is being ejected from the nucleus, a neutron is becoming a proton. It is tempting to picture this as a neutron breaking into two pieces with the pieces being a proton and an electron. That would be convenient for simplicity, but unfortunately that is not what happens (more on this subject will be explained at the end of this section). For convenience, we will treat beta decay as a neutron splitting into a proton and an electron. The proton stays in the nucleus, increasing the atomic number of the atom by one. The electron is ejected from

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

the nucleus and is the particle of radiation called beta.

To insert an electron into a nuclear equation and have the numbers add up properly, an atomic number and a mass number had to be assigned to an electron. The mass number assigned to an electron is zero (0), which is reasonable since the mass number is the number of protons plus neutrons, and an electron contains no protons and no neutrons. The atomic number assigned to an electron is negative one (-1), because that allows a nuclear equation containing an electron to balance atomic numbers. Therefore, the nuclear symbol representing an electron (beta particle) is

$$ {}^{0}_{-1}\mathrm{e} \text{ or } {}^{0}_{-1}\beta $$

Thorium-234 is a nucleus that undergoes beta decay. Here is the nuclear equation for this beta decay:

$$ {}^{234}_{90}\mathrm{Th} \rightarrow {}^{0}_{-1}\mathrm{e} + {}^{234}_{91}\mathrm{Pa} \tag{14.2.3} $$

Gamma Radiation

Frequently, gamma ray production accompanies nuclear reactions of all types. In the alpha decay of U-238, two gamma rays of different energies are emitted in addition to the alpha particle.

$$ {}^{238}_{92}\mathrm{U} \rightarrow {}^{4}_{2}\mathrm{He} + {}^{234}_{90}\mathrm{Th} + 2{}^{0}_{0}\gamma $$

Virtually all of the nuclear reactions in this chapter also emit gamma rays, but for simplicity the gamma rays are generally not shown. Nuclear reactions produce a great deal more energy than chemical reactions. Chemical reactions release the difference between the chemical bond energy of the reactants and products, and the energies released have an order of magnitude of $1 \times 10^{3}\ \mathrm{kJ/mol}$. Nuclear reactions release some of the binding energy and may convert tiny amounts of matter into energy. The energy released in a nuclear reaction has an order of magnitude of $1 \times 10^{18}\ \mathrm{kJ/mol}$. That means that nuclear changes involve almost **one million times more energy** per atom than chemical changes!

Note

Virtually all of the nuclear reactions in this chapter also emit gamma rays, but for simplicity the gamma rays are generally not shown.

The essential features of each reaction are shown in Figure 17.3.2

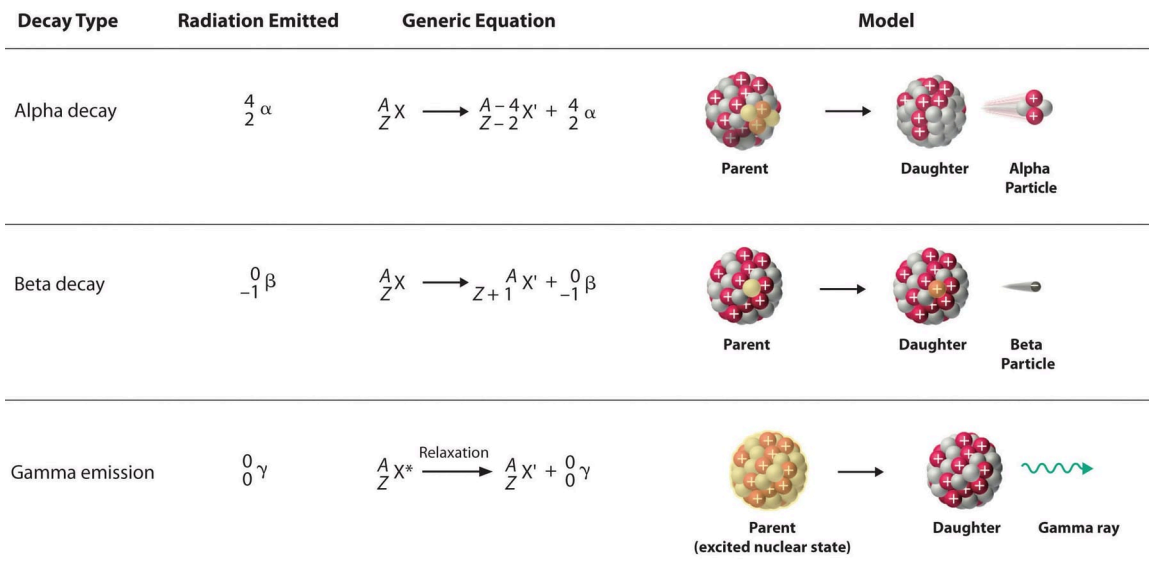


Figure 17.3.2: *Three most common modes of nuclear decay.*

"Nuclear Accounting"

When writing nuclear equations, there are some general rules that will help you:

- The sum of the mass numbers (top numbers) on the reactant side equal the sum of the mass numbers on the product side.
- The atomic numbers (bottom numbers) on the two sides of the reaction will also be equal.

In the alpha decay of $^{238}\mathrm{U}$ (Equation 14.2.1), both atomic and mass numbers are conserved:

- mass number: $238 = 4 + 234$
- atomic number: $92 = 2 + 90$

Confirm that this equation is correctly balanced by adding up the reactants' and products' atomic and mass numbers. Also, note that because this was an alpha reaction, one of the products is the alpha particle, $^{4}_{2}\mathrm{He}$.

Note that both the mass numbers and the atomic numbers add up properly for the beta decay of thorium-234 (Equation 14.2.3):

- mass number: $234 = 0 + 234$
- atomic number: $90 = -1 + 91$

The mass numbers of the original nucleus and the new nucleus are the same because a neutron has been lost, but a proton has been gained, and so the sum of protons plus neutrons remains the same. The atomic number in the process has been increased by one since the new nucleus has one more proton than the original nucleus. In this beta decay, a thorium-234 nucleus has one more proton than the original nucleus. In this beta decay, a thorium-234 nucleus has become a protactinium-234 nucleus. Protactinium-234 is also a beta emitter and produces uranium-234.

$$^{234}_{91}\mathrm{Pa} \rightarrow {}^{0}_{-1}\mathrm{e} + {}^{234}_{92}\mathrm{U} \tag{14.2.4}$$

Once again, the atomic number increases by one and the mass number remains the same; this confirms that the equation is correctly balanced.

What About Balancing Charge?

Both alpha and beta particles are charged, but nuclear reactions in Equations 14.2.1, 14.2.3, and most of the other nuclear reactions above, are not balanced with respect to charge, as discussed when balancing redox reactions. When studying nuclear reactions in general, there is typically little information or concern about the chemical state of the radioactive isotopes, because the electrons from the electron cloud are not directly involved in the nuclear reaction (in contrast to chemical reactions).

So it is acceptable to **ignore** charge in balancing nuclear reactions, and concentrate on balancing mass and atomic numbers only.

Example 14.2.1

Complete the following nuclear reaction by filling in the missing particle.

$$^{210}_{86}\mathrm{Rn} \rightarrow {}^{4}_{2}\mathrm{He} + ?$$

Solution

This reaction is an alpha decay. We can solve this problem one of two ways:

Solution 1: When an atom gives off an alpha particle, its atomic number drops by 2 and its mass number drops by 4, leaving: $^{206}_{84}\mathrm{Po}$. We know the symbol is Po, for polonium, because this is the element with 84 protons on the periodic table.

Solution 2: Remember that the mass numbers on each side must total up to the same amount. The same is true of the atomic numbers.

- Mass numbers: $210 = 4 + ?$
- Atomic numbers: $86 = 2 + ?$

We are left with $^{206}_{84}\text{Po}$.

Example 14.2.2

Write each of the following nuclear reactions.

a) Carbon-14, used in carbon dating, decays by beta emission.

b) Uranium-238 decays by alpha emission.

Solution

a) Beta particles have the symbol $^{0}_{-1}\text{e}$. Emitting a beta particle causes the atomic number to increase by 1 and the mass number to not change. We get atomic numbers and symbols for elements using our periodic table. We are left with the following reaction:

$$^{14}_{6}\text{C} \rightarrow {}^{0}_{-1}\text{e} + {}^{14}_{7}\text{N}$$

b) Alpha particles have the symbol $^{4}_{2}\text{He}$. Emitting an alpha particle causes the atomic number to decrease by 2 and the mass number to decrease by 4. We are left with:

$$^{238}_{92}\text{U} \rightarrow {}^{4}_{2}\text{He} + {}^{234}_{90}\text{Th}$$

Decay Series

The decay of a radioactive nucleus is a move toward becoming stable. Often, a radioactive nucleus cannot reach a stable state through a single decay. In such cases, a series of decays will occur until a stable nucleus is formed. The decay of U-238 is an example of this. The U-238 decay series starts with U-238 and goes through fourteen separate decays to finally reach a stable nucleus, Pb-206 (Figure 17.3.3). There are similar decay series for U-235 and Th-232. The U-235 series ends with Pb-207 and the Th-232 series ends with Pb-208.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

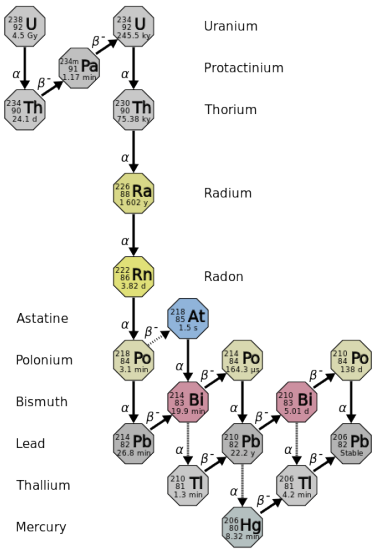


Figure 17.3.3: Uranium-238 decay chain. (CC-BY-3.0 Tosaka)

Several of the radioactive nuclei that are found in nature are present there because they are produced in one of the radioactive decay series. For example, there may have been radon on the earth at the time of its formation, but that original radon would have all decayed by this time. The radon that is present now is present because it was formed in a decay series (mostly by U-238).

Summary

A nuclear reaction is one that changes the structure of the nucleus of an atom. The atomic numbers and mass numbers in a nuclear equation must be balanced. Protons and neutrons are made up of quarks. The two most common modes of natural radioactivity are alpha decay and beta decay. Most nuclear reactions emit energy in the form of gamma rays.

Vocabulary

- **Alpha decay** - A common mode of radioactive decay in which a nucleus emits an alpha particle (a helium-4 nucleus).
- **Beta decay** - A common mode of radioactive decay in which a nucleus emits beta particles. The daughter nucleus will have a higher atomic number than the original nucleus.
- **Quark** - Particles that form one of the two basic constituents of matter. Various species of quarks combine in specific ways to form protons and neutrons, in each case taking exactly three quarks to make the composite particle.

This page titled 14.2: Types of Radioactivity- Alpha, Beta, and Gamma Decay is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 17.3: Types of Radioactivity- Alpha, Beta, and Gamma Decay by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

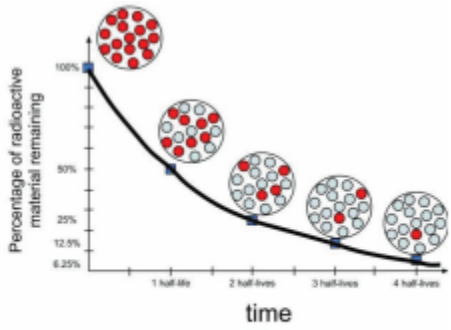
14.3: Natural Radioactivity and Half-Life

Learning Objectives

- Describe what is meant by the term half-life and what factors affect half-life.
- Calculate the amount of radioactive material that will remain after an integral number of half-lives.
- Find the half-life of an isotope given graphical or other data.
- Describe how carbon-14 is used to determine the age of carbon-containing objects.

Rate of Radioactive Decay

During natural radioactive decay, not all atoms of an element are instantaneously changed to atoms of another element. The decay process takes time and there is value in being able to express the rate at which a process occurs. A useful concept is **half-life**, which is the time required for half of the starting material to change or decay. Half-lives can be calculated from measurements on the change in mass of a nuclide and the time it takes to occur. The only thing we know is that in the time of that substance's half-life, half of the original nuclei will disintegrate. Although chemical changes are sped up or slowed down by changing factors such as temperature and concentration, these factors have no effect on half-life. Each radioactive isotope will have its own unique half-life that is independent of any of these factors.



After one half-life, half of the radioactive atoms have decayed. After another half-life, half of the remaining atoms have changed. This pattern continues, with half of the atoms changing over each half-life time.
CC Tracy Poulsen

The half-lives of many radioactive isotopes have been determined; they have been found to range from extremely long half-lives of 10 billion years, to extremely short half-lives of fractions of a second.

Table 17.5.1: Table of Selected Half-lives

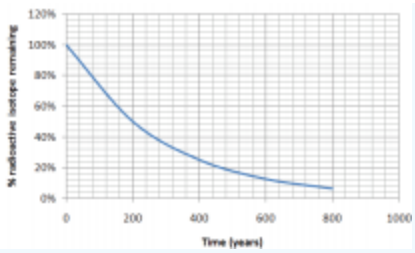
Element	Mass Number (A)	Half-life	Element	Mass Number (A)	Half Life
Uranium	238	4.5 Billion years	Californium	251	800 years
Neptunium	240	1 hour	Nobelium	254	3 seconds
Plutonium	243	5 hours	Carbon	14	5730 years
Americium	245	25 minutes	Carbon	16	740 milliseconds

The quantity of radioactive nuclei at any given time will decrease to half as much in one half-life. For example, if there are $100\ \text{g}$ of Cf-251 in a sample at some time, after 800 years, there will be $50\ \text{g}$ of Cf-251 remaining; after another 800 years (1600 years total), there will only be $25\ \text{g}$ remaining.

Remember, the half-life is the time it takes for half of your sample—no matter how much you have—to remain. Each half-life will follow the same general pattern as Cf-251. The only difference is the length of time it takes for half of a sample to decay.

Example 14.3.3

What is the half-life of an isotope that produces the following graph of decay over time?



Solution

We know that the half-life is the time it takes for half of a sample to change. How long did it take for half of our isotope to change? It took approximately 200 years for 100% of our sample to leave only 50% (half of the original amount) remaining. **The half-life is 200 years.**

*Notice that after another 200 years (400 years total), 25% remains (half of 50%).

Look carefully at the graph in the previous example. All types of radioactive decay make a graph of the same general shape. The only difference is the scale and units of the x-axis, as the half-life time will be different.

Example 14.3.2

If there are 60 grams of Np-240 present, how much Np-240 will remain after 4 hours? (Np-240 has a half-life of 1 hour.)

Solution

We create a table based on Np-240's half-life of 1 hour.

Amount of Np-240 present	Amount of time passed
60 g	0 (this is the amount before any time has passed)
30 g	1 hour (1 half-life)
15 g	2 hours (2 half-lives)
7.5 g	3 hours
3.75 g	4 hours

After 4 hours, only $3.75\ \mathrm{g}$ of our original $60\ \mathrm{g}$ sample would remain of the radioactive isotope Np-240.

Example 14.3.3

A sample of Ac-225 originally contained 80 grams, and after 50 days only 2.55 grams of the original Ac-225 remain. What is the half life of Ac-225?

Solution

We will tackle this problem similarly to the last problem. The difference is that we are looking for the half-life time. Let's set up a similar table, though:

Amount of Ac-225 present	Amount of time passed
80 g	0
40 g	1 half-life
20 g	2 half-lives
10 g	3 half-lives
5 g	4 half-lives
2.5 g	5 half-lives

We know that 50 days is the same as 5 half-lives. Therefore, 1 half-life is 10 days. The half-life of Ac-225 is 10 days.

Radioactive Dating

An ingenious application of half-life studies established a new science of determining ages of materials by half-life calculations. For geological dating, the decay of U-238 can be used. The half-life of U-238 is 4.5×10^9 years. The end product of the decay of U-238 is Pb-206. After one half-life, a 1.00 gram sample of uranium will have decayed to 0.50 grams of U-238 and 0.43 grams of Pb-206. By comparing the amount of U-238 to the amount of Pb-206 in a sample of uranium mineral, the age of the mineral can be estimated. Present day estimates for the age of the Earth's crust from this method is at 4 billion years.

Organic material (material made from things that were once living, such as paper and fabric) is radioactively dated using the long-lived nuclide of carbon, carbon-14. This method of determining the age of organic material (or once living materials) was given the name radiocarbon dating. The carbon dioxide consumed by living systems contains a certain concentration of $^{14}\mathrm{CO}_2$. When an organism dies, the acquisition of carbon-14 stops, but the decay of the C-14 in the body continues. As time goes by, the ratio of C-14 to C-12 decreases at a rate determined by the half-life of C-14. Using half-life equations, the time since the organism died can be calculated. These procedures have been used to determine the age of organic artifacts and determine, for instance, whether art works are real or fake.

Summary and Vocabulary

The half-life of an isotope is used to describe the rate at which the isotope will decay and give off radiation. Using the half-life, it is possible to predict the amount of radioactive material that will remain after a given amount of time. C-14 dating procedures have been used to determine the age of organic artifacts. Its half-life is approximately 5700 years.

- **Background radiation** - Radiation that comes from environmental sources including the earth's crust, the atmosphere, cosmic rays, and radioisotopes. These natural sources of radiation account for the largest amount of radiation received by most people.
- **Half-life** - The time interval required for a quantity of (radioactive) material to decay to half of its original value.

This page titled 14.3: Natural Radioactivity and Half-Life is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 17.5: Natural Radioactivity and Half-Life by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

14.4: APPLICATIONS OF NUCLEAR CHEMISTRY

Nuclear chemistry affects our lives in numerous ways: diagnoses and treatments in medicine, power sources that avoid global warming, international diplomacy based on nuclear proliferation, and even the energy our planet gets from the sun. We will not have time to explore any of these applications in great detail, however the little bit we have covered related to nuclear chemistry is sufficient for a survey of many of these topics.

14.4.1: Detecting Radioactivity

14.4.2: Radiocarbon Dating- Using Radioactivity to Measure the Age of Fossils and Other Artifacts

14.4.3: The Discovery of Fission and the Atomic Bomb

14.4.4: Nuclear Power- Using Fission to Generate Electricity

14.4.5: Nuclear Fusion- The Power of the Sun

14.4.6: The Effects of Radiation on Life

14.4.7: Radioactivity in Medicine

This page titled 14.4: Applications of Nuclear Chemistry is shared under a CC BY 4.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

14.4.1: Detecting Radioactivity

Learning Objectives

- Understand how the Geiger counter can be used to quantify the rate of ionization radiation.

When alpha, beta or gamma particles collide with a target, some of the energy in the particle is transferred to the target, typically resulting in the promotion of an electron to an “excited state”. In many “targets”, especially gasses, this results in *ionization*. Alpha, beta and gamma radiation are broadly referred to as **ionizing radiation**. A **Geiger counter** (or Geiger-Müller counter) takes advantage of this in order to detect these particles. In a Geiger tube, the electron produced by ionization of a captive gas travels to the anode and the change in voltage is detected by the attached circuitry. Most counters of this type are designed to emit an audible “click” in response to the change in voltage, and to also show it on a digital or analog meter. A simple schematic of a Geiger counter is shown in Figure 14.4.1.1.

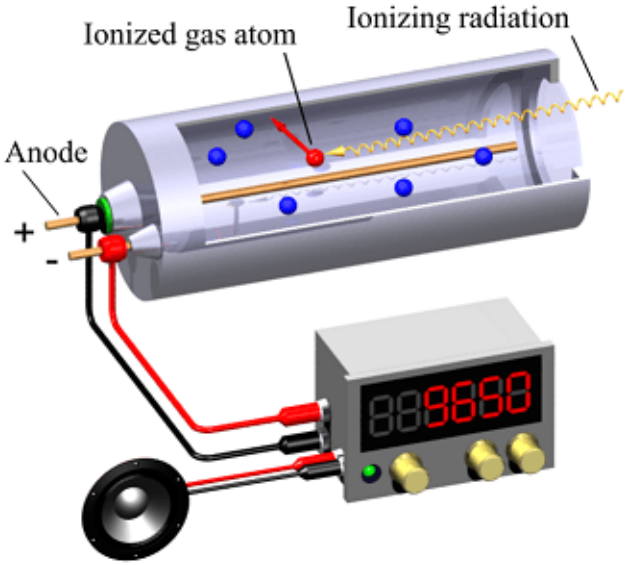


Figure 14.4.1.1: Schematic of a Geiger-Müller counter using an "end window" tube for low penetration radiation. A loudspeaker is also used for indication. (CC-BY-SA-3.0 Svjo-2 vai Wikipedia(opens in new window)).

Although scientists were not aware at the time of the Geiger counter's invention, all of us are subjected to a certain amount of radiation every day. This radiation is called **background radiation** and comes from a variety of natural and artificial radiation sources. Approximately 82% of background radiation comes from natural sources. These natural sources include:

1. Sources in the earth—including naturally occurring radioactive elements—which are incorporated in building materials, and also in the human body.
2. Sources from space in the form of cosmic rays.
3. Sources in the atmosphere, such as radioactive radon gas released from the earth; and radioactive atoms like carbon-14, produced in the atmosphere by bombardment from high-energy cosmic rays.

This page titled 14.4.1: Detecting Radioactivity is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 17.4: Detecting Radioactivity by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

14.4.2: Radiocarbon Dating- Using Radioactivity to Measure the Age of Fossils and Other Artifacts

Learning Objectives

- Identify the age of materials that can be approximately determined using Radiocarbon dating.

When we speak of the element Carbon, we most often refer to the most naturally abundant stable isotope ^{12}C. Although ^{12}C is definitely essential to life, its unstable sister isotope ^{14}C has become of extreme importance to the science world. Radiocarbon dating is the process of determining the age of a sample by examining the amount of ^{14}C remaining against its known half-life, 5,730 years. The reason this process works is because when organisms are alive, they are constantly replenishing their ^{14}C supply through respiration, providing them with a constant amount of the isotope. However, when an organism ceases to exist, it no longer takes in carbon from its environment and the unstable ^{14}C isotope begins to decay. From this science, we are able to approximate the date at which the organism lived on Earth. Radiocarbon dating is used in many fields to learn information about the past conditions of organisms and the environments present on Earth.

The Carbon-14 Cycle

Radiocarbon dating (usually referred to simply as carbon-14 dating) is a radiometric dating method. It uses the naturally occurring radioisotope carbon-14 (^{14}C) to estimate the age of carbon-bearing materials up to about 58,000 to 62,000 years old. Carbon has two stable, nonradioactive isotopes: carbon-12 (^{12}C) and carbon-13 (^{13}C). There are also trace amounts of the unstable radioisotope carbon-14 (^{14}C) on Earth. Carbon-14 has a relatively short half-life of 5,730 years, meaning that the fraction of carbon-14 in a sample is halved over the course of 5,730 years due to radioactive decay to nitrogen-14. The carbon-14 isotope would vanish from Earth's atmosphere in less than a million years were it not for the constant influx of cosmic rays interacting with molecules of nitrogen (N_2) and single nitrogen atoms (N) in the stratosphere. Both processes of formation and decay of carbon-14 are shown in Figure 1.

f1.bmp

Figure 1: Diagram of the formation of carbon-14 (forward), the decay of carbon-14 (reverse). Carbon-14 is constantly generated in the atmosphere and cycled through the carbon and nitrogen cycles. Once an organism is de-coupled from these cycles (i.e., death), then the carbon-14 decays until there is essentially none left.

When plants fix atmospheric carbon dioxide (CO_2) into organic compounds during photosynthesis, the resulting fraction of the isotope ^{14}C in the plant tissue will match the fraction of the isotope in the atmosphere (and biosphere since they are coupled). After a plant dies, the incorporation of all carbon isotopes, including ^{14}C, stops and the concentration of ^{14}C declines due to the radioactive decay of ^{14}C following.

$$^{14}\mathrm{C} \longrightarrow {}^{14}\mathrm{N} + \mathrm{e}^{-} + \mu_e \tag{14.4.2.1}$$

This follows first-order kinetics:

$$N_t = N_o e^{-kt} \tag{14.4.2.2}$$

where

- N_0 is the number of atoms of the isotope in the original sample (at time t = 0, when the organism from which the sample is derived was de-coupled from the biosphere).
- N_t is the number of atoms left after time t.
- k is the rate constant for the radioactive decay.

The half-life of a radioactive isotope (usually denoted by $t_{1/2}$) is a more familiar concept than k for radioactivity, so although Equation 14.4.2.2 is expressed in terms of k, it is more usual to quote the value of $t_{1/2}$. The currently accepted value for the half-life of ^{14}C is 5,730 years. This means that after 5,730 years, only half of the initial ^{14}C will remain; a quarter will remain after 11,460 years; an eighth after 17,190 years; and so on.

The equation relating rate constant to half-life for first order kinetics is

$$k = \frac{\ln 2}{t_{1/2}} \tag{14.4.2.3}$$

so the rate constant is then

$$k = \frac{\ln 2}{5.73 \times 10^3} = 1.21 \times 10^{-4} \text{year}^{-1} \tag{14.4.2.4}$$

and Equation 14.4.2.1 can be rewritten as

$$N_t = N_o e^{-\ln 2 \; t/t_{1/2}} \tag{14.4.2.5}$$

or

$$t = \left(\frac{\ln \frac{N_o}{N_t}}{\ln 2} \right) t_{1/2} = 8267 \ln \frac{N_o}{N_t} = 19035 \log_{10} \frac{N_o}{N_t} \quad \text{(in years)} \tag{14.4.2.6}$$

The sample is assumed to have originally had the same $^{14}C/^{12}C$ ratio as the ratio in the atmosphere, and since the size of the sample is known, the total number of atoms in the sample can be calculated, yielding N_0, the number of ^{14}C atoms in the original sample. Measurement of N, the number of ^{14}C atoms currently in the sample, allows the calculation of t, the age of the sample, using the Equation 14.4.2.6.

Note

Deriving Equation 14.4.2.6 assumes that the level of ^{14}C in the atmosphere has remained constant over time. However, the level of ^{14}C in the atmosphere has varied significantly, so time estimated by Equation 14.4.2.6 must be corrected by using data from other sources.

Example 1: Dead Sea Scrolls

In 1947, samples of the Dead Sea Scrolls were analyzed by carbon dating. It was found that the carbon-14 present had an *activity* (rate of decay) of d/min.g (where d = disintegration). In contrast, living material exhibit an activity of 14 d/min.g. Thus, using Equation 14.4.2.2,

$$\ln \frac{14}{11} = (1.21 \times 10^{-4})t$$

Thus,

$$t = \frac{\ln 1.272}{1.21 \times 10^{-4}} = 2 \times 10^3 \text{years}$$

From the measurement performed in 1947, the Dead Sea Scrolls were determined to be 2000 years old, giving them a date of 53 BC, and confirming their authenticity. This discovery is in contrast to the carbon dating results for the Turin Shroud that was supposed to have wrapped Jesus' body. Carbon dating has shown that the cloth was made between 1260 and 1390 AD. Thus, the Turin Shroud was made over a thousand years after the death of Jesus.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CC BY NC SA
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

YouTube Video

This interactive element is not available in this format. Visit the link or scan the QR code to access it online.

View this YouTube Video online

Describes radioactive half-life and how to do some simple calculations using half-life.

History

The technique of radiocarbon dating was developed by Willard Libby and his colleagues at the University of Chicago in 1949. Emilio Segrè asserted in his autobiography that Enrico Fermi suggested the concept to Libby at a seminar in Chicago that year. Libby estimated that the steady-state radioactivity concentration of exchangeable carbon-14 would be about 14 disintegrations per minute (dpm) per gram. In 1960, Libby was awarded the Nobel Prize in chemistry for this work. He demonstrated the accuracy of radiocarbon dating by accurately estimating the age of wood from a series of samples for which the age was known, including an ancient Egyptian royal barge dating from 1850 BCE. Before Radiocarbon dating was discovered, someone had to find the existence of the ^{14}C isotope. In 1940, Martin Kamen and Sam Ruben at the University of California, Berkeley Radiation Laboratory did just that. They found a form, an isotope, of Carbon that contained 8 neutrons and 6 protons. Using this finding, Willard Libby and his team at the University of Chicago proposed that Carbon-14 was unstable and underwent a total of 14 disintegrations per minute per gram. Using this hypothesis, the initial half-life he determined was 5568, give or take 30 years. The accuracy of this proposal was proven by dating a piece of wood from an Ancient Egyptian barge, the age of which was already known. From that point on, scientists have used these techniques to examine fossils, rocks, and ocean currents; as well as to determine age and event timing. Throughout the years, measurement tools have become more technologically advanced, allowing researchers to be more precise. We now use what is known as the Cambridge half-life of 5730+/- 40 years for Carbon-14. Although it may be seen as outdated, many labs still use Libby's half-life in order to stay consistent in publications and calculations within the laboratory. From the discovery of Carbon-14 to radiocarbon dating of fossils, we can see what an essential role Carbon has played and continues to play in our lives today.

Summary

The entire process of Radiocarbon dating depends on the decay of carbon-14. This process begins when an organism is no longer able to exchange Carbon with its environment. Carbon-14 is first formed when cosmic rays in the atmosphere allow for excess neutrons to be produced, which then react with Nitrogen to produce a constantly replenishing supply of carbon-14 to exchange with organisms.

- Carbon-14 dating can be used to estimate the age of carbon-bearing materials up to about 58,000 to 62,000 years old.
- The carbon-14 isotope would vanish from Earth's atmosphere in less than a million years were it not for the constant influx of cosmic rays interacting with atmospheric nitrogen.
- One of the most frequent uses of radiocarbon dating is to estimate the age of organic remains from archeological sites.

References

1. Hua, Quan. "Radiocarbon: A Chronological Tool for the Recent Past." *Quaternary Geochronology* 4.5(2009):378-390. *Science Direct*. Web. 22 Nov. 2009.
2. Petrucci, Ralph H. General Chemistry: Principles and Modern Applications 9th Ed. New Jersey: Pearson Education Inc. 2007.
3. "Radio Carbon Dating." *BBC- Homepage*. 25 Oct. 2001. Web. 22 Nov. 2009. http://www.bbc.co.uk.
4. Willis, E.H., H. Tauber, and K. O. Munnich. "Variations in the Atmospheric Radiocarbon Concentration Over the Past 1300 Years." *American Journal of Science Radiocarbon Supplement* 2(1960) 1-4. Print.

cK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Problems

1. If, when a hippopotamus lived, there was a total of 25 grams of Carbon-14, how many grams will remain 5730 years after he is laid to rest? 12.5 grams, because one half-life has occurred.
2. How many grams of Carbon-14 will be present in the hippopotamus' remains after three half-lives have passed? 3.125 grams of Carbon-14 will remain after three half-lives.

Contributors and Attributions

- Template:ContribBarron
- Boundless (www.boundless.com)
- Wikipedia

This page titled 14.4.2: Radiocarbon Dating- Using Radioactivity to Measure the Age of Fossils and Other Artifacts is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- Radiocarbon Dating is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

14.4.3: The Discovery of Fission and the Atomic Bomb

Learning Objectives

- Define and give examples of fission and fusion.
- Classify nuclear reactions as fission or fusion.
- List some medical uses of nuclear energy.

Nuclei that are larger than iron-56 may undergo nuclear reactions in which they break up into two or more smaller nuclei. These reactions are called **fission** reactions. Conversely, nuclei that are smaller than iron-56 become larger nuclei in order to be more stable. These nuclei undergo a nuclear reaction in which smaller nuclei join together to form a larger nucleus. Such nuclear reactions are called **fusion** reactions.

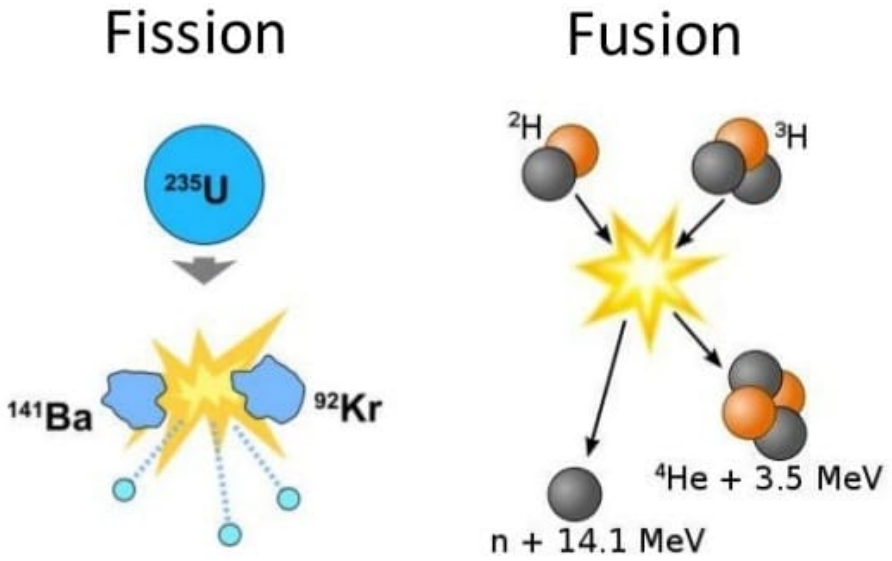


Figure 14.4.3.1: (left) Nuclear fission occurs when one large nucleus is split into two or more smaller nuclei. (right) Nuclear fusion happens when two small nuclei combine to make a larger nucleus.

Fission and Chain Reactions

In both fission and fusion, large amounts of energy are given off in the form of heat, light, and gamma radiation. Nuclear fission was discovered in the late 1930s when U-235 nuclides were bombarded with neutrons and were observed to split into two smaller-mass nuclei.

$$ {}^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n} + {}^{235}_{92}\mathrm{U} \rightarrow {}^{141}_{56}\mathrm{Ba} + {}^{92}_{36}\mathrm{Kr} + 3{}^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n} $$

The products shown are only one of many sets of products from the disintegration of a U-235 nucleus. Over 35 different elements have been observed in the fission products of U-235.

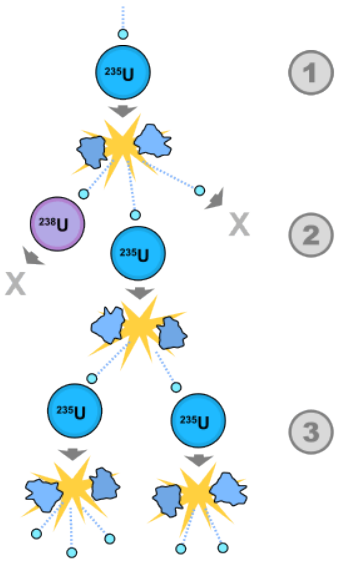


Figure 14.4.3.2: A possible nuclear fission chain reaction. 1. A uranium-235 atom absorbs a neutron, and fissions into two new atoms (fission fragments), releasing three new neutrons and a large amount of binding energy. 2. One of those neutrons is absorbed by an atom of uranium-238, and does not continue the reaction. Another neutron leaves the system without being absorbed. However, one neutron does collide with an atom of uranium-235, which then fissions and releases two neutrons and more binding energy. 3. Both of those neutrons collide with uranium-235 atoms, each of which fissions and releases a few neutrons, which can then continue the reaction. (Public Domain.)

When a neutron strikes a U-235 nucleus and the nucleus captures a neutron, it undergoes fission, producing two lighter nuclei and three free neutrons. The production of the free neutrons makes it possible to have a self-sustaining fission process—a nuclear **chain reaction**. If at least one of the neutrons goes on to cause another U-235 disintegration, the fission will be self-sustaining.

Nuclear Weapons

It is unfortunate that when the topics of radioactivity and nuclear energy come up, most thoughts probably go to weapons of war. The second thought might be about the possibility of nuclear energy contributing to the solution of the energy crisis. Nuclear energy, however, has many applications beyond bombs and the generation of electricity. Radioactivity has huge applications in scientific research, several fields of medicine both in terms of imaging and in terms of treatment, industrial processes, some very useful appliances, and even in agriculture.

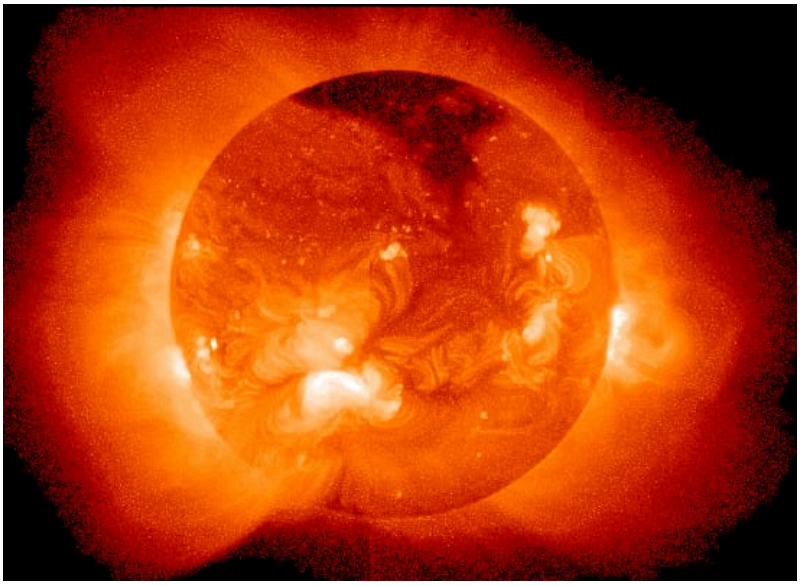


Figure 14.4.3.3: The energy that comes from the sun and other stars is produced by fusion. (Public Domain; NASA.)

Summary and Vocabulary

Naturally radioactive elements exist in the earth and are either alpha or beta emitters. Artificial transmutation of elements can be accomplished by bombarding the nuclei of some elements with alpha or subatomic particles. Nuclear radiation also has many medical uses.

- **Chain reaction** - A multi-stage nuclear reaction that sustains itself in a series of fissions, in which the release of neutrons from the splitting of one atom leads to the splitting of others.
- **Critical mass** - The smallest mass of a fissionable material that will sustain a nuclear chain reaction at a constant level.
- **Fission** - A nuclear reaction in which a heavy nucleus splits into two or more smaller fragments, releasing large amounts of energy.
- **Fusion** - A nuclear reaction in which nuclei combine to form more massive nuclei with the simultaneous release of energy.
- **Control rods** - Rods made of chemical elements capable of absorbing many neutrons, that are used to control the rate of a fission chain reaction in a nuclear reactor.

This page titled 14.4.3: The Discovery of Fission and the Atomic Bomb is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 17.7: The Discovery of Fission and the Atomic Bomb by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

14.4.4: Nuclear Power- Using Fission to Generate Electricity

Fission Reactors

Fission reactions can be used in the production of electricity if we control the rate at which the fission occurs. The great majority of all electrical generating systems (whether coal burning power plants, hydroelectric plants, or nuclear power plants) is that they follow a reasonably simple design. The electricity is produced by spinning a coil of wire inside a magnetic field. When a fluid (air, steam, water) is forced through the pipe, it spins the fan blades, which in turn spin the axle. To generate electricity, the axle of a turbine is attached to the loop of wire in a generator. When a fluid is forced through the turbine, the fan blades turn, the turbine axle turns, and the loop of wire inside the generator turns—thus generating electricity.

The essential difference in various kinds of electrical generating systems is the method used to spin the turbine. For a wind generator, the turbine is a windmill. In a geothermal generator, steam from a geyser is forced through the turbine. In hydroelectric generating plants, water falling over a dam passes through the turbine and spins it. In fossil fuel (coal, oil, natural gas) generating plants, the fossil fuel is burned and the heat is used to boil water into steam, and then the steam passes through the turbine to make it spin. In a fission reactor generating plant, a fission reaction is used to boil the water into steam, and the steam passes through the turbine to make it spin. Once the steam is generated by the fission reaction, a nuclear power plant is essentially the same as a fossil fuel plant.

Naturally occurring uranium is composed almost totally of two uranium isotopes. It contains more than 99% uranium-238 and less than 1% uranium-235. It is the uranium-235, however, that is **fissionable** (will undergo fission). In order for uranium to be used as fuel in a fission reactor, the percentage of uranium-235 must be increased, usually to about 3%. (Uranium in which the U-235 content is more than 1% is called **enriched uranium**.)

Once the supply of U-235 is acquired, it is placed in a series of long cylindrical tubes called fuel rods. These fuel cylinders are bundled together with **control rods** made of neutron-absorbing material. The amount of U-235 in all the fuel rods taken together is adequate to carry on a chain reaction, but is less than the critical mass. (In the United States, all public nuclear power plants contain less than a critical mass of U-235 and therefore, could never produce a nuclear explosion.) The amount of heat generated by the chain reaction is controlled by the rate at which the nuclear reaction occurs. The rate of the nuclear reaction is dependent on how many neutrons are emitted by one U-235 nuclear disintegration *and* strike a new U-235 nucleus to cause another disintegration. The purpose of the control rods is to absorb some of the neutrons and thus stop them from causing further disintegration. The control rods can be raised or lowered into the fuel rod bundle. When the control rods are lowered all the way into the fuel rod bundle, they absorb so many neutrons that the chain reaction essentially stops. When more heat is desired, the control rods are raised so that they catch fewer neutrons, the chain reaction speeds up, and more heat is generated. The control rods are operated in a fail-safe system, so that power is necessary to hold them up; during a power failure, gravity will pull the control rods down into the shut off position.

U-235 nuclei can capture neutrons and disintegrate more efficiently if the neutrons are moving slower than the speed at which they are released. Fission reactors use a moderator surrounding the fuel rods to slow down the neutrons. Water is not only a good coolant, but also a good moderator. A common type of fission reactor has the fuel core submerged in a huge pool of water.

You can follow the operation of an electricity-generating fission reactor in the figure below. The reactor core is submerged in a pool of water. The heat from the fission reaction heats the water and the water is pumped into a heat exchanger container where the heated water boils the water in the heat exchanger. The steam from there is forced through a turbine which spins a generator and produces electricity. After the water passes through the turbine, it is condensed back to liquid water and pumped back to the heat exchanger.

In the United States, heavy opposition to the use of nuclear energy was mounted in the late 1960's and early 1970's. Every environmentalist organization in the US opposed the use of nuclear energy; the constant pressure from environmentalist groups caused an increase of public fear and, therefore, opposition to nuclear energy. This is not true today; at least one environmental leader has published a paper in favor of nuclear-powered electricity generation.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CC BY NC SA
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

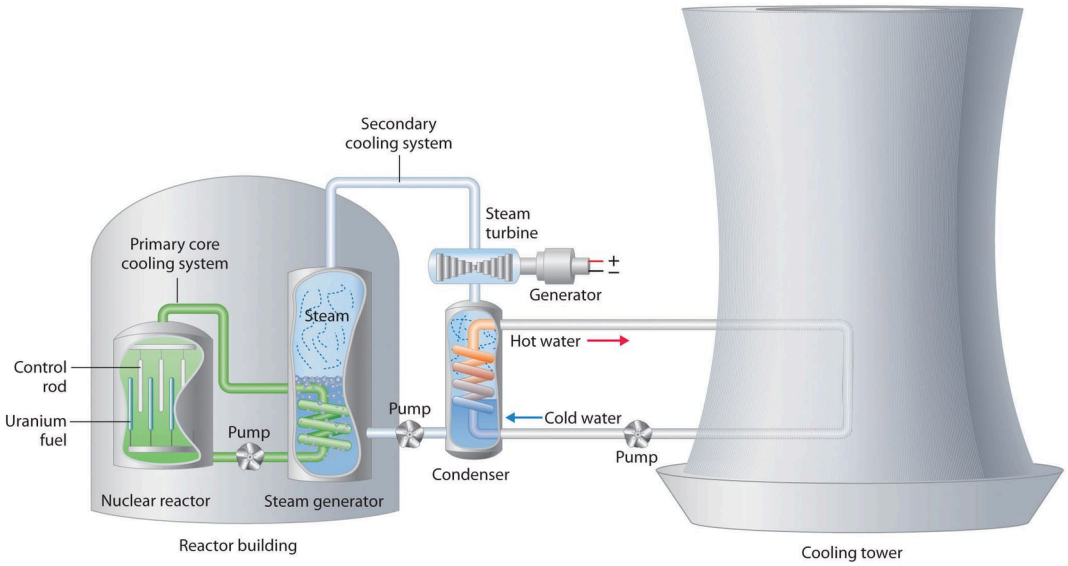


Figure 14.4.4.1: A Light-Water Nuclear Fission Reactor for the Production of Electric Power. The fuel rods are made of a corrosion-resistant alloy that encases the partially enriched uranium fuel; controlled fission of ^{235}U in the fuel produces heat. Water surrounds the fuel rods and moderates the kinetic energy of the neutrons, slowing them to increase the probability that they will induce fission. Control rods that contain elements such as boron, cadmium, or hafnium—which are very effective at absorbing neutrons—are used to control the rate of the fission reaction. A heat exchanger is used to boil water in a secondary cooling system, creating steam to drive the turbine and produce electricity. The large hyperbolic cooling tower, which is the most visible portion of the facility, condenses the steam in the secondary cooling circuit; it is often located at some distance from the actual reactor.

In 1979, a reactor core meltdown at Pennsylvania's Three Mile Island nuclear power plant reminded the entire country of the dangers of nuclear radiation. The concrete containment structure (six feet thick walls of reinforced concrete), however, did what it was designed to do—prevent radiation from escaping into the environment. Although the reactor was shut down for years, there were no injuries or deaths among nuclear workers or nearby residents. Three Mile Island was the only serious accident in the entire history of 103 civilian power plants operating for 40 years in the United States. There has never been a single injury or death due to radiation in any public nuclear power plant in the U.S. The accident at Three Mile Island did, however, frighten the public so that there has not been a nuclear power plant built in the U.S. since the accident.

The 103 nuclear power plants operating in the U.S. deliver approximately 19.4% of American electricity with zero greenhouse gas emission. There are 600 coal-burning electric plants in the US delivering 48.5% of American electricity and producing 2 billion tons of CO_2 annually, accounting for 40% of U.S. CO_2 emissions and 10% of global emissions. These coal burning plants also produce 64% of the sulfur dioxide emissions, 26% of the nitrous oxide emissions, and 33% of mercury emissions.

Fusion

Nuclear reactions, in which two or more lighter-mass nuclei join together to form a single nucleus, are called **fusion** reactions or nuclear fusions. Of particular interest are fusion reactions in which hydrogen nuclei combine to form helium. Hydrogen nuclei are positively charged and repel each other. The closer the particles come, the greater the force of repulsion. In order for fusion reactions to occur, the hydrogen nuclei must have extremely high kinetic energies, so that the velocities can overcome the forces of repulsion. These kinetic energies only occur at extreme temperatures such as those that occur in the cores of the sun and other stars. Nuclear fusion is the power source for the stars, where the necessary temperature to ignite the fusion reaction is provided by massive gravitational pressure. In stars more massive than our sun, fusion reactions involving carbon and nitrogen are possible. These reactions produce more energy than hydrogen fusion reactions.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CC BY NC SA
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

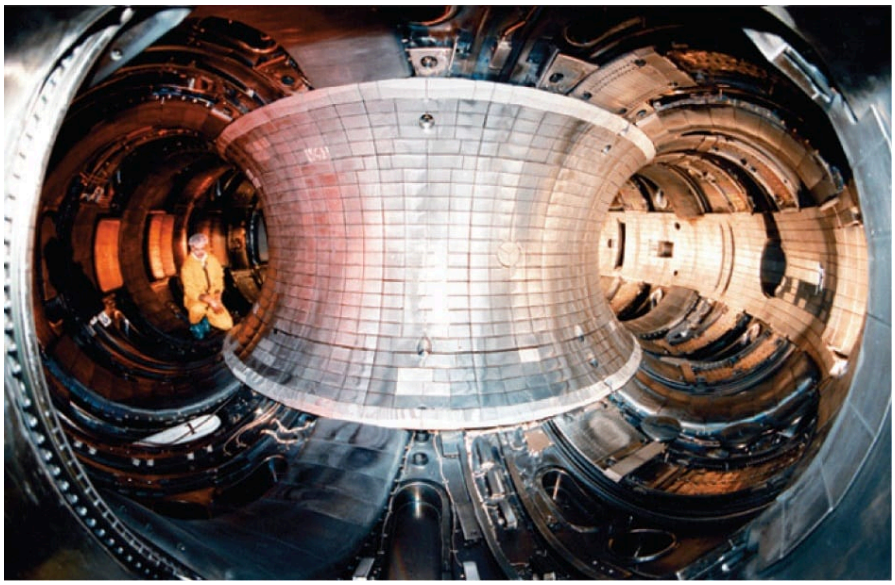


Figure 14.4.4.2: A Possible Design for a Nuclear Fusion Reactor. The extraordinarily high temperatures needed to initiate a nuclear fusion reaction would immediately destroy a container made of any known material. One way to avoid contact with the container walls is to use a high-energy plasma as the fuel. Because plasma is essentially a gas composed of ionized particles, it can be confined using a strong magnetic field shaped like a torus (a hollow donut).

Intensive research is now being conducted to develop fusion reactors for electricity generation. The two major problems slowing the development are: finding a practical means for generating the intense temperature needed, and developing a container that will not melt under the conditions of a fusion reaction. Electricity-producing fusion reactors are still a distant dream.

Summary

- Nuclear fission refers to the splitting of atomic nuclei.
- Nuclear fusion refers to the joining together of two or more smaller nuclei to form a single nucleus.
- The fission of U-235 or Pu-239 is used in nuclear reactors.

This page titled 14.4.4: Nuclear Power- Using Fission to Generate Electricity is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 17.8: Nuclear Power- Using Fission to Generate Electricity by Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

14.4.5: Nuclear Fusion- The Power of the Sun

In addition to fission, a second possible method for obtaining energy from nuclear reactions lies in the fusing together of two light nuclei to form a heavier nucleus. As we see when discussing Figure 1 from Mass-Energy Relationships, such a process results in nucleons which are more firmly bonded to each other, and hence lower in potential energy. This is particularly true if $^{4}_{2}\mathrm{He}$ is formed, because this nucleus is very stable. Such a reaction occurs between the nuclei of the two heavy isotopes of hydrogen, deuterium and tritium:

$$^{2}_{1}\mathrm{D} + {}^{3}_{1}\mathrm{T} \rightarrow {}^{4}_{2}\mathrm{He} + {}^{1}_{0}n \tag{14.4.5.1}$$

For this reaction, Δm = – 0.018 88 g mol^{-1} so that ΔH_m = – 1700 GJ mol^{-1}. Although very large quantities of energy are released by a reaction like Equation 14.4.5.1, such a reaction is very difficult to achieve in practice. This is because of the very high activation energy, about 30 GJ mol^{-1}, which must be overcome to bring the nuclei close enough to fuse together. This barrier is created by coulombic repulsion between the positively charged nuclei. The only place where scientists have succeeded in producing fusion reactions on a large scale is in a **hydrogen bomb**. Here, the necessary activation energy is achieved by exploding a fission bomb to heat the reactants to a temperature of about 10^8 K. Attempts to carry out fusion in a more controlled way have met only limited success. At the very high temperatures required, all molecules dissociate and most atoms ionize. A new state of matter called a **plasma** is formed. It is neither solid, liquid, nor gas. Plasma behaves much like the universal solvent of the alchemists by converting any solid material that it contacts into vapor.

Two techniques for producing a controlled fusion reaction are currently being explored. The first is to restrict the plasma by means of a strong magnetic field, rather than the walls of a container. This has met some success, but has not yet been able to contain a plasma long enough for usable energy to be obtained. The second technique involves the sudden compression and heating of pellets of deuterium and tritium by means of a sharply focused laser beam. Again, only limited success has been obtained.

Though these attempts at a controlled fusion reaction have so far been only partially successful, they are nevertheless worth pursuing. Because of the much readier availability of lighter isotopes necessary for fusion, as opposed to the much rarer heavier isotopes required for fission, controlled nuclear fusion would offer the human race an essentially limitless supply of energy. There would still be some environmental difficulties with the production of isotopes such as tritium, but these would be nowhere near the seriousness of the problem caused by the production of the witches brew of radioactive isotopes in a fission reactor. It must be confessed, though, that at the present rate of progress, the prospect of limitless clean energy from fusion seems unlikely in the next decade or two.

This page titled 14.4.5: Nuclear Fusion- The Power of the Sun is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 19.17: Nuclear Fusion by Ed Vitz, John W. Moore, Justin Shorb, Xavier Prat-Resina, Tim Wendorff, and Adam Hahn is licensed CC BY-NC-SA 4.0.

14.4.6: The Effects of Radiation on Life

Learning Objectives

- Describe the biological impact of ionizing radiation.
- Define units for measuring radiation exposure.
- Explain the operation of common tools for detecting radioactivity.
- List common sources of radiation exposure in the US.

The increased use of radioisotopes has led to increased concerns over the effects of these materials on biological systems (such as humans). All radioactive nuclides emit high-energy particles or electromagnetic waves. When this radiation encounters living cells, it can cause heating, break chemical bonds, or ionize molecules. The most serious biological damage results when these radioactive emissions fragment or ionize molecules. For example, alpha and beta particles emitted from nuclear decay reactions possess much higher energies than ordinary chemical bond energies. When these particles strike and penetrate matter, they produce ions and molecular fragments that are extremely reactive. The damage this does to biomolecules in living organisms can cause serious malfunctions in normal cell processes, taxing the organism's repair mechanisms and possibly causing illness or even death (Figure 14.4.6.1).

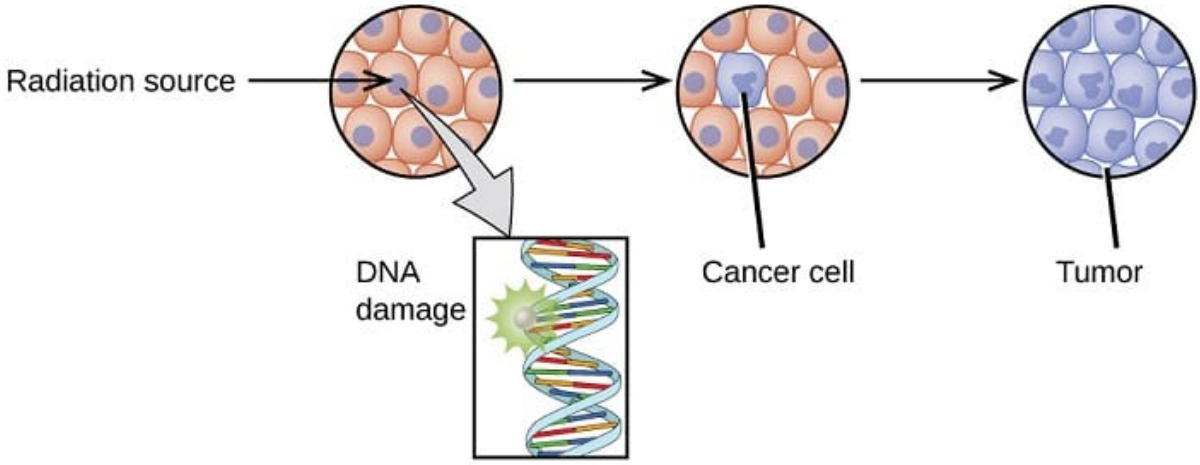


Figure 14.4.6.1: Radiation can harm biological systems by damaging the DNA of cells. If this damage is not properly repaired, the cells may divide in an uncontrolled manner and cause cancer.

A diagram is shown which has a white sphere followed by a right-facing arrow and a large sphere composed of many smaller white and green spheres. The single sphere has impacted the larger sphere. A right-facing arrow leads from the larger sphere to a pair of smaller spheres which are collections of the same white and green spheres. A starburst pattern lies between these two spheres and has three right-facing arrows leading from it to two white spheres and a circle full of ten smaller, peach-colored circles with purple dots in their centers. An arrow leads downward from this circle to a box that contains a helical shape with a starburst near its top left side and is labeled "D N A damage." A right-facing arrow leads from this circle to a second circle, with nine smaller, peach-colored circles with purple dots in their centers and one fully purple small circle labeled "Cancer cell." A right-facing arrow leads to a final circle, this time full of the purple cells, that is labeled "Tumor."

Ionizing vs. Nonionizing Radiation

There is a large difference in the magnitude of the biological effects of nonionizing radiation (for example, light and microwaves) and ionizing radiation, emissions energetic enough to knock electrons out of molecules (for example, α and β particles, γ rays, X-rays, and high-energy ultraviolet radiation) (Figure 14.4.6.2).

<div data-mt-source="1"

Figure 14.4.6.2: Lower frequency, lower-energy electromagnetic radiation is nonionizing, and higher frequency, higher-energy electromagnetic radiation is ionizing.

Energy absorbed from nonionizing radiation speeds up the movement of atoms and molecules, which is equivalent to heating the sample. Although biological systems are sensitive to heat (as we might know from touching a hot stove or spending a day at the beach in the sun), a large amount of nonionizing radiation is necessary before dangerous levels are reached. Ionizing radiation, however, may cause much more severe damage by breaking bonds or removing electrons in biological molecules, disrupting their structure and function. The damage can also be done indirectly, by first ionizing H_2O (the most abundant molecule in living organisms), which forms a H_2O^+ ion that reacts with water, forming a hydronium ion and a hydroxyl radical:

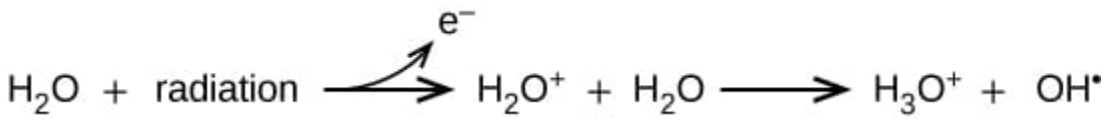


Figure 14.4.6.3.

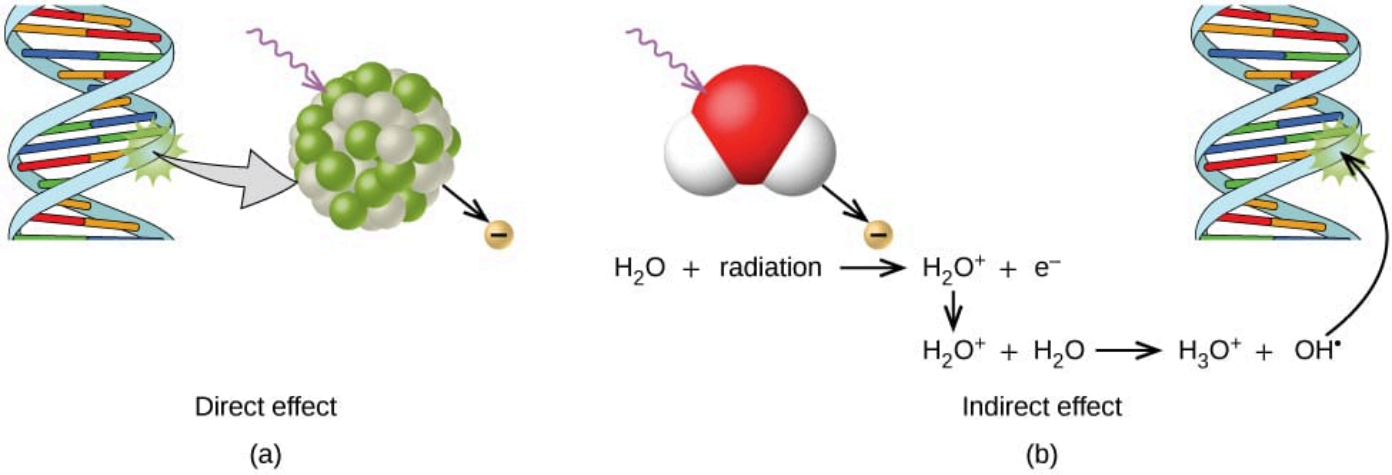


Figure 14.4.6.3: Ionizing radiation can (a) directly damage a biomolecule by ionizing it or breaking its bonds, or (b) create an H_2O^+ ion, which reacts with H_2O to form a hydroxyl radical, which in turn reacts with the biomolecule, causing damage indirectly.

Biological Effects of Exposure to Radiation

Radiation can harm either the whole body (somatic damage) or eggs and sperm (genetic damage). Its effects are more pronounced in cells that reproduce rapidly, such as the stomach lining, hair follicles, bone marrow, and embryos. This is why patients undergoing radiation therapy often feel nauseous or sick to their stomach, lose hair, have bone aches, and so on, and why particular care must be taken when undergoing radiation therapy during pregnancy.

Different types of radiation have differing abilities to pass through material (Figure 14.4.6.4). A very thin barrier, such as a sheet or two of paper, or the top layer of skin cells, usually stops alpha particles. Because of this, alpha particle sources are usually not dangerous if outside the body, but are quite hazardous if ingested or inhaled (see the Chemistry in Everyday Life feature on Radon Exposure). Beta particles will pass through a hand, or a thin layer of material like paper or wood, but are stopped by a thin layer of metal. Gamma radiation is very penetrating and can pass through a thick layer of most materials. Some high-energy gamma radiation is able to pass through a few feet of concrete. Certain dense, high atomic number elements (such as lead) can effectively attenuate gamma radiation with thinner material and are used for shielding. The ability of various kinds of emissions to cause ionization varies greatly, and some particles have almost no tendency to produce ionization. Alpha particles have about twice the ionizing power of fast-moving neutrons, about 10 times that of β particles, and about 20 times that of γ rays and X-rays.

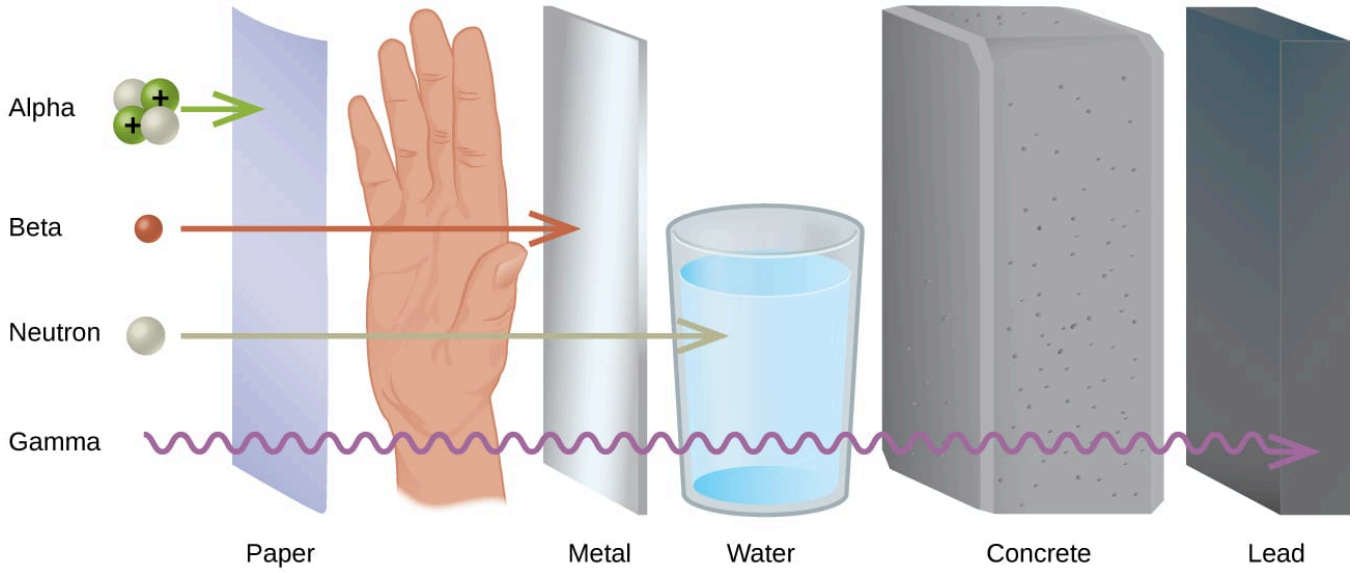


Figure 14.4.6.4: The ability of different types of radiation to pass through material is shown. From least to most penetrating, they are alpha < beta < neutron < gamma.

A diagram shows four particles in a vertical column on the left, followed by an upright sheet of paper, a person's hand, an upright sheet of metal, a glass of water, a thick block of concrete and an upright, thick piece of lead. The top particle listed is made up of two white spheres and two green spheres that are labeled with positive signs and is labeled "Alpha." A right-facing arrow leads from this to the paper. The second particle is a red sphere labeled "Beta" and is followed by a right-facing arrow that passes through the paper and stops at the hand. The third particle is a white sphere labeled "Neutron" and is followed by a right-facing arrow that passes through the paper, hand and metal but is stopped at the glass of water. The fourth particle is shown by a squiggly arrow and it passes through all of the substances but stops at the lead. Terms at the bottom read, from left to right, "Paper," "Metal," "Water," "Concrete" and "Lead."

For many people, one of the largest sources of exposure to radiation is from radon gas (Rn-222). Radon-222 is an α emitter with a half–life of 3.82 days. It is one of the products of the radioactive decay series of U-238, which is found in trace amounts in soil and rocks. The radon gas that is produced slowly escapes from the ground and gradually seeps into homes and other structures above. Since it is about eight times more dense than air, radon gas accumulates in basements and lower floors, and slowly diffuses throughout buildings (Figure 14.4.6.5).

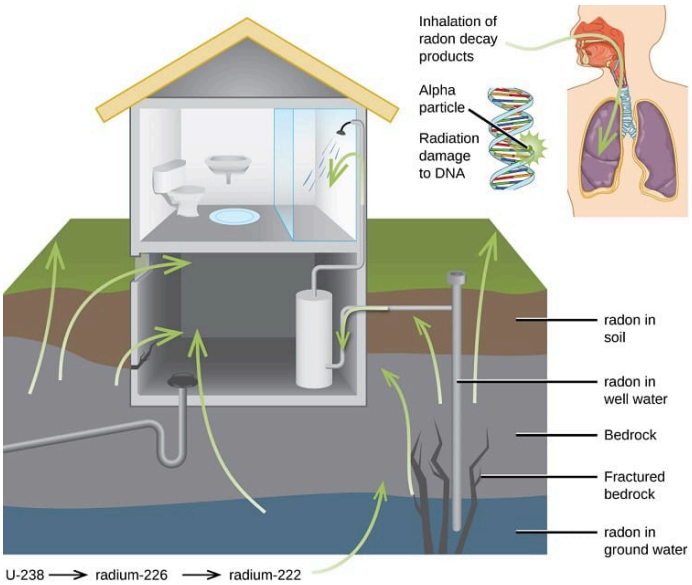


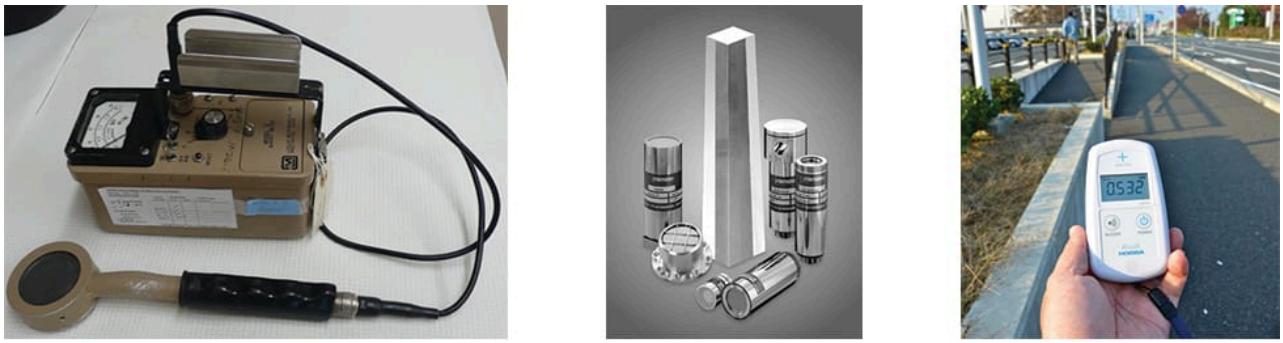
Figure 14.4.6.5: Radon-222 seeps into houses and other buildings from rocks that contain uranium-238, a radon emitter. The radon enters through cracks in concrete foundations and basement floors, stone or porous cinderblock foundations, and openings for water and gas pipes. A cut-away image of the side of a house and four layers of the ground it rests on is shown, as well as a second cut-away image of a person's head and chest cavity. The house is shown with a restroom on the second floor and a basement with a water heater as the first floor. Green arrows lead from the lowest ground layer, labeled "radon in ground water," from the third ground layer, labeled "Bedrock" and "Fractured bedrock," from the second layer, labeled "radon in well water," and from the top layer, labeled "radon in soil to the inside of the basement area. In the smaller image of the torso, a green arrow is shown to enter the person's nasal passage and travel to the lungs. This is labeled "Inhalation of radon decay products." A small coiled, helical structure next to the torso is labeled "alpha particle" on one section where it has a starburst pattern and "Radiation damage to D N A" on another segment.

Radon is found in buildings across the country, with amounts dependent on location. The average concentration of radon inside houses in the US (1.25 pCi/L) is about three times the level found in outside air, and about one in six houses have radon levels high enough that remediation efforts to reduce the radon concentration are recommended. Exposure to radon increases one's risk of getting cancer (especially lung cancer), and high radon levels can be as bad for health as smoking a carton of cigarettes a day. Radon is the number one cause of lung cancer in nonsmokers and the second leading cause of lung cancer overall. Radon exposure is believed to cause over 20,000 deaths in the US per year.

Measuring Radiation Exposure

Several different devices are used to detect and measure radiation, including Geiger counters, scintillation counters (scintillators), and radiation dosimeters (Figure 14.4.6.6). Probably the best-known radiation instrument, the Geiger counter (also called the Geiger-Müller counter) detects and measures radiation. Radiation causes the ionization of the gas in a Geiger-Müller tube. The rate of ionization is proportional to the amount of radiation. A scintillation counter contains a scintillator—a material that emits light (luminesces) when excited by ionizing radiation—and a sensor that converts the light into an electric signal. Radiation dosimeters also measure ionizing radiation and are often used to determine personal radiation exposure. Commonly used types are electronic, film badge, thermoluminescent, and quartz fiber dosimeters.

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CC BY NC SA
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org



(a) (b) (c)

Figure 14.4.6.6: Devices such as (a) Geiger counters, (b) scintillators, and (c) dosimeters can be used to measure radiation. (Credit c: modification of work by "osaMu"/Wikimedia commons.)

Three photographs are shown and labeled "a," "b" and "c." Photo a shows a Geiger counter sitting on a table. It is made up of a metal box with a read-out screen and a wire leading away from the box connected to a sensor wand. Photograph b shows a collection of tall and short vertical tubes arranged in a grouping while photograph c shows a person's hand holding a small machine with a digital readout while standing on the edge of a roadway.

A variety of units are used to measure various aspects of radiation (Table 14.4.6.1). The SI unit for rate of radioactive decay is the becquerel (Bq), with 1 Bq = 1 disintegration per second. The curie (Ci) and millicurie (mCi) are much larger units and are frequently used in medicine (1 curie = 1 Ci = 3.7×10^{10} disintegrations per second). The SI unit for measuring radiation dose is the gray (Gy), with 1 Gy = 1 J of energy absorbed per kilogram of tissue. In medical applications, the radiation absorbed dose (rad) is more often used (1 rad = 0.01 Gy; 1 rad results in the absorption of 0.01 J/kg of tissue). The SI unit measuring tissue damage caused by radiation is the sievert (Sv). This takes into account both the energy and the biological effects of the type of radiation involved in the radiation dose.

Table 14.4.6.1: Units Used for Measuring Radiation

Measurement Purpose	Unit	Quantity Measured	Description
activity of source	becquerel (Bq)	radioactive decays or emissions	amount of sample that undergoes 1 decay/second
	curie (Ci)		amount of sample that undergoes 3.7×10^{10} decays/second
absorbed dose	gray (Gy)	energy absorbed per kg of tissue	1 Gy = 1 J/kg tissue
	radiation absorbed dose (rad)		1 rad = 0.01 J/kg tissue
biologically effective dose	sievert (Sv)	tissue damage	Sv = RBE × Gy
	roentgen equivalent for man (rem)		Rem = RBE × rad

The roentgen equivalent for man (rem) is the unit for radiation damage that is used most frequently in medicine (1 rem = 1 Sv). Note that the tissue damage units (rem or Sv) includes the energy of the radiation dose (rad or Gy), along with a biological factor referred to as the RBE (for relative biological effectiveness), that is an approximate measure of the relative damage done by the radiation. These are related by:

$$\text{number of rems} = \text{RBE} \times \text{number of rads} \tag{14.4.6.1}$$

with RBE approximately 10 for α radiation, 2(+) for protons and neutrons, and 1 for β and γ radiation.

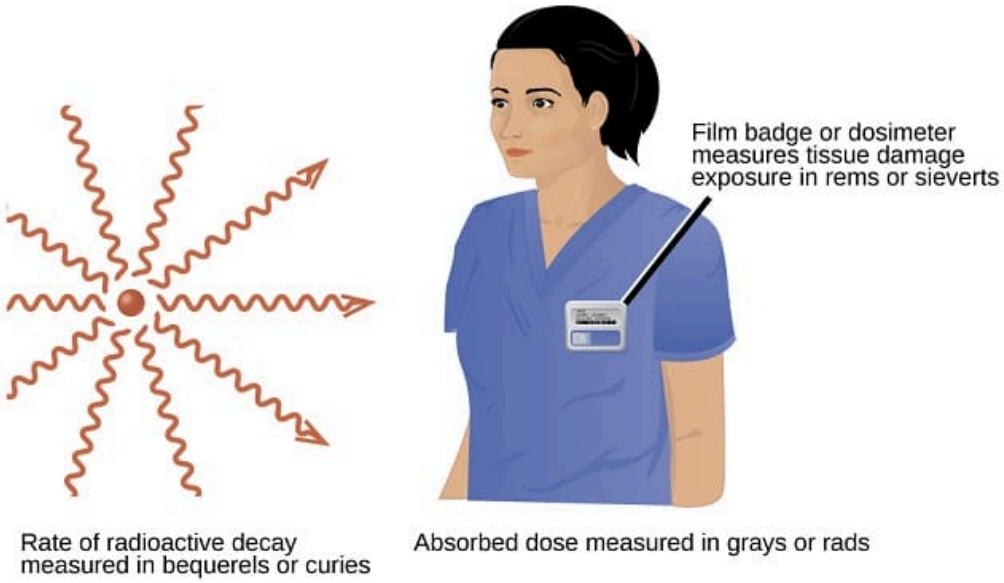


Figure 14.4.6.7: Different units are used to measure the rate of emission from a radioactive source, the energy that is absorbed from the source, and the amount of damage the absorbed radiation does. (CC by 4.0; OpenStax)

Two images are shown. The first, labeled “Rate of radioactive decay measured in becquerels or curies,” shows a red sphere with ten red squiggly arrows facing away from it in a 360 degree circle. The second image shows the head and torso of a woman wearing medical scrubs with a badge on her chest. The caption to the badge reads “Film badge or dosimeter measures tissue damage exposure in rems or sieverts” while a phrase under this image states “Absorbed dose measured in grays or rads.”

Example 14.4.6.1: Amount of Radiation

Cobalt-60 ($t_{1/2}$ = 5.26 y) is used in cancer therapy since the γ rays it emits can be focused in small areas where the cancer is located. A 5.00-g sample of Co-60 is available for cancer treatment.

a. What is its activity in Bq?
b. What is its activity in Ci?

Solution

The activity is given by:

$$\text{Activity} = \lambda N = \left(\frac{\ln 2}{t_{1/2}}\right) N = \left(\frac{\ln 2}{5.26\ \text{y}}\right) \times 5.00\ \text{g} = 0.659\ \frac{\text{g}}{\text{y}}\ \text{of}\ {}^{60}\text{Co that decay}$$

And to convert this to decays per second:

$$0.659\ \frac{\text{g}}{\text{y}} \times \frac{\text{y}}{365\ \text{day}} \times \frac{1\ \text{day}}{24\ \text{hours}} \times \frac{1\ \text{h}}{3,600\ \text{s}} \times \frac{1\ \text{mol}}{59.9\ \text{g}} \times \frac{6.02 \times 10^{23}\ \text{atoms}}{1\ \text{mol}} \times \frac{1\ \text{decay}}{1\ \text{atom}}$$

$$= 2.10 \times 10^{14}\ \frac{\text{decay}}{\text{s}}$$

(a) Since $1\ \text{Bq} = 1\ \frac{\text{decay}}{\text{s}}$, the activity in Becquerel (Bq) is:

$$2.10 \times 10^{14} \frac{\text{decay}}{\text{s}} \times \left(\frac{1\ \text{Bq}}{1\ \frac{\text{decay}}{\text{s}}}\right) = 2.10 \times 10^{14}\ \text{Bq}$$

(b) Since $1\ \text{Ci} = 3.7 \times 10^{11}\ \frac{\text{decay}}{\text{s}}$, the activity in curie (Ci) is:

$$2.10 \times 10^{14} \frac{\text{decay}}{\text{s}} \times \left(\frac{1\ \text{Ci}}{3.7 \times 10^{11}\ \frac{\text{decay}}{\text{s}}}\right) = 5.7 \times 10^{2}\ \text{Ci}$$

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 license
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

Exercise 14.4.6.1

Tritium is a radioactive isotope of hydrogen ($t_{1/2} = 12.32$ years) that has several uses, including self-powered lighting, in which electrons emitted in tritium radioactive decay cause phosphorus to glow. Its nucleus contains one proton and two neutrons, and the atomic mass of tritium is 3.016 amu. What is the activity of a sample containing 1.00mg of tritium (a) in Bq and (b) in Ci?

Answer a available at the end of this section.

Effects of Long-term Radiation Exposure on the Human Body

The effects of radiation depend on the type, energy, and location of the radiation source, and the length of exposure. As shown in Figure 14.4.6.8, the average person is exposed to background radiation, including cosmic rays from the sun and radon from uranium in the ground (see the Chemistry in Everyday Life feature on Radon Exposure); radiation from medical exposure, including CAT scans, radioisotope tests, X-rays, and so on; and small amounts of radiation from other human activities, such as airplane flights (which are bombarded by increased numbers of cosmic rays in the upper atmosphere), radioactivity from consumer products, and a variety of radionuclides that enter our bodies when we breathe (for example, carbon-14) or through the food chain (for example, potassium-40, strontium-90, and iodine-131).

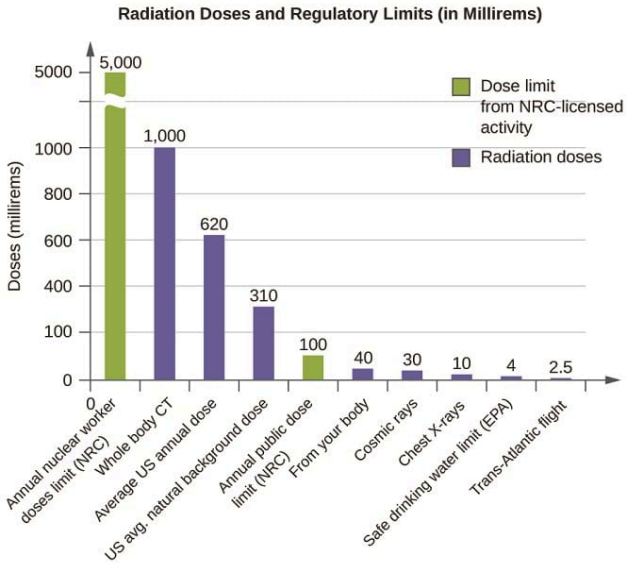


Figure 14.4.6.8: The total annual radiation exposure for a person in the US is about 620 mrem. The various sources and their relative amounts are shown in this bar graph. (source: U.S. Nuclear Regulatory Commission).

A bar graph titled “Radiation Doses and Regulatory Limits, open parenthesis, in Millirems, close parenthesis” is shown. The y-axis is labeled “Doses in Millirems” and has values from 0 to 5000 with a break between 1000 and 5000 to indicate a different scale to the top of the graph. The y-axis is labeled corresponding to each bar. The first bar, measured to 5000 on the y-axis, is drawn in red and is labeled “Annual Nuclear Worker Doses Limit, open parenthesis, N R C, close parenthesis.” The second bar, measured to 1000 on the y-axis, is drawn in blue and is labeled “Whole Body C T” while the third bar, measured to 620 on the y-axis, is drawn in blue and is labeled “Average U period S period Annual Dose.” The fourth bar, measured to 310 on the y-axis, is drawn in blue and is labeled “U period S period Natural Background Dose” while the fifth bar, measured to 100 on the y-axis and drawn in red reads “Annual Public Dose Limit, open parenthesis, N R C, close parenthesis.” The sixth bar, measured to 40 on the y-axis, is drawn in blue and is labeled “From Your Body” while the seventh bar, measured to 30 on the y-axis and drawn in blue reads “Cosmic rays.” The eighth bar, measured to 4 on the y-axis, is drawn in blue and is labeled “Safe Drinking Water Limit, open parenthesis, E P A, close parenthesis” while the ninth bar, measured to 2.5 on the y-axis and drawn in red reads “Trans Atlantic Flight.” A legend on the graph shows that red means “Dose Limit From N R C dash licensed activity” while blue means “Radiation Doses.”

A short-term, sudden dose of a large amount of radiation can cause a wide range of health effects, from changes in blood chemistry to death. Short-term exposure to tens of rems of radiation will likely cause very noticeable symptoms or illness; a dose of about 500 rems is estimated to have a 50% probability of causing the death of the victim within 30 days of exposure. Exposure to radioactive emissions has a cumulative effect on the body during a person’s lifetime, which is another reason why

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CK-12 License © CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

it is important to avoid any unnecessary exposure to radiation. Health effects of short-term exposure to radiation are shown in Table 14.4.6.2.

Table 14.4.6.2: Health Effects of Radiation

Exposure (rem)	Health Effect	Time to Onset (Without Treatment)
5–10	changes in blood chemistry	—
50	nausea	hours
55	fatigue	—
70	vomiting	—
75	hair loss	2–3 weeks
90	diarrhea	—
100	hemorrhage	—
400	possible death	within 2 months
1000	destruction of intestinal lining	—
	internal bleeding	—
	death	1–2 weeks
2000	damage to central nervous system	—
	loss of consciousness	minutes
	death	hours to days

It is impossible to avoid some exposure to ionizing radiation. We are constantly exposed to background radiation from a variety of natural sources, including cosmic radiation, rocks, medical procedures, consumer products, and even our own atoms. We can minimize our exposure by blocking or shielding the radiation, moving farther from the source, and limiting the time of exposure.

Summary

We are constantly exposed to radiation from a variety of naturally occurring and human-produced sources. This radiation can affect living organisms. Ionizing radiation is the most harmful because it can ionize molecules or break chemical bonds, which damages the molecule and causes malfunctions in cell processes. It can also create reactive hydroxyl radicals that damage biological molecules and disrupt physiological processes. Radiation can cause somatic or genetic damage, and is most harmful to rapidly reproducing cells. Types of radiation differ in their ability to penetrate material and damage tissue, with alpha particles the least penetrating, but potentially most damaging, and gamma rays the most penetrating.

Various devices, including Geiger counters, scintillators, and dosimeters, are used to detect and measure radiation, and monitor radiation exposure. We use several units to measure radiation: becquerels or curies for rates of radioactive decay; gray or rads for energy absorbed; and rems or sieverts for biological effects of radiation. Exposure to radiation can cause a wide range of health effects, from minor to severe, including death. We can minimize the effects of radiation by shielding with dense materials such as lead, moving away from the source of radiation, and limiting time of exposure.

Footnotes

1. 1 Source: US Environmental Protection Agency

Glossary

becquerel (Bq)
SI unit for rate of radioactive decay; 1 Bq = 1 disintegration/s.

curie (Ci)
Larger unit for rate of radioactive decay frequently used in medicine; 1 Ci = 3.7×10^{10} disintegrations/s.

Geiger counter
Instrument that detects and measures radiation via the ionization produced in a Geiger-Müller tube.

gray (Gy)
SI unit for measuring radiation dose; 1 Gy = 1 J absorbed/kg tissue.

ionizing radiation
Radiation that can cause a molecule to lose an electron and form an ion.

millicurie (mCi)
Larger unit for rate of radioactive decay frequently used in medicine; 1 Ci = 3.7×10^{10} disintegrations/s.

nonionizing radiation
Radiation that speeds up the movement of atoms and molecules; it is equivalent to heating a sample, but is not energetic enough to cause the ionization of molecules.

radiation absorbed dose (rad)
SI unit for measuring radiation dose, frequently used in medical applications; 1 rad = 0.01 Gy.

radiation dosimeter
Device that measures ionizing radiation and is used to determine personal radiation exposure.

relative biological effectiveness (RBE)
Measure of the relative damage done by radiation.

roentgen equivalent man (rem)
Unit for radiation damage, frequently used in medicine; 1 rem = 1 Sv.

scintillation counter
Instrument that uses a scintillator—a material that emits light when excited by ionizing radiation—to detect and measure radiation.

sievert (Sv)
SI unit measuring tissue damage caused by radiation; takes energy and biological effects of radiation into account.

Answers

Exercise 14.4.6.1

$3.56 \times 10^{11}\text{Bq}$

$0.962\ \text{Ci}$

This page titled 14.4.6: The Effects of Radiation on Life is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 21.6: Biological Effects of Radiation by OpenStax is licensed CC BY 4.0. Original source: https://openstax.org/details/books/chemistry-2e.

14.4.7: Radioactivity in Medicine

Learning Objectives

- Outline manifestations of nuclear medicine.

The field of nuclear medicine has expanded greatly in the last twenty years, particularly in the area of imaging. This section will focus on nuclear medicine involving the types of nuclear radiation introduced in this chapter. The x-ray imaging systems will not be covered.

Radioiodine $(\mathrm{I}-131)$ Therapy involves imaging and treatment of the thyroid gland. The thyroid gland is a gland in the neck that produces two hormones that regulate metabolism. In some individuals, this gland becomes overactive and produces too much of these hormones. The treatment for this problem uses radioactive iodine $(\mathrm{I}-131)$, which is produced for this purpose in research fission reactors, or by neutron bombardment of other nuclei.

The thyroid gland uses iodine in the process of its normal function. Any iodine in food that enters the bloodstream is usually removed by, and concentrated in, the thyroid gland. When a patient suffering from an overactive thyroid swallows a small pill containing radioactive iodine, the I-131 is absorbed into the bloodstream just like non-radioactive iodine, and follows the same process to be concentrated in the thyroid. The concentrated emissions of nuclear radiation in the thyroid destroy some of the gland's cells and control the problem of the overactive thyroid.

Smaller doses of I-131 (too small to kill cells) are also used for purposes of imaging the thyroid. Once the iodine is concentrated in the thyroid, the patient lays down on a sheet of film and the radiation from the I-131 makes a picture of the thyroid on the film. The half-life of iodine-131 is approximately 8 days so after a few weeks, virtually all of the radioactive iodine is out of the patient's system. During that time, the patient is advised that they will set off radiation detectors in airports and will need to get special permission to fly on commercial flights.

Positron Emission Tomography or PET scan is a type of nuclear medicine imaging. Depending on the area of the body being imaged, a radioactive isotope is either injected into a vein, swallowed by mouth, or inhaled as a gas. When the radioisotope is collected in the appropriate area of the body, the gamma ray emissions are detected by a PET scanner (often called a gamma camera) which works together with a computer to generate special pictures, providing details on both the structure and function of various organs. PET scans are used to:

- Detect cancer.
- Determine the amount of cancer spread.
- Assess the effectiveness of treatment plans.
- Determine blood flow to the heart muscle.
- Determine the effects of a heart attack.
- Evaluate brain abnormalities, such as tumors and memory disorders.
- Map brain and heart function.

External Beam Therapy (EBT) is a method of delivering a high energy beam of radiation to the precise location of a patient's tumor. These beams can destroy cancer cells and, with careful planning, will not kill surrounding cells. The concept is to have several beams of radiation, each of which is sub-lethal, enter the body from different directions. The only place in the body where the beam would be lethal is at the point where all the beams intersect. Before the EBT process, the patient is three-dimensionally mapped using CT scans and x-rays. The patient receives small tattoos to allow the therapist to line up the beams exactly. Alignment lasers are used to precisely locate the target. The radiation beam is usually generated with a linear accelerator. EBT is used to treat the following diseases, as well as others:

- Breast cancer
- Colorectal cancer
- Head and neck cancer
- Lung cancer
- Prostate cancer

CK-12 LICENSED UNDER CC BY NC SA
© CK-12 Foundation • Visit us at ck12.org

This page titled 14.4.7: Radioactivity in Medicine is shared under a CK-12 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

- 17.11: Radioactivity in Medicine by CK-12 Foundation, Henry Agnew, Marisa Alviar-Agnew is licensed CK-12. Original source: https://www.ck12.org/c/chemistry/.

14.E: Nuclear Chemistry (Exercises)

Exerises (Radioactivity)

1. Define radioactivity.

2. Give an example of a radioactive element. How do you know if it is radioactive?

3. How many protons and neutrons are in each isotope?

a. $^{11}_{5}\mathrm{B}$
b. $^{27}_{13}\mathrm{Al}$
c. $^{56}\mathrm{Fe}$
d. $^{224}\mathrm{Rn}$

4. How many protons and neutrons are in each isotope?

a. $^{2}_{1}\mathrm{H}$
b. $^{112}_{48}\mathrm{Cd}$
c. $^{252}\mathrm{Es}$
d. $^{40}\ \mathrm{K}$

5. Describe an alpha particle. What nucleus is it equivalent to?

6. Describe a beta particle. What subatomic particle is it equivalent to?

7. What are gamma rays?

8. Why is it inappropriate to refer to gamma rays as "gamma particles"?

9. Plutonium has an atomic number of 94 . Write the nuclear equation for the alpha particle emission of plutonium-244. What is the daughter isotope?

10. Francium has an atomic number of 87 . Write the nuclear equation for the alpha particle emission of francium-212. What is the daughter isotope?

11. Tin has an atomic number of 50 . Write the nuclear equation for the beta particle emission of tin-121. What is the daughter isotope?

12. Technetium has an atomic number of 43 . Write the nuclear equation for the beta particle emission of technetium-99. What is the daughter isotope?

13. Energies of gamma rays are typically expressed in units of megaelectron volts (MeV), where $1\mathrm{MeV} = 1.602 \times 10^{-13}$ J. Using the data provided in the text, calculate the energy in megaelectron volts of the gamma ray emitted when radon-222 decays.

14. The gamma ray emitted when oxygen-19 gives off a beta particle is $0.197\mathrm{MeV}$. What is its energy in joules? (See Exercise 13 for the definition of a megaelectron volt.)

15. Which penetrates matter more deeply-alpha particles or beta particles? Suggest ways to protect yourself against both particles.

16. Which penetrates matter more deeply-alpha particles or gamma rays? Suggest ways to protect yourself against both emissions.

17. Define nuclear fission.

18. What general characteristic is typically necessary for a nucleus to undergo spontaneous fission?

Answers

1. Radioactivity is the spontaneous emission of particles and electromagnetic radiation from nuclei of unstable atoms.

3.

a. 5 protons; 6 neutrons
b. 13 protons; 14 neutrons
c. 26 protons; 30 neutrons
d. 86 protons; 138 neutrons

5. An alpha particle is a collection of two protons and two neutrons and is equivalent to a helium nucleus.

7. Gamma rays are high-energy electromagnetic radiation given off in radioactive decay.

9. $^{244}_{94}\mathrm{Pu} \rightarrow {}^{240}_{92}\mathrm{U} + {}^{4}_{2}\mathrm{He}$; daughter isotope: $^{240}\mathrm{U}$

11. $^{121}_{50}\mathrm{Sn} \rightarrow {}^{121}_{51}\mathrm{Sb} + {}^{0}_{-1}\mathrm{e}$; daughter isotope: $^{121}\mathrm{Sb}$

13. $0.51\mathrm{MeV}$

15. Beta particles penetrate more. A thick wall of inert matter is sufficient to block both particles.

17. Nuclear fission is the breaking down of large nuclei into smaller nuclei, usually with the release of excess neutrons.

Exercises (Half-Life)

1. Do all isotopes have a half-life? Explain your answer.

2. Which is more radioactive-an isotope with a long half-life or an isotope with a short half-life?

3. How long does it take for $1.00\ \mathrm{g}$ of palladium-103 to decay to $0.125\ \mathrm{g}$ if its halflife is $17.0\ \mathrm{d}$?

4. How long does it take for $2.00\ \mathrm{g}$ of niobium-94 to decay to $0.0625\ \mathrm{g}$ if its halflife is $20,000\mathrm{y}$?

5. It took $75\mathrm{y}$ for $10.0\ \mathrm{g}$ of a radioactive isotope to decay to $1.25\ \mathrm{g}$. What is the half-life of this isotope?

6. It took $49.2\ \mathrm{s}$ for $3.000\ \mathrm{g}$ of a radioactive isotope to decay to $0.1875\ \mathrm{g}$. What is the half-life of this isotope?

7. The half-live of americium-241 is $432\mathrm{y}$. If $0.0002\ \mathrm{g}$ of americium-241 is present in a smoke detector at the date of manufacture, what mass of americium-241 is present after $100.0\mathrm{y}$? After $1,000.0\mathrm{y}$?

8. If the half-life of tritium (hydrogen-3) is $12.3\mathrm{y}$, how much of a $0.00444\ \mathrm{g}$ sample of tritium is present after $5.0\mathrm{y}$? After $250.0\mathrm{y}$?

9. Explain why the amount left after 1,000.0 y in Exercise 7 is not one-tenth of the amount present after $100.0\mathrm{y}$, despite the fact that the amount of time elapsed is 10 times as long.

10. Explain why the amount left after $250.0\mathrm{y}$ in Exercise 8 is not one-fiftieth of the amount present after $5.0\mathrm{y}$, despite the fact that the amount of time elapsed is 50 times as long.

11. An artifact containing carbon-14 contains $8.4 \times 10^{-9}\ \mathrm{g}$ of carbon-14 in it. If the age of the artifact is $10,670\mathrm{y}$, how much carbon-14 did it have originally? The half-life of carbon-14 is 5,730 y.

12. Carbon-11 is a radioactive isotope used in positron emission tomography (PET) scans for medical diagnosis. Positron emission is another, though rare, type of radioactivity. The half-life of carbon-11 is $20.3\ \mathrm{min}$. If $4.23 \times 10^{-6}\ \mathrm{g}$ of carbon-11 is left in the body after $4.00\ \mathrm{h}$, what mass of carbon-11 was present initially?

Answers

1. Only radioactive isotopes have a half-life.

3. $51.0\ \mathrm{d}$

5. $25\mathrm{y}$

7. $0.000170\ \mathrm{g}; 0.0000402\ \mathrm{g}$

9. Radioactive decay is an exponential process, not a linear process.

11. $3.1 \times 10^{-8}\ \mathrm{g}$

Exercises (Units of Radioactivity)

1. Define rad.

2. Define rem.

3. How does a becquerel differ from a curie?

4. Define curie.

5. A sample of radon gas has an activity of $140.0\mathrm{mCi}$. If the half-life of radon is $1,500\mathrm{y}$, how long before the activity of the sample is $8.75\mathrm{mCi}$?

6. A sample of curium has an activity of $1,600\ \mathrm{Bq}$. If the half-life of curium is 24.0 s, how long before its activity is $25.0\ \mathrm{Bq}$?

7. If a radioactive sample has an activity of $65\mu\mathrm{Ci}$, how many disintegrations per second are occurring?

8. If a radioactive sample has an activity of $7.55 \times 10^{5}\ \mathrm{Bq}$, how many disintegrations per second are occurring?

9. A sample of fluorine-20 has an activity of $2.44\mathrm{mCi}$. If its half-life is $11.0\ \mathrm{s}$, what is its activity after $50.0\ \mathrm{s}$?

10. Strontium-90 has a half-life of $28.1\mathrm{y}$. If $66.7\ \mathrm{Bq}$ of pure strontium-90 were allowed to decay for $15.0\mathrm{y}$, what would the activity of the remaining strontium-90 be?

11. How long does it take $100.0\mathrm{mCi}$ of fluorine-20 to decay to $10.0\mathrm{mCi}$ if its halflife is $11.0\ \mathrm{s}$?

12. Technetium-99 is used in medicine as a source of radiation. A typical dose is 25 mCi. How long does it take for the activity to reduce to $0.100\mathrm{mCi}$? The half-life of $^{99}\mathrm{Tc}$ is $210,000\mathrm{y}$.

13. Describe how a radiation exposure in rems is determined.

14. Which contributes more to the rems of exposure-alpha or beta particles? Why?

15. Use Table 15.4 "Effects of Short-Term Exposure to Radioactivity and Radiation" to determine which sources of radiation exposure are inescapable and which can be avoided. What percentage of radiation is unavoidable?

16. Name two isotopes that contribute to the radioactivity in our bodies.

17. Explain how a film badge works to detect radiation.

18. Explain how a Geiger counter works to detect radiation.

Answers

1. a unit of radioactive exposure equal to $0.01\ \mathrm{J}$ of energy per gram of tissue

3. A becquerel is 1 decay/s, whereas a curie is 3.7×10^{10} decays/s.

5. $6.0 \times 10^{3}\text{y}$

7. 2.41×10^{6} disintegrations per second

9. 0.104mCi

11. $36.5\ \text{s}$

13. by using a film badge, which is exposed by the radiation, or a Geiger counter

15. Radioactive atoms in the body, most terrestrial sources, cosmic sources, and nuclear energy sources are likely unavoidable, which is about 27% of the total exposure. If exposure to radon gas is added, the total unavoidable exposure increases to 82%.

17. Film is exposed by the radiation. The more radiation film is subjected to, the more exposed it becomes.

Exercises (Uses of Radioactive Isotopes)

1. Define tracer and give an example of how tracers work.

2. Name two isotopes that have been used as tracers.

3. Explain how radioactive dating works.

4. Name two isotopes that have been used in radioactive dating.

5. The current disintegration rate for carbon-14 is $14.0\ \text{Bq}$. A sample of burnt wood discovered in an archeological excavation is found to have a carbon-14 disintegration rate of $3.5\ \text{Bq}$. If the half-life of carbon-14 is $5,730\text{y}$, approximately how old is the wood sample?

6. A small asteroid crashes to Earth. After chemical analysis, it is found to contain $1\ \text{g}$ of technetium-99 to every $3\ \text{g}$ of ruthenium-99, its daughter isotope. If the half-life of technetium-99 is $210,000\text{y}$, approximately how old is the asteroid?

7. What is a positive aspect of the irradiation of food?

8. What is a negative aspect of the irradiation of food?

9. Describe how iodine-131 is used to both diagnose and treat thyroid problems.

10. List at least five organs that can be imaged using radioactive isotopes.

11. Which radioactive emissions can be used therapeutically?

12. Which isotope is used in therapeutics primarily for its gamma ray emissions?

Answers

1. A tracer is a radioactive isotope that can be detected far from its original source to trace the path of certain chemicals. Hydrogen-3 can be used to trace the path of water underground.

3. If the initial amount of a radioactive isotope is known, then by measuring the amount of the isotope remaining, a person can calculate how old that object is since it took up the isotope.

5. $11,500\text{y}$

7. increased shelf life (answers will vary)

9. The thyroid gland absorbs most of the iodine, allowing it to be imaged for diagnostic purposes or preferentially irradiated for

treatment purposes.

11. gamma rays

Exercises (Nuclear Energy)

1. According to Einstein's equation, the conversion of $1.00\ \text{g}$ of matter into energy generates how much energy?

2. How much matter needs to be converted to energy to supply $400\ \text{kJ}$ of energy, the approximate energy of $1\ \text{mol}$ of $\text{C}-\text{H}$ bonds? What conclusion does this suggest about energy changes of chemical reactions?

3. In the spontaneous fission of lead-208, the following reaction occurs: $^{208}\ \text{Pb} \rightarrow {}^{129}\text{I} + {}^{76}\text{Cu} + 3{}^{1}\text{n}$
For every mole of lead-208 that decays, $0.1002\ \text{g}$ of mass is lost. How much energy is given off per mole of lead-208 reacted?

4. In the spontaneous fission of radium-226, the following reaction occurs: $^{226}\text{Ra} \rightarrow {}^{156}\text{Pm} + {}^{68}\text{Co} + 2{}^{1}\text{n}$
For every mole of radium-226 that decays, $0.1330\ \text{g}$ of mass is lost. How much energy is given off per mole of radium-226 reacted?

5. Recalculate the amount of energy from Exercise 3 in terms of the number of grams of lead-208 reacted.

6. Recalculate the amount of energy from Exercise 4 in terms of the number of grams of radium-226 reacted.

7. What is the energy change of this fission reaction? Masses in grams are provided.

$$^{241}_{241.0569}\text{Pu} \rightarrow {}^{140}_{139.9106}\text{Ba} + {}^{90}_{89.9077}\text{Sr} + {}_{11\times1.0087}^{\ \ 11}{}^{1}\text{n}$$

8. What is the energy change of this fission reaction? Masses in grams are provided.

9. The two rarer isotopes of hydrogen-deuterium and tritium-can also be fused to make helium by the following reaction:

$$^{2}\text{H} + {}^{3}\text{H} \rightarrow {}^{4}\text{He} + {}^{1}\text{n}$$

In the course of this reaction, $0.01888\ \text{g}$ of mass is lost. How much energy is given off in the reaction of $1\ \text{mol}$ of deuterium and tritium?

10. A process called helium burning is thought to occur inside older stars, forming carbon:

$$3{}^{4}\text{He} \rightarrow {}^{12}\text{C}$$

If the reaction proceeds with $0.00781\ \text{g}$ of mass lost on a molar basis, how much energy is given off?

11. Briefly describe how a nuclear reactor generates electricity.

12. Briefly describe the difference between how a nuclear reactor works and how a nuclear bomb works.

13. What is a chain reaction?

14. Why must uranium be enriched to supply nuclear energy?

Answers

1. $9.00 \times 10^{13}\ \text{J}$

3. $9.02 \times 10^{12}\ \text{J}$

5. $4.34 \times 10^{10}\ \text{J/g}$

7. $-1.28 \times 10^{13}\ \text{J}$

9. $1.70 \times 10^{12}\ \text{J}$

11. A nuclear reactor controls a nuclear reaction to produce energy in usable amounts. The energy produced generates steam, which is used to turn a turbine that generates electricity for general use.

13. a process that generates more reaction pathways for each previous reaction

Additional Exercises

1. Given that many elements are metals, suggest why it would be unsafe to have radioactive materials in contact with acids.

2. Many alpha-emitting radioactive substances are relatively safe to handle, but inhaling radioactive dust can be very dangerous. Why?

3. Uranium can be separated from its daughter isotope thorium by dissolving a sample in acid and adding sodium iodide, which precipitates thorium(III) iodide:

$$\mathrm{Th^{3+}(aq) + 3I^-(aq) \rightarrow ThI_3(\ s)}$$

If $0.567\ \mathrm{g}$ of $\mathrm{Th^{3+}}$ were dissolved in solution, how many milliliters of $0.500\mathrm{M\ NaI(aq)}$ would have to be added to precipitate all the thorium?

4. Thorium oxide can be dissolved in acidic solution:

$$\mathrm{ThO_2(\ s) + 4H^+ \rightarrow Th^{4+}(aq) + 2H_2O(\ell)}$$

How many milliliters of $1.55\mathrm{MHCl(aq)}$ are needed to dissolve $10.65\ \mathrm{g}$ of $\mathrm{ThO_2}$?

5. Radioactive strontium is dangerous because it can chemically replace calcium in the human body. The bones are particularly susceptible to radiation damage. Write the nuclear equation for the beta emission of strontium-90.

6. Write the nuclear equation for the beta emission of iodine-131, the isotope used to diagnose and treat thyroid problems.

7. A common uranium compound is uranyl nitrate hexahydrate $\mathrm{[UO_2\,(NO_3)_2.\,6H_2O}$. What is the formula mass of this compound?

8. Plutonium forms three oxides: $\mathrm{PuO, PuO_2}$, and $\mathrm{Pu_2O_3}$. What are the formula masses of these three compounds?

9. A banana contains $600\mathrm{mg}$ of potassium, 0.0117% of which is radioactive potassium-40. If $1\ \mathrm{g}$ of potassium-40 has an activity of $2.626 \times 10^5\ \mathrm{Bq}$, what is the activity of a banana?

10. Smoke detectors typically contain about $0.25\mathrm{mg}$ of americium-241 as part of the smoke detection mechanism. If the activity of $1\ \mathrm{g}$ of americium-241 is $1.26 \times 10^{11}\ \mathrm{Bq}$, what is the activity of americium-241 in the smoke detector?

11. Uranium hexafluoride $(\mathrm{UF_6})$ reacts with water to make uranyl fluoride $(\mathrm{UO_2\ F_2})$ and HF. Balance the following reaction:

$$\mathrm{UF_6 + H_2O \rightarrow UO_2\ F_2 + HF}$$

12. The cyclopentadienyl anion $(\mathrm{C_5H_5^-})$is an organic ion that can make ionic compounds with positive ions of radioactive elements, such as $\mathrm{Np^{3+}}$. Balance the following reaction:

$$\mathrm{NpCl_3 + Be\,(C_5H_5)_2 \rightarrow Np\,(C_5H_5)_3 + BeCl_2}$$

13. If the half-life of hydrogen-3 is $12.3\mathrm{y}$, how much time does it take for 99.0% of a sample of hydrogen-3 to decay?

14. If the half-life of carbon-14 is $5,730\mathrm{y}$, how long does it take for 10.0% of a sample of carbon-14 to decay?

15. Although bismuth is generally considered stable, its only natural isotope, bismuth-209, is estimated to have a half-life of $1.9 \times 10^{19}\mathrm{y}$. If the universe is estimated to have a lifetime of $1.38 \times 10^{10}\mathrm{y}$, what percentage of bismuth-209 has decayed over the lifetime of the universe? (Hint: Be prepared to use a lot of decimal places.)

16. The most common isotope of uranium (uranium-238) has a half-life of $4.5 \times 10^9\ \mathrm{y}$. If the universe is estimated to have a lifetime of $1.38 \times 10^{10}\mathrm{y}$, what percentage of uranium-238 has decayed over the lifetime of the universe?

17. Refer to Table 15.3 "Average Annual Radiation Exposure (Approximate)" and separate the sources of radioactive exposure into voluntary and involuntary sources. What percentage of radioactive exposure is involuntary?

18. With reference to Table 15.3 "Average Annual Radiation Exposure (Approximate)" and Exercise 17, suggest ways that a practical person can minimize exposure to radioactivity.

Answers

1. Acids can dissolve many metals; a spilled acid can lead to contamination.

3. $14.7\ \mathrm{mL}$

5. $^{90}_{38}\mathrm{Sr} \rightarrow {}^{90}_{39}\mathrm{Y} + {}^{0}_{-1}\mathrm{e}$

7. $502.15\ \mathrm{g/mol}$

9. about $18\ \mathrm{Bq}$

11. $\mathrm{UF_6} + 2\mathrm{H_2O} \rightarrow \mathrm{UO_2\ F_2} + 4\mathrm{HF}$

13. $81.7\mathrm{y}$

15. about 0.000000005%

17. Radioactive atoms in the body, terrestrial sources, and cosmic sources are truly involuntary, which is about 27% of the total. Radon exposure, medical sources, consumer products, and even nuclear energy sources can be avoided.

This page titled 14.E: Nuclear Chemistry (Exercises) is shared under a CC BY-NC-SA 3.0 license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

INDEX

A

acid–base titration
10.3.4: Acid–Base Titration

activity series
5.5: Predicting Reactions - Single and Double Replacement Reactions

ammonium ion
11.4: Buffers are Solutions that Resist pH Change

anion
3.1.5: Ions - Losing and Gaining Electrons
3.5.1: Ions - Monatomic and Polyatomic

atomic mass unit
3.1.2: The Properties of Protons, Neutrons, and Electrons

atomic theory
3.1: Properties of Atoms
3.1.1: Indivisible - The Atomic Theory
3.2: Summary of Atomic Theory and the Construction of Atoms

atoms
3.2: Summary of Atomic Theory and the Construction of Atoms

autoionization of water
11.3.1: Water - Acid and Base in One

B

background radiation
14.3: Natural Radioactivity and Half-Life

Bends
10.1.2: Solutions of Gases in Water

Bohr model
7.2.1: The Bohr Model - Atoms with Orbits

boiling
9.3: Phase Transitions

boiling point
9.3: Phase Transitions

boiling point elevation
10.4.1: Freezing Point Depression and Boiling Point Elevation

buffer
11.4: Buffers are Solutions that Resist pH Change

buffer capacity
11.4: Buffers are Solutions that Resist pH Change

burette
12.1.3: Review of Titrations

C

cation
3.1.5: Ions - Losing and Gaining Electrons
3.5.1: Ions - Monatomic and Polyatomic

chemical change
2.2.2: Changes in Matter - Physical and Chemical Changes
2.3: Summary of Matter and Changes

chemical properties
2.3: Summary of Matter and Changes

chemical property
2.2.1: Differences in Matter- Physical and Chemical Properties

colligative properties
10.4.1: Freezing Point Depression and Boiling Point Elevation

combustion reaction
13.2.2: Determining Redox Reactions from Oxidation States

complete ionic equation
9.5.1: Writing Chemical Equations for Reactions in Solution- Complete Chemical, Complete Ionic, and Net Ionic Equations

compound
2.1.2: Classifying Matter According to Its Composition
2.3: Summary of Matter and Changes

condensation
9.3: Phase Transitions

conservation of energy
2.5.2: Energy and Chemical and Physical Change

conservation of mass
2.2.3: Conservation of Mass - There is No New Matter

corrosion
13.3.3: Corrosion - Undesirable Redox Reactions

D

democritus
3.1: Properties of Atoms
3.1.1: Indivisible - The Atomic Theory

density
2.4: Density

deposition
9.3: Phase Transitions

dilution
10.3.2: Solution Dilution

dimensional analysis
1.3.1: Problem Solving and Unit Conversions

E

electrolysis
13.3.4: Electrolysis- Using Electricity to Do Chemistry

electromagnetic spectrum
7.1.1: The Electromagnetic Spectrum

electron
3.1.2: The Properties of Protons, Neutrons, and Electrons
3.2: Summary of Atomic Theory and the Construction of Atoms

element
2.1.2: Classifying Matter According to Its Composition
2.3: Summary of Matter and Changes

endothermic process
2.5.2: Energy and Chemical and Physical Change

energy change
9.3: Phase Transitions

enthalpy of fusion
9.3: Phase Transitions

enthalpy of sublimation
9.3: Phase Transitions

enthalpy of vaporization
9.3: Phase Transitions

exercises
11.E: Acids and Bases
12.E: Stoichiometry Applications (Exercises)
13.E: Oxidation and Reduction (Exercises)
9.E: Attractive Forces

exothermic process
2.5.2: Energy and Chemical and Physical Change

F

freezing point depression
10.4.1: Freezing Point Depression and Boiling Point Elevation

G

Geiger counter
14.4.1: Detecting Radioactivity

H

heat capacity
2.6.1: Temperature Changes - Heat Capacity

Heat Capacity Calculations
2.6.2: Energy and Heat Capacity Calculations

heat of fusion
9.3: Phase Transitions

heterogeneous mixture
2.3: Summary of Matter and Changes

homogeneous mixture
2.3: Summary of Matter and Changes

hydrolysis
11.2.2: Reactions of Acids and Bases

I

ideal gas
12.1.2: Review of Stoichiometry and the Ideal Gas Laws

ideal gas law
12.1.2: Review of Stoichiometry and the Ideal Gas Laws
8.6: Stoichiometry and the Ideal Gas Law

Ideal Gas Laws
12.1.2: Review of Stoichiometry and the Ideal Gas Laws

ions
3.1.5: Ions - Losing and Gaining Electrons
3.5.1: Ions - Monatomic and Polyatomic

isothermal
9.3: Phase Transitions

isothermal process
9.3: Phase Transitions

isotopes
3.1.6: Isotopes - When the Number of Neutrons Varies

M

matter
- 2.1: What is Matter?
- 2.3: Summary of Matter and Changes
- 3.2: Summary of Atomic Theory and the Construction of Atoms

melting
- 9.3: Phase Transitions

melting point
- 9.3: Phase Transitions

metal
- 2.3: Summary of Matter and Changes

mixture
- 2.1.2: Classifying Matter According to Its Composition

mixtures
- 2.3: Summary of Matter and Changes

molarity
- 10.2.2: Solution Concentration- Molarity

N

net ionic equation
- 9.5.1: Writing Chemical Equations for Reactions in Solution- Complete Chemical, Complete Ionic, and Net Ionic Equations

neutralization
- 12.1.3: Review of Titrations

neutralization reaction
- 11.2.2: Reactions of Acids and Bases
- 12.1.3: Review of Titrations

neutron
- 3.1.2: The Properties of Protons, Neutrons, and Electrons
- 3.2: Summary of Atomic Theory and the Construction of Atoms

nonmetal
- 2.3: Summary of Matter and Changes

normal boiling point
- 9.3: Phase Transitions

O

osmosis
- 10.4.2: Osmosis

osmotic pressure
- 10.4.2: Osmosis

oxidation number
- 13.2.2: Determining Redox Reactions from Oxidation States

P

pascal (unit)
- 8.2: Pressure - The Result of Constant Molecular Collisions

pH scale
- 11.3.2: The pH and pOH Scales - Ways to Express Acidity and Basicity

phase
- 2.3: Summary of Matter and Changes

phase change
- 9.3: Phase Transitions

phase transitions
- 9.3: Phase Transitions

physical change
- 2.2.2: Changes in Matter - Physical and Chemical Changes
- 2.3: Summary of Matter and Changes

physical properties
- 2.3: Summary of Matter and Changes

physical property
- 2.2.1: Differences in Matter- Physical and Chemical Properties

pOH
- 11.3.2: The pH and pOH Scales - Ways to Express Acidity and Basicity

potential energy
- 2.5.1: Energy

precipitate
- 5.5: Predicting Reactions - Single and Double Replacement Reactions
- 9.5: Precipitation Reactions

precipitation reaction
- 5.5: Predicting Reactions - Single and Double Replacement Reactions
- 9.5: Precipitation Reactions

proton
- 3.1.2: The Properties of Protons, Neutrons, and Electrons
- 3.2: Summary of Atomic Theory and the Construction of Atoms

R

radiation biology
- 14.4.6: The Effects of Radiation on Life

redox reaction
- 13.2.2: Determining Redox Reactions from Oxidation States

resonance
- 7.6.1: Resonance - Equivalent Lewis Structures for the Same Molecule

rounding
- 1.2.2: Significant Figures in Calculations

S

sacrificial anode
- 13.3.3: Corrosion - Undesirable Redox Reactions

scienfitic notation
- 1.1.1: Scientific Notation - Writing Large and Small Numbers

semimetals
- 2.3: Summary of Matter and Changes

semipermeable membrane
- 10.4.2: Osmosis

Separation of Mixtures
- 2.2.2: Changes in Matter - Physical and Chemical Changes

significant figures
- 1.2.1: Significant Figures - Writing Numbers to Reflect Precision
- 1.2.2: Significant Figures in Calculations

solidification
- 9.3: Phase Transitions

Solubility of gases
- 10.1.2: Solutions of Gases in Water

solubility rules
- 5.5: Predicting Reactions - Single and Double Replacement Reactions

solution stoichiometry
- 10.3.3: Solution Stoichiometry

specific heat capacity
- 2.6.1: Temperature Changes - Heat Capacity

spectator ions
- 9.5.1: Writing Chemical Equations for Reactions in Solution- Complete Chemical, Complete Ionic, and Net Ionic Equations

Stability of Isotopes
- 3.1.6: Isotopes - When the Number of Neutrons Varies

state
- 2.3: Summary of Matter and Changes

stock system
- 3.6.1: Naming Ionic Compounds

stoichiometry
- 12.1.2: Review of Stoichiometry and the Ideal Gas Laws

STP
- 12.1.2: Review of Stoichiometry and the Ideal Gas Laws

sublimation
- 9.3: Phase Transitions

Subliming
- 9.3: Phase Transitions

substance
- 2.3: Summary of Matter and Changes

T

temperature
- 2.5.3: Temperature - Random Motion of Molecules and Atoms

U

unit conversions
- 1.3.1: Problem Solving and Unit Conversions

units of energy
- 2.5.1: Energy

V

valence shell electron pair repulsion theory
- 7.7: Predicting the Shapes of Molecules

vaporization
- 9.3: Phase Transitions

VSEPR
- 7.7: Predicting the Shapes of Molecules

W

work
- 2.5.1: Energy

This page titled Index is shared under a Public Domain license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.

DETAILED LICENSING

Overview

Title: Chemistry 3A: Introductory General Chemistry v1.2 (MacArthur)

Webpages: 211

Applicable Restrictions: Noncommercial

All licenses found:

- Unknown License: 45.5% (96 pages)
- CK-12 License: 39.3% (83 pages)
- CC BY-NC-SA 3.0: 6.2% (13 pages)
- CC BY 4.0: 3.8% (8 pages)
- Public Domain: 2.8% (6 pages)
- CC BY-SA 4.0: 1.9% (4 pages)
- CC BY-NC-SA 4.0: 0.5% (1 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)

- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)
- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)

- Unknown License: 0% (0 page)

By Page

- Chemistry 3A: Introductory General Chemistry v1.2 (MacArthur) - *Unknown License*
  - Front Matter - *Unknown License*
    - TitlePage - *Unknown License*
    - InfoPage - *Public Domain*
    - Table of Contents - *Public Domain*
    - For the Instructor - *Unknown License*
    - Licensing - *Public Domain*
    - For the Student - *Unknown License*
    - How Science Works - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 0.1: Hypothesis, Theories, and Laws - *CK-12 License*
      - 0.2: The Scientific Method - How Chemists Think - *CK-12 License*
  - 1: Basics of Measurement - *Unknown License*
    - 1.1: Taking Measurements- Numbers and Units - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
      - 1.1.1: Scientific Notation - Writing Large and Small Numbers - *CK-12 License*
      - 1.1.2: The Basic Units of Measurement - *CK-12 License*
    - 1.2: Significant Figures - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 1.2.1: Significant Figures - Writing Numbers to Reflect Precision - *CK-12 License*
      - 1.2.2: Significant Figures in Calculations - *CK-12 License*
    - 1.3: Conversions - *Unknown License*
      - 1.3.1: Problem Solving and Unit Conversions - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
      - 1.3.2: Solving Multi-step Conversion Problems - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
      - 1.3.3: Units Raised to a Power - *CK-12 License*
    - 1.E: Measurements (Exercises) - *CC BY-NC-SA 4.0*
  - 2: Matter and Energy - *CC BY 4.0*
    - 2.1: What is Matter? - *CK-12 License*
      - 2.1.1: Classifying Matter According to Its State—Solid, Liquid, and Gas - *CK-12 License*
      - 2.1.2: Classifying Matter According to Its Composition - *CK-12 License*
    - 2.2: Properties and Changes of Matter - *CC BY 4.0*
      - 2.2.1: Differences in Matter- Physical and Chemical Properties - *CK-12 License*
      - 2.2.2: Changes in Matter - Physical and Chemical Changes - *CK-12 License*
      - 2.2.3: Conservation of Mass - There is No New Matter - *CK-12 License*
    - 2.3: Summary of Matter and Changes - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
    - 2.4: Density - *Unknown License*
    - 2.5: Temperature, Heat, and Energy - *Unknown License*
      - 2.5.1: Energy - *CK-12 License*
      - 2.5.2: Energy and Chemical and Physical Change - *CK-12 License*
      - 2.5.3: Temperature - Random Motion of Molecules and Atoms - *CK-12 License*
    - 2.6: Heat Capacity - *Unknown License*
      - 2.6.1: Temperature Changes - Heat Capacity - *Unknown License*
      - 2.6.2: Energy and Heat Capacity Calculations - *Unknown License*
    - 2.E: Matter and Energy (Exercises) - *Unknown License*
  - 3: Elements and Compounds - *Unknown License*
    - 3.1: Properties of Atoms - *Unknown License*
      - 3.1.1: Indivisible - The Atomic Theory - *Unknown License*
      - 3.1.2: The Properties of Protons, Neutrons, and Electrons - *Unknown License*
      - 3.1.3: Keeping Track of Subatomic Particles - *CK-12 License*
      - 3.1.4: Looking for Patterns - The Periodic Table - *CK-12 License*
      - 3.1.5: Ions - Losing and Gaining Electrons - *Unknown License*
      - 3.1.6: Isotopes - When the Number of Neutrons Varies - *CK-12 License*
    - 3.2: Summary of Atomic Theory and the Construction of Atoms - *Unknown License*
    - 3.3: Compounds - *Unknown License*
      - 3.3.1: Chemical Formulas - How to Represent Compounds - *CK-12 License*
    - 3.4: A Molecular View of Elements and Compounds - *CK-12 License*
    - 3.5: Ionic Compounds - *Unknown License*
      - 3.5.1: Ions - Monatomic and Polyatomic - *Unknown License*
      - 3.5.2: Writing Formulas for Ionic Compounds - *Unknown License*
    - 3.6: How to Name Compounds - *Unknown License*
      - 3.6.1: Naming Ionic Compounds - *CK-12 License*
      - 3.6.2: Naming Molecular Compounds - *CK-12 License*
      - 3.6.3: Naming Acids - *CK-12 License*
      - 3.6.4: Nomenclature Summary - *Unknown License*
    - 3.E: Atoms, Molecules, and Ions (Exercises) - *Unknown License*
  - 4: The Mole Concept - *Unknown License*
    - 4.1: Avogadro's Number - *CK-12 License*
    - 4.2: Conversions Between Moles and Atoms - *CK-12 License*

- 4.3: Molar Mass - *CK-12 License*
- 4.4: Conversions Between Moles and Mass - *CK-12 License*
- 4.5: Conversions Between Mass and Number of Particles - *Unknown License*
- 4.6: Percent Composition - *CK-12 License*
- 4.7: Determining Empirical Formulas - *CK-12 License*
- 4.8: Percent of Water in a Hydrate - *CK-12 License*
- 4.9: Determining Molecular Formulas - *Unknown License*
- 4.10: Mole Road Map - *Unknown License*
- 4.E: The Mole Concept (Exercises) - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*

◦ 5: Chemical Reactions - *Unknown License*
- 5.1: Word Equations - *CK-12 License*
- 5.2: Chemical Equations - *CK-12 License*
- 5.3: Balancing Equations - *CK-12 License*
- 5.4: Types of Reactions - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 5.4.1: Combination Reactions - *CK-12 License*
  - 5.4.2: Decomposition Reactions - *CK-12 License*
  - 5.4.3: Combustion Reactions - *CK-12 License*
  - 5.4.4: Single Replacement Reactions - *CK-12 License*
  - 5.4.5: Double Replacement Reactions - *CK-12 License*
- 5.5: Predicting Reactions - Single and Double Replacement Reactions - *Unknown License*
- 5.E: Chemical Reactions (Exercises) - *Unknown License*

◦ 6: Introduction to Stoichiometry - *Unknown License*
- 6.1: Everyday Stoichiometry - *CK-12 License*
- 6.2: Mole Ratios - *Unknown License*
- 6.3: Mass-Mole and Mole-Mass Stoichiometry - *CK-12 License*
- 6.4: Mass-Mass Stoichiometry - *CK-12 License*
- 6.5: Stoichiometry Applications - *Unknown License*
  - 6.5.1: Making Your Own Mole Road Map - *Unknown License*
  - 6.5.2: Limiting Reactant - *CK-12 License*
  - 6.5.3: Theoretical Yield and Percent Yield - *CK-12 License*
- 6.E: Introduction to Stoichiometry (Exercises) - *Unknown License*

◦ 7: Electrons and Chemical Bonding - *Unknown License*
- 7.1: Light is Visible Electromagnetic Radiation - *CK-12 License*
  - 7.1.1: The Electromagnetic Spectrum - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 7.2: Models of Electron Behavior - *Unknown License*
  - 7.2.1: The Bohr Model - Atoms with Orbits - *CK-12 License*
  - 7.2.2: The Quantum-Mechanical Model- Atoms with Orbitals - *CK-12 License*
- 7.3: Quantum-Mechanical Orbitals and Electron Configurations - *Unknown License*
- 7.4: Electron Configurations and the Periodic Table - *Unknown License*
  - 7.4.1: The Explanatory Power of the Quantum-Mechanical Model - *CK-12 License*
- 7.5: The Octet Rule - *Unknown License*
  - 7.5.1: Representing Valence Electrons with Dots - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
  - 7.5.2: Lewis Structures of Ionic Compounds- Electrons Transferred - *Unknown License*
  - 7.5.3: Covalent Lewis Structures- Electrons Shared - *Unknown License*
- 7.6: Writing Lewis Structures for Covalent Compounds - *Unknown License*
  - 7.6.1: Resonance - Equivalent Lewis Structures for the Same Molecule - *CK-12 License*
  - 7.6.2: Exceptions to the Octet Rule - *Unknown License*
- 7.7: Predicting the Shapes of Molecules - *Unknown License*
- 7.8: Electronegativity and Polarity - *CK-12 License*
- 7.E: Electrons and Chemical Bonds (Exercises) - *Unknown License*

◦ 8: Gases - *Unknown License*
- 8.1: Solids, Liquids, and Gases- A Molecular Comparison - *Unknown License*
- 8.2: Pressure - The Result of Constant Molecular Collisions - *CK-12 License*
- 8.3: Kinetic Molecular Theory- A Model for Gases - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 8.4: Simple Gas Laws - *Unknown License*
  - 8.4.1: Boyle's Law - Pressure and Volume - *Unknown License*
  - 8.4.2: Charles's Law- Volume and Temperature - *CK-12 License*
  - 8.4.3: Gay-Lussac's Law- Temperature and Pressure - *CK-12 License*
  - 8.4.4: Avogadro's Law- Volume and Moles - *CK-12 License*
- 8.5: The Ideal Gas Law - *CK-12 License*
- 8.6: Stoichiometry and the Ideal Gas Law - *Unknown License*
- 8.7: Mixtures of Gases - *CK-12 License*
- 8.8: Gases (Exercises) - *Unknown License*

◦ 9: Attractive Forces - *Unknown License*
- 9.1: Intermolecular Forces- Dispersion, Dipole–Dipole, Hydrogen Bonding - *Unknown License*
- 9.2: Types of Crystalline Solids - *Unknown License*

- 9.3: Phase Transitions - *Unknown License*
  - 9.3.1: Melting, Freezing, and Sublimation - *Unknown License*
  - 9.3.2: Boiling, Evaporation and Condensation - *CK-12 License*
  - 9.3.3: Calculations for Phase Changes - *Unknown License*
  - 9.3.4: Heating Curve for Water - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 9.4: Solutions - Homogeneous Mixtures - *Unknown License*
  - 9.4.1: How Solutions Form - *Unknown License*
  - 9.4.2: Electrolytes and Nonelectrolytes - *Unknown License*
  - 9.4.3: Aqueous Solutions and Solubility - Compounds Dissolved in Water - *Unknown License*
- 9.5: Precipitation Reactions - *Unknown License*
  - 9.5.1: Writing Chemical Equations for Reactions in Solution- Complete Chemical, Complete Ionic, and Net Ionic Equations - *Unknown License*
- 9.E: Attractive Forces - *Unknown License*

◦ 10: Aqueous Solutions - *Unknown License*
- 10.1: Solubility Trends - *Unknown License*
  - 10.1.1: Solutions of Solids Dissolved in Water - *Unknown License*
  - 10.1.2: Solutions of Gases in Water - *Unknown License*
- 10.2: Measures of Concentration - *Unknown License*
  - 10.2.1: Percent Solutions - *CK-12 License*
  - 10.2.2: Solution Concentration- Molarity - *Unknown License*
- 10.3: Concentration Calculations - *Unknown License*
  - 10.3.1: A Mole Map for Concentration - *Unknown License*
  - 10.3.2: Solution Dilution - *CC BY-SA 4.0*
  - 10.3.3: Solution Stoichiometry - *CC BY-SA 4.0*
  - 10.3.4: Acid–Base Titration - *CK-12 License*
- 10.4: Colligative Properties - *Unknown License*
  - 10.4.1: Freezing Point Depression and Boiling Point Elevation - *Unknown License*
  - 10.4.2: Osmosis - *Unknown License*
- 10.E: Solutions (Exercises) - *Unknown License*

◦ 11: Acids and Bases - *Unknown License*
- 11.1: Properties of Acids and Bases - *Unknown License*
  - 11.1.1: Acids- Properties and Examples - *CK-12 License*
  - 11.1.2: Bases- Properties and Examples - *CK-12 License*
- 11.2: Chemistry of Acids and Bases - *Unknown License*
  - 11.2.1: Molecular Definitions of Acids and Bases - *CK-12 License*
  - 11.2.2: Reactions of Acids and Bases - *Public Domain*
  - 11.2.3: Strong and Weak Acids and Bases - *CK-12 License*
- 11.3: Acid-Base Equilibria - *Unknown License*
  - 11.3.1: Water - Acid and Base in One - *CK-12 License*
  - 11.3.2: The pH and pOH Scales - Ways to Express Acidity and Basicity - *Unknown License*
  - Dynamic Equilibrium - *CC BY 4.0*
- 11.4: Buffers are Solutions that Resist pH Change - *CK-12 License*
- 11.E: Acids and Bases - *Unknown License*

◦ 12: Stoichiometry Applications - *Unknown License*
- 12.1: Stoichiometry Review - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 12.1.1: Stoichiometry Basics - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
  - 12.1.2: Review of Stoichiometry and the Ideal Gas Laws - *CC BY-SA 4.0*
  - 12.1.3: Review of Titrations - *CC BY-SA 4.0*
- 12.2: Limiting Reactant - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 12.3: Theoretical Yield, and Percent Yield - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*
- 12.4: Enthalpy Change is a Measure of the Heat Evolved or Absorbed - *CK-12 License*
- 12.E: Stoichiometry Applications (Exercises) - *Unknown License*

◦ 13: Oxidation and Reduction - *Unknown License*
- 13.1: Oxidation and Reduction- Some Definitions - *Unknown License*
- 13.2: Keeping Track of Redox Reactions - *Unknown License*
  - 13.2.1: Oxidation States - Electron Bookkeeping - *CK-12 License*
  - 13.2.2: Determining Redox Reactions from Oxidation States - *CK-12 License*
  - 13.2.3: Balancing Redox Equations - *CK-12 License*
- 13.3: Applications of Redox Reactions - *Unknown License*
  - 13.3.1: The Activity Series- Predicting Spontaneous Redox Reactions - *CK-12 License*
  - 13.3.2: Batteries- Using Chemistry to Generate Electricity - *CK-12 License*
  - 13.3.3: Corrosion - Undesirable Redox Reactions - *CK-12 License*
  - 13.3.4: Electrolysis- Using Electricity to Do Chemistry - *CK-12 License*
- 13.E: Oxidation and Reduction (Exercises) - *Unknown License*

◦ 14: Radioactivity and Nuclear Chemistry - *Unknown License*
- 14.1: The Discovery of Radioactivity - *CK-12 License*
- 14.2: Types of Radioactivity- Alpha, Beta, and

Gamma Decay - *CK-12 License*
- 14.3: Natural Radioactivity and Half-Life - *CK-12 License*
- 14.4: Applications of Nuclear Chemistry - *CC BY 4.0*
  - 14.4.1: Detecting Radioactivity - *CK-12 License*
  - 14.4.2: Radiocarbon Dating- Using Radioactivity to Measure the Age of Fossils and Other Artifacts - *CK-12 License*
  - 14.4.3: The Discovery of Fission and the Atomic Bomb - *CK-12 License*
  - 14.4.4: Nuclear Power- Using Fission to Generate Electricity - *CK-12 License*
  - 14.4.5: Nuclear Fusion- The Power of the Sun - *CK-12 License*
  - 14.4.6: The Effects of Radiation on Life - *CK-12 License*
  - 14.4.7: Radioactivity in Medicine - *CK-12 License*
- 14.E: Nuclear Chemistry (Exercises) - *CC BY-NC-SA 3.0*

◦ Back Matter - *Unknown License*
- Index - *Public Domain*
- Glossary - *Unknown License*
- Detailed Licensing - *Public Domain*

This page titled Chemistry 3A: Introductory General Chemistry v1.2 (MacArthur) is shared under a license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Jamie MacArthur.